H 25/990

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION • UNITED STATES OF AMERICA • MCMXV

The Hart-Scott-Rodino
Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976

Premerger Notification Source Book

Everything you wanted to know about Hart-Scott-Rodino. . .

1990

FT 1.2:

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION • UNITED STATES OF AMERICA • MCMXV

The Hart-Scott-Rodino
Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976

Premerger Notification Source Book

Everything you wanted to know about Hart-Scott-Rodino. . .

1990

READEX FICHE best copy available

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office
Washington, D.C. 20402

July, 1989

THIS SOURCE BOOK WAS PREPARED BY THE FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION
BUREAU OF COMPETITION,
PREMERGER NOTIFICATION OFFICE

Any updates during the year should be requested in writing or by calling the Premerger Notification Office, 6th Street and Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, DC 20580.
Telephone (202) 326-3100.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION ONE

The Statute

The Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976

SECTION TWO

The Premerger Rules (July 3, 1987 Version)

The Premerger Notification and Report Form (Revised February, 1989)

SECTION THREE

Federal Register Notices for the Rules

1. 43 FR 33450 July 31, 1978
2. 44 FR 66781 November 21, 1979
3. 48 FR 34427 July 29, 1983
4. 52 FR 7066 March 6, 1987
5. 52 FR 20058 May 29, 1987
6. 53 FR 36831 September 22, 1988 **(Proposed Rules)**
7. 54 FR 7960 February 24, 1989 **(Proposed Rules)**
8. 54 FR 21425 May 18, 1989

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION FOUR

Formal Interpretations Pursuant to Section 803.30 of the Premerger Notification Rules

			Page Number
1.	Pre-existing Notification Program	August 15, 1978	FI-1
2.	First National City Bank	September 26, 1978	FI-4
3.	Affidavits for Certain Open Market Transactions	December 28, 1978	FI-15
4.	Investment	January 17, 1979	FI-18
5.	Early Termination	April 10, 1979	FI-25
6.	Incorporation By Reference	April 10, 1979	FI-27
7.	Certain Bank Holding Companies	May 8, 1979	FI-29
8.	Attorney-Client Communications	September 13, 1979	FI-35
9.	Accounts Receivable	March 20, 1980	FI-40
10.	Confidentiality	March 28, 1980	FI-42
11.	Incorporation By Reference	April 7, 1981	FI-43
12.	Sun Company - Subordinated Exchangeable Debentures	June 2, 1981	FI-45
13.	Early Termination	August 20, 1982	FI-56
14.	CAB Sunset Act	November 14, 1988	FI-58

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION FIVE

Bureau Statements

1. Letter to O'Connor & Associates Concerning Acquisitions "solely for the purpose of investment"
   August 19, 1982
2. FTC News Release, "Bureau Director Warns of Premerger Act Violations"
   December 23, 1986

SECTION SIX

Tenth Annual Report to Congress, November 10, 1988

THE HART-SCOTT-RODINO ANTITRUST IMPROVEMENTS ACT OF 1976

LHSR

HART–SCOTT–RODINO ANTITRUST IMPROVEMENTS ACT OF 1976 [1]

Sec. 7A. (a) Except as exempted pursuant to subsection (c), no person shall acquire, directly or indirectly, any voting securities or assets of any other person, unless both persons (or in the case of a tender offer, the acquiring person) file notification pursuant to rules under subsection (d) (1) and the waiting period described in subsection (b) (1) has expired, if—

(1) the acquiring person, or the person whose voting securities or assets are being acquired, is engaged in commerce or in any activity affecting commerce;

(2) (A) any voting securities or assets of a person engaged in manufacturing which has annual net sales or total assets of $10,000,000 or more are being acquired by any person which has total assets or annual net sales of $100,000,000 or more;

(B) any voting securities or assets of a person not engaged in manufacturing which has total assets of $10,000,000 or more are being acquired by any person which has total assets or annual net sales of $100,000,000 or more; or

(C) any voting securities or assets of a person with annual net sales or total assets of $100,000,000 or more are being acquired by any person with total assets or annual net sales of $10,000,000 or more; and

---

[1] Sec. 7A of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18A as added by sec. 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435 90 Stat. 1390.

(3) as a result of such acquisition, the acquiring person would hold—

(A) 15 per centum or more of the voting securities or assets of the acquired person, or

(B) an aggregate total amount of the voting securities and assets of the acquired person in excess of $15,000,000.

In the case of a tender offer, the person whose voting securities are sought to be acquired by a person required to file notification under this subsection shall file notification pursuant to rules under subsection (d).

Waiting period

(b) (1) The waiting period required under subsection (a) shall—

(A) begin on the date of the receipt by the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice (hereinafter referred to in this section as the "Assistant Attorney General") of—

(i) the completed notification required under subsection (a), or

(ii) if such notification is not completed, the notification to the extent completed and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance,

from both persons, or, in the case of a tender offer, the acquiring person; and

(B) end on the thirtieth day after the date of such receipt (or in the case of a cash tender offer, the fifteenth day), or on such later date as may be set under subsection (e) (2) or (g) (2).

Waiting period termination.

(2) The Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General may, in individual cases, terminate the waiting period specified in paragraph (1) and allow any person to proceed with any acquisition subject to this section, and promptly shall cause to be published in the Federal Register a notice that neither intends to take any action within such period with respect to such acquisition.

Notice publication in Federal Register

(3) As used in this section—

"Voting securities."

(A) The term "voting securities" means any securities which at present or upon conversion entitle the owner or holder thereof to vote for the election of directors of the issuer or, with respect to unincorporated issuers, persons exercising similar functions.

(B) The amount or percentage of voting securities or assets of a person which are acquired or held by another person shall be determined by aggregating the amount or percentage of such voting securities or assets held or acquired by such other person and each affiliate thereof.

Exempt transactions

(c) The following classes of transactions are exempt from the requirements of this section—

(1) acquisitions of goods or realty transferred in the ordinary course of business;

(2) acquisitions of bonds, mortgages, deeds of trust, or other obligations which are not voting securities;

(3) acquisitions of voting securities of an issuer at least 50 per centum of the voting securities of which are owned by the acquiring person prior to such acquisition;

(4) transfers to or from a Federal agency or a State or political subdivision thereof;

(5) transactions specifically exempted from the antitrust laws by Federal statute;

(6) transactions specifically exempted from the antitrust laws by Federal statute if approved by a Federal agency, if copies of all information and documentary material filed with such agency are contemporaneously filed with the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General;

(7) transactions which require agency approval under section 18(c) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1828 (c)), or section 3 of the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956 (12 U.S.C. 1842);

(8) transactions which require agency approval under section 4 of the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956 (12 U.S.C. 1843), section 403 or 408 (e) of the National Housing Act (12 U.S.C. 1726 and 1730a), or section 5 of the Home Owners' Loan Act of 1933 (12 U.S.C. 1464), if copies of all infor-

mation and documentary material filed with any such agency are contemporaneously filed with the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General at least 30 days prior to consummation of the proposed transaction;

(9) acquisitions, solely for the purpose of investment, of voting securities, if, as a result of such acquisition, the securities acquired or held do not exceed 10 per centum of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer;

(10) acquisitions of voting securities, if, as a result of such acquisition, the voting securities acquired do not increase, directly or indirectly, the acquiring person's per centum share of outstanding voting securities of the issuer;

(11) acquisitions, solely for the purpose of investment, by any bank, banking association, trust company, investment company, or insurance company, of (A) voting securities pursuant to a plan of reorganization or dissolution; or (B) assets in the ordinary course of its business; and

(12) such other acquisitions, transfers, or transactions, as may be exempted under subsection (d) (2) (B).

(d) The Federal Trade Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General and by rule in accordance with section 553 of title 5, United States Code, consistent with the purposes of this section— Rules

(1) shall require that the notification required under subsection (a) be in such form and contain such documentary material and information relevant to a proposed acquisition as is necessary and appropriate to enable the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General to determine whether such acquisition may, if consummated, violate the antitrust laws; and

(2) may—

(A) define the terms used in this section;

(B) exempt, from the requirements of this section, classes of persons, acquisitions, transfers, or transactions which are not likely to violate the antitrust laws; and

(C) prescribe such other rules as may be necessary and appropriate to carry out the purposes of this section.

Acquisitions, additional information.

(e) (1) The Federal Trade Commission or the Assistant Attorney General may, prior to the expiration of the 30-day waiting period (or in the case of a cash tender offer, the 15-day waiting period) specified in subsection (b) (1) of this section, require the submission of additional information or documentary material relevant to the proposed acquisition, from a person required to file notification with respect to such acquisition under subsection (a) of this section prior to the expiration of the waiting period specified in subsection (b) (1) of this section, or from any officer, director, partner, agent, or employee of such person.

Waiting period, extension.

(2) The Federal Trade Commission or the Assistant Attorney General, in its or his discretion, may extend the 30-day waiting period (or in the case of a cash tender offer, the 15-day waiting period) specified in subsection (b) (1) of this section for an additional period of not more than 20 days (or in the case of a cash tender offer, 10 days) after the date on which the Federal Trade Commission or the Assistant Attorney General, as the case may be, receives from any person to whom a request is made under paragraph (1), or in the case of tender offers, the acquiring person, (A) all the information and documentary material required to be submitted pursuant to such a request, or (B) if such request is not fully complied with, the information and documentary material submitted and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance. Such additional period may be further extended only by the United States district court, upon an application by the Federal Trade Commission or the Assistant Attorney General pursuant to subsection (g) (2).

(f) If a proceeding is instituted or an action is filed by the Federal Trade Commission, alleging that a proposed acquisition violates section 7 of this Act or section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, or an action is filed by the United States,

(f) Preliminary injunctions; hearings

If a proceeding is instituted or an action is filed by the Federal Trade Commission, alleging that a proposed acquisition violates section 18 of this title, or section 45 of this title, or an action is filed by the United States, alleging that a proposed acquisition violates such section 18 of this title, or section 1 or 2 of this title, and the Federal Trade Commission or the Assistant Attorney General (1) files a motion for a preliminary injunction against consummation of such acquisition pendente lite, and (2) certifies the United States district court for the judicial district within which the respondent resides or carries on business, or in which the action is brought, that it or he believes that the public interest requires relief pendente lite pursuant to this subsection, then upon the filing of such motion and certification, the chief judge of such district court shall immediately notify the chief judge of the United States court of appeals for the circuit in which such district court is located, who shall designate a United States district judge to whom such action shall be assigned for all purposes.

(As amended Nov. 8, 1984, Pub. L. 98-620, title IV, § 402(10)(A), 98 Stat. 3358.)

Civil penalty

(g) (1) Any person, or any officer, director, or partner thereof, who fails to comply with any provision of this section shall be liable to the United States for a civil penalty of not more than $10,000 for each day during which such person is in violation of this section. Such penalty may be recovered in a civil action brought by the United States.

Recovery

Compliance

(2) If any person, or any officer, director, partner, agent, or employee thereof, fails substantially to comply with the notification requirement under subsection (a) or any request for the submission of additional information or documentary material under subsection (e) (1) of this section within the waiting period specified in subsection (b) (1) and as may be extended under subsection (e) (2), the United States district court—

(A) may order compliance;

(B) shall extend the waiting period specified in subsection (b) (1) and as may have been extended under subsection (e) (2) until there has been substantial compliance, except that, in the case of a tender offer, the court may not extend such waiting period on the basis of a failure, by the person whose stock is sought to be acquired, to comply substantially with such notification requirement or any such request; and

(C) may grant such other equitable relief as the court in its discretion determines necessary or appropriate,

upon application of the Federal Trade Commission or the Assistant Attorney General.

Disclosure exemption.

(h) Any information or documentary material filed with the Assistant Attorney General or the Federal Trade Commission pursuant to this section shall be exempt from disclosure under section 552 of title 5, United States Code, and no such information or documentary material may be made public, except as may be relevant to any administrative or judicial action or proceeding. Nothing in this section is intended to prevent disclosure to either body of Congress or to any duly authorized committee or subcommittee of the Congress.

(i) (1) Any action taken by the Federal Trade Commission or the Assistant Attorney General or any failure of the Federal Trade Commission or the Assistant Attorney General to take any action under this section shall not bar any proceeding or any action with respect to such acquisition at any time under any other section of this Act or any other provision of law.

(2) Nothing contained in this section shall limit the authority of the Assistant Attorney General or the Federal Trade Commission to secure at any time from any person documentary material, oral testimony, or other information under the Antitrust Civil Process Act, the Federal Trade Commission Act, or any other provision of law.

Report to Congress.

(j) Beginning not later than January 1, 1978, the Federal Trade Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, shall annually report to the Congress on the operation of this section. Such report shall include an assessment of the effects of this section, of the effects, purpose, and need for any rules promulgated pursuant thereto, and any recommendations for revisions of this section.

THE PREMERGER NOTIFICATION RULES
AND
THE NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM

Premerger Notification Rules *

PART 800—TRANSITIONAL RULE

§ 800.1 Transitional rule.

(a) This rule is promulgated under the authority of subsection (d)(2)(C) of section 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, 15 U.S.C. sec. 18A, hereinafter referred to as "this section." References to specific subsections refer to subsections thereof.

(b) An acquisition shall be exempt from all requirements of this section if made on or after February 27, 1977, and before the effective date of the notification and report form and rules promulgated by the Federal Trade Commission under the authority of this section (hereinafter referred to as the "form" and "rules" respectively). Such date shall be identified in the FEDERAL REGISTER at least 30 days in advance.

(c)(1) An acquisition made on or after the effective date of the form and rules shall be exempt from the waiting period required by paragraph (a) of this section, except as provided by paragraph (c)(2) of this section, if:

(i) All persons required by this section and the rules to file notification with respect to such acquisition (or in the case of an acquisition described by § 801.30(a) of the rules, the acquiring person) file notification with both the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General, in the manner prescribed by the rules, on the effective date of the form and rules. Notification received by the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General prior to the effective date of the rules shall be deemed to be filed on the effective date of the form and rules.

(ii) Neither the Federal Trade Commission nor the Assistant Attorney General requests additional information or documentary material, pursuant to subsection (e) and the rules, from any person filing notification with respect to such acquisition, prior to the consummation of the acquisition, and

(iii) The acquisition is consummated no later than 30 (or, in the case of cash tender offers, as defined in the rules, 15) calendar days after the effective date of the form and rules.

(2) In the event of a request for additional information or documentary material, the waiting period normally deriving from such a request, pursuant to paragraph (e) of this section and the rules, shall take effect at the time of such request, and shall expire, or be terminated, or terminated, or extended thereafter in accordance with this section and the rules.

(d) All acquisitions otherwise subject to the requirements of this section, and not falling within paragraphs (b) or (c) of this section, shall be subject to the requirements of this section and the rules.

(e) In the case of an acquisition described by § 801.30 of this chapter and falling within paragraph (c) of this section, persons other than the acquiring person shall file such notification as is required by this section and the rules.

(Sec. 201(d)(2)(C), Pub. L. 94-435, 15 U.S.C. sec. 18A)

[43 FR 27517, June 26, 1978]

PART 801—COVERAGE RULES

Sec.
801.1 Definitions.
801.2 Acquiring and acquired persons.
801.3 Activities in or affecting commerce.
801.4 Secondary acquisitions.
801.10 Value of voting securities and assets to be acquired.
801.11 Annual net sales and total assets.
801.12 Calculating percentage of voting securities or assets.
801.13 Voting securities or assets to be held as a result of acquisition.
801.14 Aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets.
801.15 Aggregation of voting securities and assets the acquisition of which was exempt.

---

* This compilation of the rules was completed on August 20, 1987. After each rule, reference is made to the years in which the rule was first adopted or amended unless it remains as originally promulgated in 1978. The Federal Register notices and descriptive statements of basis and purpose are contained in other sections of this sourcebook. This compilation also refers the reader to other materials contained in this sourcebook that are relevant to these rules.

Sec.

801.20 Acquisitions subsequent to exceeding threshold.
801.21 Securities and cash not considered assets when acquired.
801.30 Tender offers and acquisitions of voting securities from third parties.
801.31 Acquisitions of voting securities by offerees in tender offers.
801.32 Conversion and acquisition.
801.33 Consummation of an acquisition by acceptance of tendered shares of payment.
801.40 Formation of joint venture or other corporations.
801.90 Transactions or devices for avoidance.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 7A(d), Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18A(d), as added by sec. 201, Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390.

SOURCE: 43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, unless otherwise noted.

§ 801.1 Definitions.

When used in the act and these rules—

(a)(1) *Person.* Except as provided in paragraphs (a) and (b) of § 801.12, the term "person" means an ultimate parent entity and all entities which it controls directly or indirectly.

Examples: 1. In the case of corporations, "person" encompasses the entire corporate structure, including all parent corporations, subsidiaries and divisions (whether consolidated or unconsolidated, and whether incorporated or unincorporated), and all related corporations under common control with any of the foregoing.

2. Corporations A and B are each directly controlled by the same foreign state. They are not included within the same "person," although the corporations are under common control, because the foreign state which controls them is not an "entity" (see § 801.1(a)(2)). Corporations A and B[*] are the ultimate parent entities within persons "A", and "B" which include any entities each may control.

3. Since a natural person is an entity (see § 801.1(a)(2)), a natural person and a corporation which he or she controls are part of the same "person." If that natural person controls two otherwise separate corporations, both corporations and the natural person are all part of the same "person."

4. See the example to § 801.2(a).

(2) *Entity.* The term "entity" means any natural person, corporation, company, partnership, joint venture, association, joint-stock company, trust, estate of a deceased natural person, foundation, fund, institution, society, union, or club, whether incorporated or not, wherever located and of whatever citizenship, or any receiver, trustee in bankruptcy or similar official or any liquidating agent for any of the foregoing, in his or her capacity as such; or any joint venture or other corporation which has not been formed but the acquisition of the voting securities or other interest in which, if already formed, would require notification under the act and these rules: *Provided, however,* That the term "entity" shall not include any foreign state, foreign government, or agency thereof (other than a corporation engaged in commerce), nor the United States, any of the States thereof, or any political subdivision or agency of either (other than a corporation engaged in commerce).

(3) *Ultimate parent entity.* The term "ultimate parent entity" means an entity which is not controlled by any other entity.

Examples: 1. If corporation A holds 100 percent of the stock of subsidiary B, and B holds 75 percent of the stock of its subsidiary C, corporation A is the ultimate parent entity, since it controls subsidiary B directly and subsidiary C indirectly, and since it is the entity within the person which is not controlled by any other entity.

2. If corporation A is controlled by natural person D, natural person D is the ultimate parent entity.

3. P and Q are the ultimate parent entities within persons "P" and "Q." If P and Q each own 50 percent of the voting securities of R, then P and Q are both ultimate parents of R, and R is part of both persons "P" and "Q."

(b) *Control.* The term "control" (as used in the terms "control(s)," "controlling," "controlled by" and "under common control with") means:

(1) *Either.* (i) Holding 50 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer or

---

[*] Throughout the examples to the rules, persons are designated ("A", "B," etc.) with quotation marks, and entities are designated (A, B, etc.) without quotation marks.

(ii) In the case of an entity that has no outstanding voting securities, having the right to 50 percent or more of the profits of the entity, or having the right in the event of dissolution to 50 percent or more of the assets of the entity; or

(2) Having the contractual power presently to designate 50 percent or more of the directors of a corporation, or in the case of unincorporated entities, of individuals exercising similar functions.

Examples 1. Corporation A holds 100 percent of the stock of corporation B, 75 percent of the stock of corporation C, 50 percent of the stock of corporation D, and 30 percent of the stock of corporation E. Corporation A controls corporations B, C and D, but not corporation E. Corporation A is the ultimate parent entity of a person comprised of corporations A, B, C and D, and each of these corporations (but not corporation E) is "included within the person."

2. A statutory limited partnership agreement provides as follows: The general partner "A" is entitled to 50 percent of the partnership profits, "B" is entitled to 40 percent of the profits and "C" is entitled to 10 percent of the profits. Upon dissolution, "B" is entitled to 75 percent of the partnership assets and "C" is entitled to 25 percent of those assets. All limited and general partners are entitled to vote on the following matters: the dissolution of the partnership, the transfer of assets not in the ordinary course of business, any change in the nature of the business, and the removal of the general partner. The interest of each partner is evidenced by an ownership certificate that is transferable under the terms of the partnership agreement and is subject to the Securities Act of 1933. For purposes of these rules, control of this partnership is determined by subparagraph (1)(ii) of this paragraph. Although partnership interests may be securities and have some voting rights attached to them, they do not entitle the owner of that interest to vote for a corporate "director" or "an individual exercising similar functions" as required by § 801.1(f)(1) below. Thus control of a partnership is not determined on the basis of either subparagraph (1)(i) or (2) of this paragraph. Consequently, "A" is deemed to control the partnership because of its right to 50 percent of the partnership's profits. "B" is also deemed to control the partnership because it is entitled to 75 percent of the partnership's assets upon dissolution.

3. "A" is a nonprofit charitable foundation that has formed a partnership joint venture with "B," a nonprofit university, to establish C, a nonprofit hospital corporation that does not issue voting securities. Pursuant to its charter all surplus revenue from the hospital in excess of expenses and necessary capital investments is to be disbursed evenly to "A" and "B." In the event of dissolution of the hospital corporation, the assets of the hospital are to be contributed to a local charitable medical facility then in need of financial assistance. Notwithstanding the hospital's designation of its disbursement funds as surplus rather than profits to maintain its charitable image, "A" and "B" would each be deemed to control C, pursuant to § 801.1(b)(1)(ii), because each is entitled to 50 percent of the excess of the hospital's revenues over expenditures.

4. "A" is entitled to 50 percent of the profits of partnership B and 50 percent of the profits of partnership C. B and C form a partnership E with "D" in which each entity has a right to one-third of the profits. When E acquires company X, "A" must report the transaction (assuming it is otherwise reportable). Pursuant to § 801.1(b)(1)(ii), E is deemed to be controlled by "A," even though "A" ultimately will receive only one-third of the profits of E. Because B and C are considered as part of "A," the rules attribute all profits to which B and C are entitled (two-thirds of the profits of E in this example) to "A."

(c) ***Hold.*** (1) Subject to the provisions of paragraphs (c)(2) through (8) of this section, the term "hold" (as used in the terms "hold(s)," "holding," "holder" and "held") means beneficial ownership, whether direct, or indirect through fiduciaries, agents, controlled entities or other means.

Example. If a stockbroker has stock in "street name" for the account of a natural person, only the natural person (who has beneficial ownership) and not the stockbroker (which may have record title) "holds" that stock.

(2) The holdings of spouses and their minor children shall be holdings of each of them.

(3) Except for a common trust fund or collective investment fund within the meaning of 12 CFR 9.18(a) (both of which are hereafter referred to in this paragraph as "collective investment funds"), and any revocable trust or an irrevocable trust in which the settlor retains a reversionary interest in the corpus, a trust, including a pension trust, shall hold all assets and voting securities constituting the corpus of the trust.

Example. Under this paragraph the trust—and not the trustee—"holds" the voting securities and assets constituting the corpus of any irrevocable trust (in which the settlor retains no reversionary interest, and which is not a collective investment fund). Therefore, the trustee need not aggregate its holdings of any other assets or voting securities with the holdings of the trust for purposes of determining whether the requirements of the act apply to an acquisition by the trust. Similarly, the trustee, if making an acquisition for its own account, need not aggregate its holdings with those of any trusts for which it serves as trustee. (However, the trustee must aggregate any collective investment funds which it administers: see paragraph (c)(6) of this section.)

(4) The assets and voting securities constituting the corpus of a revocable trust or the corpus of an irrevocable trust in which the settlor(s) retain(s) a reversionary interest in the corpus shall be holdings of the settlor(s) of such trust.

(5) Except as provided in paragraph (c)(4) of this section, beneficiaries of a trust, including a pension trust or a collective investment fund, shall not hold any assets or voting securities constituting the corpus of such trust.

(6) A bank or trust company which administers one or more collective investment funds shall hold all assets and voting securities constituting the corpus of each such fund.

Example: Suppose A, a bank or trust company, administers collective investment funds W, X, Y and Z. Whenever person "A" is to make an acquisition, whether of not on behalf of one or more of the funds, it must aggregate the holdings of W, X, Y and Z in determining whether the requirements of the act apply to the acquisition.

(7) An insurance company shall hold all assets and voting securities held for the benefit of any general account of, or any separate account administered by, such company.

(8) A person holds all assets and voting securities held by the entities included within it; in addition to its own holding, an entity holds all assets and voting securities held by the entities which it controls directly or indirectly.

(d) *Affiliate.* An entity is an affiliate of a person if it is controlled, directly or indirectly, by the ultimate parent entity of such person.

(e)(1)(i) *United States person.* The term "United States person" means a person the ultimate parent entity of which—

(A) Is incorporated in the United States, is organized under the laws of the United States or has its principal offices within the United States, or

(B) If a natural person, either is a citizen of the United States or resides in the United States.

(ii) *United States issuer.* The term "United States issuer" means an issuer which is incorporated in the United States, is organized under the laws of the United States or has its principal offices within the United States.

(2)(i) *Foreign person.* The term "foreign person" means a person the ultimate parent entity of which—

(A) Is not incorporated in the United States, is not organized under the laws of the United States and does not have its principal offices within the United States; or

(B) If a natural person, neither is a citizen of the United States nor resides in the United States.

(ii) *Foreign issuer.* The term "foreign issuer" means an issuer which is not incorporated in the United States, is not organized under the laws of the United States and does not have its principal offices within the United States.

(f)(1) *Voting securities.* The term "voting securities" means any securities which at present or upon conversion entitle the owner or holder thereof to vote for the election of directors of the issuer, or of an entity included within the same person as the issuer, or, with respect to unincorporated entities, individuals exercising similar functions.

Also refer to:
Formal Interpretation,
June 2, 1981.

(2) *Convertible voting security.* The term "convertible voting security" means a voting security which presently does not entitle its owner or holder to vote for directors of any entity.

(3) *Conversion.* The term "conversion" means the exercise of a right inherent in the ownership or holding of particular voting securities to exchange such securities for securities which presently entitle the owner or holder to vote for directors of the issuer or of any entity included within the same person as the issuer.

Examples: 1. The acquisition of convertible debentures which are convertible into common stock is an acquisition of "voting securities." However, § 802.31 exempts the acquisition of such securities from the requirements of the act, provided that they have no present voting rights.

* 2. Options and warrants are also "voting securities" for purposes of the act, because they can be exchanged for securities with present voting rights. Section 802.31 exempts the acquisition of options and warrants as well, since they do not themselves have present voting rights and hence are convertible voting securities. Notification may be required prior to exercising options and warrants, however.

3. Assume that X has issued preferred shares which presently entitle the holder to vote for directors of X, and that these shares are convertible into common shares of X. Because the preferred shares confer a present right to vote for dirctors of X, they are "voting securities." (See § 801.1(f)(1).) They are not "convertible voting securities," however, because the definition of that term excludes securities which confer a present right to vote for directors of any entity. (See § 801.1(f)(2).) Thus, an acquisition of these preferred shares issued by X would not be exempt as an acquisition of "convertible voting securities." (See § 802.31.) If the criteria in § 7A(a) are met, an acquisition of X's preferred shares would be subject to the reporting and waiting period requirements of the Act. Moreover, the conversion of these preferred shares into common shares of X would also be potentially reportable, since the holder would be exercising a right to exchange particular voting securities for different voting securities having a present right to vote for directors of the issuer. Because this exchange would be a "conversion," § 801.30 would apply. (See § 801.30(a)(6).)

(g)(1) *Tender offer.* The term "tender offer" means any offer to purchase voting securities which is a tender offer within the meaning of section 14 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, 15 U.S.C. 78n.

(2) *Cash tender offer.* The term "cash tender offer" means a tender offer in which cash is the only consideration offered to the holders of the voting securities to be acquired.

(3) *Non-cash tender offer.* The term "non-cash tender offer" means any tender offer which is not a cash tender offer.

(h) *Notification threshold.* The term "notification threshold" means:

(1) Fifteen percent of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer, or an aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets of the acquired person valued in excess of $15 million;

(2) Fifteen percent of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer, if valued in excess of $15 million;

(3) Twenty-five percent of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer; or

(4) Fifty percent of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer.

(i)(1) *Solely for the purpose of investment.* Voting securities are held or acquired "solely for the purpose of investment" if the person holding or acquiring such voting securities has no intention of participating in the formulation, determination, or direction of the basic business decisions of the issuer.

---

* Also refer to FTC News Release, "FTC Bureau Director Warns of Premerger Act Violations," December 23, 1986. A copy of the Release is located in Section V. of the Sourcebook.

Example: If a person holds stock "solely for the purpose of investment" and thereafter decides to influence or participate in management of the issuer of that stock, the stock in no longer held "solely for the purpose of investment."

Also refer to:
(1) Formal Interpretation,
January 17, 1979.
(2) Letter to
O'Connor & Associates,
August 19, 1982.

(2) *Investment assets*. The term "investment assets" means cash, deposits in financial institutions, other money market instruments, and instruments evidencing government obligations.

(j) *Engaged in manufacturing*. A person is "engaged in manufacturing" if it produces and derives annual sales or revenues in excess of $1 million from products within industries 2000-3999 as coded in the Standard Industrial Classification Manual (1972 edition) published by the Executive Office of the President, Office of Management and Budget.

(k) *United States*. The term "United States" shall include the several States, the territories, possessions, and commonwealths of the United States, and the District of Columbia.

(l) *Commerce*. The term "commerce" shall have the meaning ascribed to that term in section 1 of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 12, or section 4 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 44.

(m) *The act*. References to "the act" refer to section 7A of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18A, as added by section 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390. References to " section 7A()" refer to subsections thereof. References to "this section" refer to the section of these rules in which the term appears.

1978 Rule Amended 1983 and
May 29, 1987.

§ 801.2 Acquiring and acquired persons.

(a) Any person which, as a result of an acquisition, will hold voting securities or assets, either directly or indirectly, or through fiduciaries, agents, or other entities acting on behalf of such person, is an acquiring person.

Example: Assume that corporations A and B, which are each ultimate parent entities of their respective "persons," created a joint venture, corporation V, and that each holds half of V's shares. Therefore, A and B each control V (see § 801.1(b)), and V is included within two persons, "A" and "B." Under this section, if V is to acquire corporation X, both "A" and "B" are acquiring persons.

(b) Except as provided in paragraphs (a) and (b) of § 801.12, the person(s) within which the entity whose assets or voting securities are being acquired is included, is an acquired person.

Examples: 1. Assume that person "Q" will acquire voting securities of corporation X held by "P" and that X is not included within person "P." Under this section, the acquired person is the person within which X is included, and is not "P."

2. In the example to paragraph (a) of this section, if V were to be acquired by X, then both "A" and "B" would be acquired persons.

(c) For purposes of the act and these rules, a person may be an acquiring person and an acquired person with respect to separate acquisitions which comprise a single transaction.

(d)(1)(i) Mergers and consolidations are transactions subject to the act and shall be treated as acquisitions of voting securities.

(ii) In a merger, the person which, after consummation, will include the corporation in existence prior to consummation which is designated as the surviving corporation in the plan, agreement, or certificate of merger required to be filed with state authorities to effectuate the transaction shall be deemed to have made an acquisition of voting securities.

(2)(i) Any person party to a merger or consolidation is an acquiring person if, as a result of the transaction, such person will hold any assets or voting securities which it did not hold prior to the transaction.

(ii) Any person party to a merger or consolidation is an acquired person if, as a result of the transaction, the assets or voting securities of any entity included within such person will be held by any other person.

(iii) All persons party to a transaction as a result of which all parties will lose their separate pre-acquisition identities shall be both acquiring and acquired persons.

Examples: 1. Corporation A (the ultimate parent entity included within person "A") proposes to acquire Y, a wholly-owned subsidiary of B (the ultimate parent entity included within person "B"). The transaction is to be carried out by merging Y into X, a wholly-owned subsidiary of A, with X surviving, and by distributing the assets of X to B, the only shareholder of Y. The assets of X consist solely of cash and the voting securities of C, an entity unrelated to "A" or "B". Since X is designated the surviving corporation in the plan or agreement of merger or consolidation and since X will be included in "A" after consummation of the transaction, "A" will be deemed to have made an acquisition of voting securities. In this acquisition, "A" is an acquiring person because it will hold assets or voting securities it did not hold prior to the transaction, and "B" is an acquired person because the assets or the voting securities of an entity previously included within it will be held by A as a result of the acquisition. B will hold the cash and voting securities of C as a result of the transaction, but since § 801.21 applies, this acquisition is not reportable. "A" is therefore an acquiring person only, and "B" is an acquired person only. "B" may, however, have a separate reporting obligation as an acquiring person in a separate transaction involving the voting securities of C.

2. In the above example, suppose the consideration for Y consists of $8 million worth of the voting securities of A, constituting less than 15% of A's outstanding voting securities. With regard to the transfer of this consideration, "B" is an acquiring person because it will hold voting securities it did not previously hold, and "A" is an acquired person because its voting securities will be held by B. Since these voting securities are worth less than $15 million and constitute less than 15% of the outstanding voting securities of A, however, the acquisition of these securities is not reportable. "A" will therefore report as an acquiring person only and "B" as an acquired person only.

3. In the above example, suppose the consideration for Y is 50% of the voting securities of Z, a wholly-owned subsidiary of A which, together with all entities it controls, has annual net sales and total assets of less then $25 million. Suppose also that the value of these securities is less than $15 million. Since the acquisition of the voting securities of Z is exempt under the minimum dollar value exemption in § 802.20, "A" will report in this transaction as an acquiring person only and "B" as an acquired person only.

4. In the above example, suppose that, as consideration for Y, A transfers to B a manufacturing plant valued at $16 million. "B" is thus an acquiring person and "A" an acquired person in a reportable acquisition of assets. "A" and "B" will each report as both an acquiring and an acquired person in this transaction because each occupies each role in a reportable acquisition.

5. Corporations A (the ultimate parent entity in person "A") and B (the ultimate parent entity in person "B") propose to consolidate into C, a newly formed corporation. All shareholders of A and B will receive shares of C, and both A and B will lose their separate pre-acquisition identities. "A" and "B" are both acquiring and acquired persons because they are parties to a transaction in which all parties lose their separate pre-acquisition identities.

(e) Whenever voting securities or assets are to be acquired from an acquiring person in connection with an acquisition, the acquisition of voting securities or assets shall be separately subject to the act.

1978 Rule Amended 1983

§ 801.3 Activities in or affecting commerce.

Section 7A(a)(1) is satisfied if any entity included within the acquiring person, or any entity included within the acquired person, is engaged in commerce or in any activity affecting commerce.

Examples: 1. A foreign subsidiary of a U.S. corporation seeks to acquire a foreign business. The acquiring person includes the U.S. parent corporation. If the U.S. corporation, or the foreign subsidiary, or any entity controlled by either one of them, is engaged in commerce or in any activity affecting commerce, section 7A(a)(1) is satisfied. Note, however, that §§ 802.50-802.52 may exempt certain acquisitions of foreign businesses or assets.

2. Even if none of the entities within the acquiring person is engaged in commerce or in any activity affecting commerce, the acquisition nevertheless satisfies section 7A(a)(1) if any entity included within the acquired person is so engaged.

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978; 43 FR 36054, Aug. 15, 1978]

§ 801.4 Secondary acquisitions.

(a) Whenever as a result of an acquisition (the "primary acquisition") an acquiring person will obtain control of an issuer which holds voting securities of another issuer which it does not control, then the acquisition of the other issuer's voting securities is a secondary acquisition and is separately subject to the act and these rules.

(b) *Exemptions.* (1) No secondary acquisition shall be exempt from the requirements of the act solely because the related primary acquisition is exempt from the requirements of the act.

(2) A secondary acquisition may itself be exempt from the requirements of the act under section 7A(c) or these rules.

Examples: 1. Assume that acquiring person "A" proposes to acquire all the voting securities of corporation B. This section provides that the acquisition of voting securities of issuers held but not controlled by B or by any entity which B controls are secondary acquisitions by "A." Thus, if B holds more than $15 million of the voting securities of corporation X (but does not control X), and "A" and "X" satisfy sections 7A (a)(1) and (a)(2), "A" must file notification separately with respect to its secondary acquisition of voting securities of X. "X" must file notification within fifteen days **(or in the case of a cash tender offer, 10 days) after "A" files, pursuant to § 801.30.**

2. If in the previous example "A" acquires only 50 percent of the voting securities of B, the result would remain the same. Since "A" would be acquiring control of B, all of B's holdings in X would be attributable to "A."

3. In the previous examples, if "A's" acquisition of the voting securities of B is exempt, "A" may still be required to file notification with respect to its secondary acquisition of the voting securities of X, unless that acquisition is itself exempt.

4. In the previous examples, assume A's acquisition of B is accomplished by merging B into A's subsidiary, S, and S is designated the surviving corporation. B's voting securities are cancelled, and B's shareholders are to receive cash in return. Since S is designated the surviving corporation and A will control S and also hold assets or voting securities it did not hold previously, "A" is an acquiring person in an acquisition of voting securities by virtue of §§ 801.2 (d)(1)(ii) and (d)(2)(i). A will be deemed to have acquired control of B, and A's resulting acquisition of the voting securities of X is a secondary acquisition. Since cash, the only consideration paid for the voting securities of B, is not considered an asset of the person from which it is acquired, by virtue of § 801.2(d)(2) "A" is an acquiring person only. The acquisition of the minority holding of B in X is therefore a secondary acquisition by "A," but since "B" is an acquired person only, "B" is not deemed to make any secondary acquisition in this transaction.

5. In example 4 above, suppose the consideration paid by A for the acquisition of B is $20 million worth of the voting securities of A. By virtue of § 801.2(d)(2), "A" and "B" are each both acquiring and acquired persons. A will still be deemed to have acquired control of B, and therefore the resulting acquisition of the voting securities of X is a secondary acquisition. Although "B" is now also an acquiring person, unless B gains control of A in the transaction, B still makes no secondary acquisitions of stock held by A. If the consideration paid by A is the voting securities of one of A's subsidiaries and B thereby gains control of that subsidiary, B will make secondary acquisitions of any minority holdings of that subsidiary.

6. Assume that A and B propose through consolidation to create a new corporation, C, and that both A and B will lose their corporate identities as a result. Since no participating corporation in existence prior to consummation is the designated surviving corporation, "A" and "B" are each both acquiring and acquired persons by virtue of § 801.2(d)(2)(iii). The acquisition of the minority holdings of entities within each are therefore potential secondary acquisitions by the other.

(c) Where the primary acquisition is—

(1) A cash tender offer, the waiting period procedures established for cash tender offers pursuant to sections 7A(a) and 7A(e) of the act shall be applicable to both the primary acquisition and the secondary acquisition; (2) a non-cash tender offer, the waiting period procedures established for tender offers pursuant to section 7A(e)(2) of the act shall be applicable to both the primary acquisition and the secondary acquisition.

1978 Rule Amended 1983 and
March 6, 1987.

§ 801.10 Value of voting securities and assets to be acquired.

Except as provided in § 801.13, the value of voting securities and assets to be acquired shall be determined as follows:

(a) *Voting securities.* (1) If the security is traded on a national securities exchange or is authorized to be quoted in an interdealer quotation system of a national securities association registered with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission—

(i) And the acquisition price has been determined, the value shall be the market price or the acquisition price, whichever is greater; or if

(ii) The acquisition price has not been determined, the value shall be the market price.

(2) If paragraph (a)(1) of this section is inapplicable—

(i) But the acquisition price has been determined, the value shall be the acquisition price; or if

(ii) The acquisition price has not been determined, the value shall be the fair market value.

(b) *Assets.* The value of assets to be acquired shall be the fair market value of the assets, or, if determined and greater than the fair market value, the acquisition price.

(c) For purposes of this section and § 801.13(a)(2):

(1) *Market price.* (i) For acquisitions subject to § 801.30, the market price shall be the lowest closing quotation, or, in an interdealer quotation system, the lowest closing bid price, within the 45 calendar days prior to the receipt of the notice required by § 803.5(a) or prior to the consummation of the acquisition.

(ii) For acquisitions not subject to § 801.30, the market price shall be the lowest closing quotation, or, in an interdealer quotation system, the lowest closing bid price, within the 45 or fewer calendar days which are prior to the consummation of the acquisition but not earlier than the day prior to the execution of the contract, agreement in principle or letter of intent to merge or acquire.

(iii) When the security was not traded within the period specified by this paragraph, the last closing quotation or closing bid price preceding such period shall be used. If such closing quotations are available in more than one market, the person filing notification may select any such quotation.

(2) *Acquisition price.* The acquisition price shall include the value of all consideration for such voting securities or assets to be acquired.

(3) *Fair market value.* The fair market value shall be determinded in good faith by the board of directors of the ultimate parent entity included within the acquiring person, or, if unincorporated, by officials exercising similar functions; or by an entity delegated that function by such board or officials. Such determination must be made as of any day within 60 calendar days prior to the filing of the notification required by the act, or, if such notification has not been filed, within 60 calendar days prior to the consummation of the acquisition.

Example: Corporation A, the ultimate parent entity in person "A," contracts to acquire assets of corporation B, and the contract provides that the acquisition price is not to be determined until after the acquisition is effected. Under paragraph (b) of this section, for purposes of the act the value of the assets is to be the fair market value of the assets. Under paragraph (c)(3), the board of directors of corporation A must in good faith determine the fair market value. That determination will control for 60 days whether "A" and "B" must observe the requirements of the act; that is, "A" and "B" must either file notification or consummate the acquisition within that time. If "A" and "B" neither file nor consummate within 60 days, the parties would no longer be entitled to rely on the determination of fair market value, and, if in doubt about whether required to observe the requirements of the act, would have to make a second determination of fair market value. Note that since item 2(d)(i) of the Notification and Report Form only requests the approximate dollar value of assets, a second formal determination of the fair market value would not be necessary for that purpose.

§ 801.11 Annual net sales and total assets.

(a) The annual net sales and total assets of a person shall include all net sales and all assets held, whether foreign or domestic, except as provided in paragraphs (d) and (e) of this section.

(b) Except for the total assets of a joint venture or other corporation at the time of its formation which shall be determined pursuant to § 801.40(c), the annual net sales and total assets of a person shall be as stated on the financial statements specified in paragraph (c) of this section: *Provided:*

(1) That the annual net sales and total assets of each entity included within such person are consolidated therein. If the annual net sales and total assets of any entity included within the person are not consolidated in such statements, the annual net sales and total assets of the person filing notification shall be recomputed

to include the nonduplicative annual net sales and nonduplicative total assets of each such entity; and

(2) That such statements, and any restatements pursuant to paragraph (b)(1) of this section (insofar as possible), have been prepared in accordance with the accounting principles normally used by such person, and are of a date not more than 15 months prior to the date of filing of the notification required by the act, or the date of consummation of the acquisition.

Example: Person "A" is composed of entity A, subsidiaries B1 and B2 which A controls, subsidiaries C1 and C2 which B1 controls, and subsidiary C3 which B2 controls. Suppose that A's most recent financial statement consolidates the annual net sales and total assets of B1, C1, and C2, but not B2 or C3. In order to determine whether person "A" meets the criteria of section 7A(a)(2), as either an acquiring or an acquired person, A must recompute its annual net sales and total assets to reflect consolidation of the nonduplicative annual net sales and nonduplicative total assets of B2 and C3.

(c) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (b) of this section:

(1) The annual net sales of a person shall be as stated on the last regularly prepared annual statement of income and expense of that person; and

(2) The total assets of a person shall be as stated on the last regularly prepared balance sheet of that person.

Example: Suppose "A" sells assets to "B" on January 1. "A's" next regularly prepared balance sheet, dated February 1, reflects that sale. On March 1, "A" proposes to sell more assets to "B." "A's" total assets on March 1 are "A's" total assets as stated on its February 1 balance sheet.

(d) No assets of any natural person or of any estate of a deceased natural person, other than investment assets, voting securities and other income-producing property, shall be included in determining the total assets of a person.

(e) Subject to the limitations of paragraph (d) of this section, the total assets of:

(1) An acquiring person that does not have the regularly prepared balance sheet described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section shall be, for acquisitions of each acquired person:

(i) All assets held by the acquiring person at the time of the acquisition,

(ii) Less all cash that will be used by the acquiring person as consideration in an acquisition of assets from, or in an acquisition of voting securities issued by, that acquired person (or an entity within that acquired person) and less all cash that will be used for expenses incidental to the acquisition, and less all securities of the acquired person (or an entity within that acquired person); and

(2) An acquired person that does not have the regularly prepared balance sheet described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section shall be either

(i) All assets held by the acquired person at the time of the acquisition, or

(ii) Where applicable, its assets as determined in accordance with § 801.40(c).

Examples: For examples 1–4, assume that A is a newly-formed company which is not controlled by any other entity. Assume also that A has no sales and does not have the balance sheet described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section.

1. A will borrow $105 million in cash and will purchase assets from B for $100 million. In order to establish whether A's acquisition of B's assets is reportable, A's total assets are determined by subtracting the $100 million that it will use to acquire B's assets from the $105 million that A will have at the time of the acquisition. Therefore, A has total assets of $5 million and does not meet the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2).

2. Assume that A will acquire assets from B and that, at the time it acquires B's assets, A will have $85 million in cash and a factory valued at $20 million. A will exchange the factory and $80 million cash for B's assets. To determine A's total assets, A should subtract from the $85 million cash the $80 million that will be used to acquire assets from B and add the remainder to the value of the factory. Thus, A has total assets of $25 million. Even though A will use the factory as part of the consideration for the acquisition, the value of the factory must still be included in A's total assets.

Note that A and B may also have to report the acquisition by B of A's non-cash assets (i.e., the factory). For that acquisition, the value of the cash A will use to buy B's assets is not excluded from A's total assets. Thus, in the acquisition by B, A's total assets are $105 million.

3. Assume that company A will make a $200 million acquisition and that it must pay a loan origination fee of $5 million. A borrows $211 million. A does not meet the size-of-person test in section 7A(a)(2) because its total assets are less than $10 million. $200 million is excluded because it will be consideration for the acquisition and $5 million is excluded because it is an expense incidental to the acquisition. Therefore, A is only a $6 million person.

4. Assume that A borrows $150 million to acquire $100 million of assets from person B and $45 million of voting securities of person C. To determine its size for purposes of its acquisition from person B, A subtracts the $100 million that it will use for that acquisition. Therefore, A has total assets of $50 million for purposes of its acquisition from B. To determine its size with respect to its acquisition from person C, A subtracts the $45 million that will be paid for C's voting securities. Thus, for purposes of its acquisition from C, A has total assets of $105 million. In the first acquisition A meets the $10 million size-of-person test and in the second acquisition A meets the $100 million size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2).

1978 Rule Amended 1983 and March 6, 1987.

§ 801.12 Calculating percentage of voting securities or assets.

(a) *Voting securities.* Whenever the act or these rules require calculation of the percentage of voting securities to be held or acquired, the issuer whose voting securities are being acquired shall be deemed the "acquired persons."

Example: Person "A" is composed of corporation A1 and subsidiary A2, person "B" is composed of corporation B1 and subsidiary B2. Assume that A2 proposes to sell assets to B1 in exchange for common stock of B2. Under this paragraph, for purposes of calculating the percentage of voting securities to be held, the "acquired person" is B2. For all other purposes, the acquired person is "B." (For all purposes, the "acquiring persons" are "A" and "B.")

(b) *Percentage of voting securities.* (1) Whenever the act or these rules require calculation of the percentage of voting securities of an issuer to be held or acquired, the percentage shall be the sum of the separate ratios for each class of voting securities, expressed as a percentage. The ratio for each class of voting securities equals:

(i)(A) The number of votes for directors of the issuer which the holder of a class of voting securities is presently entitled to cast, and as a result of the acquisition, will become entitled to cast, divided by,

(B) The total number of votes for directors of the issuer which presently may be cast by that class, and which will be entitled to be cast by that class after the acquisition, multiplied by,

(ii)(A) The number of directors that class is entitled to elect, divided by (B) the total number of directors.

Examples. In each of the following examples company X has two classes of voting securities, class A, consisting of 1000 shares with each share having one vote, and class B, consisting of 100 shares with each share having one vote. The class A shares elect four of the ten directors and the class B shares elect six of the ten directors.

In this situation, § 801.12(b) requires calculations of the percentage of voting securities held to be made according to the following formula:

Number of votes of class A held divided by
Total votes of class A times Directors elected by class A stock divided by Total number of directors

Plus

Number of votes of class B held divided by
Total votes of class B times Directors elected by class B stock divided by Total number of directors

1. Assume that company Y holds all 100 shares of class B stock and no shares of class A stock. By virtue of its class B holdings, Y has all 100 of the votes which may be cast by class B stock and can elect six of company X's ten directors. Applying the formula which results from the rule, Y calculates that it holds 100/100 x 6/10 or 60 percent of the voting securities of company X because of its holdings of class B stock and no additional percentage derived from holdings of class A stock. Consequently, Y holds a total of 60 percent of the voting securities of company X.

2. Assume that company Y holds 500 shares of class A stock and no shares of class B stock. By virtue of its class A holdings, Y has 500 of the 1000 votes which may be cast by class A to elect four of company X's ten directors. Applying the formula, Y calculates that it holds 500/1000 x 4/10 or 20 percent of the voting securities of company X from its

holdings of class A stock and no additional percentage derived from holdings of class B stock. Consequently, Y holds a total of 20 percent of the voting securities of company X.

3. Assume that company Y holds 500 shares of class A stock and 60 shares of class B stock. Y calculates that it holds 20 percent of the voting securities of company X because of its holdings of class A stock (see example 2). Additionally, as a result of its class B holdings Y has 60 of the 100 votes which may be cast by class B stock to elect six of company X's ten directors. Applying the formula, Y calculates that it holds 60/100 x 6/10 or 36 percent of the voting securities of company X because of its holdings of class B stock. Since the formula requires that a person that holds different classes of voting securities of the same issuer add together the seperate percentages calculated for each class, Y holds a total of 56 percent (20 percent plus 36 percent) of the voting securities of company X.

(c) *Assets.* Any person whose assets are being acquired shall be deemed an "acquired person" in calculating the percentage of assets to be held or acquired for purposes of section 7A(a)(3)(A).

Example: In the example to paragraph (a), for purposes of calculating the percentage of assets to be held, the "acquired person" is "A."

(d) *Percentage of assets.* Whenever the act or these rules require calculation of the percentage of assets of a person to be held or acquired, the percentage shall be the ratio, expressed as a percentage, which—

(1) The book value (on the books of the acquired person) of the assets to be acquired (see § 801.13(b)(1)), bears to

(2) The total assets of the acquired person, determined in accordance with § 801.11.

Example: In the example to paragraph (a), the percentage of assets to be acquired by "B" is determined by dividing the book value of A2's assets being acquired, by the total assets of "A," determined in accordance with § 801.11.

1978 Rule Amended
March 6, 1987.

§ 801.13 Voting securities or assets to be held as a result of acquisition.

(a) *Voting securities.* (1) Subject to the provisions of § 801.15, and paragraph (a)(3) of this section, all voting securities of the issuer which will be held by the acquiring person after the consummation of an acquisition shall be deemed voting securities held as a result of the acquisition. The value of such voting securities shall be the sum of the value of the voting securities to be acquired, determined in accordance with § 801.10(a), and the value of the voting securities held by the acquiring person prior to the acquisition, determined in accordance with paragraph (a)(2) of this section.

(2) The value of voting securities of an issuer held prior to an acquisition shall be—

(i) If the security is traded on a national securities exchange or is authorized to be quoted in an interdealer quotation system of a national securities association registered with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, the market price calculated in accordance with § 801.10(c)(1); or

(ii) If paragraph (a)(2)(i) of this section is not applicable, the fair market value determined in accordance with § 801.10(c)(3).

Examples: 1. Assume that acquiring person "A" holds $19 million of the voting securities of X, and is to acquire another $1 million of the same voting securities. Since under paragraph (a) of this rule all voting securities "A" will hold after the acquisition are held "as a result of" the acquisition, "A" will hold $20 million of the voting securities of X as a result of the acquisition. "A" must therefore observe the requirements of the act before making the acquisition, unless the present acquisition is exempt under § 7A(c), § 802.21 or any other rule.

2. See § 801.15 and the examples to that rule.

3. See § 801.20 and the examples to that rule.

4. On January 1, Company A acquired $30 million of voting securities of Company B. "A" and "B" filed notification and observed the waiting period for that acquisition.

Company A plans to acquire $1 million of assets from company B on May 1 of the same year. Under § 801.13(a)(3), "A" and "B" do not aggregate the value of the earlier acquired voting securities to determine whether the acquisition is subject to the act. Therefore, the value of the acquisition is $1 million and it is not reportable.

(3) Voting securities held by the acquiring person prior to an acquisition shall not be deemed voting securities held as a result of that subsequent acquisition if:

(i) The acquiring person is, in the subsequent acquisition, acquiring only assets; and

(ii) The acquisition of the previously acquired voting securities was subject to the filing and waiting requirements of the act (and such requirements were observed) or was exempt pursuant to § 802.21.

(b) *Assets.* (1) All assets to be acquired from the acquired person shall be assets held as a result of the acquisition. The value of such assets shall be determined in accordance with § 801.10(b).

(2)(i) If the acquiring person has signed a letter of intent or entered into a contract or agreement in principle to acquire assets from the acquired person, and

(ii) Subject to the provisions of § 801.15, if the acquiring person has acquired from the acquired person within the 180 calendar days preceding the signing of such agreement any assets which are presently held by the acquiring person, and the acquisition of which was not previously subject to the requirements of the act or the acquisition of which was subject to the requirements of the act but they were not observed, then only for purposes of section 7A(a)(3)(B) and § 801.1(h)(1), both the acquiring and the acquired persons shall treat such assets as though they had not previously been acquired and are being acquired as part of the present acquisition. The value of any assets previously acquired which are subject to this subparagraph shall be determined in accordance with § 801.10(b) as of the time of their prior acquisition.

Example. Acquiring person "A" proposes to make two acquisitions of assets from acquired person "B," 90 days apart, and wishes to determine whether notification is necessary prior to the second acquisition. For purposes of the percentage test of § 7A(a)(3)(A), "A" would hold only the assets it acquired in the second acquisition. For purposes of the $15 million test of § 7A(a)(3)(B), however, "A" must aggregate both of its acquisitions and must value each as of the time of its occurrence.

1978 Rule Amended
March 6, 1987.

§ 801.14 Aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets.

For purposes of section 7A(a)(3)(B) and § 801.1(h)(1), the aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets shall be the sum of:

(a) The value of all voting securities of the acquired person which the acquiring person would hold as a result of the acquisition, determined in accordance with § 801.13(a); and

(b) The value of all assets of the acquired person which the acquiring person would hold as a result of the acquisition, determined in accordance with § 801.13(b).

Examples: 1. Acquiring person "A" previously acquired $6 million of the voting securities (not convertible voting securities) of corporation X. "A" now intends to acquire $8 million of X's assets. Under paragraph (a) of this section, "A" looks to § 801.13(a) and determines that the voting securities are to be held "as a reult of" the acquisition. Section 801.13(a) also provides that "A" must determine the present value of the previously acquired securities. Under paragraph (b) of this section, "A" looks to § 801.13(b)(1) and determines that the assets to be acquired will be held "as a result of" the acquisition, and are valued under § 801.10(b) at $8 million. Therefore, if the voting securities have a present value of more than $7 million, the asset acquisition is subject to the requirements of the act since, as a result of it, "A" would hold an aggregate total amount of the voting securities and assets of "X" in excess of $15 million.

2. In the previous example, assume that the assets acquisition occurred first, and that the acquisition of the voting securities is to occur within 180 days of the first acquisition. "A" now looks to § 801.13(b)(2) and determines that because the second acquisition is of voting securities and not assets, the asset and voting securities acquisitions

are not treated as one transaction. Therefore, the second acquisition would not be subject to the requirements of the act by reason of section 7A(a)(3)(B) since the value of the securities to be acquired does not equal or exceed $15 million.

§ 801.15 Aggregation of voting securities and assets the acquisition of which was exempt.

Notwithstanding § 801.13, for purposes of section 7A(a)(3) and § 801.1(h), none of the following will be held as a result of an acquisition:

(a) Assets or voting securities the acquisition of which was exempt at the time of acquisition (or would have been exempt, had the act and these rules been in effect), or the present acquisition of which is exempt, under—

(1) Sections 7A(c) (1), (5), (6), (7), (8), and (11)(B);

(2) Sections 802.6(b)(1), 802.8, 802.31, 802.35, 802.50(a)(1), 802.51(a), 802.52, 802.53, 802.63, and 802.70;

(b) Assets or voting securities the acquisition of which was exempt at the time of acquistion (or would have been exempt, had the act and these rules been in effect), or the present acquisition of which is exempt, under section 7A(c)(9) and §§ 802.50(a)(2), 802.50(b), 802.51(b) and 802.64 unless the limitations contained in section 7A(c)(9) or those sections do not apply or as a result of the acquisiton would be exceeded, in which case the assets or voting securities so acquired will be held; and

(c) Voting securities the acquistion of which was exempt at the time of acquisiton (or would have been exempt, had the act and these rules been in effect), or the present acquisition of which is exempt, under section 7A(c)(11)(A) unless additional voting securities of the same issuer have been or are being acquired.

Examples: 1. Assume that acquiring person "A" is simultaneously to acquire $50 million of the convertible voting securities of X and $12 million (which is less than 15 percent) of the voting common stock of X. Although the acquistion of the convertible voting securities is exempt under § 802.31, since the overall value of the securities to be acquired is greater than $15 million, "A" must determine whether it is obliged to file notification and observe a waiting period before acquiring the common stock. Because § 802.31 is one of the exemptions listed in paragraph (a)(2) of this rule, "A" would not hold the convertible voting securities as a result of the acquisition. Therefore, since as a result of the acquisition "A" would hold only the common stock, the test of section 7A(a)(3) would not be satisfied, and "A" need not observe the requirements of the act before acquiring the common stock.

(Note, however, that the $50 million of convertible voting securities would be reflected in "A's" next regularly prepared balance sheet, for purposes of § 801.11.)

2. In the previous example, the rule was applied to voting securities the present acquisition of which is exempt. Assume instead that "A" had acquired the convertible voting securities prior to its acquisition of the common stock. "A" still would not hold the convertible voting securities as a result of the acquisition of the common stock, because the rule states that voting securities the previous acquisition of which was exempt also fall within the rule. Thus, the test of section 7A(a)(3) would again not be satisfied, and "A" need not observe the requirements of the act before acquiring the common stock.

3. In example 2, assume instead that "A" acquired the convertible voting securities in 1975, before the act and rules went into effect. Since the rule applies to voting securities the acquisition of which would have been exempt had the act and rules been in effect, the result again would be identical. If the rules had been in effect in 1975, the acquisition of the convertible voting securities would have been exempt under § 802.31.

4. Assume that acquiring person "B," a United States person, acquired from corporation X two mines located abroad, and assume that the acquisition price was $40 million. In the most recent year, sales in the United States attributable to the mines were $15 million, and thus the acquisition was exempt under § 802.50(a)(2). Within 180 days of that acquisition, "B" seeks to acquire a third mine from X, to which United States sales of $12 million were attributable in the most recent year. Since under § 801.13(b)(2), as a result of the acquisition, "B" would hold all three mines of X, and the $25 million limitation in § 802.50(a)(2) would be exceeded, under paragraph (b) of this rule, "B" would hold the previously acquired assets for purposes of the second acquisition. Therefore, as a result of the second acquisition, "B" would hold assets of X

exceeding $15 million, would not qualify for the exemption in § 802.50(a)(2), and must observe the requirements of the act before consummating the acquisition.

1978 Rule Amended
March 6, 1987.

§ 801.20 Acquisitions subsequent to exceeding threshold.

Acquisitions meeting the criteria of section 7A(a), and not otherwise exempted by section 7A(c) or § 802.21 or any other of these rules, are subject to the requirements of the act even though:

(a) Earlier acquisitions of assets or voting securities may have been subject to the requirements of the act;

(b) The acquiring person's holdings initially may have met or exceeded a notification threshold before the effective date of these rules; or

(c) The acquiring person's holdings initially may have met or exceeded a notification threshold by reason of increases in market values or events other than acquisitions.

Examples: 1. Person "A" acquires $10 million of the voting securities of person "B" before the effective date of these rules. If "A" wishes to acquire an additional $6 million of the voting securities of "B" after the effective date of the rules, notification will be required by reason of section 7A(a)(3)(B).

2. In example 1, assume that the value of the voting securities of "B" originally acquired by "A" has reached a present value exceeding $15 million. If "A" wishes to acquireaT3 any additional voting securities or assets of "B," notification will be required. See § 801.13(a).

§ 801.21 Securities and cash not considered assets when acquired.

For purposes of section 7A(a)(3) and §§ 801.1(h)(1), 801.12(d)(1) and 801.13(b):

(a) Cash shall not be considered an asset of the person from which it is acquired; and

(b) Neither voting or nonvoting securities nor obligations referred to in section 7A(c)(2) shall be considered assets of another person from which they are acquired.

Examples: 1. Assume that acquiring person "A" acquires voting securities of issuer X from "B," a person unrelated to X. Under this paragraph, the acquisition is treated only as one of voting securities, requiring "A" and "X" to comply with the requirements of the act, rather than one in which "A" acquires the assets of "B," requiring "A" and "B" to comply. See also example 2 to § 801.30. Note that for purposes of section 7A(a)(2)—that is, for the next regularly prepared balance sheet of "A" referred to in § 801.11—the voting securities of X must be reflected after their acquisition, see § 801.11(c)(2).

2. In the previous example, if "A" acquires nonvoting securities of X from "B," then under this section the acquisition would be treated only as one of nonvoting securities of X (and would be exempt under section 7A(c)(2)), rather than one in which "A" acquires assets of "B," requiring "A" and "B" to comply. Again, the nonvoting securities of X would have to be reflected in "A's" next regularly prepared balance sheet for purposes of section 7A(a)(2).

3. In example 1, assume that "B" receives only cash from "A" in exchange for the voting securities of X. Under this section, "B's" acquisition of cash is *not* an acquisition of the "assets" of "A," and "B" is not required to file notification as an acquiring person.

§ 801.30 Tender offers and acquisitions of voting securities from third parties.

(a) This section applies to:

(1) Acquisitions on a national securities exchange or through an interdealer quotation system registered with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission;

(2) Acquisitions described by § 801.31;

(3) Tender offers;

(4) Secondary acquisitions;

(5) All acquisitions (other than mergers and consolidations) in which voting securities are to be acquired from a holder or holders other than the issuer or an entity included within the same person as the issuer;

(6) Conversions; and

(7) Acquisitions of voting securities resulting from the exercise of options or warrants which are—

(i) Issued by the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired (or by any entity included within the same person as the issuer); and

(ii) The subject of a currently effective registration statement filed with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission under the Securities Act of 1933.

(b) For acquisitions described by paragraph (a) of this section:

(1) The waiting period required under the act shall commence upon the filing of notification by the acquiring person as provided in § 803.10(a); and

(2) The acquired person shall file the notification required by the act, in accordance with these rules, no later than 5 p.m. eastern time on the 15th (or, in the case of cash tender offers, the 10th) calendar day following the date of receipt, as defined by § 803.10(a), by the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General of the notification filed by the acquiring person. Should the 15th (or, in the case of cash tender offers, the 10th) calendar day fall on a weekend day or federal holiday, the notification shall be filed no later than 10 a.m. eastern time on the next following business day.

Examples: 1. Acquiring person "A" proposes to acquire from corporation B the voting securities of B's wholly owned subsidiary, corporation S. Since "A" is acquiring the shares of S from its parent, this section does not apply, and the waiting period does not begin until both "A" and "B" file notification.

2. Acquiring person "A" proposes to acquire $20 million of the voting securities of corporation X on a securities exchange. The waiting period begins when "A" files notification. "X" must file notification within 15 calendar days thereafter. The seller of the X shares is not subject to any obligations under the act.

3. Suppose that acquiring person "A" proposes to acquire 50 percent of the voting securities of corporation B which in turn owns 30 percent of the voting securities of corporation C. Thus "A's" acquisition of C's voting securities is a secondary acquisition (see § 801.4) to which this section applies because "A" is acquiring C's voting securities from a third party (B). Therefore, the waiting period with respect to "A's" acquisition of C's voting securities begins when "A" files its separate Notification and Report Form with respect to C, and "C" must file within 15 days (or in the case of a cash tender offer, 10 days) thereafter. "A's" primary and secondary acquisitions of the voting securities of B and C are subject to separate waiting periods; see § 801.4.

1978 Rule Amended
March 6, 1987.

§ 801.31 Acquisitions of voting securities by offerees in tender offers.

Whenever an offeree in a noncash tender offer is required to, and does, file notification with respect to an acquisition described in § 801.2(e):

(a) The waiting period with respect to such acquisition shall begin upon filing of notification by the offeree, pursuant to §§ 801.30 and 803.10(a)(1);

(b) The person within which the issuer of the shares to be acquired by the offeree is included shall file notification as required by § 801.30(b);

(c) Any request for additional information or documentary material pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20 shall extend the waiting period in accordance with § 803.20(c); and

(d) The voting securities to be acquired by the offeree may be placed into escrow, for the benefit of the offeree, pending expiration or termination of the waiting period with respect to the acquisition of such securities: *Provided however*, That no person may vote any voting securities placed into escrow pursuant to this paragraph.

Example. Assume that "A," which has annual net sales exceeding $100 million, makes a tender offer for voting securities of corporation X. The consideration for the tender offer is to be voting securities of A. "S," a shareholder of X with total assets exceeding $10 million, wishes to tender its holdings of X and in exchange would receive shares of A valued at $16 million. Under this section, "S's" acquisition of the shares of A would be an acquisition separately subject to the requirements of the act. Before "S" may acquire the voting securities of A, "S" must first file notification and observe a waiting period—which is separate from any waiting period that may apply with respect to "A" and "X." Since § 801.30 applies, the waiting period applicable to "A" and "S" begins upon filing by "S," and "A" must file with respect to "S's" acquisition within 15 days pursuant to § 801.30(b). Should the waiting period with respect to "A" and "X" expire or be terminated prior to the waiting period with respect to "S" and "A," "S" may wish to tender its X-shares and place the A-shares into a nonvoting escrow until the expiration or termination of the latter waiting period.

§ 801.32 Conversion an acquisition.

A conversion is an acquisition within the meaning of the act.

Example. Assume that acquiring person "A" wishes to convert convertible voting securities of issuer X, and is to receive common stock of X valued at $20 million. If "A" and "X" satisfy the criteria of section 7A(a)(1) and section 7A(a)(2), then "A" and "X" must file notification and observe the waiting period before "A" completes the acquisition of the X common stock, unless exempted by section 7A(c) or these rules. Since § 801.30 applies, the waiting period begins upon notification by "A," and "X" must file notification within 15 days.

§ 801.33 Consummation of an acquisition by acceptance of tendered shares of payment.

The acceptance for payment of any shares tendered in a tender offer is the consummation of an acquisition of those shares within the meaning of the act.

New Rule 1983.

§ 801.40 Formation of joint venture or other corporations.

(a) In the formation of a joint venture or other corporation (other than in connection with a merger or consolidation), even though the persons contributing to the formation of a joint venture or other corporation and the joint venture or other corporation itself may, in the formation transaction, be both acquiring and acquired persons within the meaning of § 801.2, the contributors shall be deemed acquiring persons only, and the joint venture or other corporation shall be deemed the acquired person only.

(b) Unless exempted by the act or any of these rules, upon the formation of a joint venture or other corporation, in a transaction meeting the criteria of section 7A (a) (1) and (3) (other than in connection with a merger or consolidation), an acquiring person shall be subject to the requirements of the act if:

(1)(i) The acquiring person has annual net sales or total assets of $100 million or more;

(ii) The joint venture or other corporation will have total assets of $10 million or more; and

(iii) At least one other acquiring person has annual net sales or total assets of $10 million or more, or

(2)(i) The acquiring person has annual net sales or total assets of $10 million or more;

(ii) The joint venture or other corporation will have total assets of $100 million or more; and

(iii) At least one other acquiring person has annual net sales or total assets of $10 million or more.

(c) For purposes of paragraph (b) of this section and determining whether any exemptions provided by the act and these rules apply to its formation, the assets of the joint venture or other corporation shall include:

(1) All assets which any person contributing to the formation of the joint venture or other corporation has agreed to transfer or for which agreements have been secured for the joint venture or other corporation to obtain at any time, whether or not such person is subject to the requirements of the act; and

(2) Any amount of credit or any obligations of the joint venture or other corporation which any person contributing to the formation has agreed to extend or guarantee, at any time.

(d) The commerce criterion of section 7A(a)(1) is satisfied if either the activities of any acquiring person are in or affect commerce, or the person filing notification should reasonably believe that the activities of the joint venture or other corporation will be in or will affect commerce.

Example: **Persons "A," "B," and "C" agree to create new corporation N, a joint venture. "A," "B," and "C" will each hold one third of the shares of N. "A" has more than $100 million in annual net sales. "B" has more than $10 million in total assets but less than $100 million in annual net sales and total assets. Both "C"'s total assets and its annual net sales are less than $10 million. "A," "B," and "C" are each engaged in commerce. "A," "B," and "C" have agreed to make an aggregate initial contribution to the new entity of $6 million in assets and each to make additional contributions of $6 million in each of the next three years. Under paragraph (c), the assets of the new corporation are $60 million. Under paragraph (b), only "A" must file notification. Note that "A" also meets the criterion of section 7A(a)(3) since it will be acquiring one third of the voting securities of the new entity for $20 million. N need not file notification; see § 802.41.**

1978 Rule Amended 1983 and March 6, 1987.

§ 801.90 Transactions or devices for avoidance.

Any transaction(s) or other device(s) entered into or employed for the purpose of avoiding the obligation to comply with the requirements of the act shall be disregarded, and the obligation to comply shall be determined by applying the act and these rules to the substance of the transaction.

Examples: 1. Suppose corporations A and B wish to form a joint venture. A and B contemplate a total investment of $30 million in the joint venture; persons "A" and "B" each have total assets in excess of $100 million. Instead of filing notification pursuant to § 801.40, A creates a new subsidiary, A1, which issues half of its authorized shares to A. Assume that A1 has total assets of $1,000. "A" then sells 50 percent of its A1 stock to "B" for $500. Thereafter, "A" and "B" each contribute $15 million to A1 in exchange for the remaining authorized A1 stock (one-fourth each to "A" and "B"). A's creation of A1 was exempt under § 802.30; its sale of A1 stock to "B" was exempt under § 802.20; and the second acquisition of stock in A1 by "A" and "B" was exempt under § 802.30 and sections 7A(c) (3) and (10). Since this scheme appears to be for the purpose of avoiding the requirements of the act, the sequence of transactions will be disregarded. The transactions will be viewed as the formation of a joint venture corporation by "A" and "B" having over $10 million in assets. Such a transaction would be covered by § 801.40 and "A" and "B" must file notification and observe the waiting period.

2. Suppose "A" wholly owns and operates a chain of twenty retail hardware stores, each of which is separately incorporated and has assets of less than $10 million. The aggregate fair market value of the assets of the twenty store corporations is $60 million. "A" proposes to sell the stores to "B" for $60 million. For various reasons it is decided that "B" will buy the stock of each of the store corporations from "A". Instead of filing notification and observing the waiting period as contemplated by the act, "A" and "B" enter into a series of five stock purchase-sale agreements for $12 million each. Under the terms of each contract the stock of four stores will pass from "A" to "B". The five agreements are to be consummated on five successive days. Because, after each of these transactions, the store corporations are no longer part of the acquired person (§ 801.13(a) does not apply because control has passed, see § 801.2), and because § 802.20(b) exempts the acquisition of control of each of the store corporations, none of the contemplated acquisitions would be subject to the requirements of the act. However, if the stock of all of the store corporations were to be purchased in one transaction, no exemption would be applicable, and the act's requirements would have to be met. Because it appears that the purpose of making five separate contracts is to avoid the requirements of the act, this section would ignore the form of the separate transactions and consider the substance to be one transaction requiring compliance with the act.

PART 802—EXEMPTION RULES

Sec.

802.1 Acquisitions of goods or realty in the ordinary course of business.
802.6 Federal agency approval.
802.8 Certain supervisory acquisitions.
802.9 Acquisitions solely for the purpose of investment.
802.10 Stock dividends and splits.
802.20 Minimum dollar value.
802.21 Acquisitions of voting securities not meeting or exceeding greater notification threshold.
802.23 Amended or renewed tender offers.
802.30 Intraperson transactions.
802.31 Acquisitions of convertible voting securities.
802.35 Acquisitions by employee trusts.
802.40 Exempt formation of joint venture or other corporations.
802.41 Joint venture or other corporations at time of formation.
802.42 Partial exemption for acquisitions in connection with the formation of certain joint ventures or other corporations.
802.50 Acquisitions of foreign assets or of voting securities of a foreign issuer by United States persons.
802.51 Acquisitions by foreign persons.
802.52 Acquisitions by or from foreign governmental corporations.
802.53 Certain foreign banking transactions.
802.60 Acquisitions by securities underwriters.
802.63 Certain acquisitions by creditors and insurers.
802.64 Acquisitions of voting securities by certain institutional investors.
802.70 Acquisitions subject to order.
802.71 Acquisitions by gift, intestate succession or devise, or by irrevocable trust.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 7A(d), Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18A(d), as added by sec. 201, Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. No. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390.

SOURCE: 43 FR 33544, July 31, 1978, unless otherwise noted.

§ 802.1 Acquisitions of goods or realty in the ordinary course of business.

(a) *Acquisitions of voting securities of entities holding only realty.* For purposes of section 7A(c)(1), an acquisition of the voting securities of an entity whose assets consist or will consist solely of real property and assets incidental to the ownership of real property (such as cash, prepaid taxes or insurance, rentals receivable and the like) shall be deemed an acquisition of realty.

(b) *Certain acquisitions of assets.* No acquisition of the goods or realty of an entity (except for entities described in paragraph (a) of this section) shall be made "in the ordinary course of business" within the meaning of section 7A(c)(1), if, as a result thereof, the acquiring person will hold all or substantially all of the assets of that entity or an operating division thereof.

§ 802.6 Federal agency approval.

(a) For the purposes of section 7A(c)(6) and (c)(8), the term "information and documentary material" includes one copy of all documents, application forms, and all written submissions of any type whatsoever. In lieu of providing all such information and documentary material, or any portion thereof, one copy of an index describing such information and documentary material may be provided, together with a certification that any such information or documentary material not provided will be provided within 10 calendar days upon request by the Federal Trade Commission or Assistant Attorney General, or a delegated official of either. Any material submitted pursuant to this section shall be submitted to the offices specified in § 803.10(c).

(b)(1) Except as provided in § 802.6(b)(2), any transaction which requires approval by the Civil Aeronautics Board prior to consummation, pursuant to section 408 of the Federal Aviation Act, 49 U.S.C. 1378, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if copies of all information and documentary material filed with the Civil Aeronautics Board are contemporaneously filed with the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General.

(2) The following will be considered assets held as a result of an acquisition requiring approval by the Civil Aeronautics Board pursuant to section 408 of the Federal Aviation Act, and such assets will not be exempt under § 802.6(b)(1):

(i) If the transaction is an acquisition of assets, the assets which are engaged in a business or businesses other than aeronautics or air transportation as defined in section 101 of the Federal Aviation Act, 49 U.S.C. 1301;

(ii) If the transaction is an acquisition of voting securities, or is treated under the rules as an acquisition of voting securities, and the acquiring person will, as a result of the acquisition, hold voting securities of the acquired person valued in excess of $15 million, the business or businesses of the acquired issuer (and all entities which it controls) which are not engaged in aeronautics or air transportation as defined in section 101 of the Federal Aviation Act, 49 U.S.C. 1301.

Example: Assume that A (an entity included within person "A") proposes to acquire voting securities of B (an entity included within person "B") for $100 million. A and B are both air carriers who meet the size-of-person test, but B also owns a commercial data processing business located in the United States with a value of $30 million. Assume that this transaction requires CAB approval under 49 U.S.C. 1378. Since the acquired person has a business other than aeronautics or air transportation, the parties must report under § 802.6(b)(2) because the parties meet the size-of-person test, no other exemption applies to the acquisition of the data processing business, and the acquisition of the non-aeronautic business is deemed to be an acquisition of assets valued at $30 million.

1978 Rule Amended 1983 and
March 6, 1987.

§ 802.8 Certain supervisory acquisitions.

(a) A merger, consolidation, purchase of assets, or acquisition requiring agency approval under sections 403 or 408(e) of the National Housing Act, 12 U.S.C. 1726, 1730a(e), or under section 5 of the Home Owners' Loan Act of 1933, 12 U.S.C. 1464 shall be exempt from the requirements of the Act, including specifically the filing requirement of section 7A(c)(8), it the agency whose approval is required finds that approval of such merger, consolidation, purchase of assets, or acquisition is necessary to prevent the probable failure of one of the institutions involved.

(b)(1) A merger, consolidation, purchase of assets, or acquisition which requires agency approval under 12 U.S.C. 1817(j) or 12 U.S.C. 1730(q) shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if copies of all information and documentary materials filed with any such agency are contemporaneously filed with the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General at least 30 days prior to consummation of the proposed acquisition.

(2) A transaction described in paragraph (b)(1) of this section shall be exempt from the requirements of the act, including specifically the filing requirement, if the agency whose approval is required finds that approval of such transaction is necessary to prevent the probable failure of one of the institutions involved.

1978 Rule Amended 1983.
Also refer to:
Formal Interpretation,
May 8, 1979.

§ 802.9 Acquisition solely for the purpose of investment.

An acquisition of voting securities shall be exempt from the requirements of the act pursuant to section 7A(c)(9) if made solely for the purpose of investment and if, as a result of the acquisition, the acquiring person would hold ten percent or less of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer, regardless of the dollar value of voting securities so acquired or held.

Examples: 1. Suppose that acquiring person "A" acquires 6 percent of the voting securities of issuer X, valued at $30 million. If the acquisition is solely for the purpose of investment, it is exempt under section 7A(c)(9).

2. After the acquisition in example 1, "A" decides to acquire an additional 7 percent of the voting securities of X. Regardless of "A"'s intentions, the acquisition is not exempt under section 7A(c)(9).

3. After the acquisition in example 1, acquiring person "A" decides to participate in the management of issuer X. Any subsequent acquisitions of X stock by "A" would not be exempt under section 7A(c)(9).

§ 802.10 Stock dividends and splits.

The acquisition of voting securities, pursuant to a stock split or pro rata stock dividend, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act under section 7A(c)(10).

§ 802.20 Minimum dollar value.

An acquisition which would be subject to the requirements of the act and which satisfies section 7A(a)(3)(A), but which does not satisfy section 7A(a)(3)(B), shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if as a result of the acquisition the acquiring person would not hold:

(a) Assets of the acquired person valued at more than $15 million; or

(b) Voting securities which confer control of an issuer which, together with all entities which it controls, has annual net sales or total assets of $25 million or more.

Examples 1. Acquiring person "A" intends to acquire 66 percent of the voting securities of corporation X from X's ultimate parent entity, W, and "A" holds no other assets or voting securities of acquired persons "W". X has no subsidiaries and does not have annual net sales or total assets of $10 million. If the postacquisition value of "A"'s holdings of voting securities of X would be $15 million or less, the acquisition would be exempt under this section.

2. Assume that acquiring person "B" holds voting securities of corporation Q valued at $9 million. "B" now intends to acquire assets of Q valued at $7 million. Since the aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets of "Q" to be held by "B" would exceed $15 million, section 7A(a)(3)(B) would be satisfied, and the acquisition would not be exempt under this section.

3. Assume that acquiring person "C" holds $5 million of the voting securities of corporation R, an entity included within person "T". "C" now proposes to acquire $8 million of the assets of corporation S, also an entity included within person "T," representing 20 percent of "T's" total assets. Section 7A(a)(3)(B) is not satisfied because the aggregate total amount of "C's" holdings in acquired person "T" will be less than $15 million. Although section 7A(a)(3)(A) would be satisfied by the asset acquisition, it will nevertheless be exempt under paragraph (a) of this section.

[43 FR 33544, July 31, 1978, as amended at 44 FR 66782, Nov. 21, 1979]

§ 802.21 Acquisitions of voting securities not meeting or exceeding greater notification threshold.

An acquisition of voting securities shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if:

(a) The acquiring person and all other persons required by the act and these rules to file notification filed notification with respect to an earlier acquisition of voting securities of the same issuer;

(b) The waiting period with respect to the earlier acquisition has expired, or been terminated pursuant to § 803.11, and the acquisition will be consummated within 5 years of such expiration or termination; and

(c) The acquisition will not increase the holdings of the acquiring person to meet or exceed a notification threshold greater than the greatest notification threshold met or exceeded in the earlier acquisition.

Examples: 1. Corporation A acquires 15 percent of the voting securities of corporation B and both "A" and "B" file notification as required. Within five years of the expiration of the original waiting period, "A" acquires additional voting securities of B but not in an amount sufficient to meet or exceed 25 percent of the voting securities of B. No additional notification is required.

2. In example 1, "A" continues to acquire B's securities. Before "A's" holdings meet or exceed 25 percent of B's outstanding voting securities, "A" and "B" must file notification and wait the prescribed period regardless of whether the acquisition occur within five years after the expiration of the earlier waiting period.

3. In example 2, suppose that "A" and "B" file notification at the 25 percent level and that, within 5 years after expiration of the waiting period, "A" continues to acquire voting securities of B. No further notification is required until "A" plans to make the acquisition that will give it 50 percent ownership of B. (Once "A" holds 50 percent, further acquisitions of voting securities are exempt under section 7A(c)(3).

4. Assume that "C" is an institutional investor whose prior acquisitions of corporation D's voting securities were exempt under § 802.64. "C" now proposes to purchase additional voting securities of D which will result in holdings exceeding 15 percent and $25 million. "C" and "D" therefore file notification and observe the waiting period. Under this section within the 5 years following the expiration of the waiting period "C" may further increase its holdings in D to any amount below 25 percent (regardless of dollar value) without again filing notification. Section 802.64 exempted "C" from filing notification at the thresholds defined in subparagraphs (1) or (2) of § 801.1(h); thereafter, since "C" filed notification with respect to an acquisition which resulted in its holding more than 15 percent of D's voting securities valued at more than $25 million, the next notification threshold "greater than the greatest notification threshold met or exceeded in the earlier acquisition" is 25 percent of D's voting securi-

ties. (See paragraph (c) of this section and § 801.1(h)(3).)

5. This section also allows a person to recross any of the threshold notification levels—15 percent/$15 million, 15 percent if greater than $15 million, 25 and 50 percent—any number of times within 5 years of the expiration of the waiting period following notification for that level. Thus, if in example 1, "A" had disposed of some voting securities so that it held less than 15 percent of the voting securities of B, and thereafter had increased its holdings to more than 15 percent but less than 25 percent of B, notification would not be required if the increase occurred within 5 years of the expiration of the original waiting period. Similarly, in examples 2 and 3, "A" could decrease its holdings below, and then increase its holdings above, 25 percent and 50 percent, respectively without filing notification, if done within 5 years of the expiration of those respective waiting periods.

§ 802.23 Amended or renewed tender offers.

Whenever a tender offer is amended or renewed after notification has been filed by the offeror, no new notification shall be required, and the running of the waiting period shall be unaffected, except as follows:

(a) If the number of voting securities to be acquired pursuant to the offer is increased such that a greater notification threshold would be met or exceeded, only the acquiring person need again file notification, but a new waiting period must be observed;

(b) If a noncash tender offer is amended to become a cash tender offer, (1) one copy of the amended tender offer shall be filed in the manner prescribed by § 803.10(c) with the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General, and (2) subject to the provisions of § 803.10(b)(1), the waiting period shall expire on the 15th day after the date of receipt (determined in accordance with § 803.10(c)) of the amended tender offer, or on the 30th day after filing notification, whichever is earlier; or

(c) If a cash tender offer is amended to become a noncash tender offer, (1) one copy of the amended tender offer shall be filed in the manner prescribed by § 803.10(c) with the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General, and (2) subject to the provisions of § 803.10(b)(1), the waiting period shall expire on the 15th day after the date of receipt (as determined in accordance with § 803.10(c)) of the amended tender offer, or on the 30th day after filing notification, whichever is later.

Examples: 1. Assume that corporation A makes a tender offer for 20 percent of the voting securities of corporation B and that "A" files notification. Under this section, if A subsequently amends its tender offer only as to the amount of consideration offered, the waiting period so commenced is not affected, and no new notification need be filed.

2. In the previous example, assume that A makes an amended tender offer for 27 percent of the voting securities of B. Since a new notification threshold will be crossed, this section requires that "A" must again file notification and observe a new waiting period. Paragraph (a) of this section, however, provides that "B" need not file notification again.

3. Assume that "A" makes a tender offer for shares of corporation B. "A" includes its voting securities as part of the consideration. "A" files notification. Five days later, "A" changes its tender offer to a cash tender offer, and on the same day files copies of its amended tender offer with the offices designated in § 803.10(c). Under paragraph (b) of this section, the waiting period expires (unless extended or terminated) 15 days after the receipt of the amended offer (on the 20th day after filing notification), since that occurs earlier than the expiration of the original waiting period (which would occur on the 30th day after filing).

4. Assume that "A" makes a cash tender offer for shares of corporation B and files notification. Six days later, "A" amends the tender offer and adds voting securities as consideration, and on the same day files copies of the amended tender offer with the offices designated in § 803.10(c). Under paragraph (c) of this section, the waiting period expires (unless extended or terminated) on the 30th day following the date of filing of notification (determined under § 803.10(c)), since that occurs later than the 15th day after receipt of the amended tender offer (which would occur on the 21st day).

[43 FR 33544, July 31, 1978; 43 FR 36054, Aug. 15, 1978]

§ 802.30 Intraperson transactions.

An acquisition (other than the formation of a joint venture or other corporation the voting securities of which will be held by two or more persons) in which, by reason of holdings of voting securities, the acquiring and acquired persons are (or as a result of formation of a wholly owned entity will be) the same person, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act.

Examples: 1. Corporation A merges its two wholly owned subsidiaries S1 and S2. The transaction is exempt under this section.

2. Corporation B creates a new wholly owned subsidiary. The transaction is exempt under this section.

3. Corporation A, which controls corporation B by a contract giving A the power to name a majority of B's directors, but which holds no voting securities of B, proposes to acquire 15 percent of B's voting securities. The transaction is not exempt under this section, since "A" and "B" are not the same person "by reason of holdings of voting securities."

4. Corporation A repurchases a portion of its voting securities in a series of transactions involving numerous sellers. All of these acquisitions are exempt under this section. The redemption or retirement of securities would likewise be exempt under this section.

5. Corporations A and B (which are not included within the same person) form a new corporation, C. A and B will each hold C's voting securities upon formation. This section is inapplicable, and the acquisitions of C's voting securities by A and B are not exempt.

§ 802.31 Acquisitions of convertible voting securities.

Acquisitions of convertible voting securities shall be exempt from the requirements of the act.

Example: This section applies regardless of the dollar value of the convertible voting securities held or to be acquired and even though they may be converted into 15 percent or more of the issuer's voting securities. Note, however, that subsequent conversions of convertible voting securities may be subject to the requirements of the act. See § 801.32.

§ 802.35 Acquisitions by employee trusts.

An acquisition of voting securities shall be exempt from the notification requirements of the act if:

(a) The securities are acquired by a trust that meets the qualifications of section 401 of the Internal Revenue Code;

(b) The trust is controlled by a person that employs the beneficiaries and,

(c) The voting securities acquired are those of that person or an entity within that person.

Examples: 1. Company A establishes a trust for its employees that meets the qualifications of section 401 of the Internal Revenue Code. Company A has the power to designate the trustee of the trust. That trust then acquires 30% of the voting securities of Company A for $30 million. Later, the trust acquires 20% of the stock of Company B, a wholly-owned subsidiary of Company A, for $20 million. Neither acquisition is reportable.

2. Assume that in the example above, "A" has total assets of $100 million. "C" also has total assets of $100 million and is not controlled by Company A. The trust controlled by Company A plans to acquire 40 percent of the voting securities of Company C for $40 million. Since Company C is not included within "A," "A" must observe the requirements of the act before the trust makes the acquisition of Company C's shares.

New Rule March 6, 1987.

§ 802.40 Exempt formation of joint venture or other corporations.

Acquisitions of the voting securities of a joint venture or other corporation at the time of formation under § 801.40 shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if the joint venture or other corporation will be not for profit within the meaning of sections 501(c)(1)-(4), (6)-(15), (17)-(20) or (d) of the Internal Revenue Code.

§ 802.41 Joint venture or other corporations at time of formation.

Whenever any person(s) contributing to the formation of a joint venture or other corporation are subject to the requirements of the act by reason of § 801.40, the joint venture or other corporation need not file the notification required by the act and § 803.1.

Examples: 1. Corporations A and B, each having sales of $100 million, each propose to contribute $20 million in cash in exchange for 50 percent of the voting securities of a new corporation, N. Under this section, the new corporation need not file notification, although both "A" and "B" must do so and observe the waiting period prior to receiving any voting securities of N.

2. In addition to the facts in example 1 above, A and B have agreed that upon creation N will purchase 100 percent of the voting securities of corporation C for $15 million. Because N's purchase of C is not a transaction in connection with N's formation, and because in any event C is not a contributor to the formation of N, "A," "B" and "C" must file with respect to the proposed acquisition of C and must observe the waiting period.

1978 Rule Amended
March 6, 1987.

§ 802.42 Partial exemption for acquisitions in connection with the formation of certain joint ventures or other corporations.

(a) Whenever one or more of the contributors in the formation of a joint venture or other corporation which otherwise would be subject to the requirements of the act by reason of § 801.40 are exempt from these requirements under section 7A(c)(8), any other contributor in the formation which is subject to the act and not exempt under section 7A(c)(8) need not file a Notification and Report Form, provided that no less than 30 days prior to the date of consummation any such contributor claiming this exemption has submitted an affidavit to the Federal Trade Commission and to the Assistant Attorney General stating its good faith intention to make the proposed acquisition and asserting the applicability of this exemption.

(b) Persons relieved of the requirement to file a Notification and Report Form pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section remain subject to all other provisions of the act and these rules.

New Rule 1983

§ 802.50 Acquisitions of foreign assets or of voting securities of a foreign issuer by United States persons.

(a) *Assets.* In a transaction in which assets located outside the United States are being acquired by a U.S. person:

(1) The acquisition of assets located outside the United States, to which no sales in or into the United States are attributable, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act; and

(2) The acquisition of assets located outside the United States, to which sales in or into the United States are attributable, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act unless as a result of the acquisition the acquiring person would hold assets of the acquired person to which such sales aggregating $25 million or more during the acquired person's most recent fiscal year were attributable.

Examples: 1. Assume that "A" and "B" are both U.S. persons. "A" proposes selling to "B" a manufacturing plant located abroad. Sales in or into the United States attributable to the plant totaled $8 million in the most recent fiscal year. The transaction is exempt under this paragraph.

2. Sixty days after the transaction in example 1, "A" proposes to sell to "B" a second manufacturing plant located abroad; sales in or into the United States attributable to this plant totaled $20 million in the most recent fiscal year. Since "B" would be acquiring the second plant within 180 days of the first plant, both plants would be considered assets of "A" now held by "B". See § 801.13(b)(2). Since the total annual sales in or into the United States exceed $25 million, the acquisition of the second plant would not be exempt under this paragraph.

(b) *Voting securities.* An acquisition of voting securities of a foreign issuer by a U.S. person shall be exempt from the requirements of the act unless the issuer (including all entities controlled by the issuer) either:

(1) Holds assets located in the United States (other than investment assets, voting or nonvoting securities of another person, and assets included pursuant to § 801.40(c)(2)) having an aggregate book value of $15 million or more; or

(2) Made aggregate sales in or into the United States of $25 million or more in its most recent fiscal year.

Example: "A," a U.S. person, is to acquire the voting securities of C, a foreign issuer. C has no assets in the United States, but made aggregate sales into the United States of $27 million in the most recent fiscal year. The transaction is not exempt under this section.

1978 Rule Amended 1983

§ 802.51 Acquisitions by foreign persons.

An acquisition by a foreign person shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if:

(a) The acquisition is of assets located outside the United States;

(b) The acquisition is of voting securities of a foreign issuer, and will not confer control of:

(1) An issuer which holds assets located in the United States (other than investment assets, voting or nonvoting securities of another person, and assets included pursuant to § 801.40(c)(2)) having an aggregate book value of $15 million or more, or

(2) A U.S. issuer with annual net sales or total assets of $25 million or more;

(c) The acquisition is of less than $15 million of assets located in the United States (other than investment assests); or

(d) The acquired person is also a foreign person, the aggregate annual sales of the acquiring and acquired persons in or into the United States are less than $110 million, and the aggregate total assets of the acquiring and acquired persons located in the United States (other than investment assets, voting or nonvoting securities of another person, and assets included pursuant to § 801.40(c)(2)) are less than $110 million.

Examples: 1. Assume that "A" and "B" are foreign persons with aggregate annual sales in or into the United States of $200 million. If "A" acquires the assets of "B," and if no assets in the United States or voting securities of U.S. issuers will be acquired, the transaction is exempt under paragraphs (a) and (c).

2. In example 1, assume that "A" is acquiring "B's" stock and that included within "B" is issuer C, a U.S. issuer whose total assets are valued at $27 million. Since C's voting securities will be acquired indirectly, and since "A" thus will be acquiring control of a U.S. issuer with total assets of more than $25 million, the acquisition cannot be exempt under this section.

3. In the previous examples, assume that "A" is a U.S. person. This section does not apply, since the acquiring person must be a foreign person.

1978 Rule Amended 1983

§ 802.52 Acquisitions by or from foreign governmental corporations.

An acquisition shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if:

(a) The ultimate parent entity of either the acquiring person or the acquired person is controlled by a foreign state, foreign government, or agency thereof; and

(b) The acquisition is of assets located within that foreign state or of voting securities of an issuer organized under the laws of that state.

Example: The government of foreign country X has decided to sell assets of its wholly owned corporation, B, all of which are located in foreign country X. The buyer is "A," a U.S. person. Regardless of the aggregate annual sales in or into the United States attributable to the assets of B, the transaction is exempt under this section. (If such aggregate annual sales were less than $10 million, the transaction would also be exempt under § 802.50.)

§ 802.53 Certain foreign banking transactions.

An acquisition which requires the consent or approval of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System under section 25 or section 25(a) of the Federal Reserve Act, 12 U.S.C. 601, 615, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if copies of all information and documentary material filed with the Board of Governors are contemporaneously filed with the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General at least 30 days prior to consummation of the acquisition. In lieu of such information and documentary material or any portion thereof, an index describing such material may be provided in the manner authorized by § 802.6(a).

1978 Rule Amended 1983

§ 802.60 Acquisitions by securities underwriters.

An acquisition of voting securities by a person acting as a securities underwriter, in the ordinary course of business, and in the process of underwriting, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act.

§ 802.63 Certain acquisitions by creditors and insurers.

(a) *Creditors.* An acquisition of collateral or receivables, or an acquisition in foreclosure, or upon default, or in connection with the establishment of a lease financing, or in connection with a bona fide debt work-out shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if made by a creditor in a bona fide credit transaction entered into in the ordinary course of the creditor's business.

(b) *Insurers.* An acquisition pursuant to a condition in a contract of insurance relating to fidelity, surety, or casualty obligations shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if made by an insurer in the ordinary course of business.

Examples: 1. A bank makes a loan and takes actual or constructive possession of collateral in any form. Since the bank is not the beneficial owner of the collateral, the bank's receipt of it is not an acquisition which is subject to the requirements of the act. However, if upon default the bank becomes the beneficial owner of the collateral, that acquisition is exempt under this section.

2. This section exempts only the acquisition by the creditor or insurer, and not the subsequent disposition of the assets or voting securities. If a creditor or insurer sells voting securities or assets that have come into its possession in a transaction which is exempt under this section, the requirements of the act may apply to that disposition.

§ 802.64 Acquisitions of voting securities by certain institutional investors.

(a) *Institutional investor.* For purposes of this section, the term "institutional investor" means any entity of the following type:

(1) A bank within the meaning of 15 U.S.C. 80b-2(a)(2);

(2) Savings bank;

(3) Savings and loan or building and loan company or association;

(4) Trust company;

(5) Insurance company;

(6) Investment company registered with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission under the Investment Company Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80a-1 et seq.);

(7) Finance company;

(8) Broker-dealer within the meaning of 15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(4) or (a)(5);

(9) Small Business Investment Company or Minority Enterprise Small Business Investment Company regulated by the U.S. Small Business Administration pursuant to 15 U.S.C. 662;

(10) A stock bonus, pension, or profit-sharing trust qualified under section 401 of the Internal Revenue Code;

(11) Bank holding company within the meaning of 12 U.S.C. 1841;

(12) An entity which is controlled directly or indirectly by an institutional investor and the activities of which are in the ordinary course of business of the institutional investor;

(13) An entity which may supply incidental services to entities which it controls directly or indirectly but which performs no operating functions, and which is otherwise engaged only in holding controlling interests in institutional investors; or

(14) A nonprofit entity within the meaning of sections 501(c) (1) through (4), (6) through (15), (17) through (20), or (d) of the Internal Revenue Code.

(b) *Exemption.* An acquisition of voting securities shall be exempt from the requirements of the act, except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section, if:

(1) Made directly by an institutional investor;

(2) Made in the ordinary course of business;

(3) Made solely for the purpose of investment;

(4) As a result of the acquisition the acquiring person would not control the issuer; and

(5) As a result of the acquisition the acquiring person would hold either:

(i) Fifteen percent or less of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer; or

(ii) Voting securities of the issuer valued at $25 million or less.

(c) *Exception to exemption.* Notwithstanding paragraph (b) of this section:

(1) No acquisition of voting securities of an institutional investor of the same type as any entity included within the acquiring person shall be exempt under this section; and

(2) No acquisition by an institutional investor shall be exempt under this section if any entity included within the acquiring person which is not an institutional investor holds any voting securities of the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired.

Examples: 1. Assume that A and its subsidiary, B, are both institutional investors as defined in paragraph (a) of this section, that X is not, and that the conditions set forth in subparagraphs (2), (3) and (4) of paragraph (b) of this section are satisfied. Either A or B may acquire voting securities of X worth in excess of $25 million as long as the aggregate amount held by person "A" as a result of the acquisition does not equal or exceed 15 percent of X's outstanding voting securities. If the aggregate holdings would equal or exceed 15 percent, "A" may acquire no more than $25 million worth of voting securities without being subject to the requirements of the act.

2. In example 1, assume that B plans to make the acquisition, but that corporation B's parent, corporation A, is not an institutional investor and is engaged in manufacturing. Subparagraph (c)(2) provides that acquisitions by B can never be exempt under this section if A owns any amount of X's voting securities.

3. In example 1, the exemption does not apply if X is also an institutional investor of the same type as either A or B.

4. Assume that H is a holding company which controls a life insurance company, a casualty insurer and a finance company. The life insurance company controls a data processing company which performs services for the two insurers. Any acquisition by any of these entities could qualify for exemption under this section.

5. In example 4, if H also controls a manufacturing entity, H is not an institutional investor, and only the acquisitions made by the two insurance companies, the finance company and the data processing company can qualify for the exemption under this section.

§ 802.70 Acquisitions subject to order.

An acquisition shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if the voting securities or assets are to be acquired from an entity ordered to divest such voting securities or assets by order of the Federal Trade Commission or of any Federal court in an action brought by the Federal Trade Commission or the Department of Justice.

1978 Rule Amended 1983 and March 6, 1987.

Also refer to:
Formal Interpretation,
September 26, 1978.

§ 802.71 Acquisitions by gift, intestate succession or devise, or by irrevocable trust.

Acquisitions resulting from a gift, intestate succession, testamentary disposition or transfer by a settlor to an irrevocable trust shall be exempt from the requirements of the act.

PART 803—TRANSMITTAL RULES

Sec.

803.1 Notification and Report Form.
803.2 Instructions applicable to Notification and Report Form.
803.3 Statement of reasons for noncompliance.
803.4 Foreign persons refusing to file notification.
803.5 Affidavits required.
803.6 Certification.
803.7 Expiration of notification.
803.8 Foreign language documents.
803.10 Running of time.
803.11 Termination of waiting period.
803.20 Requests for additional information or documentary material.
803.21 Additional information shall be supplied within reasonable time.
803.30 Formal and informal interpretations of requirements under the Act and the rules.
803.90 Separability.
APPENDIX—ANTITRUST IMPROVEMENTS ACT NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM FOR CERTAIN MERGERS AND ACQUISITIONS

AUTHORITY: Sec. 7A(d), Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18A(d), as added by sec. 201, Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390.

SOURCE: 43 FR 33548, July 31, 1978, unless otherwise noted.

§ 803.1 Notification and Report Form.

(a) The notification required by the act shall be the Notification and Report Form set forth in the appendix to this Part (803), as amended from time to time. All acquiring and acquired persons required to file notification by the act and these rules shall do so by completing and filing the Notification and Report Form, or a photostatic or other equivalent reproduction thereof, in accordance with the instructions thereon and these rules. Copies of the Notification and Report Form may be obtained in person from the Public Reference Branch, Room 130, Federal Trade Commission, Sixth Street and Pennsylvania Avenue NW., Washington, D.C., or by writing to the Premerger Notification Office, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, D.C. 20580.

(b) Any person filing notification may, in addition to the submissions required by this section, submit any other information or documentary material which such person believes will be helpful to the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General in assessing the impact of the acquisition upon competition.

§ 803.2 Instructions applicable to Notification and Report Form.

(a) The notification required by the act shall be filed by the preacquisition ultimate parent entity, or by any entity included within the person authorized by such preacquisition ultimate parent entity to file notification on its behalf. In the case of a natural person required by the act to file notification, such notification may be filed by his or her legal representative: *Provided however*, That notwithstanding § 801.1(c)(2) and § 801.2, only one notification shall be filed by or on behalf of a natural person, spouse and minor children with respect to an acquisition as a result of which more than one such natural person will hold voting securities of the same issuer.

Example: Jane Doe, her husband and minor child collectively hold more than 50 percent of the shares of family corporation F. Therefore, Jane Doe (or her husband or minor child) is the "ultimate parent entity" of a "person" composed to herself (or her husband or minor child) and F; see paragraphs (a)(3), (b) and (c)(2) of § 801.1. If corporation F is to acquire corporation X, under this paragraph only one notification is to be filed by Jane Doe, her husband and minor child collectively.

(b)(1) Except as provided in paragraph (b)(2) of this section and paragraph (c) of this section, items 5-9 and the appendix to the Notification and Report Form must be completed—

(i) By acquiring persons, with respect to all entities included within the acquiring person;

(ii) By acquired persons, in the case of an acquisition of assets, only with respect to the assets to be acquired;

(iii) By acquired persons, in the case of an acquisition of voting securities, with respect to only the issuer whose voting securities are being acquired, and all entities controlled by such issuer; and

(iv) By persons which are both acquiring and acquired persons, separately in the manner that would be required of acquiring and acquired persons under this paragraph, if different.

(2) For purposes of items 7-9 of the Notification and Report Form, the acquiring person shall regard the acquired person in the manner described in paragraphs (b)(1) (ii) and (iii) of this section.

Example: Person "A" is comprised of entities separately engaged in grocery retailing, auto rental, and coal mining. Person "B" is comprised of entities separately engaged in wholesale magazine distribution, auto rental and book publishing. "A" proposes to purchase 100 percent of the voting securities of "B"'s book publishing subsidiary. For purposes of item 5, under clause (b)(1)(i), "A" reports, the activities of all its entities; under clause (b)(1)(iii), "B" reports only the operations of its book publishing subsidiary. For purposes of items 7-9, under subparagraph (2) of this paragraph "A" must regard "B" as consisting only of its book publishing subsidiary, and must disregard the fact that "A" and "B" are both engaged in the auto rental business.

(c) In response to items 5, 7, 8, and 9 and the appendix to the Notification and Report Form—

(1) Information shall be supplied only with respect to operations conducted within the United States; and

(2) Information need not be supplied with respect to assets or voting securities to be acquired, the acquisition of which is exempt from the requirements of the act.

(d) The term "dollar revenues," as used in the Notification and Report Form, means value of shipments for manufacturing operations, and sales, receipts, revenues, or other appropriate dollar value measure for operations other than manufacturing, f.o.b. the plant or establishment less returns, after discounts and allowances and excluding freight charges and excise taxes. Dollar revenues including delivery may be supplied if delivery is an integral part of the sales price. Dollar revenues include interplant transfers.

(e) A person filing notification may incorporate by reference only documentary materials required to be filed in response to item 4(a) of the Notification and Report Form and annual reports required to be filed in response to item 4(b), which were previously submitted with a filing by the same person and which are the most recent versions available; except that when the same parties file for a higher notification threshold no more than 90 days after having made filings with respect to a lower threshold, each party may incorporate by reference in the subsequent filing any documents or information in its earlier filing provided that the documents and information are the most recent available.

1978 Rule Amended 1983.

§ 803.3 Statement of reasons for noncompliance.

A complete response shall be supplied to each item on the Notification and Report Form and to any request for additional information pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20. Whenever the person filing notification is unable to supply a complete response, that person shall provide, for each item for which less than a complete response has been supplied, a statement of reasons for noncompliance. The statement of reasons for noncompliance shall contain all information upon which a person relies in explanation of its noncompliance and shall include at least the following:

(a) Why the person is unable to supply a complete response;

(b) What information, and what specific documents or categories of documents, would have been required for a complete response;

(c) Who, if anyone, has the required information, and specific documents or categories of documents; and a description of all efforts made to obtain such information and documents, including the names of persons who searched for required information and documents, and where the search was conducted. If no such efforts were made, provide an explanation of the reasons why, and a description of all efforts necessary to obtain required information and documents;

(d) Where noncompliance is based on a claim of privilege, a statement of the claim of privilege and all facts relied on in support thereof, including the identity of each document, its author, addressee, date, subject matter, all recipients of the original and of any copies, its present location, and who has control of it.

Also refer to:
Formal Interpretation,
September 13, 1979.

§ 803.4 Foreign persons refusing to file notification.

(a) In an acquisition to which § 801.30 does not apply, and in which no assets (other than investment assets) located in the United States and no voting securities of a United States issuer will be acquired directly or indirectly, if a foreign acquired person refuses to file notification, then any other person which is a party to the acquisition may file notification on behalf of the foreign person. Such notification shall constitute the notification required of the foreign person by the act and these rules.

(b) Any person filing on behalf of the foreign person pursuant to this section must state in the affidavit required by § 803.5(b) that such foreign person has refused to file notification and must explain all efforts made by the person filing on behalf of the foreign person to obtain compliance with the act and these rules by such foreign person.

(c) Any notification filed on behalf of a foreign person pursuant to this section must contain all information and documentary material reasonably available to the person filing on behalf of the foreign person which such foreign person would be required to provide. Whenever information or documentary material is not reasonably available, the person filing on behalf of the foreign person shall so indicate on the Notification and Report Form, and need not supply the statement of reasons for noncompliance required by § 803.3.

(d) Any foreign person on whose behalf notification has been filed by another person pursuant to this section shall be a "person filing notification" for purposes of the act and these rules. Nothing in this section shall exempt a foreign person from the requirements of the act or these rules with respect to a request for additional information or an extension of the waiting period pursuant to section 7A(e) and these rules.

§ 803.5 Affidavits required.

(a)(1) *Section 801.30 acquisitions.* For acquisitions to which § 801.30 applies, the notification required by the act from each acquiring person shall contain an affidavit, attached to the front of the notification, attesting that the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired has received notice in writing by certified or registered mail, by wire or by hand delivery, at its principal executive offices, of:

(i) The identity of the acquiring person;

(ii) The fact that the acquiring person intends to acquire voting securities of the issuer;

(iii) The specific classes of voting securities of the issuer sought to be acquired; and if known, the number of securities of each such class that would be held by the acquiring person as a result of the acquisition or, if the number is not known, the specific notification threshold that the acquiring person intends to meet or exceed; and, if designated by the acquiring person, a higher threshold for additional voting securities it may hold in the year following the expiration of the waiting period;

(iv) The fact that the acquisition may be subject to the act, and that the acquiring person will file notification under the act with the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General;

(v) The anticipated date of receipt of such notification under § 803.10(c); and

(vi) The fact that the person within which the issuer is included may be required to file notification under the act.

(2) The affidavit required by this paragraph must also state the good faith intention of the person filing notification to make the acquisition, and, in the case of a tender offer, that the intention to make the tender offer has been publicly announced.

Example: This paragraph permits the tender offeror to file notification at any time after the intention to make the tender offer has been publicly announced.

In examples 2–5 assume that one percent of B's shares are valued at $15 million.

2. "A" holds 100.000 shares of the voting securities of Company B. "A" has a good faith intention to acquire an additional 900.000 shares of Company B's voting securities. "A" states in its notice to B, inter alia, that as a result of the acquisition it will hold 1.000.000 shares. If 1.000.000 shares of Company B represents 20 percent of Company B's outstanding voting securities, the statement will be deemed by the enforcement agencies a notification for the 15 percent threshold.

3. Company A intends to acquire voting securities of Company B. "A" does not know exactly how many shares it will acquire, but it knows it will definitely acquire 15 percent and may acquire 50 percent of Company B's shares. "A"'s notice to the acquired person would meet the requirements of § 803.5(a)(1)(iii) if it states, inter alia, either: "Company A has a present good faith intention to acquire 15 percent of the outstanding voting securities of Company B, and depending on market conditions, may acquire more of the voting securities of Company B and thus designates the 50 percent threshold" or "Company A has a present good faith intention to acquire 15 percent of the outstanding voting securities of Company B, and depending on market conditions may acquire 50 percent or more of the voting securities of Company B." The Commission would deem either of these statements as intending to give notice for the 50 percent threshold.

4. "A" states, inter alia, that, "depending on market conditions, it may acquire 100 percent of the shares of B." "A"'s notice does not comply with § 803.5 because it does not state an intent to meet or exceed any notification threshold. "A"'s filing will be considered deficient within the meaning of § 803.10(c)(2).

5. "A" states, inter alia, that it has commenced a tender offer for "up to 55 percent of the outstanding voting securities of Company B." "A"'s notice does not comply with § 803.5 because use of the term "up to" does not state an intent to meet or exceed any notification threshold. The filing will therefore be considered deficient within the meaning of § 803.10 (c)(2).

(3) The affidavit required by this paragraph must have attached to it a copy of the written notice received by the acquired person pursuant to paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(b) *Non-section 801.30 acquisitions.* For acquisitions to which § 801.30 does not apply, the notification required by the act shall contain an affidavit, attached to the front of the notification, attesting that a contract, agreement in principle or letter of intent to merge or acquire has been executed, and further attesting to the good faith intention of the person filing notification to complete the transaction.

1978 Rule Amended 1983 and
March 6, 1987.

Also refer to:
Formal Interpretation,
December 28, 1978.

§ 803.6 Certification.

(a) The notification required by the act shall be certified:

(1) In the case of a partnership, by any general partner thereof;

(2) In the case of a corporation, by any officer or director thereof;

(3) In the case of a person lacking officers, directors, or partners, by any individual exercising similar functions;

(4) In the case of a natural person, by such natural person or his or her legal representative.

(5) In the case of the estate of a deceased natural person, by any duly authorized legal representative of such estate.

(b) Additional information or documentary material submitted in response to a request pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20 shall be accompanied by a certification in the format appearing at the end of the Notification and Report Form, completed in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section by the person or individual to whom it was directed.

(c) In all cases, the certifying individual must possess actual authority to make the certification on behalf of the person filing notification.

1978 Rule Amended 1983

§ 803.7 Expiration of notification.

Notification with respect to an acquisition shall expire 1 year following the expiration of the waiting period. If the acquiring person's holdings do not, within such time period, meet or exceed the notification threshold with respect to which the notification was filed, the requirements of the act must thereafter be observed with respect to any notification threshold not met or exceeded.

Example: A files notification that 26 percent of the voting securities of corporation B are to be acquired. One year after the expiration of the waiting period, A has acquired only 22 percent of B's voting securities. Although § 802.21 will permit "A" to purchase any amount of B's voting securities short of 25 percent within 5 years from the expiration of the waiting period, A's holdings may not meet or exceed the 25 percent notification threshold without "A" and "B" again filing notification and observing a waiting period.

§ 803.8 Foreign language documents.

(a) Whenever at the time of filing a Notification and Report Form there is an English language outline, summary, extract or verbatim translation of any information or of all or portions of any documentary materials in a foreign language required to be submitted by the act or these rules, all such English language versions shall be filed along with the foreign language information or materials.

(b) Documentary materials or information in a foreign language required to be submitted in responses to a request for additional information or documentary material shall be submitted with verbatim English language translations, or all existing English language versions, or both, as specified in such request.

New Rule 1983

§ 803.10 Running of time.

(a) *Beginning of waiting period.* The waiting period required by the act shall begin on the date of receipt of the notification required by the act, in the manner provided by these rules (or, if such notification is not completed, the notification to the extent completed and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance in accordance with § 803.3) from:

(1) In the case of acquisitions to which § 801.30 applies, the acquiring person;

(2) In the case of the formation of a joint venture or other corporation covered by § 801.40, all persons contributing to the formation of the joint

venture or other corporation that are required by the act and these rules to file notification;

(3) In the case of all other acquisitions, all persons required by the act and these rules to file notification.

(b) *Expiration of waiting period.* (1) For purposes of section 7A(b)(1)(B).

(2) In the case of all other acquisitions, all persons required by the act and these rules to file notification.

(b) *Expiration of waiting period.* (1) For purposes of section 7A(b)(1)(B), the waiting period shall expire at 11:59 p.m. Eastern Time on the 30th (or in the case of a cash tender offer, the 15th) calendar day (or if § 802.23 applies, such other day as that section may provide) following the beginning of the waiting period as determined under paragraph (a) of this section, unless extended pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20, or section 7A(g)(2), or unless terminated pursuant to section 7A(b)(2) and § 803.11.

(2) Unless further extended pursuant to section 7A(g)(2), or terminated pursuant to section 7A(b)(2) and § 803.11, any waiting period which has been extended pursuant to section 7A(e)(2) and § 803.20 shall expire at 11:59 p.m. Eastern Time—

(i) On the 20th (or, in the case of a cash tender offer, the 10th) day following the date of receipt of all additional information or documentary material requested from all persons to whom such requests have been directed (or, if a request is not fully complied with, the information and documentary material submitted and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance in accordance with § 803.3), by the Federal Trade Commission or Assistant Attorney General, whichever requested additional information or documentary material, at the office designated in paragraph (c) of this section, or

(ii) As provided in paragraph (b)(1) of this section, whichever is later.

(c)(1) *Date of receipt and means of delivery.* For purposes of this section the date of receipt shall be the date on which delivery is effected to the designated offices (Premerger Notification Office, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, D.C. 20580, and Director of Operations, Antitrust Division, Room 3214, Department of Justice, Washington, D.C. 20530) during normal business hours. Delivery effected after 5 p.m. eastern time on a regular business day, or at any time on any day other than a regular business day, shall be deemed effected on the next following regular business day. Delivery should be effected directly to the designated office(s), either by hand or by certified or registered mail. If delivery of all required filings to all offices required to receive such filings is not effected on the same date, the date of receipt shall be the latest of the dates on which delivery is effected.

Examples: 1. In an acquisition other than a cash tender offer, assume that a request for additional information is issued to a person on the second day of the waiting period, and that the person supplies the response 5 days later. Under subparagraph (b)(2)(ii), the waiting period remains in effect through the 30th day, even though the 20th day after receipt of such additional information would occur earlier.

2. In an acquisition other than a tender offer, assume that requests for additional information are issued to both the acquiring and acquired persons on the 26th day of the waiting period. One person submits the additional information on the 35th day, while the other responds on the 44th day. Under this section, the waiting period expires twenty days following the last receipt of additional information, that is, it expires on the 64th day.

(2) *Deficient filings.* If notification or a response to a request for additional information or documentary material received by the Commission or Assistant Attorney General does not comply with these rules, the Commission or the Assistant Attorney General shall promptly notify the person filing such notification or response of the deficiencies in such filing, and the date of receipt shall be the date on which a filing which complies with these rules is received.

1978 Rule Amended
March 6, 1987.

§ 803.11 Termination of waiting period.

(a) Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section, no waiting period shall be terminated pursuant to section 7A(b)(2) unless—

(1) All notifications required to be filed with respect to the acquisition by the act and these rules (or, if such notification is not completed, the notification to the extent completed and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance in accordance with § 803.3) have been received,

(2) It has been determined that no additional information or documentary material pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20 will be requested, or, if such additional information or documentary material has been requested, it (or, if a request is not fully complied with, the information and documentary material submitted and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance in accordance with § 803.3) has been received, and

(3) The Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General have concluded that neither intends to take any further action within the waiting period.

(b) Any request for additional information or documentary material pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20 shall constitute a denial of all pending requests for termination of the waiting period.

(c) The Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General may in their discretion terminate a waiting period upon the written request of any person filing notification, or, notwithstanding paragraph (a) of this section, sua sponte. A request for termination of the waiting period shall be sent to the offices designated in § 803.10(c). Termination shall be effective upon notice to any requesting person by telephone, and such notice shall be given as soon as possible. Such notice shall also be confirmed in writing to each person which has filed notification, and notice thereof shall be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER in accordance with section 7A(b)(2).

Example: See the example to § 803.20(c).

Also refer to:
(1) Formal Interpretation, August 20, 1982.
(2) Formal Interpretation, April 10, 1979.

§ 803.20 Requests for additional information or documentary material.

(a)(1) *Persons and individuals subject to request.* Pursuant to section 7A(e)(1), the submission of additional information or documentary material relevant to the acquisition may be required from one or more persons required to file notification, and, with respect to each such person, from one or more entities included therein, or from one or more officers, directors, partners, agents, or employees thereof, if so required by the same request.

Example: A request for additional information may require a corporation and, in addition, a named officer or employee to provide certain information or documents, if both the corporation and the officer or employee are named in the same request. See subparagraph (b)(3) of this section.

(2) All the information and documentary material required to be submitted pursuant to a request under paragraph (a)(1) of this section shall be supplied to the Commission or to the Assistant Attorney General, whichever made such request, at such location as may be designated in the request, or, if no such location is designated, at the office designated in § 803.10(c). If such request is not fully complied with, a statement of reasons for noncompliance pursuant to § 803.3 shall be provided for each item or portion of such request which is not full complied with.

(b)(1) *Who may require submission.* A request for additional information or documentary material with respect to an acquisition may be issued by the Federal Trade Commission or its designee, or by the Assistant Attorney General or his or her designee, but not by both to the same person, any entities included therein, or any officers, directors, partners, agents, or employees of that person.

(2) *When request effective.* A request for additional information or documentary material shall be effective—

(i) In the case of a written request, upon receipt of the request by the ultimate parent entity of the person to which the request is directed, (or, if another entity included within the person filed notification pursuant to § 803.2(a), then by such entity), within the original 30-day (or, in the case of a cash tender offer, 15-day) waiting period (or, if § 802.23 applies, such other period as that section provides); or

(ii) In the case of a written request, upon notice of the issuance of such request to the person to which it is directed within the original 30-day (or, in the case of a cash tender offer, 15-day) waiting period (or, if § 802.23 applies, such other period as that section provides), provided that written confirmation of the request is mailed to the person to which the request is directed within the original 30-day (or, in the case of a cash tender offer, 15-day) waiting period (or, if § 802.23 applies, such other period as that section provides). Notice to the person to which the request is directed may be given by telephone or in person. The person filing notification shall keep a designated individual reasonably available during normal business hours throughout the waiting period through the telephone number supplied on the certification page of the Notification and Report Form. Notice of a request for additional information or documentary material need be given by telephone only to that individual or to the individual designated in accordance with paragraph (b)(2)(iii) of this section. Upon the request of the individual receiving notice of the issuance of such a request, the full text of the request will be read. The written confirmation of the request shall be mailed to the ultimate parent entity of the person filing notification, or if another entity within the person filed notification pursuant to § 803.2(a), then to such entity.

(iii) When the individual designated in accordance with paragraph (b)(2)(ii) of this section is not located in the United States, the person filing notification shall designate an additional individual located within the United States to be reasonably available during normal business hours throughout the waiting period through a telephone number supplied on the certification page of the Notification and Report Form. This individual shall be designated for the limited purpose of receiving notification of the issuance of requests for additional information or documentary material in accordance with the procedure described in paragraph (b)(2)(ii) of this section.

(3) *Requests to natural persons.* A request addressed to an individual, requiring that he or she submit additional information or documentary material, shall be transmitted to the person filing notification of which the individual is an ultimate parent entity, officer, director, partner, agent or employee, and shall be effective as to that individual when effective as to the person filing notification pursuant to paragraph (b)(2) of this section. A written copy of the request shall also be delivered to the individual by hand, or by registered or certified mail at his or her home or business address.

Example: A designee of the Federal Trade Commission sends, by certified letter which is received within the 30-day waiting period, a written request for additional information to corporation W, the ultimate parent entity within a person which filed notification. The request is effective under clause (b)(2)(i). If the letter also addressed a request for documentary material to the secretary of corporation W, a named individual, under paragraph (b)(3), the request would likewise be effective as to the individual upon receipt of the letter by W. In the latter case, the Federal Trade Commission also would send a copy of the request to the Secretary of the corporation at his or her home or business address.

(c) *Waiting period extended.* (1) During the time period when a request for additional information or documentary material remains outstanding to any person other than, in the case of a tender offer, the person whose voting securities are sought to be acquired by the tender offeror (or any officer, director, partner, agent or employee thereof), the waiting period shall remain in effect, even though the waiting period would have expired (see § 803.10(b)) if no such request had been made.

(2) A request for additional information or documentary material to any person other than, in the case of a tender offer, the person whose voting securities are being acquired pursuant to the tender offer (or any officer, director, partner, agent or employee thereof) shall in every instance extend

the waiting period for a period of 20 (or, in the case of a cash tender offer, 10) calendar days from the date of receipt (as determined under § 803.10) of the additional information or documentary material requested.

Example: Acquiring person "A" desires to acquire voting securities of corporation X on a securities exchange, and files notification. Under § 801.30, the waiting period begins upon filing by "A," and "X" must file within 15 days thereafter. Assume that before the end of the waiting period, the Assistant Attorney General issues a request for additional information to "X." Since the transaction is not a tender offer, under paragraph (c)(1) the waiting period is extended until "X" supplies the requested information; under paragraph (c)(2), the waiting period is extended for 20 days beyond the date on which "X" responds.

Note that under § 803.21 "X" is obliged to respond to the request within a reasonable time; nevertheless, the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General could, notwithstanding the pendency of the request for additional information, terminate the waiting period sua sponte pursuant to § 803.11(c).

(d)(1) *Identification of requests.* Every request for additional information or documentary material shall be clearly identified as such, whether communicated in person, by telephone or in writing, and shall clearly identify the person, entity or entities, or individual(s) to which it is addressed.

(2) *Request for clarification.* No request for clarification or amplification of a response to any item on the Notification and Report Form, whether communicated in person, by telephone or in writing, shall be considered a request for additional information or documentary material within the meaning of section 7A(e) and this section.

1978 Rule Amended 1983

§ 803.21 Additional information shall be supplied within reasonable time.

All additional information or documentary material requested pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20 (or, if such request is not fully complied with, the information or documentary material submitted and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance in accordance with § 803.3) shall be supplied within a reasonable time.

§ 803.30 Formal and informal interpretations of requirements under the Act and the rules.

(a) The Commission staff may consider requests for formal or informal interpretations as to the obligations under the act and these rules of any party to an acquisition. A request for a formal interpretation shall be made in writing to the offices designated in § 803.10(c), and shall state:

(1) All facts which the applicant believes to be material, (2) the reasons why the requirements of the act are or may be applicable and (3) the question(s) that the applicant wishes resolved. The Commission staff may, in its discretion, render a formal or informal response to any request, however made, or may decline to render such advice.

(b) In the sole discretion of the staff, any request for interpretation may be referred to the Commission.

(c) Formal interpretations by the Commission staff or by the Commission shall be rendered with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General or his or her designee.

(d) Any formal interpretation shall be without prejudice to the right of either the Commission or the Assistant Attorney General to rescind any such interpretation rendered pursuant to this section. In the event of such rescission, the party which requested the interpretation shall be so notified in writing.

(e) The Commission shall publish a summary of formal interpretations by the Commission, and any rescissions thereof, in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

§ 803.90 Separability.

If any provision of the rules in this Subchapter (H) (including the Notification and Report Form) or the application of any such provision to any person or circumstances is held invalid, neither the other provisions of the rules nor the application of such provision to other persons or circumstances shall be affected thereby.

ANTITRUST IMPROVEMENTS ACT
NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM
for Certain Mergers and Acquisitions

INSTRUCTIONS

GENERAL

The Answer Sheets (pp. 1-16) constitute the Notification and Report Form ("the Form") required to be submitted pursuant to § 803.1(a) of the premerger notification rules ("the rules"). Filing persons need not, however, record their responses on the Form.

These Instructions specify the information which must be provided in response to the Items on the Answer Sheets. *Only* the completed Answer Sheets, together with all documentary attachments are to be filed with the Federal Trade Commission and the Department of Justice.

Persons providing responses on attachment pages rather than on answer sheets must submit a complete set of attachment pages with *each* copy of the Form.

The term "documentary attachments" refers to materials supplied in responses to Item 2(d), Item 4 and to submissions pursuant to §§ 803.1(b) and 803.11 of the rules.

Information—The central office for information and assistance concerning the rules, 16 CFR Parts 801-803, and the Form is Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, 6th St. & Pa. Ave., N.W., Washington, D.C. 20580, phone (202) 326-3100.

Definitions—The definitions and other provisions governing this Form are set forth in the rules, 16 CFR Parts 801-803. The governing statute, the rules, and the Statement of Basis and Purpose for the rules are set forth at 43 FR 33450 (July 31, 1978), 44 FR 66781 (November 22, 1979) and 48 FR 34427 (July 29, 1983).

Affidavit—Attach the affidavit required by § 803.5 to page 1 of the Form. Affidavits are not required if the person filing notification is an acquired person in a transaction covered by § 801.30. (See § 801.5(a).)

Responses—*Each answer* should identify the **Item** to which it is addressed. Use the reverse side of the corresponding answer sheet or attach separate additional sheets as necessary in answering each Item. Each additional sheet should identify at the top of the page the Item to which it is addressed. Voluntary submissions pursuant to § 803.1(b) should also be so identified.

Enter the name of the person filing notification appearing in Item 1(a) on page 1 of the Form and the date on which the Form is completed at the top of each page of the Form, at the top of any sheets attached to complete the response to any Item, and at the top of the first or cover page of each documentary attachment.

If unable to answer any Item fully, give such information as is available and provide a statement of reasons for noncompliance as required by § 803.3. If exact answers to any Item cannot be given, enter best estimates and indicate the sources or bases of such estimates. Estimated data should be followed by the notation, "est." All information should be rounded to the nearest thousand dollars.

Year—All references to "year" refer to calendar year. If the data are not available on a calendar year basis, supply the requested data for the fiscal year reporting period which most nearly corresponds to the calendar year specified. References to "most recent year" mean the most recent calendar or fiscal year for which the requested information is available.

SIC Data—This Notification and Report Form requests information regarding dollar revenues and lines of commerce at three levels with respect to operations conducted within the United States. (See § 803.2(c)(1).) *All persons* must submit certain data at the 4-digit (SIC code) *industry* level. To the extent that dollar revenues are derived from *manufactured operations* (SIC major groups 20-39), data must also be submitted at the *5-digit product class* and *7-digit product levels* (SIC based codes).

The term "dollar revenues" is defined in § 803.2(d).

References— In reporting information by "*4-digit (SIC code) industry*" refer to the 1972 edition of the *Standard Industrial Classification Manual* and its 1977 supplement published by the Executive Office of the President, Office of Management and Budget.

In reporting information by "*5-digit product class*" and "*7-digit product*" refer to one or both of the following reference publications published by the U.S. Bureau of the Census:

(a) Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products, *1982 Census of Manufactures and Census of Mineral Industries* (MC82-R-1). Make sure that the Numerical List you use has MC82-R-1 printed on the cover.

Note: Submit information using the codes in the columns labeled "Product code published." Do not submit information using the codes in the columns labeled "Product code collected".

(b) "Industry Series," (MC82-I Pamphlets 20A2-39D), *1982 Census of Manufactures*. (GPO Order No. 803-018-00000-6.)

Note: Do not submit information by product codes ending in 00 if the Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products listed above contains a further breakdown. Furthermore, when the Numerical List refers to Appendix C for detail collected in a specified Current Industrial Report ("CIR") for the following SIC code industries, you should provide revenue information using the 7-digit product codes listed in the CIR in the columns labeled "Published."

SIC 2392 (CIR MQ-23X) SIC 3261 (CIR MQ-34E)
SIC 3312, 3315, 3316 and 3317 (CIR MA-33B)
SIC 3357 (CIR MQ-33L) SIC 3431 (CIR MQ-34E)

Privacy Act Statement - Section 18a(a) of Title 15 of the U.S. Code authorizes the collection of this information. The primary use of this information is to determine whether the merger or acquisition reported in the Notification and Report Form may violate the antitrust laws. Furnishing the information on this Form is voluntary.

Consummation of an acquisition required to be reported by the statute cited above without having provided this information may, however, render a person liable to civil penalties up to $10,000 per day.

Items 5, 7, 8, 9 and the Insurance Appendix —Supply information *only* with respect to operations conducted within the United States, including its commonwealths, territories, possessions and the District of Columbia. (See §§ 801.1(k), 803.2(c)(1).)

Information need *not* be supplied regarding assets or voting securities currently being acquired, when the acquisition is exempt under the statute or rules. (See § 803.2(c)(2).)

Limited or separate responses may be required from the person filing notification. (See § 803.2(b).)

Filing—Complete and return two notarized copies (with *one set* of documentary attachments) of this Notification and Report Form to the Premerger Notification Office, Bureau of Competition, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, 6th Street and Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, D.C. 20580, and *three* notarized copies (with *one* set of documentary attachments) to Director of Operations, Antitrust Division, Department of Justice, Room 3218, 10th and Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, D.C. 20530.

ITEM BY ITEM

Affidavit—Attach the affidavit required by § 803.5 to page 1 of the Answer Sheets. Acquiring persons in transactions covered by § 801.30 are required to also submit a copy of the notice served on the acquired person pursuant to § 803.5 (a)(1). (See § 803.5(a)(3).)

Cash Tender Offer—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate whether the acquisition is a cash tender offer.

Early Termination —Put an X in the yes box to request early termination of the waiting period. Notification of each grant of early termination will be published in the Federal Register as required by § 7A(b)(2) of the Clayton Act.

ITEM 1

Item 1(a)—Give the name and headquarters address of the person filing notification. The name of the person is the name of the ultimate parent entity included within that person.

Item 1(b) —Indicate whether the person filing notification is an acquiring person, an acquired person, or both an acquiring and acquired person. (See § 801.2.)

Item 1(c)—Give the names of all ultimate parent entities of acquiring and acquired persons which are parties to the acquisition whether or not they are required to file notification.

Item 1(d)—Put an X in all the boxes that apply to this acquisition.

Item 1(e)—*Acquiring* persons put an X in the box to indicate the highest threshold for which notification is being filed (see § 801.1(h)): $15 million, 15%, 25%, or 50%.

Item 1(f)—All persons state the value of voting securities held as a result of the acquisition and/or the value of assets held as a result of the acquisition. (Insert responses to Item 3(c).)

Item 1(g)—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate whether the entity in Item 1(a) is a corporation, partnership, or other (specify).

Item 1(h)—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate whether data furnished is by calendar year or fiscal year. If fiscal year, specify period.

Item 1(i)—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate if this Form is being filed on behalf of the ultimate parent entity by another entity within the same person authorized by it to file notification on its behalf pursuant to § 803.2(a), or if this Form is being filed pursuant to § 803.4 on behalf of a foreign person. Then provide the name and mailing address of the entity filing notification on behalf of the reporting person named in Item 1(a) on the Form.

Item 1(j)—If an entity within the person filing notification other than the ultimate parent entity listed in Item 1(a) is the entity which is making the acquisition, or if the assets or voting securities of an entity other than the ultimate parent entity listed in Item 1(a) are being acquired, provide the name and mailing address of that entity and the percentage of its voting securities held by the person named in Item 1(a) above. (If control is effected by means other than the direct holding of the entity's voting securities, describe the intermediaries or the contract through which control is effected (see § 801.1(b)).

ITEM 2

Item 2(a)—*Description of acquisition*. Briefly describe the transaction. Include a list of the name and mailing address of each acquiring and acquired person, whether or not required to file notification. Indicate for each party whether assets or voting securities (or both) are to be acquired. Also indicate what consideration will be received by each party. In describing the acquisition, include the expected dates of any major events required to consummate the transaction (e.g., stockholders' meetings, filing of requests for approval, other public filings, terminations of tender offers) and the scheduled consummation date of the transaction.

If the voting securities are to be acquired from a holder other than the issuer (or an entity within the same person as the issuer) separately identify (if known) such holder and the issuer of the voting securities. Acquiring persons in tender offers should describe the terms of the offer.

Item 2(b)(i)—*Assets to be acquired*. This Item is to be completed only to the extent that the transaction is an acquisition of assets. Describe all general classes of assets (other than cash and securities) to be acquired by each party to the transaction giving approximate dollar values thereof. If the transaction is the formation of a joint venture or other corporation (see § 801.40), include assets to be acquired by the joint venture or other corporation.

Give the approximate total value or estimated total value of the assets to be acquired in this transaction.

Examples of general classes of assets other than cash and securities are land, merchandising inventory, manufacturing plants (specify location and products produced), and

retail stores. For each general class of assets, indicate the page or paragraph number of the contract or other document submitted with this Form in which the assets are more particularly described.

Item 2(b)(ii)—*Assets held by acquiring person*. (To be completed by acquiring persons.) If assets of the acquired person (see § 801.13) are presently held by the person filing notification, furnish a description of each general class of such assets in the manner required by Item 2(b)(i), and the dollar value or estimated dollar value at the time they were acquired.

Item 2(c)—*Voting securities to be acquired*. Furnish the following information separately for each issuer whose voting securities will be acquired in the acquisition: (If, as a result of the acquisition, the acquiring person will hold 100 percent of the voting securities of the acquired issuer or if the acquisition is a merger or consolidation (see § 801.2(d)), the parties may so state and provide the total dollar value of the transaction instead of responding to items 2(c)(i) - 2(c)(viii). However, this procedure may not be used if the acquiring person currently holds 15 percent or more than $15 million worth of the voting securities of the acquired person or of any entity included within the acquired person.)

Item 2(c)(i)—List each class of voting securities (including convertible voting securities) which will be outstanding after the acquisition has been completed. If there is more than one class of voting securities, include a description of the voting rights of each class. Also list each class of non-voting securities which will be acquired in the acquisition;

Item 2(c)(ii)—Total number of shares of each class of securities listed on page 3 which will be outstanding after the acquisition has been completed;

Item 2(c)(iii)—Total number of shares of each class of securities listed on page 3 which will be acquired in this acquisition. If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person;

Item 2(c)(iv)—Identity of each person acquiring any securities of any class listed on page 3. If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person;

Item 2(c)(v)—Dollar value of securities of each class listed on page 3 to be acquired in this transaction (see § 801.10). If there is more than one acquiring person of any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person; (If the exact dollar value cannot be determined at the time of filing, provide an estimated value and indicate the basis on which the estimate was made.)

Item 2(c)(vi)—Total number of each class of securities listed on page 3 which will be held by acquiring person(s) after the acquisition has been accomplished. If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person;

Item 2(c)(vii)—Percentage of each class of securities listed under 2(c)(vi) above which will be held by the acquiring person(s) after the acquisition has been completed (see § 801.12(b)). If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of security, show data separately for each acquiring person;

Item 2(c)(viii)—Dollar value (or estimated dollar value) of securities to be held as a result of the acquisition (see § 801.13).

Item 2(d)—Furnish copies of final or most recent versions of all documents which constitute the agreement among the acquiring person(s) and the person(s) whose voting securities or assets are to be acquired. (Do not attach these documents to page 4 of the Answer Sheets.)

ITEM 3

Assets and voting securities held as a result of the acquisition (to be completed by both acquiring and acquired persons). State:

Item 3(a)- the percentage of the assets;
Item 3(b)- the percentage of the voting securities;
Item 3(c)- the aggregate total dollar amount of voting securities and assets of the acquired person to be held by each acquiring person, as a result of the acquisition (see §§ 801.12, 801.13, and 801.14).

ITEM 4

Furnish one copy of each of the following documents. For each entity included within the person filing notification which has prepared its own such documents different from those prepared by the person filing notification, furnish, in addition, one copy of each document from each such other entity. Furnish copies of:

Item 4(a)—all of the following documents which have been filed with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission (or are to be filed contemporaneously in connection with this acquisition): the most recent proxy statement and Form 10-K, each dated not more than three years prior to the date of this Notification and Report Form; all Forms 10-Q and 8-K filed since the end of the period reflected by the Form 10-K being supplied; any registration statement filed in connection with the transaction for which notification is being filed; if the acquisition is a tender offer, Schedule 14D-1. Alternatively, if the person filing notification does not have copies of responsive documents readily available, identification of such documents and citation to date and place of filing will constitute compliance;

NOTE: In response to Item 4(a), the person filing notification may incorporate by reference documents submitted with an earlier filing as explained in the staff formal interpretations dated April 10, 1979, and April 7, 1981, and in § 803.2(e).

Item 4(b)—the most recent annual reports and most recent annual audit reports (of person filing notification and of each unconsolidated United States issuer included within such person) and, if different, the most recent regularly prepared balance sheet of the person filing notification and of each unconsolidated United States issuer included within such person;

Item 4(c)—all studies, surveys, analyses and reports which were prepared by or for any officer(s) or director(s) (or, in the case of unincorporated entities, individuals exercising similar functions) for the purpose of evaluating or analyzing the acquisition with respect to market shares, competition, competitors, markets, potential for sales growth or expansion into product or geographic markets, and indicate (if not contained in the document itself) the date of preparation, the name and title of each individual who prepared each such document.

Persons filing notification may provide an optional index of documents called for by Item 4 on page 5 of the Answer Sheets.

NOTE: If the person filing notification withholds any documents called for by Item 4(c) based on a claim of privilege, the person must provide a statement of reasons for such noncompliance as specified in the staff formal interpretation dated September 13, 1979, and § 803.3(d).

* * * *

ITEMS 5 through 9 and the Appendix

NOTE: *For Items 5 through 9 and the* **Appendix** *limited or separate responses may be required of the person filing notification. (See § 803.2(b) and (c).)*

ITEM 5

ITEMS 5(a) — 5(c): These Items request information regarding dollar revenues and lines of commerce at three levels with respect to operations conducted within the United States. (See § 803.2(c)(1).) All persons must submit certain data at the 4-digit (SIC code) *industry* level. To the extent that dollar revenues are derived from *manufacturing operations* (SIC major groups 20-39), data must also be submitted at the 5-digit *product class* and 7-digit *product levels* (SIC based codes).

Note: See the "References" listed in the General Instructions to the Form. Refer to the 1972 edition of the *Standard Industrial Classification Manual* and its 1977 supplement for the 4-digit (SIC code) industry codes. Refer to the Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products, *1982 Census of Manufactures and Census of Mineral Industries* (MC82-R-1) for the 5-digit product class and 7-digit product codes. Report revenues for the 5-digit and 7-digit codes using the codes in the columns labeled "Product code published." Do not report revenues using the columns labeled "Product code collected."

Insurance carriers (2-digit SIC major group 63) should supply the information requested only with respect to industries not within 2-digit major group 63. Credit agencies other than banks; security and commodity brokers, dealers, exchanges, and services; holding and other investment offices, and real estate companies (2-digit SIC major groups 61, 62, 67 and 65) should identify or explain the revenues reported (e.g., dollar sales, receipts).

Persons filing notification should include the total dollar revenues for 1982 derived by all entities included within the person filing notification at the time this Notification and Report Form is prepared (even if such entities have become included within the person since 1982). For example, if the person filing notification acquired an entity in 1984, it must include that entity's 1982 revenues in Items 5(a) and 5(b)(i).

Item 5(a)—*Dollar revenues by industry*. Provide aggregate 4-digit (SIC code) *industry* data for 1982.

Item 5(b)(i)—*Dollar revenues by manufactured product*. Provide the following information on the aggregate operations of the person filing notification for 1982 for each 7-digit product of the person in 2-digit SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries).

Do not provide 7-digit data for product codes ending in 00 if the Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products contains a further breakdown. See also the 'NOTE' on page I of the these instructions concerning required references to Appendix C of the Numerical List.

Item 5(b)(ii)—*Products added or deleted*. Within 2-digit SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries), identify each product of the person filing notification added or deleted subsequent to 1982, indicate the year of addition or deletion, and state total dollar revenues in the most recent year for each product that has been added. Products may be identified either by 7-digit product code or in the manner ordinarily used by the person filing notification.

Do not include products added since 1982 by reason of mergers or acquisitions occurring since 1982. Dollar revenues derived from such products should be included in response to Item 5(b)(i). However, if an entity acquired since 1982 by the person filing notification (and now included within the person) itself has added any products since 1982, these products and the dollar revenues derived therefrom should be listed here. Products deleted by reason of dispositions of assets or voting securities since 1982 should also be listed here.

Item 5(b)(iii)—*Dollar revenues by manufactured product class*. Provide the following information about the aggregate operations of the person filing notification for the most recent year for each 5-digit *product class* of the person within SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries). If such data have not been compiled for the most recent year, estimates of dollar revenues by 5-digit product class may be provided if a statement describing the method of estimation is furnished.

Item 5(c)—*Dollar revenues by non-manufacturing industry*. Provide the following information concerning the aggregate operations of the person filing notification for the most recent year for each 4-digit (SIC code) industry in SIC major groups other than 20-39 in which the person engaged. If such data have not been compiled for the most recent year, estimates of dollar revenues by 4-digit industry may be provided if a statement describing the method of estimation is furnished. Industries for which the dollar revenues totaled less than one million dollars in the most recent year may be omitted.

NOTE: *This million dollar minimum is applicable only to Item 5(c).*

Insurance carriers (2-digit SIC major group 63) should supply the information requested only with respect to industries not within SIC major group 63, and, if voting securities of an insurance carrier are being acquired directly or indirectly should complete the Insurance Appendix to this Form.

JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATIONS

Item 5(d)—Supply the following information only if the acquisition is the formation of a joint venture or other corporation. (See § 801.40.)

Item 5(d)(i)—List the name and mailing address of the joint venture or other corporation.

Item 5(d)(ii)(A)—List contributions that each person forming the joint venture or other corporation has agreed to make, specifying when each contribution is to be made and the value of the contribution as agreed by the contributors.

Item 5(d)(ii)(B)—Describe any contracts or agreements whereby the joint venture or other corporation will obtain assets or capital from sources other than the persons forming it.

Item 5(d)(ii)(C)—Specify whether and in what amount the persons forming the joint venture or other corporation have agreed to guarantee its credit or obligations.

Item 5(d)(ii)(D)—Describe fully the consideration which each person forming the joint venture or other corporation will receive in exchange for its contribution(s).

Item 5(d)(iii)—Describe generally the business in which the joint venture or other corporation will engage, including location of headquarters and principal plants, warehouses, retail establishments or other places of business, its principal types of products or activities, and the geographic areas in which it will do business.

Item 5(d)(iv)—Identify each 4-digit (SIC code) *industry* in which the joint venture or other corporation will derive dollar revenues. If the joint venture or other corporation will be engaged in manufacturing, also specify each 5-digit *product class* in which it will derive dollar revenues.

ITEM 6

This Item need not be completed by a person filing notification only as an acquired person if only assets are to be acquired. Persons filing notification may respond to Items 6(a), 6(b), or 6(c) by referencing a "documentary attachment" furnished with this Form if the information so referenced is a complete response and is up-to-date and accurate. Indicate for each Item the specific page(s) of the document that are responsive to that Item.

Item 6(a)—*Entities within person filing notification*. List the name and headquarters mailing address of each entity included within the person filing notification. Entities with total assets of less than $10 million may be omitted.

Item 6(b)—*Shareholders of person filing notification*. For each entity (including the ultimate parent entity) included within the person filing notification the voting securities of which are held (see § 801.1(c)) by one or more other persons, list the issuer and class of voting securities, the name and headquarters mailing address of each other person which holds five percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of the class, and the number and percentage held by that person. Holders need not be listed for entities with total assets of less than $10 million.

Item 6(c)—*Holdings of person filing notification*. If the person filing notification holds voting securities of any issuer not included within the person filing notification, list the issuer and class, the number and percentage held, and (optionally) the entity within the person filing notification which holds the securities. Holdings of less than five percent of the outstanding voting securities of any issuers, and holdings of issuers with total assets of less than $10 million, may be omitted.

ITEM 7

If, to the knowledge or belief of the person filing notification, the person filing notification derived dollar revenues in the most recent year from operations in any 4-digit (SIC code) industries in which any other person which is a party to the acquisition also derived dollar revenues in the most recent year (or in which a joint venture or other corporation will derive dollar revenues), then for each such 4-digit (SIC code) industry:

Item 7(a)—supply the 4-digit SIC code and description for the industry;

Item 7(b)—list the name of each person which is a party to the acquisition which also derived dollar revenues in the 4-digit industry;

Item 7(c)—*Geographic market information:*

Item 7(c)(i)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which, to the knowledge or belief of the person filing notification, the products in that 4-digit industry produced by the person filing notification are sold without a significant change in their form, whether they are sold by the person filing notification or by others to whom such products have been sold or resold;

Item 7(c)(ii)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 01-17 and 40-49 (agriculture, forestry and fishing, mining, construction, transportation, communications, electric, gas and sanitary services) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which the person filing notification conducts such operations;

Item 7(c)(iii)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 50-51 (wholesale trade) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states, (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which the customers of the person filing notification are located;

Item 7(c)(iv)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 52-61, 70, 75, 78, and 80 (retail trade, banking, and certain services) listed in Item 7(a) above, provide the address, arranged by state, county and city or town, of each establishment from which dollar revenues were derived in the most recent year by the person filing notification;

Item 7(c)(v)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major group 62, 64-67, 72, 73, 76, 79, and 81-89 (certain finance, insurance and real estate groups and certain services) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which establishments were located from which the person filing notification derived revenues in the most recent year; and

Item 7 (c)(vi)— for each 4-digit industry within SIC 63 (insurance) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the state(s) in which the person filing notification is licensed to write insurance.

NOTE: Except in the case of those SIC major industry groups mentioned in Item 7(c)(iv) above, the person filing notification may respond with the word "national" if business is conducted in all 50 states.

ITEM 8

Item 8—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate if the acquired person and an acquiring person maintained a vendor-vendee relationship during the most recent year with respect to any manufactured product (or, if the acquisition is the formation of a joint venture or other corporation (see § 801.40), if the joint venture or other corporation will supply to any of the persons forming it any manufactured product which such person purchased from another such person during the most recent year) which the vendee either resells or consumes in or incorporates into the manufacture of any product. Persons filing notification which are *vendees* of such product(s) should list each product purchased, identify each vendor which is a party to the acquisition from which the product was purchased and state the dollar amount of the product purchased from that vendor during the most recent year.

Manufactured products are those within 2-digit SIC major groups 20-39. Any product purchased from the vendor in an aggregate annual amount not exceeding $1 million, or the manufacture, consumption or use of which is not attributable to the assets to be acquired, or to the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired (including entities controlled by the issuer), may be omitted.

ITEM 9

Item 9—*Previous acquisitions* (to be completed by acquiring persons). Determine each 4-digit (SIC code) industry listed in Item 7(a) above, in which the person filing notification derived dollar revenues of $1 million or more in the most recent year and in which either the acquired issuer derived revenues of $1 million or more in the most recent year, (or in which, in the case of the formation of a joint venture or other corporation, the joint venture or other corporation reasonably can be expected to derive dollar revenues of $1 million or more), or revenues of $1 million or more in the most recent year were attributable to the acquired assets.

For each such 4-digit industry, list all acquisitions made by the person filing notification in the five years prior to the date of filing of entities deriving dollar revenues in that 4-digit industry. List only acquisitions of more than 50 percent of the voting securities or assets of entities which had annual net sales or total assets greater than $10 million in the year prior to the acquisition.

For each such acquisition, supply:
(a) the name of the entity acquired;
(b) the headquarters address of the entity prior to the acquisition;
(c) whether securities or assets were acquired;
(d) the consummation date of the acquisition;
(e) the annual net sales of the acquired entity for the year prior to the acquisition;
(f) the total assets of the acquired entity in the year prior to the acquisition; and
(g) the 4-digit (SIC code) industries (by number and description) identified above in which the acquired entity derived dollar revenues.

ITEM 10

Item 10(a)—Print or type the name and title, firm name, address, and telephone number of the individual to contact regarding this Notification and Report Form. (See § 803.20(b)(2)(ii).)

Item 10(b)—Foreign filing persons print or type the name and title, firm name, address, and telephone number of an individual located in the United States designated for the limited purpose of receiving notice of the issuance of a request for additional information or documentary material. (See § 803.20(b)(2)(iii).)

Certification—(See § 803.6.)

APPENDIX TO NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM: INSURANCE

Insurance carriers (2-digit SIC major group 63) are required to complete this Appendix if voting securities of an insurance carrier are being acquired directly or indirectly.

ITEM 1

Item 1(A)—*Life Insurance.* Provide for the most recent year the amount of premium receipts (calulated on the accrual basis) for each of the lines of insurance listed on page 16 of the Answer Sheets.

Item 1(B)—*New Business.* Provide for the most recent year the amount of new life insurance business issued in the United States (exclusive of revivals, increases, dividend additions and reinsurance ceded) for each of the lines of insurance listed on page 16 of the Answer Sheets.

ITEM 2

Item 2(A)—*Property Liability Insurance.* Provide for the most recent year the amount of direct premiums written in the United States for each line of insurance specified in Part 2 of the Underwriting and Investment Exhibit of your carrier's annual convention statement.

Item 2(B)—Provide for the most recent year the amount of net premiums written in the United States for each line of insurance specified in Part 2 of the Underwriting and Investment Exhibit of your carrier's annual convention statement.

ITEM 3

Item 3(A)—*Title Insurance.* Provide for the most recent year the amount of net direct title insurance premiums written in the United States.

Item 3(B)—Provide for the most recent year the amount of direct title insurance premiums earned in the United States.

16 C.F.R. Part 803 - Appendix

Approved by OMB
3084-0005
Expires 10-31-91

NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM FOR CERTAIN MERGERS AND ACQUISITIONS

THE INFORMATION REQUIRED TO BE SUPPLIED ON THESE **ANSWER SHEETS** IS SPECIFIED IN THE INSTRUCTIONS

➡ Attach the Affidavit required by § 803.5 to this page.

FOR OFFICE USE ONLY
TRANSACTION NUMBER

☐ CTO ☐ ETR

Is this Acquisition a CASH TENDER OFFER? ☐ YES ☐ NO

Do you request Early Termination of the Waiting Period? ☐ YES ☐ NO
(Grants of early termination are published in the Federal Register.)

ITEM 1

(a) NAME AND HEADQUARTERS ADDRESS OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION *(ultimate parent entity)*

(b) PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION IS

☐ an acquiring person ☐ an acquired person ☐ both

(c) LIST NAMES OF ULTIMATE PARENT ENTITIES OF ALL ACQUIRING PERSONS	LIST NAMES OF ULTIMATE PARENT ENTITIES OF ALL ACQUIRED PERSONS

(d) THIS ACQUISITION IS *(put an X in all the boxes that apply)*

☐ an acquisition of assets
☐ a merger (see § 801.2)
☐ an acquisition subject to § 801.2(e)
☐ formation of a joint venture or other corporation (see § 801.40)
☐ a consolidation (see § 801.2)
☐ an acquisition of voting securities
☐ a secondary acquisition
☐ an acquisition subject to § 801.31
☐ an acquisition subject to § 801.30 *(specify type)*: ____________________
☐ other *(specify)* ____________________

(e) INDICATE HIGHEST NOTIFICATION THRESHOLD IN § 801.1(h) FOR WHICH THIS FORM IS BEING FILED *(acquiring person only)*

☐ $ 15 million ☐ 15% ☐ 25% ☐ 50%

(f) VALUE OF VOTING SECURITIES	VALUE OF ASSETS

(g) PUT AN X IN THE APPROPRIATE BOX TO DESCRIBE ENTITY FILING NOTIFICATION

☐ corporation ☐ partnership ☐ other *(specify)* ____________________

(h) DATA FURNISHED BY

☐ calendar year ☐ fiscal year *(specify period)*: ____________ *(month/day)* to ____________ *(month/day)*

THIS FORM IS REQUIRED BY LAW and must be filed separately by each person which, by reason of a merger, consolidation or acquisition, is subject to § 7A of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. § 18a, as added by Section 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. No. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390, and rules promulgated thereunder (hereinafter referred to as "the rules" or by section number). The statute and rules are set forth in the *Federal Register* at 43 FR 33450; the rules may also be found at 16 CFR Parts 801-03. Failure to file this **Notification and Report Form**, and to observe the required waiting period before consummating the acquisition, in accordance with the applicable provisions of 15 U.S.C. § 18a and the rules, subjects any "person," as defined in the rules, or any individuals responsible for noncompliance, to liability for a penalty of not more than $10,000 for each day during which such person is in violation of 15 U.S.C. § 18a.

All information and documentary material filed in or with this Form is confidential. It is exempt from disclosure under the Freedom of Information Act, and may be made public only in an administrative or judicial proceeding, or disclosed to Congress or to a duly authorized committee or subcommittee of Congress.

Complete and return *two* notarized copies (with *one set* of documentary attachments) of this **Notification and Report Form** to Premerger Notification Office, Bureau of Competition, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, D.C. 20580, and *three* notarized copies (with *one set* of documentary attachments) to Director of Operations, Antitrust Division, Room 3218, Department of Justice, Washington, D.C. 20530. The central office for information and assistance with respect to matters in connection with this **Notification and Report Form** is Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, D.C. 20580, phone (202) 326-3100.

DISCLOSURE NOTICE - Public reporting burden for this report is estimated to vary from 8 to 160 hours per response, with an average of 39 hours per response, including time for reviewing instructions, searching existing data sources, gathering and maintaining the data needed, and completing and reviewing the collection of information. Send comments regarding the burden estimate or any other aspect of this report, including suggestions for reducing this burden:

Premerger Notification Office,
H-303
Federal Trade Commission
Washington, D.C. 20580

Office of Information and
Regulatory Affairs,
Office of Management and Budget
Washington, D.C. 20503

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

(i) PUT AN X IN THE APPROPRIATE BOX AND GIVE THE NAME AND ADDRESS OF ENTITY FILING NOTIFICATION (*if other than ultimate parent entity*)

☐ NA

☐ This report is being filed on behalf of a foreign person pursuant to § 803.4.

☐ This report is being filed on behalf of the ultimate parent entity by another entity within the same person authorized by it to file pursuant to § 803.2(a).

NAME OF ENTITY FILING NOTIFICATION	ADDRESS

(j) NAME AND ADDRESS OF ENTITY MAKING ACQUISITION OR WHOSE ASSETS OR VOTING SECURITIES ARE BEING ACQUIRED IF DIFFERENT FROM THE ULTIMATE PARENT ENTITY IDENTIFIED IN ITEM 1(a)

PERCENT OF VOTING SECURITIES HELD BY EACH ENTITY IDENTIFIED IN ITEM 1(a)

ITEM 2

2(a) DESCRIPTION OF ACQUISITION

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

2(b)(i) ASSETS TO BE ACQUIRED *(to be completed only for assets acquisitions)*

2(b)(ii) ASSETS HELD BY ACQUIRING PERSON

2(c) VOTING SECURITIES TO BE ACQUIRED

(c)(i) LIST AND DESCRIPTION OF VOTING SECURITIES AND LIST OF NON-VOTING SECURITIES:

(c)(ii) TOTAL NUMBER OF SHARES OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITY:

(c)(iii) TOTAL NUMBER OF SHARES OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITY BEING ACQUIRED:

(Item 2(c) continued on next page)

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

(c)(iv) IDENTITY OF PERSONS ACQUIRING SECURITIES:

(c)(v) DOLLAR VALUE OF SECURITIES IN EACH CLASS BEING ACQUIRED:

(c)(vi) TOTAL NUMBER OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITIES HELD BY ACQUIRING PERSON AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION:

(c)(vii) PERCENTAGE OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITIES HELD ACQUIRING PERSON AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION:

(c)(viii) DOLLAR VALUE OF SECURITIES TO BE HELD AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION

(d) SUBMIT A COPY OF THE MOST RECENT VERSION OF CONTRACT OR AGREEMENT (*or letter of intent to merge or acquire*)

DO **NOT** ATTACH THIS DOCUMENT TO THIS PAGE.

ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER OF CONTRACT OR AGGREEMENT ________

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 3

ASSETS AND VOTING SECURITIES HELD AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION

(a) PERCENTAGE OF ASSETS ________

(b) PERCENTAGE OF VOTING SECURITIES ________

(c) AGGREGATE TOTAL VALUE ________

ITEM 4

PERSONS FILING NOTIFICATION MAY PROVIDE BELOW AN OPTIONAL INDEX OF DOCUMENTS REQUIRED TO BE SUBMITTED BY ITEM 4 (SEE ITEM BY ITEM INSTRUCTIONS). THESE DOCUMENTS SHOULD **NOT** BE ATTACHED TO THIS PAGE.

(a) DOCUMENTS FILED WITH THE UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION.	ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER

(b) ANNUAL REPORTS, ANNUAL AUDIT REPORTS, AND REGULARLY PREPARED BALANCE SHEETS.	ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER

(c) STUDIES, SURVEYS, ANALYSES, AND REPORTS.	ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 5 (See the "References" listed in the General Instructions to the Form. Refer to the 1972 edition of the *Standard Industrial Classification Manual* and its 1977 Supplement for the 4-digit (SIC Code) industry codes. Refer to the Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products, *1982 Census of Manufactures and Census of Mineral Industries* (MC82-R-1) for the 5-digit product class and 7-digit product codes. Report revenues for the 5-digit and 7-digit codes using the codes in the columns labeled "Product code published." Do not report revenues using codes in the columns labeled "Product code Collected.")

5(a) DOLLAR REVENUES BY INDUSTRY

4-DIGIT INDUSTRY CODE *Product code published*	DESCRIPTION	1982 TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 5(b)(I) DOLLAR REVENUES BY MANUFACTURED PRODUCTS

7-DIGIT PRODUCT CODE *Product code published*	DESCRIPTION	1982 TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 5(b)(ii) PRODUCTS ADDED OR DELETED

DESCRIPTION (7-DIGIT PRODUCT CODE)	ADD	DELETE	YEAR OF CHANGE	TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

ITEM 5(b)(iii) DOLLAR REVENUES BY MANUFACTURED PRODUCT CLASS

5-DIGIT PRODUCT CLASS CODE *Product code published*	DESCRIPTION	YEAR ______ TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

(item 5(b)(iii) continued on page 9)

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

5(b)(iii) DOLLAR REVENUES BY MANUFACTURED PRODUCT CLASS - CONTINUED

5-DIGIT PRODUCT CLASS CODE	DESCRIPTION	YEAR ________ TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

5(c) DOLLAR REVENUES BY NON-MANUFACTURING INDUSTRY

4-DIGIT INDUSTRY CODE	DESCRIPTION	YEAR ________ TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

5(d) COMPLETE ONLY IF ACQUISITION IS THE FORMATION OF A JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATION

5(d)(i) NAME AND ADDRESS OF THE JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATION

5(d)(ii)

(A) CONTRIBUTIONS THAT EACH PERSON FORMING THE JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATION HAS AGREED TO MAKE.

(B) DESCRIPTION OF ANY CONTRACTS OR AGREEMENTS.

(C) DESCRIPTION OF ANY CREDIT GUARANTEES OR OBLIGATIONS.

(D) DESCRIPTION OF CONSIDERATION WHICH EACH PERSON FORMING THE JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATION WILL RECEIVE.

5(d)(iii) DESCRIPTION OF THE BUSINESS IN WHICH THE JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATION WILL ENGAGE.

5(d)(iv) SOURCE OF DOLLAR REVENUES BY 4-DIGIT SIC CODE (*non-manufacturing*) AND BY 5-DIGIT PRODUCT CLASS (*manufacturing*).

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 6

6(a) ENTITIES WITHIN PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

6(b) SHAREHOLDERS OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

6(c) HOLDINGS OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

ITEM 7 DOLLAR REVENUES

7(a) 4-DIGIT SIC CODE AND DESCRIPTION

7(b) NAME OF EACH PERSON WHICH ALSO DERIVED DOLLAR REVENUES

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

7(c) GEOGRAPHIC MARKET INFORMATION

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 8 VENDOR-VENDEE RELATIONSHIP

☐ NO ☐ YES (*If yes and you are the vendee, complete the following*)

PRODUCT PURCHASES	VENDOR	DOLLAR AMOUNT

ITEM 9 PRIOR ACQUISITIONS (*to be completed by acquiring person only*)

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 10 IDENTIFICATION OF PERSON TO CONTACT REGARDING THIS REPORT

10(a) NAME OF CONTACT PERSON	TITLE OF CONTACT PERSON
FIRM NAME AND BUSINESS ADDRESS	BUSINESS TELEPHONE NUMBER

10(b) IDENTIFICATION OF AN INDIVIDUAL LOCATED IN THE UNITED STATES DESIGNATED FOR THE LIMITED PURPOSE OF RECEIVING NOTICE OF ISSUANCE OF A REQUEST FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION OR DOCUMENTS. *(See § 803.20(b)(2)(iii))*

NAME	TITLE
ADDRESS	BUSINESS TELEPHONE NUMBER

CERTIFICATION

This **NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM**, together with any and all appendices and attachments thereto, was prepared and assembled under my supervision in accordance with instructions issued by the Federal Trade Commission. Subject to the recognition that, where so indicated, reasonable estimates have been made because books and records do not provide the required data, the information is, to the best of my knowledge, true, correct, and complete in accordance with the statute and rules.

NAME *(Please print or type)*	TITLE
SIGNATURE	DATE

Subscribed and sworn to before me at the

City of ____________________, State of ________________

this ____________________ day of ____________________, 19____.

Signature ________________________________

My Commission expires ________________________.

[SEAL]

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

APPENDIX: INSURANCE

ITEM 1

	YEAR AMOUNT
A PREMIUM RECEIPTS	
1 LIFE INSURANCE	
1a. ORDINARY LIFE INSURANCE	
1b. GROUP LIFE INSURANCE (Including Federal Employees' Group Life Insurance and Servicemen's Group Life Insurance, but excluding credit life insurance).	
1c. INDUSTRIAL LIFE INSURANCE	
1d. CREDIT LIFE INSURANCE	
2 ANNUITY CONSIDERATIONS	
2a. INDIVIDUAL ANNUITY CONSIDERATIONS	
2b. GROUP ANNUITY CONSIDERATIONS	
3 HEALTH INSURANCE	
3a. INDIVIDUAL HEALTH INSURANCE	
3b. GROUP HEALTH INSURANCE	
TOTAL	

B NEW BUSINESS	YEAR AMOUNT
1 ORDINARY LIFE INSURANCE	
2 GROUP LIFE INSURANCE	
3 INDUSTRIAL LIFE INSURANCE	
4 CREDIT LIFE INSURANCE	
TOTAL	

ITEM 2 PROPERTY LIABILITY INSURANCE

YEAR

LINE OF INSURANCE	A. DIRECT PREMIUMS	B. NET PREMIUMS

ITEM 3 TITLE INSURANCE

A. NET DIRECT PREMIUMS WRITTEN	B. DIRECT PREMIUMS EARNED	YEAR

FEDERAL REGISTER NOTICES

federal register

MONDAY, JULY 31, 1978
PART II

THE NATIONAL ARCHIVES OF THE UNITED STATES • 1934 •

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

■

HART–SCOTT–RODINO ANTITRUST IMPROVEMENTS ACT OF 1976

Premerger Notification; Reporting and Waiting Period Requirements

ERRATA

This reprint incorporates materials from the Federal Register of July 31, 1978 (volume 43, pages 33450-33557) and the Federal Register of August 4, 1978 (volume 43, pages 34443-34453). The latter publication corrected the effective date from August 30, 1978, to September 5, 1978. The typographical and other errors appearing in the reprint that may be confusing or misleading were corrected and republished in the Federal Register of August 15, 1978 (volume 43, pages 36053-36054) and appear below:

The corrections in the FEDERAL REGISTER of July 31, 1978, beginning at page 33450 follow:

1. On page 33450, in column 2, on line 45 the dollar figure is corrected to read "$100,000,000."

2. On page 33452, in column 3, on line 34, the Federal Reports Act citation is corrected to read "44 U.S.C. 3512", and on line 40, the FEDERAL REGISTER page number is corrected to read "33450".

3. On page 33453, in column 2, on line 35, the rule citation is corrected to read "§ 801.1(c)."

4. On page 33457, in column 1, on line 16, the rules citation is corrected to read "Section 801.1(b);" in column 2, on line 41, the word "from" is inserted after the third word.

5. On page 33462, in column 2, on line 51, the rules citation is corrected to read "§ 801.32;" in column 3, on line 39 the year is corrected to read "1976."

6. On page 33463, in column 2, on line 29 and in column 3, on line 9, the rules citations are corrected to read "801.1(f)(3)."

7. On page 33464, in column 3, on line 46, the statutory citation is corrected to read "section 7A (a)(1) and (a)(2)."

8. On page 33465, in column 2, on line 46, the rules citation is corrected to read "Section 801.1(l)(2)."

9. On page 33485, in column 1, on line 65 the last word is corrected to read "an."

10. On page 33489, in column 1, on line 41, the rules citation is corrected to read "§ 802.6,".

11. On page 33492, in column 1, on line 66, the rule citation is corrected to read "§ 801.1(l)(2)."

12. On page 33524, in column 3, on line 13, the citation is corrected to read "14D-1."

13. On page 33535, in column 2, on lines 26 and 27 and in column 3 on lines 6 and 7, the comment period dates are corrected to read "Dec. 20, 1976-Feb. 18, 1977;" in column 3, on line 68 the comment date is corrected to read "1-11-77," and on line 89, the comment date is corrected to read "2-15-77."

14. On page 33536, in column 1, on lines 6 and 7 and in column 2, on lines 6 and 7, the comment period dates are corrected to read "Dec. 20, 1976-Feb. 18, 1977;" in column 3, on lines 49 and 78, the numbers at the end of the lines are deleted; on line 50, the comment number "1033" is inserted, and on line 79, the comment number "1049" is inserted.

15. On page 33537, in column 3, line 6 is corrected to read "§ 801.32 Conversion an acquisition."

16. On page 33539, in column 3, on line 18, the third word is corrected to read "any."

17. On page 33541, in column 1, on line 8, and on line 64, the semicolons and the words "and" are deleted.

18. On page 33543, in column 1, on line 13 the first word is corrected to read "than."

19. On page 33545, in column 3, on line 61, the third word is corrected to read "20th," on line 64, the fourth word and on line 74, the second word is corrected to read "30th."

20. On page 33548, in column 1 on line 40, the citation is corrected to read "Sec. 7A(d)," and on line 50, the citation is corrected to read "15 U.S.C. 18A(d)".

21. On page 33549, in column 3, on line 74, the sixth word is corrected to read "30th."

22. On page 33550, in column 1, a second example to 803.10(c) was deleted. That example is inserted and follows:

2. In an acquisition other than a tender offer, assume that requests for additional information are issued to both the acquiring and acquired persons on the 24th day of the waiting period. One person submits the additional information on the 35th day, while the other responds on the 44th day. Under this section, the waiting period expires twenty days following the last receipt of additional information, that is, it expires on the 64th day.

23. On page 33453, in column 3, on line 37, the phrase "or total assets" is inserted at the end of the line.

The corrections in the FEDERAL REGISTER of August 4, 1978, beginning at page 34443 follow:

1. On page 34443, item 2, parts (a) through (d)(ii) are out of sequence and should appear after item 1(f) and before item 2(e).

2. On page 34447, the number "3" was deleted from the beginning of item 3 and is corrected to read:

"3 *Holdings of acquiring persons.*"

3. On page 34448, line 6 of item 5(b)(ii) is corrected to read:

"Dollar revenues derived in 1972 by entities or assets acquired since that time . . ."

Dated: August 7, 1978.

CAROL M. THOMAS,
Secretary.

[FR Doc. 78-22683 Filed 8-14-78; 8:45 am]

[6750-01]

Title 16—Commercial Practices

CHAPTER I—FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

SUBCHAPTER H—RULES, REGULATIONS, STATEMENTS AND INTERPRETATIONS UNDER THE HART-SCOTT-RODINO ANTITRUST IMPROVEMENTS ACT OF 1976

PREMERGER NOTIFICATION; REPORTING AND WAITING PERIOD REQUIREMENTS

AGENCY: Federal Trade Commission.

ACTION: Promulgation of final rules.

SUMMARY: The purpose of this document is formally to promulgate final rules implementing title II of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, relating to premerger notification. The document consists of final rules, including a Notification and Report Form, and a statement of basis and purpose. Under the statute, the Federal Trade Commission was directed to promulgate, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice, rules implementing a premerger notification program. The effect of the final rules is to implement such a program, by explaining the coverage of the program, certain exemptions from the program, and the means by which persons must comply with their obligations under the program.

EFFECTIVE DATE: August 30, 1978.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT:

Malcolm R. Pfunder, Associate Director for Premerger Notification, Bureau of Competition, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, D.C. 20580, telephone: 202-523-3894.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION: Section 7A of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a, as added by sections 201 and 202 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, requires persons contemplating certain mergers or acquisitions to give the Commission and the Assistant Attorney General advance notice and to wait certain designated periods before consummation of such plans. The transactions to which the advance notice requirement is applicable and the length of the waiting periods required are set out in the act, the complete text of which is reprinted below.

The rules are divided into three parts. Part 801 defines a number of the terms used in the act and the rules and explains which acquisitions are subject to reporting and waiting period requirements. Part 802 contains a number of exemptions from these requirements. Part 803 explains the procedures for complying with the act. The Notification and Report Form, which is completed by persons required to file notification, is an appendix to part 803 of the rules. The amendment to the Clayton Act does not change the standards used in determining the legality of mergers and acquisitions, but instead provides the enforcement agencies with advance notice of, and information about, certain transactions, and with an opportunity to seek a preliminary injunction in Federal district court to prevent consummation of any such transactions which may, if consummated, violate the antitrust laws.

Section 7A of the Clayton Act provides:

"Sec. 7A. (a) Except as exempted pursuant to subsection (c), no person shall acquire, directly or indirectly, any voting securities or assets of any other person, unless both persons (or in the case of a tender offer, the acquiring person) file notification pursuant to rules under subsection (d)(1) and the waiting period described in subsection (b)(1) has expired, if—

"(1) the acquiring person, or the person whose voting securities or assets are being acquired, is engaged in commerce or in any activity affecting commerce;

"(2) (A) any voting securities or assets of a person engaged in manufacturing which has annual net sales or total assets of $10,000,000 or more are being acquired by any person which has total assets or annual net sales of $10,000,000 or more;

"(B) any voting securities or assets of a person not engaged in manufacturing which has total assets of $10,000,000 or more are being acquired by any person which has total assets or annual net sales of $100,000,000or more; or

"(C) any voting securities or assets of a person with annual net sales or total assets of $100,000,000 or more are being acquired by any person with total assets or annual net sales of $10,000,000 or more; and

"(3) as a result of such acquisition, the acquiring person would hold—

"(A) 15 per centum or more of the voting securities or assets of the acquired person, or

"(B) an aggregate total amount of the voting securities and assets of the acquired person in excess of $15,000,000.

In the case of a tender offer, the person whose voting securities are sought to be acquired by a person required to file notification under this subsection shall file notification pursuant to rules under subsection (d).

"(b) (1) The waiting period required under subsection (a) shall—

"(A) begin on the date of the receipt by the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice (hereinafter referred to in this section as the 'Assistant Attorney General') of—

"(i) the completed notification required under subsection (a), or

"(ii) if such notification is not completed, the notification to the extent completed and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance,

from both persons, or, in the case of a tender offer, the acquiring person; and

"(B) end on the thirtieth day after the date of such receipt (or in the case of a cash tender offer, the fifteenth day), or on such later date as may be set under subsection (e)(2) or (g)(2).

"(2) The Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General may, in individual cases, terminate the waiting period specified in paragraph (1) and allow any person to proceed with any acquisition subject to this section, and promptly shall cause to be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER a notice that neither intends to take any action within such period with respect to such acquisition.

"(3) As used in this section—

"(A) The term 'voting securities' means any securities which at present or upon conversion entitle the owner or holder thereof to vote for the election of dirctors of the issuer or, with respect to unincorporated issuers, persons exercising similar functions.

"(B) The amount of percentage of voting securities or assets of a person which are acquired or held by another person shall be determined by aggregating the amount or percentage of such voting securities or assets held or acquired by such other person and each affiliate thereof.

"(c) The following classes of transactions are exempt from the requirements of this section—

"(1) acquisitions of goods or realty transferred in the ordinary course of business;

"(2) acquisitions of bonds, mortgages, deeds of trust, or other obligations which are not voting securities;

"(3) acquisitions of voting securities of an issuer at least 50 per centum of the voting securities of which are owned by the acquiring person prior to such acquisitions;

"(4) transfers to or from a Federal agency or a State or political subdivision thereof;

"(5) transactions specifically exempted from the antitrust laws by Federal statute;

"(6) transactions specifically exempted from the antitrust laws by Federal statute if approved by a Federal agency, if copies of all informa-

READEX FICHE best copy available

tion and documentary material filed with such agency are contemporaneously filed with the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General;

"(7) transactions which require agency approval under section 18(c) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1828(c)), or section 3 of the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956 (12 U.S.C. 1842);

"(8) transactions which require agency approval under section 4 of the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956 (12 U.S.C. 1843), sections 403 and 408(e) of the National Housing Act (12 U.S.C. 1726 and 1730(a), or section 5 of the Home Owners' Loan Act of 1933 (12 U.S.C. 1464), if copies of all information and documentary material filed with any such agency are contemporaneously filed with the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General at least 30 days prior to consummation of the proposed transaction;

"(9) acquisition, solely for the purpose of investment, of voting securities, if, as a result of such acquisition, the securities acquired or held do not exceed 10 per centum of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer;

"(10) acquisitions of voting securities, if, as a result of such acquisition, the voting securities acquired do not increase, directly or indirectly, the acquiring person's per centum share of outstanding voting securities of the issuer;

"(11) acquisitions, solely for the purpose of investment, by any bank, banking association, trust company, investment company, or insurance company, of (A) voting securities pursuant to a plan of reorganization or dissolution; or (B) assets in the ordinary course of its business; and

"(12) such other acquisitions, transfers, or transactions, as may be exempted under subsection (d)(2)(B).

"(d) The Federal Trade Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General and by rule in accordance with section 553 of title 5, United States Code, consistent with the purposes of this section—

"(1) shall require that the notification required under subsection (a) be in such form and contain such documentary material and information relevant to a proposed acquisition as is necessary and appropriate to enable the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General to determine whether such acquisitions may, if consummated, violate the antitrust laws; and

"(2) may—

"(A) define the terms used in this section;

"(B) exempt, from the requirements of this section, classes of persons, acquisitions, transfers, or transactions which are not likely to violate the antitrust laws; and

"(C) prescribe such other rules as may be necessary and appropriate to carry out the purposes of this section.

"(e)(1) The Federal Trade Commission or the Assistant Attorney General may, prior to the expiration of the 30-day waiting period (or in the case of a cash tender offer, the 15-day waiting period) specified in subsection (b)(1) of this section, require the submission of additional information or documentary material relevant to the proposed acquisition, from a person required to file notification with respect to such acquisition under subsection (a) of this section prior to the expiration of the waiting period specified in subsection (b)(1) of this section, or from any officer, director, partner, agent, or employee of such person.

"(2) The Federal Trade Commission or the Assistant Attorney General, in its or his discretion, may extend the 30-day waiting period (or in the case of a cash tender offer, the 15-day waiting period) specified in subsection (b)(1) of this section for an additional period of not more than 20 days (or in the case of a cash tender offer, 10 days) after the date on which the Federal Trade Commission or the Assistant Attorney General, as the case may be, receives from any person to whom a request is made under paragraph (1), or in the case of tender offers, the acquiring person, (A) all the information and documentary material required to be submitted pursuant to such a request, or (B) if such request is not fully complied with, the information and documentary material submitted and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance. Such additional period may be further extended only by the United States district court, upon an application by the Federal Trade Commission or the Assistant Attorney General pursuant to subsection (g)(2).

"(f) If a proceeding is instituted or an action is filed by the Federal Trade Commission, alleging that a proposed acquisition violates section 7 of this Act or section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, or an action is filed by the United States, alleging that a proposed acquisition violates such section 7 or section 1 or 2 of the Sherman Act, and the Federal Trade Commission or the Assistant Attorney General (1) files a motion for a preliminary injunction against consummation of such acquisition pendente lite, and (2) certifies to the United States district court for the judicial district within which the respondent resides or carries on business, or in which the action is brought, that it or he believes that the public interest requires relief pendente lite pursuant to this subsection—

"(A) upon the filing of such motion and certification, the chief judge of such district court shall immediately notify the chief judge of the United States court of appeals for the circuit in which such district court is located, who shall designate a United States district judge to whom such action shall be assigned for all purposes; and

"(B) the motion for a preliminary injunction shall be set down for hearing by the district judge so designated at the earliest practicable time, shall take precedence over all matters except older matters of the same character and trials pursuant to section 3161 of title 18, United States Code, and shall be in every way expedited.

"(g)(1) Any person, or any officer, director, or partner thereof, who fails to comply with any provision of this section shall be liable to the United States for a civil penalty of not more than $10,000 for each day during which such person is in violation of this section. Such penalty may be recovered in a civil action brought by the United States.

"(2) If any person, or any officer, director, partner, agent, or employee thereof, fails substantially to comply with the notification requirement under subsection (a) or any request for the submission of additional information or documentary material under subsection (e)(1) of this section within the waiting period specified in subsection (b)(1) and as may be extended under subsection (e)(2), the United States district court—

"(A) may order compliance;

"(B) shall extend the waiting period specified in subsection (b)(1) and as may have been extended under subsection (e)(2) until there has been substantial compliance, except that, in the case of a tender offer, the court may not extend such waiting period on the basis of a failure, by the person whose stock is sought to be acquired, to comply substantially with such notification requirement or any such request; and

"(C) may grant such other equitable relief as the court in its discretion determines necessary or appropriate.

upon application of the Federal Trade Commission or the Assistant Attorney General.

"(h) Any information or documentary material filed with the Assistant Attorney General or the Federal Trade Commission pursuant to this section shall be exempt from disclosure under section 552 of title 5, United States Code, and no such information or documentary material may be made public, except as may be relevant to any administrative or judicial action or proceeding. Nothing in this section is intended to prevent disclosure to either body of Congress or to any duly authorized committee or subcommittee of the Congress.

"(i)(1) Any action taken by the Federal Trade Commission or the Assistant Attorney General or any failure of the Federal Trade Commission or the Assistant Attorney General to take any action under this section shall not bar any proceeding or any action with respect to such acquisition at any time under any other section of this Act or any other provision of Law.

"(2) Nothing contained in this section shall limit the authority of the Assistant Attorney General or the Federal Trade Commission to secure at any time from any person documentary material, oral testimony, or other information under the Antitrust Civil Process Act, the Federal Trade Commission Act, or any other provision of law.

"(j) Beginning not later than January 1, 1978, the Federal Trade Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, shall annually report to the Congress on the operation of this section. Such report shall include an assessment of the effects of this section, of the effects, purpose, and need for any rules promulgated pursuant thereto, and any recommendations for revisions of this section."

STATEMENT OF BASIS AND PURPOSE OF RULES IMPLEMENTING TITLE II OF THE HART-SCOTT-RODINO ANTITRUST IMPROVEMENTS ACT OF 1976

On September 30, 1976, President Gerald Ford signed into law the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390. Section 201 of that statute added a new section 7A to the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18A (referred to in this Statement of Basis and Purpose as "the act"), relating to premerger notification.

The act creates a requirement that "persons" of specified size or larger which intend to make voting securities or asset acquisitions of specified size or larger, must report their intentions in advance and provide information relevant to the transaction to the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice and to the Federal Trade Commission. After reporting, those persons must wait a prescribed period of time before consummating the reported transaction. That waiting period may be extended by either enforcement agency by means of a request for additional information or documentary material. The act also contains 11 specific types of exemptions, along with a grant of rulemaking authority to define any terms used in the act, to create additional exemptions, and generally to carry out the purposes of the act.

The act provides for expedited consideration by a Federal district court in the event that either agency seeks a preliminary injunction to prevent consummation of an acquisition. It also contains penalty and enforcement provisions, a requirement that information filed by reporting persons not be made public except under certain circumstances, provisions clarifying the relationship between the act and certain substantive and procedural aspects of other antitrust laws, and the requirement of an annual report to the Congress.

Rulemaking authority under section 7A(d) of the act is conferred upon the Federal Trade Commission, and that provision requires that the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice (referred to hereafter as the "Assistant Attorney General") concur in the rules. That section also makes applicable the informal rulemaking procedures of the Administrative Procedure Act, 5 U.S.C. 553, and requires that any rules issued must be consistent with the purposes of the act.

Section 553 of the Administrative Procedure Act requires that an agency that intends to promulgate rules must first publish a "general notice of proposed rulemaking" in the FEDERAL REGISTER. After giving notice, the agency is required to "give interested persons an opportunity to participate in the rulemaking through submission of written data, views, arguments with or without opportunity for oral presentation." Thereafter the agency may adopt and issue final rules; incorporated in those rules must be "a concise general statement of their basis and purpose." The statute also requires that final rules of a substantive nature normally be published or served upon affected persons not less than 30 days before their effective date.

On December 15, 1976, the Federal Trade Commission, with the informal concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, issued proposed rules and a proposed Notification and Report Form (sometimes referred to hereafter as the "form") to implement the act. The proposed rulemaking was published in the FEDERAL REGISTER of December 20, 1976, 41 FR 55488, and is hereafter referred to as the "original" rules and form. The 30-day comment period was extended by the Commission on January 12, 1977, and expired on February 18, 1977. One hundred thirty-three comments became part of the rulemaking record in connection with the original rules and form. A list of these comments, and of those received during the later comment period, appears at the end of the Statement of Basis and Purpose. Each comment has been assigned a number, and throughout this statement individual comments are referred to by these numbers.

Because of the extensiveness of public comment, it became clear to the Commission that some substantial revisions would have to be made in the original rules. On July 25, 1977, the Commission determined that additional public comment on the rules would be desirable and approved revised proposed rules and a revised proposed Notification and Report Form (hereafter referred to as the "revised" rules and form). The revised rules and form were published in the FEDERAL REGISTER of August 1, 1977, 42 FR 39040, and a 30-day comment period began on that date. In response to numerous requests for additional time for comment, the Commission on August 23, 1977, extended the comment period by 30 days, through September 30, 1977. A total of 116 comments were received on the revised rules and form.

Additional changes in the revised rules and form were made after the close of the comment period, and on February 14, 1978, the Commission gave its interim approval to final versions of the rules and form (referred to hereafter as the "final" rules and form). The Notification and Report Form was then transmitted to the General Acounting Office for review under the Federal Reports Act, 44 U.S.C. 3502. The General Accounting Office submitted its report to the Commission on May 12, 1978. The Commission formally promulgated the final rules and form and issued this Statement of Basis and Purpose on July 10, 1978. The Assistant Attorney General gave his formal concurrence on July 18, 1978. The final rules and form and this Statement of Basis and Purpose were published in the FEDERAL REGISTER of July 31, 1978, 43 FR 33451, and will become effective on August 30, 1978.

THE TRANSITIONAL RULE

Section 202 of the Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 specified that section 201, containing new section 7A of the Clayton Act, would become effective 150 days after enactment, except for the rulemaking provisions contained in section 7A(d), which became effective upon enactment. Because final rules could not be promulgated prior to the effective date of the act (February 27, 1977), the Commission on January 27, 1977, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, promulgated a final rule, designated the Transitional Rule, which was published in the FEDERAL REGISTER of February 2, 1977, 42 FR 6365. The Transitional Rule created an exemption for all transactions consummated prior to the effective date of the final rules and specified the manner in which the final rules will be implemented during the first 30 days following the effective date of the rules.

Under the Transitional Rule, any acquisition which is consummated before the effective date of these rules is exempt from all requirements of the act. Any cash tender offer which is consummated on or within 15 calendar days after the effective date of the rules and any other acquisition which is consummated on or within 30 calendar days after the effective date of the rules is exempt from the waiting period requirement of section 7A(a), subject to two other conditions. First, all persons required by the act and the rules to file notification with respect to the acquisition (or, for an acquisition subject to section 801.30, just the acquiring person) must file on or before the effective date of the rules. Second, if prior to consummation of the acquisition either enforcement agency makes a request for additional information or documentary material under section 7A(e) and section 803.20, then the waiting period normally deriving from such a request takes effect, and its expiration, termination or extension thereafter is governed by the act and the rules.

It should be emphasized that the Transitional Rule does not apply to any transaction that will be consummated more than 30 days (15 in the case of a cash tender offer) after the effective date of the rules; nor does it apply to any acquisition with respect to which the required notifications are not received on or before the effective date of the rules. Transactions of these two types are subject to the full notification and waiting period requirements of the act and the rules.

The Transitional Rule also states that completed notifications received prior to the effective date of the rules will be deemed filed on the effective date of the rules.

For purposes of the Transitional Rule and the rules in parts 801-803, the completion or consummation or "making" of an acquisition refers to the closing date, or the date on which title is transferred, rather than to the date on which a contract, agreement in principle or letter of intent is signed.

In the course of promulgating the Transitional Rule, the Commission considered comments suggesting that persons that had complied with the Commission's Resolution Requiring Notification and Submission of Special Reports Relating to Corporate Mergers or Acquisitions, dated August 15, 1974, 39 FR 35717 (October 3, 1974) (referred to hereafter as the "Commission's existing premerger notification program,") should be exempt from the requirements of the act and the rules. At that time the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, determined not to grant such an exemption. In the statement accompanying the Transitional Rule, the Commission explained:

> The Commission * * * believes that all merger transactions should be placed on the same footing at the inception of the new program and that firms engaging in such transactions will have ample warning of the final effective date of the rules to permit them to schedule consummation of those transactions accordingly. 42 FR at 6365-66.

DETERMINING WHETHER THE ACT APPLIES

The act applies to any acquisition by an acquiring person of the assets or voting securities of an acquired person that meets the criteria of section 7A(a). Thus, the first step in analyzing whether the act applies to a specific acquisition of assets or voting securities is to determine the identify of the "acquiring person" and the "acquired person," and which assets or voting securities will be held "as a result of" the acquisition. One transaction may consist of, or may give rise, to, several distinct "acquisitions" potentially subject to the act. See the examples to § 801.2 (c) and (e) and to § 801.4.

To identify the "acquiring person," consult the definitions of "person," "entity," and "ultimate parent entity" in § 801.1(a) and the definition of "hold" in § 801.(c). First determine which entity will have beneficial ownership of the assets or voting securities to be acquired, and identify that entity's ultimate parent entity (as defined in § 801.1(a)(3)). The acquiring person consists of that ultimate parent entity and all entities that it controls directly or indirectly. The definition of "control" in § 801.1(b) will determine whether an entity is an ultimate parent entity and which entities are included within the acquiring person. If the entity that will hold the assets or voting securities to be acquired is controlled by another entity, one must follow the chain of control, locate the ultimate parent entity, and then determine all entities that that entity controls directly or indirectly. This will be the acquiring person.

Next determine the entity whose assets or voting securities are being acquired. See § 801.2(b). This will be the entity that prior to the acquisition has beneficial ownership of any assets, or is the issuer of any voting securities, which are to be acquired. The acquired person consists of the ultimate parent entity that controls the entity whose assets or voting securities are being acquired, along with all other entities that that ultimate parent entity controls directly or indirectly. See also § 801.2 (c), (d), and (e).

Having determined the identity of the acquiring and acquired persons, one must determine whether either person is engaged in commerce or in any activity affecting commerce. This is the "commerce text" of section 7A(a)(1); consult §§ 801.1(*l*) and 801.3 for further explanation of how this test is applied.

If the commerce test is satisfied, then the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2) must be analyzed. This test focuses upon the annual net sales and total assets of the acquiring and acquired persons. Section 801.11 explains how to determine these figures. It may also be necessary to determine whether the acquiring and acquired persons are "engaged in manufacturing," a term defined in § 801.1(j).

There are three different ways that the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2) may be satisfied. If the acquiring person has annual net sales or total assets of $100 million or more and the acquired person is engaged in manufacturing and has annual net sales or total assets of $10 million or more, then section 7A(a)(2)(A) is satisfied. If the acquiring person has annual net sales or total assets of $100 million or more and the acquired person is not engaged in manufacturing but has total assets of $10 million or more (net sales are irrelevant in this case), then section 7A(a)(2)(B) is satisfied. Finally, if the acquiring person has annual net sales or total assets of $10 million or more and the acquired person has annual net sales of $100 million or more, then section 7A(a)(2)(C) is satisfied, without regard to whether either person is engaged in manufacturing. If none of these three tests is satisfied, the act does not apply; if any of them is satisfied, it is then necessary to analyze the size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3).

This test may be satisfied in any of five different ways, since the size-of-transaction test is satisfied whenever, as a result of the acquisition, the acquiring person would hold at least 15 percent, or more than $15 million worth, of either the assets or the voting securities of the acquired person, or more than $15 milion worth of both the assets and the voting securities of the acquired person.

In applying this test, one must first determine what will be held as a result of the acquisition. In general, the acquiring person in an assets transaction will hold only those assets which will change hands as a result of the transaction. See § 801.13(b)(1), but, for the moment, ignore the value of the assets; see also § 801.21. There is one significant exception: Whenever the acquiring person has acquired any assets from the same acquired person within 180 days preceding the signing of a contract, agreement in principle, or letter of intent to acquire additional assets, and the earlier-acquired assets have not been transferred to another person, then § 801.13(b)(2) directs both persons to treat the earlier and the present transaction as if they were both occurring at the present time, unless § 801.15 requires otherwise. In other words, the two (or more) asset acquisitions must be aggregated, unless the earlier acquisitions fell within one of the exemptions listed in § 801.15. The effect of aggregation is that the assets acquired in the two (or more) transactions will be "held as a result of" the present transaction, for purposes of determining the dollar value of assets—but not the percentage of assets—being acquired under section 7A(a)(3).

The voting securities of the acquired person to be held by the acquiring person as a result of a transaction are determined by § 801.13(a)(1). In general, any securities which will be held by the acquiring person after the present transaction are held as a result of the present transaction, even if some of those securities were acquired earlier. Certain exceptions are stated in § 801.15 if an earlier acquisition was exempt under the act or rules.

The next step is to determine whether, as a result of the acquisition, the acquiring person will hold an aggregate total amount of assets and voting securities of the acquired person in excess of $15 million. The value of assets is the value at time of acquisition, and not the book value, and is determined by reference to § 801.10 (b) and (c). The value of voting securities to be held as a result of the acquisition is also the current value, determined by reference to section § 801.10 (a) and (c).

If an acquiring person would hold both assets and voting securities of the acquired person as a result of a transaction, the aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets must be determined under § 801.14 and subjected to the $15 million size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3)(B). If the $15 million test is satisfied, the alternative 15-percent test of section 7A(a)(3)(A) may be disregarded, since the size-of-transaction has already been satisfied. If the $15 million test is not satisfied, then the next step is to determine the percentage of the acquired person's assets or voting securities which the acquiring person will hold as a result of the acquisition. This requires a computation, in the form of a fraction, in which the assets or voting securities to be held as a result of the acquisition are divided by tne aggregate total amount of assets or voting securities of the acquired person.

In an assets acquisition, the numerator and denominator of this fraction will be dollar values obtained from the books of the acquired person. Section 801.12(d) explains how this computation is made, and § 801.12(c) makes clear that the denominator consists of the total assets of the entire acquired person. If as a result of the acquisition the acquiring person will hold 15 percent or more of the total assets of the acquired person, then section 7A(a)(3)(A) is satisfied.

For an acquisition of voting securities, the numerator and denominator of this fraction will be numbers of votes for directors of the issuer that voting securities presently entitle their holders to cast or, as a result of the acquisition, will entitle their holders to cast. Section 801.12 explains how this computation is made, and § 801.12(a) makes clear that the denominator consists of the total number of votes for directors of the issuer whose voting securities are being acquired. If as a result of the acquisition the acquiring person will hold 15 percent or more of the voting securities of the issuer, then section 7A(a)(3)(A) is satisfied.

SPECIFIC TREATMENT OF PARTICULAR TYPES OF TRANSACTIONS

A series of rules in part 801 specify the manner in which particular types of transactions are treated under the act.

Whenever as a result of an acquisition (the "primary acquisition") an acquiring person will obtain control of an issuer which holds a noncontrolling block of voting securities of another issuer, then the acquisition of the other issuer's voting securities is a secondary acquisition which, by reason of § 801.4, is separately subject to the act and the rules.

Section 801.20 explains that acquisitions meeting the critieria of section 7A(a) and not otherwise exempted under the act or the rules are subject to the reporting and waiting period requirements of the act. This is true even though earlier acquisitions may also have been subject to the act; even though the acquiring person's holdings initially may have met or exceeded a notification threshold (see § 801.1(h)) before the effective date of the rules; and even though the acquiring person's holdings initially may have met or exceeded a notification threshold by reason of increases in market values or events other than acquisitions.

Section 801.30 explains that for certain types of transactions, the waiting period begins when only the acquiring person files notification, rather than when both persons file. In such cases, the acquired person must file within a specified number of days after the acquiring person files. The types of transactions to which this treatment applies are: (1) Acquisitions of voting securities on a national securities exchange or "over the counter" securities markets, (2) certain acquisitions of voting securities by shareholders of the target company in a tender offer, (3) acquisitions of voting securities by means of a tender offer, (4) secondary acquisitions, (5) acquisitions (other than mergers and consolidations) in which voting securities are acquired from someone other than the issuer or a related entity, (6) acquisitions resulting from conversion of convertible voting securities, and (7) acquisitions resulting from the exercise of options and warrants. Additional provisions relating to acquisitions of voting securities by shareholders of the target company in a tender offer are contained in § 801.31. Section 801.32 makes clear that conversion of convertible voting securities (see § 801.1(f)) is a potentially reportable acquisition under the act.

When the persons contributing to the formation of a new corporation receive voting securities of that corporation, § 801.40 must be consulted in order to determine whether these acquisitions are reportable. Section 801.40(b) contains its own size-of-person tests, which interpret those in section 7A(a)(2) in any transaction (except in connection with a merger or consolidation) in which a new corporation is formed. A special rule for determining the total assets of the new corporation is stated in § 801.40(c), and a special rule relating to the commerce test of section 7A(a)(1) is contained in § 801.40(d).

In general, § 801.40 applies to the formation of joint ventures organized in the corporate form, but the operation of the rule does not depend upon whether the parties or the enforcement agencies would consider the new corporation to be a "joint venture." Whenever a newly formed corporation issues sufficient voting securities to two or more persons, so that section 7A(a)(3) and § 801.40 (b) and (d) are satisfied, the transaction is reportable, although all such persons acquiring the new corporation's stock may not necessarily have to file notification. The new corporation does not, however, have to report its acquisitions of the assets which its shareholders have contributed as part of the transaction setting up the new corporation.

Finally, § 801.90 states that whenever a reportable transaction is recast in a different form or broken up into a series of transactions, or whenever any other device is employed for the purpose of avoiding the obligation to comply with the act and the rules, the form of the transactions is disregarded, and the obligation to comply with the act and the rules is determined by applying the act and the rules to the substance of the transaction.

EXEMPTIONS

If the commerce, size-of-person and size-of-transaction tests of section 7A(a) are all satisfied, one must next determine whether any exemptions apply. Statutory exemptions are found in section 7A (c)(1) through (c)(11). With respect to section 7A(c)(1), see § 802.1; with respect to section 7A (c)(6) and (c)(8), see § 802.6; as to section 7A(c)(8), see also § 802.8; concerning section 7A(c)(9), see § 802.9; and concerning section 7A(c)(10), see § 802.10.

Additional exemptions are found in the remainder of Part 802 of the rules. Each of the separate exemptions in the act and the rules must be separately consulted. More detailed explanations of these rules relating to exemptions appear below.

FILING REQUIREMENTS

If the criteria of section 7A(a) are met and the transaction is not entitled to exemption under the act or the rules, then the acquisition is reportable, and the procedures outlined in part 803 of the rules must be followed. The acquiring and acquired persons must file notification, and a waiting period must elapse, before the transaction may legally be consummated.

The Notification and Report Form is an appendix to part 803 of the rules and must be completed in accordance with § 803.1 and with the instructions appearing in § 803.2 and on the form itself. Whenever a person filing notification is unable to supply a complete response to any item on the form, it must provide a statement of reasons for noncompliance, in accordance with § 803.3. Each Notification and Report Form must be accompanied by an affidavit; consult § 803.5. Each form must also be certified; see § 803.6.

In the special case in which a foreign acquired person refuses to file notification, § 803.4 may permit another person to file on its behalf.

Under section 803.7, reported transactions must be consummated within one year following the expiration of the waiting period in order to avoid the necessity of an additional filing at a later date.

WAITING PERIOD

Sections 7A (a) and (b) state that, when notification is required with respect to an acquisition of assets or voting securities, that transaction may not legally be completed until notification has been accomplished and a 30-day waiting period has thereafter expired (only 15 days is required in the case of a cash tender offer).

Section 803.10(a) explains when the waiting period begins, and section 803.10(b) explains when it expires. Section 7A(b)(2) permits the Commission and the Assistant Attorney General to terminate the waiting period before it expires in certain cases, and section 803.11 explains the procedures governing termination.

REQUESTS FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION OR DOCUMENTARY MATERIAL

Section 7A(e) permits the Commission or the Assistant Attorney General, prior to expiration of the waiting period, to require the submission of additional information or additional documentary material relevant to an acquisition, from any person required to file notification, or from any officer, director, partner, agent or employee of any such person. Section 803.20 explains the procedure for such requests and details their impact upon the waiting period. Section 803.21 requires compliance with such requests within a reasonable time.

MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS OF THE ACT AND THE RULES

Section 7A(f) provides for expedited treatment by a United States district court of a motion by either enforcement agency for a preliminary injunction to prevent consummation of a transaction reportable under the act.

Sections 7A (g)(1) and (g)(2) provide the enforcement mechanisms for the act. Under section 7A(g)(1), any person (or any officer, director or partner thereof) who fails to comply with any provision of the act (or the rules) may be liable for a civil penalty of up to $10,000 for each day during which such person is in violation of the act. If the notification requirements of the act and the rules are not substantially complied with, section 7A(g)(2) permits either enforcement agency to commence an action in United States district court. Under this section, the court may order compliance and is required to extend the waiting period "until there has been substantial compliance." The act contains one exception: When a person whose stock is sought to be acquired by means of a tender offer (either cash or non-cash) has not complied, the waiting period may not be extended, although civil penalties may be assessed. Section 7A(g)(2)(C) also permits the court to "grant such other equitable relief as the court in its discretion determines necessary or appropriate."

Section 7A(h) states that any information or documentary material filed with the enforcement agencies under the act is exempt from disclosure under the Freedom of Information Act and that no such information or documentary material may be made public except "as may be relevant to any administrative or judicial action or proceeding." Section 7A(h) explicitly preserves to Congress and its committees and subcommittees the ability to obtain information filed with the enforcement agencies under the act.

Section 7A(i) contains two important explanations of the relationship between the act and other activities of the enforcement agencies. Under section 7A(i)(1), any action by either agency or any failure of either agency to take any action under the act has no effect on any proceeding or any other action at any time under any other provision of the Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 or any other provision of law. Moreover, the ability of the enforcement agencies to make full use of the Antitrust Civil Process Act, the Federal Trade Commission Act, and any other provision of law "to secure at any time from any person documentary material, oral testimony, or other information" is unaffected by the premerger notification requirements of the act.

The Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, is required by section 7A(j) to submit an annual report to Congress on the operation of the act.

Section 803.30 of the rules provides a mechanism whereby formal and informal interpretations of requirements under the act and the rules may be rendered. Section 803.90 provides for the separability of any provision of the rules or form, in the event that any provision is held invalid or inapplicable to any person or circumstances.

The final versions of the rules and form, and the detailed discussion of each which follows, are of necessity based upon certain factual assumptions. Only actual experience with the operation of the premerger notification program will show which of these assumptions are valid. Such experience may suggest amendments to the rules, and some of those amendments and the reasons articulated for them may differ with portions of this discussion.

PART 801 OF THE RULES

SECTION 801.1(a)(1)—PERSON

The term "person" appears 36 times in the act and is used in connection with virtually every subject with which the statute deals. It is the basic organizational unit to which the requirements of the act apply. Of particular importance are its uses in the tests for determining whether the act applies: The commerce test of section 7A(a)(1), the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2) and the size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3). Two related statutory concepts, "acquiring" and "acquired" persons, are separately defined in § 801.2.

The definition states that a person is an ultimate parent entity together with all entities that it controls directly or indirectly. "Entity" is defined in §801.1(a)(2), and comprehends natural persons, corporations, partnerships, joint ventures, unincorporated associations, trusts, and several other types of units. "Control" is defined in §801.1(b) and means, in most cases, beneficial ownership of 50 percent or more of the voting stock. Control is effected directly if the voting stock is held without intermediaries, it is effected indirectly if direct control is held by controlled entities, agents, or other means. An "ultimate parent entity" is defined in §801.1(a)(3), and means an entity that is not controlled by any other entity. A "person" thus can be visualized as a collection of entities headed by an ultimate parent entity and linked together by control relationships. These entities are referred to as being "included within" the person.

Four examples illustrate the rule. Example No. 1 illustrates the most typical case, that of a corporation with subsidiaries. Examples 2, 3, and 4 illustrate less common cases involving foreign governments, natural persons and entities included within two persons. The definition also notes an exception, §801.12 (a) and (b), in which the term "person" is assigned a different meaning in connection with percentage computations.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO §801.1(a)

Section 7A begins, "[N]o person shall acquire * * *" Although section 7 of the Clayton Act reaches only corporate acquisitions, Congress did not intend the definition of person to be limited to corporations. See 122 Cong. Rec. H10293 (daily ed. Sept. 16, 1976) (remarks of Rep. Rodino); 122 Cong. Rec. S15323 (daily ed. Sept. 7, 1976) (comparison of House and Senate versions with final compromise version). The definition of person accordingly embraces the variety of organizations contained in the definition of "entity." But for purposes of the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2), "person" could not mean just the particular entity which was acquiring or transferring legal title. If such a limited definition of person were adopted, the ultimate parent entity would be able to evade the requirements of the act by manipulating the entity to be involved in a transaction. For example, a large corporation could evade the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2) merely by arranging to have a small subsidiary participate in an acquisition. In order to give effect to the size-of-person test, "person" must mean the overall enterprise.

The rules solve this dilemma by introducing the term "entity" to serve in the first capacity, that of defining the basic organizational units (such as corporations, etc.) to which the act applies. The rules reserve the term "person" for the larger concept, used in the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2). See the Statement of Basis and Purpose to §801.12, which also explains the exception in the definition provided in that rule.

The original rules did not employ the term "entity," and instead expressed the two meanings of "person" by using a more complex definition. The revised rules introduced the present definitional system. The final definition reformulates the language for clarity and to remove potential ambiguities, but does not alter the substance of the definition.

SECTION 801.1 (a)(2) ENTITY

The term "entity" does not appear in the act, but in the rules is part of the definition of the term "person," the basic unit to which the act applies. Section 801.1(a) defines a "person" as an ultimate parent entity and all entities that it controls directly or indirectly. "Entities" thus constitute the component parts of persons. The definition of "entity" sets forth a list of organizational units that can be included within a person.

The proviso at the end of the definition excludes the governments of foreign nations, the United States and the several States, as well as their agencies and political subdivisions, from qualifying as entities. Hence, these units are not subject to the act. However, corporations controlled by such units and engaged in commerce are entities, and may be subject to the requirements of the act.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO §801.1(a)(2)

The need to introduce the term "entity" is explained in the statement of basis and purpose to §§801.1(a)(1) and 801.12. Revised §801.1(a)(2) marked the initial appearance of the term, although the original rules had achieved a similar result by means of a more complex definition of "person." See the FEDERAL REGISTER notice accompanying the revised rules, 42 FR at 39042 (August 1, 1977).

The final definition differs only slightly from the revised version. The reference to an entity's domicile was deleted as unnecessary. The reference to joint ventures not yet formed has been conformed to the language of final §801.40; the reason for its presence in the definition is explained in the statement of basis and purpose to that rule.

Foreign states, foreign governments, and their agencies are excluded from the definition of entity, but foreign governmental corporations engaged in commerce are entities. The definition draws this distinction because the activities of corporations engaged in commerce are invariably commercial activities, over which a U.S. court may have jurisdiction, whereas actions taken directly by States or governments are less likely to be subject to U.S. jurisdiction. Furthermore, the principle of comity, which seeks to assure amicable relations among nations, militates against the United States requiring a foreign state to comply with the reporting and waiting requirements of the act. By contrast, the principle of comity is less compelling with respect to the activities of governmental corporations. The distinction is generally supported by the Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act of 1976, 28 U.S.C. 160-2-1611, which distinguishes between "commercial activities" of foreign states and agencies, which are not immune from the jurisdiction of the United States, and their noncommercial activities, which retain their immunity. 28 U.S.C. 1605(a)(2).

Similarly, the definition also excludes the States of the United States. The effect of the exclusion is that acquisitions by States are not subject to the act, because the act applies only to acquisitions involving persons. See Section 7A(a). The same is true of asset acquisitions from any of these political units. Stock acquisitions from them are not excluded under this rule, since the issuer of the stock, not the State or government, would be the acquired person. State-owned and U.S.-owned corporations are included within the definition of entity, for reasons similar to those applying to foreign governmental corporations.

SECTION 801.1(a)(3) ULTIMATE PARENT ENTITY

The term "ultimate parent entity" does not appear in the act. The rules employ the term in the course of defining the term "person." An "ultimate parent entity" is an entity that is not controlled by any other entity. The ultimate parent entity included within a person, therefore, is the entity that directly or indirectly controls all other entities within the person and is not itself controlled by any other entity.

An ultimate parent entity must be a unit that fits the definition of "entity" in §801.1(a)(2). Thus, for example, a corporation engaged in commerce and wholly owned by a foreign government can be an ultimate parent entity, but the controlling government cannot, because it is not an entity. See example No. 2 to §801.1(a)(1).

The ultimate parent entity included within a person is responsible for a person's compliance with the act and rules, under §803.2(a). Because the concept of "person" is a creation of the act and rules and, therefore, a person may not have a generally recognized name embracing all its components, the name of the ultimate parent entity is used to identify the person within which it is included. See page 2 of the notification and report form.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.1(a)(3)

The definition is part of the mechanism which constructs the definition of the term "person." The term did not appear in the original rules, and the definition is unchanged in substance from revised § 801.1(a)(3).

SECTION 801.1(b) CONTROL

The term "control" does not appear in the act, but the definition of the term is central to the entire scheme of the rules and indirectly affects the extent of coverage of the act. The language of the act imposes its requirements upon "persons," a term defined in § 801.1(a)(1) to consist of an ultimate parent entity and all entities which it controls directly or indirectly. Only after applying the definitions of control and person, can one determine whether the commerce test of section 7A(a)(1), the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2) and the size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3) are satisfied, and thus whether the act applies. The definition of control is also important because the notification and report form, in general, requests revenue data and other information only for entities included within the person.

The definition of control consists of two tests; if either is satisfied, control exists. Subparagraph (b)(1) provides that holding 50 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer constitutes control. This test invokes several other definitions and rules, which are necessary to apply the definition correctly. In particular, § 801.1(c) defines the term "hold;" § 801.1(f)(1) defines the term "voting securities;" and § 801.12 governs the calculation of the percentage. The second alternative test in the definition, subparagraph (b)(2), provides that control is also "the contractual power presently to designate a majority of the directors of a corporation, or in the case of unincorporated entities, of individuals exercising similar functions." The example to the definition illustrates the most important use of the term, the linkage of entities into a "person."

Note that since both branches of the definition of control involve properties—the issuance of stock and the existence of directors or individuals exercising similar functions—which cannot be possessed by natural persons, natural persons may exercise control but cannot be controlled. This means that natural persons may be ultimate parent entities within a person, but may not become "included within a person" as controlled entities. See example No. 3 to § 801.1(a)(1) and example No. 2 to § 801.1(a)(3).

The language "in the case of unincorporated entities * * * individuals exercising similar functions" may in appropriate cases find application to organizational units other than corporations which are defined as entities in § 801.1(a)(2).

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.1(b)

Although the term "control" does not appear in the act, the concept is implicit within it. It furnishes the link between the term "entity," which in the rules describes the types of units to which the act applies, and the term "person," which is used throughout the act and rules. The need for two terms in the definitional scheme is explained in the statements of basis and purpose to those definitions, § 801.1(a) (1) and (2) and the use of the term "control" arises within that definitional structure.

"Control" was defined at the level of 50 percent stock ownership for two reasons. First, it supplied an objective, easily administrable criterion. Second, except for cases in which the holding is exactly 50 percent, majority ownership will always enable the holder to direct the day-to-day activities of the controlled entity, even though for many large corporations, de facto control may arise from holdings well below 50 percent.

Several comments (e.g., 16, 115; 1050, 1088, 1102) suggested that control should stem only holdings of more than 50 percent, rather than exactly 50 percent, of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer. However, the final rule adheres to the position that a 50-percent holding constitutes control. If the shares of an issuer are evenly divided between two holders, it is more appropriate that the issuer be viewed as part of both "persons," for purposes of the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2) and size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3), than as part of neither. In such a situation, each of the 50-percent holders may exercise control. Moreover, after a holder acquires 50 percent of the shares of an issuer, further acquisitions of those shares are exempt under section 7A(c)(3).

This first test of control has been retained without substantial change through the revised and final definitions. In the revised rule the word "ownership" was replaced by "holding," thus incorporating the definition of "hold." In the final rule the exclusion of the holdings of affiliates was deleted as unnecessary because of the final definition of "affiliate."

The second test in the definition can best be understood in the context of its derivation from the earlier drafts. In the original definition the second test attempted to identify actual or working control, however effected. It also contained a proviso excluding from the definition of control any power arising from conditions in financing contracts with certain specified lenders. The original version of the second test attracted approximately 25 comments, for the most part critical.

The comments made four principal criticisms. First, several comments (e.g., 9, 11, 78, 115) noted that the definition of control would determine the entities for which revenue and other data must be supplied on the Notification and Report Form. If the definition imputed control of an entity which the reporting person did not in fact control, a reporting person might be unable to supply the required data. Since failure to comply could result in civil penalties of up to $10,000 per day, these comments urged that the definition of control should require the submission of data concerning only those entities with respect to which the reporting person could in fact obtain such data.

A second group of comments (e.g., 9, 11, 78, 88, 95, 120) focused on the subjectivity of the original second test. These comments expressed concern about the potential expansiveness of two phrases in the definition, "dominant minority" and "other means," which they feared might include relationships other than stock ownership. They contended that different observers could reasonably arrive at different conclusions about whether control existed in a given instance. They also urged that, in view of the civil penalties provided for noncompliance with the act, the definition should focus upon objective criteria that would allow both reporting persons and the enforcement agencies to determine their obligations under the act with reasonable certainty.

The third and fourth groups of comments reflected more specialized concerns. A number of comments (e.g., 68, 81, 96, 105, 107, 108, 113) asserted that the second test of control, as applied to mutual funds, would regard an investment adviser that advises several separate mutual funds as controlling the funds. Thus, the several mutual funds would become part of the same "person," and their security holdings would be aggregated for purposes of the 15 percent or $15 million test of section 7A(a)(3). They contended that the legislative history of the act indicated a contrary congressional intent.

Finally, the fourth group of comments (e.g., 15, 83, 88, 98, 115, 120) criticized the proviso relating to financing. They maintained that the exclusion of powers arising from financing contracts should extend to all lenders, rather than to only those listed, since extensions of credit may come from many sources.

The definition was substantially revised in response to these comments. The revised version restricted control to contractual power to designate a majority of the board of directors. When such a contract exists, the controlling entity can direct the actions of the controlled entity and can presumably supply the data required by the Notification and Report Form without difficulty. All parties should be able to determine their obligations under the act with reasonable certainty based on objective criteria.

The limitation of control to these two instances also eliminated the criticism in the comments on the mutual fund issue and on the proviso about creditors; since control could only flow from the two specified relationships, these two problems no longer arose.

However, in addition to the revised definition, the FEDERAL REGISTER notice accompanying the revised rules solicited public comments on another possible modification of the second test of control. It would have defined control to include the power to designate or elect a majority of the directors of an issuer, without limiting the power to contractual instances only. The notice also solicited comments identifying "objective factors of voting control (or contractual power), without relying on a specific percentage of voting securities held." 42 FR at 39043 (August 1, 1977).

Nineteen comments expressed views about the revised definition and the FEDERAL REGISTER proposals. The comments uniformly supported the revised definition and opposed the proposals in the FEDERAL REGISTER notice. Most considered that the revised definition adequately addressed the concerns expressed in the comments to the original rules, while the new proposals would reintroduce the same subjectivity and uncertainty previously mentioned. The comments stressed the need for objective standards because of the civil penalty provisions of the act and viewed the proposals in the FEDERAL REGISTER notice as inadequate. Minority stockholdings, as well as other forms of influence, it was stated, could constitute the "power to designate or elect," but would not be capable of objective ascertainment.

The final rule retains the substance of the revised second test. The Commission believes that in this instance, the advantages of certainty in the application of the act outweigh the disadvantages of limiting the reach of the act. Should experience in administering the act reveal shortcomings in this approach, the definition can be revised.

Accordingly, the final definition makes only one change in the revised version of the second test. It expands the formulation "directors or trustees" to clarify that for unincorporated entities the definition will look to "individuals exercising similar functions" in place of the directors. This language does not apply, however, to banks or trust companies that designate the trustees of trusts they administer. In such cases, the definition of "hold," § 801.1(c), allocates the responsibility for filing notification.

SECTION 801.1(C) HOLD

Section 801.1(c) defines the term "hold," which is central to the structure of the rules. If the commerce test of section 7A(a)(1) and the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2) are met, the act applies to an acquistion if "as a result of such acquisition, the acquiring person would hold" 15 percent or $15 million worth of the voting securities or assets of the acquired person. Section 7A(a)(3) (emphasis supplied). The treatment of an acquisition thus depends upon what the acquiring person will hold as a result of the acquisition. See sections 801.13 and 801.15.

Section 801.1(c)(1) states the basic rule that a person "holds" voting securities or assets if that person is the beneficial owner of such securities or assets. The rules do not contain a definition of "beneficial ownership." Instead, the existence of beneficial ownership is to be determined in the context of particular cases with reference to the person or persons that enjoy the indicia of beneficial ownership, which include the right to obtain the benefit of any increase in value or dividends, the risk of loss of value, the right to vote the stock or to determine who may vote the stock, the investment discretion (including the power to dispose of the stock). It should be noted, however, that the concept of "beneficial ownership" for purposes of section 801.1(c) overlaps with, but is not identical to, the definition of beneficial ownership promulgated by the SEC for purposes of section 13(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 ("Exchange Act"), 15 U.S.C. 78m. Thus, while a person may be a beneficial owner of securities for purposes of section 13(d) of that statute, it might not be the beneficial owner of those securities for purposes of the premerger notification rules, or vice versa.

Record ownership by itself is of no relevance in determining whether a person "holds" stock or assets under the rules. See the example following section 801.1(c)(1). Beneficial ownership may be effected directly (i.e., where the beneficial owner has legal title), or indirectly "through fiduciaries, agents, controlled entities or other means." This principle is subject to the provisions in subparagraphs (2) through (8) of the rule.

These subparagraphs clarify who the beneficial owner is or is deemed to be in particular situations. The holdings of spouses and minor children are by reason of section 801.1(c)(2) all attributable to one another, so that if any of them makes an acquisition, the holdings of all of them are aggregated for purposes of determining the total assets of the acquiring person and what it will hold as a result of the acquisition. See also section 803.2(a).

With certain exceptions, a trust, including a pension trust, is deemed under section 801.1(c)(3) to hold all assets and voting securities constituting the corpus of the trust; the trust (not the trustee) may thus become a reporting person. See the example in the rule. In the case of a revocable trust, and in the case of an irrevocable trust in which the settlor (i.e., he or she who creates the trust) retains a reversionary interest in the corpus, section 801.1(c)(4) makes the corpus of the trust the "holdings" of the settlor. In these situations the settlor, rather than the trust, would be required to comply with any obligations under the act.

Beneficiaries of all other types of trusts, including pension trusts and common trust funds or collective investment funds, are in section 801.1(c)(5) deemed not to hold any assets or voting securities constituting the corpus of such trusts, since the trusts are the holders." A bank or trust company that administers one or more common trust funds or collective investment funds is under section 801.1(c)(6) deemed the holder of the assets and voting securities constituting the corpus of each such fund, so that those assets and voting securities must all be aggregated with any other assets or voting securities which the bank or trust company may hold for its own account, if either the bank or one of its funds makes an acquisition. See the example following section 801.1(c)(6).

Section 801.1(c)(7) is designed to make clear that assets and voting securities held for the benefit of separate accounts administered by an insurance company are holdings of the company; unlike a trust, the separate account is not itself a holder.

Section 801.1(c)(8) states that in addition to its own holdings an entity (including an ultimate parent entity) holds all assets and voting securities held by entities which it controls directly or indirectly. Moreover, a person holds all assets and voting securities held by the entities included within it (i.e., held by the ultimate parent entity and all entities which it controls). See section 801.1(a).

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO SECTION 801.1(C)

Original section 801.05(c) defined the term "hold" in terms of the possession of either direct or indirect "ownership" or "control." Revised section 801.1(c) deleted the reference to "control" and defined the term "hold" as "record or beneficial ownership." Possible reporting requirements for persons having mere record ownership sparked a significant number of comments (e.g., 1062, 1070, 1071, 1090, 1108). The final rule reflects the recognition that record ownership by itself is not meaningful for purposes of analyzing the impact of an acquisition on competition. Beneficial ownership is a more reliable indicator of the holder's power to influence the management of the issuer. Record ownership of the shares does not normally indicate which person enjoys the attributes of beneficial ownership, in particular the right to vote or to designate who may vote the shares. Moreover, a variety of persons other than the beneficial owner may be the record owner of voting securities. (In many cases, of course, record owner and the beneficial owner will be the same person.)

Under the final rule it makes no difference who the record owner is. The person or persons that have the benefits and risks of ownership of securities or assets "hold" those securities or assets, and persons that acquire beneficial ownership must report their "acquisition" if the criteria of the act are satisfied.

The holdings of spouses and their minor children are aggregated under §801.1(c)(2), so that natural persons cannot escape reporting merely by making separate purchases in the names of other natural persons within the immediate family. This limited aggregation rule does not extend to other "related" persons, such as brothers and sisters or parents (unless the beneficial owner is a minor child). The revised rule would have aggregated the holdings of spouses with those of their minor children, but not vice versa, and was thus incomplete. A related rule, §803.2(a), states that a single Notification and Report Form shall be filed on behalf of a natural person, his or her spouse and minor children, in the event that any of them makes a reportable acquisition.

In general, under §801.1(c)(5) the beneficiaries of a trust are deemed not to hold any assets or voting securities constituting the corpus of the trust, because the specific assets attributable to a specific beneficiary may be impossible to determine, and because the beneficiary may have no control over an acquisition (or disposition) of assets by the trust. The one exception to this general rule is found in §801.1(c)(4), when the settlor is also a beneficiary; in that case, the settlor is deemed the holder of the trust's assets.

Since a trust is an "entity" within the meaning of §801.1(a)(2), the trust will also be a person, unless the trust is controlled by another entity (other than a bank or trust company). Since a trust does not issue voting securities, under the rules it can be controlled by another entity only if the latter has a contractual power, under the trust indenture, to designate the trustee or, if there is more than one, a majority of the trustees. See §§801.1(a)(1) and 801.1(b)(2). For example, if a corporation appoints the trustees of an employee pension plan organized as a trust, then the corporation would control the trust under §801.1(b)(2), and the trust would not be a separate "person" under the rules. On occasions when a trust is a separate person, the trust (normally through the trustee) must file notification and satisfy waiting period obligations if it makes a reportable acquisition. The holdings of a trust are not aggregated with those of any other entity for any purpose, unless the trust is controlled by or controls another entity. Thus, for example, if a bank is trustee of an individual trust, the bank will normally file notification on behalf of the trust whenever the trust makes a reportable acquisition. If the bank makes an acquisition for its own account, or for the account of another individual trust which it administers, the holdings of the individual trusts are not aggregated, nor are they aggregated with other holdings of the bank.

Special rules are applicable to common trust funds and collective investment funds, as defined in 12 CFR 9.18(a) (referred to hereafter as "collective investment funds"). Under §801.1(c)(6), a bank or trust company which administers one or more collective investment funds holds the assets and voting securities constituting the corpus of each such fund. Therefore, the collective investment funds do not themselves hold any assets or voting securities, and as a result they will not themselves be subject to the act's requirements. Instead, the bank or trust company which administers such funds must comply with the act, if it applies. In order to determine whether a transaction is reportable, the bank or trust company must aggregate all assets and voting securities held for its own account with all assets and voting securities held by all collective investment funds which it administers. This aggregation does not include assets held in any other kinds of trusts which the bank may administer or for which it may be trustee.

Because of the degree of control which insurance companies typically exercise over their general and separate accounts, all assets and voting securities held for the benefit of any general or any separate account administered by such companies are, under §801.1(c)(7), deemed holdings of the insurance company. These accounts are treated in a manner similar to that accorded to collective investment funds administered by a bank or trust company. Thus, all holdings of all such accounts are aggregated whenever the insurance company makes any acquisition for the benefit of any of those accounts.

Subparagraph (c)(8) states a conclusion which follows from the concept of control. Since under §801.1(a) a person is defined as the collection of entities directly or indirectly under the control of an ultimate parent entity, it follows that the assets held by each of the entities included within a person are also held by the person. Similarly, each entity which is included within a person and controls another entity also holds any assets or voting securities held by the controlled entity. Thus, whenever the holdings of an entity must be determined, the holdings of that entity and those of each entity it controls must be aggregated.

At least one comment (1089) suggested that the Commission coordinate reporting requirements for certain types of persons or transactions with those promulgated by the Securities and Exchange Commission under section 13(d) of the Exchange Act. The SEC has adopted rules which define "beneficial ownership" so that a person having either the power to vote or the power to dispose of (i.e., investment discretion with respect to) voting securities would be deemed the beneficial owner of such securities, and would under section 13(d) have to report holdings of 5 percent or more of the stock of any issuer under SEC jurisdiction, and any changes in such holdings. Those rules became final on May 30, 1978. 43 FR 18484 (Apr. 28, 1978). The Commission's rules do not, however, adopt the SEC's position, which equates beneficial ownership with either voting power or investment discretion standing alone. After assessing the compatibility of the SEC's definition of "beneficial ownership" and the use of that concept in these rules, the Commission concluded that the legislative intent underlying each program and the goals of each program were sufficiently distinct to support the different usages of the term "beneficial ownership."

DELETION OF REVISED §§ 802.60 AND 802.61

Section 802.60 of the revised rules exempted "an acquisition by an agent on behalf of and at the specific direction of another person." Under that rule, an agent included a broker or dealer in securities, a trustee, or a fiduciary. The rule also stated that this exemption did not extend to the persons on whose behalf the acquisition was made.

Because the definition of "hold" in § 801.1(c)(1) has been modified to delete record ownership, § 802.60 of the revised rules is superfluous and has been deleted. Whenever any agent makes an acquisition on behalf of another person (whether or not at the specific direction of that other person), the agent does not become a beneficial owner and thus incurs no obligations under the act.

Section 802.61 of the revised rules exempted "an acquisition in escrow by an escrow agent pursuant to a written escrow agreement." That rule did not, however, exempt an acquisition by any person from an escrow agent, unless the assets or voting securities reverted to the original owner pursuant to the escrow agreement. The original rules contained a similar provision (§ 802.15).

Under the definition of "hold" in the final rules, the rule is no longer necessary, because an escrow agent does not become the beneficial owner of assets or voting securities held in escrow. An acquisition in escrow must be reported if beneficial ownership changes hands as a result of the acquisition; the same is true of an acquisition from an escrow agent.

SECTION 801.1(d) AFFILIATE

The term "affiliate" appears in the act only in section 7A(b)(3)(B), which states:

> The amount or percentage of voting securities or assets of a person which are acquired or held by another person shall be determined by aggregating the amount or percentage of such voting securities or assets held or acquired by such other person and each affiliate therof.

Thus, the holdings of afiliates of the acquiring person must be included in that person's holdings for the purpose of determining whether the size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3), as well as the additional notification thresholds defined in § 801.1(h), are met with respect to a particular acquisition. Section 801.1(d) defines an "affiliate" of a person as an entity controlled directly or indirectly by the ultimate parent entity of that person.

The practical effect of the definition of "affiliate" is that only holdings of entities included within the acquiring person, and no holdings of entities not included within the acquiring person, are counted in determining what that person holds, and thus whether the act applies to an acquisition.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.1(d)

The final definition of "affiliate" differs from the original and revised definitions, both of which designated as affiliates certain persons or entities not included within the acquiring person and thus required aggregation of their holding with those of the acquiring person.

Original § 801.05(d) defined one person as an affiliate of another person if either person held 5 percent or more of the other person's outstanding voting securities or if one person was an officer, director, or partner of the other person. The definition was intended to identify entities that although not closely enough linked to be included within the acquiring person may nevertheless have a substantial similarity of interest with the acquiring person.

That definition attracted considerable critical comment. Several comments (e.g., 6, 15, 63, 88) argued that a 5 percent holding is too small a percentage to create any competitively significant link between a person and its "affiliate." Some of the comments suggested that a higher level of stock ownership, such as 20 or 25 percent, should be required for the "affiliate" relationship. Other comments (e.g., 49, 73, 78, 112) noted that since an acquiring person might not in fact control its affiliates, it would in many cases be impossible for a person to compel disclosure of its affiliate's stockholdings. Since the affiliate's stockholdings could determine whether the size-of-transaction test was satisfied, an acquiring person might not be able to find out whether a reporting requirement existed, or to comply fully with it, if it did.

A number of comments (e.g., 6, 63, 83, 88, 113) also criticized the concept that an officer, director, or partner could be an affiliate. They argued that since many companies have hundreds of officers, directors, and partners, it would be extremely burdensome to require a reporting person to find out what all of them held. Several comments (e.g., 7, 96, 105) argued that it would be unreasonable to aggregate the holdings of mutual funds, investment companies, or other institutions that are clients of the same investment adviser, either through the definition of "affiliate" or through other definitions. See the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 801.1(b). Finally, several comments (e.g., 49, 73, 78) suggested that the confidentiality surrounding some acquisitions likely would be breached if an acquiring person had to contact its noncontrolled "affiliates" before the acquisition in order to determine the affiliates' holdings in the company to be acquired.

In response to these comments, revised § 801.1(d) considerably altered the definition of "affiliate." In order to decrease the reporting burden on acquiring persons and to obtain information only on more meaningful affiliations, the percentage of stock ownership constituting affiliation was increased from 5 to 25 percent. Furthermore, affiliation arising from one's status as an officer, director, or partner of another person was deleted. Information on these relationships, while potentially relevant, was deemed less essential and less useful than information on stockownership. Thus, the concept of "affiliation" was restricted in the revised rules to the holding of a stock interest of at least 25 but less than 50 percent (which is defined as "control" and would result in inclusion within the person). In addition, the revised rule specified that holdings of voting securities of only the ultimate parent entity of the reporting person or the affiliated person were to be counted in determining affiliation.

The comments on the revised definition, although fewer than those on the original rules, continued to object to defining "affiliate" to include noncontrolled entities. The comments (e.g., 1090, 1110) reiterated the contention that a person may be neither aware of nor able to compel disclosure of the holdings of a noncontrolled affiliate. Comment 1110 suggested that the definition of affiliate be tied more closely to the definition of "control," and that a corporation be considered an affiliate of a person only if 50 percent of its voting securities are owned by such person.

The final rules, in contrast to both of the earlier drafts, define "affiliate" as an entity controlled by the ultimate parent entity of a person. The concept of affiliation arising from a less-than-control relationship has been entirely deleted. The final rules thus incorporate a suggestion made by several comments (e.g., 78, 83, 112; 1110) that affiliation be defined no more broadly than the concept of control.

The final rules make this change because of what appeared to be potential administrative problems involved in any definition of affiliation that included less-than-control relationships. Although the Commission believes the act unmistakably affords it the power to define the term to include relationships short of control, the Commission considered it difficult to require disclosures of holdings of noncontrolled entities. Furthermore, in many cases, aggregation of these holdings also would have resulted in the imposition of a reporting requirement on a person whose holdings were less significant than those of its affiliate. For example, assume that A, a large corporation, acquires a 14-percent stock interest, valued at less than $15 million, in company X. This acquisition is not reportable under the act and rules. Assume that A also holds 25-percent of company F. Under the revised rules, F would have been an affiliate of A and A an affiliate of F. If F then purchases 1-percent of X, and the criteria of section 7A (a)(1) and (a)(2) are met, this acquisition would have been reportable under the revised rules, since for purposes of section 7A(a)(3), F would have aggregated its holdings of X stock with A's holdings of X stock. Therefore, F, the 1-percent shareholder of X, would have been required to report on its business activities, but A, the 14-percent shareholder of X, would not have been required to report, and no information would have been received by the agencies on its activities. Thus a great deal of relevant information would not have been obtained.

Defining the term "affiliate" by reference to the concept of control solves both of these problems. Since the only entities whose holdings are defined as relevant to determining the size of the transaction are those controlled by the reporting person, there should be no difficulty in obtaining information from such entities. In addition, the reporting person is always certain to be the most relevant person from a competitive standpoint.

The Commission does not consider it likely that many significant acquisitions will escape a reporting obligation because of the final definition of "affiliate." The 15-percent-or-$15 million threshold of section 7A(a)(3) is low enough that most major acquisitions will be reported well before the acquisition of control, even though the holdings of 25-percent-to-49-percent subsidiaries are excluded. Item 6 of the form was inserted, in part, so that once a reporting obligation exists, significant holdings in other companies by the reporting person, and significant holdings in the reporting person by others, can be identified. The form will reveal such holdings without affecting the basic concept of what transactions are reportable. See the Statement of Basis and Purpose to item 6.

The final definition of "affiliate" is supported by the legislative history of the act. A similar definition of "affiliate" was contained in the House-passed bill. See the final text of H.R. 14580 at 122 Congressional Record H8137 (daily ed. August 2, 1976). Although the definition was deleted from the final version of the act, the Commission believes that this deletion was intended to permit the agencies to define the term by rule rather than to preclude any particular definition. Note that since the term "person," which is closely connected with the term "affiliate," was not defined, a statutory definition of "affiliate" would thus have been impracticable. Furthermore, Senator Philip Hart, explaining the deletion on the Senate floor, clearly suggested that Congress intended the Commission to have maximum discretion in defining the term. See 122 Congressional Record S15417 (daily ed. September 8, 1976).

SECTION 801.1(e) UNITED STATES PERSON, UNITED STATES ISSUER, FOREIGN PERSON, FOREIGN ISSUER

Section 801.1(e) defines four terms relevant to determining the applicability of several exemptions relating to foreign commerce or foreign parties. These exemptions turn partly on whether certain persons or issuers are U.S. persons or issuers, or foreign persons or issuers. Subparagraph (e)(1)(i) defines a "U.S. person" as a person (other than a natural person) the ultimate parent entity of which is incorporated in the United States, is organized under the laws of the United States, or has its principal offices in the United States. Subparagraph (e)(1)(ii) similarly defines a "U.S. issuer" as an issuer which fulfills any of the above three criteria. A natural person is defined as a "U.S. person" if he or she is a citizen or resident of the United States.

Note that a person or issuer which fulfills any of the stated criteria is defined as a U.S. person or U.S. issuer. Thus, for example, a corporation incorporated abroad which has its principal offices in the United States is a U.S. person (or issuer). A natural person who resides in the United States but is not a U.S. citizen is nevertheless a "U.S. person." The term "United States" is defined in § 81.1(k) to include the several States, the territories, possessions, and commonwealths of the United States, and the District of Columbia.

Conversely, a person other than a natural person is defined in subparagraph (e)(2)(i) as a "foreign person" if its ultimate parent entity is not incorporated in the United States, is not organized under the laws of the United States, and does not have its principal offices within the United States. A foreign issuer is defined in subparagraph (e)(2)(ii) as an issuer which meets none of the three criteria for a "U.S. issuer." A natural person is defined as a "foreign person" if he or she is neither a citizen nor a resident of the United States.

The terms defined in § 801.1(e) do not appear in the act, which contains no special provision for transactions having foreign aspects. The terms appear in §§ 802.50 and 802.51, which exempt certain acquisitions by foreign persons and certain acquisitions of voting securites of foreign issuers or foreign assets. The terms "foreign person" and "foreign issuer" are also used in § 803.4, which provides that under certain circumstances another party to a transaction may file notification on behalf of a foreign acquired person that refuses to file. The term "U.S. issuer" is also used in item 9 of the Notification and Report Form, which requires the reporting person to list certain prior acquisitions of the voting securities of U.S. issuers.

For purposes of the definition, a person's "principal offices" refers to that single location which the person regards as the headquarters office of the ultimate parent entity. This location may or may not coincide with the location of its principal operations.

In determining whether a person other than a natural person is a U.S. person (or a U.S. issuer), one will ordinarily have to consider only two countries—the place of its principal offices, and the place of its incorporation or organization. The definition uses the concept "organized under the laws of the United States" as well as "incorporated in the United States" to encompass partnerships, associations, trusts, and other unincorporated units.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.1(e)

The primary purposes of this definition is to clarify the scope of the foreign commerce exemptions of §§ 802.50 and 802.51 and the special filing provision of § 803.4. The definitions establish objective criteria that can be easily applied by reporting persons and by the agencies. These definitions include as "U.S." persons or issuers those with significant ties to the United States; i.e., incorporation (or organization) or principal offices in the United States.

These definitions appear for the first time in the final rules. The original rules did not designate persons or issuers as "United States" or "foreign"; instead, the foreign commerce exemption embodied in original § 802.35 was premised on the absence of "substantial involvement" in United States commerce, as evidenced by United States sales or assets. Although the revised rules did not use the terms "U.S. "person," . "U.S. issuer," "foreign person," and "foreign issuer," they implicitly adopted similar criteria by referring to the domicile of persons and issuers. Revised §§ 802.50 and 802.51 would have exempted certain acquisitions by persons domiciled outside the

United States. Those rules, however, did not define "domicile."

The comment of the Department of State (1072) pointed out that the failure to define the concept of "domicile" in the revised rules could have led to confusion. The comment gave the example of a corporation organized under the laws of Delaware but having its principal place of business in a foreign country. It inquired whether such a corporation would be considered domiciled in the United States for the purposes of §§ 802.50 and 802.51. The comment expressed no preference between a place-of-business test or a place-of-incorporation test, and specifically noted that the Commission might choose to deny the foreign commerce exemptions if either the principal place of business or the place of incorporation were in the United States. The final definition adopts this suggestion.

For natural persons, a similar alternative test was inserted to clarify an ambiguity in the revised rules. Since the term "U.S. person" includes U.S. citizens, wherever domiciled, it includes some persons not "domiciled" in the United States. Similarly, anyone, of whatever citizenship, who resides in the United States is also considered a "U.S. person."

SECTION 801.1(f)(1) VOTING SECURITIES

The Act applies to acquisitions of "voting securities." "Voting securities" is defined in section 7A(b)(3)(A), and § 801.1(f)(1) basically restates the statutory definition. "Voting securities" are securities that at present or upon conversion entitle the owner or holder to vote for directors of any issuer or for individuals exercising similar functions in a non-corporate entity.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION OF § 801.1(f)(1)

No definition of "voting securities" appeared in the original rules. The revised definition incorporated the statutory definition. The final definition expands the statutory definition in only one respect. The phrase "or of any entity included within the same person as the issuer" was inserted so that if an entity issues securities which, upon conversion, will enable the holder to vote for directors of a different entity within the same person as the issuer, the issue is still one of "voting securities." Without the added phrase, such securities would not be "voting securities" within the meaning of section 7A(b)(3)(A) or § 801.1(f)(1). The added phrase assures that such securities are treated on an equal footing with all other convertibles when converted. See § 801.30(a)(6).

DELETED DEFINITION OF "SECURITY"

Section 801.1(e) of the original and revised rules defined the term "security." The definition listed the various interests in businesses deemed to be securities, as well as "in general, any interest or instrument commonly known as a 'security,'" or the right to purchase any such security.

The definition was deleted from the rules for two reasons. First, the statute uses only the term "voting securities," which is defined both in section 7A(b)(3)(A) and in § 801.1(f)(1). "Voting securities" is a unitary concept and as such its components need not be defined separately. See § 801.1(f)(1).

Moreover, the term "security" has a commonly understood meaning which poses no difficulty in the vast majority of transactions. Inherent in the deleted definition was a recognition of this commonly understood meaning. Thus, the deletion should effect no substantive change.

SECTION 801.1(f)(2) CONVERTIBLE VOTING SECURITY

Section § 801.1(f)(2) defines the term "convertible voting security" as a voting security that does not, at present, entitle its owner or holder to vote for directors of any entity. The definition was added to the final rules to emphasize the existence of a distinct scheme for the treatment of convertible voting securities ("convertibles"). See §§ 801.12(b), 801.15(a)(2), 801.32, and 802.31.

The distinction between convertibles and other voting securities is important for two related reasons. First, under the final rules the reporting and waiting period requirements of the act do not apply to convertibles until they are exchanged for voting securities presently entitled to vote. The acquisition of convertibles, unlike the acquisition of other voting securities, is always exempt (§ 802.31), but a "conversion" is a potentially reportable acquisition (§ 802.32). The second reason is a corollary of the first. For purposes of the 15 percent-or-$15 million size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3), convertibles are disregarded entirely in computing the value or percentage of voting securities to be held or acquired. Section 801.12(b) provides that, for purposes of the 15 percent test of section 7A(a)(3)(A), it is irrelevant whether the acquiring person or others own convertible voting securities of the acquired person; these convertibles appear in neither the numerator nor the denominator of that percentage. Similarly, under § 801.15(a)(2), the value of convertible voting securities is ignored for purposes of the $15 million test of section 7A(a)(3)(B). The only time, in fact, that convertibles are "counted" is as assets on a person's last regularly prepared balance sheet, for purposes of the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2). See § 801.11(c)(2).

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO 801.1(f)(2)

Section 7A(b)(3)(A) of the Act provides:

> The term "voting securities" means any securities which at present *or upon conversion* entitle the owner or holder therof to vote for the election of directors of the issuer or, with respect to unincorporated issuers, persons exercising similar functions. (Emphasis supplied.)

The only reference to convertible securities in the legislative history of the act was made by Chairman Rodino from the House floor. He stated:

> The House bill covered acquisitions of assets and "voting securities"—any debt or equity instrument entitling the holder to elect directors of a corporation. Nonvoting securities were completely exempt from the House-passed bill. However, nonvoting securities that can be converted into voting securities were covered "upon conversion," and compliance with the bill's notification and waiting requirements would thus have been required prior to conversion. In contrast, the Senate bill covered * * * nonvoting but convertible securities * * *. The compromise bill completely exempts acquisitions of nonvoting, nonconvertible debt or equity securities. Further, the compromise bill covers nonvoting but convertible securities upon acquisition, not conversion.
>
> 122 Cong. Rec. H10294 (daily ed. Sept. 16, 1978).

Neither section 7A(b)(3)(A) nor any other section of the act states when notification with respect to convertible securities is to take place. The legislative history provides very little guidance. The Commission, however, interprets the departure from the House-passed bill (to which the final rules largely return) as an effort by Congress to provide rulemaking flexibility in lieu of mandating that acquisitions of convertibles must be covered.

Section 7A(c)(2), the subsection of the act that exempts acquisitions of nonvoting securities, reinforces this position. Since it does not specifically exempt convertibles as nonvoting securities, it implicitly leaves the Commission free to determine whether to cover acquisitions of convertibles.

Moreover, the language of the act permits coverage at either the time of acquisition or the time of conversion: Either event is an "acquisition" potentially required by the act to be preceded by reporting and a waiting period. Indeed, nothing in the act prohibits coverage at both junctures. However, the Commission determined in the final rules that reporting at the time of conversion is most appropriate, and that reporting before conversion obviates the necessity of also reporting before acquisition.

From an antitrust standpoint, reporting at conversion is more useful. It is true that before conversion, convertible voting securities may confer upon their holder the power to influence, either directly or indirectly, the management of the issuer. But the conversion price attached to convertibles may make conversion economically unattractive. And the measurement of the potential voting power conferred by convertibles is highly speculative, since conversions by other holders may dilute the potential voting power of the person holding the convertibles. So although a substantial holding of convertible voting securities may give the holder some power to influence management, this power is far less significant than the ability actually to vote the securities. At conversion a more accurate picture of voting power in the hands of the owner or holder of those securities can be calculated.

In addition, convertible voting securities commonly change hands several times before conversion. By interposing the notification and waiting period requirements of the act only before conversion, the Commission minimizes the intrusion of the act into the capital markets.

Accordingly, § 802.31 of the final rules exempts all acquisitions of convertible voting securities, and § 801.32 explicitly designates conversions as acquisitions potentially subject to the act. The exclusion of convertibles from the 15 percent-or-$15 million size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3), mentioned above, is consistent with the decision to disregard convertibles prior to conversion, except for purposes of section 7A(a)(2).

The revised rules had introduced the opposite approach to convertibles. Convertible voting securities were not differentiated from other voting securities, and their acquisition was reportable if the criteria of section 7A(a) were met. Percentages were calculated by means of a formula reflecting "partial dilution"—that is, only convertibles held or acquired by the acquiring person were regarded as already converted. For example, when determining the percentage of voting securities of an issuer held, the holder was obliged under revised § 801.12(b)(1)(i) to include within its holdings only those convertibles which were "convertible upon the occurrence of an event certain to occur within 5 years or convertible at the option of the holder." The denominator of that fractional computation was to reflect the number of votes presently entitled to be cast plus "the votes represented by conversion of voting securities of the issuer which are included in the numerator by reason of (the foregoing formula)." This procedure assessed the maximum voting power that the acquiring person could achieve within a reasonable period of time by means of conversions by disregarding the impact of convertibles of the issuer held by all others. In addition, revised § 802.31 exempted the subsequent conversion of convertibles.

The comments to the revised rules did not object to covering convertibles at time of acquisition, but did object to the formula for computing the percentage of voting securities that convertible voting securities represented. Several (e.g., 1026, 1070, 1090, 1102, 1108, 1115) perceived unfairness in not requiring full dilution in the percentage computations. One comment (1070) maintained that the language of the act mandated such treatment; for elaboration of that argument, see the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 801.12(b). By ignoring all convertibles until exchanged for voting securities presently entitled to vote, the final rules eliminate this dispute and employ the most useful means of estimating voting power for purposes of an antitrust evaluation.

SECTION 801.1(F)(3) CONVERSION

The reporting and waiting period requirements of the act apply to acquisitions of "voting securities." The definitions of voting securities, section 7A(b)(3)(A) and section 801.1(f).1(f)(1), provide generally that a voting security is one that at present or *upon conversion* entitles the owner or holder to vote for directors of an issuer.

Section 801.1(f)(3) defines "conversion" as the exchange, without the payment of additional consideration, of voting securities not presently entitled to vote for voting securities entitling the owner or holder to vote for directors of any issuer. Transfer costs, fees, and payments made to complete fractional shares are not considered "additional consideration" in this context. The definition emphasizes that "conversion" represents an exchange *of* "voting securities," as defined in section 801.1(f)(1), *for* "voting securities" and that an exchange, as opposed to automatic maturation of inchoate rights, must take place to effect conversion. For example, if preferred shares become entitled to vote because dividends have been omitted, that occurrence is not a coversion and the act does not apply.

As a practical matter, although the definition of conversion means that convertible bonds and the like are voting securities, and that therefore reporting could be required prior to their acquisition, section 802.31 of the rules exempts all acquisitions of convertible voting securities from the requirements of the act. Thus, convertibles, like options and warrants, can be acquired without complying with the act, but compliance may be required prior to conversion or exercise.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO SECTION 801.1(F)(3)

The original rules did not address convertibles or the concept of "conversion." Revised section 801.1(f)(2), defined "conversion" but employed circular language. It stated essentially that conversion was the *conversion*, without the payment of additional consideration, of securities not presently entitled to vote into voting securities entitling the owner or holder to vote.

The requirement that the conversion be effected without additional consideration was essential in the revised rules to distinguish convertible securities, which are "voting securities," from options and warrants, which are not. Under these rules, convertibles would have been reportable at acquisition and exempt at conversion, while options and warrants would have been exempt at acquisition but potentially repoortable when exercised. See the Statement of Basis and Purpose to section 801.1(f)(2).

As stated above, the final rules treat convertibles in exactly the same way as options and warrants. The definition of "conversion" is present only to complete the scheme of the act, which uses the term in section 7A(b)(3)(A).

The final definition's emphasis on the *exchange* process addresses an issue raised by two comments (1070, 1090). Some issues of preferred stock entitle the owner or holder to vote for directors after the issuer has failed to pay dividends for a specified period of time. At acquisition, such preferred stock does not entitle its holder to vote; thus, the acquisition is not an acquisition of voting securities and is not reportable. Since the accrual of voting rights to such preferred stock is an automatic process and does not represent an exchange, this event is not a conversion, and again, is not reportable. Therefore, since preferred stock which entitles its owner or holder to vote upon default is not *converted* within the meaning of the rules when such voting rights accrue, is is a "voting security" only when presently entitled to vote—that is, only when the issuer is already in default. Acquisitions of this kind of preferred stock accordingly are subject to the reporting and waiting requirements of the act only if made during a period when voting rights have attached. On the othe hand, the acquisition of *voting* preferred stock is treated like any other acquisition of voting securities and is potentially reportable. If voting preferred may be converted into (exchanged for) voting common stock, this conversion is also subject to the requirements of the act if the criteria of section 7A(a) are met. (Note, however, that if the exchange does not increase the holder's percentage of the voting securities of the issuer, it may be exempt. See section 7A(c)(10).)

The definition requires that *voting securities* be exchanged for voting securities to make clear that the aquisition of voting securities for cash or equivalent securities is not a conversion, and that cash and such securities therefore are not voting securities subject to the act.

SECTION 801.1(g)(1) TENDER OFFER

Section 801.1(g)(1) defines the term "tender offer," which appears in several places in the act and rules. The definition is important chiefly because the act and rules treat tender offers differently from other acquisitions in one important respect. A request for additional information and documentary material under section 7A(e) and section 803.20 normally extends the waiting period when directed to either party to an acquisition; however, for tender offers the waiting period is extended only when the request is directed to acquiring persons. In addition, other special treatment, summarized in the Statement of Basis and Purpose to section 801.1(g)(2), applies to cash tender offers.

The definition of "tender offer" incorporates the meaning of the term in section 14 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, 15 U.S.C. 78n. Neither the Exchange Act nor the rules and regulations issued under that act by the SEC define the term "tender offer," and the meaning of the term is instead found in case law and administrative precedent.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO SECTION 801.1(g)(1)

In its regulatory programs, the SEC has considered, but explicitly declined, defining the term "tender offer." In August 1976, the SEC issued proposed rules and schedules to implement sections 14(d) and 14(e) of the Exchange Act relating to tender offers. Exchange Act Release No. 34-12676 (August 2, 1976), 41 FR at 33004 (Aug. 6, 1976). The SEC stated that the dynamic nature of tender offers cautioned it to remain flexible in determining which types of transactions fall within the term. It specifically noted that its position did not limit the term to "so-called conventional tender offers whereby an offer is published by a person requesting that all or a portion of a class of a company's securities be deposited during a fixed period of time so that (the offeror) may purchase such securities * * * subject to specified conditions." Id. The release mentioned other types of bids and solicitations, which, depending on the circumstances, it might characterize as tender offers.

The definition in original section 801.05(f) was modeled after the SEC's description of a conventional tender offer. The SEC criticized this definition in its comment on the original rules (125), noting that there did not appear to be any reason to limit the tender offer provisions of the premerger notification rules to conventional tender offers. Accordingly, the SEC comment suggested adoption of the definition which appeared in the revised rules. In its comment on the revised rules (1058), the SEC supported the revised definition, which was retained without change in the final rules.

Section 801.1(g)(1), by referring to section 14 of the Exchange Act, invokes section 14(e) of that act, which, as interpreted by the SEC, embraces all tender offers without regard to the limitations contained in section 14(d). Exchange Act Release No. 34-12676 (Aug. 2, 1976), 42 FR at 33005 (Aug. 6, 1976). The Commission specifically adopts this broader meaning of the term "tender offer."

SECTION 801.1(g)(2) CASH TENDER OFFER

Section 801.1(g)(2) defines the term "cash tender offer." The act provides that for cash tender offers, the initial waiting period is 15 rather than 30 days (section 7A(b)(1)(B)), and may be extended only for 10, rather than 20, days after the response to a request for additional information or documentary material is received (section 7A(e)(2)). These statutory provisions are explicated in section 803.10(b), and references to the term also occur in other rules, e.g., section 801.30(b). The definition states that a cash tender offer is a tender offer in which cash is the only consideration offered to the holders of the voting securities sought to be acquired.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO SECTION 801.1(g)(2)

This definition merely states the plain meaning of the act. It appeared in the original rules as section 801.05(g) and in the revised rules as section 810.1(h), and attracted no comments.

SECTION 801.1(g)(3) NONCASH TENDER OFFER

Section 801.1(g)(3) defines the term "noncash tender offer." This term appears for the first time in section 802.23 of the final rules, an exemption rule which modifies the length of the waiting period when a cash tender offer is amended into a noncash tender offer, or vice versa. The definition provides that a noncash tender offer is any tender offer that is not a cash tender offer—that is, one in which any consideration other than or in addition to cash is offered to the holder of the voting securities to be acquired.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.1(g)(3)

This definition is the logical converse of the definition of cash tender offer.

SECTION 801.1(h) NOTIFICATION THRESHOLD

Section 801.1(h) defines the term "notification threshold." The term does not appear in the act. In the rules the term identifies the levels of stock ownership that may not be attained or surpassed by a person without first filing notification and observing a waiting period. The most important application of the term is in § 802.21, the exemption rule governing stock purchase above the 15-percent or $15 million level prescribed in the act.

To understand the term one must begin with the language of section 7A(a)(3), the size-of-transaction test. Notification and a waiting period are required if section 7A(a) (1) and (2) are satisfied, and if:

> (3) *as a result of such acquisition, the acquiring person would hold* [15-percent or $15 million of the stock or assets of the acquired person]. (Emphasis supplied.)

The rules interpret this language to include *every* acquisition after which the acquiring person would hold more than 15-percent or $15 million of the stock of the acquired person, rather than only those acquisitions which initially raise the acquiring person's holdings to the 15-percent or $15 million level. See § 801.13(a). Therefore, every stock acquistion above the 15-percent or $15 million level becomes a potentially reportable transaction—reportable if section 7 (a)(1) and (a)(2) also are satisfied, and if no exemption applies. Section 802.21 exempts all acquisitions above the 15-percent or $15 million level except those attaining specified "notification thresholds," provided that certain timing and other conditions are satisfied. These levels of ownership, before which an additional notification and waiting period will be required, are defined in this rule as 15 percent of the stock of the acquired company, if valued at more than $15 million; 25 percent of the stock; and 50 percent of the stock. (The 15-percent or $15 million level contained in the act is inserted as the first notification threshold to facilitate the operation of § 802.21.) Section 801.12 governs the calculation of all percentages. For further explanation of the role of notification thresholds, see the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 802.21.

Notification thresholds and the exemption conferred by § 802.21 apply only to acquisitions of voting securities. Any acquisition of assets that satisfies the three tests of section 7A(a) and is not exempted by the act and rules is reportable. In particular, any acquisition as a result of which the acquiring person would hold 15 percent or $15 million of the acquired person's assets is reportable, even though the reporting person may have previously filed notification with respect to an acquistion of assets from the same person. However, note that under § 801.13(b) assets cease to be assets of the acquired person after 180 days.

The other occurrences of the term are relatively minor and relate to the same purposes. For example, § 802.23(a) is a provision similar to § 802.21 in connection with tender offers. Section 803.7 uses the term in explaining the impact of that rule upon § 802.21. Several rules relating to the application of section 7A(a)(3) also refer to § 801.1(h)(1) in order to assure consistency between the rules and the act. See, e.g., §§ 801.14, 801.21.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.1(h)

Under § 801.13(a) every acquisition as a result of which the acquiring person would hold more than 15 percent or $15 million of the voting securities of the acquired person becomes a reportable acquisition if the tests of section 7A(a) (1) and (2) are satisfied. The Commission has determined, however, that to interpose the notification and waiting period requirements before every acquistion above the 15-percent or $15 million level would entail a burden on reporting persons and the enforcement agencies not justified by the additional information it would provide. See the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 802.21. The definition of "notification threshold" identifies the points at which reporting subsequent to the 15-percent or $15 million level will be required.

The number of notification thresholds—four—was chosen because it serves the enforcement interests of the agencies without excessively taxing their administrative resources or burdening reporting persons. The particular percentage levels were selected as notification thresholds because they are appropriate levels for the agencies to review the significance of holdings of voting securities. Subparagraph (h)(1), the criterion of section 7A(a)(3), was selected by Congress as the first appropriate level. The second and third notification thresholds are appropriate because the act applies to the acquisition of the stock of companies ranging from quite large to quite small, and from widely to closely held corporations. Thus, working control or significant influence may arise at different points with respect to different companies. The 15-percent (when applicable) and 25-percent thresholds give the enforcement agencies adequate opportunities to assess the ability of a significant minority shareholder to influence or direct management.

The second threshold, which did not appear in the revised rules, was inserted because for larger companies, stock valued at $15 million may represent substantially less than 15 percent of the total number of outstanding shares. A holding that posed no antitrust concern at such a low percentage level may pose concern well before reaching the 25 percent threshold.

The final 50 percent threshold is appropriate because that level represents veto power, if not actual control, and because section 7A(c)(3) exempts acquisitions prior to which the acquiring person already held at least 50 percent of the shares.

The term "notification threshold" first appeared in the revised rules as § 802.21(a), but has been transferred to § 801.1, inwhich other terms are defined. The dollar amount in subparagraph (h)(1) has been corrected to an amount *exceeding* $15 million, to conform with section 7A(a)(3)(B). The reference in the revised rules to § 802.64 were necessary to accommodate institutional investors that first filed notification not at 15 percent or $15 million, but at the higher limits in that rule. However, § 802.21 has been reworded so that different notification thresholds for institutional investors are no longer required. Note that institutional investors, like other persons, are subject to the 25 percent and 50 percent thresholds.

SECTION 801.1(I)(1) SOLELY FOR THE PURPOSE OF INVESTMENT

The phrase "solely for the purpose of investment" occurs in two statutory exemptions, section 7(A)(c) (9) and (11), and in two exemption rules, §§ 802.9 and 802.64. The definition provides that so long as a person does not intend to participate in the formulation of the basic business decisions of an issuer, that person holds or acquires the issuer's voting securities "solely for the purpose of investment."

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.1(i)(1)

The purpose of this definition is to limit the availability of the exemptions contained in section 7A(c) (9) and (11) of the act and §§ 802.9 and 802.64 of the rules to situations in which the acquiring person or the holder has no intention of participating in the management of the issuer. For further information, see the Statements of Basis and Purpose to §§ 802.9 and 802.64. Although the definition has been reworded to conform with the language of the act, its substance is unchanged from revised § 801.1(l). Original § 802.85(c) had excluded control holdings from the concept, but the original rules did not otherwise define the term.

In the FEDERAL REGISTER notice accompanying the revised rules, 42 FR at 39047 (Aug. 1, 1977), comments were invited on the suggestion that this definition be further limited by requiring that stock purchased for investment purposes not be voted. The comments (e.g., 1020, 1050, 1051, 1058, 1067, 1070, 1090, 1101, 1103, 1110, 1111) were unanimously negative, arguing that voting for directors, without more, was not inconsistent with investment purpose. The Commission has decided not to incorporate this limitation into the final definition. Therefore, merely voting the stock will not be considered evidence of an intent inconsistent with investment pupose. However, certain types of conduct could be so viewed. These include but are not limited to: (1) Nominating a candidate for the board of directors of the issuer; (2) proposing corporate action requiring shareholder approval; (3) soliciting proxies; (4) having a controlling shareholder, director, officer or employee simultaneously serving as an officer or director of the issuer; (5) being a competitor of the issuer; or (6) doing any of the foregoing with respect to any entity directly or indirectly controlling the issuer. The facts and circumstances of each case will be evaluated whenever any of these actions have been taken by a person claiming that voting securities are held or acquired solely for the purpose of investment and thus not subject to the act's requirements. In appropriate circumstances the Commission may investigate to determine whether an enforcement action under section 7A(g) is warranted.

Comment 1059 suggested that section 7A(c)(9) refers only to acquisitions, but not holdings, for investment purposes, and therefore this rule should not refer to holdings. But section 7A(c)(9) does refer to holdings: it provides that an acquisition "solely for the purpose of investment" is exempt only if, as a result of the acquistion, the amount of stock "acquired or *held*" does not exceed 10 percent of the issuer's outstanding shares (emphasis supplied). Furthermore, the reference to "holding" in the rule is necessary because of the possibility of multiple acquisitions below either the 10 percent limitation of section 7A(c)(9) or the 15 percent and $25 million level of § 802.64(b)(5). In such situations, the question arises whether previously acquired stock is "held"—and thus must be aggregated with a subsequent acquisition. Such questions are answered by § 801.15, and it is therefore necessary to have a concept of holding as well as *acquiring* "solely for the purpose of investment."

If a person makes an exempt acquisition "solely for the purpose of investment" and later decides to participate in the management of the issuer, this change in intent does not require filing with respect to the exempt purchase, because the act applies only at the time of an acquisition. However, the change would require the person to file notification prior to any further acquisitions, whether or not exceeding the 10 percent limitation in section 7A(c)(9), if the criteria of section 7A(a) are met and the acquisition is not otherwise exempt.

SECTION 801.1(i)(2) INVESTMENT ASSETS

This definition defines "investment assets" to mean cash on hand or deposited in financial institutions, money market instruments (generally, commercial paper), and Goverment bonds. The term is used in connection with the foreign commerce exemptions (§§ 802.50, 802.51), in connection with filing on behalf of foreign persons refusing to file notification (§ 803.4), and in determining the total assets of a natural person (§ 801.11(d)).

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.1(i)(2)

The use of the term "investment assets" is explained in the Statement of Basis and Purpose to each of the rules in which it appears. In general, these types of assets are believed to lack competitive significance.

This definition appears for the first time in the final rules. It replaces the term "assets held solely for investment purposes" which was used in §§ 802.50 and 802.51 of the revised rules, and an equivalent provision in original § 802.35.

SECTION 801.1(j) ENGAGED IN MANUFACTURING

Section 801.1(j) defines the phrase "engaged in manufacturing." The definition is relevant only to the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2). The size-of-person test can be satisfied in three ways, and two of the three—section 7A(a)(2) (A) and (B)—use the phrase "engaged in manufacturing."

Under the definition, a person is "engaged in manufacturing" if it produces and derives more than $1 million in aggregate annual sales or revenues from products within industries 2000-3999, as coded in the 1972 edition of the Standard Industrial Classification Manual, published by the Executive Office of the President, Office of Management and Budget. Since the definition applies to "persons," all the activities of the person, as defined in § 801.1(a)(1), must be considered. The definition specifies that the person must produce and derive the revenues from manufactured products, so that merely reselling manufactured products does not satisfy the definition.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.1(j)

The size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2) has three branches. If the acquiring person has annual net sales or total assets of $100 million or more, then section 7A(a)(2)(A) provides that, if the acquired person is engaged in manufacturing, the test is satisfied if the acquired person has annual net sales or total assets of $10 million or more. If the acquired person is not engaged in manufacturing, then section 7A(a)(2)(B) provides that the test will be satisfied only if the acquired person has total assets of $10 million or more. For the third branch, it is irrelevant whether either the acquiring or the acquired person is engaged in manufacturing. Section 801.11 explains how to determine the annual net sales and total assets of a person.

Note that the definition is narrower than the standard for completing item 5 of the Form. That item requires a listing of all revenues derived from manufacturing activities regardless of whether those revenues exceed $1 million.

The definition refers to selected 4-digit (SIC code) industries because those classifications are commonly accepted as a basis for distinguishing manufacturing activities from nonmanufacturing activities. The original definition, § 801.05(h), did not provide for a threshold dollar amount of annual sales or revenues below which persons would not be deemed to be "engaged in manufacturing." The $1 million threshold amount was inserted in the revised rules in response to several comments (e.g., 15, 63, 115, 120) in order to distinguish *de minimis* from significant manufacturing operations. The final rules retain the revised definition.

SECTION 801.1(k) UNITED STATES

Section 801.1(k) defines the term "United States" to include each of the States, along with the territories, possessions and commonwealths of the United States, and the District of Columbia.

One of the two important applications of the term "United States" in the rules is to the foreign commerce exemptions, §§ 802.50 through 802.52, and the related definitions, in § 801.1(e). References in § 801.1(e) to the location of a person's or an issuer's principal offices or the residence of a natural person, and references in §§ 802.50 and 802.51 to the location of assets and to "sales in or into the United States" are all affected by this definition of the term "United States."

The other important application of the term "United States" appears in § 803.2(c)(1), which provides that responses to items 5, 7, 8, 9 and the Appendix to the Notification and Report Form shall be supplied only with respect to operations conducted within the United States. In addition, the term appears in § 801.1(a)(2), which states that "the United States, any of the States thereof, or any political subdivision or agency of either * * *" are not themselves included in the term "entity."

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.1(k)

Original § 801.05(i) made no references to "possessions," and neither the original nor the revised definition referred to the several States. The reference to the several States in § 801.1(k) was inserted into the final rules so that an entity "incorporated in the United States" or "organized under the laws of any of the United States" (see § 801.1(e)) would include entities organized or incorporated under the laws of the several States.

Comment 1104 asserted that the Bureau of the Census collects data only from the continental United States and thus suggested that reference to the commonwealths, territories and possessions of the United States should be deleted from the rules. This suggestion was not adopted, for two reasons. First, Census data is collected from Puerto Rico, the Northern Mariana Islands, Guam, and the Virgin Islands, and statutory authority permits collection of data by the Bureau of the Census from "such other possessions and areas over which the United States exercises jurisdiction, control, or sovereignty." 13 U.S.C. 191(a) (1976). Second, for purposes of the foreign commerce exemptions, it would be inappropriate to regard these territories and possessions as being outside the United States.

Moreover, while the term "State" in section 7A(c)(4) is not defined in the rules, it is intended that transfers to or from any of the governments of the commonwealths, territories or possessions of the United States, or any political subdivisions thereof, are exempt under that subsection, which exempts "transfers to or from * * * a State or political subdivision thereof."

SECTION 801.1(*l*) COMMERCE

Section 801.1(l) defines the term "commerce" to have the same meaning as in section 1 of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 12, or 4 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 44.

Section 7A(a)(1) contains the "commerce test" of the act. An acquisition which satisfies the size-of-person and size-of-transaction tests of section 7A (a)(2) and (a)(3) is subject to the act only if

> the acquiring person, or the person whose voting securities or assets are being aquired, is engaged in commerce or in any activity affecting commerce * * *

Section 801.3 interprets this test for all acquisitions except those in connection with the formation of joint venture or other corporations, to which § 801.40(d) applies. The term "commerce" does not appear elsewhere in the act or rules.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.1(*l*)

"Commerce" was not defined in the original rules. The final rules define the term in the same way as the revised rules did, except that the word "and" appearing between the statutory citations was changed to "or." The change makes clear that "commerce" includes definitions and interpretations of that term under either statute.

One comment (1059) implied that some confusion resulted from having "two definitions" of the term "commerce" in the rules and suggested that, since section 7A is part of the Clayton Act, that statute's definition should be adopted. The Commission has declined to adopt this suggestion. Congress intended that either the Clayton Act or the Federal Trade Commission Act, as well as the Sherman Act, could be used to challenged mergers or acquisitions. See section 7A(f). It is thus appropriate that a transaction which satisfies the commerce test of the act under either definition of the term "commerce" should be reportable.

Another comment (1086) suggested that the term "commerce" should be limited by a $1 million threshold similar to the provision of § 801.1(j). The comment stated no reason for this suggestion, and it was not adopted. While dollar thresholds appear in section 7A (a)(2) and (a)(3), none appears in section 7A(a)(1); had Congress believed a threshold to be desirable, it could have added one. Moreover, a threshold would probably be unworkable: it is not clear, for example, how one might determine whether a person was engaged in an activity affecting 1 million dollars' worth of commerce.

SECTION 801.1(m) THE ACT

This paragraph explains that references to "the act," which appear throughout the rules, mean section 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390, and codified at 15 U.S.C. 18A. References to subsections of the act appearing in the rules are denoted "section 7A(a)(1)," "section 7A(d)(2)(B)," "section 7A(h)," etc., meaning, respectively, subsections (a)(1), (d)(2)(B), (h), etc., of the act.

Because of required FEDERAL REGISTER terminology, 1 CFR 21.10, 21.11, the word "section" is used in the rules to refer to sections of the rules (not to sections or subsections of the act, as the revised rules did). This usage departs from the language of the act itself, which used the term "section" to mean section 7A.

SECTION 801.2 ACQUIRING AND ACQUIRED PERSONS

Section 801.2 identifies the acquiring and acquired persons to a transaction for purposes of the act and rules. To apply the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2) and the size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3), one must first identify the acquiring and acquired persons.

SECTION 801.2(a)—ACQUIRING PERSONS

Section 801.2(a) defines an "acquiring" person as any person that will hold voting securities or assets as a result of an acquisition. "Person" is defined in § 801.1(a)(1). "Hold" is defined in § 801.1(c), and, in general, means beneficial ownership. The rule also mentions several ways in which a person may acquire beneficial ownership, but these are supplied principally for emphasis since each is embodied in the definition of "hold."

An acquiring person may hold assets or voting securities either directly, or indirectly through controlled entities or other means. Thus, if agents, brokers, or other entities (whether or not controlled) are acquiring on behalf of a person, they will not "hold" within the meaning of § 801.1(c)(1) and need not file notification with respect to acquisitions made in that capacity. Only the beneficial owner will hold the voting securities and becomes the acquiring person.

The example illustrates the unique case of a corporation with two 50 percent shareholders. When such a corporation makes an acquisition, under the rules there are two acquiring persons.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.2(a)

No counterpart to any paragraph of § 801.2 appeared in the original rules.

Since the act repeatedly refers to acquiring and acquired persons, the revised rules added § 801.2 to explain the terms. The final rule makes several changes to revised § 801.2(a). For example, the revised rule identified an acquiring person as one which "is *acquiring* voting securities or assets." The size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3), however, is couched in terms of the amount of voting securities or assets that "as a result of such acquisition, the acquiring person would *hold*" (emphasis supplied). Thus, the statute focuses on holding as a result of an acquisition rather than on the act of acquiring. This focus is reflected in the language of final § 801.2(a), which describes an acquiring person as one "which, as a result of an acquisition, will hold voting securities or assets * * *."

The revised rule also identified persons as acquiring persons even if holding through "brokers or other entities acting on behalf of and at the specific direction of such person." The reference to brokers was deleted altogether, because brokers, whether or not acting at the specific direction of a principal, typically do not acquire beneficial ownership of voting securities. Therefore, under the final rules the principal, and not the broker, would become the holder, and hence the acquiring person. Since this result is embodied in the definition of "hold," the quoted phrase was deleted as superfluous.

The revised rule had restricted acquiring persons to those acquiring assets other than cash. The final rule omits this exclusion from § 801.2 (a) and (b) because new § 801.21(a) makes clear that cash is not considered an asset when acquired.

No comments addressed any portion of revised § 801.2.

SECTION 801.2(b)—ACQUIRED PERSONS

Section 801.2(b), read together with § 801.12 (a) and (b), defines "acquired" person. For all but one purpose, the acquired person is the person within which the entity whose voting securities or assets are being acquired is included. The most important consequence of this definition arises in connection with acquisitions of voting securities from third-party holders. If voting securities are acquired from a holder not included within the same person as the issuer, then the acquired person is *not* the seller of the securities, but instead is the person within which the issuer is included. The latter person, rather than the transferor of the shares, must file notification. Example 1 to the paragraph illustrates this point. Since the term "hold" generally means beneficial ownership, see § 801.1(c), agents and other intermediaries are to be disregarded in determining whether a transferor is a third-party holder.

The general rule stated in § 801.2(b) is subject to one exception: Whenever the percentage of voting securities to be held or acquired is calculated, the issuer of those voting securities will be deemed the acquired person. Thus, if a person will acquire shares of a subsidiary of a corporation, the percentage test of section 7A(a)(3)(A) will be applied to the subsidiary, not to the entire "person" within which the subsidiary is included. See the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 801.12 (a) and (b).

Example 2 to paragraph (b) illustrates the special case of the acquisition of a corporation with two 50 percent shareholders. Under the rule there will be two acquired persons in this situation.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.2(b)

Antitrust analysis requires that the acquired person be the person within which the issuer of voting securities is included, rather than the person transferring the shares, when the two are different. The relationship established by the acquisition, which will be the source of any competitive consequences, will be between the acquiring person and the issuer. Accordingly, the rule places the reporting obligation upon the person within which the issuer is included, and places no obligation upon the third-party transferor.

Revised § 801.30(a) had specifically made this point. The original rules did not address the subject.

The exclusion of cash as an asset when acquired, which appeared in the revised rule, has been deleted from the final rule because § 801.21(a) precludes considering cash as an asset for purposes of the 15-percent or $15-million test of section 7A(a)(3) throughout the rules.

SECTION 801.2(c)—ACQUIRED AND ACQUIRING PERSONS

Section 801.2(c) makes clear that a person may be both an acquiring and an acquired person in the same transaction. The example to paragraph (c) illustrates such a situation. When it arises, the parties to the acquisition must complete portions of the Notification and Report Form separately as acquiring and acquired persons. See § 803.2. A person need not complete two entire forms on such occasions; all that is necessary is to identify clearly the separate responses to the appropriate items.

Paragraphs (c) and (e) of the rule overlap. See the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 801.2(e), below. Since under paragraph (e) the acquisitions are analyzed separately whenever voting securities are to be acquired from an acquiring person, one or both of the two acquisitions may not be reportable. For example, if an acquiring person is to acquire assets valued in excess of $15 million, the acquisition is reportable. However, if the acquiring person is to pay for the assets with cash plus its own stock valued at less than $15 million (and less than 15 percent of the total shares outstanding), the acquisitions would be analyzed separately. The person transferring the assets would then be an acquiring person, but the criteria of section 7A(a)(3) would not be satisfied as to its acquisition of the stock, and it would not be reportable. See also § 801.21(a).

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.2(c)

Section 801.2(c) provides that persons may be both acquiring and acquired persons in the same transaction, because, as the example illustrates, each person may fit both descriptions. If so, the Notification and Report Form must be completed by each person in each capacity in order for the agencies to accurately evaluate the impact of the transaction upon competition. For the reasons why the form must be completed differently for acquiring and acquired persons, see the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 803.2. A person also may be both an acquiring and an acquired person in a transaction described by § 801.2(e). However, under that paragraph, whenever more than one separately reportable acquisition results, separate Notification and Report Forms must be filed.

SECTION 801.2(d)—MERGERS AND CONSOLIDATIONS

This paragraph of the rule provides that mergers, consolidations, and other acquisitions combining all or part of the business of two or more parties are acquisitions within the meaning of the act. Each party to the acquisition is both an acquiring and acquired person, and if the acquisition is subject to the act, each will be required to file notification in both capacities in accordance with § 803.2(b).

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.2(d)

The legislative history of the act permits no doubt that Congress intended the act to apply to mergers and other forms of business consolidations. For example, title II of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 is entitled "Premerger Notification." See also, e.g., the remarks of Chairman Rodino, 122 Cong. Rec. H10293-94 (daily ed. Sept. 16, 1976). However, the language of the act employs only the term "acquisition." Paragraph (d) of this rule simply makes clear that mergers and other business consolidations are "acquisitions" within the meaning of the act.

This paragraph of § 801.2 specifies that both parties to a merger or consolidation are, for purposes of the act and rules, both acquiring and acquired persons. In the typical merger in which all the activities of both persons are combined, designating each party as an acquiring person would provide sufficient information for the agencies, since under § 803.2 an acquiring person completes the Notification and Report Form with respect to all its activities. But since the act contemplates an acquiring and an acquired person for each transaction, the rule instead designates each party as both an acquiring and an acquired person. The dual designation does not involve multiple submissions of data, because for this type of transaction the reports filed by each person as an acquiring and an acquired person will be identical, and only one need be submitted. See § 803.2(b)(1)(iv).

The dual designation also proves useful for those mergers and consolidations in which less than all of the issuers included within one of the persons are to be merged or consolidated. Under § 803.2(b) that person, when reporting as an acquired person, will complete the Notification and Report Form with reference only to the entities to be involved in the merger or consolidation.

One comment (112) suggested that the rule provide objective criteria for designating the acquiring and acquired parties to a merger. For example, it suggested that unless the parties agreed otherwise, the person with the greater total assets could be designated the acquiring person. The Commission rejected this suggestion because this procedure would not assure submission of all necessary information.

SECTION 801.2(e)—ACQUISITIONS OF VOTING SECURITIES FROM AN ACQUIRING PERSON

Section 801.2(e) states that whenever voting securities will be acquired from an acquiring person in connection with an acquisition, that acquisition is to be separately analyzed under the act and rules. To some extent paragraph (e) overlaps paragraph (c) of this rule. If, for example, a seller of assets (an acquired person) receives the voting securities of the acquiring person as consideration, both paragraphs (c) and (e) are applicable. Under paragraph (c), each person is both an acquiring and an acquired person, and, if the criteria of section 7A(a) are satisfied, each acquisition is reportable. See the discussion and example in the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 801.2(c).

The focus of paragraph (e) is somewhat different. If a shareholder of an acquired person will acquire voting securities from the acquiring person (or any issuer included within that person) in connection with an acquisition, only paragraph (e) would apply, because the shareholder is not an acquired person within the meaning of the rule. For example, in a non-cash tender offer, the acquired person is the issuer whose shares are to be acquired. Under paragraph (e), if any shareholder of the acquired person will be acquiring voting securities from the acquiring person, that acquisition is to be tested separately under the act and rules. If the shareholder would hold 15 percent or $15 million of the voting securities of the issuer, and the criteria of section 7A (a)(1) and (a)(2) are also satisfied, the acquisition by the shareholder would be reportable. See also § 801.31. The example to paragraph (e) illustrates the analogous situation in connection with a merger.

When an acquisition is separately reportable, separate Notification and Report Forms must be submitted with respect to it.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.2(e)

This paragraph was added to the final rule to clarify that acquisitions of the type described, like other acquisitions, are subject to the act. The Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 801.31 explains the rationale for coverage, and for separate coverage, of such acquisitions.

SECTION 801.3 ACTIVITIES IN OR AFFECTING COMMERCE

Section 7A(a)(1) is the first of the three tests that must be satisfied before the act applies to an acquisition. If either the acquiring or the acquired person is engaged in commerce or in any activity affecting commerce, the test is satisfied. This rule interprets the test by providing that if the activities of any entity included within the acquiring or acquired persons are in or affect commerce, then that person is so engaged, and the commerce test of section 7A(a)(1) is met. The term "commerce" is defined in § 801.1(*l*).

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.3

The final rule is unchanged from the revised rule and is substantially the same as § 801.15 of the original rules.

Some comments (e.g., 87, 112; 1102) suggested that the commerce test should be less inclusive when foreign transactions are involved. These comments have not been adopted, because restricted coverage of foreign transactions is accomplished by specific exemption rules, §§ 802.50-802.53. Similarly rejected was the suggestion in comment 1115 that the rule specifically refer to United States commerce. Since the term "commerce" is defined in § 801.1(*l*), there is no need to modify its use in this rule. Furthermore, such a limitation would potentially cause confusion. The definition adopts the meaning of the term contained in the two statutes most relevant to merger enforcement, the FTC Act and the Clayton Act. Those acts apply to both the domestic and foreign commerce of the United States.

Finally, comment 1086 suggested that a minimum dollar test be imposed in determining whether activities are in or affect commerce. Again, the Commission declined to so limit the act's jurisdictional coverage. Section 7A(a)(1) sets no such limits. Rather than exclude transactions on jurisdictional grounds, the rules exempt certain transactions that, because of their size, are of lesser competitive concern. See § 802.20.

SECTION 801.4 SECONDARY ACQUISITIONS

Whenever as a result of an acquisition (a "primary" acquisition) a person will obtain control of an issuer, as a result of the same acquisition the acquiring person will also hold any voting securities held by that issuer. See § 801.1(c)(8). If the issuer to be acquired holds voting securities of other issuers that it does not control, the rule terms acquisitions of those voting securities "secondary acquisitions" and provides that they are separately subject to the act and rules.

Making the primary and secondary acquisitions separately subject to the act and rules has three effects. First, the three tests of whether the act applies, section 7A(a) (1)-(3), are applied separately to each acquisition. Thus, for example, if the issuer of the stock to be acquired in the secondary acquisition does not meet the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2), the secondary acquisition would not be subject to the requirements of the act even though the primary acquisition might be. Second, as set forth in paragraph (b) of the rule, the exemptions contained in the act and rules are also applied separately. Subparagraph (b)(1) specifies that even if the primary acquisition is exempt, the secondary acquisition may be reportable. Conversely, subparagraph (b)(2) makes clear that if the primary acquisition is reportable, the secondary acquisition nevertheless may be exempt. Third, since the secondary acquisition, if reportable, is separate from the primary acquisition, separate Notification and Report Forms must be submitted with respect to it. Three examples illustrate the rule.

Note that secondary acquisitions include, in addition to the noncontrolling holdings of the issuer to be acquired in the primary acquisition, any noncontrolling holdings of entities controlled by such an issuer. See § 801.1(c)(8). The rule does not apply to acquisitions of voting securities of entities controlled by the issuer acquired in the primary acquisition. All such voting securities are acquired as part of the primary acquisition. See §§ 801.1 (a)(1), (b), and (c)(8). Nor does the rule apply if the acquiring person will not control or already controls the issuer to be acquired in the primary acquisition; secondary acquisitions occur only when, as a result of the primary acquisition, the acquiring person obtains control. Finally, note that the acquiring person must aggregate all its preexisting holdings, if any, with the voting securities to be acquired in a secondary acquisition, in determining whether the act or an exemption applies.

In the case of a merger or consolidation, each party will make secondary acquisitions of any noncontrolling stock holdings held by the other party prior to the merger or consolidation. Since § 801.2(d) designates each party to the acquisition as both an acquiring and acquired person, in its capacity as acquiring person each party will make secondary acquisitions of the non-controlling stock holdings of the issuer to be acquired.

The waiting period with respect to secondary acquisitions begins upon receipt of notification from only the acquiring person. See § 801.30 and the Statement of Basis and Purpose to that rule.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.4

An acquisition may violate the antitrust laws even though it is effected as a secondary acquisition. The rule merely clarifies that such acquisitions are within the ambit of the act and insures that the agencies review the competitive consequences of such acquisitions prior to consumation.

The rule appeared in the revised rules. The final version has been rewritten for clarity but reflects no substantive change. The terminology of the revised rule, "indirect acquisitions," has been changed to secondary acquisitions in order to avoid confusion arising from the use of the former term elsewhere in the rules. "Indirect acquisition" refers to an acquisition made through a controlled entity, an agent, or another means resulting in acquisition of beneficial ownership. See § 801.1(c).

Only one comment (1090) was received on the rule. It recommended that § 801.30 should be expanded to include acquisitions described by this rule, and that secondary acquisitions resulting from mergers should be specifically covered by the rule. The first proposal was adopted. No change was necessary to adopt the second suggestion, since § 801.2(d) provides that mergers and consolidations are acquisitions within the meaning of the act. Therefore, since primary acquisitions include mergers, secondary acquisitions resulting from mergers fall within the rule.

SECTION 801.10 VALUE OF VOTING SECURITIES AND ASSETS TO BE ACQUIRED

Section 801.10 governs the valuation of voting securities and assets to be acquired. The third criterion for coverage under the act, the size-of-transaction of test section 7A(a)(3), provides in general that as a result of the acquisition, the acquiring person must hold either 15 percent or $15 million of the stock or assets of the acquired person. Section 801.10 explains how to determine whether the $15 million test is satisfied. (Section 801.12 explains how to determine whether the 15-percent test is satisfied.) The rule does not apply to the valuation of total assets fore the section 7A(a)(2) size-of-person test, which is governed by § 801.11.

Paragraph (a) of the rule treats the valuation of voting securities; paragraph (b) treats the valuation of assets. Both paragraphs employ the term "market price," "acquisition price," and "fair market value," and these terms are explained in paragraph (c).

Section 801.13 also pertains to valuation. It provides valuation rules for voting securities and assets of the acquired person that are already held by the acquiring person prior to the acquisition at issue; for that reason, § 801.10 begins, "[e]xcept as provided in § 801.13 * * *." Section 801.13 also utilizes, by reference, the terms defined in paragraph (c) of this rule.

Background Information to § 801.10

The words "to be acquired," which were not in the revised rule, were inserted into the title and first sentence of the rule to distinguish the rule even more clearly from § 801.11, relating to total assets as suggested by comment 89. With the new title, subparagraph (b)(1) of the revised rule which was a reminder to consult § 80 11 to determine the total assets of a person, was deleted as unnecessary.

SECTION 801.10(a)—VOTING SECURITIES

Paragraph (a) prescribes the method of valuing voting securities to be acquired. In brief, the value is the higher of the market price or acquisition price. If neither market nor acquisition price can be ascertained, the fair market value is used. The procedures for determining "market price," "acquisition price," and "fair market value" are set forth in paragraph (c). The rule utilizes market quotations only from a "national securities exchange" or "interdealer quotation system of a national securities association registered with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission." "National securities exchange" means any securities exchange registered with the SEC under section 6 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, 15 U.S.C. 78f, and thus includes the regional stock exchanges. The only interdealer quotation system currently registered with the SEC is the National Association of Securities Dealers Automated Quotation (NASDAQ) service.

Background Information to § 801.10(a)

Section 801.10(a) defines the $15 million test of section 7A(a)(3)(B) to mean the greater of the acquisition and market prices. If the acquisition price exceeds the market price, designating the acquisition price as the value is appropriate because the value of the acquisition to the parties is greater. Market value reflects present supply and demand for a stock. A major acquisition, such as a tender offer, may change that equilibrium more quickly than the market can reflect it, thus making market value a less appropriate test of the value of the transaction to the parties. On the other hand, if the market price exceeds the acquisition price, the market price must be employed as the value for purposes of the act. The rule invokes the procedure for determining fair market value only as a last resort, when neither market nor acquisition price is available.

The precedessor of the rule, original § 801.20, had provided that the value was the market price, or, if none, the higher of the acquisition price and fair market value. A number of comments (e.g., 15, 48, 63, 71, 120) complained that no board of directors would ever assign a fair market value different from the acquisition price, and that the required determination of fair market value would prove expensive and troublesome. The comments recommended that the acquisition price be determinative, and the fair market value reserved for occasions when the securities have no ascertainable dollar value. The revised rule reflects this recommendation, and no comments on this aspect of the revised rule were received.

SECTION 801.10(b)—ASSETS

Paragraph (b) prescribes the method of valuing assets to be acquired. The rule provides that the value is the fair market value of the assets, or, if the acquisition price is determined and is greater than the fair market value, the acquisition price. The procedures for determining fair market value, which are set forth in paragraph (c), therefore must be applied in connection with every acquisition of assets. If the reporting person has designated the acquisition price as the value of the assets, the agencies will treat this designation as a representation by the filing person that the fair market value has been determined to be equal to or less than the acquisition price. Again, the term "acquisition price" is defined in paragraph (c).

Background Information to § 801.10(b)

The valuation of assets is analogous to that of voting securities, except that for assets no market price generally exists, and the fair market value substitutes for it. If the parties assign an acquisition price greater than the fair market value, then the acquisition price becomes the value of the assets because that is the value to the parties. If the fair market value is greater, it, rather than the acquisition price, becomes the value.

Original § 801.20(b) specified that the value would be the highest of the fair market value, book value, and acquisition price. The comments on paragraph (a) of the original rule were for the most part equally directed to paragraph (b)—that is, the required determination of fair market value was said to be unnecessary and troublesome when the acquisition price had been determined. However, the revised rule retained the requirement for assets, deleting only the reference to book value as irrelevant and unlikely to exceed the greater of the other two values. See comment 77. Although several comments (1059, 1102, 1108) continued to call for the elimination of fair market value, the final rule retains it. In many cases, the acquisition price of assets may not be known at the time of filing. Note that the revised and final rules modify the procedure for determining fair market value, making it significantly more flexible. See the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 801.10(c)(3).

SECTION 801.10(c)

Paragraph (c) defines the terms "market price," "acquisition price" and "fair market value" used in this rule and § 801.13.

SECTION 801.10(c)(1)—MARKET PRICE

Subparagraph (c)(1) provides instructions for determining the market price separately for transactions subject to § 801.30 and for other transactions. Section 801.30, in general, applies to acquisitions on stock exchanges and other transactions not involving agreement between the acquiring and acquired persons. See the Statement of Basis and Purpose to that rule.

For transactions subject to § 801.30, clause (i) provides that the market price is the lowest closing quotation or bid price within the 45 calendar days preceding either the receipt of the notice by the acquired person required by § 803.5(a), or, if the act does not apply to the transaction, the consummation of the acquisition. For other transactions, clause (ii) provides that the market price is the lowest closing quotation or bid price within the 45 or fewer calendar days preceding the consummation of the acquisition, but not extending back prior to the day before execution of any contract, agreement in principle or letter of intent to merge or acquire. Clause (iii) specifies that if the security was not traded within the time period set forth, the last preceding trade or bid should be used, notwithstanding the time limitations of clause (ii). Clause (iii) also provides that if quotations are available in more than one market, the person filing notification may select any such quotation.A

Both clauses (i) and (ii) give the parties the benefit of a decline in market price by providing that the value is the lowest price within time periods not only prior to filing notification but also prior to consummating the acquisition. For example, assume that, in an acquisition in which the 15-percent test of section 7A(a)(3)(A) is not satisfied, the parties have filed notification because the market price exceeded $15 million, even though the acquisition price is less than $15 million. If the market price falls during the waiting period, the rule would assign a new value and the $15 million test would no longer be satisfied. Therefore, the act would no longer apply, and the parties would be free to consummate the acquisition, even though notification had already been filed. (Note that a change in market price can have no effect upon whether the 15-percent test of section 7A(a)(3)(A) is satisfied, because the percentage of stock or assets does not depend on market price. See § 801.12. In addition, if the 15-percent test had been satisfied, the decline in market price may make the acquisition exempt under § 802.20.)

Finally, the rule also allows parties to determine with assurance that the act does not apply. If on a given day the market price results in a value of less than $15 million for an acquisition, that price may or may not be the lowest price for the following 45-day period. But so long as the acquisition is consummated within 45 days following that date, under the rule the value of the acquisition can be no greater, and thus will be less than $15 million, and the parties need not file notification or observe a waiting period.

Background Information to § 801.10(c)(1)

The previous versions of the rule, original § 801.20 and revised § 801.10, would have directed selection of a market price within a specified number of days before filing notification. Two comments (1026, 1108) noted that this procedure did not permit a firm determination that an acquisition was not reportable—since no notification was contemplated, the time period for selecting the market price could not be identified, and consequently the parties were presumably imperiled by the risk that a rise in market prices would render the acquisition reportable shortly before the planned consummation date. In order to cure this problem, the final rule makes two changes. First, it provides for selecting the market price within a time period prior to either receipt of the notice preceding notification under § 803.5(a), or the date of consummation. Second, it provides that the market price is the lowest price within the 45-day period preceding consummation, so that a market price indicating that the transaction need not be reported assures the parties of their ability to consummate for that length of time.

Since the rule specifies the lowest price within the 45-day period, the parties need not agree to perform the valuation as of any particular date. Antagonistic parties therefore cannot select dates that lead to inconsistent conclusions about whether the acquisition is reportable. And the lowest price gives the parties the benefit of a decline in the market price, as discussed above.

The time period was lengthened to 45 days in order to provide adequate time for planning while still reflecting a reasonably current value. Comment 1115 noted that the few days afforded by the revised rule may have been insufficient. However, the 45-day period may not extend back to any days prior to the day before execution of a contract, agreement in principle, or letter of intent to acquire, since the parties presumably entered into their agreement on the basis of market prices prevailing at that time.

The subparagraph distinguishes between transactions subject to § 801.30 and those that are not, because, for the former there typically will be no objective reference point for the time period until the acquisition is consummated or the notice preceding notification is received by the acquiring person. By contrast, for consensual (non-§ 801.30) transactions, the date of execution of the contract, agreement in principle or letter of intent marks the reference date.

The SEC's comment (1058) suggested the inclusion, in clauses (i) and (ii), of bid prices on interdealer quotation systems, and the treatment in clause (iii) of situations in which the stock has not been traded.

SECTION 801.10(c)(2)—ACQUISITION PRICE

Subparagraph (c)(2), "acquisition price," specifies that the acquisition price includes the value of all consideration for the voting securities or assets to be acquired. This means, for example, that cash, voting securities, nonvoting securities, tangible and intangible assets and assumption of liabilities, if consideration for an acquisition, must all be valued in computing the acquisition price.

Background Information to § 801.10(c)(2)

Determination of the acquistion price is part of the procedure for implementing the $15 million test of section 7A(a)(3)(B). Section 801.10(c)(2) states that the acquisition price is the value of all the consideration for the acquisition.

The original rules contained no counterpart to subparagraph (c)(2). Instead, original § 801.20(c) provided that if securities were to be furnished as consideration for an acquisition, they were to be valued according to this rule. That provision was deleted from the revised rule as superfluous, since the recipient of securities furnished as consideration must use this rule to value them. The final rule provides instructions for determining the value of voting securities to be acquired by any person, and the revised and final rules effect no change by the deletion. Comment 1090 requested reinstatement of such language and the suggestion accordingly was rejected as unnecessary. The final provision is identical to the revised provision except for minor editorial revisions.

Comment 115 suggested that the value of installment contracts be discounted to reflect the present worth of the payments. This suggestion was rejected. The value of an installment contract is the value of the total payments of principal to be made under the contract, but excluding interest.

SECTION 801.10(c)(3)—FAIR MARKET VALUE

Subparagraph (c)(3) provides that the fair market value shall be determined in good faith by the board of directors of the ultimate parent entity included within the acquiring person, or, if the ultimate parent entity is unincorporated, by officials exercising similar functions. The board or officials may delegate the actual process of making that determination, but in any case remain responsible for it. The determination can be performed at any time, but must reflect the fair market value as of any day within 60 calendar days prior to either filing notification or consummating the acquisition. If the 60-day period expires before filing or closing, the parties would no longer be entitled to rely on the value previously determined, and if in doubt about whether to close without filing notification, the acquiring person would be obliged to make a new determination. Item 2(d)(i) on the form, however, which requests the approximate value of assets to be acquired, would not alone require a determination if the parties were otherwise certain that the act applied. The example illustrates these points.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.10(c)(3)

The rule provides that the acquiring person makes the determination, so that the parties to the acquisition can resolve with certainty whether the act applies. If the acquiring and acquired person each made determinations, or if the rule required the two sides to agree on a fair market value, the rule could lead to inconsistent conclusions about whether filing notification and observing the waiting period was required.

The rule provides that the determination of fair market value must reflect the value as of any day within 60 days prior to either filing notification or consummating the acquisition for the same reasons discussed in connection with market price—in brief, to permit the parties to determine with certainty whether or not they must comply with the act prior to an acquisition. The 60-day limitation is intended to allow enough time for a determination but still assure that the fair market value assigned is reasonably current.

The final rule on fair market value exhibits significant changes from both the original and revised rules.

Original § 801.20 did not have a separate paragraph instructing how to determine the fair market value, but had equivalent language within paragraphs (a) and (b) pertaining to securities and assets, respectively. The original rule arguably did not permit the board of directors to delegate the determination, and was criticized by numerous comments (e.g., 38, 48, 58, 74, 77, 98, 112, 115, 120). Imposing the responsibility upon the board of directors, the comments stated, would require a costly and time-consuming independent appraisal, and the value determined by management ought to suffice. Although the original rule did not seek to preclude such an appraisal, the revised rule explicitly permitted the board to delegate the determination. The final rule substitutes the word "function" for "responsibility" to make clear that the board of directors cannot disavow the determination if compliance with the act and rules is drawn into question. One comment on the revised rule (1061) suggested that the board of directors of the ultimate parent entity should be allowed to delegate the determination to a subsidiary, and the final rule clarifies that this is permitted by replacing the word "person" in the revised rule by "entity."

Two comments (29, 104) suggested that an accurate determination of fair market value may be impossible until after the acquisition closes, and that the rule should permit an estimate. This suggestion was not explicitly adopted because it seemed unnecessary to state that in some circumstances the determination of fair market value may require a good faith estimate. Note that the instructions to the notification and report form explicitly permit estimates and provide that the sources of the estimates must be indicated.

Two other comments (92, 115) suggested that acquisitions of patents and other forms of intangible property could not be readily assigned a fair market value, and that the rule should specifically permit valuing such assets at zero. This proposal was rejected, for the same reason that the rule insists upon comparison of the acquisition price to the fair market value: That the acquisition price alone may be difficult to determine at the time of filing notification. In such cases there may be no alternative but to determine the fair market value of the intangible property.

The final rule modifies the last sentence of the revised rule, as noted earlier, to reflect determinations of fair market value which establish that notification is not required, and to expand the 15-day period to 60 days.

SECTION 801.11 ANNUAL NET SALES AND TOTAL ASSETS

Section 801.11 explains how to compute the annual net sales and total assets of a person. The terms "annual net sales" and "total assets" occur primarily in the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2). In general, either the acquiring or the acquired person must have annual net sales or total assets of at least $100 million, while the other must have annual net sales or total assets of at least $10 million before the act applies; but see section 7A(a)(2)(B) (for acquired persons not "engaged in manufacturing," a term defined in § 801.1(j), only total assets satisfy the test).

Section 801.12(d)(2) of the rules also provide that the total assets of a person serve as the denominator in determining the percentage of assets to be held or acquired; thus the rule also contributes to determining whether the third test for application of the act, the size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3), is satisfied. In addition, the terms "annual net sales" and "total assets" appear elsewhere in the rules, most notably in § 801.40, which contains its own size-of-person test applicable to the formation of a joint venture or other corporation, and § 802.20, which exempts certain small acquisitions.

Since the chief purpose of the rule is to determine whether the act applies, persons need not use the rule to compute precise figures for annual net sales or total assets if they are certain that the act either does or does not apply. None of the items on the notification and report form requires a statement of the annual net sales or total assets of either party, and item 3(a), which requests the percentage of assets to be held or acquired, may be answered by estimating the total assets figure for the denominator of the percentage. See the statement of basis and purpose to item 3(a). Section 801.11 prescribes a method by which persons that are unsure whether the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2) or the percentage-of-assets test of section 7A(a)(3) is satisfied can resolve definitively whether the act applies.

Except for § 801.40, the rule does not explicitly refer to other rules, but an understanding of the definition of "person," § 801.1(a)(1), is essential to applying the rule correctly. The rule presupposes identification of the "person" the annual net sales and total assets of which are to be determined.

The rule consists of four paragraphs. Paragraph (a) expresses the general principle that all sales and assets of the person are included, whether foreign or domestic. Paragraph (d) constitutes a limited exception to this principle for natural persons. Paragraph (b) sets forth the general rule that the annual nets sales and total assets shall be as stated on the person's financial statements, with two provisos that may modify the figures on such statements. Paragraph (c) specifies exactly which statements are to be consulted.

SECTION 801.11(a)

Paragraph (a) states that the annual net sales and total assets of a person include all net sales and all assets, whether foreign or domestic, except as provided in paragraph (d), which excludes certain assets of natural persons.

By including both foreign and domestic sales and assets, paragraph (a) makes clear that foreign assets, operations or subsidiaries may not be disregarded for purposes of the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2) or the percentage-of-assets test of section 7A(a)(3)(A) even though foreign operations may affect the applicability of certain exemptions under §§ 802.50-802.52.

The term "net sales" has its common meaning, that is, sales less (or exclusive of) returns, discounts, excise taxes, and the like. See § 801.11(b) and its Statement of Basis and Purpose. The costs of production or materials may not be deducted. Persons that do not have "sales" should use net receipts, revenues, or other comparable figures.

Of course, the sales and assets of a "person" include the sales and assets of all of its component entities. See § 801.1(a)(1).

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.11(a)

Original § 801.25 corresponds to this rule, and paragraph (c) of the original rule corresponds most nearly to paragraph (a) of the final rule. The comments to original paragraph (c) addressed matters that appear in other paragraphs of the final rule.

Revised § 801.11 set the rule into its current format, and the final version of paragraph (a) retains the revised version with only two changes. It inserts the word "net" before "sales," to clarify that deductions normally made from gross sales under the person's accounting procedures, e.g., returns, discounts, etc., are permitted. The term "sales" does not, however, mean net income after costs of goods sold, as one comment (1088) suggested. Congress manifestly intended the act to reach acquisitions by large firms, and while sales are a useful measurement of size for this purpose, profitability is not.

The final rule also inserts the word "held," to incorporate all of the concepts of ownership that the definition of that term imports. See § 801.1(c).

SECTION 801.11(b)

Paragraph (b) provides that the annual net sales and total assets of a person shall be as stated on the financial statements specified in paragraph (c), with a number of exceptions and provisos.

First, the paragraph states that the total assets of a joint venture or other corporation at the time of its formation are not determined under this rule, but shall be determined in accordance with § 801.40(c).

Second, subparagraph (b)(1) requires that the annual net sales and total assets of the person reflect the annual net sales and total assets of every entity included within the person. If the financial statements of the ultimate parent entity do not reflect consolidation of the net sales and total assets of all the entities included within the person, the annual net sales and total assets must be recomputed to include the nonduplicative annual net sales and nonduplicative total assets of each such unconsolidated entity. The term "nonduplicative" makes clear that the consolidation may not consist simply of adding the sales and assets of unconsolidated entities, since, for example, the parent corporation's interest in an unconsolidated entity have have been carried as an asset on the parent corporation's books; therefore, to add the assets of the unconsolidated entity without subtracting the asset already reflected would be to count the same assets twice. The example following subparagraph (b)(2) illustrates this point.

Next, subparagraph (b)(2) requires that the financial statements (and any restatements necessary to comply with the previous subparagraph) must, insofar as possible, be prepared in accordance with the accounting principles normally used by the person. The financial statements must be of a date not more than 15-months prior to filing notification or consummating the acquisition.

Note that neither the financial statements required by this rule, nor the restatements directed by paragraph (b), must necessarily be submitted as such in response to the Notification and Report Form. Item 4 of the form explains in detail which documents must be submitted.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.11(b)

Paragraph (b) creates the framework for determining the annual net sales and total assets of a person. Since annual net sales and total assets are accounting concepts, the rule logically employs financial statements to derive figures for these terms. The rule requires modifying the figures shown on the statements only to the extent necessary to conform to the pattern of the act and rules.

The total assets of a joint venture or other corporation at the time of its formation are determined under § 801.40 instead of this rule.

Since the annual net sales and total assets must reflect the entire person, the financial statements must reflect consolidation of the sales and assets of each entity included within the person. Comment 89 asserts that under the original rules, consolidation of the total assets of controlled entities may unfairly inflate a person's size for purposes of the section 7A(a)(2) size-of-person test, because it attributed to the person all of the assets of an entity that could be "controlled" with only a minority interest. The revised and final rules in most cases will not cause the same result, since the definition of control insures that the person holds at least 50 percent of the controlled entity's stock. On occasions when control arises from contractual power to designate a majority of the board of directors, consolidation is justified for the same reasons underlying the existence of control in such situations—basically, the similarity of interest for purposes of antitrust analysis. See the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 801.1(b).

Likewise, subparagraph (b)(1) requires that the recomputation of annual net sales and total assets result in nonduplicative figures so that the recomputation does not unfairly inflate a person's size. Two comments (15, 29) suggested that the rule define "nonduplicative," but the revised and final rule retain the term without additional explanation, as adequately descriptive of the result sought. The term was extended to net sales as well as total assets in response to comment 29.

Paragraph (b) of original § 801.25 would have required a different restatement of the financial statements: if a material change in net sales or total assets had occurred after the date of the statement, which could reasonably have been expected to increase the annual net sales or total assets to the levels of section 7A(a)(2), the rule required either preparation of a new statement or compliance with the act as though the test of section 7A(a)(2) had been satisfied. Revised subparagraph (b)(2) preserved a similar provision and encompassed dispositions as well as acquisitions since the last statement. However, no consistent, easily administrable way could be found to require restatement of annual net sales when a business had been acquired or disposed of after the beginning of the fiscal year. The final rule abandons the approach as not worth the added complexity.

Subparagraph (b)(2) requires the financial statements and any restatements to be prepared insofar as possible in accordance with the accounting principles normally used by the reporting person, so that novel procedures are not adopted in order to circumvent the act. Original § 801.25(a) would have required certified financial statements prepared in accordance with Regulation S-X of the Securities and Exchange Commission. A number of comments (e.g., 15, 59, 63, 78, 83, 93, 120) criticized this provision as unnecessary and burdensome to privately held companies and foreign firms, which are not subject to regulations by the SEC and thus may not have certified financial statements prepared in accordance with Regulation S-X. Therefore, the revised rule called only for financial statements prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. Comment 1090, however, noted that generally accepted accounting principles would still be incompatible with several other provisions in the rule: for example, generally accepted accounting principles may not permit consolidation of some majority-owned entities and would not permit restatement of annual net sales for businesses acquired during the fiscal year. Accordingly, the comment suggested deleting the words "generally accepted," and the final rule adopts the suggestion. For similar reasons, the final rule requires use of the accounting principles normally used only insofar as possible.

The 15-month limitation insures that the statements reflect annual net sales during the most recent fiscal year. The original rule would have permitted statements prepared only within 1 year, rather than 15 months, of the date of filing notification. A number of comments (e.g., 29, 63, 78, 83, 88, 93, 115, 120) attacked the limitation as inadequate to allow preparation of the statement after the close of the fiscal year, and the revised and final rules provide for 15 months.

The final rule modifies the 15-month restriction so that statements within 15 months of consummating the acquisition, as well as filing notification, qualify. In that way, parties to an acquisition can resolve whether they satisfy the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2) even if not required to file notification. The change also allows persons to secure the benefit of a decrease in annual net sales or total assets. If during the waiting period a new regularly prepared financial statement appears and reveals that the act no longer applies, the parties need not comply with the act.

SECTION 801.11(C)

The two subparagraphs of paragraph (c) specify exactly which figures on the financial statements are the annual net sales and total assets of the person. Since paragraph (c) is subject to the provisions of paragraph (b), the annual statement must consolidate the net sales and total assets of all entities included within the person, use the accounting principles normally used by the person, and be prepared as of a date within 15 months of the date of filing or consummation.

Subparagraph (c)(1) provides that the annual net sales of a person shall be as stated on the last regularly prepared annual statement of income and expense of the person. See the Statement of Basis and Purpose to paragraph (b) of this rule, above.

Subparagraph (c)(2) specifies that the total assets of the person shall be as stated on the last regularly prepared balance sheet of the person. "Assets" means assets disregarding liabilities but less depreciation if the accounting principles normally used by the person so provide. "Regularly prepared," as used in both subparagraphs, means that the statement was prepared both at the time a statement would normally be prepared and in the normal fashion that such a statement would be prepared. Internal balance sheets prepared for management and not audited or disseminated to the public may satisfy this standard.

If no statements of income and expense or balance sheets are regularly prepared, statements must be prepared if necessary to determine whether the act applies.

An example illustrates the paragraph.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO §801.11(c)

Paragraph (c) had no equivalent in the original or revised rules. Each of the earlier versions provided that the annual net sales and total assets of a person should be as stated on the financial statements of the person. The earlier rules would also have required restatement of the annual net sales and total assets to reflect certain changes occurring since the beginning of the fiscal year; see the Statement of Basis and Purpose to paragraph (b). The final rule abandoned that approach and instead inserted paragraph (c).

SECTION 801.11(d)

Paragraph (d) relates to the determination of total assets for natural persons. The total assets for a "person" of which the ultimate parent entity is a natural person are, under paragraph (b) of this rule, as stated on a balance sheet which consolidates all the entities which the natural person controls, directly or indirectly. See also §801.1(a)(1), (b). However, paragraph (d) permits a natural person to omit from such a balance sheet all assets except "investment assets" (a term defined in §801.1(i)(2) to mean, in substance, cash and equivalents, and Government bonds), voting securities and other income-producing property. Thus, a natural person compiling such a balance sheet could omit the value of assets such as a personal residence, automobile and other personal (non-income-producing) property.

The phrasing of the rule makes clear that all voting securities are regarded as income-producing property. Similarly, "income-producing property" means any property held for investment or for the production of income, whether or not actually producing income.

The "annual net sales" of a natural person will be the annual net sales of all entities (including partnerships) he or she controls, plus any annual net sales from proprietorships. Of course, a natural person may not have compiled a balance sheet, regularly prepared or otherwise, reflecting all such entities. As discussed above in connection with paragraph (a), the annual net sales and total assets of a "person" need be determined according to the rule only if the person is in doubt about whether compliance with the act is necessary.

Since paragraph (a) of the rule includes all assets "held," and because the definition of "hold" provides that the holdings of spouses and minor children are treated as though held in common (see §801.1(c)(2)), a natural person's balance sheet, to comply with the rule, must reflect all investment assets, voting securities and other income-providing property held by the spouse or minor children of a natural person, or by the parents if the person is a minor child.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO §801.11(d)

The assets excluded by this paragraph are generally irrelevant to any antitrust concerns that may arise from an acquisition, and thus their exclusion for purposes of determining whether the act applies is appropriate.

In general, the rules treat natural persons, corporations, and other entities alike. This rule adheres to that principle by aggregating all entities, however unrelated in their business activities, that are under the common control of the ultimate parent entity (whether a corporation or natural person) and by consolidating the annual net sales and total assets of all such entities.

Original §801.25(d) would have excluded all assets of a natural person other than partnership assets. Comment 63 criticized the provision, noting that Congress must have intended the act to cover acquisitions by natural persons, but that excluding all assets of natural persons effectively exempted such acquisitions, since section 7A(a)(2) would never be satisfied.

Revised §801.11(d) was quite similar to the final rule. Comment 1090 criticized the inclusion of all income-producing assets, arguing that only those related to control of a trade or business were relevant to antitrust considerations. However, that criterion seemed difficult for the agencies to administer and the parties to apply. Furthermore, it could result in artificial understatement of the size of natural persons by comparison with corporate persons or others, for which the criterion would not apply. Accordingly, the final rule retains as the test "income-producing" property. The final rule also clarifies the test by specifically including in the total assets all investment assets and voting securities.

SECTION 801.12 CALCULATING PERCENTAGE OF VOTING SECURITIES OR ASSETS

Section 801.12 prescribes the method of calculating the percentage of voting securities or assets to be held or acquired. Whenever the act or rules refer to a percentage, the percentage must be determined by applying this rule.

In general terms, the rule provides that the percentage of voting securities is the percentage of the total votes for directors of the issuer which the acquiring person will be entitled to cast after the acquisition. The percentage of assets is the ratio of the book value of the assets to be held as a result of the acquisition to the total assets of the person (not the entity) from which acquired. However, these general statements are subject to certain modifications and exceptions contained in the rule.

In many instances calculation of the precise percentage of assets or voting securities to be held or acquired may be unnecessary. For example, any acquisition as a result of which the acquiring person will hold assets of the acquired person valued (under §§ 801.13 and 801.10) at more than $15 million will satisfy the size-of-transaction test without regard to the percentage held or acquired. Conversely, § 802.20 will exempt any acquisition of assets for which the corresponding figure is less than $10 million, without regard to the percentage of assets to be held or acquired. For voting securities, the situation is similar, except that the exemptions under §§ 802.20 and 802.21 may require calculation of percentages.

SECTION 801.12 (a), (b)—VOTING SECURITIES

Paragraph (a) provides that whenever the act and rules refer to the percentage of voting securities of the acquired person, the issuer whose voting securities are being acquired shall be deemed the acquired person for that purpose. Therefore, the percentage of voting securities is calculated with reference only to the voting securities of the issuer to be held or acquired, in the manner prescribed by paragraph (b). Since the term "person" normally refers to all entities under common control, see § 801.1(a)(1), the use of the issuer rather than the person as the denominator of the percentage calculation represents a departure from the usage of the term "person" elsewhere in the rules. For this reason, the definition of "person" begins, "Except as provided in paragraphs (a) and (b) of § 801.12 * * *." The example following § 801.12(a) illustrates this point.

Paragraph (b) prescribes a formula for computing an exact percentage. The numerator is the number of votes for directors that voting securities presently entitle the holder to cast, or, as a result of the acquisition, will entitle the acquiring person to cast. This instruction requires application of the definition of "hold" contained in § 801.1(c), and § 801.13, which tells which voting securities are to be held "as a result of" an acquisition, before the correct number of votes can be ascertained. Votes that the holder may cast because of proxies obtained from other persons are not included in the numerator.

The denominator of the computation is the total number of votes for directors that all outstanding shares are entitled to cast. If the acquisition will increase the number of outstanding shares, clause (b)(1)(ii) specifies that the larger number should be used in the denominator. Otherwise, subparagraph (b)(2) directs that treasury shares and authorized but unissued shares should not be included for purposes of determining the number of votes presently entitled to be cast. Finally, for purposes of determining the number of outstanding voting securities of an issuer, subparagraph (b)(3) permits a person to rely on the most recent information set forth in filings with the SEC, if any, unless the person knows or has reason to believe that that information is inaccurate.

Two examples following § 801.12(b) illustrate application of the percentage formula.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION ON VOTING SECURITIES

Applying the percentage test to the issuer whose voting securities are being acquired sparked considerable controversy in the comments. The controversy ultimately arises, however, from the fact that the act itself uses the term "person" in at least two different senses. The act phrases each of the three tests that must be satisfied before the act applies to an acquisition—the commerce test of section 7A(a)(1), the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2), and the size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3)—in terms of "person." For purposes of the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2), the relevant "person" must be the entire corporate structure, rather than just the company or subsidiary which is making the acquisition. If the size-of-person test depended upon the size of the particular corporation making an acquisition, rather than the overall corporate structure, the act would become easily susceptible of evasion. Accordingly, § 801.1(a)(1) defines "person," in general, as the entire corporate structure, and § 801.11 applies the size-of-person test to that "person." Likewise § 801.3 appropriately applies the commerce test of section 7A(a)(1) to the same, overall "person."

However, the 15-percent test of section 7A(a)(3)(A) poses a problem. As the FEDERAL REGISTER notice accompanying the revised rules explained:

> For example, suppose the transaction involves the purchase by a large corporation of a subsidiary of another large corporation. The definition of "person" as the entire corporate structure would dictate that the selling corporation's entire corporate structure be considered the "acquired person" for purposes of the $100 million or $10 million size criteria. But if the selling corporation and its subsidiary each issue their own stock, then a specific number of the subsidiary's shares cannot conveniently be expressed as a percentage of either the shares of the parent, or the combined shares of the parent and its subsidiary corporations. The problem is not as acute when the acquisition is of assets rather than voting securities, since assets could be valued without reference to the corporate forms.
>
> (42 FR at 39042 (Aug. 1, 1977).)

The revised rules addressed this problem by introducing the term "entity" to mean the component parts of a "person." See § 801.1(a)(2). For purposes of the size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3), the revised rules designated as the "acquired person" the entity (rather than the person) whose voting securities or assets were being acquired. The original rules had accomplished the same result, without using the term "entity," by means of a more complex definition of "person." That scheme, in essence, defined the term "person" differently for the different tests for coverage.

The comments criticized original § 801.30(a) and revised § 801.12(a), the predecessors of the final rule. In general, the comments argued that different definitions of the single term "person" were impermissible. Some of the comments (e.g., 63, 89; 1042, 1050, 1091) complained that the scheme "expanded" the coverage of the act. Others (e.g., 120; 1042, 1050, 1059, 1091) disagreed that the different contexts required different meanings for the term "person." They noted that Congress used the term "issuer" in section 7A(c)(3), (c)(9) and (c)(10) and therefore inferred that Congress, by failing to sue the term "issuer" in section 7A(a)(3), did not intend the agencies to substitute the word "issuer" for "person" in that context. Still others (82; 1042) noted that the rule could be circumvented by first collapsing a subsidiary into the parent corporation, and that therefore the rule made coverage under the act turn upon the form of corporate organization.

The Commission did not agree with these comments. Unless Congress intended the 15-percent test of section 7A(a)(3)(A) to reach acquisitions not meeting the $15 million test of section 7A(a)(3)(B), the former provision would not appear in the act. Section 7A(d) of the act assigns the Commission the power to define the terms of the act and to prescribe rules to implement the act. The use of the term "issuer" elsewhere in the act does not preclude its use in any definition or rule. The argument in the comments thus reduces to insisting that the term "person" ought to carry the same meaning in all instances. But since "person" must mean a collection of entities for purposes of the section 7A(a)(2) size-of-person test, demands for consistency were not constructive to the extent that they failed to suggest a way to apply the 15-percent test of section 7A(a)(3)(A) when shares of one corporation of a multicorporate person are to be acquired.

Of the other comments, one (1091) dismissed the problem as one for the agencies to solve. Two comments (1059, 1070) conceded that application of the percentage test on any basis other than the issuer was inconvenient.

Comment 1042, however, suggested that the agencies should treat the shares of a subsidiary as assets of the parent corporation and calculate a percentage on that basis. This proposal was rejected. First, it is inconsistent with the statutory scheme—restated in § 801.21(b)—which deals separately with assets and voting securities. In addition, the proposal proves unworkable for third-party transactions since even though the seller is not the relevant person for purposes of an antitrust analysis, the proposal would calculate the percentage with reference to that person.

As the FEDERAL REGISTER notice accompanying the revised rules noted, 42 FR at 39042 (August 1, 1977), the agencies also considered another set of definitions. It would have defined the acquiring person to be the entire corporate structure, while defining the acquired person to be the entity whose voting securities (or assets) were being acquired, and all entities it controlled. Although this would have cured the inconsistency discussed above, it would have introduced another inconsistency—differing definitions for acquiring and acquired persons. It also would have permitted large corporations to evade the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2) by conducting transactions through small subsidiaries. As indicated in the FEDERAL REGISTER notice, this alternative was rejected.

Accordingly, the Commission retained the substance of the revised rule. The final version of paragraph (a) reflects only editorial differences from the revised rule.

The final version of paragraph (b) simplifies the revised rule, because the percentage formula no longer need accommodate convertible voting securities. The final rules makes convertible securities reportable, if at all, upon conversion, whereas the revised rules would have made the acquisition of convertible voting securities a potentially reportable event. This change in approach is discussed in the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 801.1(f)(2). Under the revised rules, conversions would not have prompted additional reports to the agencies. Therefore, the formula in paragraph (b) had to assess the voting power potentially represented by convertibles whenever acquired (or held). On the other hand, since under the final rules conversions must be preceded by filing notification and waiting, the agencies will be able to assess the competitive impact of the conversion. Therefore, the voting formula in paragraph (b) can disregard the voting power potentially represented by unconverted convertibles.

A number of comments (e.g., 1026, 1070, 1090, 1102, 1115) criticized revised § 801.12(b) because it computed its percentages assuming conversion of only the convertibles held by the acquiring person, rather than all outstanding convertibles. Most of these comments no longer apply to the final rule, because the final rule does not assume conversion of any voting securities. However, one comment (1070) argued that section 7A(b)(3)(A), the definition of voting securities contained in the act, requires that the rule compute percentages assuming full dilution, that is, conversion of all outstanding convertible voting securities.

The Commission does not agree. Section 7A(b)(3)(A) provides:

> The term "voting securities" means any securities which at present or upon conversion entitle the owner or holder thereof to vote for the election of directors of the issuer or, with respect to unincorporated issuers, persons exercising similar functions.

Comment 1070 argued that this language compelled that all convertible securities be considered voting securities for all purposes, and therefore be treated as converted for purposes of percentage calculations. However, this interpretation ignores the function of the definition. Subsection (b)(3)(A) of the act simply empowers the Commission to bring convertible voting securities within its ambit, a matter which, but for the words "or upon conversion," might not be free from doubt. The Commission does not interpret the language of the definition to require that the agencies treat convertible voting securities in any particular fashion, as the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 801.1(f)(2) explains in detail.

Paragraph (b) expresses the percentage formula in terms of the number of votes to be cast, rather than the number of shares, in order to accommodate (to the extent possible) multiple classes of voting securities or other voting arrangements differing from a single class of voting stock that elects the entire board of directors.

The formula includes only votes that voting securities entitle the holder to cast, and therefore excludes votes cast by proxies. Example 2 to paragraph (b) makes this point.

Subparagraph (b)(2) excludes authorized but unissued voting securities and treasury shares from the percentage formula simply to confirm that such shares are not "outstanding."

The final rule adds new subparagraph (b)(3) in response to comment 1089. Persons applying the percentage test can rely upon the total number of outstanding voting securities shown in the most recent filing with the SEC, if any, unless they know or have reason to believe that information to be inaccurate. This language is patterned after SEC rule 13d-1(d), 17 CFR 240.13d-101(d), 43 FR 18484 at 18496 (April 28, 1978).

SECTION 801.12 (c), (d)—ASSETS

Section 801.12(c) provides that whenever the act and rules refer to the percentage of assets of the acquired person, the "acquired person" is the person whose assets are being acquired. This treatment differs from that accorded voting securities in paragraph (a), which specifies that the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired is the "acquired person." Instead, when the percentage test is applied to assets, the denominator of the percentage fraction will be calculated with reference to entire "person."

Paragraph (d), which specifies the exact ratio which composes the percentage, confirms this treatment. Subparagraph (d)(2) provides that the denominator for the percentage ratio is the total assets, determined in accordance with § 801.11, of the acquired person. The numerator of the fraction is the book value of the assets to be acquired as shown on the books of the acquired person. The assets to be acquired do not include any previously-acquired assets identified by § 801.13(b)(2); only the assets subject to the current acquisition, identified in § 801.13(b)(1), need be considered for the percentage-of-assets test of section 7A(a)(3)(A).

BACKGROUND INFORMATION ON ASSETS

The final rule made two important changes in the application of the percentage test of section 7A(a)(3)(A) to assets.

The first change is the shift from "entity" to "person" in paragraph (c). Under both original section 801.30(b) and revised section 801.12(c), the entity from which the assets were to be acquired would have been the "acquired person" for purposes of the percentage test. The earlier versions, in effect, took the same position that the final rules take as to voting securities. The comments criticized the earlier versions; in general, the comments discussed above in connection with voting securities were equally directed to the assets provisions of the rules. Their arguments generally urged that the "acquired person" for purposes of the percentage test should be the entire person from which the assets are acquired, rather than the specific entity from which acquired, because the section 7A(a)(2) size-of-person test and the section 7A(a)(3) size-of-transaction test ought both to employ a consistent meaning of "acquired person."

The final rule adopts the position proposed by the comments as to assets, even though it rejects the comments as to voting securities. The chief reason for the difference is that no practical problem prevents the rules from employing the larger "person" in applying the percentage test to assets, as it does for voting securities. The book value of assets, no matter from which entity within the person acquired, can be compared to the total assets of the person. By contrast, the impossibility of expressing the shares of a subsidiary as any percentage of the voting securities of the parent corporation prevented the rules from comparing voting securities to any entity or combination of entities other than the issuer.

Thus, the final rule achieves as much consistency between the terms governing each of the three tests of section 7A(a) as is possible.

The second important change effected by the final rule is in the numerator of the percentage fraction. Revised § 801.12(d)(1) would have valued the assets to be acquired at the value assigned by § 801.10(b) for purposes of the $15 million test. The final rule substitutes the book value of the assets on the books of the acquired person. Several comments (e.g., 1040, 1090) noted that the numerator revalued the assets to be acquired, in order to reflect current values, but that the denominator reflected total assets at book value, which is typically lower than current value. The comments maintained that the resulting percentage would be exaggerated, and indeed, could exceed 100 percent. To cure this anomaly, subparagraph (d)(1) of the final rule provides that the book value of the assets on the books of the acquired person is to be the numerator. Although book value may understate the actual value of the assets, the resulting ratio is likely to be reasonably accurate.

Comment 1115 questioned whether intangible assets such as patents and goodwill are to be valued and included in the percentage-of-assets calculation. Since the final rule makes no distinction between types of assets, these assets, like any others, are to be included at book value in the percentage calculation.

For purposes of the percentage-of-assets test of section 7A(a)(3)(A), the numerator does not include any assets of the acquired person previously acquired by the acquiring person. Section 801.13(b)(2) includes the value of such assets under certain circumstances for purposes of the $15 million test of section 7A(a)(3)(B). The Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 801.13(b)(2) explains why such assets are excluded from the percentage-of-assets test.

SECTION 801.13 VOTING SECURITIES OR ASSETS TO BE HELD AS A RESULT OF ACQUISITION

Section 801.13 interprets the statutory phrase, "as a result of." Notification and a waiting period are required if section 7A(a)(1) and (2) are satisfied, and if "*as a result of* such acquisition, the acquiring person would hold (15 percent or $15 million of the stock or assets of the acquired person.)" Section 7A(a)(3) (emphasis added). This rule identifies which voting securities and assets will be considered to be held "as a result of" an acquisition. The rule also provides instructions for valuing the voting securities and assets identified by the rule.

Several other provisions of the rules are indispensable in applying § 801.13. Chief among these is § 801.15, which excepts from this rule certain acquisitions of assets and voting securities which were exempt from the requirements of the act at the time of their acquisition (or would have been had the act and rules been in effect). Although this rule would provide that some such assets and voting securities are held as a result of an acquisition, § 801.15 constitutes an exception to this rule and may provide that some of them are not so held.

In addition, the definition of "hold," § 801.1(c), is important, since voting securities or assets must first be "held" before they may be held as a result of an acquisition. And the valuation provisions of the rule invoke the valuation procedures set forth in § 801.10(c).

Paragraph (a) of the rule treats voting securities, and paragraph (b) of the rule addresses assets.

SECTION 801.13(a) VOTING SECURITIES

The first sentence of § 801.13(a)(1) states the entire substance of the rule regarding voting securities: All voting securities of the issuer that will be held by the acquiring person after the acquisition are voting securities held as a result of the acquisition. Section 801.15, though, constitutes an exception to this rule for certain voting securities exempt when acquired, as described above. See that rule and its Statement of Basis and Purpose.

The rule has two important consequences. First, the number of transactions or the length of time between acquisitions becomes irrelevant in determining whether the act applies. The acquiring person after the acquisition either will or will not hold, cumulatively, 15 percent or $15 million of the issuer's outstanding voting securities.

Second, the rule means that every acquisition after which the acquiring person will hold more than 15 percent or $15 million of the voting securities of the acquired is one in which the 15 percent or $15 million test of section 7A(a)(3) is satisfied. Therefore, every acquisition after which the acquiring person would hold 15 percent or $15 million of the acquired person's voting securities—rather than only those which initially raise the acquiring person's holdings to that level—becomes a reportable acquisition if the two other tests of section 7A (a)(1) and (2) are satisfied. Therefore, large holdings of voting securities that antedate the effective date of the act and rules must be reported before being increased. Note, however, that § 802.21 exempts acquisitions above the 15 percent or $15 million level for 5 years after an initial notification except for those meeting or exceeding specified notification thresholds.

This rule also prescribes the value to be assigned to voting securities held as a result of an acquisition. Subparagraph (a)(1) provides that the value of the voting securities is the sum of the value of the voting securities to be acquired, determined in accordance with § 801.10, and the value of the voting securities held prior to the acquisition, determined in accordance with subparagraph (a)(2).

Subparagraph (a)(2) of the rule provides that, for securities traded on a national securities exchange or quoted on an inter-dealer quotation system, the value is the market price calculated in accordance with § 801.10(c)(1); for other securities, the value is the fair market value determined in accordance with § 801.10(c)(3). The practical effect of the subparagraph is to require revaluation of the previously held securities to reflect current value. Of course, revaluation may affect whether the act applies. A pre-existing holding acquired for less than $15 million may become worth more than $15 million, thus rendering any further purchases reportable.

The examples illustrate the rule, and cross-reference §§ 801.20 and 801.15.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.13(a)

Acquisitions raising the holdings of the acquiring person to meet or exceed the 15 percent or $15 million level of section 7A(a)(3) self-evidently meet the standard of that subsection of the act. The only aspect of the rule addressed by the comments was the construction of "as a result of" that permits the agencies to require notification and a waiting period in connection with acquisitions subsequent to the one reaching the 15 percent or $15 million level of section 7A(a)(3). Original § 801.50 first contained this interpretation, which several comments (e.g., 11, 73, 84; 1059) challenged. The comments characterized it as an attempt to achieve retroactive coverage of partial acquisitions or to accumulate "dossiers" on major companies by means of repetitive reports. (The original rules would have required reporting and waiting at every 5 percent interval above the 15 percent or $15 million level; § 802.21 of the revised and final rules lessens the burden of repetitive reports considerably.) Other comments simply noted that the construction "could have gone the other way" (63) or implicitly supported the interpretation (78, 96). However, to adopt the opposite position would be to assert that large securities holdings (short of control) may be increased without limit if only the 15 percent or $15 million level could be surpassed before the act and rules take effect. But the Commission believes that it is unreasonable to construe the act in a manner which would leave the enforcement agencies powerless to detect and investigate such holdings. The act manifests an intention that the agencies should be informed of large securities holdings whenever an acquisition takes place, and the rule is faithful to that intention.

The revised rule cast the rule into its present form, and the final rule retains the revised rule save for editorial changes and the reference to new § 801.15.

SECTION 801.13(B)—ASSETS

Section 801.13(b)(1) provides that all assets to be acquired in an acquisition will be assets held as a result of the acquisition. It also provides that the value of such assets shall be determined in accordance with § 801.10.

Subparagraph (b)(2) provides that, under certain circumstances, assets previously acquired by the same acquiring person will be considered assets to be held as a result of the acquisition, for purposes of the $15 million test of section 7A(a)(3)(B) only. Previously acquired assets will be assets held as a result of a subsequent acquisition if:

The subsequent acquisition is also of assets of the same acquired person;

The assets were acquired within 180 days of the execution of the contract, agreement in principle, or letter of intent to make the subsequent acquisition;

The acquiring person still holds the assets previously acquired; and

Section 801.15 does not dictate otherwise.

If the criteria are met, the acquiring and acquired persons must treat the earlier acquired assets as though they had not been previously acquired but were to be acquired as part of the subsequent acquisition. This treatment applies only for purposes of the $15 million test of section 7A(a)(3)(B) and not for purposes of the 15-percent test of section 7A(a)(3)(A). The value of the previously acquired assets in such cases shall be the value determined in accordance with § 801.10 as of the time of their acquisition.

Since subparagraph (b)(2) does not apply for purposes of the 15-percent test of section 7A(a)(3)(A), only the assets to be acquired in an acquisition need be considered in computing the percentage figure. See also § 801.12(d)(1).

Subparagraph (b)(2) also has no effect upon the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2). The total assets of all persons remain, under § 801.11(c)(2), as stated on the last regularly prepared balance sheet of the person, regardless of subsequent acquisitions or dispositions not reflected on the balance sheet.

The example at the end of the rule illustrates the operation of subparagraph (b)(2).

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.13(b)

Section 801.13(b)(1) merely states the obvious in declaring that assets to be acquired in an acquisition will be held as a result of that acquisition.

The criteria for application of subparagraph (b)(2) can be more easily understood with reference to its basic purpose. Subparagraph (b)(2), by including assets acquired within the preceding 180 days, prevents persons from evading the $15 million test of section 7A(a)(3)(B) by dividing an acquisition into two or more smaller acquisitions, each valued at less than $15 million. Subparagraph (b)(2) would still allow such a scheme to succeed, so long as the agreement to make each of the smaller acquisitions was executed at least 180 days after the consummation of the previous one. Note, however, that if the parties agreed to execute a series of formal contracts more than 180 days apart, the transactions might be viewed as one, depending upon when beneficial ownership passes.

Each aspect of subparagraph (b)(2) relates to this purpose. The 180-day period, for example, is sufficiently long to discourage the type of evasion described. In addition, after a period of time assets cease to be attributable to the person from which acquired and become assets of the acquiring person. The length of the period did not attract any comment.

The subparagraph's application is limited to the $15 million test of section 7A(a)(3)(B) for two reasons. First, attempting to incorporate the previously acquired assets into the percentage test would pose practical problems. Section 801.12(d) provides that the denominator of the percentage is the total assets of the acquired person, but the denominator could shift during the 180 days, reflecting the first sale of assets. Therefore, the percentages computed for each asset acquisition would not be comparable to one another and could not be added together. And if the denominator is held constant at the total assets level of the acquired person at the time of the first acquisition, then a substantial disparity from the actual percentage could arise. Second, acquisitions of assets which satisfy the 15-percent test of section 7A(a)(3)(A), but which do not satisfy the $15-million test of section 7A(a)(3)(B), will frequently be exempt in any event, because § 802.20 exempts such acquisitions valued at $10 million or less. Although two comments (63, 83) questioned the omission of the percentage test from original § 801.35, the predecessor of final § 801.13(b)(2), the final rule refrains from introducing such complexity and problematical calculation in order to secure reports for asset acquisitions valued at more than $10 million but not exceeding $15 million.

Similarly, the value of the earlier acquired assets is not used to adjust the total assets of either the acquiring or the acquired person for purposes of the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2). If the figures shown on the balance sheets were adjusted in order to reflect earlier acquisitions or dispositions of assets, the adjustment would affect whether compliance with the act was required only when it changed the total assets of one party to exceed or fall short of either the $10 million or $100 million figure in section 7A(a)(2). Although revised § 801.13(b)(2) had attempted to make such adjustments, the final rule jettisons the scheme as more complex than the result warrants.

The final rule also reflects, in another context, the limited purpose of the provision. The original and revised rules declared assets of the acquired person to be assets held as a result of any acquisition by the acquiring person within the following 180 days—that is, for purposes of subsequent acquisitions of either voting securities or assets. The final rule includes the previously acquiring assets only when the subsequent acquisition is also of assets. See clause (i). The change confines subparagraph (b)(2) more closely to its principal purpose of preventing evasion, but also embodies another principle. A prior acquisition of stock, because of the influence the shareholder may exert upon management, may contribute to the subsequent sale of assets. Therefore, aggregating the dollar amounts of the two acquisitions (which the phrase, "aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets" in section 7A(a)(3) and § 801.14 will do) is appropriate. However, once assets are sold, they confer no continuing ability to participate in the affairs of the acquired person, and so prior acquisitions of assets need not be considered for purposes of subsequent acquisitions of stock. Accordingly, the final version of subparagraph (b)(2) does not label previously acquired assets to be assets held as a result of a subsequent acquisition of stock (and therefore § 801.14 does not compel aggregation of the stock and asset values for purposes of the $15 million test in such cases).

The final rule makes several other changes in the revised rule. The reference to new § 801.15 is added, since that rule constitutes an exception and provides that certain assets are not held as a result of an acquisition, even though § 801.13 might declare otherwise. See comment 15. The reference to § 801.1(h)(1) was inserted to assure consistency between rules and statute. Section 801.1(h)(1) is the first "notification threshold" and simply restates the test of section 7A(a)(3) for use in § 802.21, and elsewhere; for more information, see §§ 801.1(h) and 802.21. The final rule measures the 180-day period back from the date of execution of the contract, agreement in principle or letter of intent, rather than the date of filing of notification as was provided in the revised rule. This change was made in order to clarify that the aggregation of the previous and current asset acquisitions may determine whether notification is required, rather than presuppose notification and measure the 180-day period from the date of its filing, as did the revised rule. And the final rule requires that the earlier acquired assets must still be held by the acquiring person at the time of the execution of the agreement, since disposing of the assets would seemingly eliminate any cumulative anticompetitive effect flowing from the earlier asset acquisition.

SECTION 801.14 AGGREGATE TOTAL AMOUNT OF VOTING SECURITIES AND ASSETS

Section 801.14 explains the phrase "aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets" which appears in the size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3)(B). That test is satisfied if, as a result of an acquisition, the acquiring person will hold an aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets in excess of $15 million. The rule provides that the "aggregate total amount" is the sum of the values of the voting securities and assets to be held as a result of an acquisition, as determined under the rules.

To apply the rule, add the values of the voting securities and assets to be held as a result of an acquisition. Paragraph (a) of the rule specifies that the value of voting securities to be held as a result of an acquisition is to be determined in accordance with § 801.13(a), and paragraph (b) provides that the value of assets to be held as a result of an acquisition is to be determined in accordance with § 801.13(b). Two examples illustrate the rule.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.14

This rule interprets section 7A(a)(3)(B) and states the plain meaning of that provision. Original § 801.40 attracted little comment, and revised § 801.15 attracted no comment. The final rule is unchanged in substance and reflects only clarifying editorial changes and the renumbering of other rules. The examples have been revised.

SECTION 801.15 AGGREGATION OF VOTING SECURITIES AND ASSETS THE ACQUISITION OF WHICH WAS EXEMPT

Section 801.15 interprets the size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3). That test will be satisfied whenever as a result of an acquisition, the acquiring person will hold 15 percent or $15 million of the assets or voting securities of the acquired person. This rule explains whether assets and voting securities acquired in transactions exempt under the act or rules will be deemed held as a result of an acquisition.

This rule applies only when the acquiring person is simultaneously acquiring both exempt and nonexempt assets or voting securities of the same acquired person, or is acquiring nonexempt assets or voting securities after previously acquiring exempt assets or voting securities of the same acquired person. Because its application is narrowly limited to situations combining exempt and nonexempt acquisitions, the rule should apply to relatively few transactions.

In general, § 801.13 specifies which assets and voting securities are deemed held as a result of an acquisition. This rule constitutes an exception to § 801.13, declaring that notwithstanding § 801.13 certain assets and voting securities acquired in exempt transactions will not be held as a result of an acquisition. For this reason, reference to § 801.15 appears at the beginning of § 801.13.

Since § 801.15 determines which assets and voting securities count toward satisfying the size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3), it necessarily will affect the application of the rules determing the value of the voting securities or assets to be held or acquired (§ 801.10), the percentage of assets or voting securities to be held or acquired (§ 801.12), and the aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets to be acquired (§ 801.14). The rule is not relevant to the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2), or to the rule implementing that test, § 801.11.

The rule applies both to current and to past exempt acquisitions. For current acquisitions, the rule permits the acquiring person, in deciding whether the size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3) is satisfied, to disregard assets or voting securities that are exempt under the listed provisions of the act and rules. Thus, if the acquiring person is acquiring a mixture of exempt and nonexempt assets and voting securities in a single acquisition, only the nonexempt assets and voting securities need be considered in determining whether the test of section 7A(a)(3) is satisfied. Example No. 1 to the rule illustrates this point. Of course, if only exempt assets or voting securities are being acquired, the acquisition is exempt and need not be reported regardless of whether the particular exemption is listed in the rule.

The rule also entitles the acquiring person to disregard certain past exempt acquisitions, although applying the rule becomes more complicated in such situations. First, if the current acquisition is exempt under any provision of the act or rules, whether or not listed in this rule, this rule does not apply. Second, the acquiring person must verify that under § 801.13 the assets or voting securities previously acquired would be deemed held as a result of the current transaction. As a practical matter, this will fail to be true in only three instances: when the acquiring person has disposed of the assets or voting securities in the interim; when the earlier acquisition was of assets, and the subsequent acquisition is to be of voting securities (§ 801.13(b)(2)); and when both the earlier and current acquisitions are of assets of the acquired person, but the earlier acquisition took place more than 180 days prior to the execution of the contract, agreement in principle or letter of intent with respect to the current acquisition of assets. In the last-mentioned case the assets are no longer deemed those of the acquired person, and thus they cannot be relevant for purposes of section 7A(a)(3). See § 801.13(b)(2).

If under § 801.13 the acquiring person would hold the earlier-acquired assets or voting securities as a result of the current acquisition, and if the earlier acquisition was exempt under one of the listed provisions of the act or rules, this rule allows the acquiring person to disregard those assets or voting securities for purposes of the size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3). Example No. 2 to the rule illustrates this point.

Additionally, if the earlier acquisition occurred before the act and rules went into effect, the rule still permits the assets or voting securities acquired earlier to be disregarded if, had the act and rules been in effect, the acquisition would have been exempt under a listed provision. Example No. 3 to the rule illustrates this case.

In each of the last two instances, if the earlier acquisition was exempt (or would have been exempt, had the act and rules been in effect) under a provision of the act or rules not mentioned in this rule, the acquiring person cannot disregard the earlier acquisition for purposes of applying the size-of-transaction test to the current acquisition. For example, voting securities exempt when acquired under section 7A(c)(10) will be deemed held as a result of any subsequent acquisitions of voting securities or assets of the same issuer.

Section 801.15(b) is applied similarly, but represents a slightly different approach. Earlier acquisitions which when acquired were exempt under one of the listed provisions will not be held as a result of a subsequent transaction "unless the limitations contained in section 7A(c)(9) or those sections do not apply, or as a result of the acquisition would be exceeded, in which case the assets or voting securities so acquired will be held as a result of the acquisition * * *." This means, in the case of section 7A(c)(9), that if the 10-percent limitation contained in that exemption will not be exceeded by the aggregate of the prior exempt acquisitions and the current acquisition, the voting securities previously acquired and to be acquired under the exemption will not be held as a result of the acquisition. If the aggregate of the prior and current acquisitions would exceed the 10-percent figure, all of the holdings are considered "held." Likewise, the limitation contained in section 7A(c)(9) that the acquisition be solely for investment purposes must apply to the current acquisition; if it does not, both the voting securities previously acquired under section 7A(c)(9), and the voting securities to be acquired (which would not be exempt under section 7A(c)(9)) will be held as a result of the acquisition. Example No. 4 to the rule illustrates § 801.15(b).

The principal consequence of finding that voting securities exempt when acquired under section 7A(c)(9) are not held is that the acquiring person may acquire voting securities of other issuers included within the same acquired person, or assets of the same acquired person, without having the section 7A(c)(9) securities count toward the aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets of the acquired person that, if exceeding $15 million, would make the subsequent acquisition reportable.

The exemption rules listed in paragraph (b) contain parallel limitations that must continue to apply ("qualitative limitations"), or not be exceeded ("numerical limitations"), if acquisitions under those sections are to be not held under the rule. In § 802.50(a)(2), there is the qualitative limitation that the assets must be located outside the United States, and the numerical limitation that the sales in or into the United States attributable to the assets in the acquired person's most recent fiscal year must not meet or exceed $10 million. In § 802.50(b), there is the qualitative limitation that the issuer be foreign, and two numerical limitations are expressed in subparagraphs (b)(1) and (b)(2) of that rule. In § 802.51(b), there is the qualitative limitation that the issuer be foreign, and the numerical limitations in subparagraphs (b)(1) and (b)(2). In § 802.64, there are the qualitative limitations of subparagraphs (b)(1)-(3), and the numerical limitations of subparagraphs (b)(4) and (b)(5).

Section 801.15(c) is similar to paragraph (b) of the rule. Voting securities that were exempt when acquired under section 7A(c)(11)(A) will not be held unless additional voting securities of the same issuer have been or are being acquired.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.15

This rule had no couterpart in the original or revised rules, although a number of comments (for example, 1059, 1070, 1089, 1099, 1100) suggested similar concepts.

Under this rule, assets and voting securities acquired under certain exemption provisions of the act and rules may be disregarded for purposes of the size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3). Each of the provisions was selected, in general, because the rationale for the exemption indictates that counting the acquisition toward making subsequent acquisitions reportable would not serve enforcement interests. By contrast, the exemptions provisions of the act and rules omitted from § 801.15 were omitted either because the opposite conclusion was reached, or because whether the assets or voting securities are held makes no difference in such situations. The listed provisions will be treated first, followed by the omitted provisions. For convenience, each will be discussed in the content of a prior acquisition exempt under the exemption provision in question, followed by a subsequent acquisition, although the rule makes clear that it is equally applicable to acquisitions occurring prior to the effective date of the act and rules that would have been exempt and to simultaneous acquisitions.

EXEMPTION PROVISIONS LISTED IN § 801.15

Certain acquisitions of goods or realty transferred in the ordinary course of business are exempt under section 7A(c)(1) and § 802.1, which interprets the statutory exemption. Since section 7A(c)(1) is listed in § 801.15, such acquisitions are not counted toward making later acquisitions reportable. Because of the nature of goods and realty, and because of the limitations inherent in the concept "ordinary course of business," it is unlikely that these acquisitions will be relevant to subsequent acquisitions.

If acquisitions were exempt from reporting under section 7A (c)(5) or (c)(6), then the underlying transaction is exempt from the antitrust laws. If that is true, no enforcement purpose can be served by counting the acquisition toward making later acquisitions reportable, and accordingly § 801.15 lists those exemptions.

Insection 7A (c)(7) and (c)(8), Congress has determined that certain transactions which require agency approval need not be subject to the full requirements of the act, even though they are not exempt from the antitrust laws generally. Thus acquisitions exempt from reporting under sections 7A (c)(7) or (c)(8) or under § 802.8 are not relevant for purposes of subsequent acquisitions.

Acquisitions of voting securities solely for the purpose of investment are exempt under section 7A(c)(9) if the acquiring person's holdings as a result of these acquisitions do not exceed 10 percent of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer. Section 801.15(b) provides that, as long as the investment purpose limitation continues to be satisfied and the 10 percent limitation has not been or will not be exceeded, these acquisitions are not counted for purposes of other or subsequent transactions, since the rationale for the section 7A(c)(9) exemption continues to apply. They are counted, however, in determining whether a person holds 10 percent or more of the outstanding shares of the issuer.

Similarly, acquisitions of assets by certain types of acquiring persons in the ordinary course of business, exempt under section 7A(c)(11)(B), are not held by the acquiring person for purposes of subsequent transactions. The aggregation provisions of § 801.13(b)(2) are not applied to such assets because the opportunities for evasion of the act seem minimal. However, voting securities acquired by the same types of persons pursuant to a plan of reorganization under the bankruptcy laws or pursuant to a plan of dissolution, while exempt under section 7A(c)(11)(A), are held (under § 801.15(c)) when additional voting securities of the same issuer have been or are being acquired in a transaction which is not itself exempt. The means of acquisition does not affect the ability of the acquiring person to influence or control the issuer after the acquisition.

Convertible voting securities are never deemed held for purposes of section 7A(a)(3) or the notification thresholds of § 801.1(h). See the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 801.1(f)(2).

The several exemptions relating to foreign commerce are handled in two different ways. For purposes of making later acquisitions reportable, acquisitions exempt under certain of those provisions never result in the acquiring person's holding the assets or voting securities acquired; acquisitions exempt under others may under certain circumstances. In the former category are acquisitions by United States persons of assets located abroad that generate no sales in or into the United States (§ 802.50(a)(1)); acquisitions by foreign persons of assets located abroad, regardless of whether sales in or into the United States are generated by such assets (§ 802.51(a)); acquisitions by or from a foreign government-controlled entity of assets located in the same country as the foreign government, or of voting securities issued by an entity organized under the laws of the same country (§ 802.52); and certain foreign banking transactions subject to the approval of the Federal Reserve System (§ 802.53). The considerations of jurisdiction and comity which underlie the exemptions themselves also suggest that assets and voting securities acquired pursuant to these exemptions should not be counted for purposes of later acquisitions.

On the other hand, certain of the foreign commerce exemptions depend for their applicability upon the fact that the impact of an acquisition upon United States foreign commerce is limited. Accordingly, assets or voting securities acquired pursuant to these exemptions also are not counted for purposes of subsequent acquisitions, so long as the limitations stated in the exemption rules will not be exceeded. Sections 802.50(a)(2), 802.50(b) and 802.51(b) fall into this category, and under § 801.15(b) acquisitions exempt under these sections are only counted toward testing the limitations contained in those sections. Example 4 to the rule illustrates § 801.15(b) with respect to § 802.50(a)(2). Similar procedures apply to §§ 802.50(b) and 802.51(b), both of which relate to acquisitions of voting securities of foreign issuers. The foreign issuer's holdings of U.S. assets and the annual net sales and total assets of any U.S. issuer whose stock is held by the foreign issuer must be examined in order to determine whether the acquiring person holds the voting securities it acquired in a previous exempt transaction, and thus whether a subsequent acquisition is exempt.

Assets and voting securities acquired by creditors and insurers in the ordinary course of business under the exemption in § 802.63 are not counted for purposes of subsequent acquisitions of assets or voting securities of the same acquired persons. An acquisition exempt under § 802.63 is not likely to become a predicate for the acquiring person's attempting to gain control of the acquired person. On the other hand, a creditor or insurer may make unrelated investments in the acquired person with which it would be inappropriate to aggregate assets or voting securities acquired under the exemption.

Acquisitions by institutional investors that satisfy the various limitations of § 802.64 do not result in the acquiring person's holding the voting securities of the issuer. So long as those limitations continue to apply or are not exceeded, the rationale for the exemption continues to apply. If the limitations are exceeded or do not apply, then all voting securities of the acquired person of which the acquiring person is beneficial owner or is deemed the holder (see § 801.1(c)) are held by the acquiring person for purposes of additional acquisitions.

Finally, acquisitions subject to an order of the Commission or any Federal court, and thereby exempt under § 802.70, do not result in the acquiring person holding those assets or voting securities for purposes of additional acquisitions, since presumably the supervision of the Commission or court ensures that all competitive considerations have been or will be carefully weighed.

EXEMPTION PROVISIONS NOT LISTED IN § 801.15

Under § 801.15, previous acquisitions exempt under sections 7A (c)(2), (c)(3), (c)(4), and (c)(10) are held for purposes of the size-of-transaction tests of section 7A(a)(3) and the notification thresholds of § 801.1(h), since these statutory exemptions are not listed in § 801.15. Acquisitions of non-voting securities or other obligations exempt under section 7A(c)(2) are irrelevant for purposes of making later acquisitions reportable, because the act applies only to acquisitions of voting securities. Thus it makes no difference that technically they are "held," because they do not affect either the dollar or percentage computations applicable to voting securities (§§ 801.10, 801.12, 801.13, 801.14), and because these securities or other obligations are deemed not to be assets of the acquired person (§ 801.21). While voting securities acquired under a section 7A(c)(3) exemption are deemed held for purposes of later acquisitions of the same person's securities the later acquisitions are themselves exempt if prior to that transaction the acquiring person holds at least 50 percent of the outstanding voting securities of the acquired person. So long as the later acquisitions are exempt, it is not significant whether the voting securities acquired under the section 7A(c)(3) exemption are held. Furthermore, if some voting securities are disposed of, so that acquisitions subsequent to the one exempt under section 7A(c)(3) are not exempt under section 7A(c)(3), the voting securities acquired under the section 7A(c)(3) exemption must be deemed held so that the later acquisition becomes reportable.

Acquisitions exempt under section 7A(c)(4) because they involve transfers to or from a Federal agency or from a State or political subdivision are deemed held for purposes of later acquisitions. If the later acquisition involves the transfer of assets of, or voting securities issued by, a Government agency, it will also be exempt. On the other hand, if a Government agency were to make an exempt transfer of voting securities of a non-governmental issuer, and if the acquiring person were later to purchase additional voting securities of the same issue, all the holdings of that issuer's voting securities by the acquiring person must be aggregated by the acquiring person to determine its holdings. This aggregation is appropriate because the fact that voting securities were acquired from a governmental entity does not affect the possible use of such securities by the acquiring person to influence or control the issuer.

Voting securities acquired in a transaction exempt under section 7A(c)(10) and § 802.10 must be counted for purposes of all later acquisitions. While the acquisition of voting securities by means of stock dividends or stock splits is exempt, these securities are not qualitatively different from any other voting securities of the acquired person, and thus the acquiring person is deemed to hold them for purposes of subsequent acquisitions. In addition, a contrary conclusion would mean that a stock dividend or stock split actually would reduce the acquiring person's percentage holdings as measured under the rules.

With respect to exemption provisions in the rules, under § 801.15 certain exempt acquisitions of assets or voting securities will result in the acquiring person's holding such assets or voting securities for purposes of later acquisitions. The exemptions in this category are §§ 802.20, 802.21, 802.23, 802.30, 802.40, 802.41, 802.51 (c) and (d), 802.60 and 802.71.

Acquisitions which are exempted by § 802.20 are those which, while technically within the requirements of the act, generally seem too small to merit detailed pretransaction antitrust scrutiny. These acquisitions, like those which are too small to satisfy the reporting criteria of the act, may become more significant if similar acquisitions follow. Likewise, those acquisitions of voting securities exempt under § 802.21 because notification previously has been filed may not increase the holdings of the acquiring person significantly enough to warrant an additional filing. But the holdings which result from these exempt acquisitions must be aggregated with all voting securities of the acquired person held by the acquiring person in order to give an accurate picture of the latter's ability to influence or control the issuer.

Voting securities acquired under the procedures outlined in § 802.23 are indistinguishable from the issuer's voting securities acquired in any other manner. The same is true of voting securities acquired by means of an intraperson transaction exempt under § 802.30. Thus the holdings resulting from each of these exemptions are counted for purposes of determining whether later acquisitions are reportable.

Acquisitions of voting securities in the process of forming a joint venture or other corporation may be reportable under § 801.40. When the transaction forming the joint venture or other corporation is complete, the shareholders of the joint venture or other corporation obviously continue to hold the shares of that corporation. That is true whether or not the acquisitions are exempt under § 802.40 because the corporation being formed is a nonprofit entity within the meaning of the sections of the Internal Revenue Code cited in § 802.40. Similarly, while the new corporation by reason of § 802.41 never has to report its acquisitions of assets in the transaction forming that corporation, the assets are held by the new corporation after formation and must be counted for purposes of any subsequent acquisitions by or from the corporation.

An acquisition by a foreign person of less than $10 million of assets located in the United States (other than investment assets) is exempt under § 802.51(c), but those assets are held by the acquiring person as a result of the acquisition. Thus, an additional asset acquisition by the acquiring person, if falling within the aggregation provisions of § 801.13(b)(2), will be exempt only if the aggregate value of the U.S. assets (other than investment assets) acquired in both the earlier and the later acquisitions is less than $10 million.

Section 802.51(d) exempts transactions in which both the acquiring and the acquired persons are foreign, if the combined annual sales of the two persons in or into the United States are less than $110 million and if the two persons' combined total assets located in the United States (other than investment assets) are less than $110 million. Both assets and voting securities acquired under this exemption are held for purposes of future acquisitions (subject, in the case of the assets, to the aggregation provisions of § 801.13(b)(2)), since the cumulative impact of the transactions on foreign commerce determines the availability of the exemption.

Securities underwriters which are exempt under § 802.60 from reporting certain acquisitions of voting securities nevertheless hold those voting securities as a result of their acquisition and continue to hold such securities for purposes of any subsequent acquisitions.

Finally, when an acquisition is the result of a gift, intestate succession, testamentary disposition or transfer by a settlor to an irrevocable trust, the transaction is exempt under § 802.71 because the recipient typically does not cause the transaction to occur and is thus unlikely to use the transaction to further an anticompetitive purpose. After the transaction is complete, however, the recipient's ability to use the voting securities or assets acquired under this exemption is indistinguishable from that of other acquiring persons, and thus that person is deemed to hold what was acquired under the exemption.

DELETION OF REVISED § 801.20

Revised § 801.20 stated that any particular acquisition, even if part of a sequence of transactions that will eventually exceed the threshold levels of section 7A(a)(3), was not subject to the requirements of the act unless as a result of the particular acquisition the acquiring person's holdings would meet or exceed a threshold level of section 7A(a)(3). Original § 801.45 was a similar provision.

The final rules omit revised § 801.20 as unnecessary. The proposed rule merely restated a conclusion that followed from § 801.13—that any particular transaction was subject to the requirements of the act only if, as a result of that transaction, the holdings of the acquiring person satisfied the size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3).

SECTION 801.20 ACQUISITIONS SUBSEQUENT TO EXCEEDING THRESHOLD

When a person has previously made an acquisition of assets or voting securities, this rule clarifies the acquiring person's obligation to file notification and comply with the waiting period requirements with respect to a later acquisition of the assets or voting securities of the same acquired person. The rule states that such notification and compliance is required:

(a) Even though the earlier acquisition or acquisitions may have been reportable;

(b) Even though the prior acquisitions may have resulted in the acquiring person's meeting or exceeding a notification threshold (as defined in § 801.1(h)) prior to the effective date of the act or the rules; and

(c) Even though a notification threshold may previously have been met or exceeded by reason of increases in market values or events other than acquisitions.

The basic principle underlying the act and incorporated in the rules is that every acquisition as a result of which the acquiring person's holdings meet or exceed the statutory notification threshold of section 7A(a)(3) and § 801.1(h)(1) gives rise to an obligation to file notification and comply with the waiting period requirements. See the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 801.13. Section 802.21 substantially modifies this basic principle for acquisitions of voting securities when notification has previously been filed with respect to a transaction involving the same parties, and for that reason § 802.21 is specifically mentioned in the beginning portion of this rule.

This basic principle is also subject to the commerce test of section 7A(a)(1) and the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2), to each of the exemptions contained in section 7A(c)(1) through section 7A(c)(11), and to each of the exemptions in part 802 of the rules. In other words, if the statutory criteria are not met, or if the later acquisition is exempt under either the act or the rules, § 801.20 does not create a reporting obligation.

When a notification threshold is met or exceeded by reason of an event other than an acquisition, no filing or waiting period obligations arise at that time. Thus, for example, if a person acquired voting securities worth less than $15 million, and the market price of those securities thereafter rose above $15 million, that increase in market price would not by itself create a reporting obligation, because the price increase is not an acquisition within the meaning of section 7A(a). Similarly, if a person acquired less than 15 percent of the shares of an issuer, and thereafter the issuer purchased enough of its own stock so that the originally purchased shares constituted more than 15 percent of the shares then outstanding, no notification would be required, because the increase in percentage holdings did not result from an acquisition by the person whose holdings met or exceeded a notification threshold. However, in either of these situations, if the acquiring person thereafter purchased any additional shares, notification would be required with respect to that subsequent transaction. See example No. 2 to this rule.

This rule merely clarifies the operation of other rules (notably § 801.13) and does not change the results obtained by application of those rules.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.20

Original § 801.50 and revised § 801.21 were similar to the final rule. A number of comments relating to the original version are discussed in the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 801.13, and there were no comments on the revised rule.

SECTION 801.21 SECURITIES AND CASH NOT CONSIDERED ASSETS WHEN ACQUIRED

Section 801.21 clarifies that neither cash nor securities of an issuer unrelated to the person from which acquired are to be considered "assets" of that person for purposes of the 15 percent or $15 million test of section 7A(a)(3). The rule thus excludes a possible literal interpretation of the term "assets" which could have made an acquisition of cash or securities reportable as an acquisition of the "assets" of the person from which acquired.

The heading of the rule states that it applies to the size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3), the notification threshold that restates that test (§ 801.1(h)(1)), and the rules implementing the test (§§ 801.12(d)(1) and 801.13(b)). Paragraph (a) directs that cash is not to be considered an asset of the person from which it is received. Paragraph (b) provides that securities, whether voting or nonvoting, are not to be viewed as assets of third-party holders. Three examples illustrate the rule.

Note that even though the cash and securities are not assets for purposes of section 7A(a)(3) when acquired, after acquisition they must be reflected on the acquiring person's next regularly prepared balance sheet as assets for purposes of the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2).

This rule also affects § 801.2, which identifies acquiring and acquired persons for purposes of the act and rules. Section 801.21(a) makes clear that if cash is the only consideration for the voting securities of an issuer, the acquired person will not thereby acquire any "assets' of the acquiring person and therefore will not become both an acquiring and acquired person within the meaning of § 801.2(c). The acquiring person, likewise, will not be transferring any of its "assets" by paying cash, and thus does not also become an acquired person. The same result follows whenever an acquisition is of securities issued by an entity not included within the person from which acquired. The person transferring the securities does not transfer "assets" and become an acquired person; instead, under § 801.2(b) the acquired person is the person within which the issuer is included. See example No. 1 to § 801.2(b).

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.21

This rule appears for the first time in the final rules. It was added in order to avoid situations in which a literal reading of the term "assets" could result in the imposition of meaningless reporting and waiting period requirements upon transferors of cash or securities of unrelated issuers. Cash generally lacks competitive significance, and so treating it as an asset would not further the purposes of the act. Nor would filings by third-party holders of voting securities advance the purposes of the act, since only the relationship between the acquiring person and the issuer is likely to have competitive consequences. In such cases § 801.2(b) appropriately rests the obligation to comply with the act upon the person within which the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired is included.

SECTION 801.30 TENDER OFFERS AND ACQUISITIONS OF VOTING SECURITIES FROM THIRD PARTIES

Section 801.30 applies to certain enumerated types of transactions that may be initiated by the acquiring person without the agreement of the acquired person. For these acquisitions, the waiting period begins upon receipt of only the acquiring person's Notification and Report Form, rather than both the acquiring and acquired persons' forms. The rule ensures that a hostile or indifferent issuer cannot prevent the beginning of the waiting period by failing to file notification.

Paragraph (a) specifies the seven types of acquisitions to which the rule applies. These are acquisitions on a national securities exchange or through an inter-dealer quotation system registered with the SEC; certain acquisitions by offerees of noncash tender offers described in § 801.31; tender offers, which are defined in § 801.1(g)(1); secondary acquisitions, which are described in § 801.4; all acquisitions (other than mergers and consolidations) in which voting securities will be acquired from holders other than the issuer or an entity included within the same person as the issuer; conversions, which are defined in § 801.1(f)(3); and the exercise of options or warrants that were issued by the acquired person and that are subject to a currently effective registration statement filed with the SEC. For these acquisitions, subparagraph (b)(1) specifies that the waiting period begins when notification is received from the acquiring person. Subparagraph (b)(2) requires the acquired person in such acquisitions to file notification no later than 5 p.m. eastern time on the fifteenth (or, in the case of a cash tender offer, the tenth) day thereafter. If the fifteenth (or, in the case of a cash tender offer, the tenth) day falls on a weekend or Federal holiday, the acquired person must file notification by 10 a.m. eastern time on the next business day.

This rule does not affect the length of the waiting period. Section 803.10 governs the length of the period, and also explains when receipt of a notification is effective.

Three examples illustrate the rule.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.30

Except with respect to tender offers, the original rules made no special provision for acquisitions of blocks of stock from third parties unrelated to the issuer or through securities exchanges or other open-market transactions.

That approach tracked the statutory language describing the required waiting periods. The act provides for a 30-day waiting period that commences when notification is filed by both the acquiring and acquired persons. The only exception relates to tender offers. Section 7A(a) states in part:

> [N]o person shall acquire * * * any voting securities * * * of any other person, unless both persons (or in the case of a tender offer, the acquiring person) file notification * * * and the waiting period * * * has expired * * *.

Section 7A(b)(1) likewise states in part:

> The waiting period required under [§ 7A](a) shall—
>
> (A) Begin on the date of receipt * * * of * * * the completed notification required under [§ 7A](a) * * * from both persons, or, in the case of a tender offer, the acquiring person * * *.

This result was inadequate, however, because absent special provision, third-party and open-market acquisitions (other than tender offers) would have been subject to the same rules as two-party acquisitions. As noted in several comments (e.g., 9, 19, 49, 63, 74, 78, 93, 95, 115), unless the beginning of the waiting period is conditioned solely upon filing by the acquiring person, an apathetic or hostile issuer could frustrate the transaction merely by neglecting to file notification. The waiting period thus might never begin to run. The Commission believes that notwithstanding the language of section 7A(a) and (b)(1), these types of acquisitions are more closely analogous to tender offers than to two-party consensual acquisitions.

As Chairman Rodino stated on the House floor, lengthy delays in the waiting period for tender offers.

> will give the target firm plenty of time to defeat the offer, by abolishing cumulative voting, arranging a speedy defensive merger, quickly incorporating in a state with an antitakeover statute, or negotiating costly lifetime employment contracts for incumbent management. And the longer the waiting period, the more the target's stock may be bid up in the market, making the offer more costly—and less successful.

(122 Cong. Rec. H10294 (daily ed. Sept. 16, 1976))

Although the Williams Act does not apply, these same basic concerns—including delay, avoidance, and detrimental impact on the capital market—all exist with respect to third-party acquisitions other than tender offers. See generally, 122 Cong. Rec. S15417 (daily ed. Sept. 8, 1976); id. at H10293-94 (daily ed. Sept. 16, 1976).

The final rule extends to analogous types of transactions the treatment accorded tender offers. In each type of acquisition listed in paragraph (a), treatment under the standard two-party rules could delay or preclude the acquisition. Therefore, in each case the waiting period begins when notification is filed by the acquiring person. The difficulties in applying the normal two-party rules are particularly pronounced in the case of those acquisitions that are part of other acquisitions, such as acquisitions of an acquiring person's stock by offerees in a tender offer (§ 801.31) and secondary acquisitions (§ 801.4). In these instances, even if the acquired person chooses to file notification, it may well be hard-pressed to do so quickly. Often the acquired person is unaware of the acquisition until the acquiring person is ready to file notification. In these situations—unlike negotiated acquisitions—the acquired person usually will not have begun to prepare its form or have undertaken a preliminary analysis of the legality of the acquisition. As comment 1090 suggested, delay by acquired persons in these related acquisitions could easily impede the main acquisitions, often with severly detrimental effects.

In subparagraph (a)(5), mergers and consolidations are excluded from the treatment afforded by the rule because even though acquisitions are made from third-party holders, such transactions are typically consensual. Therefore, the rationale for the rule, the danger that an issuer will seek to frustrate the transaction, does not apply.

In subparagraph (a)(7), the two limitations placed upon the types of options that qualify for treatment under the rule seek to prevent improper use of the rule by means of characterizing consensual acquisitions as the exercise of spurious "options." Note that although these limitations exclude "put" and "call" options from subparagraph (a)(7), acquisitions of stock resulting from the exercise of such options typically would qualify under other subparagraphs of paragraph (a).

Revised § 801.30 was substantially similar to the final rule. Although in stating the coverage of the rule it mentioned only tender offers and transactions described in § 801.30(a)(5) of the final rule, its coverage would have been similar to that of the final rule because the types of transactions identified in the final version of paragraph (a) overlap to a considerable extent. For example, acquisitions made on a securities exchange are usually acquisitions from third parties. The final version of paragraph (a) was expanded merely to clarify the scope of the rule.

Paragraph (a) of the revised rule, which identified the acquired person, was deleted from the final rule. Since § 801.2(b) identifies the acquired person, repetition of the point is unnecessary. The effect, however, remains the same: The acquired person is that collection of entities within which the issuer of the voting securities to be acquired is included. The seller of the securities—if it is not also the acquired person—has no obligation to file notification. See also § 801.21(b).

The statutory authority for compelling the acquired person in a tender offer to file notification lies in the last sentence of section 7A(a). Comment 1075 complained that for the acquired person to file notification within the time limits prescribed by subparagraph (b)(2) could be burdensome, because the acquired person would be preoccupied with evaluating the fairness of the tender offer or with other aspects of the acquisition. However, the act mandates that the agencies review the acquisition during the waiting period. Much of the information necessary for a review of the acquisition is in the hands of the issuer. The length of time afforded the acquired person by the rule is the maximum that will still permit the agencies to perform their duties.

SECTION 801.31 ACQUISITIONS OF VOTING SECURITIES BY OFFEREES IN TENDER OFFERS

This rule applies only to those noncash tender offers in which the stockholders of the issuer whose shares are sought to be acquired will receive voting securities from the offeror as full or partial consideration for their shares. Section 801.2(e) provides that such acquisitions are separately subject to the requirements of the act and rules if the criteria of section 7A(a) are satisfied. Section 801.31 details the procedures to be followed regarding the notification and waiting period for such acquisitions, and provides for an optional escrow arrangement to facilitate the underlying tender offers. The term "noncash tender offer" is defined in § 801.1(g)(3).

When an acquisition is separately reportable, separate Notification and Report Forms must be submitted with respect to it. Paragraph (a) of the rule provides that the waiting period—that is, the separate waiting period with respect of the acquisition by the offeree, distinct from the waiting period with respect to the tender offer—begins when the offeree files notification. See §§ 801.30 and 803.10(a)(1). Paragraph (b) requires the person within which the issuer of the shares to be acquired by the offeree is included to file notification within 15 days thereafter. Note that the shares to be acquired by the offeree need not necessarily be those of the tender offeror. Paragraph (c) provides that a request for additional information will extend the waiting period in accordance with § 803.20(c). Finally, paragraph (d) creates a special escrow mechanism that can be used if the tender offeror would otherwise be unable to acquire the shares tendered by the offeree, because the waiting period with respect to the offeree's acquisition of the voting securities furnished by the offeror has not expired. The rule permits the voting securities destined for the offeree to be placed into escrow for the benefit of the offeree, so that the tender offeror may accept the tendered shares and complete the tender offer as soon as the waiting period with respect to the tender offer expires, even if the waiting period with respect to the acquisition by the offeree has not expired. The escrow agreement may be structured in any way determined by the parties, and may provide for the transfer of alternative consideration to the offeree in the event that either agency secures an injunction against the offeree's acquisition of shares from the offeror. The only limitation on the escrow agreement provided by the rule is that the shares placed in escrow cannot be voted by anyone during the pendency of the escrow.

An example illustrates the rule.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.31

This rule, which had no counterpart in either the original or revised rules, was added in order to clarify that acquisitions of voting securities by offerees of tender offers may be separately reportable, to detail the procedural aspects of such acquisitions, and to eliminate, by means of the escrow provision of paragraph (d), the risk that tender offers could be delayed or frustrated by complications arising in connection with such acquisitions.

As with any other acquisition, an acquisition described by this rule is subject to the requirements of the act whenever the criteria of the act are satisfied and no exemption applies. It is separately subject to the act because the potential antitrust problems posed by the acquisition differ from those posed by the underlyng tender offer. The antitrust analysis of the tender offer will focus upon the relationship of the tender offeror and issuer whose shares are sought to be acquired. The analysis of the offeree's acquisition, by contrast, will typically focus upon the relationship between the offeree—the acquiring person—and the issuer of the shares that the offeree will acquire from the tender offeror. Since different parties are involved, separate application of the act is necessary.

Acquisitions described by the rule are specifically mentioned in § 801.30(a)(2) as qualifying for that section's special treatment. As with other acquisitions falling under that rule, the waiting period commences when notification is filed by the acquiring person, in this case the offeree of the tender offer. The acquired person, the issuer of the securities to be acquired by the offeree, must file notification within 15 days thereafter. Section 801.30 treatment for these acquisitions facilitates completion of the tender offer. It will be particularly important if the voting securities furnished by the offeror are not issued by the offeror, in which case the issuer may regard its filing requirement with indifference or hostility. For further explanation of the rationale for § 801.30 treatment, see the Statement of Basis and Purpose to that rule.

The escrow arrangement permitted by paragraph (d) of the rule is designed to permit noncash tender offers to be consummated before the expiration of any waiting periods imposed on the acquisitions of voting securities being offered as consideration. Without this provision, consummation of the tender offer could be delayed, and conflict with the Williams Act could result.

The escrow provision prohibits any person from voting any shares placed in escrow during the pendency of the escrow. Because voting presents the risk of anticompetitive activity, the Commission determined that this indicium of beneficial ownership should not pass to the offeree prior to the expiration of the waiting period.

SECTION 801.32 CONVERSION AND ACQUISITION

Section 801.32 declares that a conversion is an acquisition within the meaning of the act. Therefore, if the criteria of section 7A(a) are satisfied, the acquisition of voting securities by means of a conversion must be preceded by notification and observance of the waiting period. Note that conversions are among the transactions for which the waiting period commences upon receipt of the acquiring person's Notification and Report Form. See § 801.30(a)(6).

The term "conversion" is defined in § 801.1(f)(3).

An example illustrates the rule.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO * 801.32

A conversion of convertible voting securities into securities presently able to vote for directors involves an exchange in which the holder acquires voting securities and surrenders convertibles as consideration for that acquisition. See § 801.1(f)(3). The fact that one type of voting securities is exchanged for another does not alter the fact that the exchange involves an acquisition of voting securities.

Therefore, the purpose of this rule is merely to clarify the Commission's interpretation of the act; the rule does not create any obligation which would not exist in its absence.

Several of the final rules implement the treatment of convertible voting securities. This rule insures that persons acquiring voting securities by means of conversions first file notification and observe a waiting period, if the criteria of section 7A(a) are met. Section 802.31 exempts acquisitions of convertible voting securities. For a complete explanation of the manner in which the rules treat convertible voting securities, see the statement of Basis and Purpose to § 801.1(f)(2); see also §§ 801.1(f)(3) and 802.31.

SECTION 801.40 FORMATION OF JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATIONS

Section 801.40 announces the criteria by which to identify those joint ventures or other corporations the formation of which, because of the acquisition of voting securities of the new entity by its parents, will trigger the requirements of the act. The rule specifies which such transactions must be reported. It also enables acquiring persons reporting such acquisitions to complete properly item 5(d) of the form, which relates exclusively to such transactions.

The phrase "joint venture or other corporation" means that the formation of any corporation, whether or not denominated a joint venture by the parties, is potentially subject to the reporting and waiting period requirements of the act. (This rule applies to the formation of all corporations except those formed in connection with mergers and consolidations, which are treated under § 801.2(d).) Since the formation of a new corporation all of the voting securities of which will be held by one person will be an intraperson transaction exempt from the requirements of the act under § 802.30, as a practical matter only the formation of corporations the voting securities of which will be held by two or more persons is potentially subject to the act. And since the rule applies only to the formation of corporations, the formation of entities other than corporations is by virtue of this rule, not brought within the coverage of the act and need not be preceded by compliance with the act's requirements.

As with any other acquisition, the requirements of the act need be observed only if the criteria of section 7A(a) are met. Paragraph (a) identifies the acquiring and acquired persons in such a transaction. Paragraphs (b), (c), and (d) of the rule explain the application of the criteria of section 7A(a) to such acquisitions, and an example illustrates their application.

Paragraph (a) of the rule provides that the persons contributing to the formation of a joint venture or other corporation are acquiring persons. Since they will acquire and hold voting securities of the new entity, the rule parallels § 801.2(a). Even though the new entity may also acquire assets or voting securities from the contributors, notwithstanding § 801.2(c) the contributors are deemed acquiring persons only, and the new entity is an acquired person only. Under § 802.41, however, the joint venture or other corporation need not file notification in connection with its own formation.

The criteria of paragraph (b) constitute the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2) in connection with the formation of a new corporation. An acquiring person is subject to the requirements of the act if it has annual net sales or total assets of $100 million or more, if at least one other contributor has annual net sales or total assets of $10 million or more, and if the joint venture or other corporation will have $10 million or more in total assets. If, on the other hand, the new corporation will be of $100 million size, its formation is reportable if two or more of its shareholders are of $10 million size or larger. In the latter case, each contributor of $10 million size is required to file notification and wait. For acquiring persons, § 801.11 governs calculation of annual net sales and total assets; for the new corporation, § 801.40(c) determines the total assets for purposes of this rule.

Paragraph (b) also makes clear that the act applies only if the size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3) is satisfied. In the context of the formation of a joint venture or other corporation, the test will be satisfied as to a particular acquiring person if, as a result of the transaction forming the corporation, the acquiring person would hold 15 percent or $15 million of the new corporation's stock.

Under § 801.40(c), the total assets of a joint venture or other corporation at the time of its formation will be deemed to include (1) all assets that, as of the time of formation, the parents have agreed to transfer or for which agreements have been obtained for the new entity to acquire at any time, and (2) all credit or other obligations that, as of the time of formation, the parents have agreed to extend or guarantee at any time. Paragraph (c) supplants § 801.11, the rule that normally governs the calculation of total assets, only at the time of its formation, for purposes of paragraph (b) of this rule. If the joint venture or other corporation after its formation acquires or is acquired by another entity, its total assets and annual net sales at that time would be determined under § 801.11.

Paragraph (d) interprets the commerce test of section 7A(a)(1) for transactions forming a joint venture or other corporation. It provides that the test is satisfied either if the activities of any acquiring person are in or affect commerce, or if the person filing notification should reasonably believe that the new entity will be engaged in activities in or affecting commerce.

Two additional rules complete the treatment of the formation of joint venture or other corporations: Section 802.40 exempts acquisitions of voting securities in connection with the formation of certain tax-exempt, nonprofit corporations, and § 802.41 exempts the new corporation from filing notification in connection with its own formation.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.40

The earlier versions of the rules, which were drafted in terms of joint ventures rather than joint venture or other corporations, generated a substantial number of comments during both the first and second comment periods. Many comments insisted that Congress had not intended the act to apply to joint ventures and therefore that including them within the ambit of the rules was improper. (See, e.g., 16, 47, 57, 59, 62, 83, 84; 1018, 1019, 1025, 1030, 1046, 1060, 1068, 1069, 1070, 1075, 1086, 1087, 1088, 1096, 1097.) These arguments were based on inferences drawn from legislative history and other sources outside title II of the Antitrust Improvements Act, as well as from the specific language of section 7A. Specifically, the comments noted that title II omitted mention of joint ventures (16, 83, 84), and contrasted the explicit references to joint ventures in title I of the Antitrust Improvements Act, the Antitrust Civil Process Act amendments, 15 U.S.C. 1311 (57, 67). One comment (92) also suggested that, since Congress had eliminated from an earlier draft a clause giving the Commission the power to expand the scope of the act's coverage, coverage should not be "expanded" by rule to embrace joint ventures. Comment 47 argued that since, in contrast to a merger, there is no problem "unscrambling" the assets of a joint venture if after its formation it is found to be anticompetitive, preconsummation review is less imperative. Finally, one comment (59) objected to coverage because the Commission's existing premerger notification program does not reach joint ventures.

The Commission finds, however, that nothing in the act's legislative history indicates that Congress did not intend for the act to reach acquisitions of voting securities in connection with the formation of new corporations. To the contrary, the language of the act indicates that, except for the qualifications of section 7A(a) and the exemptions in section 7A(c), Congress intended that the act reach all acquisitions of voting securities—regardless of the types of transactions in which they occur. The comments that objected to joint venture coverage were focused on the formation of the new entity rather than on the acquisition of its voting securities. Since under the act the former is irrelevant and coverage of the latter is beyond doubt, these comments were rejected.

The formation of new corporations in connection with mergers or consolidations is excluded from the rule, since the character and likely competitive consequences of such transactions are dissimilar to those treated under this rule.

"JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATION"

It became apparent after the first comment period that there is no commonly understood and generally accepted definition of "joint venture." The comments suggested that thousands of common business arrangements in different industries could be construed as joint ventures. These business arrangements range from coproduction ventures in the motion picture industry (e.g., 67, 78, 116) to joint bidding, exploration and drilling in the oil and gas industry (e.g., 3, 5, 8, 16, 24, 34, 46, 72) to real estate development and shopping center construction projects (e.g., 10, 60, 81, 83). It was clear from the comments that there was no consensus whether any, some, or all of these arrangements were "joint ventures" and thus whether their formation would have been a reportable event under those rules. The comments insisted that these common joint arrangements are unlikely to violate the antitrust laws, and that because of the frequency with which they are used, the reporting and waiting period requirements would impose substantial hardships on the venturers.

The Commission thus sought more information about joint ventures. The FEDERAL REGISTER notice accompanying the revised rules invited comments detailing the types and forms of organizations of joint ventures that would have been reportable under the revised rules (42 FR at 39044 (Aug. 1, 1977).

This invitation attracted 52 comments. These comments revealed that in the industries in which joint business arrangements are most commonly formed to effect day-to-day operations—the oil, gas, and other extractive industries (e.g., 1018, 1019, 1022, 1024, 1025, 1033, 1034, 1046, 1056, 1060, 1069, 1075, 1081, 1084, 1087, 1088, 1096, 1097, 1107); the construction industry (e.g., 1015, 1047, 1077, 1092, 1112, 1113, 1114); the real estate investment and development and shopping center development industries (e.g., 1064, 1065, 1070, 1079, 1085); the motion picture industry (e.g., 1066); and financing transactions (e.g., 1071, 1089) very few of those arrangements typically are incorporated. They also suggested that although the venturers are sometimes competitors, the ventures usually do not engage in marketing and are primarily risk-sharing devices. As a general rule, in these day-to-day joint ventures the participants provide a pro rata share of the expenses and take in kind from the output of the venture. They frequently are formed for a single, specific purpose (e.g., bidding on a lease or project, making a movie, or completing a specific project) and often are dissolved when that purpose has been accomplished or abandoned. The comments also expressed concern that the coverage of "joint ventures" under the revised rules was ambiguous.

The approach to joint ventures adopted in the final rules meets these concerns. Section 801.40 applies to "joint venture or other corporations." When a new corporation is formed it typically issues its stock to those contributing capital. The language of the rule makes clear that the formation of any corporation, regardless of what the parties call it, potentially gives rise to a reportable acquisition of voting securities by every shareholder. This approach obviates the need to decide whether an entity should be termed a joint venture, because the concept of "corporation" is unambiguous. Moreover, it emphasizes that it is not the *formation* of the corporation upon which the act (and similarly, the rules) focuses, but rather the acquisition of a corporation's voting securities.

There is evidence that Congress intended coverage of acquisitions by or of noncorporate entities. Section 7A(b)(3)(A) states:

> The term "voting securities" means any securities which * * * entitle the owner or holder thereof to vote for the election of directors of the issuer *or, with respect to unincorporated issuers,* persons exercising similar functions. (Emphasis supplied.)

However, the Commission has instructed its staff to monitor the formation of joint business arrangements of all types and forms and to determine, after a year of operation, whether the rules provide appropriate coverage. The fact that persons contributing to the formation of a noncorporate joint venture are not required to report and wait prior to the transaction should not, of course, be construed as a Commission statement that such transactions are free from antitrust concerns. See section 7A(i).

SIZE-OF-PERSON AND SIZE-OF-TRANSACTION TESTS

The rule adapts acquisitions in connection with the formation of joint ventures, which alway involve at least three parties, to the basic two-party framework of the act by separately pairing each parent with the joint venture or other corporation, and then testing the pair against a modified version of the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2), and the size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3). Thus with respect first to the size-of-person test, if the joint venture or other corporation is of $10 million size (determined under paragraph (c) of the rule), a parent of $100 million size may be required to report. If the new entity will have $100 million or more in total assets, an acquiring person with annual net sales or total assets of $10 million may be required to report. This aspect of § 801.40(b) is drawn directly from section 7A(a)(2).

In each of these cases, however, paragraph (b) of the rule imposes an additional requirement not present in section 7A(a)(2)—the participation of another person of $10 million size forming the corporation. See § 801.40 (b)(1)(iii), (b)(2)(iii). Thus, a parent of $100 million size contributing to the formation of a corporation of $10 million size need only report and wait if a second contributor is of $10 million size. This additional contributor may not itself be required to report. If neither it nor the joint venture or other corporation are of $100 million size, when paired they will not satisfy the test of § 801.40(b) (because they would not satisfy the test of section § 7A(a)(2)).

Likewise, each pair, composed of an acquiring person and the acquired person (new entity), must satisfy the size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3) before the acquiring person need report. If the particular acquiring person as a result of the acquisition forming the new corporation will not hold either 15 percent or $15 million of the voting securities of the new corporation, it need not report.

This approach to coverage in final § 801.40(b) differs in two respects from that taken in the original rules. First, the size criteria were stated as exemptions in original § 802.30, rather than as coverage criteria in original § 801.55. Second, the original rules addressed only the situation in which parents of $100 million and $10 million sizes were involved as acquiring persons, regardless of the size of the new entity. The revised rules transferred the size criteria to § 801.40 and expanded them to include two parents of $10 million size contributing to the formation of a $100 million joint venture. As comment 95 observed, the latter situation reflects section 7A(a)(2)(C), which is applicable to all other types of acquisitions.

Comment 16 suggested that a joint venture should be exempt from the notification and waiting period requirements unless all of the acquiring persons have net sales on total assets of $100 million or more. This suggestion was rejected. Clearly section 7A(a)(2) authorizes the Commission to go further than that. If the acquired person (the new entity) has net sales or total assets of $100 million or more, an acquiring person may be of $10 million size and, if the size-of-transaction tests are met, it will be subject to the act. Another comment (63) suggested that if the formation transaction is reportable, all the contributors should be required to report. This comment was also rejected, since, as discussed above, paragraph (b) is closely modeled after those combinations of acquiring and acquired persons that satisfy the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2).

Comment 57 suggested that, since section 7A(a)(1) is stated in the present tense, coverage of joint ventures at formation is improper. First, it argued, securities cannot be acquired from a person not yet in existence, and second, the act should not apply unless the acquired person satisfies the size-of-person test at the time of acquisition. The Commission is unpersuaded by these arguments. Section 7A(d)(1) grants the Commission the power to define the terms of the act, and the rules define "person" to include a joint venture or other corporation not yet formed. Section 801.1(a)(2) defines "entity" to include "any joint venture or other corporation which has not been formed but the acquisition of the voting securities in which, if already formed, would require notification under the act and these rules * * *." And under § 801.1(a)(1) a "person" is composed of entities. Thus, since a joint venture not yet formed may be a "entity," it also may be a "person." Somewhat similarly, § 801.40(c) adapts the size-of-person test to the formaton of a joint venture or other corporation, notwithstanding the fact that the corporation, by one view, does not have total assets at the time of formation. The Commission believes this treatment is reasonable and permissible for the reasons previously stated.

TOTAL ASSETS OF JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATION

Paragraph (c) of the rule provides that the assets of the new entity will include (1) all assets that the parents have agreed to transfer or for which agreements have been obtained for the new entity to acquire at any time, and (2) all credit or other obligations that the parents have agreed to extend or guarantee at any time. The paragraph focuses upon the agreement at the time of formation; however, the new entity's assets are not limited to those contributed at formation. Thus, if the contributors agree to form a joint venture or other corporation and agree to contribute assets each year for a specified number of years, the total assets of the new entity for the size-of-person and percentage-of-assets tests will be the total of all contributions over the several years. See the example to the rule. This approach to total assets is followed because, at least at formation, the timing of the contribution of assets to a new entity is totally within the control of the contributors. The Commission considers it reasonable to rely on agreements entered into by those contributors for purposes of calculating the entity's size.

The emphasis of the original rule was different. Original § 801.55(d) provided that assets of a joint venture included all assets intended to be contributed to the venture within 1 year of formation. Numerous comments (e.g., 25, 26, 74, 84, 92) objected that reliance on the parents' intentions made the act's coverage turn on a purely subjective determination and therefore was unworkable. Comment 95 suggested—and the Commission agreed—that the assets of the joint venture need not be restricted to those contributed during the first year; instead, it urged that all assets that the contributors intended to commit during the life of the new entity should be tallied. The revised rule thus looked to those assets and loans that the venturers (or any other persons) had agreed to contribute or guarantee at any time. It was adopted in the final rule with only minor revisions for clarity and conformity with other language of the rule.

COMMERCE TEST

Paragraph (d) provides that the commerce test of section 7A(a)(1) is satisfied, for purposes of this rule, if the activities of any acquiring person are in or affect commerce, or if the filing person should reasonably believe that the activities of the joint venture or other corporation will be in or affecting commerce. Section 7A(a)(1) states that the act applies if "the acquiring person, *or* the person whose voting securities or assets are beng acquired, is engaged in commerce or in any activity affecting commerce * * *." [Emphasis supplied.] Since the word "or" is disjuncative, the test is satisfied if only the acquiring person is engaged in commerce or an activity affecting commerce, within the meaning of that term in § 801.1(*l*).

Moreover, it is appropriate to find the commerce test satisfied, if the joint venture or other corporation to be created will engage in commerce. Under the definition of "entity," the joint venture or other corporation qualifies as a "person," as discussed above. And since the joint venture or other corporation merely by its formation may exert an effect on commerce it is appropriate to consider its future activities in or affecting commerce for purposes of the commerce test at the time of its formation.

Original § 801.55(c) would have provided that a joint venture would be deemed engaged in commerce or an activity affecting commerce if the persons contributing to its formation intended that it be so engaged within 1 year of formation. Revised § 801.40(d) eliminated the 1-year limitation, and instead focused upon whether the agreement among the contributors, rather than the contributors themselves, contemplated that the activities of the joint venture would be in or affecting commerce. The formulation in the final rule, the reasonable belief of the person filing notifiction, both establishes an objective standard and unambiguously calls for its application by the particular person filing notification.

SECTION 801.90 TRANSACTIONS OR DEVICES FOR AVOIDANCE

Section 801.90 prohibits transactions or devices entered into or employed for the purpose of avoiding the obligation to comply with the notification and waiting period requirements of the act. It provides that whenever the parties to an acquisition appear to have structured their transaction in order to avoid the requirements of the act, the Commission will apply the act and the rules to the substance rather than to the form of the transaction. The rule serves as a warning that the enforcement agencies may seek civil penalties or equitable relief under section 7A(g) whenever it appears that the act's reporting and waiting period requirements apply and have not been observed.

For purposes of determining whether transactions or devices for avoidance have been employed, of obvious relevance will be the existence of reasons other than avoidance for the manner in which a particular transaction is consummated. Each situation, therefore, will be considered on its own merits.

Two examples illustrate the rule.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 801.90

Because of the broad variety of transactions subject to the act and the unavoidable complexity of the act and rules, persons may be able to structure acquisitions to avoid the act and rules in ways not specifically contemplated by the act and rules. Even if a complex rule or set of rules could be constructed to prohibit such maneuvers, a general prohibition is preferable. Any transaction or sequence of transactions that appear to have been devised in order to avoid reporting obligations will be disregarded, and the substance of the underlying transaction will detemine whether the act applies.

This rule appears for the first time in the final rules.

PART 802 OF THE RULES

SECTION 802.1 ACQUISITION OF GOODS OR REALTY IN THE ORDINARY COURSE OF BUSINESS

Section 802.1 interprets and expands the exemption contained in section 7A(c)(1) which exempts "acquisition of goods or realty transferred in the ordinary course of business."

Paragraph (a) of the rule extends the section 7A(c)(1) exemption to acquisitions of voting securities, when the issuer's assets consist solely of realty and other assets incidental to the ownership of realty. In such cases, acquisition of the voting securities of the realty corporation will be viewed as acquisition of the realty. This treatment does not mean that every acquisition of either real estate or the stock of real estate corporations is automatically entitled to exemption under section 7A(c)(1). The rule means only that if an acquisition of realty would be exempt under section 7A(c)(1), the exemption will not be lost simply because the realty purchase is accomplished by making a stock acquisition, so long as the issuer meets the limitations set forth in the rule.

Paragraph (b) of the rule provides that an acquisition shall not be exempt under section 7A(c)(1) if, as a result of the acquisition, the acquiring person will hold all or substantially all of the assets of an entity (or of an operating division of an entity). None of the goods or realty to be acquired may be considered "transferred in the ordinary course of business" if such a situation will arise. The only exceptions are entities described in paragraph (a) of the rule. All of the assets of such an entity—i.e., the realty and related assets—may be acquired in the ordinary course of business, and such an acquisition may be exempt under section 7A(c)(1). Likewise, all of the voting securities of such a corporation may be so acquired, since under paragraph (a) such an acquisition will be treated as an acquisition of realty.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 802.1

This rule appears for the first time in the final rules.

Paragraph (a) appears because the Commission determined that the applicability of this exemption should not depend upon the form of the acquisition. At least from an antitrust standpoint, whether real estate is acquired directly or by acquiring voting securities would seem to make no difference. Comments 83 and 1070 recommended a provision resembling paragraph (a).

Paragraph (b) excludes from the concept of ordinary course of business acquisitions of all or substantially all of the assets of an entity. A person which transfers all or substantially all of its assets normally does not do so in the ordinary course of business. Furthermore, the Commission has determined that Congress did not intend to exempt such acquisitions under section 7A(c)(1). See, e.g., 122 Congressional Record S15417 (daily edition, September 8, 1976) (remarks of Senator Hart).

SECTION 802.6 FEDERAL AGENCY APPROVAL

Section 7A(c)(6) exempts from the requirements of the act and rules—

> * * * transactions specifically exempted from the antitrust laws by Federal statute if approved by a Federal agency, if copies of all information and documentary material filed with such agency are contemporaneously filed with the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General;

And section 7A(c)(8) exempts—

> * * * transactions which require agency approval under section 4 of the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956 (12 U.S.C. 1843), section 403 or 408(e) of the National Housing Act (12 U.S.C. 1726 and 1730a), or section 5 of the Home Owners' Loan Act of 1933 (12 U.S.C. 1464), if copies of all information and documentary material filed with any such agency are contemporaneously filed with the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General at least 30 days prior to consummation of the proposed transaction.

Section 802.6 identifies, for purposes of sections 7A (c)(6) and (c)(8), what is included in the term "information and documentary material." It provides that a person availing itself of these exemptions must file one copy of all documents, application forms, and all other written submissions of any type whatsoever filed with another agency in connection with the acquisition. Alternatively, the filing person may submit one copy of an index describing all such "information and documentary material," provided that the index is accompanied by a certification that any information or documents indexed but not provided will be supplied within 10 calendar days of a request by the Commission, Assistant Attorney General, or a delegated official of either. The Federal Trade Commission has delegated its power to make such requests to the Director Deputy Directors and Associate Director for Premerger Notification of the Bureau of Competition, without power of redelegation. All materials ("information and documentary material" or indices therof) must be submitted to the offices of the agencies designated in § 803.10(c).

Section 802.53, which invokes the procedure set forth in this section regarding the index, is thus likewise subject to the same provisions regarding submission of the index, requests for the underlying documents, and delegation of the power to make such requests by the Federal Trade Commission.

Background Information to § 1802.6

Under original § 802.75, a person that elected to file an index of information and documentary material in lieu of copies of all such filings was required merely to certify that copies of such materials would be provided to the agencies upon request. The final rule adds the requirement that the filing person be prepared to submit the materials with 10 days.

One comment (15) questioned whether the "contemporaneous filing" requirement to the act and rule applied to transactions for which agency approval had been sought, but not formally conferred, prior to the effective date of the rules. The comment suggested that the rule be amended to make clear that the "contemporaneous filing" provision does not apply to documents submitted to agencies before the effective date of the rules.

An amendment of this sort does not appear necessary. The Commission interprets the requirement of "contemporaneous" submissions to mean that material filed with another agency prior to the effective date of the rules need not be submitted to the Commission and Assistant Attorney General. The Commission construes the exemption to apply in such cases, even though the prior submission of the documents prevents contemporaneous filing and, consequently, no documents are filed.

For the same reason, if the initial submissions commencing proceedings that may lead to such agency approval were made before the effective date of the rules, the filing of supplemental submissions is not required, regardless of when such submissions are made. Such supplemental submissions would not be useful in the review process. However, new original filings with other agencies occurring after the effective date of the rules must of course be contemporaneously filed with the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General in order to gain exemption under section 7A(c)(6).

SECTION 802.8 CERTAIN SUPERVISORY ACQUISITIONS

Section 7A(c)(8) of the act specifically exempts a limited class of acquisitions subject by statute to the approval of the Federal Home Loan Bank Board ("FHLBB") or the Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation ("FSLIC") from the requirements of the act, provided that copies of the information and documentary material filed with the FHLBB or FSLIC are also contemporaneously filed with the Commission and the Assistant Attorney General at least 30 days prior to consummation of the transaction. This rule completely exempts certain emergency acquisitions of failing savings and loan associations (known as supervisory acquisitions) from any filing requirement if the agency whose approval is required finds that approval of the transaction is necessary to prevent the probable failure of one of the institutions involved.

This specialized exemption has relevance only to a limited class of transactions—acquisitions and mergers of savings and loan associations which by statute require the approval of the FHLBB. There are several types of such transactions. The FHLBB has the statutory power under section 5 of the Home Owners' Loan Act of 1933, 12 U.S.C. 1464, to approve or disapprove a merger, consolidation, or purchase of the assets of a Federal savings and loan association. In its capacity as operating head of the FSLIC, it also has the power under section 403 of the National Housing Act, 12 U.S.C. 1726, to approve or disapprove mergers of savings and loan associations insured by the FSLIC. In the same capacity, the FHLBB exercises a similar power, under section 408(e) of the National Housing Act, 12 U.S.C. 1730a(e), to approve or disapprove the acquisition of control by a savings and loan holding company of a savings and loan association.

Background Information to § 802.8

This exemption was suggested by the FHLBB in its comment (1) on the original rules. The exemption for supervisory acquisitions—those in which the FHLBB or the FSLIC approves (and often arranges) acquisition of a failing savings and loan association in order to save it from imminent failure—is based on the need for extremely speedy action in such cases. The 30-day waiting period provided in section 7A(c)(8) might be too long, because the savings and loan association might fail before the period expires, resulting in the payment of savings account insurance claims by the FSLIC and the depletion of the corporation's insurance reserves. This failure could have an adverse effect on other financial institutions and on the confidence of savers in such institutions.

Further, the exemption from the waiting period requirement reflects a judgment that, as the FHLBB suggested, supervisory acquisitions are not likely to violate the antitrust laws since the disappearing association is always a failing institution.

An exemption for supervisory mergers and acquisitions is also consistent with other existing law and practice in the area of regulation of financial institutions. For example, in bank mergers subject to section 18(c) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Company Act, 12 U.S.C. 1828(c) (exempt from reporting under this Act by reason of 7A(c)(7)), the Attorney General ordinarily has thirty days to review the competitive impact of a proposed transaction, but this period may be dispensed with if immediate action is necessary to prevent the probable failure of one of the institutions. 12 U.S.C. 1828(c)(4).

For these reasons the Commission accepted the suggestion of the FHLBB and exempted supervisory transactions under the relevant statutory provisions from reporting and observing any waiting period at all.

SECTION 802.9 ACQUISITIONS SOLELY FOR THE PURPOSE OF INVESTMENT

This rule interprets the exemption contained in section 7A(c)(9) of the act. The rule provides that if an acquisition is made solely for the purpose of investment, as defined in § 801.1(i)(1), the acquiring person need not observe the reporting and waiting period requirements of the act, regardless of the dollar value of voting securities held or acquired, so long as its holdings as a result of the acquisition will not exceed 10 percent of the issuer's voting securities. The act limits the exemption to acquisitions of voting securities.

If as a result of an acquisition the acquiring person's holdings would exceed 10 percent of the voting securities of the issuer, investment intent is no longer relevant, and the section 7A(c)(9) exemption can no longer apply.

Section 801.12 governs the calculation of percentages for this provision, as for all other provisions of the Act and rules.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 802.9

The rule merely interprets the exemption conferred by section 7A(c)(9).

The FEDERAL REGISTER notice accompanying the revised rules stated:

> Because of the difficulty in establishing criteria for determining when voting securities are held "solely for the purpose of investment," the Commission also invites comment on the desirability of exempting from the reporting requirments all acquisitions of voting securities which do not result in the acquiring person holding more than 10 percent of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer regardless of the acquiring person's intent.

42 FR at 39047 (Aug. 1, 1977).

A number of comments (e.g., 1053, 1059, 1070, 1077, 1110, 1111) endorsed the suggestion that investment intent should be disregarded and that all acquisitions below the 10 percent level should be exempt. The Commission declined to follow this course for two reasons. First, the language of section 7A(c)(9) clearly makes the acquiring person's intentions a relevant consideration. Second, such an exemption would, when large corporations are involved, eliminate the $15 million reporting threshold of section 7A(a)(3)(B), contrary to congressional intent.

Original § 802.85 would have required an acquiring person to file a short statement at the time of purchase in order to qualify for the section 7A(c)(9) exemption. The statement was to contain the names of the acquiring person and the issuer, the percentage of the latter's voting securities held before and after the acquisition, and a declaration that the voting securities would be held solely for the purpose of investment. A number of comments (e.g., 63, 89, 105, 112, 115, 120) questioned the Commission's legal authority to require such a statement. The revised rules did not contain any similar filing requirement, and none has been included in the final rules. The principal result of requiring such statements would have been to disclose holdings of less than 10 percent of the shares of an issuer, and in general holdings of 5 percent or more will be disclosed in any event by the filing of a schedule 13D with the SEC. The Commission believes that it has the authority to insert such a requirement at a later date, should it appear necessary to monitor compliance with section 7A(c)(9) more closely.

For further information, see the definition of "solely for investment purpose," § 801.1(i)(1), and its Statement of Basis and Purpose.

SECTION 802.10 STOCK DIVIDENDS AND SPLITS

Section 7A(c)(10) exempts

> Acquisitions of voting securities, if, as a result of such acquisition, the voting securities acquired do not increase, directly or indirectly, the acquiring person's per centum share of outstanding voting securities of the issuer * * *

This exemption was designed to apply to two common types of stock acquisitions: Those resulting from stock splits and pro rata stock dividends. Section 802.10 makes this explicit.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 802.10

Neither of the two types of acquisitions exempted by the rule increases the holder's ability to influence management decisions vis-a-vis other shareholders, even though, under certain circumstances, these acquisitions may increase the market value of that person's stock holdings.

Original § 802.90 exempted only the two types of aquisitions exempted by the final rule. In response to comment 63, revised § 802.10 also exempted acquisitions of voting securities "pursuant to an issue of new shares offered proportionately to all shareholders." The revised rule generated no comments. However, this provision was deleted from the final rule because it appeared to exceed the criterion of section 7A(c)(10). The fact that a new issue of voting securities is offered proportionally to all shareholders does not insure that the offer will be accepted (or accepted proportionally) by all shareholders. Thus, acquisitions which result from such an offering may increase the acquiring person's share of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer. Accordingly, the Commission determined to eliminate that portion of the revised exemption.

SECTION 802.20 MINIMUM DOLLAR VALUE

This rule exempts certain acquisitions as a result of which the acquiring person would hold 15 percent or more of the voting securities or 15 percent or more of the assets of the acquired person, but the aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets so held will be $15 million or less (i.e., the 15-percent test of section 7A(a)(3)(A) will be satisfied, but the $15 million test of section 7A(a)(3)(B) will not). The rule exempts acquisitions as a result of which the acquiring person would not hold either (a) assets of the acquired person valued at more than $10 million, or (b) voting securities conferring control of an issuer which, together with all entities that it controls, has annual net sales or total assets of $10 million or more.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 802.20

The purpose of this rule is to eliminate reporting and waiting period requirements with respect to certain relatively small acquisitions that are clearly reportable under the act. For example, if a $100 million person were to make an acquisition of assets from a $10 million person, the transfer of as little as 15 percent of the assets of that person, worth as little as $1.5 million, would be subject to a reporting requirement. Further, because percentage holdings of voting securities are calculated with reference only to the issuer (see § 801.12(a)), potentially some even smaller acquisitions of voting securities may, by reason of section 7A(a)(3)(A), be reportable. For example, if the same $100 million person were to acquire 15 percent of the voting securities of an entity included within the $10 million acquired person, that transaction would be reportable but for this rule, regardless of the size of the entity.

It is clear from the language of the act that Congress did not intend to limit the coverage of the act to large acquisitions; instead, the act expressly applies to transactions between large parties, including some relatively small acquisitions.

Nevertheless, the Commission believes that certain relatively small transactions (frequently involving only a portion of the stock or assets of the acquired person) that might be reportable under the act are sufficiently unlikely to have a significant anticompetitive impact that imposition of the act's requirements would not represent an appropriate use of public resources. These transactions are exempted by § 802.20. As with any other exemption rule, of course, either agency may challenge an acquisition under a substantive antitrust law, notwithstanding exemption from section 7A. See section 7A(i).

Original § 802.40 and the revised and final versions of § 802.20 all exempt asset acquisitions as a result of which the acquiring person will not hold assets of the acquired person valued at more than $10 million.

The original version also would have exempted acquisitions as a result of which the acquiring person would not hold voting securities of the acquired person valued at more than $10 million, so long as the transaction did not confer control of any issuer. Several comments (e.g., 45, 81, 120) pointed out that, as long as that provision placed no limitation on the size of the issuer, reporting requirements might still extend to transactions which conferred control of issuers of de minimis size. In response, the revised rule exempted all acquisitions of voting securities valued at less than $10 million which did not confer control of an issuer with annual net sales or total assets of $10 million or more. Acquisitions of voting securities valued at more than $10 million were not exempt under the revised rule, regardless of whether such acquistions conferred control of an issuer.

In the final rule, the exemption does not depend on the value of the voting securities, although the rule does not apply (as neither of the earlier versions applied) to an acquisition as a result of which the acquiring person will hold voting securities of the acquired person valued at more than $15 million. (If such voting securities are valued at more than $15 million, section 7A(a)(3)(B) is satisfied, and § 802.20 is inapplicable.) If such voting securities are valued at $15 million or less, the final rule exempts the acquisition unless it will confer control of an issuer which (together with any entities which that issuer controls) has annual net sales or total assets of $10 million or more.

In addition, while the revised version of § 802.20 did not apply to the formation of joint ventures (see comment 1059), the final version treats acquisitions in connection with the formation of joint venture or other corporations in the same way that it does all other acquisitions. In light of the changes in § 801.40 which result in similar treatment for joint venture and other corporations, the distinction in revised § 802.20 no longer seemed appropriate. Under the final rule, a person which, in a transaction forming any corporation, acquires sufficient voting securities of the newly formed corporation to require reporting under the act may take advantage of the exemption in §802.20 if it applies. Thus if three or more (but fewer than seven) persons, each having $100 million or more in assets or sales, form a joint venture corporation and acquire equal amounts of its stock, and if the assets of that corporation, as measured by §801.40(c), are $10 million or more, this rule would apply. Section 801.40 would require each acquiring person to report its acquisition of voting securities of the newly formed corporation, because each person would hold more than 15 percent of the shares of an entity with total assets of $10 million or more. (If there were seven or more persons acquiring equal shares no one person would hold as much as 15 percent.) However, under § 802.20, if none of the acquiring persons would be acquiring voting securities valued in excess of $15 million and since none of the acquiring persons would obtain control of an issuer of $10 million size, each person's acquisition would be exempt under § 802.20. If any one person were acquiring voting securities valued in excess of $15 million, or if any one (or two, if there were only two) of the acquiring persons were obtaining control of this issuer, each such person's acquisition would not be exempt under § 802.20, although the acquisitions of the other persons might be. See the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 801.40.

One comment on the original rule (95) pointed out that the rule would permit acquisition of 25 percent of the stock of a $40 million company or 15 percent of a $66 million company. That is not technically correct, since the amount of stock that may be purchased without reporting is determined by the value of the stock acquired, not by the size of the company, although the value of the stock may be related to the value of the company's assets. (If it is assumed that the aggregate value of a company's outstanding shares is equal to its total assets, then the final rule could permit acquisition of as much as 37.5 percent of a $40 million company, or 22.7 percent of a $66 million company, or 49.9 percent of a $30 million company; any greater percentage would in each case result in a holding of stock valued in excess of $15 million, and the exemption would not apply.) That comment questioned the wisdom of exempting such transactions without a detailed study of their frequency and effect. The Commission did not believe it appropriate to impose reporting obligations and to expend scarce law enforcement resources on relatively small stock acquisitions, since the benefit to the public is less likely to be as significant in these situations. While the thrust of this comment may have been that the exemption had been extended to inappropriately large transactions, it did not suggest an alternative means of distinguishing relatively small acquisitions from those that may have a more substantial impact upon a significant amount of commerce. After the effective date of these rules, the Commission staff will continue to monitor mergers and acquisitions brought to their attention by members of the public, reports in the trade press and other sources. If it appears from this experience that the balance between administrative cost and the benefits of enforcement should be shifted because the exemptions in § 802.20 are unduly broad, the Commission will consider narrowing them.

Comment 1042 suggested that § 802.20 should exempt all transaction involving less than $15 million worth of stock or assets, in order to eliminate the "anomaly" of reaching very small transactions. The Commission believes that, if Congress had intended such a result, the act could easily have been worded so as to achieve it. The fact that the act contains an alternative percentage test in section 7A(a)(3)(A) and dollar test in section 7A(a)(3)(B) indicates a clear congressional intention to reach at least some acquisitions that satisfiy only the percentage test. Adoption of this suggestion thus seems inappropriate.

Comment 1061 suggested that if a person containing an institutional investor holds a noncontrolling stock interest in another person, the former should be permitted to purchase up to $10 million of the assets of the latter without reporting. The rationale underlying the comment apparently was that a small acquisition of assets does not gain additional significance by reason of the acquiring person's holding of the seller's voting securities for investment. Section 801.15(b) of the final rules adopts a similar procedure, but extends it to all acquisitions of voting securities exempt under section 7A(c)(9) or § 802.64, so long as the limitations of those respective exemptions are not exceeded.

Finally, comment 1075 suggested increasing the $10 million coverage threshold in the rule for capital-intensive industries, on the theory that small acquisitions in such industries are less likely to have an impact on competition than in less capital-intensive industries. The comment did not, however, propose a means of implementing this suggestion, and the Commission regards it as unworkable. It is also unclear whether the premise underlying the suggestion is necessarily correct, and the comment offered no factual support for it. The difficulty of generalizing about the impact of mergers and acquisitions upon competition suggests the inadvisability of eliminating reporting requirements as a result of similar generalizations about whether an industry is "capital-intensive."

SECTION 802.21 ACQUISITIONS OF VOTING SECURITES NOT MEETING OR EXCEEDING GREATER NOTIFICATION THRESHOLD

In general, if a person has previously complied with the act, § 802.21 exempts for a period of 5 years additional acquisitions of the voting securities of the same acquired person, so long as the acquiring person's holdings do not meet or exceed the next higher "notification threshold." The rule also replaces § 802.22 of the revised rules and permits the acquiring person, if its holdings decrease below the level for which it originally filed notification, to meet or exceed that level again within 5 years without filing notification. The rule does not exempt any acquisitions of assets.

Under the act, every acquisition after which the acquiring person would hold more than 15 percent or $15 million of the stock of the acquired person is potentially reportable. Section 801.13 interprets the phrase "as a result of" in section 7A(a)(3), the size-of-transaction test for application of the act. Under § 801.13, every acquisition after which the acquiring person would hold more than 15 percent or $15 million of the stock of the acquired person satisfies this criterion, rather than only acquisitions that first raise the acquiring person's holdings to the 15 percent or $15 million level. See the statement of basis and purpose to that rule.

Section 802.21, in substance, exempts all acquisitions above the 15 percent or $15 million level except those meeting or exceeding notification thresholds or those occurring more than 5 years after the earlier notification.

The rule conditions the exemption upon three requirements, set forth in paragraphs (a), (b), and (c). First, the acquiring person (in the acquisition for which the exemption is being considered) must have filed notification with respect to an earlier acquisition of the same issuer's stock, and all other persons required by the rules to file with respect to the earlier acquisition must also have done so. Second, the waiting period with respect to the earlier acquisition must have expired or been terminated, and the expiration or termination must have occurred within 5 years of the acquisition being considered for exemption. Finally, the acquisition must not increase the holdings of the acquiring person to meet or exceed a notification threshold greater than the greatest threshold surpassed in the earlier acquisition.

The term "notification threshold" is defined § 801.1(h). In brief, the four thresholds are (1) the 15 percent or $15 million level of section 7A(a)(3); (2) 15 percent of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer, if valued at more than $15 million; (3) 25 percent of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer; and (4) 50 percent of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer. See also the statement of basis and purpose to § 801.1(h)(1). Thus, as the example to § 802.21 illustrate, after complying with the act for an acquisition of 15 percent of the stock of an issuer, the acquiring person can increase its holdings to any amount below 25 percent of the stock within 5 years of the end of the earlier waiting period without again filing notification and waiting; after acquiring 25 percent, up to 50 percent within 5 years, and so on. Once a person holds 50 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer, further acquisitions are exempt under section 7A(c)(3).

Note that under § 803.7, the earlier notification entitles the reporting person to meet or exceed only those notification thresholds with respect to which the earlier notification was filed, and that were actually achieved within a period of 1 year. After 1 year the notification expires, and though the person may use this rule to raise its holdings to just under the next greatest threshold, it may not meet or exceed a higher threshold without again filing notification. See the example to § 803.7.

Example No. 5 to the rule illustrates the other feature of the rule: That if for some reason the acquiring person reduces its holdings below a threshold for which it filed notification and waited, it can (within 5 years of the expiration of the waiting period) cross the same notification threshold again without filing and waiting. Of course, after recrossing the threshold, it may acquire additional shares so long as it does not meet or exceed the next threshold.

Since acquisitions of assets are not exempted by the rule, any acquisition of assets that satisfies the three tests of section 7A(a) and is not exempted by the act or rules, is reportable. In particular, any acquisition as a result of which the acquiring person would hold 15 percent or $15 million of the assets of the acquired person is reportable, even though the reporting person may have previously filed notification with respect to an acquisition of assets from the same person. Note, however, that under § 801.13(b) assets cease to be assets of the acquired person, and become assets of the acquiring person, after 180 days.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 802.21

The language of the act indicates that Congress contemplated agency review of stock acquisitions not only at the 15 percent or $15 million level, but also at additional, higher levels of ownership. Further review is desirable because holdings that may be innocuous at low levels may pose antitrust concerns at higher levels. Section 801.13 construes the phrase "as a result of" to fulfill this congressional purpose; see the statement of basis and purpose to that rule.

However, this principle would not justify notification and a waiting period prior to every acquisition above the 15 percent or $15 million level. The delay and expense of repeated filings would be extremely burdensome to reporting persons and would present too substantial an administrative burden for the enforcement agencies. Nor would such notifications serve any enforcement purpose. Percentage holdings varying by a few percentage points will in most cases have equivalent antitrust significance, and periodic review at the levels of the notification thresholds, or within the timing constraints of § 802.21, should be sufficient. The rule insures that the agencies learn of appreciable increases in holdings by imposing the reporting requirements at the prescribed notification thresholds, and insures that the agencies learn of changed circumstances by imposing the reporting requirement in any event after 5 years. Of course, in a particular case an acquisition exempted by the rule may prove to have antitrust significance, and the fact that the acquisition was exempt under this (or any other) rule does not preclude either agency from challenging the acquisition. See section 7A(i).

The reasons why these precise ownership levels were selected as notification thresholds are detailed in the statement of basis and purpose to § 801.1(h). The 5-year limitation is discussed in connection with paragraph (b) of this rule.

The final version of the rule reflects important modifications both from revised §§ 802.21 and 802.22 and from related provisions in the original rules.

The definition of "notification thresholds," which appeared in the revised rules as § 802.21(a), has been transferred to § 801.1(h) because the term proves useful in other rules as well.

Paragraph (a) of the rule is unchanged from revised § 802.21(b)(1). The Commission rejected suggestions in the comments (e.g., 74, 77, 120) that submissions under the existing FTC premerger notification program should satisfy the requirement of a prior report, or that the requirement should be eliminated. The existing program's report form is not as comprehensive or detailed as the notification and report form, and the breadth of the exemption conferred by the rule warrants the more penetrating initial inquiry.

Paragraph (b), however, significantly alters revised § 802.21(b)(2). The final rule inserts the requirement that the waiting period for the earlier acquisition must have expired or been terminated in order to insure that the agencies have completed their review of the competitive consequences of the acquisition. In addition, by measuring the time period from the date of expiration or termination of the waiting period, rather than the date of filing notification, the time period for exemption is a full 5 years.

Paragraph (b) of the final rule also lengthens the 180-day period contained in the revised rule into a 5-year period during which subsequent acquisitions may qualify for the exemption.

Numerous comments had protested the 180-day restriction, urging variously 1 year (1053, 1090, 1091, 1101), 2 years (1044, 1077, 1090), 5 years (1059) or its deletion altogether (1086). The comments argued that changed business activities of the parties would not change the Government's enforcement intentions often enough to justify the burden of compliance with the act at such brief intervals. The comment of the Securities and Exchange Commission (1058) had also expressed concern that 180 days from the date of filing might not be long enough to avoid conflict with proposed SEC rule 14d-6, which would require tender offerors to pay the tender offer price for all purchases within 40 days after the close of the offer. The final rule sets the time period at 5 years because, in addition to the reasons expressed by the comments, the Bureau of the Census undertakes its comprehensive economic censuses every 5 years, so that by the time the exemption ceases to be available the agencies will have new census data to compares with the data submitted.

Final § 802.21(c) replacess revised § 802.22, which exempted acquisitions recrossing notification thresholds, by rewording revised § 802.21(b)(3). Instead of prohibiting attainment of any notification threshold, as did the revised rule, the final version of paragraph (c) prohibits only reaching or exceeding a greater notification threshold than the highest one attained in connection with the earlier notification. Thus, any number of acquisitions raising or lowering holdings across a notification threshold earlier attained are fully exempt, and § 802.22 has been deleted. The comments on § 802.22, which almost exclusively recommended lengthening the time period for the exemption (1059, 1077, 1086, 1090, 1091), have been acknowledged by combining the rule with the 5-year period adopted for § 802.21.

The final version of § 802.21(c) also accomodates the insertion of § 803.7 into the final rules. Its phrasing, "the greatest notification threshold met or exceeded in the earlier acquisition" means the greatest threshold met or exceeded within the 1-year period before the notification expires under § 803.7. See the example to that rule.

Original § 802.45 would have adopted a different exemption scheme for acquisitions subsequent to compliance with the act. It would have allowed incremental increases of 5 percent of an issuer's voting securities, without time limit, above the holdings reflected by the original notification, provided that the incremental acquisition would not confer control of the issuer. ("Control" in the original rules was defined to mean control in fact, regardless of the percentage held.) Several comments on the revised rule (1044, 1059, 1077, 1090) recommended adoption of both schemes: Permitting acquisitions up to thresholds within a time period, as the final rule does, and incremental acquisitions of a de minimis percentage above the last notification filed, without time limit. Comment 1059, for example, argued that the two exemptions served different needs, but that both were desirable. The final rules do not provide for a de minimis exemption without time limit, partly because of the lengthening of the time period for the exemption to 5 years. De minimis incremental acquisitions that cross a notification threshold are thought to warrant examination for the reasons underlying the notification thresholds, while those occurring more than 5 years after the waiting period from the previous filing do not merit exemption because the businesses of the acquiring and acquired persons, the market or the product may have changed.

The original rules also contained a provision, § 802.50, allowing a "short report" in place of the notification and report form for acquisitions between the same parties within 1 year of filing notification with respect to the earlier acquisition. The final rules omit this procedure since § 802.21 embodies a more comprehensive exemption.

Finally, the rules adopt no exemption for multiple acquisitions of assets by the same acquiring person from the same acquired person. Since one group of assets does not necessarily bear any relation to another, the competitive significance of each acquisition of assets is unique and must be evaluated on its own merits. Comment 63 supported this view. In any event, the problem is much less acute since, while voting securities potentially remain voting securities of the acquired person indefinitely, acquired assets become assets of the acquiring person after 180 days. See § 801.13(b)(2).

SECTION 802.23 AMENDED OR RENEWED TENDER OFFERS

Section 802.23 modifies the notification and waiting period requirements of the act under certain circumstances when a tender offeror amends or renews a tender offer with respect to which it previously filed notification.

Except in three situations, the rule fully exempts amended or renewed tender offers from any notification or waiting period requirement under the act. The rule does not affect reporting and waiting period obligations with respect to the original offer. If none of the three exceptions applies, the acquiring person is free to amend or renew its tender offer, and to consummate the acquisition, for up to one year after the expiration of the waiting period, in accordance with the provisions of section 803.7.

The rule applies only when the amended or renewed tender offer seeks to acquire voting securities of the same issuer as did the original tender offer. An amended tender offer is one that alters only the terms of the offer; a renewed tender offer is one that reopens the time period for offerees to tender their stock. An offer may be both amended and renewed.

In order for the rule to apply, the tender offeror must have filed notification with respect to the original offer. The rule applies whether or not the acquired person has filed notification, since under section 801.30(b)(2) the acquired person need not file until fifteen (or, in the case of cash tender offers, 10) days after filing by the acquiring person.

Paragraphs (a), (b), and (c) describe the three instances in which the rule grants only a partial exemption. First, under paragraph (a), if the number of voting securities the offeror seeks to acquire pursuant to an amended offer will meet or exceed a greater notification threshold than earlier reported, the offeror must complete and file a new Notification and Report Form, and a new waiting period will commence. The acquired person, however, is required to file only once. If the acquired person already filed notification in response to the offeror's first filing, its obligation is discharged (unless it receives a request for additional information under section 7A(e) and section 803.20). If the acquired person has not yet filed notification by the time of the second notification by the offeror, the acquired person must nevertheless file no later than the time it becomes due in respose to the first notification. The term "notification threshold" is defined in section 801.1(h). See also section 802.21.

Second, under paragaph (b), if a non-cash tender offer is amended to become a cash tender offer, the offeror must file a copy of the amended offer with the enforcement agencies, in the manner prescibed in section 803.10(c). The waiting period will expire 15 days after that filing, or 30 days after the original filing, whichever is earlier. Since the expiration date is determined by section 803.10(b), it is subject to extension by requests to the acquiring person for additional information or documentary material under section 7A(e) and section 803.20 or by court order under section 7A(g)(2) and to early termination under section 7A(b)(2) and section 803.11. When a non-cash tender offer is amended to become a cash tender offer, the acquired person's obligations are not affected. It must file no later than the time determined by the tender offeror's first notification, and remains subject to a second request, although the waiting period is not thereby extended.

Third, if a cash tender offer is amended to become a non-cash tender offer, the offeror again must file a copy of the amended offer with the enforcement agencies in the manner specified by section 803.10(c). The waiting period will expire 15 days after that filing, or 30 days after the original filing, whichever is later. Again, the obligation of the acquired person to file notification is unaffected and is determined by the date of the original notification, and both parties remain subject to second requests.

In each of the latter two instances, the rule may be applicable even though the waiting period begun by the original offer has expired or been terminated.

If a waiting period is to be extended by a request for additional information or documentary material under section 7A(e) and section 803.20, the length of the extension is determined by the character of the tender offer at the time the response is received—that is, ten days if a cash tender offer, 20 days if a non-cash tender offer.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 802.23

The purpose of this rule is to minimize the reporting and waiting period obligations for amended or renewed tender offers, while still ensuring that the agencies receive sufficient information and advance notice to fulfill the purposes of the act.

If a tender offer is amended or renewed under circumstances other than those described in the three paragraphs of the rule, the amendment or the renewal is unlikely to have competitive consequences appreciably different from those of the original offer, as to which notification has already been filed. The agencies' decision whether to challenge the acquisition will probably not be affected by the amendment or renewal. Accordingly, the rule exempts such amendments and renewals altogether.

Amended and renewed offers described in paragraph (a), however, present different concerns. Since a higher notification threshold will be met or exceeded, a new notification and a new waiting period are required just as they would be for sequential acquisitions under § 802.21. In such cases, the increased holdings warrant fresh scrutiny by the agencies. The acquiring person's Notification and Report Form is necessary to inform the agencies of the amended acquisition. However, the rule exempts the acquired person from filing again since its Form will contain adequately current information. If the amendment is made before the acquired person has filed notification in response to the original tender offer, it must still file that notification.

If a non-cash tender offer is amended to become a cash tender offer, the acquiring person would be subject to a waiting period no longer than 15 days (before any extension), simply by filing a new notification. Paragraph (b) of the rule further relaxes the waiting period, by permitting it to expire at the end of the original 30 day period if that is earlier. The earlier expiration date is practicable because the agencies, upon receipt of notification for the original non-cash tender offer, would have had 30 days to decide whether to challenge the acquisition, and because the change in the nature of the consideration should not unduly complicate the agencies' review of the acquisition. The copy of the tender offer is needed to inform the agencies of the amendment, while the acquired person's re-filing would be redundant and is eliminated.

When a cash tender offer is amended to become a non-cash tender offer, the waiting period expires 15 days from the filing of the amended tender offer, or 30 days from the original filing, whichever is later. Again, since the agencies' review of the acquisition should be completed within 30 days from the original filing, the rule affords the agencies adequate time. Again, the copy of the tender offer is needed to inform the agencies of the amendment, but the acquired person is not required to file again.

Note that for non-cash tender offers, § 801.31 facilitates the agencies' review by ensuring that any significant holdings resulting from acquisitions of voting securities by offerees of the tender offer will be separately reportable.

By minimizing the notification and waiting period requirements, the rule minimizes multiple reporting in the event that a tender offeror changes the terms of its offer in response to competing offers by other prospective purchasers.

The rule first appeared as revised § 802.23, which had several limitations not present in the final rule.

First, revised § 802.23(a) would have required the amended or renewed tender offer to be consummated within 180 days of the filing of the earlier notification. This period has been lengthened to the 1-year period of § 803.7. The change should resolve the concern of the SEC expressed in comment 1058. The SEC had feared that the 180-day period might not be long enough for the tender offeror to comply with state laws delaying tender offerors, and with proposed SEC rule 14d-6, which would integrate with the tender offer certain purchases of securities within 40 days after its termination. Comments 1086 and 1090 also criticized the 180-day limit.

Second, revised § 802.23(b) would not have exempted the amended offer if it offered as consideration voting securities that had not been offered as consideration in the original offer. This restriction was deleted because § 801.31 assures that the agencies will learn of any significant holding resulting from acquisition of voting securities by offerees of the tender offer. Comment 1090 noted this point in substance.

SECTION 802.30 INTRA-PERSON TRANSACTIONS

This rule provides generally that whenever the acquiring and acquired persons are (or, when a wholly owned subsidiary is being formed, will be) the same person, the acquisition is exempt from the reporting and waiting period requirements of the act. Acquiring persons are defined by § 801.2(a), and for this purpose acquired persons are identified by § 801.2(b). Acquisitions of both assets and voting securities are exempt under the rule. Note that for voting securities, the acquired person is the person within which the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired is included, and is not the person from which the voting securities are to be acquired (unless they are the same). See example No. 1 to § 801.2(b).

Thus, example No. 1 to this rule illustrates that any transaction between entities included within the same person (save for an exception noted below) is exempt. Example No. 2 illustrates that the formation of a new wholly owned subsidiary is exempt. And example No. 4 illustrates that a corporation's repurchase of its own stock is exempt. Redemptions and retirements of shares are likewise exempt. In each of these cases the acquiring and acquired persons are the same.

The rule contains two exceptions. First, the formation of a new corporation will not be exempt under the rule if the voting securities of the new corporation will be held by more than one person. Example No. 5 to the rule illustrates this exception. Second, the acquiring and acquired persons must be included within the same person because of holdings of voting securities. The definition of control, § 801.1(b), determines whether an entity is included within a person. If an entity is included within the person under the other test of control, i.e., because a contract permits the person to name a majority of the board of directors of that entity, acquisition of the shares of that entity is not exempt under this rule. Example No. 3 illustrates this point.

Background Information to § 802.30

Section 7A(c)(3) exempts:

> acquisitions of voting securities of an issuer at least 50 per centum of the voting securities of which are owned by the acquiring person prior to such acquisition * * *.

This exemption expresses a Congressional determination that such acquisitions are unlikely to raise questions under the antitrust laws that were not raised by acquisition of the 50- percent interest. The rule extends the exemption to other situations to which the same rationale applies: transfers of assets between subsidiaries of the same parent, formations of new wholly owned subsidiaries, repurchases of stock by a corporation, and the like.

The two exceptions to the rule deny the exemption because this rationale does not apply. The contracts underlying contractual control may be less permanent than controlling ownership interests. In addition, termination of a contractual control relationship will generally not give rise to a reporting requirement, whereas transfer of a controlling block of stock will. Comment 1061 questioned withholding the exemption for such situations, but the final rule adheres to the position. The formation of a joint venture or other corporation having two or more shareholders is also excluded, because the combination of two different persons is an event posing precisely the kinds of antitrust concerns that the act directs the agencies to review.

The final version of the rule rephrases the previous versions, revised § 802.32 and original § 802.25. The revised rule used somewhat cumbersome language to exempt the formation of a subsidiary, which is achieved explicitly in the final rule. The final rule states that the acquiring and acquired persons are or will be the same person because the new corporation may not yet exist.

Since the reworded final rule exempts repurchases and redemptions, the final rules omit revised section 802.30 as superfluous.

Revised section 802.32 had excluded the formation of all joint ventures, but in response to comment 1070 the final rule makes clear that joint ventures involving the participation of only one person are exempt under the rule. A joint venture between subsidiaries of the same corporation would be exempt.

Comment 25 suggested that purchases of a corporation's shares should be exempt not only if made by the corporation for its own account, but also if made for the account of an employee's stock or pension plan. Under final section 801.2(a), the acquiring person is the person that as a result of the acquisition will hold the voting securities, and section 801.1(c) defines "hold" to mean beneficial ownership. Therefore, when the corporation acquires shares "for the account of" an employees' stock or pension plan, the acquisition would be exempt under this rule if the corporation becomes the beneficial owner, but would not be exempt under this rule if, for example, a pension trust became the beneficial owner. See section 801.1(c)(3). The latter acquisition may, however, be exempt under section 7A(c)(9) or under section 802.64. Likewise, the definition of "hold" answers the inquiry in comment 1058, because when other persons act on behalf of a corporation to repurchase its own stock, the corporation becomes the beneficial owner and the acquisitions are exempt under this rule.

SECTION 802.31 ACQUISITION OF CONVERTIBLE VOTING SECURITIES

Section 802.31 exempts the acquisition of convertible voting securities from the requirements of the act. The term "convertible voting security" is defined in section 801.1(f)(2). Note that section 801.32 specifies that the conversion of convertible voting securities is a potentially reportable acquisition.

Background Information to section 802.31

Revised section 802.31 exempted from the requirements of the act the conversion of convertible voting securities into voting securities presently entitled to vote. Under the revised rules, the reporting requirements would have attached when the convertibles were acquired. Under the final rules, however, the acquisition of voting securities that results from the conversion of convertibles is the event requiring the holder to report. The acquisition of convertible votion securities is exempt. For a full explanation of the rationale for the exemption, see the Statement of Basis and Purpose to section 801.1(f)(2); see also sections 801.1(f)(3) and 801.32.

SECTION 802.40 EXEMPT FORMATION OF JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATIONS

Section 802.40 exempts from the requirements of the act the acquisition of voting securities in connection with the formation of a joint venture or other corporation if the newly-formed entity will be not for profit within the meaning of sections 501(c) (1)-(4), (6)-(15), (17)-(20) or (d) of the Internal Revenue Code.

Background Information to section 802.40

Section 802.40 exempts the formation of any corporation, whether or not termed a joint venture, that will be not for profit within the meaning of any of the cited sections of the Internal Revenue Code ("Code"). The types of organizations thereby exempted include: Corporations created by act of Congress and acting as instrumentalities of the United States, section 501(c)(1) of the Code; holding companies for otherwise tax-exempt organizations, section 501 (c)(2); religious, charitable, scientific, literary, or educational organizations that are not substantially dedicated to lobbying efforts, section 501(c)(3); civic leagues or employee asssociations, section 501(c)(4); business leagues, chambers of commerce, real estate boards, boards of trade, or professional football leagues, section 501(c)(6); recreation clubs, section 501(c)(7); fraternal lodges that provide insurance benefits to members or their dependents, section 501(c)(8); employee beneficiary associations, section 501(c)(9); domestic fraternal lodges that devote their net earnings to religious, charitable, scientific, literary, educational and fraternal purposes, section 501(c)(10); certain local teachers' retirement fund associations, section 501(c)(11); local benevolent life associations or other cooperative companies, if at least 85 percent of their income consists of amounts collected from members to meet losses and expenses, section 501(c)(12); cemeteries and burial societies operated solely for the benefit of their members, section 501(c)(13); certain credit unions, section 501(c)(14); small mutual insurance (other than marine or life) companies or associations, section 501(c)(15); certain trusts forming part of a plan providing for the payment of supplemental unemployment compensation benefits, section 501(c)(17); certain pension trusts funded solely by employee contributions, section 501(c)(18); certain organizations of war veterans, section 501(c)(19); certain organizations formed as part of a qualified group legal services plan or plans, section 501(c)(20); and certain religious and apostolic organizations, section 501(d).

All these types of organizations are operated solely for the benefit of society of some segment thereof, or for the benefit of a specific membership. They either are not usually engaged in commerce within the meaning of the act and rules or are specifically prohibited from permitting any of their net earnings to inure to the benefit of any private shareholder or other individual. In light of these characteristics, it was considered unlikely that the formation of a joint venture or other corporation of one of these varieties would violate the antitrust laws, and this exemption was thus provided.

The formation of some species of organizations exempt from income taxes remains nonetheless subject to the requirements of the act and rules. Section 501(c)(5) of the Code exempts "[l]abor, agricultural, or horticultural organizations," and section 501(c)(16) provides that farmers' cooperatives organized to finance crop operations of their members are tax-exempt even if they have capital stock that is owned by the associations or their members, pay dividends, and accumulate and maintain a reserve. Organizations tax-exempt under these two sections of the Code—unlike organizations tax-exempt under the other cited sections of the Code—often engage in activities that are in or significantly affect commerce. The tax-exempt status of these organizations does not insure that a combination of certain persons forming such "joint venture or other corporations" will be free from antitrust concerns. In fact, the identity of the persons contributing to the formation of such organizations is essential to determining whether the activities of the organizations so formed may be exempt from the antitrust laws under section 6 of the Clayton Act or under the Capper-Volstead Act, 7 U.S.C. section 291. Since agricultural or horticultural organizations and farmers' cooperatives may exist in the corporate form and may be organized to produce and market goods or services, the fact that they are tax-exempt is not sufficient justification to exempt their formation from the requirements of the act and rules.

Revised § 802.40 exempted the formation of tax-exempt, nonprofit joint ventures from the requirements of the act. The FEDERAL REGISTER notice accompanying the revised rules invited comments identifying and discussing other types of joint ventures or other corporations that are unlikely to violate the antitrust laws and should thus be exempted from the requirements of the act. It stated:

> [T]he Commission would like to know in greater detail the reasons that formation of specific types of joint ventures might be unlikely to violate the antitrust laws, as many of the comments have alleged. Given the fact that some judgment concerning the possible anticompetitive impact of a joint venture must be made by the enforcement agencies at the time of its formation, the Commission specifically invites comments concerning appropriate tests that would prospectively distinguish ventures which might raise possible anticompetitive consequences from those that are unlikely to do so.
>
> The Commission has difficulty with the suggestions, made in a significant number of comments received in response to the originally proposed rules, that narrow exemptions relating to specific types of joint ventures in particular industries would be appropriate. The Commission invites specific suggestions concerning principles of general application to broad classes of joint ventures, regardless of the specific industry or particular purpose of the venture, which may serve to distinguish those ventures raising little likelihood of antitrust problems. The Commission is not inclined to grant exemptions absent clear indication that they are warranted under the Act. Comments which do not attempt to relate suggested exemptions to the underlying purposes of the act are not likely to be helpful to the Commission.
>
> (42 FR at 39044 (Aug. 1, 1977).)

Despite this instruction, numerous comments persisted in urging industry-specific exemptions. See the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 801.40. The Commission does not believe that the formation of a particular type of joint venture is less likely to be anticompetitive simply because it is commonly used in a particular industry. Nothing revealed in the comments eliminates this concern. Other comments suggested that "method of operation" exemptions be introduced into the rules. These exemptions would have extended to the formation of joint ventures that would not market products or services outside the venture (e.g., 1027, 1059, 1068); to joint ventures organized to perform a single contract or organized for a limited time period (e.g., 1059, 1092, 1112, 1113); or to joint ventures with public policy goals (1050).

These limiting conditions, however, do not necessarily render the formation of such ventures unlikely to violate the antitrust laws. Ventures that will not market manufactured products (or real estate or services) other than to their parents may in fact raise numerous anticompetitive problems, including market foreclosure and increased entry barriers. Such effects are even more likely if the venturers maintain a customer-supplier relationship prior to formation of the venture.

A great many problems surround the suggested "single purpose, limited duration" exemption. First, the distinction between a single project or single contract and some larger undertaking is necessarily artificial. A single contract, for example, could call for undertaking a project continuing over many years, or the production of a large number of units could be designated a single project. The "limited duration" criterion also is inherently vague and would introduce an unacceptable level of subjectivity into the rule. It is not always clear whether a new entity will be permanent or temporary, and what constitutes a limited period of time. Any period of time chosen to delineate such a "limited duration" would necessarily be arbitrary. Moreover, the duration of a new entity might be limited at formation but extended thereafter: No reporting requirement would have attached at formation under this proposal, and none would have attached at extension. This would have created a large and improper loophole in the reporting scheme.

Finally, public policy motivation, evidenced perhaps by absence of profit (as opposed to tax-exempt status), is not a satisfactory safeguard. The mere absence of profit, particularly in a situation in which a joint venture or other new corporation has a vertical relationship with its parents, simply may mean that the parents have elected to take their profits at a different level of operations. Moreover, these kinds of exemptions are unavailable in connection with acquisitions involving already existing corporations. Accordingly, the proposals in these comments were rejected.

SECTION 802.41 JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATIONS AT TIME OF FORMATION

Section 802.41 exempts newly formed joint venture or other corporations from filing notification in connection with their own formation. The exemption reaches only the transactions involving formation and does not extend to subsequent acquisitions by or from the newly formed corporation.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 802.41

Since it is the combination of the persons that form the new entity (and not the new entity standing alone) that presents antitrust issues when a new corporation is formed, the Notification and Report Forms submitted by the parents of the new corporation will provide the information necessary to evaluate the competitive impact of the combination. Any data relevant to the intended activities of the new entity would appear on the parents' forms. The new entity would have no history and its report would provide no additional detail with respect to the consequences of its own formation.

Original § 801.55(b) and revised § 802.41 also provided that a newly formed joint venture (the acquired person in the formation transaction) need not file notification with respect to its formation. Final § 802.41 retains this exemption. The examples to the rule were revised and enlarged in the final version to make clear the distinction between formation transactions and subsequent transactions, as to which the new entity (or the person within which it is included) would be required to file notification. Whenever a joint venture or other corporation acquires assets or voting securities of another person or sells its own assets or stock—other than in connection with its formation—and the criteria of section 7A(a) are satisfied, it must comply with the reporting and waiting requirements of the act like any other acquiring or acquired person.

No comments were received on this rule.

SECTION 802.50 ACQUISITIONS OF FOREIGN ASSETS OR OF VOTING SECURITIES OF A FOREIGN ISSUER BY UNITED STATES PERSONS

This rule exempts certain acquisitions by United States persons of assets located outside the United States or of voting securities of a foreign issuer. It does not apply to acquisitions by foreign persons, which are treated in § 802.51. The terms "United States person," "United States issuer," "foreign person" and "foreign issuer" are defined in § 801.1(e).

Paragraph (a) of the rule governs asset acquisitions. It exempts the acquisition of assets located outside the United States to which no sales in or into the United States are attributable. It also exempts the acquisition of assets located outside the United States to which less than $10 million of sales in or into the United States were attributable during the acquired person's most recent fiscal year. The exemption of a foreign assets acquisition by a United States person thus turns entirely upon the United States sales, if any, attributable to the assets to be held. It is of no consequence in this context whether the acquired person is a United States person or a foreign person.

The term "as a result of" the acquisition is used in the sense described in § 801.13(b). In order to determine whether this exemption is applicable, therefore, the acquiring person must aggregate all assets of the acquired person it is acquiring in the present transaction and has acquired in the previous 180 calendar days. If all such assets together had $10 million or more in sales attributable to them in the most recent fiscal year, the exemption is not applicable, as indicated in example No. 2 to the paragraph.

Paragraph (b) of the rule concerns voting securities. It exempts acquisitions by United States persons of the voting securities of a foreign issuer unless that issuer (together with all entities it controls) holds assets located in the United States (other than investment assets and securities of another person) having an aggregate book value of $10 million or more, or made aggregate sales in or into the United States of $10 million or more in its most recent fiscal year. The term "investment assets" is defined in § 801.1(i)(2). The value of these types of United States assets held by a foreign issuer does not count toward the $10 million threshold above which the exemption does not apply.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 802.50

This rule, like its companion rule, § 802.51, is intended to exempt several classes of transactions having only a limited nexus with United States commerce. The commerce criterion of section 7A(a)(1) requires only that either the acquiring or the acquired person be engaged in commerce or in any activity affecting commerce. The act thus permits coverage of a great many transactions that have some or even predominant foreign aspects. This rule, like the other "foreign commerce" exemptions, is designed to exempt some of these acquisitions—those with only a minimal impact on United States commerce. The Commission also recognizes that considerations of comity may be significant in the area of international business transactions. With respect to some acquisitions whose principal impact is foreign, it is appropriate for the agency in its discretion to exercise a self-imposed limitation and decline to subject them to the act's requirements. The exemption from the notification and waiting period obligations does not, of course, imply an exemption from the substantive antitrust laws.

The rule fixes the threshold of impact on United States commerce at $10 million largely because section 7A(a)(2) of the act uses that figure as the minimum size for a person in a reportable transaction. In each instance when foreign assets or voting securities are being acquired by a United States person, the nexus with United States commerce will be as great as that statutory threshold.

The final rule is largely similar to revised § 802.50 but incorporates some changes. The final rules partially restructure the foreign commerce exemptions so that all acquisitions by foreign persons are treated in § 802.51, which in the revised rules had treated only acquisitions by foreign persons from other foreign persons. Final § 802.50 applies only to acquisitions by United States persons. The final rules thus differentiate between acquisitions by foreign persons and acquisitions by United States persons; the former must have a more substantial link to United States commerce before they are reportable. For further information, see the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 802.51.

The final rule's reference to "investment assets" as one of the types of assets that may be excluded in counting a foreign issuer's holdings in the United States pursuant to subparagraph (b)(1) represents a clarification and limitation of the exclusion in the revised rule. That rule would have excluded "assests held solely for investment purposes" from this computation. The purpose of the exception remains unchanged: To exclude assets that do not reflect a substantial business presence in the United States and generally have little competitive significance. However, the Commission does not believe that the term "assets held solely for investment purposes" has any well-understood or administrable meaning. Therefore, as implied in the FEDERAL REGISTER notice accompanying the revised rules, the reference to "assets held solely for investment purposes" has been deleted. See 42 FR at 39047 (Aug. 1, 1977). Instead, final § 802.50(b)(1) instructs the acquiring person to exclude "investment assets," which are defined in § 801.1(l)(2), as well as voting or nonvoting securities of another person.

In addition, final § 802.50 refers to "United States" persons and "foreign" issuers. The revised rule had referred to issuers "domiciled outside the United States." As a result of the definitions inserted in final section 801.1(e) and the deletion of the concept of domicile, this reference was altered. See the Statement of Basis and Purpose to section 801.1(e).

The original rules did not distinguish between acquisitions by foreign persons and those by United States persons. Original section 802.35, the only foreign commerce exemption in those rules, would have exempted acquisitions by any person of voting securities of an issuer not substantially involved in United States commerce or of assets to which no substantial involvement in United States commerce was attributable. The revised rules refined this exemption to provide separate exemptions, with differing criteria, depending on the identity of the acquiring and acquired persons. This is essentially the pattern followed in the final fule.

Several comments (e.g., 1059, 1063) expressed disagreement with the differing treatment accorded to foreign persons and United States persons. They argued that the special provisions for foreign persons might prejudice American firms abroad, since a foreign firm might prefer to deal with another foreign firm in order to avoid a reporting requirement. This differing treatment, according to comment 1063, is also inconsistent with the asserted principle that the antitrust laws should be enforced without regard to nationality. These comments suggested that a uniform but higher threshold of impact on United States commerce should be applicable to all foreign transactions. Comment 1063, for example, suggested a $50 million or even a $100 million test instead of the $10 million test in revised section 802.50.

These comments were rejected because it is not clear that transactions below these higher thresholds are unlikely to violate the antitrust laws, and because the considerations of comity that also underlie this exemption were lessened when a transaction has at least a $10 million nexus with United

States commerce. The differing treatment for acquisitions by United States persons is also justified, since such acquisitions may be more likely to violate the antitrust laws.

Comment 1099 asserted that section 802.50(a)(1) was superfluous, because assets to which no United States sales were attributable would also qualify as assets to which less than $10 million of United States sales were attributable, and thus would be exempt under § 802.50 (a) (2). However, the structure of final § 801.15 clarifies the difference in treatment. Under § 801.15(a)(2), assets to which no United States sales are attributable may be disregarded in determining whether subsequent acquisitions of assets from the same acquired person meet the $15 million test of section 7A(a)(3)(B): Such assets are not considered held by the acquiring person for that purpose. On the other hand, since § 802.50(a)(2) is listed in § 801.15(b) rather than § 801.15(a)(2), assets acquired in transactions exempt under § 802.50(a)(2) *are held* for purposes of the $15 million tet of section 7A(a)(3)(B), once the $10 million United States sales threshold is met. Thus, assets to which some United States sales were attributable must be aggregated with any additional assets that the acquiring person within 180 days agrees to acquire, for purposes of the $15 million test of section 7A(a)(3)(B), and hence for determining whether the act applies. See § 801.13(b)(2) and § 801.15, and the Statement of Basis and Purpose to those rules.

SECTION 802.51 ACQUISITIONS BY FOREIGN PERSONS

This rule exempts certain acquisitions by foreign persons, a term defined in § 801.1(e). Paragraphs (a) through (d) of the rule describe the circumstances in which the exemption applies.

Paragraphs (a) and (c) relate to asset acquisitions. Paragraph (a) exempts all acquisitions by foreign persons of assets located outside the United States. In contrast with the exemption in § 802.50(a), which treats acquisitions of foreign of foreign assets by United States persons, this exemption does not depend upon the United States sales, if any, attributable to the foreign assets. Paragraph (c) exempts assets. Paragraph (c) exempts acquisitions by foreign persons of less than $10 million of assets (excluding investment assets) in the United States. The term "investment assets" is defined in § 1801.(i)(2).

Paragraph (b) relates to voting securities acquisitions. It exempts acquisitions by foreign persons of voting securities of foreign issuers, except in two circumstances. If the acquisition of the foreign issuer will give the acquiring foreign person control either of an issuer that holds assets (other than investment assets) located in the United States with an aggregate book value of $10 million or more, or of a United States issuer with annual net sales or total assets of $10 million or more, the acquisition is not exempt under paragraph (b). Example 2 illustrates this paragraph.

Paragraph (d) applies to both voting securities and asset acquisitions. It exempts all transactions in which both the acquiring and the acquired persons are foreign persons, unless either their aggregate annual sales in or into the United States, or their aggregate total assets located in the United States, total $110 million or more. Note that paragraphs (a) through (d) are to be read in the alternative, and that an acquisition is exempt if any one (or more) of these paragraphs is satisfied. For example, if a foreign person acquires $20 million of assets located in the United States from another foreign person, the transaction is not exempt under paragraph (c), but it may still be exempt under paragraph (d), depending on the United States sales and assets of the acquiring and acquired persons.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 802.51

Like § 802.50, this rule exempts certain acquisitions by foreign persons because of their minimal relationship to United States commerce. See the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 802.50.

As explained in the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 802.50, this treatment represents a change from the revised rules, which distinguished from all other foreign-commerce transactions those acquisitions involving *only* foreign persons. All other transactions with foreign aspects could be exempted only under the more limited exemption of revised § 802.50.

This change was made in the final rules because the Commission believes that an anticompetitive impact upon United States commerce is less likely to occur when a foreign person is acquiring foreign assets or voting securities, regardless of who the acquired person is. Since the anticompetitive impact, if any, results from the transfer of the stock or assets to the acquiring person, the identity of the acquiring person is of greater antitrust significance than the identity of the acquired person. In addition, considerations of comity are more significant whenever a foreign person is the acquiring person. Therefore, the final rules distinguish acquisitions by foreign persons, which benefit from the broader exemption of this rule, from acquisitions by United States persons, which may be exempt under § 802.50.

Paragraph (a) of the rule states that the acquisition by a foreign person of foreign assets is never reportable. Acquisitions by foreign persons of foreign assets generally have a less substantial connection with United States commerce, regardless of any United States sales attributable to the assets, and are therefore less likely to violate the antitrust laws. Paragraph (c) provides that the acquisition by a foreign person of less than $10 million of United States assets is not reportable. This threshold was adopted in part to parallel the size-of-person tests in section 7A(a)(2) and the exemption in § 802.20(a).

Paragraph (b) sets out criteria for acquisitions of voting securities of foreign issuers roughly parallel to the exemption of voting securities acquisitions below a minimum dollar amount in § 802.20.

Paragraph (d) is substantially identical to revised § 802.51(a)(1) and thus retains an aggregate sales or assets test for acquisitions involving only foreign persons. The $110 million threshold was adopted to approximate the criteria of section 7A(a)(2), which provide various combinations of total assets or annual net sales requirements, each totaling $110 million. It appears appropriate and consistent with congressional intent not to exempt a transaction involving two foreign persons with a United States presence similar in size to the general criteria of the act for all persons. Note that unlike the section 7A(a)(2) test, the test of § 802.51(d) can be met, e.g., by a foreign acquiring person with United States sales of $60 million and a foreign acquired person with such sales of $50 million.

Like final § 802.50, final § 802.51 uses the term "investment assets" for the first time and deletes the concept of "domicile" found in the revised rules. For the reasons for these changes, see the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 802.50.

Comment 1035 criticized the revised rule for allegedly placing an inappropriate barrier in the path of a foreign company contemplating a U.S. acquisition. The final rules reject this comment and retain a reporting and waiting period requirement in most cases when a foreign person acquires the stock of a U.S. issuer or assets located in the United States. The transfer of such voting securities or assets, even to a foreign person, is considered to be of potential competitive significance. When the transaction is otherwise reportable, there is no doubt of U.S. jurisdiction and the potential antitrust concerns outweigh any considerations of comity.

Comment 1099 argued that a greater nexus to U.S. commerce should be required before acquisitions involving only foreign persons are subject to the act. The comment cited considerations of comity and the greater interest a foreign country may have in the transaction, and suggested that the reporting and waiting period obligations might be reduced in situations when only foreign persons are involved. Comment 1100 also cited comity as a reason not to impose a waiting period on "non-U.S. transactions" or on companies domiciled in countries with a greater interest in the transaction. Although final § 802.51 provides several exemptions for acquisitions involving only foreign persons, the Commission did not choose to broaden these exemptions further. The reason is that the Commission believes acquisitions not exempt under § 802.51 potentially have important anticompetitive impact upon U.S. commerce. The considerations of comity cited in the comments have been taken into account in framing the exemption. Therefore, the suggestion in comment 1099 that the reporting and waiting period obligations be reduced for reportable transactions involving foreign persons was rejected.

Comment 1100 noted that since the $110 million threshold of § 802.51(d) involves aggregating the U.S. sales or assets of both persons in the transaction, an acquisition by a foreign person with no U.S. contacts of a foreign person with $110 million in U.S. sales may be reportable. The comment suggested that a minimum of $10 million in U.S. sales or assets by both foreign persons be required, since it viewed as extremely unlikely the chances that a violation of U.S. law could result if the acquiring person had no U.S. contacts. This suggestion was rejected. The Commission does not view it as unlikely that an antitrust violation can arise when a foreign person with no sales or assets in the United States makes an acquisition of a person with substantial U.S. assets or sales.

Similarly, comment 1116 argued that all transactions involving only foreign persons are unlikely to violate the antitrust laws and urged their exemption. This suggestion was rejected. In the limited circumstances in which such transactions are reportable, there will always be a significant impact on U.S. commerce in terms of assets, sales, or both.

For a discussion of the comments on the differing treatment accorded to foreign firms and U.S. firms, see the Statement of Basis and Purposes to § 802.50.

§ 802.52 ACQUISITIONS BY OR FROM FOREIGN GOVERNMENTAL CORPORATIONS

This rule exempts certain acquisitions of assets or voting securities in which a foreign governmental corporation is a participant. The acquisitions exempted by the rule are those of assets located within a foreign state, or of voting securities of an issuer organized under the laws of a foreign state, if the ultimate parent entity of either the acquiring person or the acquired person is controlled by the foreign state, the government of that state, or an agency thereof.

Since foreign states, foreign governments, and agencies thereof (other than corporations engaged in commerce) are not "entities" as defined in § 801.1(a)(2), they therefore cannot be "persons," nor can they be included within "persons," under § 801.1(a)(1). The act does not apply to acquisitions by or from foreign governments because the act applies only to acquisitions of assets or voting securities by or from persons. See section 7A(a). The act does apply to acquisitions of voting securities of noncontrolled (third-party) issuers from foreign governments, since the foreign state then would not be the acquired person; but for the same reason, in such cases this rule would not apply. This rule thus concerns only acquisitions by corporations engaged in commerce that are ultimately controlled by foreign governments, or acquisitions of the voting securities or assets of such corporations.

An example illustrates the rule.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 802.52

The transactions exempted by this rule are considered to be so directly involved with the acts of foreign states within their own borders as to merit exemption. Since the interests of a sovereign are generally paramount within its own borders, to require a State-controlled corporation to file notification with respect to these transactions might violate principles of international comity. In addition, acquisitions or dispositions by corporations controlled by a foreign government of assets located within the foreign country are in many cases considered acts of State and may be substantively immune from U.S. antitrust law.

This exemption appeared in substantially similar form in revised § 802.52; it did not appear in the original rules. However, the final rule changes three provisions of the revised rule. First, the revised rule would have required the acquiring or acquired person to be a corporation more than half of whose voting securities are held by a foreign state before the exmption applied; the final rule requires the ultimate parent entity of either person to be controlled by a foreign state. The change makes clear that the exemption is equally applicable if the involvement of the governmental corporation is effected through subsidiaries. The change also substitutes control for the "more than half" formulation and refers to persons rather than corporations (as suggested by comment 1072), for consistency with the rest of the rules. Second, the revised rule would have exempted only acquisitions "solely" of assets located within the foreign state or voting securities of a foreign issuer. The final rule deletes the word "solely," so that the exemption applies even if assets or voting securities located outside the foreign state in question, e.g., in the United States, are also being acquired in a transaction. In such a situation only the nonexempt portion of the transaction is reportable. See § 803.2(c)(2). Last, the final rule substitutes the concept of "organized under the laws" of a foreign state for the undefined and potentially ambiguous term "domicile" used in the revised rule. See the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 801.1(e).

Comments 1063 and 1072 recommended that § 802.52(b) should exempt acquisitions of voting securities when the issuer's principal place of business, rather than its place of incorporation, is the foreign state involved. The suggestion was rejected because comity considerations, as well as the potential act of State defense, are strongest in the case of an issuer incorporated in the relevant foreign state.

Comment 1063 argued that if foreign governmental corporations must file notification with the agencies for nonexempt acquisitions, American firms may become handicapped in competing for business transactions involving foreign governmental corporations. Citing comity and the desirability of American firms participating in such transactions, the comment urged that foreign governmental corporations be exempted from filing notification even when the acquisition was not exempt. This recommendation was rejected. Sections 802.50 and 802.51 exempt acquisitions in which the United States lacks a substantial interest in or nexus to the acquisition. This rule exempts acquisitions that might give rise to particularly sensitive issues of comity. When neither rationale applies and the acquisition is not exempt, the interest of the United States in comprehensive evaluation of the acquisition will generally outweigh the foreign state's interest in avoiding the burden of filing notification. Moreover, adopting the suggestion would undercut the distinction made between governments, whether foreign or domestic, which are not subject to the act, and governmental corporations, which in general are subject to the act. See § 801.1(a)(2) and its Statement of Basis and Purpose. Accordingly, all persons, including foreign governmental corporations, must file notification with respect to nonexempt acquisitions.

In the FEDERAL REGISTER notice accompanying the revised rules, the Commission stated that it would consider excluding from the exemption indirect acquisitions of assets located in the United States and indirect acquisitions of voting securities of United States issuers. 42 FR at 39045 (August 1, 1977). The Department of State in its comment (1072) opposed narrowing the exemption, citing the considerations supporting the exemption, and the likelihood that the agencies would learn of any acquisition of interest to them from public sources. In view of this comment, the final rule did not adopt the change proposed in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

SECTION 802.53 CERTAIN FOREIGN BANKING TRANSACTIONS

This rule exempts acquisitions that require the consent or approval of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System ("the Board") under section 25 or section 25(a) of the Federal Reserve Act from the requirements of the act on the same basis as those transactions listed in section 7A(c)(8), which require approval of the Board under section 4 of the Bank Holding Company Act.

The rule applies only to acquisitions by national banks of securities of entities engaged in foreign or international banking, which according to the applicable statutes and Board regulations transact, at most, only minimal business in the United States. This rule, like section 7A(c)(8), requires that copies of all information and documentary material filed with the Board be contemporaneously filed with the antitrust agencies at least 30 days prior to consummation of the acquisition. One of the provisions of § 802.6 is also made applicable to filings under this rule: Instead of filing with the antitrust agencies all documents filed with the Board, the reporting persons may provide an index describing all such material together with a certification that any such information not provided will be provided within 10 calendar days of a request to do so.

Under section 25 of the Federal Reserve Act, 12 U.S.C. 601-604, a national bank may, with the Board's approval, invest directly in the stock of a foreign bank not engaged in any activity in the United States (except activities that, in the judgment of the Board, are incidental to its international or foreign business). Under the same section, a national bank, with the Board's approval, may also make indirect investments in foreign banks by acquiring stock in a U.S. corporation principally engaged in international or foreign banking, either directly or through foreign subsidiaries. Such a corporation, to be eligible for investments by national banks, must enter into an agreement with the Board, under 12 U.S.C. 603, to restrict its operations or conduct its business in such manner or under such limitations as the Board may prescribe. This type of corporation is known as an "agreement" corporation.

A national bank may also, under section 25(a) of the Federal Reserve Act, 12 U.S.C. 611-631 (the "Edge Act"), invest in the stock of a United States or foreign corporation (known as an "Edge Act corporation") chartered with the Board's approval to engage in foreign or international banking or other foreign financial operations. An Edge Act corporation may, with the Board's consent, acquire and hold stock of foreign non-banking companies that do not transact any business in the United States other than activities incidental to their international or foreign business. 12 U.S.C. 615.

All of these types of investments require the consent or approval of the Board and are thus exempted by this rule. The Board, in granting or withholding this consent, is empowered by section 11 of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 21, to enforce section 7 of the Clayton Act as it applies to stock acquisitions by banks, banking associations and trust companies. The Board's policy is to refer to the Assistant Attorney General all applications received pursuant to those provisions that appear to present antitrust issues.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 802.53

This rule had no counterpart in the original or the revised rules. Several comments (e.g., 90, 91; 1071) suggested that a new rule be inserted to exempt these acquisitions. The major reason they are exempted in the final rules is to achieve similarity of treatment with acquisitions subject to the approval of the Board under section 4(c)(13) of the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956, which are exempted under section 7A(c)(8). The standards applicable to those transactions—acquisitions by bank holding companies of shares of companies that do not do business in the United States except as an incident to their foreign business—are substantially the same as those applicable to agreement and Edge Act corporations. In each case, similar restrictions limit the amount of U.S. business that may be conducted by a company in which a national bank has an interest.

Accordingly, in each case the requirement of prior approval by the Board, along with the Board's working relationship with the Assistant Attorney General, should, in conjunction with the requirement that the antitrust agencies receive copies of the material filed with the Board (or indexes of such documents) 30 days in advance of consummation, suffice to identify any potential competitive problems. The final rules thus take the position that it would be inconsistent to require that investments made pursuant to sections 25 or 25(a) of the Federal Reserve Act fully comply with the notification and waiting period requirements, while similar acquisitions made pursuant to section 4(c)(13) of the Bank Holding Company Act have a qualified exemption.

Some of the transactions exempted by this rule may also be exempt from the act by virtue of § 802.50, which, inter alia, exempts certain acquisitions of voting securities of foreign issuers by U.S. persons. But when Edge Act and agreement corporations are U. S. persons, acquisitions of their stock by a national bank will never be exempted by § 802.50.

Several comments (e.g., 90, 91; 1071) recommended that transactions requiring Board approval under either the Bank Holding Company Act or the Federal Reserve Act be completely exempted from all reporting, including the section 7A(c)(8) requirement of contemporaneous filing. They asserted that these types of transactions are not likely to violate the antitrust laws, since the only companies in which an interest may be acquired are those with only incidental activities in the United States. This approach was rejected. The Commission believes that such transactions may present antitrust concerns. The Federal Reserve Board's comment (91) itself noted that three applications for approval have in the past been referred to the Assistant Attorney General for review. The procedure provided in section 7A(c)(8) should be adequate to identify any other such transactions that may pose competitive questions.

SECTION 802.60 ACQUISITIONS BY SECURITIES UNDERWRITERS

This rule exempts acquistions of voting securities if (1) the acquiring person is acting as a securities underwriter, (2) the acquisition is made in the ordinary course of the business of the acquiring person, and (3) the acquisition is made in the process of underwriting. Because securities underwriters that purchase shares from issuers for resale to securities dealers or the investing public become beneficial owners of those securities prior to resale, and because such temporary holdings may exceed the limitations of § 802.64(b)(5), many acquisitions made in the process of an underwriting are subject to the act and, but for this exemption, would be reportable.

For the exemption to apply, the acquiring person must be functioning as in underwriter with respect to the particular voting securities to be acquired.

Background Information to § 802.60

This exemption is appropriate because a securities underwriter purchasing shares under the circumstances stated in the rule typically does not retain those shares for any period of time or use those shares to influence the management of the issuer. As long as all three limiting conditions in the rule are satisfied at the time of acquisition, the acquisition is exempt, regardless of the length of time the shares may subsequently be retained by the underwriter. However, during the time that such shares remain in the hands of the underwriter, they are "held" by the underwriter for purposes of § 801.1(c). Thus if the underwriter acquires any additional shares not in the process of underwriting, it must aggregate the shares to be acquired with any shares that are still held as a result of an acquisition that was exempt under § 802.60, in order to determine whether the subsequent transaction is reportable.

Original § 802.10(a) exempted acquisitions by brokers or dealer in securities if the acquistion was made in the process of underwriting. Revised § 802.62 extended the exemption to any person (not just a broker or dealer) but added the requirements that (1) the person be acting as an underwriter and making the acquisition for its own account, and (2) the acquisition be made in the normal course of business, solely for investment purposes, and in the process of an underwriting. The final rule deletes the separate requirement that the acquisition be made by the underwriter for its own account, since acquisitions by underwriter in the process of underwriting normally satisfy that requirement. Moreover, if an acquisition were made for the account of another person, that person, rather than the underwriter, would hold the securities and would thus be subject to reporting obligations. See § 801.1(c).

Comment 1091 also suggested deleting the requirement that an acquisition by an underwriter be made solely for investment purposes. The comment pointed out that such purchases normally are not made "for investment," as that term is generally understood, but rather for resale. The Commission agreed with the comment's suggestion that if an underwriter is "acting as a securities underwriter" when purchasing voting securities "in the process of underwriting," the additional requirement that the acquisition be solely for the purpose of investment is unnecessary to insure that the underwriter's purchase will not likely be used to influence the management of the issuer. This limiting requirement was therefore deleted from the final rule.

SECTION 802.63 CERTAIN TRANSACTIONS BY CREDITORS AND INSURERS

This rule exempts from the requirements of the act certain types of acquisitions made by creditors and insurers in the ordinary course of business. The rule should be read in conjunction with section 7A(c)(11), which exempts "acquisitions, solely for the purpose of investment, by any bank, banking association, trust company, investment company, or insurance company, of (A) voting securities pursuant to a plan or reorganization or dissolution; or (B) assets in the ordinary course of its business," and section 7A(c)(1), which exempts "acquisitions of goods or realty transferred in the ordinary course of business."

Paragraph (a) of the rule exempts several types of acquisitions by creditors: Acquisitions of collateral or receivables, acquisitions in foreclosure or upon default, acquisitions in connection with the establishment of a lease financing and acquisitions in connection with a bona fide debt work-out. The rule provides that such acquisitions are exempt only "if made by a creditor in a bona fide credit transaction entered into in the ordinary course of the creditor's business." Any transaction made with the primary motivation of extending credit to the debtor, as opposed to a transaction structured as a financing transaction for purpose of evading a reporting requirement, may be considered "bona fide."

Paragraph (b) exempts acquisitions by insurers pursuant to a condition in an insurance contract relating to fidelity, surety or casualty obligations. The rule thus exempts acquisitions commonly made in connection with an insurer's normal insurance business. It does not exempt purchases of voting securities or assets made by insurance companies as investors in securities markets or elsewhere. Those transactions may, however, be exempt unde section 7A(c)(9) and § 802.9, or under § 802.64.

Background Information to § 802.63

This rule exempts certain routine transactions by creditors and insurers in the ordinary course of business. They are typically not undertaken with the intention of influencing the affairs of the acquired person or even necessarily with the intention of making an investment. The acquiring person may not desire to retain the acquired property, such as assets or stock acquired in default or foreclosure situations, and the acquired assets or stock may frequently be disposed of as speedily as possible. Many transactions covered by this rule occur by operation of law, such as acquisitions by insurance companies of insured property upon payment of a claim under a casualty-loss insurance contract. In general, these acquisitions take place in circumstances and for reasons different from those underlying corporate mergers, acquisitions, tender offers, and similar transactions.

These transactions occur with great frequency in the insurance, banking, and finance industries. To interpose the act's notification and waiting period requirements before such acquisitions would severly impede the normal and essential procedures of these industries without achieving any significant gain in antitrust enforcement.

The original rules did not contain any exemption for creditors and insurers. During the first comment period, however, the Commission specifically solicited comments on the proper interpretation of section 7A(c)(11). Statements were requested on the questions of "with what frequency, and under what circumstances, do banks, banking associations, trust companies, investment companies, and insurance companies acquire voting securities pursuant to a plan of reorganization or dissolution, or assets (as distinguished from securities) in the normal course of business," and "to what extent the reporting and waiting requirements of (the act) may impede normal business practices by such companies." 41 FR at 55490 (December 20, 1976). Revised § 802.63 was drafted in response to a large number of comments from the banking and insurance communities explaining the reasons for exempting various common types of transactions in their industries.

For example, with respect to creditors' transactions, comment 90 described several customary bank financing transactions that the comment considered not competitively significant. The comment observed that banks often engage in lease financings, conditional sales transactions, and other arrangements in which they receive a security interest in property of various types, including voting securities. Transfers of property in foreclosure situations, including transfers to banks from their customers, are also common banking transactions. In credit transactions, banks frequently purchase from customers large quantities of accounts receivable, which may well exceed $15 million in value or be more than 15 percent of the customer's assets. The comment argued that these and similar common bank financing transactions have no competitive significance since they do not transfer to banking institutions managerial control over significant competitive assets; indeed, they may increase competition by assisting companies to raise needed capital. The comment suggested a broad exemption of all acquisitions of voting securites or assets "by or from a bank or banking association in the ordinary course of its business."

Comment 97 suggested that acquisitions by financial institutions of voting securities be exempt if they arise from an event stipulated in a loan contract, such as a default. The comment stated that such acquisitions may be involuntary and thus may not be accompanied by an intent to obtain control. Moreover, banks are generally prohibited by law from holding securities for their own interest and must dispose of any they own within a specified time. Comment 102 also urged the exemption of acquisitions of stock or assets upon foreclosure. The Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation in its comment (56) also noted that section 7A(c)(11) appears to exempt relatively temporary acquisitions by banks arising from the liquidation of a defaulted loan.

With respect to transactions by insurers, several comments (e.g., 73, 77, 83, 98, 110) recommended that various types of transactions made in the normal course of the business of insurance be exempted. Specifically, comment 77 urges that acquisitions of securites or assets by an insurer pursuant to its insurance claims or surety operations be exempt. The comment explained that after an insurance company issues a surety bond to quarantee the performance of services by a building contractor, it may acquire some or all of the contractor's assets if the latter defaults. Alternatively, an insurance company often gains title, by operation of law, to the assets of an insured or a third party after it has paid a claim relating to those assets—for example, when a large quantity of stock certificates are lost by an insured brokerage firm and the insurance company pays the loss. If any of the certificates are later found, they become the insurer's property. The comment also noted that insurance companies, like banks and finance companies, frequently acquire the stock or assets of corporations pursuant to bankruptcy reorganizations, foreclosures, and similar proceedings relating to loan defaults, and urged the exemption of such acquisitions. These comments, like the comments relating to creditors' transactions, all noted that in the acquisitions for which an exemption was proposed, the acquiring person has no intention of permanently acquiring any business assets.

Revised § 802.63 thus exempted acquisitions by creditors in bona fide credit transactions entered into in the ordinary course of the creditor's business, of collateral, in foreclosure, or upon default. It also exempted acquisitions by an insurer in the ordinary course of business, pursuant to a suretyship contract, or in the exercise of a right of subrogation.

The final rule represents an expansion of the exemption granted in the revised rule. Several comments on the revised rule suggested that it would not have exempted certain types of credit transactions that generally raise no antitrust concern. First, since the terms "creditor" and "credit transaction" were not defined, several comments (e.g., 1050, 1059, 1062) suggested that it was not clear whether transactions such as lease financings, conditional sales contracts, factoring operations, and other hybrid credit arrangements, which might be interpreted as assets acquisitions, were exempt. In a common type of lease financing, several equity investors contribute part of the cost of the leased equipment to a trustee (the owner trustee). The owner trustee, usually a commercial bank, then borrows the remaining funds from other investors (usually other institutional investors) and purchases the equipment, which is then leased to the actual user. Often, a second trust is established that takes a security interest in the leased property to protect the rights of the equity investors. The comment argued that none of these various "acquisitions" should be subject to the act. Any uncertainty on this point was removed in the final rule, which now specifically exempts transactions in connection with a bona fide lease financing.

Comment 1073 also suggested that the revised rule, which was limited to acquisitions of collateral in foreclosure or upon default, failed to exempt certain functionally similar transactions in which no formal foreclosure or default takes place. The term "collateral," the comment stated, may be limited to the acquisition of a security interest in tangible rather than intangible property, and the use of the words "in a bona fide credit transaction" might be interpreted as not including acquisitions by a creditor made at some time other than the commencement of a credit transaction or not specifically identified with a particular credit transaction. For example, in a bona fide debt work-out, a transaction whereby all or part of a debtor's obligations to one or more creditors are reorganized, the debtor's assets or voting securities, which may not technically be termed collateral, may be conveyed to a creditor. The comment argued that the economic and business realities of such transactions are substantially identical to the foreclosure of a pre-existing security interest and thus should be treated similarly. The final rule adopts this suggestion and exempts acquisitions of receivables in credit transactions and acquisitions in connection with bona fide debt work-outs.

Several comments (e.g., 1031, 1103) also suggested that the exemption in the revised rules for acquisitions by insurers was unclear. These comments pointed out that the revised rule may not have exempted certain acquisitions by insurers arising out of requirements in insurance contracts that technically were considered neither suretyship contracts nor acquisitions pursuant to rights of subrogation. Since the revised rule sought to exempt all acquisitions by insurers in the ordinary course of business occurring pursuant to conditions in contracts of insurance, the final rule exempts acquisitions arising from conditions in fidelity, surety, and casualty contracts.

Several comments (e.g., 1038, 1070, 1073) also maintained that the revised rule did not adequately solve a number of creditor's-rights problems arising from public auction or bankrupcy sales. They stated that application of the statute to such transactions might chill bidding by large companies and hinder such sales generally, since speed is often a critical factor in protecting creditors' interests. They therefore suggested that sales under the supervision of a bankruptcy court be exempt, and, more generally, that sales by creditors and insurers of property obtained pursuant to foreclosure or default be exempt so that creditors can obtain maximum value for foreclosed collateral. These recommendations were rejected. Purchases at bankruptcy sales may pose antitrust concerns, as may subsequent dispositions of property acquired pursuant to a credit relationship. A bankruptcy court has no responsibility to consider antitrust issues relating to dispositions of the debtor's property. Any timing problems resulting from the necessity to observe the waiting period may be mitigated by requests for early termination of the waiting period under sections 7A(b)(2) and 803.11.

The final rule specifically exempts acquisitions of receivables in connection with a bona fide credit transaction. Thus an assignment of accounts receivable, with or without recourse, is exempt. Such transactions are crucial to the operation of consumer sales and credit institutions and, although they may occasionally meet the criteria of section 7A(a) of the act, they do not generally have antitrust implications. But for this rule, such assignments of receivables would not be exempt; although receivables are typically transferred in the ordinary course of business, they are neither goods nor realty. Cf. section 7A(c)(1).

Furthermore, there is an explicit reference in the legislative history of the act to the fact that these acquisitions ought to be exempt. Explaining the differences between the final bill and the original House and Senate versions, Senator Philip Hart stated on the floor of the Senate:

> Section 7A(c)(2) exempts acquisitions of bonds, mortgages, deeds of trusts, or other obligations which are not voting securities and section 7A(c)(1) exempts acquisitions or goods or realty transferred in the ordinary course of business. It is the intention of the managers that these provisions exempt consumer receivables and loans or other obligations, which are not voting securities, which are traditional financing arrangements and which normally are sold to banks or other financing agencies and acquired in the normal course of business.

122 Cong. Rec. S15417 (daily ed., Sept. 8, 1976).

SECTION 802.64 ACQUISITIONS OF VOTING SECURITIES BY CERTAIN INSTITUTIONAL INVESTORS

This rule provides a higher initial reporting threshold than that contained in section 7A(a)(3) of the act for certain voting securities purchases made by institutional investors. The rule does not apply to acquisitions of assets. Paragraph (a) of the rule lists the types of entities, denominated institutional investors, which may be entitled to the rule's special treatment. Paragraph (b) exempts acquisitions of voting securities by institutional investors whenever the conditions set forth in subparagraphs (b)(1) through (b)(5) are satisfied. Paragraph (c) sets forth two exceptions to the exemption—situations when the exemption does not apply even though paragraph (b)'s conditions are met.

Paragraph (a) of the rule contains an exclusive list of fourteen types of entities that can qualify for the rule's special treatment. Subject to the exceptions contained in paragraph (c), paragraph (b) exempts acquisitions of voting securities made by institutional investors as a result of which the acquiring person's holdings either would not exceed 15 percent, or would not exceed $25 million, of the issuer's voting securities, so long as four other conditions are met. First, the acquisition must be made by an entity that is one of the types of institutional investors listed in paragraph (a) of the rule. Second, the acquisition must be made in the ordinatry course of the institutional investor's business. Third, the acquisition must be made "solely for the purpose of investment" as that term is defined in § 801.1(i)(1). Finally, as a result of the acquisition the acquiring person must not control the issuer.

If each of these conditions is met, the rule effectively eliminates the initial statutory reporting threshold of section 7A(a)(3) and § 801.1(h)(1). The rule allows an institutional investor to acquire voting securities without being subject to the requirements of the Act until its holdings exceed both 15 percent and $25 million. The acquisition that would first result in a holding exceeding both 15 percent and $25 million in value is reportable, and the waiting period must be observed. Once this initial reporting threshold is crossed, further acquisitions by institutional investors are treated exactly like those of other acquiring persons. Note that an institutional investor will never have to make a subsequent report upon reaching the 15 percent threshold of § 801.1(h)(2), since that threshold will be surpassed by the exemption provided in this rule. Thus, only the 25 percent threshold of § 801.1(h)(3) and the 50 percent threshold of § 801.1(h)(4) will apply.

In addition, since § 802.64(b)(5) refers to the holdings of the acquiring person, rather than the acquiring institutional investor entity, the rule does not permit each institutional investor within the same person to hold 15 percent and $25 million worth of an issuer's voting securities before reporting. That limitation thus applies to the aggregate holdings of all institutional investor entities included within the same person.

Paragraph (c) contains two limitations to the exemption granted by paragraph (b). These exceptions apply even though all of the conditions in paragraph (b) are satisfied. If either of these limiting conditions exists, the institutional investor's acquisitions are not exempt under paragraph (b), and the normal reporting thresholds of section 7A(a)(3) and § 801.1(h) apply.

The first exception, § 802.64(c)(1), provides that when the voting securities of an institutional investor are being acquired, if the acquiring person includes an institutional investor entity of the same type as the issuer or an entity controlled by the issuer, the exemption does not apply. For this purpose, each of the numbered subparagraphs in paragraph (a) of the rule is a "type." The second limitation, § 802.64(c)(2), withdraws the exemption granted in paragraph (b) whenever any voting securities of the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired are already held by an entity included within the acquiring person that is not also an institutional investor.

Background Information to § 802.64

By providing a higher initial reporting threshold for voting securities purchases by institutional investors, this rule was designed to minimize the act's impact upon these entities' normal operations. The anticompetitive potential of the transactions exempted by the rule is low, and acquisitions by institutional investors that may have competitive significance should be reached by the notification threshold of this rule or by one of the exceptions of paragraph (c).

Paragraph (a) lists the types of entities entitled to the exemption. Acquisitions by any of the types of entities listed in paragraph (a) of the rule are likely to have a relatively insubstantial effect on competition, assuming that the conditions described in paragraph (b) exist and that neither of the exceptions in paragraph (c) apply. Some of these investors, such as nonprofit entities, are constrained by law or by their charters from participating in the management of most business corporations. Pension trusts, insurance companies and others are limited by their fiduciary duty to the ultimate beneficiaries of their investment. Entities such as broker-dealers and investment companies frequently engage in acquisitions that may meet the criteria of the act, but they generally have no interest in affecting the management of the companies whose stock they buy. The rule thus attempts to reduce the disruption of the securities markets that could result from requiring them to report and observe a waiting period before such acquisitions.

The conditions in paragraph (b) are intended to assure that the acquisitions exempted are in fact unlikely to violate the antitrust laws. Subparagraphs (b)(1) and (b)(2) simply state the basic criterion that the acquisition of voting securities must be made in the ordinary course of business by an institutional investor, as defined in paragraph (a). Subparagraph (b)(3), requiring that the purchase be made "solely for the purpose of investment," as defined in § 801.1(i), excludes from the exemption any acquisitions made by institutional investors with the intent of influencing management. The reasoning behind this exemption does not apply to such investments, and therefore they are treated like ordinary acquisitions. Similarly, the exclusion of control acquisitions in subparagraph (b)(4) is necessary, since if an institutional investor gains control, it will invariably participate in the management of the issuer. Subparagraph (b)(5), which states the special size-of-transaction test for such acquisitions, is designed to permit the majority of them to be exempt, while retaining the act's coverage for the very largest ones, which may, because of their size, have anticompetitive consequences.

The limitations contained in paragraph (c) are designed to impose the act's usual reporting and waiting period requirements on acquisitions that seem to pose a greater potential for anticompetitive impact even though the criteria of paragraph (b) are satisfied. Acquisitions described by subparagraph (c)(1) may indicate increasing concentration in an area of commerce related to the business of the type of institutional investor acquired. And the limitation of subparagraph (c)(2), which withdraws the exemption whenever any voting securities of the issuer are held by an entity included within the acquiring person that is not also an institutional investor, is present because the existence of such holdings calls into question the investment intent of the acquiring person. In each case, the special treatment for institutional investors afforded by the rule is not extended.

The original rules did not address acquisitions by institutional investors. Instead, the FEDERAL REGISTER notice accompanying their publication contained a "Statement With Respect to Certain Financial Transactions and Institutions" that specifically solicited comments on the treatment to be accorded normal business transactions by institutional investors (41 FR at 55490 (Dec. 20, 1976)). The revised rule resulted from these comments.

The list in paragraph (a) of the 14 types of entities that can qualify for the rule's special treatment is generally similar to the list in the revised rule, with certain changes. Mutual funds were deleted as superfluous in light of the inclusion of registered investment companies in (a)(6). The general inclusion of trusts was replaced by a narrower reference to qualified employee pension or other benefit trusts in (a)(10), because there are many types of trusts that may hold or acquire voting securities for purposes other than investment, to which the exemption would not be appropriate.

Added to the list of qualifying institutional investors were the following: Savings banks, (a)(2); building and loan companies, (a)(3); regulated small business and minority small business investment companies, (a)(9); bank holding companies, (a)(11); subsidiaries of institutional investors that perform functions that the institutional investors would ordinarily perform themselves, (a)(12); and holding companies that essentially own only other institutional investors, (a)(13). These entities were added in response to numerous comments, because they have similar characteristics to the other types of entities entitled to the exemption.

Comment 1070 suggested that real estate investment trusts (REIT's) be added. Since the holdings of REIT's will typically be either real estate or stock in realty holding companies, which may be exempt under § 802.1(a) when purchased, institutional investor status is not necessary to exempt their acquisitions. Furthermore, to the extent that REIT's may make short-term investments in other types of voting securities, the exemption in section 7A(c)(9) may often apply.

Comment 1090 also suggested partnerships holding voting securities for investment, investment advisers, and insurance company separate accounts as candidates for institutional investor status. The specific inclusion of insurance company separate accounts is unnecessary because subparagraph (a)(5) defines insurance companies as institutional investors, and because under § 801.1(c)(7) insurance companies hold all voting securities in their separate accounts. Thus, insurance company special accounts are in effect covered by the exemption given the insurance company. Partnerships holding voting securities for investment and investment advisers were rejected because no adequate reasons for affording institutional investor status to such entities were advanced, and because the safeguards characterizing the entities listed in § 802.64(a) do not appear to be present. These two types of entities, of course, may avail themselves of the exemption afforded by section 7A(c)(9) when appropriate.

Comment 1100 proposed that foreign entities of the types listed in paragraph (a) should be expressly included as institutional investors for purposes of the rule. This suggestion was not adopted. In certain cases, according foreign entities this treatment would be inappropriate; for example, foreign banks are not covered by the Glass-Steagall Act, 12 U.S.C. 24, and are therefore not prohibited from investing in common stock for their own account. Although it is possible that certain types of foreign entities will qualify as institutional investors under this rule's provisions, the comment did not supply adequate justification for a general provision on this point.

The final version of paragraph (b) is unchanged in substance from revised § 802.64. The final version of subparagraph (c)(1), however, is somewhat less restrictive than that contained in the revised rule. The revised rule would have withdrawn the exemption whenever voting securities of any type of institutional investor were to be acquired by an institutional investor. This change was made so that the rule would be less disruptive of normal capital markets. The final rule modifies revised § 802.64(c)(2), which would have withheld the exemption if the acquiring institutional investor was controlled by an entity that was not an institutional investor. The Commission considered that the revised rule's limitation was potentially too restrictive of normal investment operations of institutional investors, which are commonly controlled by other types of entities. The Commission will, for the time being, rely upon the conditions set forth in paragraph (b) of the rule in order to prevent evasion of the act's normal reporting requirements by entities controlling institutional investors.

CHOICE OF ALTERNATIVE PROPOSED RULES

The revised rules contained two alternative reporting schemes for institutional investors, §§ 802.64 and 802.64a. Revised § 802.64 was essentially similar to the final rule. Section 802. 64a would have required an annual report of acquisitions qualifying under the rule during the preceding year, but no waiting period. The FEDERAL REGISTER notice accompanying the rules invited comments as to which approach should be adopted. 42 FR at 39046 (August 1, 1977).

Neither exemption scheme is compelled by the statute. On the contrary, section 7A(c)(9) indicates an apparent congressional intent to subject institutional investors to the preacquisition reporting and waiting period requirements of the act. Thus, the Commission has adopted revised § 802.64 and has rejected the postacquisition reporting approach of revised § 802.64a. Similarly rejected were those comments (e.g., 1020, 1043, 1050, 1054, 1067, 1083, 1089, 1110, 1111) that either expressly or by implication proposed eliminating all reporting and waiting requirements when the conditions of subparagraphs (b) (1)-(4) were satisfied.

The adoption of the preacquisition reporting scheme with its higher initial reporting threshold is also based upon the Commission's belief that the section 7A(c)(9) exemption may not in fact be sufficient for the ordinary operations of institutional investors. The holdings of institutional investors in particular issuers may frequently exceed 10 percent and $15 million, thus making reportable numerous acquisitions that merit exemption because of the restrictions of paragraph (b). However, the Commission believes that on those presumably rare occasions when an institutional investor's holdings exceed both 15 percent and $25 million the potential for anticompetitive consequences is sufficiently great to warrant obtaining a preacquisition report and imposing a waiting period. Except in instances in which control of an issuer would change hands (when subparagraph (b)(4) would preclude the exemption), the adoption of § 802.64a would have deprived the agencies of a primary enforcement tool encouraged by the act—the preliminary injunction. The fact that antitrust problems can arise well before holdings reach the 50-percent (control) level reinforced the selection of § 802.64 over § 802.64a.

The comments that expressed a preference between the two approaches contained in the revised rules were divided. Numerous reasons were given for selecting one option or the other. Nearly all the comments, regardless of which rule they preferred, however, were concerned with the reporting burden and interference with normal investment operations. The Commission believes that the changes between the revised and final rule versions of § 802.64, together with the significant amendment of the definition of "hold," see § 801.1(c), will greatly reduce the impact of the act upon institutional investors in both of these areas of concern.

SECTION 802.70 ACQUISITION SUBJECT TO ORDER

This rule exempts two common types of acquisitions from the requirements of the act. Paragraph (a) exempts acquisitions of assets and voting securities from parties subject to divestiture orders issued by the Commission or, at the instigation of the Commission or the Department of Justice, by a Federal court. Paragraph (b) exempts any acquisition in which the acquiring party is subject to an order of the Commission or a Federal court that requires Commission, Justice Department, or judicial approval of the acquisition, and for which approval has been obtained.

Background Information to § 802.70

Because the information normally obtained by the courts, the Commission, or the Department of Justice in these divestiture situations will be much the same as that required by the Notification and Report form, the Commission determined that the imposition of the act's requirements was unnecessary. These groups of acquisitions are by their nature already subject to careful antitrust scrutiny by the agencies.

Comment 1026 suggested that the rule also should exempt acquisitions expressly permitted by the terms of Commission or Federal court orders. The Commission is unaware of any order that, by its terms, permits the acquisition of specifically identified assets or voting securities, and no example was cited.

A number of comments (e.g., 1026, 1027, 1042, 1053, 1059, 1063, 1076, 1077, 1100) requested reinstatement of the business review/advisory opinion exemptions that appeared in § 802.05 (c) and (d) of the original rules and were deleted from the revised rules. The deleted exemptions would have exempted acquisitions approved by the Commission under its advisory opinion procedure, 16 CFR 1.1, or by the Antitrust Division under its business review procedure, 28 CFR 50.6. These exemptions have not been restored in the final rules. As the Federal Register notice accompanying publication of the revised rules explained:

> [S]ince the statute envisions that either the Commission or the Antitrust Division may investigate or seek to enjoin a projected acquisition, both agencies must receive completed Notification and Report Forms from the parties to the transaction. Even if one agency or the other were able to determine ahead of time that it would not investigate or challenge a particular transaction, the Commission feels that the other agency should be able to obtain sufficient information to permit its own informed judgment on the possible anticompetitive consequences of that transaction.

(42 FR at 39045 (Aug. 1, 1977).)

Furthermore, the Commission has never felt itself legally bound by business review letters issued by the Antitrust Division. Similarly, the Antitrust Division has not believed that its ability to challenge an acquisition was restricted by a Commission advisory opinion. Moreover, the exemptions would be philosophically at odds with section 7A(b)(2) of the act, in which Congress required the agreement of both agencies in order to grant early termination of a waiting period.

A statement of enforcement intent at the end of the waiting period was suggested in comment 1077 as an alternative to the business review/advisory opinion exemption. Such a proposal would transform the act from a premerger notification program to a premerger clearance system. The Commission does not plan to effect such a metamorphosis since it is clear from section 7A(i)(1) of the act that Congress permitted both the Commission and the Antitrust Division to be free to proceed against any acquisition even though no action was taken within the waiting period.

SECTION 802.71 ACQUISITIONS BY GIFT, SUCCESSION OR DEVISE, OR BY IRREVOCABLE TRUST

This rule exempts acquisitions resulting from gifts, intestate succession, testamentary dispositions, and transfers into irrevocable trusts by settlors. Acquisitions by trusts from persons other than settlors are not exempted by the rule. For such acquisitions the trust is the acquiring person, and the tests of section 7A(a) determine whether the act applies. See § 801.1(c)(3).

Note that transfers by a settlor into a revocable trust, or into any trust in which a settlor retains a reversionary interest, also are not exempted by the rule. However, such transfers are not reportable because the rules disregard the transfer. Under § 801.1(c)(4), the settlor continues to hold the assets or voting securities constituting the corpus of such trusts.

Background Information to § 802.71

The acquisitions exempted by the rule are typically involuntary and without consideration. The Commission believes that the likelihood of an antitrust violation resulting from such an acquisition is significantly less than from cases in which an acquiring person actively seeks to purchase assets or voting securities.

In response to comments 1071 and 1089, the rule exempts transfers into inter vivos trusts.

Part 803 of the Rules

SECTION 803.1 NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM

Paragraph (a) of this rule provides that the notification required by the act shall be the notification and report form, which is an appendix to Part 803 of the rules. All persons required by the act and the rules to file notification are directed to comply by completing and filing the notification and report form (or a photostatic or other equivalent reproduction of the form) in accordance with the instructions on the form and those contained in the rules. This portion of the rule also explains where copies of the form may be obtained, either in person or by mail. Paragraph (b) of the rule states that any person filing notification may, in addition to the submissions required by the rule, submit any other information or documentary material that it believes will be helpful to the enforcement agencies in assessing the impact of the acquisition upon competition. If the parties attempt to anticipate the analysis of the enforcement agencies or believe the information in the form provides and incomplete picture, they may wish to augment their submissions in an effort to clarify or expand upon any required information or to demonstrate that the transaction would not violate the antitrust laws if consummated.

Background Information to § 803.1

Section 7A(d)(1) directs the Commission by rule to "require that the notification required (by the act) be in such form and contain such documentary material and information relevant to a proposed acquisition as is necessary and appropriate to enable the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General to determine whether such acquisitions may, if consummated, violate the antitrust laws * * *." The Commission finds that complete responses to each of the items on the notification and report form, along with copies of the documentary materials required to be submitted with the form, are necessary and appropriate to enable the Commission and the Assistant Attorney General to discharge their responsibilities under the act.

Paragraph (a) of the final rule appears essentially as it did in original § 803.05(a) and revised § 803.1(a). Original § 802.50 contained a reference to a short form, which was to have been filed when acquiring persons made additional acquisitions of assets or voting securities of the same acquired person after filing a notification and report form. Since the short form reporting mechanism was eliminated from the revised and final rules, the reference to it was deleted. See the statement of basis and purpose to § 802.21.

Paragraph (b) was added in the final rules. Its purpose is to encourage persons filing notification to provide any other information or materials that may be helpful to the enforcement agencies in assessing the impact of a reportable transaction upon competition.

The revised rule contained two paragraphs (§ 803.1 (b) and (c)) that referred the the Commission's existing reporting programs relating to certain acquisitions in the grocery and dairy industries. These programs require submission of special reports 60 days in advance of consummation of transactions to which they apply. The purpose of these paragraphs was to coordinate the timing requirements for persons required to file both under the act and rules and under either the grocery or the dairy acquisitions reporting program.

These provisions were eliminated from the final rule. The Commission has determined that it can accomplish the same purpose by altering the reporting obligations contained in its grocery and dairy acquisitions reporting programs. Because those programs were promulgated under the Federal Trade Commission Act, the anticipated changes do not appear in these rules but will appear in amended orders to be issued under the FTC Act.

When those orders are amended, persons required to file notification under the act which are to acquire voting securities or assets of a person engaged (in whole or in part) in wholesale or retail grocery distribution (SIC Groups 514 and 541, respectively) will, in addition to the notification required by § 803.1(a), simultaneously file FTC Forms 1859 A and B with Supplement, completed in accordance with the instructions contained on those forms and in the Commission's amended order. Persons required to file notification under the act which are to acquire voting securities or assets of a person engaged (in whole or in part) in the processing or distribution of Class I milk products (SIC product classes 20262 and 20264) will, in addition to the notification required by § 803.1(a), simultaneously file FTC Special Report on Acquisitions and Mergers by Corporations in the Fluid Milk Products Industry, completed in accordance with the instructions thereon and the Commission's amended order.

Because the requirement to file either the grocery or the dairy reporting forms does not stem from these rules, but from separate orders under the FTC Act, that requirement does not constitute a request for additional information within the meaning of section 7A(e) or § 803.20. As in the past, the special grocery and dairy reports will be filed only with the Commission.

SECTION 803.2 INSTRUCTIONS FOR NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM

Section 803.2 prescribes instructions for completing the Notification and Report Form. Some of its provisions are not contained within the form itself, and reference to § 803.2 is essential if the Form is to be completed correctly.

Paragraph (a) of the rule designates which entities or natural persons may file notification on behalf of the "person" to which the language of the act refers. Paragraphs (b) and (c) prescribe limited or separate responses for certain items on the Notification and Report Form under certain circumstances. Paragraph (d) defines the term "dollar revenues" that appears throughout the form.

SECTION 803.2(a)

Paragraph (a) of the rule specifies which entities may file notification on behalf of a "person" to which the act and rules apply. The first clause supplies the general rule: That the ultimate parent entity included within the person filing notification is responsible for filing the Notification and Report Form. Although paragraph (a) permits the ulimate parent entity to authorize another entity included within the same person to file the form on its behalf, the responsibility for fully complying with the act and rules nevertheless remains with the ultimate parent entity. The authorization need not be formalized; all that is necessary is that the entity actually filing the form submit a form complying with the act and rules.

A natural person who is the ultimate parent entity of a person required to file notification must do so just like any other ultimate parent entity. Notification may be filed on behalf of a natural person by a "legal representative." The term "legal representative" contemplates an attorney in fact, a legal guardian or custodian, or any other equivalent person. Of course, natural persons who control other entities may also authorize other entities included within the "person" to file on their behalf.

The proviso at the end of the paragraph directs that, notwithstanding other provisions in the rules, a natural person, spouse and minor children shall file only one Notification and Report Form reflecting the holdings of all of them. The example to the paragraph illustrates the proviso.

Section 803.4 also addresses the filing of the form, and contains a special procedure for certain circumstances when foreign persons refuse to file notification.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 803.2(a)

The general rule stated by paragraph (a), that the responsibility for filing the Notification and Report Form lies with the ultimate parent entity included within the person, is appropriate because the ultimate parent entity "controls" every other entity included within the person. See § 801.1(a)(1). The ultimate parent entity therefore can direct the actions of the other entities included within the person. Permitting the ultimate parent entity to delegate the task of filing the form reflects the fact that in some instances the ultimate parent entity may not be in the best position to gather the data necessary to complete the form.

The rule specifies that the preacquisition ultimate parent entity is to file notification in order to forestall any confusion if the ultimate parent entity of one or more of the reporting persons is to change as a result of the acquisition.

The provision permitting a legal representative of a natural person to file notification on behalf of a natural person simply attempts to ease the mechanics of compliance in such cases. The provision regarding the spouse and minor children of a person is necessary because the definition of "hold" in § 801.1(c)(2) attributes the holdings of a natural person, spouse and minor children to each other. In effect, each is viewed as holding the combined holdings of the group. Section 801.2, therefore, would designate each member of the group as an acquiring or acquired person if any of them is. Since multiple forms reflecting the same holdings are unnecessary, the rule provides that only one form should be filed.

No equivalent to § 803.2(a) appeared in the original rules. The final rule reflects only minor changes from revised § 803.2(a).

The revised rule provided that if a person had two ultimate parent entities, both would be required to file. This situation could have arisen only when an entity controlled by two persons, such as a corporation with two 50 percent shareholders or a two-person partnership, was party to a reportable acquisition. This provision was deleted because the final rules now treat such an entity as being part of two persons, rather than as one person with two ultimate parent entities. See the example to § 801.2(a). Under the final rules, each ultimate parent entity is required to file notification as part of a "person" comprising itself, the entity of which control is shared, and any other entities it may control (but not the other ultimate parent entity with which it shares control).

The proviso in the revised rule stated that either the natural person(s) or the trustee(s) could file the form in such cases. This provision was deleted since § 801.1(c)(3), part of the definition of "hold," provides that a trust generally "holds" securities which it acquires. Therefore, the trust, rather than its beneficiaries or its trustee(s), is the entity (and "person") to which the act applies.

SECTION 803.2 (b)

Paragraphs (b) and (c) of the rule instruct persons completing the Notification and Report Form that for certain acquisitions the acquiring or acquired persons must submit limited or separate responses to certain items on the form. The items on the form to which the paragraphs apply include those requiring the submission of revenue, geographic and other data. If the form is not completed in accordance with this rule, the enforcement agencies may be unable to determine whether the transaction may violate the antitrust laws, and may reject the form as improperly filed under § 803.10(c)(2) or may request additional information under section 7A(e) and § 803.20.

Clause (b)(1)(i) specifies that, in responding to items 5-9 and the appendix, acquiring persons must provide data with respect to all their activities.

Clause (b)(1)(ii) provides that in an acquisition of assets, the acquired person must respond only with respect to the assets to be acquired. If the assets to be acquired represent the entire acquired person, then the acquired person's response will be the same as it would have been without the instruction; but if the assets to be acquired represent only part of the acquired person, then that person must restrict its responses to the assets to be acquired.

Clause (b)(1)(iii) is analogous to clause (b)(1)(ii) for acquisitions of voting securities. For example, if only one subsidiary of the acquired person is being acquired, then the acquired person should report on the activities of only that subsidiary (and any entities controlled by that subsidiary).

Clause (b)(1)(iv) specifies that persons that are both acquiring and acquired persons must respond separately in the manner that paragraph (b) directs, if such responses will be different. This situation will occur, for example, when less than all of the assets, or voting securities of a subsidiary, of the acquired person is to be acquired, and the acquired person is to receive stock or assets of the acquiring person in return. The acquired person will thus become an acquiring person as well; see § 801.2(c). In such cases the reporting person will submit data first as an acquiring person with respect to all its activities, and separately as an acquired person with respect only to the assets or voting securities to be acquired. Separate reponses to the items, clearly labeled, are sufficient, rather than two entire Notification and Report Forms.

Items 7-9 of the form require the person filing notification first to decide whether it and other reporting persons derive revenues in one or more of the same four-digit SIC code industries. Section 803.2(b)(1) dectates that in an asset acquisition, for example, the acquired person for purposes of items 7-9 should regard itself as deriving only the dollar revenues attributable to the assets to be acquired. Subparagraph (b)(2) of the rule requires the acquiring person, in the course of completing items 7-9, to compare its dollar revenues to only those same dollar revenues—that is, those attributable to the assets to be acquired. Subparagraph (b)(2) does this by directing the acquiring person, for purposes of the comparisons in items 7-9, to regard the acquired person in the manner specified by clauses (b)(1)(ii) and (b)(1)(iii) of the previous subparagraph.

Note that subparagraph (b)(1) also applies to items 7-9. Therefore, the acquired person, if it is also an acquiring person, must under clause (b)(1)(iv) answer items 7-9 separately in its capacity as an acquiring person (i.e., with respect to all its activities) as well as with respect to the assets or voting securities to be acquired, if the responses would be different.

An example illustrates paragraph (b).

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 803.2 (b)

The responses to items 5-9 of the Notification and Report Form will provide much of the data that the agencies will use to gauge the competitive impact of the acquisition. Paragraph (b), by specifying limited or separate responses, insures that the data supplied will enable the agencies to perform their initial review with reference to the specific impact of the acquisition. Thus, clause (b)(1)(i) specifies that acquiring persons must provide data on all their activities, because all their activities will be under common control with the stock or assets to be acquired. The proposal in comment 1027, which suggested that the acquiring person should disclose only activities matching or related to activities of the acquired person, was rejected. This approach is inappropriate since the purpose of the act is to permit the agencies to do their own analysis, rather than rely on the parties for that purpose.

Clauses (b)(1)(ii) and (b)(1)(iii), restricting the data submitted by the acquired person to the assets or voting securities to be acquired, are essential to a meaningful evaluation of partial acquisitions. Without the instruction, the data relevant to the assets or voting securites to be acquired would be mingled with the data reflecting assets or subsidiaries of the acquired person not being acquired. Comment 1115 complained that this requirement may be a hardship if the information is maintained by the filing person on a consolidated basis. The Commission believes that regardless of any hardship, the information is indispensable, and therefore meets the statutory standard of section 7A(d)(1) as "necessary and appropriate" to determine whether the acquisition may violate the antitrust laws. In addition, the data will in many cases have been segregated by the parties in the course of negotiating or analyzing the acquisition.

For the same reasons that other acquiring persons must disclose all their activities acquired persons that are also acquiring persons likewise must do so. Such persons report separately in each capacity because of the different focus of the antitrust analysis in each instance: In one case, the acquiring person's acquisition of the acquired person's assets or subsidiary, and in the other, the acquired person's holdings of the acquiring person's stock. Clause (b)(1)(iv) accomplishes this result.

Comment 1059 suggested language to clarify that the acquired person must meet the criterion of section 7A(a)(3)—i.e., must satisfy the 15 percent-or-$15 million size-of-transaction test—independently as an acquiring person, before the more burdensome responses as an acquiring person must be provided. The comment cited the example of a $20 million asset sold principally for cash. The comment suggested that inclusion of a minor noncash asset, or a small amount of voting securities, should not trigger the acquired person's responsibility to file as an acquiring person. The final rules reach this result by means of § 801.2(e), which provides that in such cases the acquisition of the stock or assets of the acquiring person is separately subject to the act, i.e., is not subject to the act and rules unless separately satisfying the criteria of section 7A(a), and § 801.21, which provides that cash is not an asset when acquired. See the Statements of Basis and Purpose to §§ 801.2(e) and 802.21.

Subparagraph (b)(1) (the four clauses just discussed) appeared in the original rules as the "Special Instruction" on page 2 of the Notification and Report Form and attracted virtually no comment. Its content was thought more appropriately embodied as a rule, and it appeared in the revised rules as § 803.2(b). Final § 803.2(b)(1) retains revised § 803.2(b) with only stylistic changes.

Subparagraph (b)(2) was added to the final rule to cure the omission noted by comment 1070. Responses to items on the form that require comparisons between the activities of the acquiring and acquired persons will yield responses meaningful to the agencies' review only of the acquiring person compares its activities to the specific assets or voting securities about which the acquired person reports.

SECTION 803.2(c)

Paragraph (c) provides two additional instructions for completing items 5, 7, 8, 9, and the appendix to the form.

Subparagraph (c)(1) provides that information shall be supplied only with respect to operations conducted within the United States. See § 801.1(k).

Subparagraph (c)(2) provides that data need not be supplied with respect to assets or voting securities to be acquired, the acquisition of which is exempt from the reporting and waiting-period requirements of the act under any provision of the act or rules.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 803.2(c)

Subparagraph (c)(1) is necessary to assure that the responses are as nearly as possible comparable to the data published by the U.S. Bureau of the Census in its Economic Censuses. It appeared on the instruction page of the Notification and Report Form in the original rules (and still appears there) and was added to § 803.2(c) of the revised rules. The final rules retain the provision unchanged save for adjusting the item numbers on the form.

The only comment to address the provision (1053) suggested that a dollar revenue threshold of $1 million in an SIC category should be satisfied before data must be supplied concerning that SIC category. The suggestion was rejected for the reasons stated in the Statement of Basis and Purpose to the various parts of item 5 of the form.

Subparagraph (c)(2) confirms that exempt acquisitions are totally exempt from the requirements of the act and are not subject to disclosure on the form even if acquired along with nonexempt assets or voting securities. The provision attracted no comments and was retained in the final rules without change.

SECTION 803.2(d)

Paragraph (d) of the rule defines the term "dollar revenues," which appears throughout the Notification and Report Form. The term identifies which goods and services are to be taken into account for purposes of the form and how they are to be valued. It occurs in two principal contexts on the form. First, item 5 requires persons filing notification to disclose the dollar revenues derived in various SIC-based categories. Second, responses to items 7-9 are conditioned upon more than one reporting person's deriving dollar revenues in the same industry.

For manufacturing operations, dollar revenues are value of shipments; for nonmanufacturing operations, dollar revenues are other appropriate measures of receipts, including, for example, insurance premiums and sales commissions. The definition specifies the treatment of returns, allowances, and the like. Dollar revenues include interplant transfers.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 803.2(d)

The definition was devised in order to permit comparison between the data supplied in item 5 on the form and the data compiled by the U.S. Bureau of the Census in its economic censuses. The Census Bureau denominates its figures "value of shipments" for manufacturing operations, and "value of sales" for nonmanufacturing operations. The term "dollar revenues" was selected because "value of shipments" and "value of sales" are essentially equivalent, and "dollar revenues" embraces both census terms.

The definition of "dollar revenues" in the original rules appeared on page 1 of the Notification and Report Form. It was transferred into § 803.2(d) of the revised rules along with other instructions to the Notification and Report Form; as part of a consolidation of most of the substantive instructions into the rules. The revised definition contained only stylistic changes, except that the last sentence of the original definition, requiring an explanation of the dollar revenues in certain two-digit SIC major groups, was transferred into items 5(a) and 5(c). The final definition is identical to the revised definition.

The only aspect of the definition which attracted comment was the inclusion of interplant transfers. Several comments (15, 26, 74; 1102) questioned this provision, suggested that it was burdensome, or requested its deletion Interplant transfers were retained because their inclusion is essential if the data on the form are to be comparable to the census of manufactures. One comment (74) was incorrect in asserting that the census figures do not include interplant transfers; see, e.g., 1 U.S. Bureau of Census, Census of Manufactures, 1972, XXIX.

SECTION 803.3 STATEMENT OF REASONS FOR NONCOMPLIANCE

Section 803.3 requires that a complete response must be supplied to each item on the Notification and Report Form, and to any request for additional information under section 7A(e) and § 803.20. Whenever a person filing notification is unable to supply a complete response to any item on the form, any part of an item or any portion of a request for additional information, the person must submit a statement of reasons for noncompliance. Such a statement must indicate why the person is unable to supply a complete response; what information is required for a complete response; who, if anyone, has the required information; and what efforts were made to obtain that information. A separate statement must be provided for each item, part of an item, or portion of a request that is not fully answered.

Under section 7A(b)(1)(A), the waiting period begins when the reporting persons submit completed notification and report forms, or, if any responses are not complete, the forms to the extent completed together with statements of the reasons for such noncompliance. Section 7A(e)(2) contains a similar provision with respect to requests for additional information. Section 7A(g)(2) states that if a person fails substantially to comply with either of these requirements, a U.S. district court may order compliance and (with one exception) is required to extend the waiting period until there has been substantial compliance. The only exception is that when the issuer in a tender offer has failed substantially to comply, the court may order compliance but may not extend the waiting period. See section 7A(g)(2).

A complete response, within the meaning of the act and rules, is one that supplies all requested information. Anything less than a complete response potentially is not substantial compliance. The rule does not define substantial compliance, and the agencies contemplate resolving whether a person has substantially complied on a case-by-case basis. The provisions of § 803.3 are designed to focus on the information necessary to determine whether the filing person actually cannot supply the required information or documents, or whether the failure is based on a mere unwillingness to comply or misunderstanding of what is required by a particular item.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 803.3

The legislative history supports the focus of the rule. Senator Hart indicated:

> The submission of (the statement of reasons for noncompliance) is clearly not a substitute for compliance with the notification obligation. The explanation will, however, serve two salutary purposes. First, it will tend to reduce the disagreement between the agencies and the persons subject to the Act since the antitrust authorities will be informed of the reasons underlying noncompliance. Second, the explanation will be useful in any civil penalty proceeding that may be brought under subsection (g)(1).

122 Cong. Rec. S15417 (daily ed. Sept. 8, 1976).

By specifying in advance the type of information that must be included in the statement, the rules attempt to minimize such "disagreement between the agencies and the persons subject to the act." In most cases, a controversy over the adequacy of a response to an item on the form or a request for additional information should be resolvable by reference to the statement of reasons for noncompliance. Vague, uninformative reasons for noncompliance could necessitate requests for additional information or documentary material pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20, or an action in district court under section 7A(g)(2).

The original rule would have required a somewhat more detailed statement of reasons for noncompliance. Original § 803.25(b) required that whenever "less than a complete response has been supplied," the filing person must indicate what additional work would be required to furnish the complete response; and whether a complete response was being prepared, and if so, when it would be submitted. See original § 803.25(b) (4), (5).

The original rule was refined and amended. Revised § 803.3 made clear that statements of reasons for noncompliance must indicate why the filing person cannot submit, rather than merely has not submitted, a complete response to any item on the form. The revised rule also specified that the rule applies to requests for additional information. The final rule added the requirement that a statement of reasons for noncompliance must describe all efforts made to obtain the required information from another person that has it.

These revisions were made, in part, to emphasize that the situations in which a person will be deemed "unable" to supply a complete response will be construed narrowly. A complete response cannot be supplied, for instance, if necessary information is in the hands of a person that refuses to make it available to the filing person. That it will be costly or burdensome to obtain requested information will not necessarily excuse a failure to comply substantially; nor does the fact that another person has the requested information, standing alone, excuse a filing person from seeking and submitting the information. The acceptability of reasons for noncompliance will be determined on a case-by-case basis.

Several comments (103, 115; 1108) disputed the Commission's basic authority to promulgate a rule specifying what should be included in the statement of reasons for noncompliance. However, section 7A(d) clearly gives the Commission such power.

Other comments suggested that the rule was too inflexible (1076) or misleading (1059) because the statute requires substantial rather than absolute compliance. These comments were rejected. The information necessary to complete the form is the type that a filing person normally can provide from its records, and complete compliance is necessary for the agencies to perform the review envisioned by the act. Thus, it is the Commission's position that anything less than complete compliance potentially is not substantial compliance. Another comment (1086) suggested that persons should be permitted to decide which items on the form are relevant or irrelevant to the acquisition and to answer only those items they deem relevant at the risk of a request for additional information. This approach is inappropriate; all items on the form were designed to evoke the information most relevant to an antitrust analysis. Therefore, an incomplete response to any item on the form diminishes the ability of the enforcement agencies to make a well-informed evaluation of the acquisition. A decision on the part of a filing person that an item is irrelevant does not relieve that person of the obligation to provide a complete response to the item.

SECTION 803.4 FOREIGN PERSONS REFUSING TO FILE NOTIFICATION

In certain situations in which a foreign acquired person refuses to file the notification required by the act and the rules, this rule permits any other party to the transaction to file notification on behalf of the foreign person. This provision is set forth in paragraph (a) of the rule; paragraphs (b), (c), and (d) establish the procedural framework for this special type of notification. The term "foreign person" is defined in § 801.1(e)(2)(i).

Under paragraph (a), the rule applies only to transactions to which § 801.30 does not apply—that is, to consensual two-party acquisitions. In addition, the rule applies only if the foreign person is an acquired person. Finally, the rule applies only if no assets located in the United States (other than investment assets) and no voting securities of United States issuers are to be acquired. If any assets located in the United States or voting securities of United States issuers are to be acquired indirectly—that is, because they are held by the issuer to be acquired—the rule is inapplicable. The term "investment assets" is defined in § 801.1(i)(2). The rule thus applies principally to acquisitions by United States persons that fail to gain exemption under § 802.50.

Paragraph (b) requires that the person filing on behalf of the foreign person must state in the affidavit required under § 803.5(b) that the foreign person has refused to file notification, and must explain all efforts it has made to obtain that person's compliance. Paragraph (c) provides that the substitute filing must contain all information and documentary material required of the foreign person that is reasonably available to the person actually filing. For example, information located abroad in the possession of the foreign person that the person refuses to disclose may not be reasonably available. If some information or documentary material is not available, the person filing on behalf of the foreign person must so indicate, but need not supply a formal statement of reasons for noncompliance as provided in § 803.3.

According to paragraph (d), however, even when this substitute filing procedure is used, the foreign person remains the "person filing notification" for the purposes of the Act and the rules. Therefore, the foreign person still may be issued a request for additional information under section 7A(e) and § 803.20, and the waiting period will be extended until twenty days after that person has responded. Section 803.4 does not permit substitute responses to a request for additional information under section 7A(e) and § 803.20. If a foreign acquired person refuses to respond to a second request, it is possible that the waiting period will continue indefinitely. (Note, however, that despite the pendency of a second request, the agencies retain the power to terminate the waiting period sua sponte pursuant to § 803.11(c). See the example to § 803.20(c).)

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 803.4

The purpose of this rule is to permit the consummation of certain consensual two-party transactions when a foreign acquired person refuses to file notification. Under the limited circumstances described in the rule, another party to the acquisition may file on behalf of the foreign person so that the waiting period can begin, as section 7A(b)(1) requires, upon receipt of notification from both the acquiring and acquired persons. (The problem does not arise for transactions covered by § 801.30, because that rule conditions the start of the waiting period on receipt of only the acquiring person's completed Form.)

If either agency requires additional information or finds that some information not supplied on the form is needed for its analysis, a foreign person will not be able to thwart the agency's investigation by refusing to respond to a request for additional information. Paragraph (d) of the rule makes clear that the "person required to file notification," to which a request for additional information may be addressed, remains the foreign person. If the foreign person does not respond to the second request, the waiting period will not expire and the person may be subjected to a suit for compliance under section 7A(g) after failing to respond within a reasonable time. See § 803.21. In this situation, since the foreign person will in many cases have exclusive access to the additional information or documentary material requested, it is inappropriate to permit another party to the transaction to respond.

This rule does not permit another party to transaction to file on behalf of a foreign acquiring person under any circumstances. Furthermore, for similar reasons, the rule applies only to acquisitions of foreign assets and of voting securities of a foreign issuer.

This rule had no counterpart in the original or the revised rules. It was inserted in the final rules partly in response to comments (e.g., 1059, 1063) that argued that noncompliance by foreign persons may prevent U.S. companies from consummating certain kinds of transactions. The rule also responds in part to comment 87, which recommended an ad hoc exemption rule to permit the consummation of transactions in which a foreign acquired person refuses to file notification. For discussion of that specific suggestion, see the Statement of Basis and Purpose on the "ad hoc exemption" issue, below.

SECTION 803.5 AFFIDAVITS REQUIRED

Section 803.5 requires that affidavits attesting that certain pre-notification obligations have been fulfilled must accompany each Notification and Report Form. It thus governs when notification may be filed.

Paragraph (a) provides that before notification may be filed in connection with acquisitions described in § 801.30, the acquired person must receive from the acquiring person certain information relevant to the acquisition. In addition, in the case of a tender offer, the intention to make the offer must have been publicly announced. Paragraph (b) provides that in all other acquisitions notification may be filed after a contract, agreement in principle or letter of intent to merge or acquire has been executed.

Subparagraphs (a)(1) specifies the information that, in all acquisitions to which § 801.30 applies, the issuer of the voting securities must receive from the acquiring person. The information must be delivered to the issuer by certified or registered mail, by wire or by hand to its principal executive offices.

Subparagraph (a)(2) provides that the acquiring person must attest that it has a good faith intention to make the acquisition and, in the case of tender offers, that the intention to make the offer has been publicly announced. The public announcement may be effected by a press release announcing the acquiring person's intention to make the offer, by a filing under a state statute that has the effect of publicly announcing the acquiring person's intention to make the offer, or by actually publishing and commencing the offer. (In the latter case, of course, the tender offer could not be consummated until the waiting period expires or is terminated.)

Paragraph (b) of the rule provides that for all transactions to which § 801.30 does not apply—typically transactions which the parties have negotiated directly with each other—notification must be accomplished by an affidavit stating that a contract, agreement in principle, or letter of intent to merge or acquire has been executed. Thus, the parties may file notification at any time after one of those types of documents has been executed.

The rule requires that the affidavits be attached to the front of the notification. A Notification and Report Form submitted without the affidavits required by this rule is a deficient filing and will not begin the running of the waiting period. See § 803.10(c)(2).

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 803.5

By requiring that certain affidavits accompany the Notification and Report Form, § 803.5 accomplishes two purposes. First, it ensures that the acquired person is informed of its obligation to file notification when the acquired person may not otherwise be aware of that duty. Second, it governs when persons may file notification.

Subparagraph (a)(1) accomplishes the first purpose of the rule, that of informing the acquired person of its obligation to file notification in instances when it might not be aware of the facts. Those instances are transactions of the types described in § 801.30, which do not necessarily involve agreement between the acquiring and acquired persons. The information set forth in clauses (a)(1)(i)-(vi) of the rule will provide the issuer with certain information necessary to complete its Form as an acquired person.

The requirement that the acquiring person attest that the information has been received (not merely that it has been sent) is intended to make certain that a delay in delivery will not reduce the time available to the acquired person to prepare and file its notification or the time within which the enforcement agencies must complete their review. The rule specifies that the information may be transmitted to the offices of the acquired person by wire primarily in order to accommodate foreign transactions.

Several comments (e.g., 19, 73, 74, 78, 93) suggested that original § 803.15 was inadequate in that open market or other acquisitions of voting securities from third-party holders (other than tender offers) were not addressed by the rule and were improperly included with consensual acquisition in paragraph (b). Revised § 803.4 added subparagraph (a)(1) to accommodate such acquisitions.

Revised § 803.4 also would have provided for service of the information by any means permitted under rule 4(d) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. That provision would have permitted service to individuals or places other than the acquired person's principal executive offices, and consequently might have introduced a degree of uncertainty and delay into the timing of the waiting period. Accordingly, the reference to the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure was deleted, and final § 803.5(a)(1) specifies the permissible means of transmitting the information.

The final version also refers to § 803.30 transactions instead of referring to "tender offers and other acquisitions of voting securities from third parties." This change simply reflects the rephrasing and clarification of § 803.30. See the Statement of Basis and Purpose to that rule.

Two considerations motivate the inclusion of subparagraph (a)(2) and paragraph (b), which require a good faith intention to make the acquisition, public announcement of tender offers, and execution of a contract, agreement in principle or letter of intent. First, those provisions ensure that the parties intend to consummate the acquisition, and are not using notification as a means of testing the agencies' enforcement intentions. Because of the time and resource constraints upon the agency staffs, the agencies could not tolerate review of hypothetical transactions. Second, the requirement assures that the forms will contain sufficiently definitive information about the transaction to permit accurate analysis.

The original rule, § 803.15, would have required that in tender offers, the offeror must attest that the tender offer had been "published, sent or given" to the security holders of the issuer of the voting securities to be acquired. The SEC, in its comment (125) on the original rule, supported this provision. The comment urged that pre-commencement notification not be required. A pre-commencement notification, requirement, it said, would have "(tipped) the balance of regulation in favor of the subject company and undermined the extreme care taken by Congress in enacting the Williams act to balance the interest of both the bidder and the subject company, while providing full and fair disclosure to investors and others." See also the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 803.30.

However, several comments (e.g., 12, 63, 93, 96) objected to this provision. Since some State statutes require persons intending to make certain types of tender offers to file notice of their intentions significantly in advance of making the offers, the waiting period required by the act would not begin to run until after the waiting period required by State law. Therefore, these comments requested that notification be permitted before commencement of the tender offer.

Revised § 803.4 eliminated the requirement that the tender offer be "published, sent or given" to security holders of the acquired issurer before notification could be filed. It substituted the requirements that the offeror state its good faith intention to make the acquisition, and that the tender offer must have been publicly announced.

Since filings under most State statutes of the type referred to by the comments have the effect of making public the acquiring person's intention to make the offer, the revised (and final) rule permits notification prior to commencement of the tender offer when such a filing has been made. In permitting such notifications, the commission, as it stated in the FEDERAL REGISTER notice accompanying the revised rules, 42 FR at 39046-47 (August 1, 1977), takes no position about whether any State statute requiring any type of filing by the acquiring person in a tender offer is preempted by Federal statute or regulations, or may be otherwise unlawful. The Commission specifically does not endorse or oppose the principle of required disclosure of planned tender offers which underlies such statutes.

The SEC suggested in its second comment (1058) that in view of the uncertainties surrounding tender offers (including the possible effects of State statutes, the increasing incidence of competing tender offers and possiblity of litigation in connection with tender offers), the affidavit required in paragraph (a) should reflect only a good faith intent to make an offer, rather than the intent to make an acquisition. The final rule retains the word "acquisition," although as the comment noted developments subsequent to the attestation may thwart the tender offer.

Another comment (1102) suggested that public announcement of the tender offer should not be necessary when there is no legal requirement of publication. However, the purposes of the requirement support retaining it even when public announcement is not otherwise compelled.

Original § 803.15(b) and revised § 803.4(b) would have allowed notification only when a contract or agreement in principle had been executed. Several comments (e.g., 15, 93; 1040) however, urged that the execution of a letter of intent represented a sufficiently definite transaction to satisfy the agencies' concerns, and so the letter of intent was added to final § 803.5(b).

Several comments (e.g., 1011, 1090) objected to the requirement still present in paragraph (b) that a written agreement must be executed before notification can be filed. Comment 1011 suggested that since some acquisitions involve no written agreement prior to closing, the rules should permit notification regarding acquisitions not reduced to writing, provided that they are consummated within 180 days after the expiration of the waiting period. Similarly, comment 1019 urged that the affidavit mandated by paragraph (b) is improper since agreements to merge or otherwise acquire voting securities or assets of another company often are not reduce to writing for some time after they are made. It suggested that the waiting period should be permitted to commence and expire before finalization of the terms of the acquisition, rather than after the terms have been embodied in a written agreement. Not withstanding the comments, the agencies believe that oral agreements to engage in significant acquisitions are unusual. In view of the important purposes served by the requirement, the suggestions made by these two comments have been rejected.

SECTION 803.6 CERTIFICATION

This rule states that the notification required by the act and the response to a request for additional information under section 7A(e) and § 803.20 must be certified and specifies who may perfom that certification. With respect to notification, paragraph (a) provides that any general partner in a partnership or any officer or director of a corporation may do so. When a reporting person has neither officers, directors nor partners, the certification may be provided by any individual exercising functions similar to those of an officer, director or general partner. A natural person filing notification, or his or her legal representative, must certify a filing by or on behalf of such person.

Paragraph (b) requires that additional information or documentary material submitted pursuant to a request under section 7A(e) and § 803.20 must be accompanied by a certification in the format appearing at the end of the notification and report form, completed in accordance with paragraph (a) of this rule by the person or individual to whom the request was directed.

Paragraph (c) requires that the individual who certifies the form or a response to a request for additional information must possess actual authority to provide such certification on behalf of the person filing notification or responding to such request.

The certification consists of a sworn statement appearing at the end of the Notification and Report Form, which reads as follows:

> This Notification and Report Form, together with any and all appendices and attachments thereto, was prepared and assembled under my supervision in accordance with instructions issued by the Federal Trade Commission. Subject to the recognition that, where so indicated, reasonable estimates have been made because books and records do not provide the required data, the information is, to the best of my knowledge, true, correct, and complete in accordance with the statute and rules.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 803.6

The purpose of the certification requirement is twofold. First, the certification places upon the individual who signs it the responsibility for determining that, to the best of that individual's knowledge, the information provided is true, correct, and complete in accordance with the act and the rules. Second, the certification is intended to estop the person on whose behalf the report is filed from later denying the completeness or accuracy of the information provided on the form, in the event that either enforcement agency seeks to introduce any such information into evidence in any proceeding. It is also possible that criminal prosecutions of certifying individuals might be appropriate if, for example, data has been knowingly falsified. The certification language is similar to that which has been used for a number of years on the reporting forms under the Commission's existing premerger notification program.

The certification requirement appeared in original § 803.20 and in revised § 803.5 in substantially the same form as the final rule, except that the listing of who may provide certification is somewhat expanded from that appearing in the original rule. Paragraph (b) of the final rule was inserted to insure that responses to requests for additional information and documentary material are also certified, for the same reasons applying to the initial notification.

Several comments in response to the original rules discussed the certification requirement. One (15) suggested deletion of the word "actual" from the phrase "actual authority" in subparagraph (b) of the rule, but provided no reason or explanation. The term "actual authority" is meant to insure that the certifying individual possesses the authority to certify. In other words, an individual may not perform a certification unless he or she has been authorized to do so by the person on whose behalf the report is filed. See §§ 801.1(a)(1), 803.2(a).

Another comment (28) objected to the certification requirement for an acquired firm, suggesting that this might constitute a warranty of some kind to the acquiring company. The comment did not explain why that result might occur, but in any case no such result is intended by the Commission.

Two comments (74, 88) suggested that the certification requirement was unreasonable. The former suggested that the certification attest merely "that a good faith effort to produce and deliver the information specified has been made." That comment also suggested "a modified certification format where certain categories of information or styles of presentation are practically, but not absolutely, beyond the ability of the reporting person." Comment 88 suggested that a "substantially accurate" standard be substituted for the "true, correct and complete" language in the certification. The Commission believes that each of these suggestions is inappropriate.

Section 7A(g)(2) requires substantial, rather than complete, compliance with the notification requirement and with any request for additional information. It is the function of the rules to define full compliance and to specify the content of the statement of reasons for noncompliance to be supplied whenever the act and the rules are not fully complied with. See section 7A(b)(1)(A)(ii), (e)(2)(B), § 803.3. The instructions on the Notification and Report Form permit the use of "best estimates" when books and records that provide accurate answers to items on the form are not available. Subject to these exceptions, the rules require full and complete compliance, and the certification at the end of the form attests that this requirement has been satisfied by providing information that is accurate and complete to the best of the knowledge of the individual who signs the form on behalf of the filing person.

SECTION 803.7 EXPIRATION OF NOTIFICATION

Section 803.7 provides that notification with respect to and acquisition expires 1 year after the related waiting period expires. Once notification expires, the situation is just as though notification had not been filed, and the parties must report and wait before any acquisition subject to the act may be consummated.

For acquisitions of assets, therefore, the rule means that the acquisition must be consummated within 1 year following the expiration of the waiting period.

For acquisitions of voting securities, the rule works in tandem with § 802.21. After an earlier acquisition with respect to which notification was filed, § 802.21 exempts, under certain conditions, acquisitions of voting securities not meeting or exceeding the next greater notification threshold than that attained in connection with the earlier notification. After notification expires, no notification threshold greater than the highest one met or exceeded within 1 year after expiration of the waiting period may be crossed without again filing notification, even if notification has been filed regarding a higher threshold. The term "notification threshold" is defined in § 801.1(h).

An example illustrates the rule. For more information, see the statements of basis and purposes to §§ 801.1(h) and 802.21.

Background Information to § 803.7

This rule serves two purposes. First, it limits the acquiring person to a reasonable period of time—1 year from the expiration of the waiting period—during which to consummate the acquisition described in the notification. If the acquisition is to be consummated after that time, the possibility of changed circumstances warrants a fresh review by the enforcement agencies.

Second, the rule minimizes the likelihood that filings under the act will be used as a means of testing the agencies' enforcement intentions with respect to acquisitions that the reporting persons have no present intention to make. In this context the rule supplements § 803.5(a)(2), which requires that acquiring persons submit an affidavit with the form stating a good faith intention to make the acquisition.

This rule appears for the first time in the final rules.

SECTION 803.10 RUNNING OF TIME

Persons required by the act to file notification of an acqusition must thereafter wait 30 days (or, for a cash tender offer, 15 days) before consummating the transaction. This rule explains the procedures for determining precisely when this waiting period begins and ends.

Under § 803.10(a), the waiting period begins on the date of receipt of the notification and report form, or, if the form is not completed, upon receipt of the form to the extent completed and a statement or statements of reasons for noncompliance in accordance with § 803.3. Under subparagraph (a)(1), the waiting period for acquisitions to which § 801.30 applies begins when the acquiring person's form is received by both agencies. Subparagraph (a)(2) provides that for all other acquisitions, the waiting period begins when notification is received from all persons required to file.

Paragraph (b) of the rule describes how to determine the expiration date of the waiting period. Unless extended by a request for additional information under section 7A(e) and § 803.20 or by district court under section 7A(g)(2) or terminated under § 803.11, the waiting period ends at 11:59 p.m. eastern time on the 30th (or, for cash tender offers, the 15th) calendar day following the beginning of the waiting period. If extended by a request for additional information or documentary material, the waiting period expires 20 days (or in the case of a cash tender offer 10 days) after the receipt of such information or documentary material by the requesting agency. Not every request for additional information extends the waiting period; those directed to the acquired person in a tender offer do not, under section 7A(a)(2) and § 803.20(c). The paragraph also indicates that § 802.23, the exemption rule relating to amended or renewed tender offers, may provide that the waiting period ends on a different date.

If a request for additional information is issued early in the waiting period and is answered promptly, the 20- or 10-day extension could run simultaneously with the original waiting period. Subparagraph (b)(2)(ii) provides, however, that unless terminated pursuant to § 803.11, the waiting period cannot expire earlier than it would have expired if no request had been issued. See example No. 1 to the rule.

In the event that requests for additional information are directed to more than one person, the waiting period is extended until 20 days after the receipt by the requesting agency of the information requested from all such persons. Example No. 2 to the rule illustrates this point.

Subparagraph (c)(1) specifies that the date of receipt of notification, for purposes of determining when the waiting period begins, is the date on which delivery is effected by hand or by certified or registered mail during normal business hours to the offices designated in the rule. If delivery is effected after 5 p.m. eastern time (that is, after the close of normal business hours) or on any day other than a regular business day (such as a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday) the date of receipt is considered to be the next regular business day. If delivery to both agencies is not effected on the same date, the later date is deemed the date of receipt.

Under subparagraph (c)(2), a notification and report form, or a response to a request for additional information, that does not comply with the rules is insufficient to begin the running of time. In particular, if any item of the form is not fully completed, or any information or documentary material is not completely supplied, a statement of reasons for noncompliance conforming to § 803.3 must be submitted. Likewise, the affidavit(s) required by § 803.5 must accompany the acquiring person's notification. If a deficient filing is received, the Commission or the Assistant Attorney General will promptly notify the person of the deficiencies so that the person can rectify them. However, time will not begin to run until the deficiencies are cured.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 803.10

Section 7A(b)(1) provides that the waiting period "shall begin on the date of receipt by the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General" of the completed notification, or the notification to the extent completed and a statement of reasons for noncompliance in accordance with § 803.3. Section 7A(e)(2) provides that this waiting period may be extended by a request for additional information or documentary material for 20 (or, in the case of cash tender offers, 10) days after the appropriate agency receives all requested data. Under section 7A(b)(1)(A), the waiting period begins upon receipt of notification from both the acquiring and acquired persons, or, in a tender offer, from the acquiring person only.

Original § 803.10 matched the statutory scheme: Only for tender offers would the waiting period have begun upon receipt of the acquiring person's notification. Consequently, for all other acquisitions not involving a two-party agreement, in which the issuer may be indifferent or hostile, the original rules would have permitted such an issuer to prevent the waiting period from starting, and the transaction from taking place, by not filing. As explained in the statement of basis and purpose to § 801.30, with regard to beginning the waiting period the final rules treat all nonconsensual acquisitions similarly to the treatment afforded tender offers by the act. Final § 803.10(a)(1) thus makes clear that for all acquisitions to which § 801.30 applies, the waiting period begins as soon as the acquiring person files notification. The acquired person in such transactions must file notification no later than the 15th day (or, in the case of cash tender offers, the 10th day) after the date of receipt of the acquiring person's notification. See § 801.30(b)(2).

A request for additional information issued to the acquiring or acquired person before the waiting period expired automatically extends the waiting period, except for requests directed to acquired persons in tender offers. See section 7A(e)(2) and § 803.20(c)(2). Under those sections and subparagraph (b)(2) of this rule, whenever the waiting period for tender offers is extended it expires on the 20th day (or in the case of a cash tender offer, on the 10th day) following the receipt from the offeror of all additional information requested. A request for additional information in connection with all other types of acquisitions extends the waiting period for 20 days following the receipt of additional information from all persons required to submit it.

Comment 1086 suggested that if a request for additional information is made to the issuer whose stock is being acquired from a third party, the waiting period should be extended only for 20 days from the date the request is issued. However, the comment's concern that such an acquired person could indefinitely extend the waiting period by not responding to the request has been addressed by the addition of § 803.21 to the final rules. See the statement of basis and purpose to that rule.

Numerous technical changes were made from the revised rule. The time of receipt after which delivery would be deemed effected on the following day was changed from 3 to 5 p.m. to reflect the close of normal business hours. The time of day when the waiting period expires was changed from 5 to 11:59 p.m. This change provides the agencies with the full 30 (or 15) days within which to review the acquisition and reflects the statutory intent that parties wait the full 30 or 15 days before consummating.

A technical change urged in comment 1059 was rejected. That comment suggested that the date of receipt of mailed forms and additional information at the mailrooms of the agencies rather than at the premerger notification offices, be deemed the "date of receipt." The comment expressed concern that reporting persons should not be subject to the uncertainty of guessing how long delivery from the mailrooms to the specified offices would take and should not bear the risk of delays over which they have no control. While it is true that requiring receipt at the offices that will undertake the review could subject the reporting person to some delay, this procedure will permit the agencies to review the submissions for the full waiting periods. Moreover, guesswork as to the date of receipt is eliminated if delivery is effected by mail with return receipt requested, or by hand. A reporting person that chooses not to employ one of these means of delivery retains the risk of delay.

Subparagraph (c)(2) of the rule provides that unless the notification and report form is submitted in compliance with the rules, it is not "recieved," and the waiting period therefore does not begin. Similarly, the rule provides that whenever a response to a request for additional information does not comply with the rules, it too is not "received." In the latter instance, the waiting period remains in effect until the deficiency is cured and for 20 days (in the case of cash tender offers, 10 days) thereafter.

The rule is intended to deal with instances of procedural noncompliance such as, for example, when the form or a response to a request for additional information has not been certified; when one or more of the affidavits required by § 803.5 are missing; when a required statement of reasons for noncompliance (see § 803.3) is missing or incomplete; or when the data submitted does not reflect the operations of the correct portions of the reportin person's business as required § 803.2. In these or other instances procedural noncompliance the Co mission will promptly notify the porting person so that the problem can be corrected.

This provision generally will not be applicable when all items on the form or questions in a request for additional information have been properly answered or a complete statement of reasons for noncompliance explains any incomplete responses. In these situations any question of whether there has been substantial compliance with the act and the rules will be resolved by a district court as provided in section 7A(g)(2).

SECTION 803.11 TERMINATION OF WAITING PERIOD

Section 803.11 implements section 7A(b)(2) of the act. It sets forth the conditions and procedures under which the waiting period for an acquisition may be terminated prior to its normal expiration. Generally, the Commission and the Assistant Attorney General will terminate a waiting period only if termination has been requested in writing by one of the persons filing notification.

Paragraph (a) of the rule sets forth the conditions which must exist before a request for termination of a waiting period will be considered. First, all persons required by the act and the rules to file notification must have done so. Second, it must have been determined that no request for additional information will be made, or if any such requests have been made, the responses must have been received. Third, both the Commission and the Assistant Attorney General must have agreed that no further action (e.g., request for additional information, suit under section 7A(g), or action challenging the acquisition) is to be taken during the waiting period.

Paragraph (b) of the rule automatically denies any request for termination which is pending at the time a request for additional information is issued to any person, whether the request for termination accompanied the filing of notification or was submitted afterwards. In such a situation, no formal notice of denial will normally be given.

Paragraph (c) provides that a waiting period may be terminated either upon the written request (filed with the offices designated in § 803.10(c)) of any person that has filed notification, or sua sponte by the agencies without regard to the conditions contained in paragraph (a). The sua sponte termination provision makes it unnecessary to resubmit a request which was denied by operation of paragraph (b). Once a request has been made, it will be treated as continuing. In addition, this provision gives the Commission and the Assistant Attorney General the power, in appropriate circumstances, to terminate a waiting period even though a request for additional information remains unanswered.

Section 803.11(c) makes termination effective upon notice by telephone to any requesting person, states that written confirmation of termination will be sent to all parties that filed notification, and restates the requirement of section 7A(b)(2) that notice of termination must be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

The Federal Trade Commission has delegated the power to terminate the waiting period under section 7A(b)(2) and this rule to the Director and Deputy Directors of the Bureau of Competition, without power of redelegation.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 803.11

Section 7A(b)(2) provides:

> The Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General may, in individual cases, terminate the waiting period * * * and allow any person to proceed with any acquisition subject to the (the act), and promptly shall cause to be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER a notice that neither intends to take any action within such period with respect to such acquisition.

Paragraph (a) of the rule announces the conditions the agencies will require before a request for early termination will be granted.

Two comments from the same organization (120; 1059) took issue with the provision in paragraph (c) of the rule that notice of all terminations shall be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER. The comments argued that Section 7A(b)(2) authorizes publication of a notice of termination only when the termination occurs within "the initial * * * 30-day waiting period." The comments contended that publication of notice that a "*supplemental* waiting period" (emphasis in comment 120) has been terminated is not authorized by section 7A(b)(2) and would violate the confidentiality quarantees of section 7A(h).

This argument was rejected. Section 7A(b)(2) does not merely "authorize" publication of notices of termination. The language of the statute is mandatory and imposes an obligation on the Commission and the Assistant Attorney General to publish notice of all such terminations in the FEDERAL REGISTER. There is no basis for distinguishing between notices terminating waiting periods of ordinary length and those terminating waiting periods that have been extended by requests for additional information. Rather than contemplating an original waiting period followed by a "supplemental" waiting period, section 7A(b)(1)(B) creates only one waiting period that may be extended by a request for additional information or by a court order under section 7A(g)(2). Since there is only one waiting period, which may or may not be extended, section 7A(b)(2) requires that all notices of termination be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER, regardless of when during that waiting period the termination occurs.

In addition, to the extent that any of the contents of published termination notices constitute "information * * * filed * * * pursuant to (the act)" within the meaning of section 7A(h), the Commission concludes that section 7A(b)(2) makes a necessary exception to section 7A(h).

Comment 1075 suggested that before termination is considered, it should be requested by the acquired person, especially in third-party (§ 801.30) transactions, or by both parties. The Commission recognizes that in hostile takeovers, the interests of the acquiring and acquired personsl are divergent. But those conflicting interests alone would not appear to justify a rule which would give an advantage to an acquired company resisting the takeover. If the acquisition may be anticompetitive, a request for early termination is unlikely to be granted no matter which party or how many parties request it. If it does not appear anticompetitive, the Commission has no basis upon which to require that requests come from one party or the other, or that they be unanimous. Thus the suggestion was not adopted.

The rule retains the flexibility to terminate a waiting period sua sponte chiefly because § 803.20(c)(2) automatically extends the waiting period when a request for additional information is issued. The Commission and the Assistant Attorney General may occasionally be able to reach the determination set forth in subparagraph (a)(3) of this rule even though not all requested information has been provided by all the parties. In such instances, the waiting period may nevertheless be terminated. See also the statements of basis and purpose to §§ 803.4 and 803.21.

SECTION 803.20 REQUESTS FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION OR DOCUMENTARY MATERIAL

Section 7A(e) of the act permits the Commission and the Assistant Attorney General, before the expiration of the waiting period, to require one submission of additional information or documentary material from each person filing notification with respect to an acquisition. Section 803.20 details the procedures by which the agencies request additional information and persons filing notification comply with them. Paragraph (a) identifies the persons and individuals subject to such requests; paragraph (b) describes who may make the request, how the request is to be communicated, and when the request is effective; paragraph (c) details the impact of such requests on the waiting period; and paragraph (d) provides that all such requests must be clearly identified and should be distinguished from requests for clarification or amplification of responses.

Any person required to file notification may be required to respond to one request for additional information or documents, and more than one party to an acquisition may be required to do so. Furthermore, the act and rule specifically provide that such requests may be made of one or more entities within a filing person or of one or more officers, directors, partners, agents, or employees of the filing person. Thus requests for additional information or documentary material are not limited to the ultimate parent entity (the entity responsible for filing notification under § 803.2(a)), or to an entity authorized to file on its behalf.

Although either agency may issue a request for additional information, subparagraph (b)(1) provides that such a request may not be issued by both agencies to the same person or to any entity or individual within that person. The rule provides that the Commission and Assistant Attorney General may delegate the authority to make requests for additional information.

Pursuant to subparagraph (b)(2), a written request for additional information is effective when received by the ultimate parent entity of the person to which the request is directed (or the entity filing on its behalf). If the request is communicated in person or by telephone, it is effective when communicated, provided that a written confirmation is mailed within the 30-day waiting period to the ultimate parent entity (or the entity filing on its behalf). A request made to a natural person will be sent to the reporting person to which the individual is related; see § 803.20(b)(3). Such a request is effective as to the individual when it is effective as to the reporting person to which he or she is related. In addition, a written copy of the request will be delivered to the individual by hand, or by registered or certified mail.

Clause (b)(2)(ii) also requires that the filing person identify an individual who will be available during normal business hours throughout the waiting period, at a telephone number supplied in item 10 of the form, to respond to inquiries concerning notification. Telephoned requests for additional information will be made to that individual; written confirmation will be mailed to the ultimate parent entity of the filing person.

Subparagraph (c)(1) provides that, with one exception, the waiting period for an acquisition will remain in effect until all additional information requested has been submitted, even if the waiting period would have expired but for the request. The sole exception is that a request directed to the person whose voting securities are sought to be acquired in a tender offer, or to any officer, director, partner, agent, or employee of such a person, will not extend the waiting period. The target of the tender offer must still respond to the request within a reasonable time under § 803.21, and may be subject to an enforcement proceeding under section 7A(g).

Subparagraph (c)(2) makes extension of the waiting period automatic. For cash tender offers, a request for additional information or documentary material extends the waiting period for 10 days after receipt of the requested information from the acquiring person. For all other acquisitions, the waiting period is extended automatically for 20 days from receipt of the requested information from all persons to which a request was addressed, except the acquired person in a tender offer. See of § 803.10 and the example to § 803.20(c)(2).

Subparagraphs (d)(1) and (d)(2) emphasize the difference between requests for additional information under section 7A(e) and requests for clarification or amplification of a response to an item on the form. All requests for additional information or documentary material must be identified as such, regardless of the manner in which they are communicated. However, the agencies may make other inquiries not so identified. These are not to be considered requests for additional information, and they do not extent the waiting period.

The Federal Trade Commission has delegated the power to make requests for additional information or documentary material under section 7A(e) and this rule to the Director, the Deputy Directors, and the Associate Director for Premerger Notification of the Bureau of Competition, without power of redelegation.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 803.20

Comment 63 questioned whether the act permits the delegation of authority to make requests for additional information. The comments suggested that section 7A(e)(2), which provides that "the Federal Trade Commission or the Assistant Attorney General, in its or his discretion, may extend the 30-day waiting period," contemplates that the discretion of the Commission or Assistant Attorney General must be exercised before the consummation of a merger or acquisition may be postponed by a second request. The Commission's view is that section 7A(e)(2) should be read consistently with established agency policy. The Commission, under the authority provided by reorganization plan No. 4 of 1961, may delegate certain of its functions to a division of the Commission, an individual Commissioner, an administrative law judge, or an employee or employee board. Pursuant to that authority, the Commission has delegated to (among others) the Director, Deputy Directors, and Assistant Directors of the Bureau of Competition limited authority to initiate investigations. Since requests for additional information or documentary material may be compared to the initiation of investigations, decisions to issue such requests are similarly delegable.

Paragraph (c) extends the waiting period for all requests except those directed to acquired persons in tender offers. Requests directed to acquired persons in other transactions listed in § 801.30 thus extend the waiting period. For a discussion of the possibility that such acquired persons can thereby stall the consummation of a transaction, see the statement of basis and purpose to § 803.21.

Comments 120 and 1059 argued that the rule's automatic extension of the waiting period is inconsistent with the provision of section 7A(e)(2) that, if a request for additional information is made, the Commission or Assistant Attorney General may, "in its or his own discretion," extend the initial waiting period for "not more than" 20 days (or 10) days in the case of a cash tender offer). These comments interpret this language to require an individualized, discretionary judgment in every case as to whether and for how long the waiting period should be extended. The Commission rejected this suggestion and does not interpret the act in this manner. It believes that this approach might seriously interfere with the agencies' review of all relevant information and thus with the purposes of the act. In many cases, it will be impossible to predict, before the information is submitted, what materials will be supplied in response and how long it will take to review them. Since any further extension requires an order of a district court, the waiting period must be automatically extended for a full 20 (or 10 days. If the review is completed in less time, the extended waiting period may be terminated early under section 7A(b)(2) and § 803.11.

Comment 37 argued that the act does not permit extension of the waiting period while a request for additional information is outstanding. It argued that a request made late in the waiting period should have to be "reasonable" enough to be capable of a response within the original waiting period. This suggestion was rejected, since it would effectively prevent the agencies from making meaningful second requests late in the waiting period—a result not contemplated by the statute. Furthermore, the notion that requests for additional information must be answerable within the minimum statutory waiting period is inconsistent with the language of section 7A(3)(2), which contemplates extension of that period.

Numerous comments (e.g. 59, 77, 112, 115, 120; 1059) expressed concern that misunderstandings could occur if requests for additional information were issued orally. It should be noted that the rule provides that requests made in person or by telephone are effective only if a written confirmation is subsequently mailed during the waiting period.

Comment 25 suggested that "clarification" and "amplification" be defined; otherwise, if a person construed a request for additional information as a "clarification" or "amplification" it could violate the act if it then consummated a transaction without additional waiting. This ambiguity disappears in light of paragraph (d), which requires specific identification of requests for additional information and documentary material.

SECTION 803.21 ADDITIONAL INFORMATION SHALL BE SUPPLIED WITHIN REASONABLE TIME

Section 803.21 requires persons receiving requests for additional information or documentary material to supply the information and documentary material (or, if the request is not fully complied with, a statement of reasons for noncompliance in accordance with § 803.3) within a reasonable time. See section 7A (b)(1)(A) and (e), and § 803.30.

Background Information to § 803.21

This new rule is designed primarily to prevent an acquired person in a transaction subject to § 801.30 from frustrating the acquisition. Without this provision, an uncooperative acquired person could delay the expiration of the waiting period indefinitely by not responding to a request for additional information.

The act addresses this problem only in the context of tender offers. Section 7A(e)(2) provides that the waiting period cannot be extended by a request for additional information to an acquired person in a tender offer. Rather than extend this treatment to all other § 801.30 transactions, the Commission opted to impose a general obligation on all recipients to respond within a reasonable time to requests for additional information. This decision resulted from a balancing of conflicting interests. To imitate the statutory treatment of tender offers (i.e., to permit the waiting period to expire before the requesting agency receives the additional information from the acquired person) would frustrate the congressional intent of assuring that the enforcement agencies have adequate information to analyze the transaction. Although there was also a congressional concern that persons be able to conclude other nonconsensual transactions despite the recalcitrance of the acquired person, the act does not provide treatment for such transactions similar to that regarding tender offers. The Commission determined that imposing a specific duty on acquired persons to comply with requests for additional information within a reasonable time would create sufficient incentive to assure that neither congressional interest is frustrated.

A second purpose of the rule is to facilitate investigations of tender offers. In all other types of acquisitions, if the acquired person fails to respond to the request, then the waiting period will remain in effect indefinitely, blocking the acquisition (unless the agencies terminate the waiting period under § 803.11, despite the pendency of the request). But since the act provides that for tender offers the waiting period will not be extended, an acquired person, by failing to respond to a second request, could prevent the agencies from obtaining the information necessary to review the acquisition before it took place. Again, the congressional purpose would be frustrated.

Therefore, the rule creates an affirmative obligation to submit requested information within a reasonable time. A filing person's failure to comply with this obligation could subject that person to civil penalties under section 7A(g)(1) or equitable relief under section 7A(g)(2). What constitutes a reasonable time must be judged on a case-by-case basis, considering all the facts and circumstances.

Comments 1090 and 1108 recommended that the treatment accorded by the act to tender offers be followed, although 1090 mentioned the institution of a rule like § 803.21 as an alternative. Another suggestion offered by comment 1086 is discussed in the statement of basis and purpose to § 803.10. All of these suggestions were rejected since the Commission believes that this rule represents the most appropriate balance of the competing interests.

Note that under § 803.11(c) the enforcement agencies may terminate a waiting period sua sponte, despite the pendency of a request for additional information. See the example to § 803.20(c)(2). This course of action might be chosen, for example, if the agencies determine from other sources that the acquisition is unlikely to violate the antitrust laws, and if it has become apparent that the acquired person is delaying its response in an attempt to forestall consummation of the acquisition.

SECTION 803.30 FORMAL AND INFORMAL INTERPRETATIONS OF REQUIREMENTS UNDER THE ACT AND THE RULES

This rule creates a mechanism for requesting and giving both formal (written) and informal (oral) interpretations of requirements under the act and rules. Paragraph (a) authorizes the Commission staff to consider requests for formal or informal interpretations, and explains how a request for a formal interpretation shall be made and what it must contain. It permits the staff, in its discretion, to render either a formal or an informal response to any request, however made, or to decline to render any advice.

Paragraph (b) permits the Commission staff, in its discretion, to refer to the Commission any request for interpretation, however made. Paragraph (c) specifies that when formal interpretations are given by either the Commission staff or the Commission itself they must be given with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General or his or her designee.

Paragraph (d) states that either the Commission or the Assistant Attorney General may rescind any formal interpretation previously given; in that event, the party that originally requested the interpretation must be notified of the rescission in writing.

Under paragraph (e), the Commission will publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER a summary of formal interpretations given by the Commission (but not those given by the staff) and any rescissions of formal Commission interpretations.

Background Information to § 803.30

This rule serves several purposes. First, it authorizes the Commission staff to give both formal and informal interpretations of the act and the rules. It thus recognizes that persons who are or may be subject to the act may frequently require information and advice concerning their obligations, and that the staff should respond to their needs for the program to function. Requests for advice may be made orally by phone or in person, or they may be made in writing. The same variety of responses is available to the staff, so that straightforward problems can be handled expeditiously, while more difficult questions are given more deliberate consideration.

Second, the rule permits the staff, within its sole discretion, to refer novel or complex (or any other) questions to the Commission, thereby giving the Commission the opportunity to render formal interpretations in response. The rule does not, however, give any person the right to obtain an interpretation directly from the Commission or to "appeal" a staff interpretation to the Commission. Nor does it obligate the Commission to give its interpretation (or to take any action whatsoever) in response to any request.

A final purpose of § 803.30 is to give the Assistant Attorney General a role in the issuance of formal interpretations. The reason for participation by the Assistant Attorney General is that under section 7A(d) the rules themselves must be promulgated by the Commission with concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General.

Neither the Commission nor the Assistant Attorney General is bound by either the formal or the informal interpretations of the staff under this rule. However, it is envisioned that the Commission or the Assistant Attorney General would, prior to taking any action contrary to a position embodied in a formal interpretation of the staff, first withdraw that opinion and give notice of that rescission to the party that originally requested the interpretation.

The purpose of the FEDERAL REGISTER summary described in paragraph (e) of the rule is to inform the public of the enforcement agencies' position on complex or novel issues referred by the staff, so that these interpretations may assist compliance with the act and the rules. All formal interpretations will be available for public inspection and copying in the Public Reference Branch of the Commission (Room 130 of the main Federal Trade Commission Building in Washington, D.C.).

Revised § 803.30 was more limited than the final rule, providing only for formal interpretations, and only by the Commission with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General.

SECTION 803.90 SEPARABILITY

Section 803.90 states that if any provision of the rules or form is held invalid, or the application of the rules or form to any person or circumstances is held invalid, to the extent possible neither other provisions nor application of the provision in question to other persons or circumstances shall be affected. The reporting and waiting period obligations are to remain in effect to the full extent not specifically invalidated.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO § 803.90

Section 803.90 appears for the first time in the final rules.

OTHER COMMENTS

SUNSET RULE

Comment 1049 proposed the adoption of a "sunset" provision, providing for the expiration of the rules 4 years from the day they become effective. Comments 1059 and 1063 endorsed this suggestion. The final rules, however, do not adopt this proposal, and thus, like the original and the revised rules, do not contain a "sunset" or automatic expiration provision.

Comment 1049 made three arguments for the inclusion of the "sunset" provision. The comment contended that mandatory periodic review of the rules by the antitrust agencies is desirable because: (1) The rules represent a new type of undertaking for the agencies and make antitrust enforcement more of a "regulatory" process than ever before, (2) the rules are experimental and complex and only time can tell whether their scope was properly framed, and (3) the provision that amendments be made by rule with the participation of both agencies is cumbersome and may make change difficult to achieve. The "sunset" provision, the comment declared, would oblige the agencies to examine the rules after a reasonable period of time and make whatever changes appear necessary.

The Commission, though rejecting the mechanism proposed by this suggestion, agrees with certain of its underlying premises. The actual experience of operating the premerger notification program will unquestionable suggest changes in the rules and form that cannot be anticipated prior to the effective date. The agencies intend to respond to questions or unexpected difficulties with the rules by means of formal and informal interpretations under § 803.30 when appropriate, and by amendment to the rules when necessary. However, the adoption of a "sunset" provision would introduce the possibility of a lapse in coverage. If the rules are to expire at some stated time, a renewed program would have to be promulgated by rule in advance of that time to insure that no such lapse occurs. The rulemaking scheme of section 7A(d) requires that both agencies agree on a new set of rules, and if no agreement is achieved for some reason, they will be faced with an intolerable problem. In the Commission's view, the possibility that the program could thus be suspended because no rules implement it—a situation directly opposed to the intent of the statute, which contains no "sunset" provision and contemplates a permanent program—is unacceptable.

Furthermore, section 7A(j) requires that the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, annually prepare a report to Congress on the operation of the act, including an assessment of the effects of the act and of the effects, purpose, and need for the rules, and any recommendations for revision of the act. This annual procedure compels the periodic review of the workings of the rules and of any necessary changes. Thus, the primary objective of a "sunset" rule is achieved by section 7A(j). It is also achieved in the rulemaking section of the Administrative Procedure Act, pursuant to which the rules are promulgated. Any interested person has the right to petition for the issuance, amendment, or repeal of a rule. 5 U.S.C. 553(e). Anyone who believes a rule is unworkable, unfair, or unduly burdensome may petition for its amendment or repeal, and anyone who believes a new rule should be added can petition for its addition. Rulemaking petitions afford an opportunity for consideration of any suggestion or review of any rule.

One additional comment (1100), while not literally endorsing a "sunset" provision, recommended that the rules should provide for public review and discussion of the program after the first 2 years and regular review thereafter. The Commission does not find it necessary to adopt such a rule. Informal and formal interpretations, annual reports to Congress, and petitions under section 553 of the Administrative Procedure Act should insure adequate public participation.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF FINAL RULES

At least two comments (1032, 1070) suggested that the Commission provide a period longer than 30 days between the publication of the final rules in the FEDERAL REGISTER and their effective date. Thirty days is the minimum time allowable under the Administrative Procedure Act, 5 U.S.C. 553(d), except in special circumstances. Comment 1032 suggested that the Commission allow a longer period, of unspecified duration, in order to afford other Federal agencies adequate time to conform their regulations to the final rules, as necessary. Comment 1070 proposed a period of at least 90 days so that affected segments of the business community could digest the final rules and institute appropriate compliance programs. The comment stated that the complexity of the act and the rules would necessitate more than 30 days, especially for financial institutions with wide-ranging investment activities.

Although the Commission did not adopt these suggestions, the result these comments desire has nevertheless been achieved. On February 14, 1978, the Commission tentatively approved and made public the final version of the rules and form. Interested business and government entities were thus made aware of the final rules several months before the effective date and have had adequate time to make the appropriate preparations. It is therefore unnecessary to provide an effective date later than 30 days after publication.

RETURN OF MATERIALS SUBMITTED

Several comments (e.g., 70, 120; 1050, 1059) suggested that the rules should provide that all documents and information submitted under the premerger notification program be returned after a decision has been made not to challenge an acquisition, or after the completion of any proceedings opposing the acquisition. Another comment (1023) proposed that the agencies adopt a policy of prompt return, though it did not specifically suggest adding a rule for this purpose.

The comments made several arguments supporting the prompt return of the data submitted. For example, comment 1050 declared that since the legislation was intended solely to allow the agencies to determine whether or not to challenge an acquisition prior to its completion, no statutory purpose would be served by retaining the material after this determination has been made. Comment 1023 stressed the "highly sensitive and confidential nature of the data," apparently fearing that improper disclosure would be more likely to occur if the agencies retained the documents. Comment 1059 asserted that the premerger notification program was not intended by Congress as a means of obtaining an economic data base for generalized research and inferred that if the documents are not to be used for such purposes, they therefore ought to be returned after the agencies decide not to challenge an acquisition.

The Commission rejected these proposals because they take an excessively narrow view of the agencies' enforcement responsibilities and the permissible uses of materials received under the act. Section 7A(i)(1) explicitly states that an acquisition not challenged by either agency during the waiting period may still be challenged after its expiration. Nothing in the language or legislative history of the act appears to prohibit the use of data submitted under the act for subsequent challenge to a reported acquisition or, in fact, for any other law enforcement purpose. A challenge after the waiting period might result from subsequent developments, such as additional acquisitions. Submitted material can also be useful in investigations and challenges to other acquisitions. To return the materials after the waiting period expires could seriously hinder later enforcement efforts.

The confidentiality issue raised by comment 1023 is not considered a major problem. See section 7A(h) of the act and the statement of basis and purpose under the heading "confidentiality," below.

DUPLICATION OF FILINGS UNDER EXISTING NOTIFICATION PROGRAM

Two comments (1044, 1082) noted that under certain circumstances a firm that has previously filed notification of an acquisition under the Commission's existing premerger notification program must file again under the act and rules. Specifically, a transaction reported under the old program because the agreement was concluded before the effective date of the act must also be reported under the act if it will be consummated after the effective date. The comments objected that the dual filing requirement would be burdensome and unfair and would unnecessarily delay the completion of such acquisitions. They suggested that no further filing be required under the act and rules for transactions previously reported under the existing program.

The Commission did not adopt this suggestion, choosing to place all transactions on the same footing under the act. The Commission has already addressed this issue in the statement of basis and purpose to the transitional rule implementing the act, 42 FR 6365-66 (February 2, 1977).

However, the Commission has amended its existing premerger notification program to provide that, as of the effective date of the premerger notification rules, persons that file, and persons that are not required to file, a notification and report form under the act and the rules need not file a special report under the Commission's existing premerger notification program.

AD HOC EXEMPTIONS

Comments 87 and 1063 proposed that a rule permit the agencies, in appropriate circumstances, to grant ad hoc discretionary exemptions from the filing and waiting-period requirements. This approach was rejected. Section 7A(d)(2)(B) of the act requires that all exemptions be made by rule in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 553. Therefore, all exemptions must be of general application. Ad hoc exemptions of otherwise reportable transactions are apparently not permitted.

TRANSACTION SUBJECT TO PUBLIC UTILITY HOLDING COMPANY ACT

Comment 1084 recommeded that transactions subject to SEC approval under section 9 of the Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935, 15 U.S.C. 79i, be granted a limited exemption on the same terms as the transactions exempted by section 7A(c)(8) of the act and § 802.8 of the rules. The comment urged conditioning the exemption upon filing copies of all information and documentary material filed with the SEC contemporaneously with the antitrust agencies at least 30 days prior to consummation. The comment suggested this exemption in order to provide the agencies with a form of pretransaction notification yet avoid duplicative filings.

The transactions to which this comment refers are: (1) direct or indirect acquisitions by public utility holding companies of "any securities or utility assets or any other interest in any business," and (2) acquisitions of any securities of a public utility company by any person which is an affiliate of such company as well as of any other public utility or public utility holding company, or becomes such an affiliate as a result of the acquisition. 15 U.S.C. 79i(a). These types of acquisitions require approval by the SEC before consummation.

The Commission rejected this proposal because it is unable to conclude that these acquisitions are unlikely to violate the antitrust laws. It thus believes that the comment failed to provide adequate justification for the proposed exemption.

CONFIDENTIALITY

Several comments made suggestions concerning the confidential treatment to be accorded materials submitted in response to the form or to requests for additional information. Several of these comments specifically referred to the nondisclosure provision of section 7A(h). That subsection exempts all such material from disclosure under the Freedom of Information Act, and provides as well that:

> no such information or documentary material may be made public, except as may be relevant to any administrative or judicial action or proceeding. Nothing in this section is intended to prevent disclosure to either body of Congress or to any duly authorized committee or subcommittee of the Congress.

One group of comments (e.g., 48, 70, 101, 120; 1050, 1059) urged the Commission to promulgate rules which state the agencies' interpretation of section 7A(h) and spell out what steps the agencies plan to take to preserve the confidentiality it requires. For example, comment 120 suggested, among other things, that the rules provide that all data and documents submitted in the premerger notification program be maintained in a separate file by the Secretary of the Commission and by an appropriate Department of Justice custodian; that they be inspected only at one location at each agency and only by the employees assigned to the particular premerger investigation; and that no other copies be made.

The Commission did not promulgate a rule concerning section 7A(h) because it did not believe rulemaking to be necessary or appropriate for this purpose. The act is unequivocal that no public disclosure may be made, and the agencies will take appropriate measures to assure this confidentiality.

The Commission also rejected the specific suggestions in comment 120 that the documents not be copied, that they be maintained only at one location at each agency, and that they be inspected only by the premerger office employees. The Commission believes it is not only unnecessary but also inappropriate to restrict access to the documents and information to particular agency staff members. Confidential information received under this program will be accorded the same treatment accorded to confidential information obtained by other means, such as by subpoena.

Comment 1050 cited *FTC* v. *Atlantic Richfield Co.*, 567 F. 2d 96 (D.C. Cir. 1977), in support of the suggestion that materials received under this program should not be made available by the agencies to individuals not involved in the premerger review process. The Commission takes the view that the *Atlantic Richfield* case has no relevance to this situation. In *Atlantic Richfield*, the court suggested "various plausible arguments" (id. at 103) for the proposition that the FTC rules of practice and the due process clause bar the Commission staff participating in an adjudicative proceeding before an administrative law judge from obtaining access to documents or information obtained pursuant to subpoena in a separate FTC investigation, without notice to the parties and approval of the administrative law judge. The court ordered the Commission to make public its own interpretation of its rules, but did not purport to mandate the content of that interpretation. This interpretation was recently issued by the Commission and would in no way bar use of materials obtained through this program in any other Commission investigation or proceeding.

The Commission interprets the provision of section 7A(h) that the information submitted may be made public "as may be relevant to any administrative or judicial action or proceeding" to authorize making it public, in the agency's discretion, in any proceeding brought by or against the Commission or the Assistant Attorney General, whether the submitting person is a party or not. Nothing in the legislative history or intent of the act supports the more limited interpretations urged implicitly by comment 1050 and explicitly by other comments (e.g., 70, 120). Comments 70 and 120 suggested that the materials should only be made public in judicial or administrative proceedings brought by the Government to challenge the particular acquisition that is the subject of the notification and then only when the reporting person is a party. However, comment 120 conceded in a footnote that if the use of the submitted data is not so limited, it should at least be limited to proceedings against the submitting party. The comment argued that to use the data against another party would make a mockery of the statute and would undermine the effectiveness of the act.

The Commission does not agree. The language of the act contemplates that the data may be made public by the Commission or the Assistant Attorney General in any administrative or judicial proceeding to which the Commission or the Department of Justice is a party. There is no reason to believe that the act's effectiveness will be hampered by such a policy. As long as information is lawfully obtained, it may be used by the agencies for any law enforcement purpose.

Comment 1075 suggested that whenever material submitted pursuant to the act is to be used in an administrative or judicial proceeding, the submitting person should be given prior notice so that a protective order may be sought in appropriate situations. When the submitting person is a party to the proceeding, no special notice procedures are contemplated since the act contemplates such use by the agencies. The comment was therefore viewed as applying to situations in which the person that submitted the material is not a party to the proceeding in which the material is to be introduced.

Because section 7A(h) does not restrict or qualify the ability of the agencies to use submitted material, the Commission does not believe that any formal notice provision is required by the act, and none has been adopted in the final rules. However, the Commission recognizes that reporting persons have an interest in protecting their sensitive competitive data from public disclosure in the course of law enforcement proceedings to which they are not parties. Therefore, as a matter of policy, the Commission and the Assistant Attorney General will instruct their staffs in such cases to give persons reasonable notice, when possible, prior to introduction or other use of such material that would result in its becoming part of the public record of the proceeding.

Two comments (70, 120) urged that 10 days' notice be provided to the reporting party before the data is submitted to Congress. Within the constraints sometimes imposed by congressional requests for data, the Commission and Assistant Attorney General will also instruct their staffs to give reporting persons reasonable notice of any release of such data to Congress, when possible.

Comment 120 suggested a rule to limit permissible disclosure to congressional committees or subcommittees to "official" requests made by majority vote containing an intent to respect the confidential nature of the information. This suggestion was rejected. It is inappropriate to attempt to prescribe by rule the procedural acceptability of a Congressional request.

RISK ARBITRAGEURS

Comment 1095 urged that acquisitions of voting securities in risk arbitrage transactions be entirely exempted from the act. According to the comment, risk arbitrageurs are investment banking firms or other securities dealers that, upon the announcement of a pending merger, acquisition, or tender offer, buy the securities of the company to be acquired or sell short the securities of the acquiring company. They realize a profit if the merger actually takes place as planned, since ordinarily the value of the stock of the acquired person increases and the value of the acquiring person's stock declines. The comment stated that arbitrageurs assume substantial capital risks but serve a useful function by helping to stabilize the frequently volatile market resulting from a merger or tender offer announcement. The comment recommended that arbitrage transactions be exempted since arbitrageurs do not ordinarily hold voting securities on a long-term basis, nor do they typically have any interest in participating in the business decisions of the companies whose stock they purchase. It argued that they are competitively irrelevant and serve only a market-stabilizing function.

This comment was rejected. Arbitrageurs should not be treated differently from other institutional investors that enjoy only a limited exemption under § 802.64. Since arbitrageurs may qualify as broker-dealers within § 802.64(a)(9), their purchases of voting securities in the ordinary course of business solely for the purpose of investment may be exempt under the final rules until their holdings reach the level of at least 15 percent of the outstanding stock of the issuer worth at least $25 million. Beyond that point, arbitrageurs, like all other institutional investors, must comply with the act.

Specifically, the Commission was not satisfied that the holdings of arbitrageurs never have anticompetitive consequences. There is no assurance, when an arbitrageur makes a purchase of stock, that it will not hold the shares for a longer period than it anticipates or that it will not act to influence or control management. In some circumstances, it is possible that the existence of large holdings by arbitrageurs may have an effect on management. In addition, it seems difficult to define with any degree of accuracy or certainty, for the purpose of drafting an exemption, which transactions are to be considered arbitrage transactions, and the comment did not suggest a solution.

NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM

CONCEPT OF FORM

The notification and report form appears as an appendix to part 803 of the rules. It is designated in § 803.1 as the notification required by section 7A(a) of the act. Thus, in cases of noncompliance use of § 803.10(c)(2) procedures or the enforcement proceedings specified in sections 7A (g)(1) and (g)(2) may follow if the form is not properly completed and filed. As § 803.1(a) states, all persons required by the act to file notification must do so by completing and filing a copy of the form, including any documents required to be supplied in response to any items on the form. The form is designed to provide the Commission and the Assistant Attorney General with the information necessary and appropriate for an initial evaluation of the potential anticompetitive impact of an acquisition. Its completion by all parties required to file will ordinarily permit both agencies to determine whether the waiting period should be allowed to expire, or whether a request for additional information should be made under section 7A(e) and § 803.20, potentially leading to a preliminary injunction or administrative proceeding challenging the acquisition, or to an enforcement action under section 7A(g).

The form is not intended to elicit all potentially relevant information relating to an acquisition. Relevant information not specifically requested by any of the items on the form may be obtained by either agency by means of a request for additional information under section 7A(e) and § 803.20. The reporting person may also supply additional information voluntarily pursuant to § 803.1(b).

The information requested by the form includes, in summary:

The identities of the persons involved and the type of acquisition (item 1);

A description of the voting securities or assets to be acquired and of the means by which the acquisition is to be carried out (item 2);

The percentage and total dollar amount of the assets and voting securities of the acquired person to be held by the acquiring person as a result of the acquisition (item 3);

Copies of various SEC filings, annual reports and financial statements of the reporting person, as well as studies or analyses of the acquisition (item 4);

A listing of dollar revenues derived by the reporting person, broken down separately by industry, product class, and product (item 5);

Information about the entities included within the reporting person, as well as information about the shareholders of the reporting person and the shareholdings of the reporting person in other persons (item 6);

Geographic market information relating to industries in which the reporting person and another party to the acquisition both derived dollar revenues (item 7);

Information about revenues resulting from certain vendor-vendee relationships existing between the reporting person and another party to the acquisition (item 8);

Any other recent acquisitions by the acquiring person in an industry from which both it and the acquired person derive dollar revenues (item 9).

The purpose of the act is to assist the agencies in identifying, before they are consummated, transactions that may violate the antitrust laws. Section 7A(d)(1) therefore provides that the Commission "shall require that the notification * * * be in such form and contain such documentary material and information relevant to a proposed acquisition as is necessary and appropriate" to enable the agencies "to determine whether such acquisitions may, if consummated, violate the antitrust laws." The Commission has determined that each of the items on the form fulfills the statutory mandate.

Another possible course of action, which was rejected by the Commission, would have been to require only a perfunctory notification and seek detailed data by means of requests for additional information. This course, which several comments (e.g., 1023, 1080) suggested, was rejected for several reasons. First, this position misconceives the amount of information necessary to make even a tentative determination of whether a transaction may violate the antitrust laws. The act clearly contemplates that the initial notification should contain all information and documents "necessary and appropriate" for the purpose of determining the competitive impact of the acquisition. It explicitly leaves to the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, the determination of what constitutes such information. A perfunctory initial report would not fulfill the congressional intent expressed in section 7A(d)(1).

Second, to require a shorter initial notification would more frequently lead to the issuance of a request for additional information, with its consequent delay and burden on the reporting person or persons. If second requests were issued more frequently, the average waiting period would be longer, rather than shorter, than it would be with a more comprehensive initial notification procedure. In many cases the more data the receipt of which is deferred, the greater would be the ultimate burden on the reporting person.

One comment (1059) suggested that the interests of reporting persons would be better served if the most burdensome questions were made optional and the reporting person allowed to balance for itself the risk of a second request. The comment argued that for clearly innocuous acquisitions and clearly irrelevant information, the reporting burden, and the agencies' burden of reviewing this information, could thus be mitigated. The Commission did not adopt this suggestion. The Commission believes that section 7A(e) provides the mechanism of requests for additional information in order to assist the agencies in their efforts to obtain additional information about acquisitions that the agencies believe, based on information contained in the initial report, may require a petition for judicial or administrative relief. To permit optional compliance with the provisions of the initial report would undermine the usefulness of the second request mechanism, would seriously hinder the agencies in their efforts to carry out their congressionally mandated review, and would be administratively unworkable.

Furthermore, optional compliance with the provisions of the form could create a temptation on the part of reporting persons to withhold potentially crucial information concerning an acquisition's impact on competition. In order to discourage such practices, the agencies would be forced routinely to make second requests for information not supplied on the Form. This result would create longer delays for reporting persons, and would defeat the purpose of the suggestion.

Several comments (e.g., 1011, 1023) complained about what they felt was an excessive burden of paperwork related to the form. The Commission has determined that the information required is only that which is necessary and appropriate to implement the congressional mandate to create an effective premerger notification program.

EXPLANATION AND INSTRUCTIONS

The explanation and instructions found on pages 1-3 of the notification and report form are intended to supply certain basic information. They must be read in conjunction with the act and the rules. Some of the explanations and instructions for completing the form are found in the rules themselves, especially in § 803.2. The terms used in the form are defined in the rules rather than in the form itself. The definition of one term used in the form but not the rules, "dollar revenues," has been moved from the "definitions" portion of the form, where it was in the original form, to § 803.2(d). The balance of the terms are defined in § 801.1

As § 803.1(a) implies, one need not necessarily file notification by completing a preprinted copy of the form provided by one of the agencies. Photostatic or other equivalent reproductions are permitted, and many items requiring detailed responses will require separate additional sheets.

The third paragraph of the instructions describes how many copies of the form are to be sent to each agency and gives their addresses. The affidavit required by § 803.5 should be attached to the front page. Without the affidavit, notification is incomplete. See the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 803.5.

A box is provided on the first page of the form for the reporting person to check whether the acquisition is a cash tender offer. This box gives the agency staff immediate notice that the waiting period is only 15 days and begins upon receipt of the acquiring person's form, as provided in section 7A(b)(1)(B), and that review must therefore be expedited.

The "name and date" blanks are provided to help the agency staff immediately identify the report as belonging to a particular person. The blanks under (b) and (c) call for additional information when rules are employed permitting an entity other than the ultimate parent entity to file notification; see the discussions of § 803.2(a) and 803.4 on these instances. The name of the reporting person is repeated at the top of each page of the form in order to assure the identification of each page should they become accidentally separated.

In general, the form employs the Standard Industrial Classification ("SIC") system employed by the Bureau of the Census. The SIC-based product and industry categories are available in the "Standard Industrial Classification Manual" and other publications; the instructions provide the exact citation for that volume as well as for additional publications noted as references for 5-digit (SIC-based code) product class and 7-digit (SIC-based code) product. For 7-digit product codes ending in 00, the instructions request that more detailed information be supplied from appendix A to the Numerical List of Manufactured Products, because codes ending in 00 do not provide sufficient detail on the precise product involved.

The instructions provide that if precise information is not available, best estimates may be supplied, but must be indicated by the notation "est." The sources of such estimates must also be indicated. Furnishing an estimate in these circumstances will ordinarily not be regarded as a failure to supply a complete response within the meaning of § 803.3 and does not require a statement of reasons for noncompliance as provided in that section. Persons which have information on a fiscal year, rather than calendar year, basis may supply the requested data for the fiscal year which most nearly corresponds to the calendar year specified.

The final paragraph of the instructions reminds the individual completing the form of certain special provisions of § 803.2 that may increase or decrease the amount of information required. These provisions are explained in the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 803.2.

ITEM 1(a)

Item 1(a) requires the reporting person to check boxes to indicate the basic character of the reportable transaction. All applicable boxes should be checked.

ITEM 1(b)

Item 1(b) requires the reporting person to indicate whether it is the acquiring or acquired person in the transaction, or, when applicable, both. If the reporting person is both an acquiring and an acquired person in a single transaction, it need not submit two entirely separate reports. It may instead file one report as both an acquired and an acquiring person, but must respond to certain items separately in each capacity. See § 803.2(b).

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO ITEM 1(b)

Original item 1(b) required listing all "active entities" included within the reporting person. The final form requires listing the entities included within the reporting person in response to item 6(a). See the Statement of Basis and Purpose to item 6.

ITEM 1(c)

Item 1(c) requires the name and address of the preacquisition ultimate parent entity.

ITEM 1(d)

Item 1(d) requires the reporting person to indicate the legal form or orgainzation of the reporting person, i.e., corporation, partnership, etc. If a corporation, the reporting person must indicate the state of incorporation; if a partnership, the state of jurisdiction.

ITEM 1(e)

Item 1(e) requires the reporting person to indicate whether the data submitted on the notification and report form is furnished by calendar or fiscal year, and if by fiscal year, the dates of the fiscal year.

ITEM 1(f)

Item 1(f) need not be completed if the ultimate parent entity is itself the acquiring or acquired entity. If the acquiring or acquired entity is not the ultimate parent entity listed in item 1(c), the reporting person must identify the name and mailing address of the acquiring or acquired entity, and (if applicable) its state of incorporation. The percentage of voting securities of this entity held by the ultimate parent entity described in item 1(c) must also be indicated. If the ultimate parent entity controls the acquiring or acquired entity indirectly, the report must describe this indirect control.

DELETION OF REVISED ITEM 1(g)

See the Statement of Basis and Purpose to item 6.

ITEM 2(a)

Item 2(a) requires the reporting person to list the name and mailing address of each acquiring and acquired person, whether or not each such person is itself required to report. The major instance in which fewer than all the parties to an acquisition may be required to file notification is the creation of a joint venture or other corporation. See § 801.40(b).

Item 2(a) requires a brief description of the assets or voting securities to be acquired, the consideration to be received by the acquired person and, if known, the identity of any holders other than the issuer from which the voting securities are to be acquired. Acquisitions from holders other than the issuer may occur in tender offers and the other types of transactions described in § 801.30. In tender offers for widely-held entities, as well as in purchases of stock traded on securities exchanges, the number of such holders will be extemely large. Item 2(a) thus requires disclosing the identity of non-issuer holders only when the acquired entity is not widely held.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO ITEM 2(a)

Original item 2(a) required the listing of all other companies "involved in the transaction." A number of comments (e.g., 25, 28, 71, 112, 120) criticized the use of this phrase as ambiguous, since it could conceivably refer to (among others) law firms, banks, escrow agents, auditors, brokers, or other persons incidentally participating in the acquisition. The item did not seek to identify so broad a category of persons. Final item 2(a) clarifies that only acquiring and acquired persons and, if applicable, non-issuer holders need be listed.

ITEM 2(b)

Item 2(b) requires the reporting person to indicate, if known, the scheduled consummation date of the acquisition. If the date is unknown at the time of filing, an estimated date should be provided and the basis of the estimate explained. If the parties have agreed to a formula by which the closing date will be determined (e.g., "60 days after termination of the waiting period"), this formula should be provided.

rather than a value resulting from a formal appraisal.

ITEM 2(c)

Item 2(c) requires the reporting person to describe the manner in which the acquisition is to be carried out, including the expected dates of major events in the acquisition, such as stockholders' meetings, filing of requests for approval, other public filings, terminations of tender offers, etc.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO ITEM 2(c)

Original item 2(c) required the description of "each necessary step" in the transaction. A number of comments (e.g., 71, 89, 112) criticized the use of this phrase as overly broad or unnecessary for law enforcement purposes. In addition, others (e.g., 30; 1098) argued that this provision might require the submission of information not available to the reporting company at the time of filing. Two comments (28, 112) recommended that the only vital date for law enforcement purposes should be the prospective closing date of the transaction.

The language of final item 2(c) has been clarified. The use of the phrase "necessary steps" has been abandoned. Instead, reporting companies are required to describe generally the intended course of the transaction including the expected dates of major events. The item gives examples of such events.

ITEM 2(d)(i)

Item 2(d)(i) need be completed only by persons engaged in an assets acquisition; persons engaged in an acquisition of voting securities need not submit this information. The item requires the reporting person to describe and provide an approximate dollar value for all general classes of assets (other than cash and securities) to be acquired by each party to the acquisition. If the acquisition is the formation of a joint venture or other corporation, the description must include all general classes of assets to be acquired by the joint venture pursuant to agreement among the persons forming the corporation.

For each general class of assets, the reporting person must (when applicable) indicate the page or paragraph number of the contract or other document submitted with the form in which the assets are more particularly described.

The term "general classes of assets" refers to general types and catagories of assets, rather than any specific meaning in accounting terminology or otherwise. Examples are land, merchandise inventory, manufacturing inventory, manufacturing plants, retail stores, goodwill and other intangibles. The term "approximate dollar value" refers to an approximation of value, rather than a value resulting from a formal appraisal.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO ITEM 2(d)(i)

Original item 2(d)(i) required the reporting person to describe "all * * * assets" to be acquired. The final version of the item refines this requirement to permit the description of general classes of assets.

A number of comments (e.g. 1057, 1098) criticized item 2(d)(i) on the grounds that the compilation of this data would be too burdensome. The Commission believes that information concerning general classes of acquired assets is necessary and appropriate to antitrust analysis, and is unlikely to constitute a significant burden for reporting persons. Another comment (77) suggested that any description of assets be limited to the degree of detail necessary in order to identify the product or service generated by the asset. The latter comment has been adopted in substance in the final version of this item.

Another comment (1086) suggested that reporting companies will have difficulty determining "approximate dollar values" for classes of assets without undertaking an extensive appraisal of those assets. The "approximate dollar value" requirement of item 2(d)(i) is intended only to provide the agencies with a rough estimate of the value of each class of acquired assets. It does not require an appraisal. The more structured determination of dollar value under § 801.10 applies to the aggregate dollar value of all assets to be acquired, and it must be reported under item 3. If the acquired person holds only one class of assets, that value is the proper response to item 2(d)(i) as well as item 3.

However, if the acquired person holds more than one class of assets, and the acquiring person is acquiring more than one such class, item 2(d)(i) requires more detail. The aggregate dollar value should in this case be broken down into approximate dollar values for each general class of acquired assets. Alternatively, the book value of each class of the acquired assets can be used if it bears a reasonable relationship to fair market value.

ITEM 2(d)(ii)

If the acquiring person, at the time of the signing of the agreement to acquire assets of the acquired person, holds any assets of that person that it acquired in the previous 180 days, it must describe and provide a dollar value for each general class of the earlier-acquired assets. The rule applies only if the second acquisition is of assets, not voting securities. See § 801.13(b)(2). The term "dollar value" means "approximate dollar value," as employed in item 2(d)(i). See the statement of basis and purpose to item 2(d)(i).

ITEM 2(e)

Item 2(e) need be completed only by parties to a voting securities acquisition. The item requires all reporting persons to provide, for each issuer whose voting securities will be acquired, information on the classes and dollar values of those issuers' voting securities. When voting securities of an issuer are being acquired indirectly, those securities are not listed in response to this item, although the issuers of such securities will be listed in response to item 6(a) of the acquired person's form. Similarly, when voting securities are being acquired in a secondary acquisition, those securities are not listed in response to this item on the form submitted for the primary acquisition, since separate notification and report forms must be submitted for the secondary acquisition. See the statement of basis and purpose to § 801.4. This information must be submitted for all classes of securities, regardless of whether securities within a particular class will actually be acquired in the transaction. This information is relevant to the review process since it will assist the agencies in determining the actual degree of control arising from the acquisition. The required information includes:

(i) A list of all classes of voting securities that will be outstanding after the acquisition (regardless of whether stock in each particular class will be acquired in the transaction), and a list of all classes of non-voting securities that will be acquired in the acquisition. When more than one class of voting securities is outstanding, the reporting person must include a description of the voting rights of each class;

(ii) The total number of shares of each class listed under (i) that will be outstanding after the acquisition;

(iii) The total number of shares of each class listed under (i) that will be acquired in the acquisition;

(iv) The identity of each person acquiring the securities of any class listed under (i);

(v) The dollar value of securities of each class listed under (i) that are to be acquired in the acquisition (for purposes of determining dollar value, the provisions of § 801.10(a) must be followed);

(vi) The total number of shares of each class of securities listed under (i) that will be held by the acquiring person(s) after the acquisition;

(vii) The percentage of each class of securities listed under (vi) that will be held by the acquiring person(s) after the acquisition.

For subsections (iii)-(vii), if there is more than one acquiring person, separate data must be submitted for each such person.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO ITEM 2(e)

The version of item 2(a) appearing in the original form required the description of assets to be received in the transaction. These provisions were redesignated item 2(d) in the revised and final forms. Revised and final item 2(e) require the description of voting securities to be acquired.

A number of comments (e.g., 26, 30; 1098) stated that the information sought was too detailed and would impose an undue burden on the reporting person. The Commission disagrees. This type of data is easily available to reporting persons. In order to evaluate fully a voting securities acquisition, the agencies must be informed of the details of the acquisition and its effect on the capital structure of the acquired person. If this information is not obtained, the agencies' evaluation will be incomplete. Another comment (77) suggested that since item 2(e) does not reflect the transfer of new issues or treasury stock, the form should be amended to require the submission of data concerning the pre- and post-acquisition capital structures of the acquired issuer. The Commission has concluded that the submission of preacquisition data would be unnecessary for law enforcement purposes. Any anti competitive effect arising from the transaction will be primarily the result of the post acquisition structure.

ITEM 2(f)(i)

Item 2(f)(i) requires that the reporting person furnish copies of final or most recent versions of all documents constituting the agreement between the acquiring and acquired persons. Only documents embodying the actual agreement are requested, and ancillary documents need not be submitted. If only a letter of intent has been signed, it should be provided. In the case of a tender offer, the acquiring person should submit a copy of the tender offer, and the acquired person need not do so. For secondary acquisitions and transactions described by § 801.31, the background of the acquisition should be explained, but no documents need be submitted. If there are no such documents because of the nature of the transaction (for example, when the acquiring person intends to acquire voting securities on a stock exchange or exercise a conversion privilege), no submission in response to this item is required.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO ITEM 2(f)(i)

The predecessor of this item, original item 2(g), required the reporting person to furnish copies of all documents "relating to" the acquisition. A substantial number of comments criticized this provision.

A number of comments (e.g., 37, 47, 63, 71, 77, 87, 90, 103, 112, 115) criticized the item as too broadly worded and likely to require the production of largely irrelevant documents. Several comments (e.g., 11, 37, 63, 88, 112) suggested possible limitations on the item, including limiting it to documents that are "governing," "basic," "in sufficiently final form" or contain "material terms." While the suggested terms were considered unworkably imprecise, they do describe in a general sense those documents that the Commission believes are necessary and appropriate to preliminary review. Accordingly, the Commission concluded that the scope of the item should be narrowed considerably. Final item 2(f)(i) requires the submission of only those documents that actually constitute the agreement, and no ancillary documents.

Several comments (e.g., 41, 77, 90) suggested that documents containing confidential business and financial information should be exempt from submission. The Commission believes that these comments are the result of an erroneous interpretation of the scope and purpose of the act. The act exempts no relevant information from disclosure to the enforcement agencies, regardless of its sensitivity or confidentiality. If anything, a careful reading of the act indicates that the congressional intention was exactly the opposite. Section 7A(h) specifically exempts information and documents received by the agencies pursuant to the act from disclosure under the Freedom of Information Act. Thus, it appears that Congress envisioned the submission of confidential information. In light of the statutory language, the final rules take the position that no exception will be made under item 2(f)(i) merely because the contents of these documents are allegedly confidential.

ITEM 2(f)(ii)

Item 2(f)(ii) requires the reporting person to furnish an index containing a brief description of each ancillary document or class of documents related to the agreement underlying the reported acquisition. The phrase "related to" is considerably broader than the term "constitute" used in item 2(f)(i). Specific examples of relevant ancillary documents include documents relating to personnel matters, third-party financing agreements, leases, subleases and other documents relating to the transfer of realty. An index to these documents will permit the agencies to identify particular documents in a second request.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO ITEM 2(f)(ii)

Original item 2(g) would have required the submission of all documents related to the transaction. This item, which first appeared in the revised form, requires the submission of an index of ancillary documents, rather than the documents themselves.

A number of comments suggested that the compilation of such an index was unnecessary (1044, 1104) and too burdensome (1044, 1053). However, an index of ancillary documents is both necessary and appropriate to antitrust review. The information contained in such an index will permit the agencies to identify particular documents appropriate to second requests, should such requests be necessary.

Another comment (1028) suggested that the required compilation of an index was beyond the statutory authority because the information contained in the index would be irrelevant to antitrust considerations. The Commission disagrees. Section 7(A)(d)(1) states that the notification shall contain such relevant information and doucmentary material as is necessary and appropriate to enable the agencies to determine whether the acquisition will violate the antitrust laws. The documents required to be indexed in item 2(f)(ii) are expressly limited to those "relating to" the reported acquisition. The agencies have found such documents to be useful in evaluating the legality of past acquisitions. Thus, the information submitted in response to item 2(f)(ii) falls within the mandate of section 7A(d)(1). Furthermore, inasmuch as the compilation of an index will be essentially a clerical function, it cannot be said to be an excessively burdensome task.

ITEM 3

Item 3 requires the reporting person to state the percentage of assets and voting securities of the acquired person, and the aggregate total dollar amount of such assets and securities, that will be held by each acquiring person as a result of the acquisiton. In the majority of transactions, reporting persons will respond to either 3(a) or 3(b), but not both. All reporting persons must respond to 3(c). The responses to item 3 are intended to confirm the basis on which the acquisition meets the size-of-transaction test of section 7A(a)(3).

Item 3 requires only approximations of the percentages and aggregate total dollar amounts of assets and voting securities. Particularly as to those criteria of the 15 percent or 15 million test that are self-evidently either satisfied or not satisfied, precise figures are not required. Furthermore, the reporting persons may concede that certain criteria contained in item 3 are satisfied, and submit approximate answers to those criteria that are not satisfied.

Background Information to Item 3

Item 3 is intended to be a recapitulation of the 15 percent or $15 million test of section 7A(a)(3).

Several comments (e.g., 5, 120) suggested that information submitted under item 3(b) would be superfluous inasmuch as the same information is required under item 2(e). This interpretation is incorrect. The information contained in item 3 is needed to verify the computations of the reporting persons under section 7A(a)(3) and thus that the act applies to the transaction. The information contained in item 2(e), on the other hand, provides a more detailed picture of the overall capital structure of the acquired person. That information is designed to assist substantive antitrust review by the law enforcement agencies and has no bearing on the reportability of the transaction. For this reason item 3 is not duplicative. Furthermore, since the response to item 3 will require no more than disclosure of the calculations the reporting person must perform under section 7A(a)(3), the item cannot be said to constitute an unreasonable burden upon reporting persons.

Revised item 3 would have required separate reporting for the holdings of the acquiring ultimate parent entity and its affiliates. Since the final rules define the term "affiliate" to exclude persons or entities not included within the acquiring person, see § 801.1(d), final item 3 has been amended to remove this separate reporting requirement.

ITEM 4

Item 4 requires the reporting person to furnish copies of a number of documents commmonly prepared for filing with the SEC or for other corporate purposes. The reporting person must submit copies of its own documents and, if entities included within the reporting person have their own documents that are different from those of the reporting person, copies of those entities' documents as well.

In the heading to the item, the reference to documents "of the person filing notification" merits explanation. If the person is a corporation that treats all its controlled (as defined in § 801.1(b)) subsidiaries as components of a single unit, then the documents "of the person" naturally will be the documents that apply to that corporation.

ITEM 4 (a)

Item 4(a) requires the reporting person to furnish copies of certain documents if they were filed with the SEC within 3 years prior to the date of filing the notification and report form, or if they are to be filed contemporaneously with the SEC in connection with the acquisition. These documents include the most recent proxy statement and most recent form 10-K. In addition, all registration statements, forms 10-Q and forms 8-K filed since the end of the period reflected by the most recent form 10-K must be submitted. If the acquisition is a tender offer, schedule 14D-1 must also be submitted if it has already been filed with the SEC or will be filed with the SEC contemporanously with the filing of the notification and report form with the Commission and the Assistant Attorney General. If schedule 14D-1 has not been filed with the SEC prior to the filing of the notification and report form, and will not be filed contemporanously with the notification and report form, it need not be submitted in response to item 4(a).

Background Information to Item 4(a)

The documents requested by item 4(a) contain information which will prove helpful to the enforcement agencies in evaluating the impact of the acquisition upon competition. Since these documents will be readily at hand, requiring their submission imposes no undue burden on reporting person.

If the reporting person does not have copies of responsive documents readily available, the reporting person may instead identify each document and indicate its date and place of filing.

Item 4(a) has undergone some change since the original form. First, original item 4(a) required the submission of the most recently filed copies of all enumerated types of documents, regardless of how long ago such documents may have been filed. Several comments (e.g., 11, 15, 59, 77, 104) argued that only relatively recent documents would be useful for review purposes. Accordingly, the final item required that such documents be submitted only if they were filed with the SEC within the 3 years prior to the date of filing of the notification and report form. Second, the revised item required the reporting person to submit all registration statements filed with the SEC during the 3 years prior to the filing of the premerger notification report. Comment 1091 noted that all of this information, to the extent not outdated, would be included in the most recent form 10-K. The final version requires the submission of only those registration statements filed since the end of the period reflected by the most recent form 10-K.

The SEC comment (1058) suggested that problems could arise with regard to the filing of SEC schedule 14D-1, relating to tender offers. The comment suggested that in many cases tender offerors will not have access to all of the information required to be disclosed under schedule 14D-1 at the time of submission of the notification and report form and thus may not have prepared schedule 14D-1 at time of filing the form. Under these circumstances, to require the submission of schdule 14D-1 at the time of filing might delay the filing until schedule 14-1 was completed. The comment recommended that item 4(a) of the notification and report form be construed in such a manner as to require schedule 14D-1 to be submitted to the Commission and the Assistant Attorney General as a supplement to item 4(a) contemporaneously with its filing with the SEC.

The final version of item 4(a) does not follow the suggestion of the SEC. The final rules require that the reporting person submit schedule 14D-1 in response to item 4(a) only if the schedule has already been filed with the SEC or will be filed with the SEC contemporaneously with the filing of the notification and report form. Instead of requiring a supplemental filing, whenever the schedule is unavailable at the time the acquiring person completes item 4(a), the agencies may request it as part of a second request. Furthermore, reporting persons may wish to submit schedule 14D-1 voluntarily as a supplement to item 4(a). See § 803.1(b).

Another comment (35) suggested that submission of the requested documents under item 4(a) was unnecessary because these documents are available from the SEC. Although the documents are generally available, the agency staffs will be under severe time constraints in reviewing filings under the act. Obtaining the required documents for each reporting person would be extremely time-consuming. The added burden of requiring the agencies to obtain these documents from the SEC would impede the effective and timely review envisioned by the act. By contrast, for reporting persons the burden of submitting copies of these documents should be minimal, if copies are available.

Finally, comment 77 suggested that reporting persons furnish only those documents filed with the SEC that contain primarily financial statements, rather than nonfinancial information such as proxy statements. The final version of the item does not follow this suggestion. Regardless of the presence of financial statements, SEC filings are likely to contain information concerning the structure, operations and plans of the person that will facilitate review of the acquisition by the agencies.

ITEM 4(b)

Item 4(b) requires the reporting person to furnish copies of the most recent annual reports and annual audit reports of the person filing notification and of all unconsolidated United States issuers included within the person. In addition, if the most recent regularly prepared balance sheets of the person or of the unconsolidated United States issuers contain information more recent than (and different from) that contained in the most recent annual report and annual audit report, the balance sheets must also be submitted. This situation may arise, for example, when the most recent regularly prepared balance sheet is a quarterly or monthly balance sheet prepared after the most recent annual report. The term "unconsolidated issuer" means an entity whose operations and financial position are not reflected in the financial statements of the ultimate parent entity or the entire reporting person. It is immaterial for purposes of item 4(b) whether such unconsolidated issuers are involved in the reported acquisition. The term "United States issuer" is defined in § 801.1(e)(1)(ii). Note that all persons must respond to item 4(b) without regard to whether they are required to file reports with the SEC.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO ITEM 4(b)

The annual reports, audit reports, and balance sheets to be submitted in response to item 4(b) constitute basic data that the agencies will employ in gaging the likely impact of the acquisition upon competition. Original item 4(b) would have required the submission of "all documents issued during the 3 years prior to the filing of this report which contain information directly pertaining to the reported transaction." A large number of comments (e.g., 15, 28, 30, 37, 41) criticized the breadth and obscurity of this language. In response to these comments, the information sought under original item 4(b) is described in more detail in the final version of item 4(c).

The revised version of item 4(b) was substantially similar to the final version. However, revised item 4(b) would have required the reporting person to furnish information for all unconsolidated entities included within the reporting person. Several comments (e.g., 1026, 1094, 1099) criticized the requirement of submitting such documents for unconsolidated foreign entities. One comment (1094) suggested that the submission of such documents for unconsolidated foreign entities might violate foreign corporate secrecy statutes. The Commission reexamined the need for these statements, and determined that information regarding foreign entities can be relegated to requests for additional information. Accordingly, final item 4(b) requires the submission of annual reports, annual audit reports, and regularly prepared balance sheets only for unconsolidated "United States issuers" included within the reporting person. This amendment renders item 4(b) consistent with items 5, 7 through 9, and the insurance appendix, which require the submission of information with respect to United States operations alone. See § 803.2(c).

ITEM 4(c)

Item 4(c) requires the submission of all studies, surveys, analyses and reports prepared by or for officers or directors for the purpose of evaluating or analyzing the acquisition with respect to various aspects of competition.

The reporting person must submit only those documents prepared in connection with the reported acquisition. Documents pertaining to other mergers or acquisitions by the acquiring person, even if in the same market as the acquired person in the reported transaction, need not be submitted. Further, only those documents relating to markets, competition, competitors, potential for sales growth or expansion into product or geographic markets, and geographic and product market shares need be supplied. Documents relating to other matters, such as pension arrangements, labor contracts, financing agreements or securities matters need not be supplied. Finally, only documents prepared "by or for any officer(s) or director(s)" need be submitted. Officers or directors of any entity included within the reporting person meet this standard. The language "by or for" embraces documents prepared by any persons, including consultants, for officers or directors. The date of preparation and name and title of the individual who prepared each document must be indicated if not contained in the document itself.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO ITEM 4(c)

Item 4(c) requires the submission of documents that the Commission views as essential to perform preliminary evaluations of mergers or acquisitions adequately. Internal documents of the parties to an acquisition provide a perspective on matters of antitrust concern that even detailed statistical information is unlikely to yield. SIC data, while the most satisfactory data available, are occasionally imperfect for determining product markets. Likewise, the other items on the form, while designed to elicit appropriate information, cannot be expected to answer all of the basic questions in every acquisition. The agencies have found from past experience that the viewpoints of the participants are extremely valuable in analyzing the antitrust implications of an acquisition and have determined that some of these perceptions are indispensable to the preliminary review envisioned by the act. As later portions of this discussion indicate, the final version of the items represents a substantial reduction in the scope of the document request.

Furthermore, the documents submitted under this item will enable the agency staffs to determine rapidly which statistical information is likely to be important. Since the waiting period may provide a very short time in which to analyze a relatively complex acquisition, acceleration of the review process by means of internal documents is essential.

Item 4(c) and its earlier drafts provoked many critical comments. Comment 35, for instance, suggested that any information derived from documents sought under either version of the item would be speculative at best. Numerous other comments considered the documents more properly the subject of a request for additional information and documentary material (e.g., 59, 85, 87, 94, 111, 115, 120, 1075, 1104), or a discovery motion in the course of litigation (e.g., 112; 1108). The Commission disagrees. Item 4(c) requests the production of a narrow class of documents that is necessary and appropriate for purposes of preliminary antitrust review. As noted by Congressman Rodino on the House floor:

> [I]n most cases, the Government will be requesting the very data that is already available to the merging parties, and has already been assembled and analyzed by them. If the merging parties are prepared to rely on it, all of it should be available to the Government.

122 Cong. Rec. H10293 (daily ed. Sept. 16, 1976). Documents analyzing or evaluating a merger generally form the basis of a party's decision to proceed with an acquisition. As such, those documents are highly relevant for review purposes. In light of the agencies' congressional mandate to evaluate reported mergers and acquisitions effectively, any further limitation on the scope of item 4(c) would seriously impair the agencies' efforts to fulfill their delegated responsibility.

A large number of comments (e.g., 37, 59, 63, 70, 77, 78, 101, 109, 111, 112, 120; 1050, 1088) recommended that documents containing sensitive financial information or trade secrets be exempt from production under item 4(c). This suggestion was rejected. The Commission believes that fears of improper public disclosure of confidential information are unfounded in light of § 7A(h). That subsection provides that information filed with the agencies is exempt from disclosure under the Freedom of Information Act, and may not be made public except in an administrative or judicial proceeding, or to Congress.

Other comments (e.g., 59, 63, 77, 109, 111, 1044, 1058) suggested that documents protected by the attorney-client or other privileges should be exempt from disclosure under item 4(c). The Commission has declined to follow this suggestion. Section 7A(d)(1) contemplates the submission of all relevant documents and provides no exemption for privileged documents. Therefore, none is provided in the rules. If allegedly privileged documents are withheld, notification is incomplete and a statement of reasons for noncompliance conforming to § 803.3 must be submitted. Whether a reporting person has substantially complied with the act and rules when allegedly privileged documents have been withheld will be determined on a case-by-case basis by the enforcement agencies, and, when necessary, by courts under section 7A(g).

Original item 2(h), the predecessor of item 4(c), was considerably broader than the final item. It would have required submission of all documents prepared within the 3 years preceding notification that "discuss the reasons for or analyze the proposed transaction." In addition, it would have called for any documents that pertain to markets, competitors, expansion, etc., into any product or service manufactured or sold by the other reporting company.

Most of the comments received were highly critical of this original, broader draft. Numerous comments (e.g., 15, 28, 30, 37, 47, 59, 85, 103, 111, 112, 120) objected that the item was burdensome. Others (e.g., 47, 59, 78, 112) suggested that much of the information submitted would be irrelevant for purposes of reviewing the antitrust implications of the reported acquisition. These comments led to a substantially streamlined revised version of the request. Revised item 4(c) would have required the submission of documents prepared "by or for any officer(s) or director(s) for the purpose of evaluating, or analyzing the acquisition with respect to market shares, competition, competitors, markets, potential for sales growth or expansion into product and geographic markets." Thus, the revised version would have required the submission of documents prepared for the purpose of evaluating or analyzing the reported acquisition alone, and excluded documents prepared for other purposes. Although a number of comments (e.g., 1029, 1050, 1075, 1098, 1104, 1108) still objected to the inclusion of the item, this version was adopted unchanged in the final rules. By so limiting the scope of documents required under item 4(c), the Commission acknowledges that the agencies may not gain access to some relevant documents at the time of their initial review. However, requiring the submission of a broader range of documents would entail searches of historical files by reporting persons for documents prepared at other times for other purposes, and could produce too large a number of documents for purposes of effective preliminary antitrust review. Since additional documents may be sought by either agency in a request for additional information and documentary material under section 7A(e) and § 803.20 or other discovery procedures, the limitation on the scope of documents required under item 4(c) is unlikely to impede effective review of reported acquisitions.

The proviso in item 4(c) that only those documents prepared "by or for any officer(s) or director(s)" need be submitted also represents a considerable limitation of the language contained in its predecessor. Original item 2(h) would have required the submission of all documents "prepared by or for the company." Yet a number of comments (e.g., 1053, 1108) urged that the language be further limited to encompass only directors or "high-level management." These suggestions were rejected. The criterion in the item is easily administrable and should yield a reasonable number of genuinely important documents.

DELETION OF REVISED ITEM 4(d)

Item 4(d) first appeared in the revised form, but has been deleted from the final notification and report form. Item 4(d) would have required the reporting person to describe its overall planning process and to name the individuals responsible for planning possible entry into the product or geographic markets of other parties to the transaction.

A number of comments criticized revised item 4(d). In general, these comments described item 4(d) as burdensome and unnecessary (e.g., 1075, 1086, 1098) and of doubtful relevance for purposes of preliminary antitrust review (e.g., 1057, 1104). The type of information sought in item 4(d) was considered by most comments to be more properly the subject of a request for additional information and documentary material (e.g., 1059), if not a discovery motion in litigation (e.g., 1044, 1055, 1108). One comment (1075) described the type of information sought as confidential and beyond the scope of discovery.

The Commission has concluded that at the present time the type of information requested in item 4(d) does not seem necessary to obtain at the preliminary review stage. Accordingly, item 4(d) has been deleted from the final notification and report form. Should experience under the act indicate that this conclusion should be reexamined at some time in the future, the Commission may consider amending the form to include an item along the lines of revised item 4(d). In addition, persons filing notification may wish to provide such information voluntarily pursuant to § 803.1(b), since the enforcement agencies may request such information as part of a request for additional information or documentary material pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20.

ITEM 5

Item 5 requires the submission of annual revenue data by single four-digit standard industrial classification ("SIC") code industries, and, for manufacturing industries, by five-digit (SIC-based code) product classes and seven-digit (SIC-based code) products. The SIC code is employed by the U.S. Bureau of the Census to identify products and services for which aggregate data is published in the Bureau's various economic census and its annual survey of manufactures.

Item 5 requires the submission of dollar revenue data for the most recent year and for 1972, the year of the last economic censuses. Upon publication of the 1977 economic censuses by the Bureau of the Census, item 5 will be amended. The revenue data requested by item 5 is by design similar to that required by the Bureau of the Census in its economic censuses and annual survey of manufactures, so that the data provided in response to item 5 will be reasonably comparable with the aggregate data contained in those publications. Because of the similarity of the inquiry, reporting persons should be generally familiar with the derivation of such information from their books and records.

An important distinction exists, however, between the data submitted to the Bureau of the Census and that required by item 5. Data is submitted to the Bureau of the Census on an establishment basis (i.e., a separate report is submitted for each plant or other facility operated by the reporting firm). By contrast, the information submitted in response to item 5 must be an aggregate figure for all operations of the reporting person in each relevant four-, five-, or seven-digit category. While some companies maintain such data on a consolidated basis, others do so only with respect to smaller operating units, such as divisions or establishments. In the latter situations, the reporting person needs simply to combine by category the dollar revenues of all establishments operated by each entity included within the reporting person, and then combine by category the dollar revenues of all such entities. The "total dollar revenues" provided in response to the various inquiries in item 5 will thus be an aggregate figure representing the entire operations of the reporting person in each relevant four-, five-, or seven-digit (SIC code) category.

A second distinction will arise in certain cases. The instructions to the form require that reporting persons employ the four-digit industry categories contained in the 1972 edition of the "Standard Industrial Classification Manual," and the seven-digit (SIC-based code) product categories contained in the numerical list of manufactured products, "1972 Census of Manufactures" (MC72-1.2) (new 1972 SIC basis) or volume II, "Industry Statistics," "1972 Census of Manufactures." The categories contained in these reference materials reflect the categories employed by the Bureau of the Census in its tabulation and publication of the 1972 economic censuses. The Commission is aware that companies reporting for purposes of the 1972 censuses were instructed to report on the basis of the SIC format contained in the 1967 economic censuses and that a number of 1967 census categories were changed at the time of publication of the 1972 economic censuses. For those categories in which such changes occurred, reporting persons may be able to comply with item 5 by reviewing underlying records compiled in accordance with the 1967 classifications for purposes of the 1972 economic censuses, and retabulating such data according to 1972 classifications. The Commission has determined that any inconvenience so occasioned is unavoidable in light of the agencies' need to be able to compare quickly an individual company's submissions with published census aggregate data.

Information must be submitted according to 1972 classifications in response to items 5(a) (revenues by industry for 1972), 5(b)(i) (revenues by product for 1972), 5(b)(iii) (revenues by product class for most recent year), 5(c) (revenues for nonmanufacturing industries for the most recent year) and, if census classifications are known, 5(b)(ii) (new or deleted products since 1972).

The note above item 5(a) cautions that § 803.2 of the rules may require limited or separate responses to item 5 by the person filing notification. The instructions contained in § 803.2 are significant in several ways.

First, § 803.2(b) requires limited or separate responses by acquired persons filing notification. Acquiring persons must complete item 5 with respect to all entities included within the acquiring person. Acquired persons must complete item 5 with respect to only those assets being acquired or that issuer whose securities are being acquired (and all entities controlled by such issuer). Responses not so confined do not comply with the instructions and will be treated as deficient.

Second, § 803.2(c)(1) provides that information need not be provided with respect to operations conducted outside the United States. See § 801.1(k).

Third, § 803.2(c) also provides that information need not be supplied with respect to assets or voting securities the acquisition of which is exempt. For further explanation of this brief summary, see the statement of basis and purpose to § 803.2.

The term "dollar revenues" used in item 5 is defined in § 803.2(d).

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO ITEM 5

A large number of comments were received concerning the submission of data by SIC code categories. First, several comments (e.g., 48, 109) suggested that the use of aggregated dollar volumes was unduly burdensome since reporting persons are required to furnish data to the Bureau of the Census by establishment and will not have aggregate figures readily available. The Commission finds this argument to be without merit. If, as the comment suggests, reporting persons have unaggregated revenue data available on an establishment or other basis, the compilation of aggregate figures will require, at most, the simple addition of establishment and entity figures. This burden is likely to be minimal.

Second, a number of comments (e.g., 120; 1050, 1159, 1108) informed the Commission that many companies do not employ SIC-based categories data in their internal accounting procedures. Several of these comments recommended that if reporting companies do not normally organize their internal records by SIC-based categories, those persons should be permitted to report under other systems. Suggested systems included the system employed by the reporting person, if that system approximates the SIC format (e.g., 26, 120; 1050); any generally accepted accounting system (e.g., 1059); or any system used by all of the parties to a transaction (e.g., 1077). Alternatively, another comment (29) suggested that reporting companies be permitted to use the format of Financial Accounting Standard No. 14, "Financial Reporting for Segments of a Business Enterprise", at least as an option in lieu of seven digit reporting. The Commission has considered these suggestions and concluded that final item 5 should continue to require the submission of data under the SIC-based categories. For effective antitrust review, the agency staffs must be able to determine the impact of an acquisition on the market for a particular product, group of products, or service. The agency staffs will be able to perform this review only if the data submitted by reporting persons can be compared to data for the entire market. Data for the entire market is difficult to establish unless all persons submit revenue figures under a basically uniform classification system. Since there may be as many internal accounting systems as there are reporting persons, data reflecting diverse internal accounting systems are not a useful basis for review. Such data would not be readily comparable with the aggregate data published by the Bureau of the Census, which provides, through the SIC code, the most generally available and widely used source of universe data. While the Commission is well aware that the SIC code is not a perfect system, it has concluded that information reported by SIC-based categories currently provides the only feasible basis for effective preliminary review of reported acquisitions within the time limits imposed by the act.

Furthermore, the use of SIC-based categories should not be unduly burdensome. Reporting persons are presumably required to compile SIC-based data for submission to the Bureau of the Census. Thus, reporting persons may have available, in addition to regular accounting books and records, other records compiled to aid in answering comparable inquiries in reports to the Bureau of the Census. In addition, the reporting persons' experience in the preparation of Census reports should substantially reduce the burden of completing item 5.

Another comment (94) suggested that item 5 be clarified to indicate whether SIC-based data is requested on an "establishment basis" or a "product class basis" as those terms are used by the Bureau of the Census. "Establishment basis" and "product class basis" are methods by which the Bureau of the Census reports data which it has collected and do not affect the method by which data is reported, either to census or on the form. Therefore, this suggestion was not followed. The item requests aggregate data for the person filing notification.

Reporting persons may believe that information contained in a previously or contemporaneously submitted Corporate Patterns Report ("CPR") or Special Report on Mergers and Acquisitions in the Dairy Industry ("Dairy Industry Report") is responsive to a subpart of item 5. The Commission believes that because of the definition of "person" contained in the premerger notification rules, § 801.1(a), and the distinction between the reporting person's obligations as an acquiring or acquired person, § 803.2(b), such instances will be rare. However, if in fact the exact information required by item 5 is contained in a CPR or Dairy Industry Report, the reporting person may complete the applicable subpart of item 5 by identifying the portion of the specific CPR or Dairy Industry Report that contains the responsive data.

The staff is presently reviewing its Special Report on Mergers and Acquisitions in the Food Distribution Industries ("Food Industries Report") and will recommend to the Commission that the Food Industries Report be amended to eliminate any duplication between it and item 5 of the form.

CENSUS ACT

Other comments (e.g., 15, 59, 115, 120; 1050) suggested that to required submission of revenue data by reference to SIC-based categories used by the Bureau of the Census is impermissible in view of section 9 of the Census Act, 13 U.S.C. section 9, which provides, in applicable part, that retained copies of reports filed with the Bureau of the Census may not be required by other Government agencies.

This claim is not unique to the present form. In litigation concerning the Commission's Corporate Patterns Survey Report ("CPR") and Line of Business Report ("LB"), the court rejected the same argument and held that the Census Act does not preclude the Commission from requiring answers to questions concerning shipments similar or identical to questions asked in a census report. *In re FTC Corporate Patterns Report Litigation*, 432 F. Supp. 291, 304-07 (D.D.C. 1977), appeal pending, Nos. 77-1728, et al., (D.C. Cir.). The Commission believes that its request for data based on census classifications is not impermissible under section 9.

In any event, there is a strong statutory basis for the required submission of data according to SIC-based categories in the notification and report form, regardless of the outcome of the CPR litigation. Item 5 seeks information pursuant to the express mandate of the act, in which Congress, aware of the Commission's use of such classifications in its previous premerger notification program, provided in section 7A(d)(1) that the Commission

> shall require that the notification required [by the act] be in such form and contain such documentary material and information relevant to a proposed acquisition as is necessary and appropriate to enable the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General to determine whether such acquisitions may, if consummated, violate the antitrust laws.

Congress instructed the Commission to determine what information is necessary and appropriate, and in what form such information should be submitted, in order for the enforcement agencies to fulfill their statutory mandate. The Commission has determined that the submission of data according to SIC-based categories is necessary and appropriate in order to make a preliminary determination of the lawfulness to reported acquisitions under the antitrust laws.

ITEM 5(a)

Item 5(a) requires the reporting person to submit information concerning the four-digit (SIC code) industries in which the reporting person engaged in 1972. For each such four-digit industry, the reporting person must indicate the industry code number, the census description of the industry corresponding with the code, and total dollar revenues for the year 1972.

The reporting person must report the revenue derived during 1972 by all entities presently included within the person filing the notification and report form, regardless of whether such entities were included within the reporting person during 1972. Thus, data submitted in response to item 5(a) will include revenues derived during 1972 from the operations of entities acquired by the reporting person since 1972.

Special instructions are provided for reporting persons engaged in certain non-manufacturing industries.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO ITEM 5(a)

Item 5(a) requests dollar revenues by four-digit (SIC code) industry for 1972 in order to estimate the reporting person's share of the relevant four-digit industries. The year 1972 was chosen so that the data provided can be compared to the aggregate figures for the industry published in the 1972 Economic Censuses.

Original item 5(a) would have required the submission of four-digit industry data for both 1972 and the most recent year. The revised version of the form deleted the most recent year data from item 5(a) and added two new items. Item 5(b)(iii) required the submission of most recent year five-digit product class data for manufacturing industries. Another new item, 5(c), required the submission of most recent year four-digit industry data for non-manufacturing industries. The final version of the Form retains this arrangement.

Several comments (e.g., 59, 80) stated that compiling four-digit data for 1972 would be cumbersome, time-consuming and expensive, and might require the reconstruction of documents no longer available since records underlying census reports need only be retained for three years (104). Similarly, another comment (11) suggested that data for 1972 would be outdated and irrelevant and suggested that item 5(a) should require the submission of four-digit industry data for the past 1 or 2 years alone. These suggestions either are without merit or result from a misunderstanding of the purposes of the act. First, compiling such data should present no undue burden for reporting persons. Item 5(a) requests the submission of four-digit industry data for 1972 alone. Reporting persons should still have available ordinary books and records for relatively recent years, including 1972. Furthermore, because 1972 was a year for which reporting persons presumably had to collect this type of data for purposes of the economic censuses, reporting persons may also have available other records compiled for use in the preparation of 1972 census reports.

Second, the use of 1972 data is essential at the present time for antitrust review purposes. The last year for which complete data from the economic censuses was published by the Bureau of the Census was 1972. Thus, it is the most recent year for which detailed statistical breakdowns of market universes exist.

Another group of comments (e.g., 115; 1050, 1108) suggested that reporting persons be permitted to omit dollar revenues totaling less than a threshold figure. This suggestion was also rejected. Small dollar values may, under certain circumstances, constitute a significant share of particular markets. For these markets the imposition of a minimum dollar threshold might seriously impair the review process. Moreover, the burden entailed is unlikely to be significant.

Finally, one comment (1104) suggested that the submission of data by four-digit industry for 1972 was superfluous because such data would merely be an aggregation of the data for all the seven-digit (SIC-based code) products included within that four-digit industry, which would be supplied in response to item 5(b)(i). In view of the serious time constraints under which the agencies will review reported acquisitions, the Commission has determined that the minimal burden of aggregation entailed in response to item 5(a) should be borne by reporting persons rather than by the agencies.

ITEM 5(b)(i)

Item 5(b)(i) requires reporting persons to submit information concerning each seven-digit (SIC-based code) product manufactured by the reporting person in 1972. For each seven-digit product within SIC major groups 20-39, the reporting person must supply the Census description of the product and the total dollar revenues derived during 1972. As noted in the instructions to the form, for seven-digit product codes ending in 00 the reporting person instead should submit information by the more detailed product breakdown provided in appendix A to the Numerical List of Manufactured Products, 1972 "Census of Manufactures" (MC72-1.2).

The reporting person must report the revenue derived during 1972 by all entities presently included within the person filing the notification and report form, regardless of whether such entities were included within the reporting person during 1972. Thus, data submitted in response to item 5(b)(i) will include 1972 revenues of entities and assets acquired by the reporting person since 1972.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO ITEM 5(b)(i)

Item 5(b)(i) requests dollar revenues by seven-digit product in order to estimate the reporting person's share of the relevant seven-digit product markets. The year 1972 was chosen so that the data provided can be compared to the aggregate figures published for the 1972 Census of Manufactures.

A number of comments questioned the use of seven-digit product data for 1972. Several (e.g., 11, 32, 103, 109; 1059) recommended that seven-digit product data be required only for products in those four-digit industries in which the acquiring and acquired persons both derive revenues, or for products with respect to which a customer-supplier relationship exists. These suggestions have been rejected for several reasons.

First, reporting persons may have incomplete knowledge of whether the other party derives dollar revenues in the same four-digit industry. Particularly, but not only, in acquisitions accomplished through tender offers, the reporting person may be unaware of all of the operations of the other reporting person. In such cases the agencies would be forced to make requests for additional information and documentary material under section 7A(e) and § 803.20 in an effort to obtain basic rather than supplementary data.

Second, a limitation of seven-digit product information to those cases in which there is a four-digit industry overlap would be inappropriate for analysis of vertical or product extension acquisitions. In such cases the agencies would not necessarily receive any seven-digit product revenue data in those industries between which vertical relationships or product extensions are probable, since a four-digit overlap would be fortuitous. Again, the request for additional information would have to be used to obtain basic, rather than specialized, market data.

Other comments (e.g., 29, 104; 1029) suggested that the seven-digit product data requested in item 5(b)(i) is too detailed, or that such information should be submitted only if annual dollar revenues exceeded a specific threshold figure (e.g., 29, 74, 103, 115; 1050, 1108). Both of these suggestions have been rejected. In order to evaluate fully the possible anticompetitive effects of reported acquisitions, the agencies must have access to reasonably detailed and complete information. Exclusive reliance on four- and five-digit data or insertion of an arbitraty dollar revenue threshold could seriously impair the agencies' ability to perform this review and would thus frustrate the purposes of the act. Furthermore, the added burden on reporting persons to report all information should be minimal.

Original item 5(b)(i) would have required the submission of seven-digit product data for both 1972 and the most recent year. It also would have required a statement of the percentage of dollar revenues attributable to exports.

Quite a few comments (e.g., 26, 29, 32, 37, 88, 104, 115; 1029) maintained that compiling seven-digit data for years other than census years would be unduly burdensome, asserting that few companies collect or maintain such data at that level of detail except for years for which they are required to respond to Bureau of the Census inquiries. Other comments (e.g., 15, 35, 85, 94, 99) protested that since the Bureau of the Census does not require manufacturers to submit separate reports for exports, very few companies maintain separate export records and the compilation of export data would be unduly burdensome to reporting persons.

In response to these comments, revised item 5(b)(i) deleted both the requirement of dollar revenues by seven-digit product in the most recent year and the separate breakdown for export figures. Instead, item 5(b)(iii) was added, requiring reporting persons to submit dollar revenues for the most recent year by five-digit (SIC-based code) product categories. No provision in the form was made for the separate reporting of export information, which can be obtained, if necessary, by a request for additional information or documentary material under § 7A(e) and § 803.20. The final form retains revised item 5(b)(i) without change, except for addition of a clarifying instruction.

ITEM 5(b)(ii)

Item 5(b)(ii) requires the reporting person to identify each manufactured product that has been added or deleted since 1972. Products must be identified by seven-digit product category unless the reporting person is unsure of the proper seven-digit product category for a product added since 1972, in which case the product may be identified in the manner ordinarily used by the reporting person. For each such product the reporting person must indicate the year of addition or deletion and, for products added, total dollar revenues during the most recent year.

The instructions to item 5(b)(ii) clarify that, while products added due to the acquisition of entities since 1972 should be reported in response to item 5(b)(i), products deleted since 1972 by reason of the disposition of assets or voting securities should be included in response to this item.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO ITEM 5(b) (ii)

Item 5(b)(ii) first appeared in the revised rules, and is similar to item 6(b) of the special report form for the Commission's existing premerger notification program. Comment 1023 asserted that the information sought under item 5(b)(ii) was irrelevant for purposes of antitrust analysis. This comment is without merit. It is possible that product lines of reporting persons have changed considerable since 1972, the year of the last census of manufacturers. Effective preliminary antitrust analysis of a merger or acquisition requires review of the most current information available. The submission of such information is thus both necessary and appropriate for review purposes.

ITEM 5(b)(iii)

Item 5(b)(iii) requires the reporting person to submit information concerning each five-digit (SIC-based code) product class in which the reporting person is engaged. For each product class within SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries), the reporting person must indicate the product class code number, the census description of the product class and the total dollar revenues derived during the most recent year. Total dollar revenue data should reflect revenues derived by all entities that are included within the reporting person at the time the form is filed.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO ITEM 5(b)(iii)

Item 5(b)(iii) requests dollar revenues by five-digit product class for the most recent year in order to obtain information concerning the current activities of reporting persons. By comparing this data to the aggregate figures for the product class published in the annual survey of manufactures, the agencies will be able to approximate the reporting person's share of the relevant five-digit product classes.

For the origin of item 5(b)(iii), see the statement of basis and purpose to item 5(b)(i).

Comment 1077 suggested that a request for five-digit product class data for the most recent year was inappropriate because such data would not be comparable to the seven-digit product data for 1972 submitted under item 5(b)(i). However, five-digit dollar revenues for the most recent year can be compared generally to seven-digit dollar revenues for 1972 by simply aggregating all seven-digit revenues for products within the same five-digit product class. While the two types of data might not be strictly comparable because the market changes between 1972 and the most recent year, the comparison will provide the agencies with a useful preliminary evaluation of changes since 1972 in the reporting person's share of relevant product markets. Should either agency decide to investigate the acquisition in depth, it could secure more comparable data by means of a request for additional information under section 7A(e) and § 803.20, or by other means.

ITEM 5(c)

Item 5(c) requires reporting persons to submit the dollar revenues derived in the most recent year in four-digit (SIC code) nonmanufacturing industries, that is, industries in all SIC major groups other than 20-39. For each four-digit industry, the reporting person must indicate the four-digit code number, the census description of the industry and the total dollar revenues derived in the most recent year. Total dollar revenue data should reflect revenues derived by all entities that are included within the reporting person at the time the form is filed. Industries for which dollar revenues totaled less than $1 million may be omitted.

Special instructions are provided for insurance carriers, credit agencies other than banks, security and commodity brokers, holding and other investment offices, and real estate companies.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO ITEM 5(c)

Item 5(c) is designed to provide the agencies with current information concerning the nonmanufacturing activities of reporting persons.

Original item 5(c) would have required the reporting person to state, by seven-digit product categories, the dollar value of products imported into the United States for resale. A large number of comments criticized this requirement. Several comments (e.g., 35, 99, 115) suggested that few companies kept segregated data concerning imports. Other comments (e.g., 32, 59, 88, 115) suggested that even if such data existed, it would not be maintained by seven-digit (SIC-based code) product categories.

In response to these comments, the Commission reexamined the submission of import data under item 5(c). While the Bureau of the Census publishes monthly reports concerning aggregate value for imported products and commodities, the classification system employed in such reports is based on the Tariff Schedules of the United States ("TSUS"), 19 U.S.C. 1202. The TSUS is provided by the Tariff Act of 1930 and bears no relation to the SIC system. Thus, aggregate data provided in reports employing the TSUS would not be comparable to aggregate data provided in census publication employing the SIC system. In light of these facts, the Commission has determined that a separate breakdown of import data will not be required at the initial review stage. Should a separate breakdown of imports be desired, either agency may request such information in a request for additional information or documentary material pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20. Accordingly, the provisions of original item 5(c) were deleted from the revised and final versions of the Notification and Report Form.

Comment 1022 suggested that the $1 million threshold in item 5(c) be raised to $10 million. This suggestion was rejected. Firms are generally not required to compile and submit to the Bureau of the Census information concerning their nonmanufacturing activities during noncensus years. The $1 million threshold was thus inserted to lessen the burden for reporting persons that would not otherwise compile annual data by four-digit industry for such years. Inserting a higher threshold might prevent the agencies from being informed of significant economic activities of reporting persons and thus could seriously impair review of acquisitions.

ITEM 5(d)

Item 5(d) need be completed only by acquiring persons engaged in the formation of a joint venture or other corporation. The item requires the reporting person to provide various information concerning the creation and planned operations of the corporation and the respective interests of all participating persons.

Specific information required to be submitted includes:

(i) The identity of the corporation, and its mailing address.

(ii) A description of the agreements creating the corporation, including:

(A) The value and timing of each acquiring person's contribution to the corporation. This description should include contributions in any form, including cash, voting securities of any issuer, real estate, equipment, patent rights, trademarks, etc. All contributions envisioned by the forming parties at the time of formation should be described, regardless of when the contributions will actually be made.

(B) Any contracts or agreements to obtain assets or capital for the corporation from sources other than the persons forming it. Examples of contracts or agreements to obtain assets include contracts for the purchase or lease from third parties of real estate, equipment, patent rights, or trademarks by or on behalf of the corporation. Examples of contracts or agreements to obtain capital include the sale of the securities of the corporation to third parties, and loans from banks or other sources.

(C) Whether and in what amount the persons forming the corporation have agreed to guarantee its credit or obligations. The description of such guarantee arrangements will include guarantees of loans, leases of equipment and real estate, and credit purchases.

(D) The consideration each person forming the corporation will receive in exchange for its contribution(s). This description would include all forms of consideration that the persons forming the corporation will acquire, including voting securities, nonvoting securities, debt instruments or other securities. The response should also reveal any rights to future consideration such as rights to patents or technology, mineral discoveries or other assets developed by the corporation.

(iii) A general description of the business in which the corporation will engage, including locations of facilities and geographic market areas.

(iv) The four-digit (SIC code) industries in which the corporation will derive income. For corporations which will be engaged in manufacturing, the five-digit (SIC-based code) product classes in which it will derive revenues must also be identified.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO ITEM 5(d)

Revised item 5(d) required the reporting of various types of data from institutional investors. These provisions are subsumed in item 6 of the final version, and former item 5(d) has been deleted.

Item 5(e) of the revised form has been redesignated item 5(d) in the final form. The language of the revised version of item 5(e) has been amended to conform to the final version of § 801.40, which uses the term "joint venture or other corporation."

ITEM 6

Item 6 must be completed by all persons required to file notification except acquired persons in transactions in which only assets are to be acquired. It requests three kinds of information.

In response to paragraph (a) of this item, reporting persons must list the name and headquarters mailing address of each entity included within the person filing notification. At the option of the reporting person, entities with total assets of less than $1 million may be omitted from this listing.

Paragraph (b) requires a separate listing with respect to each entity included within the person filing notification whose voting securities are held by one or more persons other than the person filing notification. For each entity meeting this criterion a separate list containing the following information must be provided: The name of the issuer, the designation of each class of voting securities of that issuer which is held by other persons, the name and headquarters mailing address of each other person (if any) which holds 5 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of the class, and the number and percentage of such securities held by that person. For purposes of this paragraph, percentages are computed by class of voting securities, rather than according to § 801.12. An example of a listing for each issuer would be:

XYZ SUBSIDIARY

Class A common:
ABC Co., 123 Main Street, Chicago, Ill. 60603, 5,000 shares (6.2 percent)
DEF Corp., 456 Seventh Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10017, 7,500 shares (9.3 percent)
Class B common:
GHI Co., and its subsidiaries, 789 Texas Avenue, Dallas, Tex. 75201, 1,000 shares (10 percent)

At the option of the reporting person, the listing may be omitted with respect to any entity included in the reporting person the total assets of which are less than $10 million.

Paragraph (c) of the item requires a single listing by the reporting person, if that person holds voting securities of any issuer not included within the person. The required listing is an aggregate of those holdings and shows: The issuer and class of securities, the number and percentage of outstanding securities held, and, at the option of the reporting person, the entity within the person filing notification that actually holds the securities. The filing person is permitted to omit its holdings of less than 5 percent of the outstanding voting securities of any issuer; in addition, holdings of any number or percentage of the outstanding voting securities of issuers with total assets of less then $10 million may also be omitted.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO ITEM 6

This item appears on the notification and report form for the first time in the final rules but is derived from items 1(b) of the original form and 1(g), 2(e)(ii), 3(b) and 5(d) of the revised form. Item 5(d) of the revised form requested information similar to items 6(a) and 6(c), but only with respect to institutional investor entities included within the person filing notification and holdings of voting securities by such institutional investors.

Item 1(b) of the original form requested information similar to item 6(a); the earlier version requested the name, mailing address, and date and state of incorporation (if applicable) of each "active entity" included within the reporting person. The comments criticized the requirement to list active entities on two grounds. First, a number of comments (e.g., 26, 112, 120) suggested that the meaning of the term "active entity" was unclear. That term has been used for some time in the Commission's existing premerger notification program. For purposes of the final form, however, it makes no difference whether an entity included within the reporting person is an "active entity"; item 6(a) requires a listing of all entities, whether or not they are "active," although entities with minimal assets may be excluded.

A second suggestion in the comments (e.g., 11, 74, 77, 109) was that subsidiaries below a certain size, or foreign subsidiaries not doing a significant amount of business in U.S. commerce, should be excluded. In response, a size threshold of $1 million has been inserted into item 6(a) of the final form. Entities with total assets of less than that amount may be omitted from the listing. If it is easier for the reporting person simply to list all entities, regardless of whether they are larger than that threshold, that is also permissible. Since item 6 relates to stock holdings, the Commission did not believe that the extent of an entity's sales was an appropriate threshold for item 6(a). Since the size of a reporting person under the act may be as small as $10 million (assets or sales), the Commission did not believe it appropriate to permit entities larger than $1 million in size—perhaps representing 10 percent of the reporting person—to be excluded from the required listing.

The Commission decided not to provide a separate exclusion for foreign subsidiaries based upon the amount of business done in the United States. One important purpose of the listing in item 6(a) is to permit evaluation of the information requested in item 6(b)—that is, the identification of persons that hold the stock of the reporting person or of any entities included within that person. For that purpose, the Commission believes it is not relevant whether the entity included within the reporting person is a foreign entity or a domestic entity. Holdings of stock in any entity included within the reporting person may be relevant to an assessment of the impact of an acquisition upon competition. Thus the reporting person is required to list all of its component entities.

Item 6(b) applies whenever 5 percent or more of the stock of any entity included within the reporting person is held by one or more persons other than the reporting person. In that event, the reporting person is required to list the issuer and class of that issuer's stock, to identify the holder, and to state the number and percentage of those shares so held. The reporting person may, at its option, omit this information if the issuer's total assets are less than $10 million. In responding to item 6(b) the reporting person may find it helpful to consult copies of schedules 13D and 13G filed with the SEC. The SEC requires that copies of such filings be sent to the issuer, 17 CFR 240.13d-1 (a) and (b). However, the reporting person should remember that the beneficial owner for purposes of the SEC schedules will not necessarily be the same as the holder for purposes of the rules and form and, in the case of schedule 13G, that the information may not be current. The reporting person must also list any other 5 percent holders of which it has knowledge, even if no schedules 13D or 13G have been filed with the SEC. The terms "person" and "hold" used here have the same meanings as they do throughout the rules.

Item 6(c) requires disclosure of stock of issuers not included within the person filing notification which is held by that person. If the issuer has assets of less than $10 million, or if the holdings do not equal or exceed 5 percent of the outstanding shares of the issuer, the information need not be submitted. Again, this optional approach is taken because some reporting persons may find it more convenient to report all holdings than to separate those which do not meet the optional criteria of item 6(c).

The three parts of item 6 are designed to alert the enforcement agencies to situations in which the potential antitrust impact of the reported transaction does not result solely or directly from the acquisition, but may arise from direct or indirect shareholder relationships between the parties to the transaction. This may occur, for example, when a significant shareholder of the acquiring person already holds shares of the acquired person, or when an entity whose stock is held (but which is not controlled) by the acquiring person either holds stock of the acquired person or is partly controlled by the acquired person. A comparison of the acquiring and acquired persons' responses to items 6(b) and 6(c) should reveal such situations.

A similar comparison may also reveal other situations of possible antitrust concern. Examples might be occasions when a person known to be a competitor or customer or supplier of one of the parties is also a significant shareholder of the other party, or when the acquiring company holds stock in a competitor or customer or supplier of the acquired company or vice versa.

The addition of item 6, coupled with changes in the definition of "affiliate" in § 801.1(d), has made it possible for items 1(g), 2(e)(ii), and 3(b) of the revised form to be deleted. Those items had requested information concerning "affiliates" (as defined in those earlier rules) of the acquiring person, when those affiliates held stock or assets of the acquired person, or when the affiliates were doing business in any industry in which the acquired person was also doing business.

The kinds of information required by item 6 are analogous to the kinds of information which the agencies would have obtained in response to the original and revised versions of the form, if the earlier versions of the definition of "affiliate" had been retained. Item 6 is thus a response to the narrowing of that definition to encompass only entities included within the reporting person. Item 6 also represents a recognition that the information sought in revised item 5(d), concerning the holdings of institutional investors, is potentially equally relevant to the analysis of transactions not involving an institutional investor. When entities which are not under common control are nevertheless related to one another by shareholdings, the agencies must assess the relevance of that relationship in the course of their assessment of the competitive impact of an acquisition involving one of those entities directly.

In a transaction in which only assets are to be acquired, the stock holdings of, and stock holdings in, the acquired person would not be affected by the transaction. Thus, the acquired person need not respond to item 6 in this situation. The acquiring person responds to this item in all cases, and the acquired person must respond whenever any voting securities will be acquired.

ITEM 7

Item 7 is designed to provide information about geographic markets. Whenever any party to an acquisition knows or has reason to believe that it derives dollar revenues from any of the same four-digit (SIC code) industries as any other party, it must identify the geographic areas in which it derives those dollar revenues. The item must be completed separately for each four-digit industry in which such an overlap of dollar revenues occurred during the most recent year. If the transaction is the formation of a joint venture or other corporation, the reporting person should compare the four-digit industries in which it derived revenues to those in which the new corporation is expected to derive revenues (without time limit), as well as to those in which other acquiring persons, whether or not required to report, derive revenues.

Item 7(a) requires identification, by code number and description, of the four-digit industries in which the overlap exists or is believed to exist. Item 7(b) calls for the name of every other party to the transaction which is engaged in that industry. Item 7(c) seeks geographic information about the reporting person's operations in each four-digit industry listed in item 7(a). Each of the five subparts of item 7(c) combines various two-digit SIC major groups which, because of their industry characteristics, lend themselves to similar treatment. Note that although item 7(c) refers to two-digit major groups for convenience and brevity, the information is sought by four-digit industry within those groups.

Item 7(c)(i) applies to manufacturing industries, those four-digit industries within SIC major groups 20-39. It calls for geographic information about where manufactured products are sold in substantially the same form, whether by the person filing notification or by others to whom such products have been sold or resold. If manufactured products are consumed in or incorporated into the manufacture of other goods, the response should reveal where the product is sold to such manufacturers, and not where the remanufactured product is ultimately sold. In other words, the geographic areas sought are all areas in which the product is consumed or sold as an identifiable unit, rather than as a component of another product. For example, if the manufactured product is axles, the response should disclose where the axles are sold, and not where the vehicles into which the axles are incorporated are sold. If the product is simply resold without alteration, all such sales, through the sale to the final purchaser, are sought.

The areas must be identified by States, or, if desired, portions of States. Only the listing by States is required. The optional finer breakdown is intended to be used whenever the parties believe that the listing by States could be misleading in the antitrust analysis of the acquisition. The item specifies a knowledge and belief standard for the response, since manufacturers may not know the precise geographic distribution of their products.

For item 7(c)(ii), which applies to four-digit industries within SIC major groups 1-17 and 40-49, the reporting person must list the States or portions thereof in which the agricultural, mining, or other specified operations are conducted. For item 7(c)(iii), which applies to four-digit wholesale trade industries within SIC major groups 50 and 51, the reporting person must list the States or portions thereof in which customers are located.

For item 7(c)(iv), which applies to four-digit industries in SIC major groups 52-62 and 64-89, the reporting person must furnish a list, arranged by State, county, and city or town, of addresses of establishments from which dollar revenues were derived. "Establishment" means any retail location, location where services are offered or rendered, or other business location from which dollar revenues were derived. Item 7(c)(v) calls for a list of the States in which the reporting person is licensed to write insurance.

No dollar revenues need be provided in response to any part of this item.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO ITEM 7

Item 7 is a slightly altered version of item 6 of the revised form. Final item 7(a) and 7(c)(i)-(iii) are substantially similar to the corresponding provisions of revised item 6. Because revised item 6(b)—which sought a complete list of establishments, regardless of the nature of the industry—has been deleted, and because many SIC major groups had no specific requirement beyond that, a new item 7(c)(iv) has been added. For those groups, reporting persons are required to list their business locations. Item 7(c)(v) is essentially the same as revised item 6(c)(iv).

Some of the comments (e.g., 1053) appear to have interpreted revised items 6(c)(i)-(iii) to require the geographic analysis by portions of States in all cases. The final version of the item makes clear that a breakdown finer than by States is optional. Comment 1055 suggested that a reporting party should be able to report that it sells nationwide and thereby eliminate the need to list every State. The Commission has no objection to such a practice. In fact, so long as a clearly defined geographic area can be determined, other simplified methods of reporting would also be acceptable, e.g., all States east of the Mississippi River, all States except California and Texas. Not acceptable because of their imprecise nature, however, would be such descriptions as the west coast, the Midwest, or Southern New England.

Some comments (e.g., 1026, 1040) complained that manufacturers would not be able to supply geographic resale information by plant-of-origin. Neither revised item 6(c)(i) nor final item 7(c)(i) requires such a breakdown. A number of comments (e.g., 1029, 1053, 1055, 1059, 1075, 1086, 1104, 1108) also suggested that manufacturers generally do not know where their products are resold, that it would be difficult (if not illegal) for them to obtain that information, and that the information is in any event irrelevant to an antitrust analysis. There can be no doubt that when the parties to an acquisition are engaged in the production and sale of the same or a closely related product, an inquiry into where those products are sold is necessary and appropriate to any antitrust analysis of the transaction. Therefore, comments raising issues of relevance and burden must be rejected. Furthermore, the Commission does not believe that it is illegal, without more, for a manufacturer merely to know or to determine the general geographic areas where its products are resold to their ultimate users. Therefore, comments suggesting that it might be unlawful to collect the required information have also been rejected.

Contrary to the assertions made in the comments regarding the availability of information on areas of resale of manufactured products, the Commission's experience has been that manufacturers invariably know where their products are sold, regardless of the number of intermediate resellers involved. This is not to say that manufacturers will always know the name and address of every reseller of every product, although this often may be the case, especially when the manufacturer sells directly to its retailers. Nor is such detailed information necessary for the purpose of responding to this item. Important here is the fact that a manufacturer will always know, at least in general terms (i.e., States or portions thereof), the geographic areas in which its product has penetrated the market. Because this information is crucial to establishing production quotas and marketing plans, opening new sales outlets (either wholesale or retail) and making related business decisions, the Commission has little doubt that at this level of generality the requested information will be readily available in all but the most unusual situations.

Comments 1029, 1053, 1059, and 1108 argued that responses to this item should not be required unless the reporting person (or persons) derived a minimum dollar amount of revenue in the four-digit industry. The suggested amounts range from $1 million to $5 million. The Commission is unable to conclude that geographic areas in which less than such sums are derived from the sale of identical or similar products are competitively irrelevant and therefore need not be reported. Since the transfer of control of a company as small as $10 million in annual sales may be reportable, a $1 million minimum potentially could eliminate a geographic analysis of roughly 10 percent of the company's business; a $5 million minimum could eliminate nearly half the business of a $10 million company and significant portions of the sales of much larger companies which may be direct competitors. In addition, even where such amounts are not a major portion of a reporting person's sales, they can easily often represent a major portion of a local or regional market. The suggestion, therefore, has been rejected.

Comment 1040 requested clarification of the location of a sale for purposes of revised item 6(c)(i), now item 7(c)(i). The relevant States are those in which the purchaser will consume or substantially alter the character of the product or incorporate it into another product, or in which the final purchaser of the original product is located. The location of the sales office that sold the goods or the plant that shipped the goods is not relevant to this item.

ITEM 8

Item 8 requests information on any vendor-vendee (customer-supplier) relationships existing in the most recent year between an acquiring person and an acquired person with respect to any manufactured product that the vendee either resells or consumes in or incorporates into the manufacture of a product. Manufactured products that the vendee does not resell or use in the manufacturing process, such as office supplies and equipment, need not be included in the response. However, the vendor need not have been the manufacturer of the product.

If the acquisition is the formation of a joint venture or other corporation, the reporting person must determine whether the new corporation will supply any of the persons forming it—the acquiring persons under § 801.40—with any manufactured product which any of the persons forming the corporation purchased from any other of those persons in the most recent year. The persons forming the joint venture must respond to the item if they should reasonably believe that the joint venture will commence supplying a product in the future, without time limit.

If such a relationship exists or will exist, reporting persons which are vendees of any such product, and only such persons, are required to list the following information: the product purchased, the vendors of the product that are party to the acquisition, and the dollar amount purchased from each such vendor during the most recent year. Manufactured products are defined as those within two-digit SIC major groups 20-39. The reporting person may, at its option, omit from this listing any products purchased in annual amounts of less than $1 million.

The item states that products, the manufacture, consumption, or use of which by the vendee is not attributable to the assets to be acquired (in an asset acquisition) or to the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired (in a stock acquisition), may also be omitted. Thus, if a person acquires a subsidiary of the person from which it purchases a certain manufactured product, it need not list that product in item 8 unless the subsidiary (or any issuer it controls) sells the product.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO ITEM 8

The purpose of item 8 is to identify certain instances in which a reported acquisition may result in vertical foreclosure or in an increase in vertical integration in an industry. Only vendees are required to respond to this item because vendors may not know the purpose for which the vendee purchases the product. The item is limited to manufactured products because the Commission believes those vertical relationships are more likely to violate the antitrust laws.

The item is virtually identical to item 7 of the revised form, with editorial changes necessitated by the alteration in final § 801.40 relating to the formation of joint venture and other corporations. Revised item 7, however, had considerably narrowed the scope of the analogous items 8 (a) and 8 (b) of the original form.

Items 8(a) and 8(b) of the original form inquired more broadly into potential vertical antitrust issues presented by a transaction. They requested data on all products or services manufactured or sold by either the acquiring or the acquired person (regardless of the buyer) that were used or consumed by the other party (regardless of the seller). Final item 8, on the other hand, is limited to manufactured products, not services, and only to those products sold directly by one reporting person to another party to the transaction.

Several comments on the original rules (11, 37, 59, 74, 103) noted that a company often has little or no information on who the final purchasers of its products are (in the case of an indirect sales relationship) and that compilation of the requested data would thus be extremely burdensome. The Commission decided to adopt the suggestion made in comment 59 and to limit the question to direct vendor-vendee situations.

Several comments (e.g., 35, 37, 63, 103, 1022, 1029) urged that the $1 million reporting floor for sales of any product by one person to another be raised to $5 million or $10 million. The Commission did not adopt these suggestions. Since the size of a reporting person under the act may be as small as $10 million in assets or sales, raising this threshold might eliminate the reporting of a vendor-vendee relationship in a particular product which accounts for 50 percent or even 100 percent of a person's sales. The purpose of the $1 million floor is to eliminate the reporting of transactions or relationships which are less likely to be significant. Setting this figure any higher might exclude some highly significant relationships.

Comments 1086 and 1098 argued that, even as revised and limited, this item is excessively burdensome for reporting persons that are vendees. The Commission did not accept this argument. Ordinarily, information on major suppliers, the products supplied, the dollar volume, and the uses made by the company of the product is readily available in most companies. As explained above, this information is necessary and appropriate to the agencies' consideration of the vertical aspects of a proposed transaction, and completion of this item will therefore be required, regardless of burden.

ITEM 9

Item 9 is to be answered only by the acquiring person and requires it to supply information about certain prior acquisitions. In particular, it must report its domestic acquisitions (within the previous 10 years) of the voting securities or assets of other companies which derived dollar revenues in any industry in which both it and the acquired person in the present transaction are also substantially engaged.

The acquiring person is asked to go through a two-step process. First, it is to determine each four-digit (SIC code) industry in which it derived $1 million or more in dollar revenues in the most recent year. Of those four-digit (SIC code) industries, it should determine those in which, in the case of a stock acquisition, to its knowledge or belief the issuer whose stock will be acquired also derived $1 million or more in dollar revenues in the same year, or, in the case of an assets acquisition, those in which, to its knowledge or belief, $1 million or more in revenues was attributable to the assets to be acquired. If the acquiring person identifies any industries through this procedure, it must provide certain specified information.

This second step consists of listing the acquiring person's previous acquisitions of entities or assets engaged in any of the four-digit (SIC code) industries identified in the first step. It must list acquisitions within the past 10 years of voting securities of U.S. issuers which derived any dollar revenues from any industry it has identified, as well as of assets located in the United States to which any dollar revenues in that industry were attributable. The term "U.S. issuer" is defined in § 801.1(e). In addition, the acquiring person is required to provide, for each such prior acquisition, the name and address of the entity acquired, its total assets and net sales in the year prior to the acquisition, the type of acquisition (securities or assets), the date of the acquisition, and the particular four-digit industry or industries involved. Only acquisitions of more than 50 percent of the voting securities or assets of entities which had annual net sales or total assets greater than $10 million in the year prior to the acquisition need be reported.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO ITEM 9

The purpose of this item is to assist the agencies in identifying any prior acquisitions by the acquiring person that may suggest a pattern of acquisitions in a particular industry by that person. The present transaction may frequently take on competitive significance in the light of others in the same industry involving the same acquiring person. Such a pattern may indicate a significant anticompetitive trend and thus may be an important factor in the agencies' ultimate decision as to whether to challenge the acquisition. Reporting persons are unlikely to find the inquiry burdensome, since a somewhat broader inquiry has been complied with routinely in the Commission's existing premerger notification program.

The 10-year limit was felt to demark a reasonable period for which to obtain this information on the form, even though earlier acquisitions may be of significance. Information regarding earlier acquisitions can be obtained by requests under section 7A(e) and § 803.20 when necessary. The item permits the omission of prior transactions that did not involve the acquisition of more than 50 percent of the voting securities or assets of a person with preacquisition sales or assets of $10 million, since smaller acquisitions are likely to be less significant from an antitrust standpoint.

This item contains a major change from both its predecessors, item 7 of the original form and item 8 of the revised form. Both of the earlier drafts required information about both domestic and foreign mergers and acquisitions.

Several comments (e.g., 11, 15, 59, 63, 70, 99, 109) objected to this requirement and suggested limiting its scope to prior acquisitions of companies with some connection to U.S. commerce. A number of comments on the revised form (e.g., 1044, 1048, 1094, 1099, 1109) similarly made the argument that some minimum amount of U.S. revenue should be required before a prior acquisition became reportable in response to this item.

The final rules require information only with respect to prior acquisitions of voting securities of U.S. issuers and of assets located in the United States. This change as made partly in response to the comments and partly to reflect the reasoning behind the foreign commerce exemptions in the rules, particularly §§ 802.50 and 802.51. It should be noted, however, that certain acquisitions excluded under item 9 may not be exempt under § 802.50 or § 802.51 or any other rule. For example, an acquisition by a U.S. person of the voting securities of a foreign company with assets in the United States greater than $10 million is not exempt under § 802.50, but need not later be included in a response to item 9, since only prior acquisitions of voting securities of U.S. issuers must be reported under this item.

Another reason for this limitation in item 9 is that it makes the coverage of this item consistent with the general instructions applicable to items 5, 7 through 9, and the insurance appendix contained in § 803.2(c)(1). These, as noted above, require information only with respect to operations conducted within the United States. The reason for this instruction is that census data relating to SIC codes is collected only with respect to revenues derived from establishments located within the United States. See the statement of basis and purpose to § 803.2(a).

In addition to the change relating to foreign mergers and acquisitions, the final version of this item also contains several editorial revisions. The structure of the question has been reworded to suggest the two-step process, which should assist reporting persons in correctly answering the item.

ITEM 10

Item 10 asks for the name, title, business address, and business telephone number of the individual to contact regarding the notification and report form. Section 803.20(b)(2)(ii) provides that a request for additional information or documentary material is effective if telephoned and a written confirmation is mailed during the waiting period. It therefore requires that the reporting person keep a designated individual reasonably available during normal business hours throughout the waiting period to receive such a telephoned request. The request is effective, and the waiting period is extended, as soon as this individual receives the telephoned request (providing the written confirmation is thereafter mailed during the original waiting period). Requests for clarification pursuant to § 803.20(d)(2) may also be telephoned to the individual named.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO ITEM 10

This item, which appeared below the certification on the original form, and as item 9 on the revised form, attracted no comments and was retained with only minor editorial changes. For further information, see the statement of basis and purpose to § 803.20.

CERTIFICATION

See the statement of basis and purpose to § 803.6.

APPENDIX TO NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM: INSURANCE

Whenever voting securities of an insurance carrier are to be acquired directly or indirectly, each reporting person that contains an entity operating as an insurance carrier (SIC major group 63) must provide information concerning various types of insurance operations during the most recent year. The information required by the insurance appendix should be submitted for SIC major group 63 in lieu of the data required under item 5(c). However, reporting persons that complete the insurance appendix must also complete item 5(c) with respect to their activities in industries other than SIC major group 63.

For life insurance operations, reporting persons must provide the amount of premium receipts (calculated on an accrual basis) and new insurance issued in the United States for specific types of life and health insurance and annuities. For property liability insurance the reporting person must provide, for each line of insurance specified in part 2 of the underwriting and investment exhibit of the carrier's annual convention statement, the amount of direct and net premiums written. For title insurance, the reporting person must provide, for each line of insurance specified in part 2 of the underwriting and investment exhibit of the carrier's annual convention statement, the amount of net direct insurance premiums written and the amount of direct insurance premiums earned.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION TO INSURANCE APPENDIX

The Bureau of the Census does not publish revenue data for insurance operations. Thus, no "universe" figures for entire markets exist under the SIC system. The categories employed in the insurance appendix are derived from categories found in various trade publications. These include the "Life Insurance Fact Book", published by the American Council of Life Insurance; "Insurance Facts", published by the Insurance Information Institute; publications of the A. M. Best Co.; and reports of various State insurance commissions. Thus, the data requested in the insurance appendix should be generally comparable to the universe figures revealed in those publications.

The insurance appendix is based on an appendix to the special report required under the Commission's existing premerger notification program.

No comments addressed the insurance appendix.

COMMENTS

Received in response to Dec. 20, 1976, publication of proposed rules implementing title II of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 relating to premerger notification (comment period Dec. 20, 1976-Jan. 19, 1977)

No.	Date of letter	Organization
1	12-30-76	Federal Home Loan Bank Board.
2	12-29-76	American Council of Life Insurance.
3	12-28-76	Exchange Oil & Gas Corp.
4	12-17-76	U.S. Senate, Committee on the Judiciary, Subcommittee on Antitrust and Monopoly (Howard E. O'Leary, Jr., Esq.).
5	1-17-77	Getty Oil Co.
6	1-14-77	Pillsbury, Madison & Sutro (Wallace L. Kaapcke, Esq.).
7	1- 6-77	Investment Co. Institute.
8	1-11-77	Texas Pacific Oil Co., Inc.
9	1-11-77	Skadden, Arps, Slate, Meagher & Flom (Stephen M. Axinn, Esq.).
10	1-17-77	National Realty Committee.
10A	1-11-77	Do.
11	1-14-77	American Standard, Inc.
12	1-19-77	Foley & Lardner (Edwin P. Wiley, Esq.).
13	1-17-77	Stanley M. Dub, Esq.
14	1-19-77	The Association of the Bar of the City of New York, Committee on Trade Regulation (Eleanor M. Fox, Esq., and Peter D. Standish, Esq.).
15	1-15-77	Ohio State Bar Association, Antitrust and Corporate Counsel Sections (David Holmquist, Esq., and John F. McClatchey, Esq.).
16	1-21-77	Marathon Oil Co.
17	1-14-77	American Petrofina, Inc.
18	1-14-77	Skadden, Arps, Slate, Meagher & Flom (Stephen M. Axinn, Esq.).
19	1-13-77	David Lasky, Esq.
20	1-14-77	American Insurance Association.
21	1-11-77	Miller, Anderson, Nash, Yerke & Wiener (John J. DeMott, Esq.).
22	1-19-77	Nixon, Hargrave, Devans & Doyle.
23	1- 3-77	Prof. Stanley E. Boyle.
24	1-21-77	General American Oil Co. of Texas.
25	1-19-77	The B. F. Goodrich Co.
26	1-17-77	The Gulf Cos.

COMMENTS—Continued

Received in response to Dec. 20, 1976, publication of proposed rules implementing title II of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 relating to premerger notification (comment period Dec. 20, 1976-Jan. 19, 1977)

No.	Date of letter	Organization
27	1-27-77	Federal Communications Commission.
28	1-18-77	The Nestle Co., Inc.
29	1-18-77	American Institute of Certified Public Accountants.
30	1-19-77	Winthrop, Stimson, Putnam & Roberts (Terence H. Benbow, Esq.).
31	1-19-77	United States League of Savings Associations.
32	1-18-77	Allis-Chalmers Corp.
32A	1-19-77	American Life Insurance Association.
33	1-19-77	Dresser Industries, Inc.
34	1-18-77	National Exploration Co.
34A	1- 8-77	Do.
35	1-19-77	Union Oil Co. of California.
36	1-19-77	Do.
37	Undated	Chadwell, Kayser, Ruggles, McGee & Hastings, Ltd. (David A. Nelson, Esq.).
38	1-17-77	C. Daniel Ward, Esq.
39	1-13-77	Interstate Commerce Commission.
40	1-17-77	United States Steel Corp.
41	1-17-77	Suburban Propane Gas Corp.
42	1-19-77	Federal Communications Commission.
43	1-19-77	Arnold & Porter (Robert B. Hummel, Esq.).
44	1-21-77	Financial Accounting Standards Board.
45	1-18-77	Sperry Rand Corp.
46	1-19-77	American Gas Association.
47	Undated	Holiday Inns, Inc.
48	1-19-77	General Counsel of the U.S. Department of Commerce.
49	1- 8-77	American Financial Corp.
50	1-19-77	Chamber of Commerce of the United States.
51	1- 7-77	Federal Maritime Commission.
52	1-19-77	General Counsel of the Treasury.
53	1-18-77	Federal Maritime Commission.
54	1- 5-77	National Association of Manufacturers.
55	1-18-77	Comptroller of the Currency.
56	1-31-77	Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation.
57	1-18-77	American Natural Gas Service Co.
58	1-18-77	Minnesota Mining & Manufacturing Co.
59	Undated	National Association of Manufacturers.
60	2- 7-77	Intereal Co.
61	2- 7-77	The Associated General Contractors of America.
62	2-11-77	Cook & Henderson, P.C. (Marlow W. Cook, Esq., and James F. Falco, Esq.).
63	2- 9-77	Sec. 7 (Clayton Act) Committee of the ABA Antitrust Section (Eleanor M. Fox, Esq.).
64	2-10-77	Thelen, Marrin, Johnson & Bridges (Frank D. MacDowell, Esq.).
65	2- 9-77	Gatenbey, Spuller & Law (Cooperative Food Distributors of America).
66	2- 1-77	Civil Aeronautics Board.
67	2-16-77	Motion Picture Association of America, Inc.
68	2-14-77	Investment Co. Institute.
69	2-14-77	Perini Corp.
70	2- 9-77	General Mills, Inc.
71	2-16-77	Allied Chemical.
72	2-15-77	Columbia Gas System Service Corp.
73	2-115-77	David H. Marks, Esq.
74	2-17-77	Ashland Oil, Inc.

COMMENTS—Continued

Received in response to Dec. 20, 1976, publication of proposed rules implementing title II of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 relating to premerger notification (comment period Dec. 20, 1976-Jan. 19, 1977)

No.	Date of letter	Organization
75	2-15-77	Texas Pacific Oil Co., Inc.
76	2-15-77	American General Insurance Co.
77	2-17-77	Aetna Life & Casualty Co.
78	2-16-77	Association of the Bar of the City of New York, Committee on Trade Regulation.
79	2-16-77	National Association of Independent Insurers.
80	2-16-77	Minnesota Mining & Manufacturing Co.
81	2-18-77	Skadden, Arps, Slate, Meagher & Flom (Blaine V. Fogg, Esq.).
82	2-16-77	Cadwalader, Wickersham & Taft (Horace P. Moulton, Esq.).
83	2-17-77	American Council of Life Insurance.
84	2-18-77	Howrey & Simon (William J. Boyd, Esq.).
85	2-17-77	International Telephone & Telegraph Corp.
86	2-18-77	Department of Army Engineers.
87	2-18-77	Covington & Burling (Exxon Corp.).
88	2-18-77	W. R. Grace & Co.
89	2-18-77	Sullivan & Cromwell.
90	2-18-77	Shearman & Sterling (Citicorp).
91	2-18-77	Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.
92	2-14-77	McBride, Baker, Wienke & Schlosser (James H. Ryan, Esq.).
93	2-16-77	Association of the Bar of the City of New York, Committee on Securities Regulation (John E. Merow, Esq.).
94	2-18-77	Glassman-Oliver Economic Consultants, Inc.
95	2-18-77	Hon. John F. Seiberling, Member of Congress.
96	2-18-77	Hon. Edward M. Kennedy, U.S. Senator.
97	2-18-77	American Bankers Association.
98	2-17-77	American Insurance Association.
99	2-14-77	Borden, Inc.
100	2-16-77	Dillingham Corp.
101	2-17-77	Financial Executives Institute.
102	2-17-77	Foley & Lardner (Edwin P. Wiley, Esq.).
103	2-18-77	Grocery Manufacturers of America.
104	2-18-77	Haskins & Sells, Certified Public Accountants.
105	2-18-77	Hill, Christopher and Phillips, P.C. (Association of Closed-End Investment Companies).
106	2-18-77	Independent Bankers Association of America.
107	2-17-77	Investment Counsel Association of America, Inc.
108	2-18-77	Investors Diversified Services, Inc.
109	2-18-77	Machinery & Allied Products Institute.
110	2-15-77	Metropolitan Life Insurance Co.
111	2-18-77	Morgan Stanley & Co., Inc.
112	2-18-77	Nixon, Hargrave, Devans & Doyle.
113	2-17-77	Ropes & Gray (Edward P. Lawrence, Esq.).
114	2-16-77	Thelen, Marrin, Johnson & Bridges (Frank D. McDowell, Esq.).
115	2-16-77	Union Carbide Corp.
116	2-18-77	Weil, Gotshal & Manges (Columbia Pictures Industries, Inc.).
117	2-16-77	Westinghouse Electric Corp.
118	2-22-77	Chairman of the Board of Governors, Federal Reserve System.
119	2-18-77	Department of the Army, Office of the Chief of Engineers.
120	2-18-77	Chamber of Commerce of the United States.
121	2-18-77	U.S. Department of the Interior.
122	2-18-77	American Gas Association.
123*	2-28-77	International Council of Shopping Centers
124*	2-27-77	American Insurance Association.
125*	3-21-77	Securities and Exchange Commission.
126*	3- 9-77	Hon. Peter W. Rodino, Jr., Member of Congress (to Hon. Griffin B. Bell, Attorney General).
127*	3-28-77	Donald I. Baker, Assistant Attorney General.
128*	3-18-77	American Insurance Association.
129*	5-31-77	Hon. Peter W. Rodino, Jr., Member of Congress (to Michael Pertschuk, Chairman, Federal Trade Commission).
130*	5-31-77	Hon. Peter W. Rodino, Jr., Member of Congress (to John H. Shenefield, Acting Assistant Attorney General).
131*	6-14-77	Independent Bankers Association of America.
132*	6-17-77	J. C. Penney Co., Inc.
133**	12- 7-76	Covington & Burling (Exxon Corp.).

*This comment was received after the comment period.

**This comment was received before the comment period.

COMMENTS

Received in response to Aug. 1, 1977, publication of revised proposed rules implementing title II of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 relating to premerger notification (comment period Aug. 1-Sept. 30, 1977)

No.	Date of letter	Organization
1001	8- 8-77	Covington & Burling (Exxon Corp.).
1002	8- 8-77	American Council of Life Insurance.
1003	8- 4-77	American Insurance Association.
1004	Undated	Federal Communications Commission.
1005	8-15-77	American Bankers Association.
1006	8-12-77	Association of the Bar of the City of New York, Committee on Trade Regulation (Peter D. Standish, Esq.).
1007	8-17-77	Grocery Manufacturers of America, Inc.
1008	8-18-77	Arnold & Porter (Robert B. Hummel, Esq.).

COMMENTS—Continued

Received in response to Aug. 1, 1977, publication of revised proposed rules implementing title II of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 relating to premerger notification (comment period Aug. 1-Sept. 30, 1977)

No.	Date of letter	Organization
1009	8-19-77	Cleary, Gottlieb, Steen & Hamilton (J. Eugene Marans, Esq.).
1010	8-17-77	German American Chamber of Commerce.
1011	8-17-77	Sperry Rand Financial Corp.
1012	8-16-77	Sec. 7 (Clayton Act) Committee of the ABA Antitrust Section (Stephen M. Axinn, Esq.).
1013	8-18-77	International Trade Committee of the ABA Antitrust Section (Barry E. Hawk, Esq.).
1014	8-19-77	Shaw, Pittman, Potts & Trowbridge (Institute of Foreign Bankers).
1015	8-19-77	Department of the Army, Office of the Chief of Engineers.
1016	8-18-77	Sullivan & Cromwell.
1017	8-23-77	W. R. Grace & Co.
1018	8-22-77	Getty Oil Co.
1019	8-26-77	Texas Pacific Oil Co., Inc.
1020	8-29-77	Investment Co. Institute.
1021	8-24-77	Stuart Paul Jasper, Esq.
1022	8-29-77	Union Oil Co. of California.
1023	8-26-77	Dresser Industries, Inc.
1024	8-25-77	The Gulf Cos.
1025	8-26-77	Tenneco Oil.
1026	8-24-77	Union Carbide Corp.
1027	8-29-77	Pillsbury, Madison & Sutro (Wallace L. Kaapcke, Esq.).
1028	8-24-77	Suburban Propane Gas Corp.
1029	8-26-77	Chadwell, Kayser, Ruggles, McGee & Hastings, Ltd. (David A. Nelson, Esq.).
1030	8-26-77	American Natural Service Co.
1031	8-30-77	National Association of Independent Insurers.
1032	8-29-77	Federal Home Loan Bank Board 1601033
	8-25-77	Hunt Oil Co.
1034	8-30-77	Shank, Irwin, Conant, Williamson & Grevelle (Ray B. Williamson, Esq., and Karen S. Bedell, Esq.).
1035	8-16-77	BOC International, Ltd.
1035A	2- 7-77	Do.
1036	8-23-77	Imperial Group, Ltd.
1037	8-26-77	The Depository Trust Co.
1038	8-26-77	Sidley & Austin (Mark E. MacDonald, Esq.).
1039	8-31-77	Metropolitan Life Insurance Co.
1040	8-26-77	Diamond Shamrock Corp.
1041	8-29-77	Gatenbey, Spuller & Law (Cooperative Food Distributors of America).
1042	8-29-77	Cadwalader, Wickersham & Taft (Horace P. Moulton, Esq.).
1043	8-29-77	Prof. Roy A. Schotland.
1044	8-30-77	American Standard, Inc.
1045	8-30-77	Medusa Corp.
1046	8-29-77	General American Oil Co. of Texas.
1047	9- 2-77	U.S. Department of the Interior (Office of the Secretary).
1048	8-31-77	General Mills, Inc.1601049
	8-30-77	Prof. Donald I. Baker.
1050	9- 7-77	Standard Oil Co. (Indiana).
1051	9-13-77	Hill, Christopher & Phillips, P.C. (Association of Publicly Traded Investment Funds).
1052	9-12-77	Sambo's Restaurants, Inc.
1053	9-13-77	Allis-Chalmers Corp.
1054	9-20-77	Comptroller of the Currency.
1055	9-20-77	International Telephone & Telegraph Corp.
1056	9-21-77	Exchange Oil & Gas Corp.
1057	9-26-77	General Mills, Inc.

COMMENTS—Continued

Received in response to Aug. 1, 1977, publication of revised proposed rules implementing title II of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 relating to premerger notification (comment period Aug. 1–Sept. 30, 1977)

No.	Date of letter	Organization
1058	9-29-77	Securities and Exchange Commission.
1059	9-29-77	Chamber of Commerce of the United States.
1060	9-29-77	General Crude Oil Co.
1061	9-27-77	Aetna Life & Casualty Co.
1062	9-30-77	Shearman & Sterling (Citicorp).
1063	9-29-77	Covington & Burling (Exxon Corp.).
1064	9-30-77	Winston & Strawn (International Council of Shopping Centers).
1065	9-29-77	Building Owners & Managers Association International.
1066	9-29-77	Motion Picture Association of America.
1067	9-29-77	Investment Council of America, Inc.
1068	9-27-77	Continental Oil Co.
1069	9-30-77	Texaco Inc.
1070	9-30-77	American Council of Life Insurance.
1071	9-30-77	Morgan Guaranty Trust Co.
1072	9-30-77	U.S. Department of State.
1073	9-28-77	Bank of America.
1074	9-29-77	National Association of Small Business Investment Companies.
1075	9-29-77	Allied Chemical.
1076	9-29-77	The Nestle Co., Inc.
1077	9-29-77	Ashland Oil, Inc.
1078	9-30-77	Independent Bankers Association of America.
1079	9-28-77	Squire, Sanders & Dempsey (Edward J. DeBartolo Corp.).
1080	9-26-77	McCormick & Co., Inc.
1081	9-29-77	Coastal States Gas Corp.
1082	9-26-77	Doherty, Rumble & Butler (Thomas E. Rohricht, Esq.).
1083	9-29-77	Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.
1084	9-28-77	Columbia Gas System Service Corp.
1085	9-26-77	The Rouse Co.
1086	9-30-77	Financial Executives Institute.
1086A	10-12-77	Do.
1087	9-30-77	Independent Petroleum Association of America.
1088	9-29-77	Marathon Oil Co.
1089	9-30-77	American Bankers Association.
1090	9-30-77	Association of the Bar of the City of New York, Committee on Securities Regulation (Leonard M. Leiman, Esq.).
1091	9-30-77	Sullivan & Cromwell.
1092	9-30-77	The Associated General Contractors of America.
1093	9-26-77	Montgomery Ward & Co., Inc.
1094	9-28-77	Nestle Enterprises, Inc.
1095	9-30-77	Breed, Abbott & Morgan.
1096	9-30-77	American Petroleum Institute.
1097	9-29-77	Transco Cos., Inc.
1098	9-29-77	Winthrop, Stimson, Putnam & Roberts (Terence H. Benbow, Esq.).
1099	9-30-77	International Trade Committee of the ABA Antitrust Section (Barry E. Hawk, Esq.).
1100	9-29-77	Association of the Bar of the City of New York, Committee on Trade Regulation (Peter D. Standish, Esq.).
1101	9-30-77	Morgan Stanley & Co., Inc.
1102	9-30-77	Ohio State Bar Association, Antitrust and Corporate Counsel Sections (Victor Marsh, Jr., Esq., and John F. McClatchey, Esq.).
1103	9-30-77	American Insurance Association.
1104	9-28-77	Borden, Inc.
1105	9-30-77	Shaw, Pittman, Potts & Trowbridge (Institute of Foreign Bankers).
1106	9-29-77	Husky Oil Co.
1107	9-29-77	United Energy Resources, Inc.
1108	10- 3-77	Kellogg Co.
1108A	10- 3-77	Do.
1109	9-29-77	Lord, Day & Lord (Stephen M. Hudspeth, Esq.).
1110	10- 7-77	American Financial Corp.
1111	10- 3-77	Continental Bank.
1112	10- 5-77	Dillingham Corp.
1113	9-28-77	Hon. Charles McC. Mathias, Jr., U.S. Senator.
1113A	10-14-77	Federal Trade Commission.
1114	9-29-77	Associated General Contractors of America, Inc. (Oregon Columbia Chapter).
1115	10-11-77	The Gulf Cos.
1116[*]	11-25-77	Fair Trade Commission (Japan) (Jotaro Yabe, Counselor).

[*] This comment was received after the comment period.

Pursuant to section 7A(d) of the act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d), the Federal Trade Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, hereby formally promulgates the following rules to amend title 16, chapter I, by adding new parts 801, 802, and 803 as set forth below.

Issued July 18, 1978.

By direction of the Commission.

CAROL M. THOMAS,
Secretary.

The Federal Trade Commission promulgates the rules contained in this part (801) pursuant to section 7A(d) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18A(d), as added by section 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390.

PART 801—COVERAGE RULES

Sec.
801.1 Definitions.
801.2 Acquiring and acquired persons.
801.3 Activities in or affecting commerce.
801.4 Secondary acquisitions.
801.10 Value of voting securities and assets to be acquired.
801.11 Annual net sales and total assets.
801.12 Calculating percentage of voting securities or assets.
801.13 Voting securities or assets to be held as a result of acquisition.
801.14 Aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets.
801.15 Aggregation of voting securities and assets the acquisition of which was exempt.
801.20 Acquisitions subsequent to exceeding threshold.
801.21 Securities and cash not considered assets when acquired.
801.30 Tender offers and acquisitions of voting securities from third parties.
801.31 Acquisitions of voting securities by offerees in tender offers.
801.32 Conversion and acquisition.
801.40 Formation of joint venture or other corporations.
801.90 Transactions or devices for avoidance.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 7A(d) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18A(d), as added by sec. 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390.

§ 801.1 Definitions.

When used in the act and these rules—

(a)(1) *Person.* Except as provided in paragraphs (a) and (b) of § 801.12, the term "person" means an ultimate parent entity and all entities which it controls directly or indirectly.

Examples: 1. In the case of corporations, "person" encompasses the entire corporate structure, including all parent corporations, subsidiaries and divisions (whether consolidated or unconsolidated, and whether incorporated or unincorporated), and all related corporations under common control with any of the foregoing.

2. Corporations A and B are each directly controlled by the same foreign state. They are not included within the same "person," although the corporations are under common control, because the foreign state which controls them is not an "entity" (see § 801.1(a)(2)). Corporations A and B[*] are the ultimate parent entities within persons "A", and "B" which include any entities each may control.

3. Since a natural person is an entity (see § 801.1(a)(2)), a natural person and a corporation which he or she controls are part of the same "person." If that natural person controls two otherwise separate corporations, both corporations and the natural person are all part of the same "person."

4. See the example to § 801.2(a).

(2) *Entity.* The term "entity" means any natural person, corporation, company, partnership, joint venture, association, joint-stock company, trust, foundation, fund, institution, society, union, club or other group organized for any purpose, whether incorporated or not, wherever located and of whatever citizenship; or any receiver, trustee in bankruptcy or similar official or any liquidating agent for any of the foregoing, in his or her capacity as such; or any joint venture or other corporation which has not been formed but the acquisition of the voting securities or other interest in which, if already formed, would require notification under the act and these rules: *Provided, however,* That the term "entity" shall not include any foreign state, foreign government, or agency thereof (other than a corporation engaged in commerce), nor the

---

[*] Throughout the examples to the rules, persons are designated ("A", "B," etc.) with quotation marks, and entities are designated (A, B, etc.) without quotation marks.

United States, any of the States thereof, or any political subdivision or agency of either (other than a corporation engaged in commerce).

(3) *Ultimate parent entity.* The term "ultimate parent entity" means an entity which is not controlled by any other entity.

Examples: 1. If corporation A holds 100 percent of the stock of subsidiary B, and B holds 75 percent of the stock of its subsidiary C, corporation A is the ultimate parent entity, since it controls subsidiary B directly and subsidiary C indirectly, and since it is the entity within the person which is not controlled by any other entity.

2. If corporation A is controlled by natural person D, natural person D is the ultimate parent entity.

3. P and Q are the ultimate parent entities within persons "P" and "Q." If P and Q each own 50 percent of the voting securities of R, then P and Q are both ultimate parents of R, and R is part of both persons "P" and "Q."

(b) *Control.* The term "control" (as used in the terms "control(s)," "controlling," "controlled by," and "under common control with") means either (1) holding 50 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer; or (2) having the contractual power presently to designate a majority of the directors of a corporation, or in the case of unincorporated entities, of individuals exercising similar functions.

Example: Corporation A holds 100 percent of the stock of corporation B, 75 percent of the stock of corporation C, 50 percent of the stock of corporation D, and 30 percent of the stock of corporation E. Corporation A controls corporations B, C and D, but not corporation E. Corporation A is the ultimate parent entity of a person comprised of corporations A, B, C and D, and each of these corporations (but not corporation E) is "included within the person."

(c) *Hold.* (1) Subject to the provisions of subparagraphs (2) through (8) of this paragraph, the term "hold" (as used in the terms "hold(s)," "holding," "holder" and "held") means beneficial ownership, whether direct, or indirect through fiduciaries, agents, controlled entities or other means.

Example: If a stockbroker has stock in "street name" for the account of a natural person, only the natural person (who has beneficial ownership) and not the stockbroker (which may have record title) "holds" that stock.

(2) The holdings of spouses and their minor children shall be holdings of each of them.

(3) Except for a common trust fund or collective investment fund within the meaning of 12 CFR 9.18(a) (both of which are hereafter referred to in this paragraph as "collective investment funds"), and any revocable trust or an irrevocable trust in which the settlor retains a reversionary interest in the corpus, a trust, including a pension trust, shall hold all assets and voting securities constituting the corpus of the trust.

Example: Under this subparagraph the trust—and not the trustee—"holds" the voting securities and assets constituting the corpus of any irrevocable trust (in which the settlor retains no reversionary interest, and which is not a collective investment fund). Therefore, the trustee need not aggregate its holdings of any other assets or voting securities with the holdings of the trust for purposes of determining whether the requirements of the act apply to an acquisition by the trust. Similarly, the trustee, if making an acquisition for its own account, need not aggregate its holdings with those of any trusts for which it serves as trustee. (However, the trustee must aggregate any collective investment funds which it administers; see subparagraph (6) of this paragraph.)

(4) The assets and voting securities constituting the corpus of a revocable trust or the corpus of an irrevocable trust in which the settlor(s) retain(s) a reversionary interest in the corpus shall be holdings of the settlor(s) of such trust.

(5) Except as provided in subparagraph (4) of this paragraph, beneficiaries of a trust, including a pension trust or a collective investment fund, shall not hold any assets or voting securities constituting the corpus of such trust.

(6) A bank or trust company which administers one or more collective investment funds shall hold all assets and voting securities constituting the corpus of each such fund.

Example: Suppose A, a bank or trust company, administers collective investment funds W, X, Y and Z. Whenever person "A" is to make an acquisition, whether of not on behalf of one or more of the funds, it must aggregate the holdings of W, X, Y and Z in determining whether the requirements of the act apply to the acquisition.

(7) An insurance company shall hold all assets and voting securities held for the benefit of any general account of, or any separate account administered by, such company.

(8) A person holds all assets and voting securities held by the entities included within it; in addition to its own holding, an entity holds all assets and voting securities held by the entities which it controls directly or indirectly.

(d) *Affiliate.* An entity is an affiliate of a person if it is controlled, directly or indirectly, by the ultimate parent entity of such person.

(e)(1)(i) *United States person.* The term "United States person" means a person the ultimate parent entity of which—

(A) Is incorporated in the United States, is organized under the laws of the United States or has its principal offices within the United States; or

(B) If a natural person, either is a citizen of the United States or resides in the United States.

(ii) *United States issuer.* The term "United States issuer" means an issuer which is incorporated in the United States, is organized under the laws of the United States or has its principal offices within the United States.

(2)(i) *Foreign person.* The term "foreign person" means a person the ultimate parent entity of which—

(A) Is not incorporated in the United States, is not organized under the laws of the United States and does not have its principal offices within the United States; or

(B) If a natural person, neither is a citizen of the United States nor resides in the United States.

(ii) *Foreign issuer.* The term "foreign issuer" means an issuer which is not incorporated in the United States, is not organized under the laws of the United States and does not have its principal offices within the United States.

(f)(1) *Voting securities.* The term "voting securities" means any securities which at present or upon conversion entitle the owner or holder thereof to vote for the election of directors of the issuer, or of an entity included within the same person as the issuer, or, with respect to unincorporated entities, individuals exercising similar functions.

(2) *Convertible voting security.* The term "convertible voting security" means a voting security which presently does not entitle its owner or holder to vote for directors of any entity.

(3) *Conversion.* The term "conversion" means the exchange, without the payment of additional consideration, of voting securities which do not presently entitle the owner or holder to vote for directors of the issuer, or of an entity included within the same person as the issuer, for securities which do so entitle the owner or holder. Transfer costs and fees, and any payments made to complete fractional shares, shall not be additional consideration within the meaning of this subparagraph.

Examples: 1. The acquisition of convertible debentures which are convertible into common stock without the payment of additional consideration is an acquisition of "voting securities." However, § 802.31 exempts the acquisition of such securities from the requirements of the act.

2. Options and warrants are not "voting securities" for purposes of the act, since the payment of additional consideration is necessary to exercise the options or warrants. Notification need not be filed prior to the acquisition of options and warrants, but may be required prior to exercising them.

(g)(1) *Tender offer.* The term "tender offer" means any offer to purchase voting securities which is a tender offer within the meaning of section 14 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, 15 U.S.C. 78n.

(2) *Cash tender offer.* The term "cash tender offer" means a tender offer in which cash is the only consideration offered to the holders of the voting securities to be acquired.

(3) *Non-cash tender offer.* The term "non-cash tender offer" means any tender offer which is not a cash tender offer.

(h) *Notification threshold.* The term "notification threshold" means:

(1) Fifteen percent of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer, or an aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets of the acquired person valued in excess of $15 million;

(2) Fifteen percent of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer, if valued in excess of $15 million;

(3) Twenty-five percent of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer; or

(4) Fifty percent of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer.

(i)(1) *Solely for the purpose of investment.* Voting securities are held or acquired "solely for the purpose of investment" if the person holding or acquiring such voting securities has no intention of participating in the formulation, determination, or direction of the basic business decisions of the issuer.

Example: If a person holds stock "solely for the purpose of investment" and thereafter decides to influence or participate in management of the issuer of that stock, the stock in no longer held "solely for the purpose of investment."

(2) *Investment assets.* The term "investment assets" means cash, deposits in financial institutions, other money market instruments, and instruments evidencing government obligations.

(j) *Engaged in manufacturing.* A person is "engaged in manufacturing" if it produces and derives annual sales or revenues in excess of $1 million from products within industries 2000-3999 as coded in the Standard Industrial Classification Manual (1972 edition) published by the Executive Office of the President, Office of Management and Budget.

(k) *United States.* The term "United States" shall include the several States, the territories, possessions, and commonwealths of the United States, and the District of Columbia.

(l) *Commerce.* The term "commerce" shall have the meaning ascribed to that term in section 1 of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 12, or section 4 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 44.

(m) *The act.* References to "the act" refer to section 7A of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18A, as added by section 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390. References to "section 7A()" refer to subsections thereof. References to "this section" refer to the section of these rules in which the term appears.

§ 801.2 Acquiring and acquired persons.

(a) Any person which, as a result of an acquisition, will hold voting securities or assets, either directly or indirectly, or through fiduciaries, agents, or other entities acting on behalf of such person, is an acquiring person.

Example: Assume that corporations A and B, which are each ultimate parent entities of their respective "persons," created a joint venture, corporation V, and that each holds half of V's shares. Therefore, A and B each control V (see § 801.1(b)), and V is included within two persons, "A" and "B." Under this section, if V is to acquire corporation X, both "A" and "B" are acquiring persons.

(b) Except as provided in paragraphs (a) and (b) of § 801.12, the person(s) within which the entity whose assets or voting securities are being acquired is included, is an acquired person.

Examples: 1. Assume that person "Q" will acquire voting securities of corporation X held by "P" and that X is not included within person "P." Under this section, the acquired person is the person within which X is included, and is not "P."

2. In the example to paragraph (a) of this section, if V were to be acquired by X, then both "A" and "B" would be acquired persons.

(c) For purposes of the act and these rules, a person may be both an acquiring person and an acquired person in a single transaction.

Example: Corporation A (an entity within person "A") plans to transfer certain of its assets to corporation B (an entity within person "B") in return for voting securities of B. Since corporation A is acquiring voting securities, "A" is an acquiring person; since corporation B is acquiring assets, "B" is also an acquiring person. In addition, both "A" and "B" are acquired persons, since the assets of A are being acquired, and the voting securities of B are being acquired.

(d) A merger, consolidation, or other transaction combining all or any part of the business of two or more persons shall be an acquisition subject to the act, and each party to such a transaction shall be both an acquiring and an acquired person.

(e) Whenever voting securities are to be acquired from an acquiring person in connection with an acquisition, the acquisition of voting securities from the acquiring person shall be separately subject to the act.

Example: Suppose that corporations A and B are to merge, and that "A" and "B" have filed notification. A will be the surviving corporation, and the shareholders of B will receive stock of A in exchange for their B shares. Under this section, the acquisition of A shares by the shareholders of B is separately subject to the act. Thus, if "C," a shareholder of B, will receive sufficient shares of A to satisfy section 7A(a)(3), and if "A" and "C" meet the criteria of section 7A(a) (1) and (2), then "C's" acquisition of A's voting securities would be separately subject to the requirements of the act. Before "C" may acquire the voting securities of "A," "C" must file notification as an acquiring person, "A" (an acquiring person in the merger) must file notification as an acquired person, and "C" and "A" must observe a waiting period with respect to the acquisition of A shares by "C"—which is separate from the waiting period with respect to "A" and "B."

§ 801.3 Activities in or affecting commerce.

Section 7A(a)(1) is satisfied if any entity included within the acquiring person, or an entity included within the acquired person, is engaged in commerce or in any activity affecting commerce.

Examples: 1. A foreign subsidiary of a U.S. corporation seeks to acquire a foreign business. The acquiring person includes the U.S. parent corporation. If the U.S. corporation, or the foreign subsidiary, or any entity controlled by either one of them, is engaged in commerce or in any activity affecting commerce, section 7A(a)(1) is satisfied. Note, however, that §§ 802.50-802.52 may exempt certain acquisitions of foreign businesses or assets.

2. Even if none of the entities within the acquiring person is engaged in commerce or in any activity affecting commerce, the acquisition nevertheless satisfies section 7A(a)(1) if any entity included within the acquired person is so engaged.

§ 801.4 Secondary acquisitions.

(a) Whenever as a result of an acquisition (the "primary acquisition") an acquiring person will obtain control of an issuer which holds voting securities of another issuer which it does not control, then the acquisition of the other issuer's voting securities is a secondary acquisition and is separately subject to the act and these rules.

(b) *Exemptions.* (1) No secondary acquisition shall be exempt from the requirements of the act solely because the related primary acquisition is exempt from the requirements of the act.

(2) A secondary acquisition may itself be exempt from the requirements of the act under section 7A(c) or these rules.

Examples: 1. Assume that acquiring person "A" proposes to acquire all the voting securities of corporation B. This section provides that the acquisition of voting securities of issuers held but not controlled by B or by any entity which B controls are secondary acquisitions by "A." Thus, if B holds more than $15 million of the voting securities of corporation X (but does not control X), and "A" and "X" satisfy sections 7A (a)(1) and (a)(2), "A" must file notification separately with respect to its secondary acquisition of voting securities of X. "X" must file notification within fifteen days after "A" files, pursuant to § 801.30.

2. If in the previous example "A" acquires only 50 percent of the voting securities of B,

the result would remain the same. Since "A" would be acquiring control of B, all of B's holdings in X would be attributable to "A."

3. In the previous examples, if "A's" acquisition of the voting securities of B is exempt, "A" may still be required to file notification with respect to its secondary acquisition of the voting securities of X, unless that acquisition is itself exempt.

§ 801.10 Value of voting securities and assets to be acquired.

Except as provided in § 801.13, the value of voting securities and assets to be acquired shall be determined as follows:

(a) *Voting securities.* (1) If the security is traded on a national securities exchange or is authorized to be quoted in an interdealer quotation system of a national securities association registered with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission—

(i) And the acquisition price has been determined, the value shall be the market price or the acquisition price, whichever is greater; or if

(ii) The acquisition price has not been determined, the value shall be the market price.

(2) If subparagraph (1) of this paragraph is inapplicable—

(i) But the acquisition price has been determined, the value shall be the acquisition price; or if

(ii) The acquisition price has not been determined, the value shall be the fair market value.

(b) *Assets.* The value of assets to be acquired shall be the fair market value of the assets, or, if determined and greater than the fair market value, the acquisition price.

(c) For purposes of this section and § 801.13(a)(2):

(1) *Market price.* (i) For acquisitions subject to § 801.30, the market price shall be the lowest closing quotation, or, in an interdealer quotation system, the lowest closing bid price, within the 45 calendar days prior to the receipt of the notice required by § 803.5(a) or prior to the consummation of the acquisition.

(ii) For acquisitions not subject to § 801.30, the market price shall be the lowest closing quotation, or, in an interdealer quotation system, the lowest closing bid price, within the 45 or fewer calendar days which are prior to the consummation of the acquisition but not earlier than the day prior to the execution of the contract, agreement in principle or letter of intent to merge or acquire.

(iii) When the security was not traded within the period specified by this subparagraph, the last closing quotation or closing bid price preceding such period shall be used. If such closing quotations are available in more than one market, the person filing notification may select any such quotation.

(2) *Acquisition price.* The acquisition price shall include the value of all consideration for such voting securities or assets to be acquired.

(3) *Fair market value.* The fair market value shall be determinded in good faith by the board of directors of the ultimate parent entity included within the acquiring person, or, if unincorporated, by officials exercising similar functions; or by an entity delegated that function by such board or officials. Such determination must be made as of any day within 60 calendar days prior to the filing of the notification required by the act, or, if such notification has not been filed, within 60 calendar days prior to the consummation of the acquisition.

Example: Corporation A, the ultimate parent entity in person "A," contracts to acquire assets of corporation B, and the contract provides that the acquisition price is not to be determined until after the acquisition is effected. Under paragraph (b) of this section, for purposes of the act the value of the assets is to be the fair market value of the assets. Under paragraph (c)(3), the board of directors of corporation A must in good faith determine the fair market value. That determination will control for 60 days whether "A" and "B" must observe the requirements of the act; that is, "A" and "B" must either file notification or consummate the acquisition within that time. If "A" and "B" neither file nor consummate within 60 days, the parties would no longer be entitled to rely on the determination of fair market value, and, if in doubt about whether required to observe the requirements of the act, would have to make a second determination of fair market value. Note that since item 2(d)(i) of the Notification and Report Form only requests the approximate dollar value of assets, a second formal determination of the fair market value would not be necessary for that purpose.

§ 801.11 Annual net sales and total assets.

(a) The annual net sales and total assets of a person shall include all net sales and all assets held, whether foreign or domestic, except as provided in paragraph (d) of this section.

(b) Except for the total assets of a joint venture or other corporation at the time of its formation which shall be determined pursuant to § 801.40(c), the annual net sales and total assets of a person shall be as stated on the financial statements specified in paragraph (c) of this section: *Provided:* (1) That the annual net sales and total assets of each entity included within such person are consolidated therein. If the annual net sales and total assets of any entity included within the person are not consolidated in such statements, the annual net sales and total assets of the person filing notification shall be recomputed to include the nonduplicative annual net sales and nonduplicative total assets of each such entity; and

(2) That such statements, and any restatements pursuant to subparagraph (1) of this paragraph (insofar as possible), have been prepared in accordance with the accounting principles normally used by such person, and are of a date not more than 15 months prior to the date of filing of the notification required by the act, or the date of consummation of the acquisition.

Example: Person "A" is composed of entity A, subsidiaries B1 and B2 which A controls, subsidiaries C1 and C2 which B1 controls, and subsidiary C3 which B2 controls. Suppose that A's most recent financial statement consolidates the annual net sales and total assets of B1, C1, and C2, but not B2 or C3. In order to determine whether person "A" meets the criteria of section 7A(a)(2), as either an acquiring or an acquired person, A must recompute its annual net sales and total assets to reflect consolidation of the nonduplicative annual net sales and nonduplicative total assets of B2 and C3.

(c) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (b) of this section:

(1) The annual net sales of a person shall be as stated on the last regularly prepared annual statement of income and expense of that person; and

(2) The total assets of a person shall be as stated on the last regularly prepared balance sheet of that person.

Example: Suppose "A" sells assets to "B" on January 1. "A's" next regularly prepared balance sheet, dated February 1, reflects that sale. On March 1, "A" proposes to sell more assets to "B." "A's" total assets on March 1 are "A's" total assets as stated on its February 1 balance sheet.

(d) No assets of any natural person, other than investment assets, voting securities and other income-producing property, shall be included in determining the total assets of a person.

§ 801.12 Calculating percentage of voting securities or assets.

(a) *Voting securities.* Whenever the act or these rules require calculation of the percentage of voting securities to be held or acquired, the issuer whose voting securities are being acquired shall be deemed the "acquired persons."

Example: Person "A" is composed of corporation A1 and subsidiary A2; person "B" is composed of corporation B1 and subsidiary B2. Assume that A2 proposes to sell assets to B1 in exchange for common stock of B2. Under this paragraph, for purposes of calculating the percentage of voting securities to be held, the "acquired person" is B2. For all other purposes, the acquired person is "B." (For all purposes, the "acquiring persons" are "A" and "B.")

(b) *Percentage of voting securities.* Whenever the act or these rules require calculation of the percentage of voting securities of an issuer to be held or acquired, the percentage shall be the ratio, expressed as a percentage, which—

(i) The number of votes for directors of the issuer which voting securities presently entitle the holder to cast, or, as a result of the acquisition, will entitle the acquiring person to cast, bears to; and

(ii) The total number of votes for directors of the issuer which presently may be cast, or which will be entitled to be cast, after the acquisition, whichever is greater.

(2) Authorized but unissued voting securities and treasury voting securities shall not be considered securities presently entitled to vote for directors of the issuer.

(3) For purposes of determining the number of outstanding voting securities of an issuer, a person may rely upon the most recent information set forth in filings with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission, unless such person knows or has reason to believe that the information contained therein is inaccurate.

Examples: 1. In the example to paragraph (a), to determine the percentage of B2's voting securities which will be held by "A" after the transaction, all voting securities of B2 held by "A," the "acquiring person" (including A2 and all other entities included in person "A"), must be aggregated. If "A" holds convertible securities of B2 which meet the definition of voting securities in § 801.1(f), these securities are to be disregarded in calculating the percentage of voting securities held by "A."

2. Under this formula, any votes obtained by means of proxies from other persons are also disregarded in calculating the percentage of voting securities to be held or acquired.

(c) *Assets.* Any person whose assets are being acquired shall be deemed an "acquired person" in calculating the percentage of assets to be held or acquired for purposes of section 7A(a)(3)(A).

Example: In the example to paragraph (a), for purposes of calculating the percentage of assets to be held, the "acquired person" is "A."

(d) *Percentage of assets.* Whenever the act or these rules require calculation of the percentage of assets of a person to be held or acquired, the percentage shall be the ratio, expressed as a percentage, which—

(1) The book value (on the books of the acquired person) of the assets to be acquired (see § 801.13(b)(1)), bears to; and

(2) The total assets of the acquired person, determined in accordance with § 801.11.

Example: In the example to paragraph (a), the percentage of assets to be acquired by "B" is determined by dividing the book value of A2's assets being acquired, by the total assets of "A," determined in accordance with § 801.11.

§ 801.13 Voting securities or assets to be held as a result of acquisition.

(a) *Voting securities.* (1) Subject to the provisions of § 801.15, all voting securities of the issuer which will be held by the acquiring person after the consummation of an acquisition shall be deemed voting securities held as a result of the acquisition. The value of such voting securities shall be the sum of the value of the voting securities to be acquired, determined in accordance with § 801.10(a), and the value of the voting securities held by the acquiring person prior to the acquisition, determined in accordance with subparagraph (2) of this paragraph.

(2) The value of voting securities of an issuer held prior to an acquisition shall be—

(i) If the security is traded on a national securities exchange or is authorized to be quoted in an interdealer quotation system of a national securities association registered with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, the market price calculated in accordance with § 801.10(c)(1); or

(ii) If subdivision (i) of this subparagraph is not applicable, the fair market value determined in accordance with § 801.10(c)(3).

Examples: 1. Assume that acquiring person "A" holds $19 million of the voting securities of X, and is to acquire another $1 million of the same voting securities. Since under paragraph (a) of this rule all voting securities "A" will hold after the acquisition are held "as a result of" the acquisition, "A" will hold $20 million of the voting securities of X as a result of the acquisition. "A" must therefore observe the requirements of the act before making the acquisition, unless the present acquisition is exempt under § 7A(c), § 802.21 or any other rule.

2. See § 801.15 and the examples to that rule.

3. See § 801.20 and the examples to that rule.

(b) *Assets.* (1) All assets to be acquired from the acquired person shall be assets held as a result of the acquisition. The value of such assets shall be determined in accordance with § 801.10(b).

(2)(i) If the acquiring person has signed a letter of intent or entered into a contract or agreement in principle to acquire assets from the acquired person, and ,

(ii) Subject to the provisions of § 801.15, if the acquiring person has acquired any assets from the acquired person within the 180 calendar days preceding the signing of such agreement and such assets are presently held by the acquiring person, then only for purposes of section 7A(a)(3)(B) and § 801.1(h)(1), both the acquiring and the acquired persons shall treat such assets as though they had not previously been acquired and are being acquired as part of the present acquisition. The value of any assets previously acquired which are subject to this subparagraph shall be determined in accordance with § 801.10(b) as of the time of their prior acquisition.

Example: Acquiring person "A" proposes to make two acquisitions of assets from acquired person "B," 90 days apart, and wishes to determine whether notification is necessary prior to the second acquisition. For purposes of the percentage test of § 7A(a)(3)(A), "A" would hold only the assets it acquired in the second acquisition. For purposes of the $15 million test of § 7A(a)(3)(B), however, "A" must aggregate both of its acquisitions and must value each as of the time of its occurrence.

§ 801.14 Aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets.

For purposes of section 7A(a)(3)(B) and § 801.1(h)(1), the aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets shall be the sum of:

(a) The value of all voting securities of the acquired person which the acquiring person would hold as a result of the acquisition, determined in accordance with § 801.13(a); and

(b) The value of all assets of the acquired person which the acquiring person would hold as a result of the acquisition, determined in accordance with § 801.13(b).

Examples: 1. Acquiring person "A" previously acquired $6 million of the voting securities (not convertible voting securities) of corporation X. "A" now intends to acquire $8 million of X's assets. Under paragraph (a) of this section, "A" looks to § 801.13(a) and determines that the voting securities are to be held "as a reult of" the acquisition. Section 801.13(a) also provides that "A" must determine the present value of the previously acquired securities. Under paragraph (b) of this section, "A" looks to § 801.13(b)(1) and determines that the assets to be acquired will be held "as a result of" the acquisition, and are valued under § 801.10(b) at $8 million. Therefore, if the voting securities have a present value of more than $7 million, the asset acquisition is subject to the requirements of the act since, as a result of it, "A" would hold an aggregate total amount of the voting securities and assets of "X" in excess of $15 million.

2. In the previous example, assume that the assets acquisition occurred first, and that the acquisition of the voting securities is to occur within 180 days of the first acquisition. "A" now looks to § 801.13(b)(2) and determines that because the second acquisition is of voting securities and not assets, the asset and voting securities acquisitions are not treated as one transaction. Therefore, the second acquisition would not be subject to the requirements of the act by reason of section 7A(a)(3)(B) since the value of the securities to be acquired does not equal or exceed $15 million.

§ 801.15 Aggregation of voting securities and assets the acquisition of which was exempt.

Notwithstanding § 801.13, for purposes of section 7A(a)(3) and § 801.1(h), none of the following will be held as a result of an acquisition:

(a) Assets or voting securities the acquisition of which was exempt at the time of acquisition (or would have been exempt, had the act and these rules been in effect), or the present acquisition of which is exempt, under—

(1) Sections 7A(c) (1), (5), (6), (7), (8), and (11)(B);

(2) Sections 802.8, 802.31, 802.50(a)(1), 802.51(a), 802.52, 802.53, 802.63, and 802.70;

(b) Assets or voting securities the acquisition of which was exempt at the time of acquistion (or would have been exempt, had the act and these rules been in effect), or the present acquisition of which is exempt, under section 7A(c)(9) and §§ 802.50(a)(2), 802.50(b), 802.51(b) and 802.64 unless the limitations contained in section 7A(c)(9) or those sections do not apply or as a result of the acquisiton would be exceeded, in which case the assets or voting securities so acquired will be held; and

(c) Voting securites the acquistion of which was exempt at the time of acquisiton (or would have been exempt, had the act and these rules been in effect), or the present acquisition of which is exempt, under section 7A(c)(11)(A) unless additional voting securities of the same issuer have been or are being acquired.

Examples: 1. Assume that acquiring person "A" is simultaneously to acquire $50 million of the convertible voting securities of X and $12 million (which is less than 15 percent) of the voting common stock of X. Although the acquistion of the convertible voting securities is exempt under § 802.31, since the overall value of the securities to be acquired is greater than $15 million, "A" must determine whether it is obliged to file notification and observe a waiting period before acquiring the common stock. Because § 802.31 is one of the exemptions listed in paragraph (a)(2) of this rule, "A" would not hold the convertible voting securities as a result of the acquisition. Therefore, since as a result of the acquisition "A" would hold only the common stock, the test of section 7A(a)(3) would not be satisfied, and "A" need not observe the requirements of the act before acquiring the common stock.

(Note, however, that the $50 million of convertible voting securities would be reflected in "A's" next regularly prepared balance sheet, for purposes of § 801.11.)

2. In the previous example, the rule was applied to voting securities the present acquisition of which is exempt. Assume instead that "A" had acquired the convertible voting securities prior to its acquisition of the common stock. "A" still would not hold the convertible voting securities as a result of the acquisition of the common stock, because the rule states that voting securities the previous acquisition of which was exempt also fall within the rule. Thus, the test of section 7A(a)(3) would again not be satisfied, and "A" need not observe the requirements of the act before acquiring the common stock.

3. In example 2, assume instead that "A" acquired the convertible voting securities in 1975, before the act and rules went into effect. Since the rule applies to voting securities the acquisition of which would have been exempt had the act and rules been in effect, the result again would be identical. If the rules had been in effect in 1975, the acquisition of the convertible voting securities would have been exempt under § 802.31.

4. Assume that acquiring person "B," a United States person, acquired from corporation X two mines located abroad, and assume that the acquisition price was $40 million. In the most recent year, sales in the United States attributable to the mines were $6 million, and thus the acquisition was exempt under § 802.50(a)(2). Within 180 days of that acquisition, "B" seeks to acquire a third mine from X, to which United States sales of $7 million were attributable in the most recent year. Since under § 801.13(b)(2), as a result of the acquisition, "B" would hold all three mines of X, and the $10 million limitation in § 802.50(a)(2) would be exceeded, under paragraph (b) of this rule, "B" would hold the previously acquired assets for purposes of the second acquisition. Therefore, as a result of the second acquisition, "B" would hold assets of X exceeding $15 million, would not qualify for the exemption in § 802.50(a)(2), and must observe the requirements of the act before consummating the acquisition.

§ 801.20 Acquisitions subsequent to exceeding threshold.

Acquisitions meeting the criteria of section 7A(a), and not otherwise exempted by section 7A(c) or § 802.21 or any other of these rules, are subject to the requirements of the act even though:

(a) Earlier acquisitions of assets or voting securities may have been subject to the requirements of the act;

(b) The acquiring person's holdings initially may have met or exceeded a notification threshold before the effective date of these rules; or

(c) The acquiring person's holdings initially may have met or exceeded a notification threshold by reason of increases in market values or events other than acquisitions.

Examples: 1. Person "A" acquires $10 million of the voting securities of person "B" before the effective date of these rules. If "A" wishes to acquire an additional $6 million of the voting securities of "B" after the effective date of the rules, notification will be required by reason of section 7A(a)(3)(B).

2. In example 1, assume that the value of the voting securities of "B" originally acquired by "A" has reached a present value exceeding $15 million. If "A" wishes to acquireaT3 any additional voting securities or assets of "B," notification will be required. See § 801.13(a).

§ 801.21 Securities and cash not considered assets when acquired.

For purposes of section 7A(a)(3) and §§ 801.1(h)(1), 801.12(d)(1) and 801.13(b):

(a) Cash shall not be considered an asset of the person from which it is acquired; and

(b) Neither voting or nonvoting securities nor obligations referred to in section 7A(c)(2) shall be considered assets of another person from which they are acquired.

Examples: 1. Assume that acquiring person "A" acquires voting securities of issuer X from "B," a person unrelated to X. Under this subparagraph, the acquisition is treated only as one of voting securities, requiring "A" and "X" to comply with the requirements of the act, rather than one in which "A" acquires the assets of "B," requiring "A" and "B" to comply. See also example 2 to § 801.30. Note that for purposes of section 7A(a)(2)—that is, for the next regularly prepared balance sheet of "A" referred to in § 801.11—the voting securities of X must be reflected after their acquisition; see § 801.11(c)(2).

2. In the previous example, if "A" acquires nonvoting securities of X from "B," then under this section the acquisition would be treated only as one of nonvoting securities of X (and would be exempt under section 7A(c)(2)), rather than one in which "A" acquires assets of "B," requiring "A" and "B" to comply. Again, the nonvoting securities of X would have to be reflected in "A's" next regularly prepared balance sheet for purposes of section 7A(a)(2).

3. In example 1, assume that "B" receives only cash from "A" in exchange for the voting securities of X. Under this section, "B's" acquisition of cash is *not* an acquisition of the "assets" of "A." and "B" is not required to file notification as an acquiring person.

§ 801.30 Tender offers and acquisitions of voting securities from third parties.

(a) This section applies to:

(1) Acquisitions on a national securities exchange or through an interdealer quotation system registered with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission;

(2) Acquisitions described by § 801.31;

(3) Tender offers;

(4) Secondary acquisitions;

(5) All acquisitions (other than mergers and consolidations) in which voting securities are to be acquired from a holder or holders other than the issuer or an entity included within the same person as the issuer;

(6) Conversions; and

(7) Acquisitions of voting securities resulting from the exercise of options or warrants which are—

(i) Issued by the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired (or by any entity included within the same person as the issuer); and

(ii) The subject of a currently effective registration statement filed with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission under the Securities Act of 1933.

(b) For acquisitions described by paragraph (a) of this section:

(1) The waiting period required under the act shall commence upon the filing of notification by the acquiring person as provided in § 803.10(a); and

(2) The acquired person shall file the notification required by the act, in accordance with these rules, no later the 5 p.m. eastern time on the 15th (or, in the case of cash tender offers, the 10th) calendar day following the date of receipt, as defined by § 803.10(a), by the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General of the notification filed by the acquiring person. Should the 15th (or, in the case of cash tender offers, the 10th) calendar day fall on a weekend day or federal holiday, the notification shall be filed no later than 10 a.m. eastern time on the next following business day.

Examples: 1. Acquiring person "A" proposes to acquire from corporation B the voting securities of B's wholly owned subsidiary, corporation S. Since "A" is acquiring the shares of S from its parent, this section does not apply, and the waiting period does not begin until both "A" and "B" file notification.

2. Acquiring person "A" proposes to acquire $20 million of the voting securities of corporation X on a securities exchange. The waiting period begins when "A" files notification. "X" must file notification within 15 calendar days thereafter. The seller of the X shares is not subject to any obligations under the act.

3. Suppose that acquiring person "A" proposes to acquire 50 percent of the voting securities of corporation B which in turn owns 30 percent of the voting securities of corporation C. Thus "A's" acquisition of C's voting securities is a secondary acquisition (see § 801.4) to which this section applies because "A" is acquiring C's voting securities from a third party (B). Therefore, the waiting period with respect to "A's" acquisition of C's voting securities begins when "A" files its separate Notification and Report Form with respect to C, and "C" must file with 15 days thereafter. "A's" primary and secondary acquisitions of the voting securities of B and C are subject to separate waiting periods; see § 801.4.

§ 801.31 Acquisitions of voting securities by offerees in tender offers.

Whenever an offeree in a noncash tender offer is required to, and does, file notification with respect to an acquisition described in § 801.2(e):

(a) The waiting period with respect to such acquisition shall begin upon filing of notification by the offeree, pursuant to §§ 801.30 and 803.10(a)(1);

(b) The person within which the issuer of the shares to be acquired by the offeree is included shall file notification as required by § 801.30(b);

(c) Any request for additional information or documentary material pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20 shall extend the waiting period in accordance with § 803.20(c); and

(d) The voting securities to be acquired by the offeree may be placed into escrow, for the benefit of the offeree, pending expiration or termination of the waiting period with respect to the acquisition of such securities; *Provided however*, That no person may vote any voting securities placed into escrow pursuant to this subparagraph.

Example: Assume that "A," which has annual net sales exceeding $100 million, makes a tender offer for voting securities of corporation X. The consideration for the tender offer is to be voting securities of A. "S," a shareholder of X with total assets exceeding $10 million, wishes to tender its holdings of X and in exchange would receive shares of A valued at $16 million. Under this section, "S's" acquisition of the shares of A would be an acquisition separately subject to the requirements of the act. Before "S" may acquire the voting securities of A, "S" must first file notification and observe a waiting period—which is separate from any waiting period that may apply with respect to "A" and "X." Since § 801.30 applies, the waiting period applicable to "A" and "S" begins upon filing by "S," and "A" must file with respect to "S's" acquisition within 15 days pursuant to § 801.30(b). Should the waiting period with respect to "A" and "X" expire or be terminated prior to the waiting period with respect to "S" and "A," "S" may wish to tender its X-shares and place the A-shares into a nonvoting escrow until the expiration or termination of the latter waiting period.

§ 801.32 Conversion an acquisition.

A conversion is an acquisition within the meaning of the act.

Example: Assume that acquiring person "A" wishes to convert convertible voting securities of issuer X, and is to receive common stock of X valued at $20 million. If "A" and "X" satisfy the criteria of section 7A(a)(1) and section 7A(a)(2), then "A" and "X" must file notification and observe the waiting period before "A" completes the acquisition of the X common stock, unless exempted by section 7A(c) or these rules. Since § 801.30 applies, the waiting period begins upon notification by "A," and "X" must file notification within 15 days.

§ 801.40 Formation of joint venture or other corporations.

(a) In the formation of a joint venture or other corporation (other than in connection with a merger or consolidation), even though the persons contributing to the formation of a joint venture or other corporation and the joint venture or other corporation itself may, in the formation transaction, be both acquiring and acquired persons within the meaning of § 801.2, the contributors shall be deemed acquiring persons only, and the joint venture or other corporation shall be deemed the acquired person only.

(b) Unless exempted by the act or any of these rules, upon the formation of a joint venture or other corporation, in a transaction meeting the criteria of section 7A (a)(1) and (a)(3) (other than in connection with a merger or consolidation), an acquiring person shall be subject to the requirements of the act if:

(1)(i) The acquiring person has annual net sales or total assets of $100 million or more;

(ii) The joint venture or other corporation will have total assets of $10 million or more; and

(iii) At least one other acquiring person has annual net sales or total assets of $10 million or more; or

(2)(i) The acquiring person has annual net sales or total assets of $10 million or more;

(ii) The joint venture or other corporation will have total assets of $100 million or more; and

(iii) At least one other acquiring person has annual net sales or total assets of $10 million or more.

(c) For purposes of paragraph (b) of this section the assets of the joint venture or other corporation shall include:

(1) All assets which any person contributing to the formation of the joint venture or other corporation has agreed to transfer or for which agreements have been secured for the joint venture or other corporation to obtain at any time, whether or not such person is subject to the requirements of the acts; and

(2) Any amount of credit or any obligations of the joint venture or other corporation which any person contributing to the formation has agreed to extend or guarantee, at any time.

(d) The commerce criterion of section 7A(a)(1) is satisfied if either the activities of any acquiring person are in or affect commerce, or the person filing notification should reasonably believe that the activities of the joint venture or other corporation will be in or will affect commerce.

Example: Persons "A," "B," and "C" agree to create new corporation N, a joint venture. "A" has more than $100 million in annual net sales. "B" has more than $10 million in total assets. Both "C" 's total assets and its annual net sales are less than $10 million. "A," "B," and "C" are each engaged in commerce. The corporations have agreed to make an aggregate initial contribution to the new entity of $6 million in assets and to make additional contributions of an aggregate $6 million in each of the next three years. Under paragraph (c), the assets of the new corporation are $24 million. Under paragraph (b), only "A" must file notification, and only then if "A" meets a criterion of section 7A(a)(3)—that is, if it will be acquiring 15 percent or $15 million of the voting securities of the new entity. N need not file notification; see § 802.41.

§ 801.90 Transactions or devices for avoidance.

Any transaction(s) or other device(s) entered into or employed for the purpose of avoiding the obligation to comply with the requirements of the act shall be disregarded, and the obligation to comply shall be determined by applying the act and these rules to the substance of the transaction.

Examples: 1. Suppose corporations A and B wish to form a joint venture. A and B contemplate a total investment of $30 million in the joint venture; persons "A" and "B" each have total assets in excess of $100 million. Instead of filing notification pursuant to § 801.40, A creates a new subsidiary, A1, which issues half of its authorized shares to A. Assume that A1 has total assets of $1,000. "A" then sells 50 percent of its A1 stock to "B" for $500. Thereafter, "A" and "B" each contribute $15 million to A1 in exchange for the remaining authorized A1 stock (one-fourth each to "A" and "B"). A's creation of A1 was exempt under § 802.30; its sale of A1 stock to "B" was exempt under § 802.20; and the second acquisition of stock in A1 by "A" and "B" was exempt under § 802.30 and sections 7A(c) (3) and (10). Since this scheme appears to be for the purpose of avoiding the requirements of the act, the sequence of transactions will be disregarded. The transactions will be viewed as the formation of a joint venture corporation by "A" and "B" having over $10 million in assets. Such a transaction would be covered by § 801.40 and "A" and "B" must file notification and observe the waiting period.

2. Suppose "A" wholly owns and operates a chain of twenty retail hardware stores, each of which is separately incorporated and has assets of less than $10 million. The aggregate fair market value of the assets of the twenty store corporations is $60 million. "A" proposes to sell the stores to "B" for $60 million. For various reasons it is decided that "B" will buy the stock of each of the store corporations from "A". Instead of filing notification and observing the waiting period as contemplated by the act, "A" and "B" enter into a series of five stock purchase-sale agreements for $12 million each. Under the terms of each contract the stock of four stores will pass from "A" to "B". The five agreements are to be consummated on five successive days. Because, after each of these transactions, the store corporations are no longer part of the acquired person (§ 801.13(a) does not apply because control has passed, see § 801.2), and because § 802.20(b) exempts the acquisition of control of each of the store corporations, none of the contemplated acquisitions would be subject to the requirements of the act. However, if the stock of all of the store corporations were to be purchased in one transaction, no exemption would be applicable, and the act's requirements would have to be met. Because it appears that the purpose of making five separate contracts is to avoid the requirements of the act, this section would ignore the form of the separate transactions and consider the substance to be one transaction requiring compliance with the act.

The Federal Trade Commission promulgates the Rules contained in this part (802) pursuant to section 7A(d) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18A(d), as added by section 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390.

PART 802—EXEMPTION RULES

Sec.

802.1 Acquisitions of goods or realty in the ordinary course of business.
802.6 Federal agency approval.
802.8 Certain supervisory acquisitions.
802.9 Acquisitions solely for the purpose of investment.
802.10 Stock dividends and splits.
802.20 Minimum dollar value.
802.21 Acquisitions of voting securities not meeting or exceeding greater notification threshold.
802.23 Amended or renewed tender offers.
802.30 Intra-person transactions.
802.31 Acquisitions of convertible voting securities.
802.40 Exempt formation of joint venture or other corporations.
802.41 Joint venture or other corporations at time of formation.
802.50 Acquisitions of foreign assets or of voting securities of a foreign issuer by United States persons.
802.51 Acquisitions by foreign person.
802.52 Acquisitions by or from foreign governmental corporations.
802.53 Certain foreign banking transactions.
802.60 Acquisitions by securities underwriters.
802.63 Certain acquisitions by creditors and insurers.
802.64 Acquisitions of voting securities by certain institutional investors.
802.70 Acquisitions subject to order.
802.71 Acquisitions by gift, intestate succession or devise, or by irrevocable trust.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 7A(d) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18A(d), as added by sec. 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. No. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390.

§ 802.1 Acquisitions of goods or realty in the ordinary course of business.

(a) *Acquisitions of voting securities of entities holding only realty.* For purposes of section 7A(c)(1), an acquisition of the voting securities of an entity whose assets consist or will consist solely of real property and assets incidental to the ownership of real property (such as cash, prepaid taxes or insurance, rentals receivable and the like) shall be deemed an acquisition of realty.

(b) *Certain acquisitions of assets.* No acquisition of the goods or realty of an entity (except for entities described in paragraph (a) of this section) shall be made "in the ordinary course of business" within the meaning of section 7A(c)(1), if, as a result thereof, the acquiring person will hold all or substantially all of the assets of that entity or an operating division thereof.

§ 802.6 Federal agency approval.

For the purposes of section 7A (c)(6) and (c)(8), the term "information and documentary material" includes one copy of all documents, application forms, and all written submissions of any type whatsoever. In lieu of providing all such information and documentary material, or any portion thereof, one copy of an index describing such information and documentary material may be provided, together with a certification that any such information or documentary material not provided will be provided within 10 calendar days upon request by the Federal Trade Commission or Assistant Attorney General, or a delegated official of either. Any material submitted pursuant to this section shall be submitted to the offices specified in § 803.10(c).

§ 802.8 Certain supervisory acquisitions.

A merger, consolidation, purchase of assets, or acquisition requiring agency approval under sections 403 or 408(e) of the National Housing Act, 12 U.S.C. 1726, 1730a(e), or under section 5 of the Home Owners' Loan Act of 1933, 12 U.S.C. 1464 shall be exempt from the requirements of the Act, including specifically the filing requirement of section 7A(c)(8), it the agency whose approval is required finds that approval of such merger, consolidation, purchase of assets, or acquisition is necessary to prevent the probable failure of one of the institutions involved.

§ 802.9 Acquisition solely for the purpose of investment.

An acquisition of voting securities shall be exempt from the requirements of the act pursuant to section 7A(c)(9) if made solely for the purpose of investment and if, as a result of the acquisition, the acquiring person would hold ten percent or less of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer, regardless of the dollar value of voting securities so acquired or held.

Examples: 1. Suppose that acquiring person "A" acquires 6 percent of the voting securities of issuer X, valued at $30 million. If the acquisition is solely for the purpose of investment, it is exempt under section 7A(c)(9).

2. After the acquisition in example 1, "A" decides to acquire an additional 7 percent of the voting securities of X. Regardless of "A"'s intentions, the acquisition is not exempt under section 7A(c)(9).

3. After the acquisition in example 1, acquiring person "A" decides to participate in the management of issuer X. Any subsequent acquisitions of X stock by "A" would not be exempt under section 7A(c)(9).

§ 802.10 Stock dividends and splits.

The acquisition of voting securities, pursuant to a stock split or pro rata stock dividend, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act under section 7A(c)(10).

§ 802.20 Minimum dollar value.

An acquisition which would be subject to the requirements of the act and which satisfies section 7A(a)(3)(A), but which does not satisfy section 7A(a)(3)(B), shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if as a result of the acquisition the acquiring person would not hold:

(a) Assets of the acquired person values at more than $10 million; of

(b) Voting securities which confer control of an issuer which, together with all entities which it controls, has annual net sales or total assets of $10 million or more.

Examples: 1. Acquiring person "A" intends to acquire 66 percent of the voting securities of corporation X from X's ultimate parent entity, W, and "A" holds no other assets or voting securities of acquired persons "W". X has no subsidiaries and does not have annual net sales or total assets of $10 million. If the postacquisition value of "A" 's holdings of voting securities of X would be $15 million or less, the acquisition would be exempt under this section.

2. Assume that acquiring person "B" holds voting securities of corporation Q valued at $9 million. "B" now intends to acquire assets of Q valued at $7 million. Since the aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets of "Q" to be held by "B" would exceed $15 million, section 7A(a)(3)(B) would be satisfied, and the acquisition would not be exempt under this section.

3. Assume that acquiring person "C" holds $5 million of the voting securities of corporation R, an entity included within person "T." "C" now proposes to acquire $8 million of the assets of corporation S, also an entity included within person "T," representing 20 percent of "T's" total assets. Section 7A(a)(3)(B) is not satisfied because the aggregate total amount of "C's" holdings in aequired person "T" will be less than $15 million. Although section 7A(a)(3)(A) would be satisfied by the asset acquisition, it will nevertheless be exempt under paragraph (a) of this section.

§ 802.21 Acquisitions of voting securities not meeting or exceeding greater notification threshold.

An acquisition of voting securities shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if:

(a) The acquiring person and all other persons required by the act and these rules to file notification filed notification with respect to an earlier acquisition of voting securities of the same issuer;

(b) The waiting period with respect to the earlier acquisition has expired, or been terminated pursuant to § 803.11, and the acquisition will be consummated within 5 years of such expiration or termination; and

(c) The acquisition will not increase the holdings of the acquiring person to meet or exceed a notification threshold greater than the greatest notification threshold met or exceeded in the earlier acquisition.

Examples: 1. Corporation A acquires 15 percent of the voting securities of corporation B and both "A" and "B" file notification as required. Within five years of the expiration of the original waiting period, "A" acquires additional voting securities of B but not in an amount sufficient to meet or exceed 25 percent of the voting securities of B. No additional notification is required.

2. In example 1, "A" continues to acquire B's securities. Before "A's" holdings meet or exceed 25 percent of B's outstanding voting securities, "A" and "B" must file notification and wait the prescribed period, regardless of whether the acquisition occur within five years after the expiration of the earlier waiting period.

3. In example 2, suppose that "A" and "B" file notification at the 25 percent level and that, within 5 years after expiration of the waiting period, "A" continues to acquire voting securities of B. No further notification is required until "A" plans to make the acquisition that will give it 50 percent ownership of B. (Once "A" holds 50 percent, further acquisitions of voting securities are exempt under section 7A(c)(3).

4. Assume that "C" is an institutional investor whose prior acquisitions of corporation D's voting securities were exempt under § 802.64. "C" now proposes to purchase additional voting securities of D which will result in holdings exceeding 15 percent and $25 million. "C" and "D" therefore file notification and observe the waiting period. Under this section within the 5 years following the expiration of the waiting period "C" may further increase its holdings in D to any amount below 25 percent (regardless of dollar value) without again filing notification. Section 802.64 exempted "C" from filing notification at the thresholds defined in subparagraphs (1) or (2) of § 801.1(h); thereafter, since "C" filed notification with respect to an acquisition which resulted in its holding more than 15 percent of D's voting securities valued at more than $25 million, the next notification threshold "greater than the greatest notification threshold met or exceeded in the earlier acquisition" is 25 percent of D's voting securities. (See paragraph (c) of this section and § 801.1(h)(3).)

5. This section also allows a person to recross any of the threshold notification levels—15 percent/$15 million, 15 percent if greater than $15 million, 25 and 50 percent—any number of times within 5 years of the expiration of the waiting period following notification for that level. Thus, if in example 1, "A" had disposed of some voting securities so that it held less than 15 percent of the voting securities of B, and thereafter had increased its holdings to more than 15 percent but less than 25 percent of B, notification would not be required if the increase occurred within 5 years of the expiration of the original waiting period. Similarly, in examples 2 and 3, "A" could decrease its holdings below, and then increase its holdings above, 25 percent and 50 percent, respectively without filing notification, if done within 5 years of the expiration of those respective waiting periods.

§ 802.23 Amended or renewed tender offers.

Whenever a tender offer is amended or renewed after notification has been filed by the offeror, no new notification shall be required, and the running of the waiting period shall be unaffected, except as follows:

(a) If the number of voting securities to be acquired pursuant to the offer is increased such that a greater notification threshold would be met or exceeded, only the acquiring person need again file notification, but a new waiting period must be observed;

(b) If a noncash tender offer is amended to become a cash tender offer, (1) one copy of the amended tender offer shall be filed in the manner prescribed by § 803.10(c) with the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General, and (2) subject to the provisions of § 803.10(b)(1), the waiting period shall expire on the 15th day after the date of receipt (determined in accordance with § 803.10(c)) of the amended tender offer, or on the 30th day after filing notification, whichever is earlier; or

(c) If a cash tender offer is amended to become a noncash tender offer, (1) one copy of the amended tender offer shall be filed in the manner prescribed by § 803.10(c) with the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General, and (2) subject to the provisions of § 803.10(b)(1), the waiting period shall expire on the 15th day after the date of receipt (as determined in accordance with § 803.10(c)) of the amended tender offer, or on the 30th day after filing notification, whichever is later.

Examples: 1. Assume that corporation A makes a tender offer for 20 percent of the voting securities of corporation B and that "A" files notification. Under this section, if A subsequently amends its tender offer only as to the amount of consideration offered, the waiting period so commenced is not affected, and no new notification need be filed.

2. In the previous example, assume that A makes an amended tender offer for 27 percent of the voting securities of B. Since a new notification threshold will be crossed, this section requires that "A" must again file notification and observe a new waiting period. Paragraph (a) of this section, however, provides that "B" need not file notification again.

3. Assume that "A" makes a tender offer for shares of corporation B. "A" includes its voting securities as part of the consideration. "A" files notification. Five days later, "A" changes its tender offer to a cash tender offer, and on the same day files copies of its amended tender offer with the offices designated in § 803.10(c). Under paragraph (b) of this section, the waiting period expires (unless extended or terminated) 15 days after the receipt of the amended offer (on the 25th day after filing notification), since that occurs earlier than the expiration of the original waiting period (which would occur on the 13th day after filing).

4. Assume that "A" makes a cash tender offer for shares of corporation B and files notification. Six days later, "A" amends the tender offer and adds voting securities as consideration, and on the same day files copies of the amended tender offer with the offices designated in § 803.10(c). Under paragraph (c) of this section, the waiting period expires (unless extended or terminated) on the 13th day following the date of filing of notification (determined under § 803.10(c)), since that occurs later than the 15th day after receipt of the amended tender offer (which would occur on the 21st day).

§ 802.30 Intra-person transactions.

An acquisition (other than the formation of a joint venture or other corporation the voting securities of which will be held by two or more persons) in which, by reason of holdings of voting securities, the acquiring and acquired persons are (or as a result of formation of a wholly owned entity will be) the same person, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act.

Examples: 1. Corporation A merges its two wholly owned subsidiaries S1 and S2. The transaction is exempt under this section.

2. Corporation B creates a new wholly owned subsidiary. The transaction is exempt under this section.

3. Corporation A, which controls corporation B by a contract giving A the power to name a majority of B's directors, but which holds no voting securities of B, proposes to acquire 15 percent of B's voting securities. The transaction is not exempt under this section, since "A" and "B" are not the same person "by reason of holdings of voting securities."

4. Corporation A repurchases a portion of its voting securities in a series of transactions involving numerous sellers. All of these acquisitions are exempt under this section. The redemption or retirement of securities would likewise be exempt under this section.

5. Corporations A and B (which are not included within the same person) form a new corporation, C. A and B will each hold C's voting securities upon formation. This section is inapplicable, and the acquisitions of C's voting securities by A and B are not exempt.

§ 802.31 Acquisitions of convertible voting securities.

Acquisitions of convertible voting securities shall be exempt from the requirements of the act.

Example: This section applies regardless of the dollar value of the convertible voting securities held or to be acquired and even though they may be converted into 15 percent or more of the issuer's voting securities. Note, however, that subsequent conversions of convertible voting securities may be subject to the requirements of the act. See § 801.32.

§ 802.40 Exempt formation of joint venture or other corporations.

Acquisitions of the voting securities of a joint venture or other corporation at the time of formation under § 801.40 shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if the joint venture or other corporation will be not for profit within the meaning of Sections 501(c)(1)-(4), (6)-(15), (17)-(20) or (d) of the Internal Revenue Code.

§ 802.41 Joint venture or other corporations at time of formation.

Whenever any person(s) contributing to the formation of a joint venture or other corporation are subject to the requirements of the act by reason of § 801.40, the joint venture or other corporation need not file the notification required by the act and § 803.1.

Examples: 1. Corporations A and B, each having sales of $100 million, each propose to contribute $10 million in cash in exchange for 50 percent of the voting securities of a new corporation, N. Under this section, the new corporation need not file notification, although both "A" and "B" must do so and observe the waiting period prior to receiving any voting securities of N.

2. In addition to the facts in example 1 above, A and B have agreed that upon creation N will purchase 100 percent of the voting securities of corporation C for $15 million. Because N's purchase of C is not a transaction in connection with N's formation, and because in any event C is not a contributor to the formation of N, "A," "B" and "C" must file with respect to the proposed acquisition of C and must observe the waiting period.

§ 802.50 Acquisitions of foreign assets or of voting securities of a foreign issuer by United States persons.

(a) *Assets.* In a transaction in which assets located outside the United States are being acquired by a U.S. person:

(1) The acquisition of assets located outside the United States, to which no sales in or into the United States are attributable, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act; and

(2) The acquisition of assets located outside the United States, to which sales in or into the United States are attributable, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act unless as a result of the acquisition the acquiring person would hold assets of the acquired person to which such sales aggregating $10 million or more during the acquired person's most recent fiscal year were attributable.

Examples: 1. Assume that "A" and "B" are both U.S. persons. "A" proposes selling to "B" a manufacturing plant located abroad. Sales in or into the United States attributable to the plant totaled $8 million in the most recent fiscal year. The transaction is exempt under this paragraph.

2. Sixty days after the transaction in example 1, "A" proposes to sell to "B" a second manufacturing plant located abroad; sales in or into the United States attributable to this plant totaled $5 million in the most recent fiscal year. Since "B" would be acquiring the second plant within 180 days of the first plant, both plants would be considered assets of "A" now held by "B." See § 801.13(b)(2). Since the total annual sales in or into the United States exceed $10 million, the acquisition of the second plant would not be exempt under this paragraph.

(b) *Voting securities.* An acquisition of voting securities of a foreign issuer by a U.S. person shall be exempt from the requirements of the act unless the issuer (including all entities controlled by the issuer) either:

(1) Holds assets located in the United States (other than investment assets and voting or nonvoting securities of another person) having an aggregate book value of $10 million or more; or

(2) Made aggregate sales in or into the United States of $10 million or more in its most recent fiscal year.

Example: "A," a U.S. person, is to acquire the voting securities of C, a foreign issuer. C has no assets in the United States, but made aggregate sales into the United States of $12 million in the most recent fiscal year. The transaction is not exempt under this section.

§ 802.51 Acquisitions by foreign persons.

An acquisition by a foreign person shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if:

(a) The acquisition is of assets located outside the United States;

(b) The acquisition is of voting securities of a foreign issuer, and will not confer control of:

(1) An issuer which holds assets located in the United States (other than investment assets) having an aggregate book value of $10 million or more, or

(2) A U.S. issuer with annual net sales or total assets of $10 million or more;

(c) The acquisition is of less than $10 million of assets located in the United states (other than investment assets); or

(d) The acquired person is also a foreign person, the aggregate annual sales of the acquiring and acquired persons in or into the United States are less than $110 million, and the aggregate total assets of the acquiring and acquired persons located in the United States (other than investment assets) are less than $110 million.

Examples: 1. Assume that "A" and "B" are foreign persons with aggregate annual sales in or into the United States of $200 million. If "A" acquires the assets of "B," and if no assets in the United States or voting securities of U.S. issuers will be acquired, the transaction is exempt under paragraphs (a) and (c).

2. In example 1, assume that "A" is acquiring "B's" stock and that included within "B" is issuer C, a U.S. issuer whose total assets are valued at $12 million. Since C's voting securities will be acquired indirectly, and since "A" thus will be acquiring control of a U.S. issuer with total assets of more than $10 million, the acquisition cannot be exempt under this section.

3. In the previous examples, assume that "A" is a U.S. person. This section does not apply, since the acquiring person must be a foreign person.

§ 802.52 Acquisitions by or from foreign governmental corporations.

An acquisition shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if:

(a) The ultimate parent entity of either the acquiring person or the acquired person is controlled by a foreign state, foreign government, or agency thereof; and

best copy available

(b) The acquisition is of assets located within that foreign state or of voting securities of an issuer organized under the laws of that state.

Example: The government of foreign country X has decided to sell assets of its wholly owned corporation, B, all of which are located in foreign country X. The buyer is "A," a U.S. person. Regardless of the aggregate annual sales in or into the United States attributable to the assets of B, the transaction is exempt under this section. (If such aggregate annual sales were less than $10 million, the transaction would also be exempt under § 802.50.)

§ 802.53 Certain foreign banking transactions.

An acquisition which requires the consent or approval of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System under section 25 or section 25(a) of the Federal Reserve Act, 12 U.S.C. 601, 615, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if copies of all information and documentary material filed with the Board of Governors are contemporaneously filed with the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General at least 30 days prior to consummation of the acquisition. In lieu of such information and documentary material or any portion thereof, an index describing such material may be provided in the manner authorized by § 802.6.

§ 802.60 Acquisitions by securities underwriters.

An acquisition of voting securities by a person acting as a securities underwriter, in the ordinary course of business, and in the process of underwriting, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act.

§ 802.63 Certain acquisitions by creditors and insurers.

(a) *Creditors.* An acquisition of collateral or receivables, or an acquisition in foreclosure, or upon default, or in connection with the establishment of a lease financing, or in connection with a bona fide debt work-out shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if made by a creditor in a bona fide credit transaction entered into in the ordinary course of the creditor's business.

(b) *Insurers.* An acquisition pursuant to a condition in a contract of insurance relating to fidelity, surety, or casualty obligations shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if made by an insurer in the ordinary course of business.

Examples: 1. A bank makes a loan and takes actual or constructive possession of collateral in any form. Since the bank is not the beneficial owner of the collateral, the bank's receipt of it is not an acquisition which is subject to the requirements of the act. However, if upon default the bank becomes the beneficial owner of the collateral, that acquisition is exempt under this section.

2. This section exempts only the acquisition by the creditor or insurer, and not the subsequent disposition of the assets or voting securities. If a creditor or insurer sells voting securities or assets that have come into its possession in a transaction which is exempt under this section, the requirements of the act may apply to that disposition.

§ 802.64 Acquisitions of voting securities by certain institutional investors.

(a) *Institutional investor.* For purposes of this section, the term "institutional investor" means any entity of the following type:

(1) A bank within the meaning of 15 U.S.C. 80b-2(a)(2);

(2) Savings bank;

(3) Savings and loan or building and loan company or association;

(4) Trust company;

(5) Insurance company;

(6) Investment company registered with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission under the Investment Company Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80a-1 et seq.);

(7) Finance company;

(8) Broker-dealer within the meaning of 15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(4) or (a)(5);

(9) Small Business Investment Company or Minority Enterprise Small Business Investment Company regulated by the U.S. Small Business Administration pursuant to 15 U.S.C. 662;

(10) A stock bonus, pension, or profit-sharing trust qualified under section 401 of the Internal Revenue Code;

(11) Bank holding company within the meaning of 12 U.S.C. 1841;

(12) An entity which is controlled directly or indirectly by an institutional investor and the activities of which are in the ordinary course of business of the institutional investor;

(13) An entity which may supply incidental services to entities which it controls directly or indirectly but which performs no operating functions, and which is otherwise engaged only in holding controlling interests in institutional investors; or

(14) A nonprofit entity within the meaning of sections 501(c)(1)-(4), (6)-(15), (17)-(20), or (d) of the Internal Revenue Code.

(b) *Exemption.* An acquisition of voting securities shall be exempt from the requirements of the act, except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section, if:

(1) Made directly by an institutional investor;

(2) Made in the ordinary course of business;

(3) Made solely for the purpose of investment;

(4) As a result of the acquisition the acquiring person would not control the issuer; and

(5) As a result of the acquisition the acquiring person would hold either:

(i) Fifteen percent or less of the outstanding voting securities of the issurer; or

(ii) Voting securities of the issuer valued at $25 million or less.

(c) *Exception to exemption.* Notwithstanding paragraph (b) of this section:

(1) No acquisition of voting securities of an institutional investor of the same type as any entity included within the acquiring person shall be exempt under this section; and

(2) No acquisition by an institutional investor shall be exempt under this section if any entity included within the acquiring person which is not an institutional investor holds any voting securities of the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired.

Examples: 1. Assume that A and its subsidiary, B, are both institutional investors as defined in paragraph (a) of this section, that X is not, and that the conditions set forth in subparagraphs (2), (3) and (4) of paragraph (b) of this section are satisfied. Either A or B may acquire voting securities of X worth in excess of $25 million as long as the aggregate amount held by person "A" as a result of the acquisition does not equal or exceed 15 percent of X's outstanding voting securities. If the aggregate holdings would equal or exceed 15 percent, "A" may acquire no more than $25 million worth of voting securities without being subject to the requirements of the act.

2. In example 1, assume that B plans to make the acquisition, but that corporation B's parent, corporation A, is not an institutional investor and is engaged in manufacturing. Subparagraph (c)(2) provides that acquisitions by B can never be exempt under this section if A owns any amount of X's voting securities.

3. In example 1, the exemption does not apply if X is also an institutional investor of the same type as either A or B.

4. Assume that H is a holding company which controls a life insurance company, a casualty insurer and a finance company. The life insurance company controls a data processing company which performs services for the two insurers. Any acquisition by any of these entities could qualify for exemption under this section.

5. In example 4, if H also controls a manufacturing entity, H is not an institutional investor, and only the acquisitions made by the two insurance companies, the finance company and the data processing company can qualify for the exemption under this section.

§ 802.70 Acquisitions subject to order.

An acquisition shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if:

(a) The voting securities or assets are to be acquired from an entity ordered to divest such voting securities or assets by order of the Federal Trade Commission or of any Federal court in an action brought by the Federal Trade Commission or the Department of Justice; or

(b) The acquiring person or entity is subject to an order of the Federal

Trade Commission or of any Federal court requiring prior approval of such acquisition by the Federal Trade Commission, such court, or the Department of Justice, and such approval has been obtained.

§ 802.71 Acquisitions by gift, intestate succession or devise, or by irrevocable trust.

Acquisitions resulting from a gift, intestate succession, testamentary disposition or transfer by a settlor to an irrevocable trust shall be exempt from the requirements of the act.

The Federal Trade Commission promulgates the Rules contained in this Part (803), and Notification and Report Form set forth in the appendix to this Part (803), pursuant to section 7A(d) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18A(d), as added by section 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390.

PART 803—TRANSMITTAL RULES

Sec.

803.1 Notification and Report Form.
803.2 Instructions applicable to Notification and Report Form.
803.3 Statement of reasons for noncompliance.
803.4 Foreign persons refusing to file notification.
803.5 Affidavits required.
803.6 Certification.
803.7 Expiration of notification.
803.10 Running of time.
803.11 Termination of waiting period.
803.20 Requests for additional information or documentary material.
803.21 Additional information shall be supplied within reasonable time.
803.30 Formal and informal interpretations of requirements under the act and the rules.
803.90 Separability.
Appendix—Antitrust Improvements Act Notification and Report Form for Certain Mergers and Acquisitions.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 7A(D) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18A(D), as added by sec. 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390.

§ 803.1 Notification and Report Form.

(a) The notification required by the act shall be the Notification and Report Form set forth in the appendix to this Part (803), as amended from time to time. All acquiring and acquired persons required to file notification by the act and these rules shall do so by completing and filing the Notification and Report Form, or a photostatic or other equivalent reproduction thereof, in accordance with the instructions thereon and these rules. Copies of the Notification and Report Form may be obtained in person from the Public Reference Branch, Room 130, Federal Trade Commission, Sixth Street and Pennsylvania Avenue NW., Washington, D.C., or by writing to the Premerger Notification Office, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, D.C. 20580.

(b) Any person filing notification may, in addition to the submissions required by this section, submit any other information or documentary material which such person believes will be helpful to the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General in assessing the impact of the acquisition upon competition.

§ 803.2 Instructions applicable to Notification and Report Form.

(a) The notification required by the act shall be filed by the preacquisition ultimate parent entity, or by any entity included within the person authorized by such preacquisition ultimate parent entity to file notification on its behalf. In the case of a natural person required by the act to file notification, such notification may be filed by his or her legal representative: *Provided however,* That notwithstanding § 801.1(c)(2) and § 801.2, only one notification shall be filed by or on behalf of a natural person, spouse and minor children with respect to an acquisition as a result of which more than one such natural person will hold voting securities of the same issuer.

Example: Jane Doe, her husband and minor child collectively hold more than 50 percent of the shares of family corporation F. Therefore, Jane Doe (or her husband or minor child) is the "ultimate parent entity" of a "person" composed to herself (or her husband or minor child) and F; see paragraphs (a)(3), (b) and (c)(2) of § 801.1. If corporation F is to acquire corporation X, under this paragraph only one notification is to be filed by Jane Doe, her husband and minor child collectively.

(b)(1) Except as provided in subparagraph (2) of this paragraph and paragraph (c) of this section, items 5-9 and the Appendix to the Notification and Report Form must be completed—

(i) By acquiring persons, with respect to all entities included within the acquiring person;

(ii) By acquired persons, in the case of an acquisition of assets, only with respect to the assets to be acquired;

(iii) By acquired persons, in the case of an acquisition of voting securities, with respect to only the issuer whose voting securities are being acquired, and all entities controlled by such issuer; and

(iv) By persons which are both acquiring and acquired persons, separately in the manner that would be required of acquiring and acquired persons under this paragraph, if different.

(2) For purposes of items 7-9 of the Notification and Report Form, the acquiring person shall regard the acquired person in the manner described in subdivisions (ii) and (iii) of the previous subparagraph.

Example: Person "A" is comprised of entities separately engaged in grocery retailing, auto rental, and coal mining. Person "B" is comprised of entities separately engaged in wholesale magazine distribution, auto rental and book publishing. "A" proposes to purchase 100 percent of the voting securities of "B"'s book publishing subsidiary. For purposes of item 5, under clause (b)(1)(i), "A" reports, the activities of all its entities; under clause (b)(1)(iii), "B" reports only the operations of its book publishing subsidiary. For purposes of items 7-9, under subparagraph (2) of this paragraph "A" must regard "B" as consisting only of its book publishing subsidiary, and must disregard the fact that "A" and "B" are both engaged in the auto rental business.

(c) In response to items 5, 7, 8, and 9 and the appendix to the Notification and Report Form—

(1) Information shall be supplied only with respect to operations conducted within the United States; and

(2) Information need not be supplied with respect to assets or voting securities to be acquired, the acquisition of which is exempt from the requirements of the act.

(d) The term "dollar revenues," as used in the Notification and Report Form, means value of shipments for manufacturing operations, and sales, receipts, revenues, or other appropriate dollar value measure for operations other than manufacturing, f.o.b. the plant or establishment less returns, after discounts and allowances and excluding freight charges and excise taxes. Dollar revenues including delivery may be supplied if delivery is an integral part of the sales price. Dollar revenues include interplant transfers.

§ 803.3 Statement of reasons for noncompliance.

A complete response shall be supplied to each item on the Notification and Report Form and to any request for additional information pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20. Whenever the person filing notification is unable to supply a complete response, that person shall provide, for each item for which less than a complete response has been supplied, a statement of reasons for noncompliance which includes at least the following information:

(a) Why the person is unable to supply a complete response;

(b) What information would have been required for a complete response;

(c) Who, if anyone, has the required information, and a description of all efforts made to obtain it.

§ 803.4 Foreign persons refusing to file notification.

(a) In an acquisition to which § 801.30 does not apply, and in which no assets (other than investment assets) located in the United States and no voting securities of a United States issuer will be acquired directly or indirectly, if a foreign acquired person refuses to file notification, then any other person which is a party to the acquisition may file notification on behalf of the foreign person. Such notification shall constitute the notification required of the foreign person by the act and these rules.

(b) Any person filing on behalf of the foreign person pursuant to this section must state in the affidavit required by § 803.5(b) that such foreign person has refused to file notification and must explain all efforts made by the person filing on behalf of the foreign person to obtain compliance with the act and these rules by such foreign person.

(c) Any notification filed on behalf of a foreign person pursuant to this section must contain all information and documentary material reasonably available to the person filing on behalf of the foreign person which such foreign person would be required to provide. Whenever information or documentary material is not reasonably available, the person filing on behalf of the foreign person shall so indicate on the Notification and Report Form, and need not supply the statement of reasons for noncompliance required by § 803.3.

(d) Any foreign person on whose behalf notification has been filed by another person pursuant to this section shall be a "person filing notification" for purposes of the act and these rules. Nothing in this section shall exempt a foreign person from the requirements of the act or these rules with respect to a request for additional information or an extension of the waiting period pursuant to section 7A(e) and these rules.

§ 803.5 Affidavits required.

(a)(1) *Section 801.30 acquisitions.* For acquisitions to which § 801.30 applies, the notification required by the act from each acquiring person shall contain an affidavit, attached to the front of the notification, attesting that the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired has received notice in writing by certified or registered mail, by wire or by hand delivery, at its principal executive offices, of:

(i) The identity of the acquiring person;

(ii) The fact that the acquiring person intends to acquire voting securities of the issuer;

(iii) The specific classes of voting and nonvoting securities of the issuer, and the number of securities of each such class sought to be acquired;

(iv) The fact that the acquisition may be subject to the act, and that the acquiring person will file notification under the act with the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General;

(v) The anticipated date of receipt of such notification under § 803.10(c); and

(vi) The fact that the person within which the issuer is included may be required to file notification under the act.

(2) The affidavit required by this paragraph must also state the good faith intention of the person filing notification to make the acquisition, and, in the case of a tender offer, that the intention to make the tender offer has been publicly announced.

Example: This subparagraph permits the tender offeror to file notification at any time after the intention to make the tender offer has been publicly announced.

(b) *Non-section 801.30 acquisitions.* For acquisitions to which § 801.30 does not apply, the notification required by the act shall contain an affidavit, attached to the front of the notification, attesting that a contract, agreement in principle or letter of intent to merge or acquire has been executed.

§ 803.6 Certification.

(a) The notification required by the act shall be certified:

(1) In the case of a partnership, by any general partner thereof;

(2) In the case of a corporation, by any officer or director thereof;

(3) In the case of a person lacking officers, directors, or partners, by any individual exercising similar functions;

(4) In the case of a naturel person, by such natural person or his or her legal representative.

(b) Additional information or documentary material submitted in response to a request pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20 shall be accompanied by a certification in the format appearing at the end of the Notification and Report Form, completed in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section by the person or individual to whom it was directed.

(c) In all cases, the certifying individual must possess actual authority to make the certification on behalf of the person filing notification.

§ 803.7 Expiration of notification.

Notification with respect to an acquisition shall expire 1 year following the expiration of the waiting period. If the acquiring person's holdings do not, within such time period, meet or exceed the notification threshold with respect to which the notification was filed, the requirements of the act must thereafter be observed with respect to any notification threshold not met or exceeded.

Example: A files notification that 26 percent of the voting securities of corporation B are to be acquired. One year after the expiration of the waiting period, A has acquired only 22 percent of B's voting securities. Although § 802.21 will permit "A" to purchase any amount of B's voting securities short of 25 percent within 5 years from the expiration of the waiting period, A's holdings may not meet or exceed the 25 percent notification threshold without "A" and "B" again filing notification and observing a waiting period.

§ 803.10 Running of time.

(a) *Beginning of waiting period.* The waiting period required by the act shall begin on the date of receipt of the notification required by the act, in the manner provided by these rules (or, if such notification is not completed, the notification to the extent completed and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance in accordance with § 803.3) from:

(1) In the case of acquisitions to which § 801.30 applies, the acquiring person;

(2) In the case of all other acquisitions, all persons required by the act and these rules to file notification.

(b) *Expiration of waiting period.* (1) For purposes of section 7A(b)(1)(B), the waiting period shall expire at 11:59 p.m. Eastern Time on the 13th (or in the case of a cash tender offer, the 15th) calendar day (or if § 802.23 applies, such other day as that section may provide) following the beginning of the waiting period as determined under paragraph (a) of this section, unless extended pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20, or section 7A(g)(2), or unless terminated pursuant to section 7A(b)(2) and § 803.11.

(2) Unless further extended pursuant to section 7A(g)(2), or terminated pursuant to section 7A(b)(2) and § 803.11, any waiting period which has been extended pursuant to section 7A(e)(2) and § 803.20 shall expire at 11:59 p.m. Eastern Time—

(i) On the 20th (or, in the case of a cash tender offer, the 10th) day following the date of receipt of all additional information or documentary material requested from all persons to whom such requests have been directed (or, if a request is not fully complied with, the information and documentary material submitted and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance in accordance with § 803.3), by the Federal Trade Commission or Assistant Attorney General, whichever requested additional information or documentary material, at the office designated in paragraph (c), or

(ii) As provided in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph, whichever is later.

(c)(1) *Date of receipt and means of delivery.* For purposes of this section the date of receipt shall be the date on which delivery is effected to the designated offices (Premerger Notification Office, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, D.C. 20580, and Director of Operations, Antitrust Division, Room 3214, Department of Justice, Washington, D.C. 20530) during normal business hours. Delivery effected after 5 p.m. eastern time on a regular business day, or at any time on any day other than a regular business day, shall be deemed effected on the next following regular business day. Delivery should be effected directly to the designated office(s), either by hand or by certified or registered mail. If delivery of all required filings to all offices required to receive such filings is not effected on the same date, the date of receipt shall be the latest of the dates on which delivery is effected.

Examples: 1. In an acquisition other than a cash tender offer, assume that a request for additional information is issued to a person on the second day of the waiting period, and that the person supplies the response 5 days later. Under subparagraph (b)(2)(ii), the waiting period remains in effect through the 30th day, even though the 20th day after receipt of such additional information would occur earlier.

(2) *Deficient filings.* If notification or a response to a request for additional information or documentary material received by the Commission or Assistant Attorney General does not comply with these rules, the Commission or the Assistant Attorney General shall promptly notify the person filing such notification or response of the deficiencies in such filing, and the date of receipt shall be the date on which a filing which complies with these rules is received.

§ 803.11 Termination of waiting period.

(a) Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section, no waiting period shall be terminated pursuant to section 7A(b)(2) unless—

(1) All notifications required to be filed with respect to the acquisition by the act and these rules (or, if such notification is not completed, the notification to the extent completed and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance in accordance with § 803.3) have been received,

(2) It has been determined that no additional information or documentary material pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20 will be requested, or, if such additional information or documentary material has been requested, it (or, if a request is not fully complied with, the information and documentary material submitted and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance in accordance with § 803.3) has been received, and

(3) The Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General have concluded that neither intends to take any further action within the waiting period.

(b) Any request for additional information or documentary material pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20 shall constitute a denial of all pending requests for termination of the waiting period.

(c) The Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General may in their discretion terminate a waiting period upon the written request of any person filing notification, or, notwithstanding paragraph (a) of this section, sua sponte. A request for termination of the waiting period shall be sent to the offices designated in § 803.10(c). Termination shall be effective upon notice to any requesting person by telephone, and such notice shall be given as soon as possible. Such notice shall also be confirmed in writing to each person which has filed notification, and notice thereof shall be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER in accordance with section 7A(b)(2).

Example: See the example to § 803.20(c).

§ 803.20 Requests for additional information or documentary material.

(a)(1) *Persons and individuals subject to request.* Pursuant to section 7A(e)(1), the submission of additional information or documentary material relevant to the acquisition may be required from one or more persons required to file notification, and, with respect to each such person, from one or more entities included therein, or from one or more officers, directors, partners, agents, or employees thereof, if so required by the same request.

Example: A request for additional information may require a corporation and, in addition, a named officer or employee to provide certain information or documents, if both the corporation and the officer or employee are named in the same request. See subparagraph (b)(3) of this section.

(2) All the information and documentary material required to be submitted pursuant to a request under paragraph (a)(1) of this section shall be supplied to the Commission or to the Assistant Attorney General, whichever made such request, at the office designated in § 803.10(c), or, if such request is not fully complied with, a statement of reasons for noncompliance pursuant to § 803.3 shall be provided for each item or portion of such request which is not fully complied with.

(b)(1) *Who may require submission.* A request for additional information or documentary material with respect to an acquisition may be issued by the Federal Trade Commission or its designee, or by the Assistant Attorney General or his or her designee, but not by both to the same person, any entities included therein, or any officers, directors, partners, agents, or employees of that person.

(2) *When request effective.* A request for additional information or documentary material shall be effective—

(i) In the case of a written request, upon receipt of the request by the ultimate parent entity of the person to which the request is directed, (or, if another entity included within the person filed notification pursuant to § 803.2(a), then by such entity), within the original 30-day (or, in the case of a cash tender offer, 15-day) waiting period (or, if § 802.23 applies, such other period as that section provides); or

(ii) In the case of a request communicated in person or by telephone, upon communication of the request, provided that a written confirmation of the request is mailed within the original 30-day (or, in the case of a cash tender offer, 15-day) waiting period (or, if § 802.23 applies, such other period as that section provides). The person filing notification shall keep a designated individual reasonably available during normal business hours throughout the waiting period through the telephone number supplied on the certification page of the Notification and Report Form. A request for additional information or documentary material need be communicated by telephone only to that individual. The written confirmation of the request shall be mailed to the ultimate parent entity of the person filing notification, or, if another entity included within the person filed notification pursuant to § 803.2(a), then to such entity.

(3) *Requests to natural persons.* A request addressed to an individual, requiring that he or she submit additional information or documentary material, shall be transmitted to the person filing notification of which the individual is an ultimate parent entity, officer, director, partner, agent or employee, and shall be effective as to that individual when effective as to the person filing notification pursuant to subparagraph (2) of this paragraph. A written copy of the request shall also be delivered to the individual by hand, or by registered or certified mail at his or her home or business address.

Example: A designee of the Federal Trade Commission sends, by certified letter which is received within the 30-day waiting period, a written request for additional information to corporation W, the ultimate parent entity within a person which filed notification. The request is effective under clause (b)(2)(i). If the letter also addressed a request for documentary material to the secretary of corporation W, a named individual, under subparagraph (b)(3), the request would likewise be effective as to the individual upon receipt of the letter by W. In the latter case, the Federal Trade Commission also would send a copy of the request to the

Secretary of the corporation at his or her home or business address.

(c) *Waiting period extended.* (1) During the time period when a request for additional information or documentary material remains outstanding to any person other than, in the case of a tender offer, the person whose voting securities are sought to be acquired by the tender offeror (or any officer, director, partner, agent or employee thereof), the waiting period shall remain in effect, even though the waiting period would have expired (see § 803.10(b)) if no such request had been made.

(2) A request for additional information or documentary material to any person other than, in the case of a tender offer, the person whose voting securities are being acquired pursuant to the tender offer (or any officer, director, partner, agent or employee thereof) shall in every instance extend the waiting period for a period of 20 (or, in the case of a cash tender offer, 10) calendar days from the date of receipt (as determined under § 803.10) of the additional information or documentary material requested.

Example: Acquiring person "A" desires to acquire voting securities of corporation X on a securities exchange, and files notification. Under § 801.30, the waiting period begins upon filing by "A," and "X" must file within 15 days thereafter. Assume that before the end of the waiting period, the Assistant Attorney General issues a request for additional information to "X." Since the transaction is not a tender offer, under subparagraph (c)(1) the waiting period is extended until "X" supplies the requested information; under subparagraph (c)(2), the waiting period is extended for 20 days beyond the date on which "X" responds.

Note that under § 803.21 "X" is obliged to respond to the request within a reasonable time; nevertheless, the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General could, notwithstanding the pendency of the request for additional information, terminate the waiting period sua sponte pursuant to § 803.11(c).

(d)(1) *Identification of requests.* Every request for additional information or documentary material shall be clearly identified as such, whether communicated in person, by telephone or in writing, and shall clearly identify the person, entity or entities, or individual(s) to which it is addressed.

(2) *Request for clarification.* No request for clarification or amplification of a response to any item on the Notification and Report Form, whether communicated in person, by telephone or in writing, shall be considered a request for additional information or documentary material within the meaning of section 7A(e) and this section.

§ 803.21 Additional information shall be supplied within reasonable time.

All additional information or documentary material requested pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20 (or, if such request is not fully complied with, the information or documentary material submitted and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance in accordance with § 803.3) shall be supplied within a reasonable time.

§ 803.30 Formal and informal interpretations of requirements under the Act and the rules.

(a) The Commission staff may consider requests for formal or informal interpretations as to the obligations under the act and these rules of any party to an acquisition. A request for a formal interpretation shall be made in writing to the offices designated in § 803.10(c), and shall state: (1) All facts which the applicant believes to be material, (2) the reasons why the requirements of the act are or may be applicable and (3) the question(s) that the applicant wishes resolved. The Commission staff may, in its discretion, render a formal or informal response to any request, however made, or may decline to render such advice.

(b) In the sole discretion of the staff, any request for interpretation may be referred to the Commission.

(c) Formal interpretations by the Commission staff or by the Commission shall be rendered with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General or his or her designee.

(d) Any formal interpretation shall be without prejudice to the right of either the Commission or the Assistant Attorney General to rescind any such interpretation rendered pursuant to this section. In the event of such rescission, the party which requested the interpretation shall be so notified in writing.

(e) The Commission shall publish a summary of formal interpretations by the Commission, and any rescissions thereof, in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

§ 803.90 Separability.

If any provision of the rules in this Subchapter (H) (including the Notification and Report Form) or the application of any such provision to any person or circumstances is held invalid, neither the other provisions of the rules nor the application of such provision to other persons or circumstances shall be affected thereby.

Int. Form C4 (7/78)

Approved by GAO
B-180229 (R0516)
Expires 5-31-81

PART 803 -- APPENDIX
ANTITRUST IMPROVEMENTS ACT NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM FOR CERTAIN MERGERS AND ACQUISITIONS

THIS FORM IS REQUIRED BY LAW and must be filed separately by each person which, by reason of a merger, consolidation or acquisition, is subject to § 7A of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. § 18A, as added by Section 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. No. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390, and rules promulgated thereunder (hereinafter referred to as "the rules" or by section number). The statute and rules are set forth in the Federal Register at page the rules may also be found at 16 CFR Parts 801-03. Failure to file this Notification and Report Form, and to observe the required waiting period before consummating the acquisition, in accordance with the applicable provisions of 15 U.S.C. § 18A and the rules, subjects any "person," as defined in the rules, or any individuals responsible for noncompliance, to liability for a penalty of not more than $10,000 for each day during which such person is in violation of 15 U.S.C. § 18A.

All information and documentary material filed in or with this form is confidential. It is exempt from disclosure under the Freedom of Information Act, and may be made public only in an administrative or judicial proceeding, or disclosed to Congress or to a duly authorized committee or subcommittee of Congress.

Complete and return two notarized copies (with one set of documentary attachments) of this Notification and Report Form to Premerger Notification Office, Bureau of Competition, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, D.C. 20580, and three notarized copies (with one set of documentary attachments) to Director of Operations, Antitrust Division, Room 3214, Department of Justice, Washington, D.C. 20530. The central office for information and assistance with respect to matters in connection with this Notification and Report Form is Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, D.C. 20580, phone (202) 523-3894.

AFFIDAVIT

Be sure that the affidavit required by § 803.5 is attached to this page.

CASH TENDER OFFERS

If this acquisition is a cash tender offer, check: ☐

Notification and Report Form (Part 803 -- Appendix) Continued

DEFINITIONS

The definitions and other provisions governing this Form are set forth in the rules, 16 CFR Parts 801-03.

NAME AND DATE

The name of a person is the name of the ultimate parent entity included within the person.

Enter the name of the person filing notification (or on whose behalf it is being filed pursuant to § 803.4) and the date on which this Notification and Report Form is being completed:

(a) Name______________________________ Date____________________

In addition, enter the above name and date at the top of each page of this Form, at the top of any additional sheets attached to complete the response to any item, and at the top of the first or cover page of each documentary attachment.

If this Form is being filed on behalf of the ultimate parent entity by another entity included within the same person authorized by it to file notification on its behalf pursuant to § 803.2(a), give the name of the entity preparing and filing this Form.

(b) Name______________________________

If this Form is being filed pursuant to § 803.4 on behalf of a foreign person, give the name of the person which is filing on behalf of the foreign person named on line (a) of this page. (Note that for purposes of the balance of this Form, the "person filing notification" remains the foreign person named on line (a) of this page. See § 803.4(d).)

(c) Name______________________________

****
NOTE: THIS FORM REPLACED BY
* FTC FORM C 4 *
* (REVISED 2/87) *
****

INSTRUCTIONS

Each answer should identify the item to which it is addressed. Attach separate additional sheets as necessary in answering each item; each additional sheet should identify the item to which it is addressed. Voluntary submissions pursuant to § 803.1(b) should be so identified. If unable to answer any item fully, give such information as is available and explain why the answer is incomplete, as provided by § 803.3. If books and records which provide accurate answers are not available, enter best estimates and indicate the sources or bases of such estimates. Estimated data should be followed by the notation, "est." All financial information should be rounded to the nearest thousand dollars.

All references to "year" refer to calendar year. If the data are not available on a calendar year basis, supply the requested data for the fiscal year reporting period which most nearly corresponds to the calendar year specified. References to "most recent year" mean the most recent calendar or fiscal year for which the requested information is available.

This Notification and Report Form requests information regarding dollar revenues and lines of commerce at three levels. All persons must submit certain data at the 4-digit (SIC code) industry level. To the extent that dollar revenues are derived from manufacturing operations (SIC major groups 20-39), data must also be submitted at the 5-digit product class and 7-digit product levels (SIC-based codes). In reporting by "4-digit (SIC code) industry" you should refer to the 1972 edition of the Standard Industrial Classification Manual published by the Executive Office of the President, Office of Management and Budget. In reporting information by "5-digit (SIC-based code) product class," and by "7-digit (SIC-based code) product," you should refer to one or both of the following reference publications published by the U.S. Bureau of the Census: (a) Numerical List of Manufactured Products, 1972 Census of Manufactures (MC72-1.2) (New 1972 SIC basis); (b) Volume II, "Industry Statistics," 1972 Census of Manufactures. In reporting information by "5-digit (SIC-based code) product class" you may also refer to the code appearing in the "Product Class Reference List" shown in the Instruction Manual for the Annual Survey of Manufactures. In reporting information by "7-digit (SIC-based code) product" you may also refer to the applicable "Product Reference Lists" appearing in the Instruction Manual of the various Current Industrial Reports surveys (monthly, quarterly, or annual) conducted by the U.S. Bureau of the Census. For product codes ending in 00, submit information by product as listed in Appendix A to the Numerical List of Manufactured Products cited above.

In responding to items 5, 7, 8 and 9 and the Insurance Appendix --

-- supply information only with respect to operations conducted within the United States, including its commonwealths, territories, possessions and the District of Columbia. See §§ 801.1(k), 803.2(c)(1);

-- information need not be supplied with respect to assets or voting securities currently being acquired, the acquisition of which is exempt under the statute or rules. See § 803.2(c)(2).

In responding to items 5-9 and the Insurance Appendix, limited or separate responses may be required of a person filing notification. See § 803.2(b).

Notification and Report Form (Part 803 -- Appendix) Continued

Name ______________________________ Date ______________________

- -

1(a) Check whether the acquisition is (check all boxes that apply to the person filing notification):

an acquisition of assets ☐

an acquisition of voting securities ☐

a merger or consolidation (see § 801.2(d)) ☐

an acquisition subject to § 801.30 ☐ specify type ______________

a secondary acquisition (see § 801.4) ☐

formation of a joint venture or other corporation (see § 801.40) ☐

other (specify)______________________ ☐

1(b) Check whether the person filing notification is:

acquiring person ☐

acquired person ☐

both an acquiring and an acquired person (see § 801.2) ☐

1(c) Name of pre-acquisition ultimate parent entity of person filing notification: ______________
Address of headquarters office: ______________

1(d) Check whether entity in item 1(c) is a:

corporation ☐ partnership ☐ other (specify)_____ ☐

Notification and Report Form (Part 803 -- Appendix) Continued

Name________________________________ Date________________________________

- -

If Corporation: State of incorporation________________________________

Date of incorporation________________________________

If partnership or other: Jurisdiction under which formed________________________________

Date of formation________________________________

1(e) Check whether data furnished by: calendar year ☐ fiscal year ☐

If fiscal year, specify period: from__________(month/day) to__________(month/day).

1(f) If the person filing notification is an acquiring person, and if the entity making the the acquisition is not the pre-acquisition ultimate parent entity listed in item 1(c) above, provide the information requested below with respect to the entity making the acquisition.

If the person filing notification is an acquired person, and if the entity whose assets or voting securities are being acquired is not the pre-acquisition ultimate parent entity listed in item 1(c) above, provide the information requested below with respect to the entity whose assets or voting securities are being acquired

(i) Name and mailing address of its headquarters office;

(ii) If a corporation, the date and state of incorporation;

(iii) The percentage of its voting securities held by the entity named in item 1(c) above. (If control is effected by means other than the direct holding of the entity's voting securities, describe the intermediaries or the contract through which control is effected; see § 801.1(b).)

Name________________________________ Date________________________________

- -

2(a) Description of acquisition. List the name and mailing address of each acquiring and acquired person, whether or not required to file notification, and briefly describe the voting securities or assets to be acquired by, and/or the consideration to be received by, each. If voting securities are to be acquired from a holder other than the issuer (or an entity included within the same person as the issuer), separately identify (if known) such holder and the issuer of the voting securities. Acquiring persons in tender offers should describe the terms of the tender offer.

2(b) State the scheduled consummation date of the acquisition.

2(c) Describe the manner in which the acquisition is to be carried out. The description should include the expected dates of any major events required in order to consummate the acquisition, such as stockholders' meetings, filing of requests for approval, other public filings, terminations of tender offers, etc.

2(d)(i) Description of assets to be acquired. Describe all general classes of assets (other than cash and securities) to be acquired by each party to the acquisition, with approximate dollar value thereof, including, if the acquisition is the formation of a joint venture or other corporation (see § 801.40), assets to be acquired by the joint venture or other corporation. Examples of general classes of assets other than cash and securities are land, merchandise inventory, manufacturing inventory, manufacturing plants (specify location and products produced), retail stores, etc. For each general class of assets, indicate the page and/or paragraph number of the contract or other document submitted with this Form in which the assets are more particularly described.

2(d)(ii) Description of assets held by acquiring person. If the person filing notification is an acquiring person, and if assets of the acquired person (see § 801.13) are presently held by the person filing notification, furnish a description of each general class of assets in the manner requested by item 2(d)(i), and the dollar value at the time they were acquired.

Name________________________________ Date________________________________

- -

2(e) Description of voting securities to be acquired. Furnish the following information separately for each issuer whose voting securities (other than convertible voting securities) will be acquired in the acquisition:

(i) List each class of voting security (including convertible voting securities) which will be outstanding after the acquisition has been completed; 1/ also list each class of non-voting security which will be acquired in the acquisition;

(ii) Total number of each class of security listed under (i) above which will be outstanding after the acquisition has been completed;

(iii) Total number of each class of security listed under (i) above which will be acquired in this acquisition; 2/

(iv) Identity of each person acquiring any securities of any class listed under (i) above; 2/

(v) Dollar value of securities of each class listed under (i) above to be acquired in this acquisition (see § 801.10); 2/

(vi) Total number of each class of security listed under (i) above which will be held by acquiring person(s) after the acquisition has been completed; 2/ and

(vii) Percentage of each class of security listed under (vi) above which will be held by acquiring person(s) after the acquisition has been completed (see § 801.12(b)). 2/

1/ If there is more than one class of voting security, include a description of the voting rights of each class.

2/ If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of security, show data separately for each acquiring person.

Notification and Report Form (Part 803 — Appendix) Continued

Name________________________________ Date________________________________

- -

2(f)(i) Contract, agreement in principle or letter of intent. Furnish copies of final or most recent versions of all documents which constitute the agreement among the acquiring person(s) and the person(s) whose voting securities or assets are to be acquired.

2(f)(ii) Index to ancillary documents. Furnish an index containing a brief description sufficient to identify each ancillary document or class of documents related to this agreement, such as those relating to personnel matters (union contracts, employment agreements, etc.); third-party financing agreements; leases, subleases and other documents relating to the transfer of realty, etc.

Holdings of acquiring persons.

State: (a) the percentage of the assets;

(b) the percentage of the voting securities; and

(c) the aggregate total dollar amount of voting securities and assets

of the acquired person to be held by each acquiring person, as a result of the acquisition. (See §§ 801.12, 801.13 and 801.14.)

Name______________________________ Date______________________________

4 Documents prepared by person filing notification. Furnish one copy of each of the following documents of the person filing notification. For each entity included within the person filing notification which has prepared its own such documents different from those furnished by the person filing notification, furnish in addition one copy of each document from each such other entity. Furnish copies of:

(a) all of the following filed with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission within three years prior to the date of filing of this notification (or to be contemporaneously filed in connection with this acquisition): the most recent proxy statement, most recent Form 10-K, all registration statements and all Forms 10-Q and 8-K filed since the end of the period reflected by the most recent Form 10-K, and, if the acquisition is a tender offer, Schedule 14D-1; alternatively, if the person filing notification does not have copies of responsive documents readily available, identification of such documents and citation to date and place of filing will constitute compliance;

(b) the most recent annual reports and most recent annual audit reports and, if different, the most recent regularly prepared balance sheet of the person filing notification and of each unconsolidated United States issuer included within such person;

(c) all studies, surveys, analyses and reports which were prepared by or for any officer(s) or director(s) (or, in the case of unincorporated entities, individuals exercising similar functions) for the purpose of evaluating or analyzing the acquisition with respect to market shares, competition, competitors, markets, potential for sales growth or expansion into product or geographic markets, and indicate (if not contained in the document itself) the date of preparation and the name and title of the individual who prepared each such document.

Notification and Report Form (Part 803 -- Appendix) Continued

Name______________________________ Date______________________________

* * * * *

NOTE: LIMITED OR SEPARATE RESPONSES TO ITEMS 5-9 AND THE APPENDIX MAY BE REQUIRED OF THE PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION. SEE § 803.2(b), (c).

* * * * *

5(a) Dollar revenues by industry. Provide the following information on the aggregate operations of the person filing notification for 1972 for each 4-digit (SIC code) industry in which the person engaged. Insurance carriers (2-digit SIC major group 63) should supply the information requested only with respect to industries not within 2-digit SIC major group 63. Credit agencies other than banks; security and commodity brokers, dealers, exchanges, and services; and holding and other investment offices (2-digit SIC major groups 61, 62, and 67) and real estate companies (2-digit SIC major group 65) should identify or explain the dollar revenues reported (e.g. dollar sales, receipts, etc.). Provide aggregate 4-digit (SIC code) industry data for the entire operations of the person. All persons filing notification should include the total dollar revenues for 1972 derived by all entities which are included within the person filing notification at the time this Notification and Report Form is prepared (not as of 1972).

4-DIGIT (SIC CODE) INDUSTRY		1972 TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES
INDUSTRY CODE	DESCRIPTION	

Name____________________ Date____________________

5(b)(i) Dollar revenues by manufactured product. Provide the following information on the aggregate operations of the person filing notification for 1972 for each 7-digit (SIC-based code) product of the person within 2-digit SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries). Do not provide 7-digit data for product codes ending in 00. These are summary codes. Revenues derived in such categories should be provided by product as listed in Appendix A to the Numerical List of Manufactured Products. See Instructions to Notification and Report Form. All persons filing notification should include the total dollar revenues for 1972 derived by all entities which are included within the person filing notification at the time this Notification and Report Form is prepared (not as of 1972).

7-DIGIT (SIC-BASED CODE) PRODUCT 1972 TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

PRODUCT CODE DESCRIPTION

5(b)(ii) Within 2-digit SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries), identify each product of the person filing notification added or deleted subsequent to 1972, indicate the year of deletion or addition, and give total dollar revenues for the most recent year for each product that has been added. Products may be identified either by 7-digit SIC-based code or in the manner ordinarily used by the person filing notification. Do not include products added since 1972 by reason of mergers or acquisitions occurring since 1972. However, if an entity acquired since 1972 by the person filing notification (and now included within that person) itself added any products since 1972, those products and the dollar revenues derived therefrom should be listed here. Dollar revenues derived in 1972 by entities acquired since that time should be included in response to item 5(b)(i). Products deleted by reason of dispositions of assets or voting securities since 1972 should be included in response to this item, 5(b)(ii).

Notification and Report Form (Part 803 -- Appendix) Continued

Name____________________ Date____________________

5(b)(iii) Dollar revenues by manufactured product class. Provide the following information on the aggregate operations of the person filing notification for the most recent year for each 5-digit (SIC-based Code) product class of the person within SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries). If such data have not been compiled for the most recent year, estimates of dollar revenues by 5-digit product class may be provided if a statement describing the method of estimation is furnished. All persons filing notification should include the total dollar revenues for the most recent year derived by all entities which are included within the person filing notification at the time this Notification and Report Form is prepared.

5-DIGIT (SIC-BASED CODE) PRODUCT CLASS TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES (SPECIFY YEAR:________

PRODUCT CLASS CODE DESCRIPTION

Name ______________________________ Date ______________________________

5(c) Dollar revenues by non-manufacturing industry. Provide the following information on the aggregate operations of the person filing notification for the most recent year for each 4-digit (SIC code) industry in SIC major groups other than 20-39 in which the person engaged. If such data have not been compiled for the most recent year, estimates of dollar revenues by 4-digit industry may be provided if a statement describing the method of estimation is furnished. Industries for which the dollar revenues totaled less than one million dollars in the most recent year may be omitted. All persons filing notification should include the total dollar revenues for the most recent year derived by all entities which are included within the person filing notification at the time this Notification and Report Form is prepared.

Insurance carriers (2-digit SIC major group 63) should supply the information requested only with respect to industries not within SIC major group 63, and, if voting securities of an insurance carrier are being acquired directly or indirectly should complete the Insurance Appendix to this Form. Credit agencies other than banks; security and commodity brokers, dealers, exchanges, and services; and holding and other investment offices (2-digit SIC major group 61, 62, and 67) and real estate companies (2-digit SIC major group 65) should identify or explain the dollar revenues reported (e.g. dollar sales, receipts, etc.).

4-DIGIT (SIC CODE) INDUSTRY		TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES (SPECIFY YEAR: ______)
INDUSTRY CODE	DESCRIPTION	

Notification and Report Form (Part 803 — Appendix) Continued

Name ______________________________ Date ______________________________

5(d) Supply the following information only if the acquisition is the formation of a joint venture or other corporation. (See § 801.40.)

(i) List the name and mailing address of the joint venture or other corporation.

(ii) (A) List the contributions that each person forming the joint venture or other corporation has agreed to make, specifying when each contribution is to be made and the value of the contribution as agreed by the contributors.

(B) Describe any contracts or agreements whereby the joint venture or other corporation will obtain assets or capital from sources other than the persons forming it.

(C) Specify whether and in what amount the persons forming the joint venture or other corporation have agreed to guarantee its credit or obligations.

(D) Describe fully the consideration which each person forming the joint venture or other corporation will receive in exchange for its contribution(s).

(iii) Describe generally the business in which the joint venture or other corporation will engage, including location of headquarters and principal plants, warehouses, retail establishments or other places of business; its principal types of products or activities; and the geographic areas in which it will do business.

(iv) Identify each 4-digit (SIC code) industry in which the joint venture or other corporation will derive dollar revenues. If the joint venture or other corporation will be engaged in manufacturing, also specify each 5-digit (SIC-based) product class in which it will derive dollar revenues.

Name________________________________ Date________________________________

6 This item need not be completed by a person filing notification only as an acquired person if only assets are to be acquired.

(a) Entities within person filing notification. List the name and headquarters mailing address of each entity included within the person filing notification. Entities with total assets of less than $1 million may be omitted.

(b) Shareholders of person filing notification. For each entity included within the person filing notification the voting securities of which are held (see § 801.1(c)) by one or more other persons, list the issuer and class of voting securities, the name and headquarters mailing address of each other person which holds five percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of the class, and the number and percentage held by that person. Holders need not be listed for entities with total assets of less than $10 million.

(c) Holdings of person filing notification. If the person filing notification holds voting securities of any issuer not included within the person filing notification, list the issuer and class, the number and percentage held, and (optionally) the entity within the person filing notification which holds the securities. Holdings of less than five percent of the outstanding voting securities of any issuer, and holdings of issuers with total assets of less than $10 million, may be omitted.

Notification and Report Form (Part 803 -- Appendix) Continued

Name______ ________________________________ Date________________________________

7 If, to the knowledge or belief of the person filing notification, the person filing notification derived dollar revenues in the most recent year from operations in any 4-digit (SIC code) industries in which any other person which is a party to the acquisition also derived dollar revenues in the most recent year (or in which a joint venture or other corporation will derive dollar revenues), for each such 4-digit (SIC code) industry:

(a) supply the 4-digit code and description for the industry;

(b) list the name of each person which is a party to the acquisition which also derived dollar revenues in the 4-digit industry;

(c) (i) for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries) listed in item 7(a) above, list the states (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which, to the knowledge or belief of the person filing notification, the manufactured products are sold in substantially the same form, whether by the person filing notification or by others to whom such products have been sold or resold;

(ii) for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 01-17 and 40-49 (agriculture, forestry and fishing; mining; construction; transportation, communications, electric, gas and sanitary services) listed in item 7(a) above, list the states (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which the person filing notification conducts such operations;

(iii) for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 50-51 (wholesale trade) listed in item 7(a) above, list the states (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which the customers of the person filing notification are located;

(iv) for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 52-62 and 64-89 (retail trade; finance, insurance other than insurance carriers, and real estate; and services) listed in item 7(a) above, provide the address, arranged by state, county and city or town, of each establishment from which dollar revenues were derived in the most recent year by the person filing notification; and

(v) for each 4-digit industry within SIC major group 63 (insurance) listed in item 7(a) above, list the state(s) in which the person filing notification is licensed to write insurance.

Name______________________________ Date________________________

8 Did the acquired person and an acquiring person maintain a vendor-vendee relationship during the most recent year with respect to any manufactured product (or, if the acquisition is the formation of a joint venture or other corporation (see § 801.40), will the joint venture or other corporation supply to any of the persons forming it any manufactured product which such person purchased from another such person during the most recent year) which the vendee either resells or consumes in or incorporates into the manufacture of any product? If so, persons filing notification which are vendees of such product(s) should list each product purchased, identify each vendor which is a party to the acquisition from which the product was purchased, and state the dollar amount of the product purchased from that vendor during the most recent year.

Manufactured products are those within 2-digit SIC major groups 20-39. Any product purchased from the vendor in an aggregate annual amount not exceeding $1 million, or the manufacture, consumption or use of which is not attributable to the assets to be acquired, or to the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired (including entities controlled by the issuer), may be omitted.

Notification and Report Form (Part 803 -- Appendix) Continued

Name______________________________ Date________________________

9 If the person filing notification is an acquiring person, determine each 4-digit (SIC code) industry in which the acquiring person derived dollar revenues of $1 million or more in the most recent year, and in which, to the knowledge or belief of the person filing notification --

-- if the acquisition is of voting securities, the acquired issuer derived dollar revenues of $1 million or more in the most recent year (or in which, in the case of the formation of a joint venture or other corporation, the joint venture or other corporation reasonably can be expected to derive dollar revenues of $1 million or more); or

-- if the acquisition is of assets, dollar revenues of $1 million or more in the most recent year were attributable to the assets to be acquired.

If no 4-digit (SIC Code) industries satisfy these tests, no response to item 9 is required. If one or more 4-digit (SIC Code) industries satisfy these tests, then list all acquisitions made by the person filing notification in the ten years prior to the date of filing of this notification, of voting securities of United States issuers which derived dollar revenues in any such industry, or of assets located in the United States to which dollar revenues in any such industry were attributable. List only acquisitions of more than 50 percent of the voting securities or assets of entities which had annual net sales or total assets greater than $10 million in the year prior to the acquisition. For each such acquisition, supply:

(a) the name of the entity acquired;

(b) the headquarters address of the entity prior to the acquisition;

(c) whether securities or assets were acquired;

(d) the consummation date of the acquisition;

(e) the annual net sales of the acquired entity for the year prior to the acquisition;

(f) the total assets of the acquired entity in the year prior to the acquisition; and

(g) the 4-digit (SIC code) industries (by number and description) identified above in which the acquired entity derived dollar revenues.

Name________________________________ Date__________________________

10. Print or type the name and title, address, and telephone number of the individual to contact regarding this Notification and Report Form. See § 803.20(b)(2)(ii).

____
(Name and Title)

____
(Business Address)

____
(Business Telephone Number)

CERTIFICATION (see § 803.6)

This Notification and Report Form, together with any and all appendices and attachments thereto, was prepared and assembled under my supervision in accordance with instructions issued by the Federal Trade Commission. Subject to the recognition that, where so indicated, reasonable estimates have been made because books and records do not provide the required data, the information is, to the best of my knowledge, true, correct, and complete in accordance with the statute and rules.

____
(TYPE OR PRINT NAME AND TITLE)

____ ____________
(Signature) (Date)

Subscribed and sworn to before me at the City of__________________, State of ____________________

this____________________day of________________, 19__, ______________________________
(Notary Public)

My Commission Expires____________________________ ____________________________

Notification and Report Form (Part 803 -- Appendix) Continued

APPENDIX TO NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM: INSURANCE

Insurance carriers (2-digit SIC major group 63) are required to complete this Appendix if voting securities of an insurance carrier are being acquired directly or indirectly.

1. Life Insurance

   A. Provide for the most recent year the amount of premium receipts (calculated on an accrual basis) for each of the following lines:
      1. Life Insurance:
         a. Ordinary life insurance;
         b. Group life insurance (including Federal Employees' Group Life Insurance and Servicemen's Group Life Insurance. but excluding credit life insurance);
         c. Industrial life insurance;
         d. Credit life insurance;

      2. Annuity Considerations:
         a. Individual annuity considerations;
         b. Group annuity considerations;

      3. Health Insurance:
         a. Individual health insurance;
         b. Group health insurance.

   B. Provide for the most recent year the amount of new life insurance business issued in the United States (exclusive of revivals, increases, dividend additions and reinsurance ceded) for each of the following lines:
      1. Ordinary life insurance;
      2. Group life insurance (including Federal Employees' Group Life Insurance and Servicemen's Group Life Insurance, but excluding credit life insurance);
      3. Industrial life insurance;
      4. Credit life insurance.

2. Property Liability Insurance

   A. Provide for the most recent year the amount of direct premiums written in the United States for each line of insurance specified in Part 2 of the Underwriting and Investment Exhibit of your carrier's annual convention statement.

   B. Provide for the most recent year the amount of net premiums written in the United States for each line of insurance specified in Part 2 of the Underwriting and Investment Exhibit of your carrier's annual convention statement.

3. Title Insurance

   A. Provide for the most recent year the amount of net direct title insurance premiums written in the United States.

   B. Provide for the most recent year the amount of direct title insurance premiums earned in the United States.

finding and a brief statement of its reasons in the final rulemaking) that notice and public procedure thereon are impracticable, unnecessary, or contrary to the public interest. For the reasons set forth in the "Background" section of this preamble and, in particular, because this amendment is not likely to affect significantly States' implementation of EES, we find that the section 553(b) requirements are unnecessary in this rulemaking proceeding.

In view of this determination, the prior notice requirement of subsection (b) of section 501 of the Department of Energy Organization Act ("DOE Act") 42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.*, Pub. L. 95-91, is also inapplicable. Therefore, we have determined, for the reasons stated above in support of waiving the APA section 553(b) requirements, that no substantial issue of law or fact exists with respect to this rulemaking and that the rulemaking is unlikely to have substantial impact on the nation's economy or large numbers of individuals or businesses. Accordingly, the hearing requirements of subsections (c) and (d) of section 501 of the DOE Act are inapplicable.

B. Executive Order 12044

In accordance with the DOE's criteria governing "significant regulations" set forth in paragraph 6(a)(3) of DOE Order 2030, 44 FR 1032, (January 3, 1979), the regulation set forth at the end of this preamble is not a significant regulation. Accordingly, the sixty-day advance public comment period and other rulemaking requirements specified in Executive Order 12044, entitled "Improving Government Regulations", 43 FR 12661 (March 23, 1978), and DOE's implementing procedures, DOE Order 2030, are inapplicable.

C. National Environmental Policy Act

In accordance with DOE's obligations under the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 (NEPA), 42 U.S.C. 4321 *et seq.*, an evaluation of the potential environmental impacts of the EES regulation has been prepared by DOE. Based on the Environmental Assessment (DOE/EA-0042) of the comprehensive EES program, DOE determined that the EES regulation does not constitute a major Federal action having a significant effect on the quality of the human environment. This amendment to the EES regulation does not affect this determination. Accordingly, an environmental impact statement will not be prepared.

(The National Energy Extension Service Act, enacted as title V of the Energy Research and Development Administration Authorization Act of 1977, title V of Pub. L. 95-39, 91 Stat. 191 *et seq.*, 42 U.S.C. 7001 *et seq.*; Department of Energy Organization Act, Pub. L. 95-91 Stat. 565 *et seq.*, 42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.*, Federal Grant and Cooperative Agreement Act of 1977, Pub. L. 95-224, 92 Stat. 3 *et seq.*, 41 U.S.C. 501 *et seq.*; EO 12009, 42 FR 46267; EO 12044, 43 FR 12660.)

In consideration of the foregoing, Part 465 of Chapter II of Title 10 of the Code of Federal Regulations is amended as set forth below, effective December 21, 1979.

Issued in Washington, D.C., November 14, 1979.

Maxine Savitz,

Acting Assistant Secretary, Conservation and Solar Energy.

Section 465.7 is amended by revising paragraph (b) to read as follows:

§ 465.7 Annual State applications.

* * * * *

(b) to be eligible for financial assistance under this part, a State shall submit an original and two copies to the Regional Representative of an annual State application executed by the Governor. The first annual State application shall be submitted not later than February 19, 1980. Subsequent annual State applications shall be submitted on or before September 30 of the following years.

[FR Doc. 79-35404 Filed 11-20-79; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 6450-01-M

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

16 CFR Part 802

Premerger Notification; Reporting and Waiting Period Requirements

AGENCY: Federal Trade Commission.

ACTION: Promulgation of final rules.

SUMMARY: The purpose of this document is formally to amend the minimum dollar value rule contained in the Commission's premerger notification rules by raising certain minimum dollar value figures which define exemptions from the reporting and waiting requirements of Title II of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976. This document consists of the minimum dollar value rule as amended and a statement of basis and purpose. The amended rule will enlarge the class of relatively small transactions which are exempt from the requirement that Premerger Notification and Report Forms be filed with the Federal Trade Commission and the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice and will be effective immediately.

EFFECTIVE DATE: Immediately November 21, 1979.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: Joan S. Truitt, Attorney, Premerger Notification Office, Bureau of Competition, Room 301, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, D.C. 20580, telephone: (202) 523-3894.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION: Section 7A of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a (Title II of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976), requires that certain persons contemplating certain acquisitions or mergers file Notification and Report Forms with the Federal Trade Commission and the Department of Justice and wait designated periods of time before consummating the transactions. Specifically, transactions between persons with $100 million or more in sales or assets, and persons with $10 million or more in sales or assets, are reportable to both agencies, if, as a result of the transaction, the acquiring person would hold 15 percent or more of the assets or voting securities of the acquired person or if the acquiring person would hold an aggregate total amount of the assets and securities of the acquired person in excess of $15 million. *See* Clayton Act, section 7A(a)(3).

Statement of Basis and Purpose of Amended § 802.20 of the Commission's Premerger Notification Rules

Section 802.20, as amended, exempts certain acquisitions as a result of which the acquiring person will hold 15 percent or more of the voting securities or 15 percent or more of the assets of the acquired person, but the aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets so held will be $15 million or less (*i.e.*, the 15-percent test of section 7a(a)(3)(A) will be satisfied, but the $15 million test of section 7A(a)(3)(B) will not). This rule amends the previous § 802.20 so as to exempt acquisitions as a result of which the acquiring person would not hold either (a) assets of the acquired person valued at more than $15 million, or (b) voting securities conferring control of an issuer which, together with all entities that it controls, has annual net sales or total assets of $25 million or more.

Section 802.20 was originally promulgated to eliminate reporting and waiting period requirements with respect to certain relatively small acquisitions that are clearly reportable under the Act. It resulted from the Commission's belief

> * * * that certain relatively small transactions (frequently involving only a portion of the stock or assets of the acquired person) that might be reportable under the act are sufficiently unlikely to have a significant anticompetitive impact that imposition of the

act's requirements would not represent an appropriate use of public resources.

Statement of Basis and Purpose to Premerger Notification Rules, 43 FR 33490 (July 31, 1978).

Section 802.20 as originally promulgated exempted, first, those assets acquisitions where at least 15 percent of the acquired person will be held as a result of the transaction, if those assets are valued at $10 million or less. Second, subsection (b) exempted acquisitions of 50 percent or more of the voting securities of an issuer, if the issuer has both sales and assets of less than $10 million and the resulting holdings are valued at $15 million or less. Finally, an acquisition of less than 50 percent of the voting securities of an issuer is exempt without regard to the size of the issuer's sales or assets, as long as the value of the holdings resulting from the acquistion is $15 million or less.

The Commission scrutinized the filings received during the first nine months of the premerger program and found that, even with the exemptions provided in § 802.20, there was a significant number of relatively small transactions with respect to which neither agency requested additional information pursuant to section 7A(e) of the Act. The Commission has concluded that it could raise somewhat the floors in § 802.20 so as to exempt a larger number of these small transactions without impairing the effectiveness of the program, while at the same time reducing the burden on filing parties.

The new minimum dollar value floors were selected only after careful analysis of the data derived from the filings. Staff formulated a proposal that, based on the past data, maximized the number of additional relatively small transactions exempted while minimizing the possibility that, contrary to legislative intent, transactions which might be of antitrust interest to the agencies would also be exempted.

The amended rule, therefore, exempts assets acquisitions where at least 15 percent of the acquired person will be held as a result of the transaction, if those assets are valued at $15 million or less (instead of the $10 million formerly used). Second, amended subsection (b) exempts acquisitions of 50 percent or more of the voting securities of an issuer, if the issuer has both sales and assets of less than $25 million (instead of the $10 million figure formerly used) and the resulting holdings are valued at $15 million or less. The third exemption, affecting acquisitions of less than 50 percent of an issuer's stock as long as the value of the holdings resulting from the acquisition is $15 million or less, remains the same.

Staff considered alternative dollar values; however, the $15 million figure in the case of an assets acquisition and the $25 million figure in the case of a voting securities acquisition were undoubtedly the most appropriate. All of the comments approved the agencies' attempt to exempt more transactions. Comment 4,[1] however, suggested raising the floor in an assets acquisition to $20 million, citing as its justification the observation that inflation has rendered the $15 million figure "an unreasonably low * * * benchmark for identifying potentially anti-competitive acquisitions."

Comment 8 recommended a $25 million floor in an assets acquisition and a $50 million floor in a voting securities acquisition. It relied upon a stated belief "that these lower magnitude acquisitions usually involve lower level technology, and these type companies tend to flourish regardless of acquisition activity." Neither comment offered factual support for its recommendations. The Commission has concluded that the 50% increase in an assets acquisition and the 150% increase in a voting securities acquisition is sufficient at this early stage of the program. Continued review of the filings received may result in a reassessment of the Commission's position with regard to these floors; however, a cautious approach seems more appropriate at this time.

Comment 2 recommended a "uniform exemption" for both assets and voting securities acquisitions so as to exempt any acquisition of $15 million or less, regardless of the percentages involved. A similar comment was addressed to the Commission during promulgation of the original rules. As the Commission stated then, "[I]f Congress had intended such a result, the act could easily have been worded so as to achieve it." 43 FR at 33491. The disjunctive formulation of the size-of-transaction test in section 7A(a)(3) "indicates a clear Congressional intention to reach at least some acquisitions that satisfy only the percentage test." *Id.* Absent justification as to why the clear intent of Congress should be ignored, we will reject this suggestion.

Comments 6 and 9 recommended amending the similar exemptions provided in § 802.50 and § 802.51 for certain acquisitions by and of foreign persons. Comment 7 urged the Commission to redefine "acquired person" in § 801.1 (a)(1) in terms of only the issuer to be acquired along with all entities which the issuer controls. The Commission rejects these suggestions as being outside the scope of the published notice of proposed rulemaking, but will retain them for further consideration in the event that changes in these sections are proposed at a later date.

Comments

Received in response to August 10, 1979, publication of proposed amendment to § 802.20 of the rules implementing Title II of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 relating to premerger notification (comment period August 10, 1979 to September 10, 1979).

No	Date of letter	Organization
1	8/17/79	Chadwell, Kayser, Ruggles, McGee & Hastings (David A. Nelson, Esq.)
2	9/4/79	Marathon Oil Co. (Kent B. Hampton)
3	9/5/79	Squibb Corp.* (J. Elliston Murray)
4	9/7/79	Edwards & Angell*
5	9/10/79	Food Marketing Institute (Kathleen E. McDermott, Esq.)
6	9/10/79	Covington & Burling (Daniel M. Gribbon, Esq. and Stephen Calkins, Esq.)
7	9/10/79	International Telephone and Telegraph Corp. (Roger Langsdorf, Esq.)
8	9/11/79	McCormick & Co., Inc.* (James J. Harrison, Jr., Esq.)
9	9/13/79	Chamber of Commerce of the United States* Fred Bysel)

*This comment was received after the comment period.

The Federal Trade Commission amends § 802.20 of title 16 CFR pursuant to section 7A(d) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d), as added by section 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390, to read as follows:

§ 802.20 Minimum dollar value

An acquisition which would be subject to the requirements of the act and which satisfies section 7A(a)(3)(A), but which does not satisfy section 7A(a)(3)(B), shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if as a result of the acquisition the acquiring person would not hold:

(a) Assets of the acquired person valued at more than $15 million; or

(b) Voting securities which confer control of an issuer which, together with all entities which it controls, has annual net sales or total assets of $25 million or more.

Pursuant to section 7A(d) of the Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d), the Federal Trade Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, hereby formally amends § 802.20 of title 16 of the Code of Federal Regulation, Chapter I.

---

[1] The nine comments received are identified and marked by number following the Statement of Basis and Purpose.

Issued November 13, 1979.

By direction of the Commission.

Carol M. Thomas,
Secretary.

[FR Doc. 79-[illegible] Filed 11-20-79; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE [illegible]-01-M

DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

Federal Energy Regulatory Commission

18 CFR Part 271

[Docket No. RM79-73]

Interim Interpretive Regulation; Definition of Term "Produced" as It Relates to Stripper Wells

AGENCY: Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, DOE.

ACTION: Interim Regulation.

SUMMARY: The Commission is issuing an interim regulation defining the term "produced" as it relates to stripper wells under the Natural Gas Policy Act of 1978. The regulation provides that natural gas is produced within the meaning of section 108(b)(3) (A) and (B) of the NGPA (1) on any day during which there is measurable production of natural gas from a well, and (2) on any day during which a well is open to the line but is unable to produce measurable quantities of gas.

The order also provides that days on which a well operator must shut the well in to build up pressure may qualify as "production days" if the jurisdictional agency makes a finding that conservation practice requires such shut-in.

DATES: The regulation is to be effective November 9, 1979. Comments are due on or before January 8, 1980. A public hearing will be held on January 3, 1980. Requests to participate should be received on December 27, 1979.

ADDRESSES: Send comments and requests to participate at the hearing to the Secretary, Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, 825 North Capitol Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20426. The hearing will be held at the same location.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: Carol Lane, Office of the General Counsel, Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, Room 4001, 825 North Capitol Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20426 (202) 275–5928 or 357–8511.

November 9, 1979.

I. Background

Section 501(b) of the Natural Gas Policy Act of 1978 (NGPA), 92 Stat. 3350, authorizes the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission (Commission) "to define, by rule, accounting, technical and trade terms" used in the NGPA, so long as such definition is "consistent with the definitions set forth in [the] Act." Pursuant to this authority, the Commission is issuing an interim interpretive regulation defining the term "produced" as it is used in portions of section 108 of the NGPA. We are also clarifying our interpretation of the terms "production day" and "90-day production period."

This order arises out of deliberations held in the course of Commission review of certain jurisdictional agency determinations[1] made under section 108 of the NGPA (stripper well natural gas). These determinations generally fall into three categories, which are described below. Wells in these categories had been preliminarily determined by the Commission not to qualify as stripper wells. In a number of these cases, however, the Commission noted that these Preliminary Findings were tentative conclusions which would be re-examined in a forthcoming rulemaking.

Category A (shut-in wells): This category consists of wells which are manually shut-in due to their inability to meet line pressure. For reasons which will be explained below, the Commission had preliminarily found that days on which a well was shut in for this reason did not qualify as "production days."

Category B (open valve wells): This category consists of wells which are open to the line but are unable to meet line pressure. For reasons which will be explained below, the Commission had preliminarily found that days on which a well was open to the line but not producing gas did not qualify as "production days" and could not make up a "90-day production period."

Wells in categories A and B, are generally low-production gas wells which were in production prior to passage of the NGPA (some for many years). These wells have experienced a drop in pressure to the point where they are incapable of producing against the line without compression or the application of enhanced recovery techniques. Producers of such wells have three alternatives: continued shut-in, abandonment, or installation of enhanced recovery techniques such as compression.

Category C (intermittent production wells): This category consists of low-production gas wells which are open to the line and produce natural gas at irregular intervals. In such cases, pressure builds up over a period of time until the well can finally "burp up" a measurable amount of gas. Pressure then drops again and the well produces no gas for another period of time until it can build sufficient pressure once again. This cycle may continue on a regular or irregular basis. The Commission had found preliminarily that days in the cycle on which the well did not produce measurable amounts of gas were not "production days."

The regulation we adopt today changes these preliminary conclusions by defining the term "produced" as it applies to wells in categories (A), (B) and (C), in a manner consistent with what we believe to be the scope and the intent of section 108.

II. Nature of Interim Regulation

The Commission is amending § 271.803 by adding a new paragraph (e) defining the term "produced" as follows:

> Natural gas is produced, within the meaning of section 108(b)(3) (A) and (B) of the NGPA, (1) on any day during which there is measurable production of natural gas from well, and (2) on any day on which a well is open to the line but is unable to produce measurable quantities of gas.

The phrase "open to the line" is intended to describe a situation in which there is no physical impediment to production. For example, a well may have a one-way or back-flow valve which will automatically close when line pressure is greater than well pressure, but there will exist no physical impediment which will prevent the valve from opening again if line pressure drops sufficiently or well pressure increases sufficiently.

The new definition of "produced" is intended to encourage both Renewed production from wells which are presently incapable of producing and continued production from wells which are presently producing on an irregular basis. Once an applicant has the qualifying production date available the installation of a process or equipment which increases the rate of production from the well will be eligible in most cases to qualify as application of a "recognized enhanced recovery technique."[2] If the recognized enhanced

---

[1] GP79-46, GP79-48, GP79-50, GP79-65, GP79-70, GP79-84, GP79-103, GP79-106, GP79-63, GP79-76, GP79-120.

[2] Section 271.803(a) defines recognized enhanced recovery technique as follows: "Recognized

Footnotes continued on next page

case to be adequately substantiated. It appears obvious to me that they cannot. If Sterling has a reasonable basis for a claim that Vanquish provides superior pain relief to aspirin, it cannot have a reasonable basis for a claim that Bayer aspirin relieves pain just as well as all OTC internal analgesics. Conversely, if Sterling has reasonable basis for a claim that aspirin relieves pain just as effectively as all OTC internal analgesics, it cannot have a reasonable basis for a claim that Vanquish relieves pain better than aspirin. Where as advertiser makes an objective and verifiable claim that its product performs better than any other product, adequate substantiation for that claim necessarily precludes the advertiser from having a reasonable basis for a claim that another product works better than, or as well as, the one advertised.

The Commission seems troubled, however, by the application of an "inconsistent contemporaneous claims" theory. It notes the apparent discrepancy between the case where a single advertiser is held liable for making inconsistent claims, and the case where the same claims are made separately by two different advertisers and the Commission finds each adequately substantiated. In fact, such a result would not be anomalous. Indeed, it would be perfectly consistent with the reasonable basis doctrine, which takes into account not only the sufficiency of the evidence on which an advertiser relies but also "the reasonableness of the advertiser's action and his good faith." *National Dynamics Corp.*, 82 F.T.C. 488, 553 (1973). In considering an advertiser's reasonableness, the Commission routinely considers information in the advertiser's possession which might give the advertiser reason to question the evidence relied upon to substantiate a claim. Clearly, an advertiser possessing data which directly contradicts a claim cannot have a reasonable belief in the truth of that claim. On the other hand, if the contradictory evidence exists but the advertiser is unaware of it and would have no reason to know about it, the advertiser would not be precluded from making the claim. In other words, whether or not there is liability depends, at least in part, on the advertiser's knowledge. The application of the inconsistent contemporaneous claims theory simply is one example of the effect of this standard, and accordingly reflects no deviation from the established reasonable basis doctrine.

It is true, as the majority notes, that we could have proceeded to determine which of Sterling's claims was the one that lacked a reasonable basis. But where the conclusion is inescapable, as it is here, that one claim or the other lacked a reasonable basis, it seems like a waste of resources to require both sides to go through the full panoply of evidentiary exchanges just to find out which claim was the one to violate Section 5. Accordingly, I would have sustained the allegations of the complaint with respect to the making of contemporaneous inconsistent claims.

Issued July 5, 1983.

[FR Doc. 83-20596 Filed 7-28-83; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 6750-01-M

---

16 CFR Parts 801, 802, and 803

Premerger Notification; Reporting and Waiting Period Requirements

AGENCY: Federal Trade Commission.

ACTION: Final rules.

SUMMARY: These rules amend the premerger notification rules, which require the parties to certain mergers or acquisitions to file reports with the Federal Trade Commission and the Department of Justice and to wait a specified period of time before consummating such transactions. These reporting and waiting period requirements enable the antitrust enforcement agencies to determine whether a proposed merger or acquisition might violate the antitrust laws and, if necessary, to seek a preliminary injunction in federal court before the transaction is consummated. On the basis of its experience with the premerger notification rules issued in 1978, the Commission is promulgating these amendments to increase the clarity, reduce the burden and improve the effectiveness of the rules and the Notification and Report Form.

EFFECTIVE DATE: August 29, 1983.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: John M. Sipple, Jr., Senior Attorney, Premerger Notification Office, or Roberta S. Baruch, Deputy Assistant Director for Evaluation, Bureau of Competition, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, D.C. 20580. Telephone: (202) 523-3894.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION:

Regulatory Flexibility Act

These amendments to the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification rules are largely technical, designed to resolve confusion and reduce unnecessary reporting. They do not materially expand the coverage of the premerger notification rules, nor do they have any significant economic impact upon any entities affected by the rules. Therefore, pursuant to section 605(b) of the Administrative Procedure Act, 5 U.S.C. 605(b), as added by the Regulatory Flexibility Act, Pub. L. 96-354 (September 19, 1980) the Federal Trade Commission has certified that these rules will not have a significant economic impact on a substantial number of small entities. Section 603 of the Administrative Procedure Act, 5 U.S.C. 603, requiring a final regulatory flexibility analysis of these rules, is therefore inapplicable.

Background

Section 7A of the Clayton Act ("the Act"), 15 U.S.C. 18a, as added by sections 201 and 202 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, requires persons contemplating certain acquisitions of assets or voting securities to give advance notice to the Federal Trade Commission (hereafter referred to as "the Commission") and the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice (hereafter referred to as "the Assistant Attorney General") and to wait certain designated periods before the consummation of such acquisitions. The transactions to which the advance notice requirement is applicable and the length of the waiting period required are set out respectively in subsections (a) and (b) of section 7A. The Hart-Scott-Rodino amendment to the Clayton Act does not change the standards used in determining the legality of mergers and acquisitions under the antitrust laws.

The legislative history suggests several purposes underlying the Act. First, Congress clearly intended to eliminate the large "midnight merger," which is negotiated in secret and announced just before, or sometimes only after, the closing takes place. Second, Congress wanted to assure that large acquisitions were subjected to meaningful scrutiny under the antitrust laws prior to consummation. Third, Congress provided an opportunity for the enforcement agencies to seek a court order enjoining the completion of those transactions which the agencies deemed to present significant antitrust problems. Finally, Congress sought to facilitate an effective remedy where a challenge by one of the enforcement agencies proved successful. Thus the Act requires that the agencies received prior notification of significant acquisitions, provides certain tools to facilitate a prompt, thorough investigation, and assures an opportunity to seek a preliminary injunction before the parties are legally free to complete the transaction, eliminating the problem of unscrambling the assets after the transaction has taken place.

Subsection 7A(d)(1) of the Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d)(1), directs the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General and by rule in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 553, to require that the notification be in such form and contain such information and documentary material as may be necessary and appropriate to determine whether the proposed transaction may, if consummated, violate the antitrust laws. Subsection 7A(d)(2) of the Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d)(2), grants the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General and by rule in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 553, the authority (A) to define the terms used in the Act, (B) to exempt additional persons or transactions from the Act's notification and waiting period requirements, and (C) to prescribe such other rules as may be necessary and appropriate to carry out the purposes of Section 7A.

On December 15, 1976, the Commission issued proposed rules and a proposed Notification and Report Form to implement the Act. This proposed rulemaking was published in the **Federal Register** of December 20, 1976, 41 FR 55488. Because of the volume of public comment, it became clear to the Commission that some substantial revisions would have to be made in the original rules. On July 25, 1977, the Commission determined that additional public comment on the rules would be desirable and approved revised proposed rules and a revised proposed Notification and Report Form. The revised rules and Form were published in the **Federal Register** of August 1, 1977, 42 FR 39040. Additional changes in the revised rules and Form were made after the close of the comment period. The Commission formally promulgated the final rules and Form and issued an accompanying Statement of Basis and Purpose on July 10, 1978. The Assistant Attorney General gave his formal concurrence on July 18, 1978. The final rules and Form and the Statement of Basis and Purpose were published in the **Federal Register** of July 31, 1978, 43 FR 33451, and became effective on September 5, 1978.

The rules are divided into three parts which appear at 16 CFR Parts 801, 802, and 803. Part 801 defines a number of the terms used in the Act and rules, and explains which acquisitions are subject to the reporting and waiting period requirements. Part 802 contains a number of exemptions from these requirements. Part 803 explains the procedures for complying with the Act. The Notification and Report Form, which is completed by persons required to file notification, is an appendix to Part 803 of the rules.

Two changes have been made in the premerger notification rules since they were first promulgated. The first was an increase in the minimum dollar value exemption contained in § 802.20 of the rules. This amendment was proposed in the **Federal Register** of August 10, 1979, 44 FR 47099, and was published in final form in the **Federal Register** of November 21, 1979, 44 FR 60781. The second amendment replaced the requirement that certain revenue data for the year 1972 be provided in the Notification and Report Form with a requirement that comparable data be provided for the year 1977. This change was made because total revenues for the year 1977 broken down by Standard Industrial Classification (SIC) codes became available from the Bureau of the Census. The amendment appeared in the **Federal Register** of March 5, 1980, 45 FR 14205, and was effective May 3, 1980.

In addition, the Notification and Report Form has been revised twice. The new versions were approved by the Office of Management and Budget on December 29, 1981, and February 23, 1983, respectively.

Comments

These rules were proposed for comment in the **Federal Register** of July 29, 1981, 46 FR 38710, and the comment period ended September 28, 1981. The following comments were received in response to this proposal:

No.	Date of letter	Organization
1	9-24-81	Atlantic Richfield Company
2	9-25-81	Shearman & Sterling
3	9-28-81	Sullivan & Cromwell
4	9-28-81	Howrey & Simon (William J. Boyd, Esq.)
5	9-28-81	Covington & Burling (Edwin M. Zimmerman, Esq.)
6	9-28-81	Skadden, Arps, Slate, Meagher & Flom (Stephen M. Axinn, Esq.)

List of Subjects

16 CFR Parts 801 and 802

Antitrust.

16 CFR Part 803

Antitrust, Reporting and recordkeeping requirements.

Statement of Basis and Purpose for the Commission's Revised Premerger Notification Rules

Authority: The Federal Trade Commission promulgates these amendments to the premerger notification rules pursuant to section 7A(d) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d), as added by section 201 of the *Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust* Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390.

Note:—The orginal premerger notification rules affected by these changes were promulgated on July 31, 1978. Those rules or sections thereof will be referred to as "the 1978 rules," "1978 §   " and so forth.

1. Section 801.1(a)(2): Deletion of "Other Group Organized for Any Purpose" from the Definition of the Term "Entity"; Insertion of "Estate of a Deceased Natural Person"

Section 801.1(a) of the rules defines a "person" as an ultimate parent entity and all entities which it controls. The term "entity," which does not appear in the Act, is used throughout the rules and in the Notification and Report Form to refer to the component parts of the person to which the provisions of the Act and rules apply.

Section 801.1(a)(2) defines "entity" by setting forth a list of the types of organizational units which are included within that term. Section 801.1(a)(2) has been amended in two respects. First, the phrase "or other group organized for any purpose" has been deleted. The phrase was included in the definition to capture organizational units other than those specifically mentioned which might participate in acquisitions subject to the Act. Informal contacts between the Commission staff and persons wishing to determine the reportability of particular transactions indicate that the concept of "group" is a source of considerable uncertainty and concern. This concern is caused in part by the fact that the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") also requires reporting by entities called groups. The SEC's definition of "group," however, which is geared to securities regulation, is too broad for purposes of the rules. Yet the presence of the term "group" in the rules has led to uncertainty whether the SEC's definition was intended to be applied. Moreover, experience with the rules and the Act has demonstrated that the concept of "group" is unnecessary for applying the rules; the other organizational units named in the definition have adequately covered situations raising antitrust concerns.

Second, the Commission has added "estate of a deceased natural person" to the list of organizational units which may be entities. This change will eliminate any confusion that may have existed previously over whether an estate can be a person under the Act.

The Commission has also changed §§ 801.11(d) and 803.6(a) to specify how the estate of a deceased natural person will be treated in the rules. Section 801.11 explains the method for determining the assets of a person for purposes of the size-of-person test. New paragraph 801.11 (d) provides that, as in the case of a natural person, no assets other than investment assets, voting securities, and other income-producing property shall be included in determining the size of an estate of a deceased natural person. Section 803.6(a) lists, for various categories of reporting persons, who may certify the Notification and Report Form on behalf of the person filing notification. New subparagraph (5) stipulates that any duly authorized legal representative may certify the filing where the person filing notification is the estate of a deceased natural person. The scope of the term "duly authorized legal representative" includes such commonly used designations as "administrator," "administratrix," "executor," and "executrix," as well as any less commonly used terms for individuals who may serve the same function.

PARTS 801 AND 803—[AMENDED]

Section 801.1 is amended by revising paragraph (a)(2), § 801.11 is amended by revising paragraph (d), and § 803.6 is amended by adding paragraph (a)(5) to read as follows:

§ 801.1 Definitions.

* * * * *

(a) * * *

(2) *Entity.* The term "entity" means any natural person, corporation, company, partnership, joint venture, association, joint-stock company, trust, estate of a deceased natural person, foundation, fund, institution, society, union, or club, whether incorporated or not, wherever located and of whatever citizenship, or any receiver, trustee in bankruptcy or similar official or any liquidating agent for any of the foregoing, in his or her capacity as such; or any joint venture or other corporation which has not been formed but the acquisition of the voting securities or other interest in which, if already formed, would require notification under the act and these rules: *Provided, however,* that the term "entity" shall not include any foreign state, foreign government, or agency thereof (other than a corporation engaged in commerce), nor the United States, any of the States thereof, or any political subdivision or agency of either (other than a corporation engaged in commerce).

* * * * *

§ 801.11 Annual net sales and total assets.

* * * * *

(d) No assets of any natural person or of any estate of a deceased natural person, other than investment assets, voting securities and other income-producing property, shall be included in determining the total assets of a person.

§ 803.6 Certification.

(a) * * *

(5) In the case of the estate of a deceased natural person, by any duly authorized legal representative of such estate.

* * * * *

2. Section 801.1(f): Conversion

The definition of "conversion" in § 801.1(f)(3) of the rules has been broadened. The 1978 § 801.1(f)(3) defined conversion as the exchange, without the payment of additional consideration, of voting securities, as defined in § 801.1(f)(1), which do not presently give the owner or holder the right to vote for directors of the issuer, for securities which entitle the owner or holder to vote.

This definition proved to be too narrow in that it covered only exchanges of voting securities which do not give the owner or holder a present right to vote for directors, for voting securities which do carry a present right to vote. Occasionally, voting securities are created which entitle the owner or holder to vote for directors but which are also convertible into other securities with different voting rights. Under the original definition, an exchange of this type of security was not a conversion, because before the exchange the securities to be exchanged had voting rights. As a result, such exchanges did not fall within § 801.30 and its special provisions. Section 801.30 applies to certain transactions, including conversions, in which the acquired person may be hostile or indifferent to the acquisition. To prevent the acquired person from blocking the transaction by refusing to comply with the Act's filing requirements, this section provides that the waiting period begins when the acquiring person files.

The amended definition makes no reference to the voting rights of the securities before the exchange takes place. Whether a transaction is a conversion turns on whether it is the exercise of a right inherent in the ownership of any securities to exchange them for other securities which have present voting rights. The use of the word "exercise" in the definition is intended to distinguish conversion from the automatic maturation of an inchoate right, such as, for example, if preferred *shares become entitled to vote because* dividends are not paid. The new definition also eliminates as unnecessary all references to the "payment of additional consideration."

Conversions under the amended definition which do not increase directly or indirectly the acquiring persons per centum share of outstanding voting securities of the issuer are, of course, exempt from the notification and waiting period requirements under section 7A(c)(10) of the Act.

Comment 6 criticizes the amended definition because it does not apply to exchanges of securities issued by one person which are convertible into voting securities of an issuer included within a different person. For example, suppose A (included in person "A") wishes to dispose of its minority interest in the voting securities of B (included in person "B") and A issues non-voting debentures which may be exchanged for the underlying B shares. The comment asserts that since such an exchange is not a conversion (because B is not an entity included within A) it would not be covered by § 801.30, and B could block the transfer by refusing to file. The comment proposes that "conversion" be defined as the exercise of a right to exchange securities for other securities which give the holder the right to vote for directors of any issuer.

The Commission has determined that the suggested modification is unnecessary. In the example above, the holder of the non-voting debentures issued by A may make a reportable acquisition of B's voting securities when it exchanges the debentures for the voting securities of B held by A. Such an exchange is covered by § 801.30(a)(5) because it is an acquisition of voting securities from a holder other than the issuer. A hostile issuer in such a transaction will therefore be in no better position to interfere with such an exchange than if the transaction was considered a conversion. It should be noted also that if the A debentures give the owner or holder the right to vote the underlying B shares prior to conversion, any person proposing to acquire these debentures may be required to observe the filing and waiting period requirements of the Act before doing so. See the staff formal interpretation, June 2, 1981.

Section 801.1 is amended by revising paragraph (f)(3) and examples 1 and 2 which follow paragraph (f)(3) and by adding example 3 to read as follows:

§ 801.1 Definitions.

* * * * *

(f) * * *

(3) *Conversion.* The term "conversion" *means* the exercise of a right inherent in the ownership or holding of particular voting securities to exchange such securities for securities which presently entitle the owner or holder to vote for directors of the issuer or of any entity included within the same person as the issuer.

Examples: 1. The acquisition of convertible debentures which are convertible into common stock is an acquisition of "voting securities." However, § 802.31 exempts the acquisition of such securities from the requirements of the act, provided that they have no present voting rights.

2. Options and warrants are also "voting securities" for purposes of the act, because they can be exchanged for securities with present voting rights. Section 802.31 exempts the acquisition of options and warrants as well, since they do not themselves have present voting rights and hence are convertible voting securities. Notification may be required prior to exercising options and warrants, however.

3. Assume that X has issued preferred shares which presently entitle the holder to vote for directors of X, and that these shares are convertible into common shares of X. Because the preferred shares confer a present right to vote for directors of X, they are "voting securities." (See § 801.1(f)(1).) They are not "convertible voting securities," however, because the definition of that term excludes securities which confer a present right to vote for directors of any entity. (See § 801.1(f)(2).) Thus, an acquisition of these preferred shares issued by X would not be exempt as an acquisition of "convertible voting securities." (See § 802.31.) If the criteria in § 7A(a) are met, an acquisition of X's preferred shares would be subject to the reporting and waiting period requirements of the Act. Moreover, the conversion of these preferred shares into common shares of X would also be potentially reportable, since the holder would be exercising a right to exchange particular voting securities for different voting securities having a present right to vote for directors of the issuer. Because this exchange would be a "conversion," § 801.30 would apply. (See § 801.30(a)(8).)

* * * * *

3. Section 801.2: Acquiring and Acquired Persons in Mergers and Consolidations

Two of the most basic concepts in the Act and the rules are those of acquiring and acquired person. For example, the size-of-transaction test in section 7A(a)(3) of the Act, which determines whether a transaction is of a reportable size, provides that an acquisition will be reportable if the acquiring person will hold (a) 15% or more of the voting securities or assets of the acquired person, or (b) an aggregate total amount of the voting securities and assets of the acquired person in excess of $15 million. Similarly, many of the rules depend for their application on whether the filing party is an acquiring or acquired person. In order to apply the provisions of the Act and of the rules and to complete the Notification and Report Form properly, therefore, a filing party must determine whether it is an acquiring or an acquired person, or both.

The terms acquiring and acquired person are defined, respectively, in paragraphs (a) and (b) of § 801.2. An acquiring person is "[any] person which, as a result of an acquisition, will hold voting securities or assets, either directly or indirectly. . . ." and, for most purposes, an acquired person is the one "within which the entity whose assets or voting securities are being acquired is included. . . . " Paragraphs (c), (d), and (e) of § 801.2 concern the application of these concepts in specific circumstances.

Amended paragraph 801.2(c) provides that a person may be both an acquiring and an acquired person in a single transaction. The amendment makes clear that a person is both an acquiring and an acquired person in a transaction when it occupies both roles in separate parts of the transaction. The example following the paragraph illustrates such a situation: "Corporation A (an entity within the person "A") plans to transfer certain of its assets to corporation B (an entity within person "B") in return for voting securities of B." With respect to the transfer of assets, "B" is an acquiring person and "A" is an acquired person; with respect to the transfer of voting securities, "A" is an acquiring person and "B" is an acquired person. In the transaction as a whole, therefore, "A" and "B" are both acquiring and acquired persons.

It should be noted that for purposes of this section new § 801.2(c) distinguishes between an acquisition and a transaction. An acquisition is characterized by the presence of only one acquiring and one acquired person. A transaction, as the word is used in this section, is a set of one or more related acquisitions which are considered together for reporting purposes. This distinction clarifies paragraph (c) and its relationship to paragraphs (a) and (b) of § 801.2.

New § 801.2(d) changes and clarifies the treatment of mergers and consolidations under the rules. The amended paragraph is also more consistent with other provisions of the rules. The 1978 § 801.2(d) designated the parties to all mergers and consolidations as both acquiring and acquired persons. This provision proved to be a significant source of confusion since it called for quite different treatment for similar transactions. It also caused some unnecessary reporting.

New paragraph (d)(1)(i) of § 801.2 states that mergers and consolidations are subject to the Act and are to be treated as acquisitions of voting securities. Mergers and consolidations have aspects of both acquisitions of assets and acquisitions of voting securities. The new rule eliminates the ambiguity in the present treatment of mergers and consolidations by opting to treat mergers and consolidations in all cases as involving an acquisition of voting securities.

New paragraph (d)(1)(ii) sets up a mechanism for determining the acquiring party in mergers. Mergers are governed by state corporate law. One feature common to most, if not all, state statutes is that documents which must be filed with state authorities to effectuate a merger will specify, among other things, the participating corporation which will survive the transaction. This is the basis for determining the acquiring party. In a merger, the acquiring party is the person, as defined by § 801.1(a), which after consummation will include the corporation designated the survivor in filings made in accordance with state law. Paragraph (d)(1)(ii) also provides that the party so identified will be deemed to have made an acquisition of voting securities.

Paragraph (d)(2) completes the analysis of mergers and consolidations by enabling the parties to all such transactions to determine whether they are acquiring or acquired persons, or both. A party is an acquiring person under paragraph (d)(2)(i) if, as a result of the transaction, it will hold assets or voting securities it did not hold previously. The acquiring party in a merger, determined in accordance with paragraph (d)(1)(ii) of this section, is therefore the acquiring person in an acquisition of voting securities. All other parties to that acquisition are acquired persons under paragraph (d)(2)(ii) because, as a result of the acquisition, the assets or voting securities of entities included within them will be held by another person.

The transfer of the consideration in the acquisition just described is analyzed separately and may itself constitute a reportable acquisition. In this acquisition, the acquiring and acquired persons exchange roles. Depending on the nature and amount of this consideration, its acquisition may or may not be reportable and may be an acquisition of assets or of voting securities. The analysis of the reporting obligations of the parties with respect to the acquisition of voting securities, and the analysis of their obligation with respect to the acquisition involved in the transfer of the consideration will determine for the transaction taken as a whole whether the parties must report as acquiring persons, acquired persons, or both. The analysis of mergers under new § 801.2(d) will thus have the same result as that of any other transaction under § 801.2(c).

In a consolidation, the participants all lose their preacquisition identities and the resulting entity is new. Since acquiring and acquired persons cannot readily be identified in such transactions, new § 801.2(d)(2)(iii) designates all parties both acquiring and acquired persons and new § 801.2(d)(1) makes clear that such transactions shall be treated as acquisitions of voting securities. Under revised § 801.2(d), then, a party is designated both an acquiring and an acquired person only if it occupies both roles in reportable acquisitions involved in a merger or if it is a party to a consolidation.

The examples following revised § 801.2(d) illustrate its application. Example 1 illustrates a "triangular" merger in which corporation A proposes to acquire Y, a subsidiary of corporation B, by merging Y into A's own subsidiary, X, which will survive. The consideration for the acquired corporation is cash and the voting securities of an unrelated issuer, C. Since "A" (the person of which A is the ultimate parent entity) will include the surviving corporation, X, after the consummation of the transaction, it is the acquiring person in an acquisition of voting securities. Since "B" is the person whose assets or voting securities will be acquired, it is an acquired person. But, since cash and the securities of another person are not considered assets of the person from which they are acquired (see § 801.21), the acquisition by B of the consideration for Y from A is not separately reportable. In the transaction as a whole, therefore, "A" is an acquiring person only and "B" an acquired person only. "B" may have a separate reporting obligation with respect to its acquisition of the voting securities of C, however.

Example 2 illustrates the analysis of similar transaction in which the consideration for Y includes the voting securities of the acquiring party, A. For the same reasons, "A" is an acquiring person and "B" is an acquired person. In addition, "A" is an acquired person, because its voting securities will be held by another person as a result of the transaction, and "B" is an acquiring person with respect to those voting securities. Since these voting securities are less than 15% of the outstanding voting securities of A and are worth less than $15 million, however, the acquisition of them is not reportable. "A" therefore still reports as an acquiring person only and "B" as an acquired person only. Example 3 shows that the result is the same when B's acquisition of the consideration for Y is exempt. Example 4 shows a case in which the consideration for Y is assets the receipt of which is also a reportable acquisition. In this transaction, "A" is an acquiring and "B" an acquired person in an acquisition of voting securities, and "B" is an acquiring and "A" an acquired person in an acquisition of assets. Both will therefore report in both capacities. Finally, example 5 illustrates a consolidation in which all parties will lose their separate legal identities as a result of the transaction. In these circumstances, all persons party to the transaction report as both acquiring and acquired persons.

Comment 3 points out that some State corporate statutes permit a merger to be effectuated by the filing of a certificate of merger. See *e.g., Del. Code Ann. tit.* 8, § 251(c). The comment suggests that the words "or certificate" be inserted in § 801.2(d)(1)(ii). Comment 6 suggests that example 1 make clear that "B" may have a separate reporting obligation with respect to the voting securities of C, which form part of the consideration for A's acquisition of Y. The Commission has adopted both suggestions.

Amended § 801.2(e) makes clear that when the shareholder of an acquired person acquires assets or voting securities in exchange for its shares in an acquired issuer, the acquisition is separately subject to the Act.

Section 801.2 is amended by revising paragraphs (c), (d), and (e) and by adding examples 1–5 which follow paragraph (d) to read as follows:

§ 801.2 Acquiring and acquired persons.

* * * * *

(c) For purposes of the act and these rules, a person may be an acquiring person and an acquired person with respect to separate acquisitions which comprise a single transaction.

(d)(1)(i) Mergers and consolidations are transactions subject to the act and shall be treated as acquisitions of voting securities.

(ii) In a merger, the person which, after consummation, will include the corporation in existence prior to consummation which is designated as the surviving corporation in the plan, agreement, or certificate of merger required to be filed with state authorities to effectuate the transaction shall be deemed to have made an acquisition of voting securities.

(2)(i) Any person party to a merger or consolidation is an acquiring person if, as a result of the transaction, such person will hold any assets or voting securities which it did not hold prior to the transaction.

(ii) Any person party to a merger or consolidation is an acquired person if, as a result of the transaction, the assets or voting securities of any entity included within such person will be held by any other person.

(iii) All persons party to a transaction as a result of which all parties will lose their separate pre-acquisition identities shall be both acquiring and acquired persons.

Examples: 1. Corporation A (the ultimate parent entity included within person "A") proposes to acquire Y, a wholly-owned subsidiary of B (the ultimate parent entity included within person "B"). The transaction is to be carried out by merging Y into X, a wholly-owned subsidiary of A, with X surviving, and by distributing the assets of X to B, the only shareholder of Y. The assets of X consist solely of cash and the voting securities of C, an entity unrelated to "A" or "B". Since X is designated the surviving corporation in the plan or agreement of merger or consolidation and since X will be included in "A" after consummation of the transaction, "A" will be deemed to have made an acquisition of voting securities. In this acquisition, "A" is an acquiring person because it will hold assets or voting securities it did not hold prior to the transaction, and "B" is an acquired person because the assets or the voting securities of an entity previously included within it will be held by A as a result of the acquisition. B will hold the cash and voting securities of C as a result of the transaction, but since § 801.21 applies, this acquisition is not reportable. "A" is therefore an acquiring person only, and "B" is an acquired person only. "B" may, however, have a separate reporting obligation as an acquiring person in a separate transaction involving the voting securities of C.

2. In the above example, suppose the consideration for Y consists of $8 million worth of the voting securities of A, constituting less than 15% of A's outstanding voting securities. With regard to the transfer of this consideration, "B" is an acquiring person because it will hold voting securities it did not previously hold, and "A" is an acquired person because its voting securities will be held by B. Since these voting securities are worth less than $15 million and constitute less than 15% of the outstanding voting securities of A, however, the acquisition of these securities is not reportable. "A" will therefore report as an acquiring person only and "B" as an acquired person only.

3. In the above example, suppose the consideration for Y is 50% of the voting securities of Z, a wholly-owned subsidiary of A which, together with all entities it controls,

has annual net sales and total assets of less then $25 million. Suppose also that the value o[illegible]se securities is less than $15 million. [illegible] the acquisition of the voting securities of Z is exempt under the minimum dollar value exemption in § 802.20, "A" will report in this transaction as an acquiring person only and "B" as an acquired person only.

4. In the above example, suppose that, as consideration for Y, A transfers to B a manufacturing plant valued at $18 million. "B" is thus an acquiring person and "A" an acquired person in a reportable acquisition of assets. "A" and "B" will each report as both an acquiring and an acquired person in this transaction because each occupies each role in a reportable acquisition.

5. Corporations A (the ultimate parent entity in person "A") and B (the ultimate parent entity in person "B") propose to consolidate into C, a newly formed corporation. All shareholders of A and B will receive shares of C, and both A and B will lose their separate pre-acquisition identities. "A" and "B" are both acquiring and acquired persons because they are parties to a transaction in which all parties lose their separate pre-acquisition identities.

(e) Whenever voting securities or assets are to be acquired from an acquiring person in connection with an acquisition, the acquisition of voting securities or assets shall be separately subject to the act.

* * * * *

4. Section 801.4: Secondary [illegible]uisitions in Tender Offers and in [illegible]gers and Consolidations

The term "secondary acquisition" is defined in § 801.4(a) of the rules as an acquisition in which the acquiring person, by obtaining control of an issuer holding voting securities of another issuer which it does not control, becomes the holder of the latter issuer's voting securities.

The 1978 § 801.4 did not make special provisions for cases where the primary acquisition is a tender offer. Since such transactions have different waiting period requirements under the Act and rules, the presence of a secondary acquisition could interfere with the consummation of the primary transaction under the old rule where the latter was a tender offer. New § 801.4(c) provides that when a tender offer results in a reportable secondary acquisition, the same waiting period requirements applicable to the primary acquisition shall also be applicable to the secondary acquisition. For example, if the primary acquisition is a cash tender offer which has a 15-day waiting period, the waiting period for a secondary acquisition will also be 15 days. If second requests are issued in connection with the secondary [illegible]uisition when the primary [illegible]uisition is a cash tender offer, the waiting period for the secondary acquisition will expire 10 days after the response of the acquiring person has been received, the same as if requests had been issued in connection with the cash tender offer. Thus, when the primary acquisition is a tender offer and one or more requests for additional information are made in connection with the resulting secondary acquisition, a response by the acquiring person will cause the waiting period for the secondary acquisition to begin running again. A second request directed to the acquired person in such a secondary acquisition will not affect the running of the waiting period in that transaction.

In many instances, this change will eliminate the possibility that a reportable secondary acquisition will interfere with the consummation of the primary transaction. In some cases, however, interference could still occur. Under new § 801.4(c), the end of the waiting period for a secondary acquisition will coincide with that of the primary acquisition only if the acquiring person files for both at the same time. The presence of a secondary acquisition can thus still affect consummation of the primary acquisition if, for example, the acquiring person only learns that it will be making a reportable secondary acquisition after it has filed for the primary transaction.

Because of this possibility, the acquired firm in a hostile takeover may be able to exercise favoritism among potential suitors. The hostile target may be able to confer an advantage on one acquiror by informing it of all potential secondary acquisitions while withholding the information from other suitors.

Comment 4 suggests two ways of dealing with these problems. First, the comment recommends that acquired persons in acquisitions covered by § 801.30, *i.e.*, those in which the target may be hostile, be required to disclose potential secondary acquisitions to each acquiring person. Alternatively, the comment suggests that if the acquiring person discovers unknown, reportable secondary acquisitions it be allowed to consummate the primary acquisition, provided that the acquiring person exercises no control over the stock involved in the secondary acquisition and immediately puts it into escrow until all waiting periods relating to the secondary acquisition have expired.

Although these proposals may have merit, the Commission cannot endorse them without further analysis and comment. The notice by the acquired person of potential secondary acquisitions, for example, may in practice be burdensome on acquired persons and may not always be workable. The structure of any escrow provision will also have to be worked out very carefully. In addition, it would be desirable to subject any additional change in this sensitive area to public comment. For these reasons, the Commission has decided to promulgate the original change at this time, while it continues to consider the appropriateness of further revisions.

Since the application of the rule covering secondary acquisitions in the area of mergers and consolidations is somewhat complex, the Commission has added examples 4, 5, and 6 to § 801.4 to illustrate the treatment of secondary acquisitions in these contexts. Example 4 shows that when the acquiring person in a merger is an acquiring person only, it may have to report minority holdings of the acquired issuer as secondary acquisitions. Even when both parties to a merger are both acquiring and acquired persons, example 5 illustrates that each acquiring person must consider only the minority holdings of issuers it will control as a result of the transaction as potential secondary acquisitions. Finally, example 6 indicates that in a consolidation each party must regard minority holdings of all other parties as potential secondary acquisitions.

Section 801.4 is amended by adding examples 4, 5, and 6 following paragraph (b) and by adding paragraph (c) to read as follows:

§ 801.4 Secondary acquisitions.

* * * * *

(b) * * *

Examples: * * *

4. In the previous examples, assume A's acquisition of B is accomplished by merging B into A's subsidiary, S, and S is designated the surviving corporation. B's voting securities are cancelled, and B's shareholders are to receive cash in return. Since S is designated the surviving corporation and A will control S and also hold assets or voting securities it did not hold previously, "A" is an acquiring person in an acquisition of voting securities by virtue of §§ 801.2 (d)(1)(ii) and (d)(2)(i). A will be deemed to have acquired control of B, and A's resulting acquisition of the voting securities of X is a secondary acquisition. Since cash, the only consideration paid for the voting securities of B, is not considered an asset of the person from which it is acquired, by virtue of § 801.2(d)(2) "A" is an acquiring person only. The acquisition of the minority holding of B in X is therefore a secondary acquisition by "A," but since "B" is an acquired person only, "B" is not deemed to make any secondary acquisition in this transaction.

5. In example 4 above, suppose the consideration paid by A for the acquisition of B is $20 million worth of the voting securities of A. By virtue of § 801.2(d)(2), "A" and "B"

are each both acquiring and acquired persons. A will still be deemed to have acquired control of B, and therefore the resulting acquisition of the voting securities of X is a secondary acquisition. Although "B" is now also an acquiring person, unless B gains control of A in the transaction, B still makes no secondary acquisitions of stock held by A. If the consideration paid by A is the voting securities of one of A's subsidiaries and B thereby gains control of that subsidiary, B will make secondary acquisitions of any minority holdings of that subsidiary.

8. Assume that A and B propose through consolidation to create a new corporation, C, and that both A and B will lose their corporate identities as a result. Since no participating corporation in existence prior to consummation is the designated surviving corporation, "A" and "B" are each both acquiring and acquired persons by virtue of § 801.2(d)(2)(iii). The acquisition of the minority holdings of entities within each are therefore potential secondary acquisitions by the other.

(c) Where the primary acquisition is—

(1) a cash tender offer, the waiting period procedures established for cash tender offers pursuant to sections 7A(a) and 7A(e) of the act shall be applicable to both the primary acquisition and the secondary acquisition; (2) a non-cash tender offer, the waiting period procedures established for tender offers pursuant to section 7A(e)(2) of the act shall be applicable to both the primary acquisition and the secondary acquisition.

5. Section 801.33: Acceptance for Payment Is the Consummation of an Acquisition

New § 801.33 states that the acceptance for payment of voting securities tendered in a tender offer is the consummation of an acquisition under the Act. The term "acceptance for payment" denotes the final stage in a tender offer. At this point, the offeror decides whether to accept any, some, or all of the tendered shares and obtains an unconditional right to the accepted shares while becoming legally committed to pay the tendering shareholders for them. When a tender offer is of a reportable size and the offer ends during the waiting period, it might appear that the offeror could accept some or all tendered shares for payment without violating the Act on the premise that the acquisition would not be consummated if the shares were left in the depository until the waiting period ends or is terminated. By stating that acceptance for payment is the consummation of an acquisition, the new rule makes clear that the offeror cannot, either during or after expiration of the offer, accept for payment shares which will trigger the requirements of the Act unless the reporting and waiting period requirements have already been complied with.

The offeror may, of course, accept any tendered shares for payment, without complying with the Act, so long as these shares, when added to its prior holdings, do not reach or exceed a new reporting threshold. (See § 801.1(h).) As pointed out by comment 6, the offeror may also accept shares for payment, the acquisition of which is exempt under the Act or these rules.

Section 801.33 is added to read as follows:

§ 801.33 Consummation of an acquisition by acceptance of tendered shares of payment.

The acceptance for payment of any shares tendered in a tender offer is the consummation of an acquisition of those shares within the meaning of the act.

6. Section 801.40: Determination of the Assets of a Joint Venture or Other Corporation for the Purpose of Applying Certain Exemptions

Amended § 801.40(c) clarifies the application of certain exemptions to the formation of a joint venture or other new corporation. Section 801.40 establishes the manner in which the reporting requirements of the Act will be applied to the formation of a joint venture or other corporation. This section analyzes the transaction by which a joint venture or other corporation is formed as acquisitions of the voting securities of the new corporation by two or more contributors. To be reportable, the acquisition by a particular contributor must meet the size criteria of the Act. The assets of the joint venture or other corporation (the acquired person) for purposes of the size of person test are determined in accordance with a special assets test set out in § 801.40(c). This test requires the inclusion of not only those assets which would appear on a balance sheet but also assets which any person contributing to the formation of the joint venture corporation has agreed to transfer or for which agreements have been obtained by the joint venture to acquire at any time. The assets of the joint venture corporation at the time of its formation also include any amount of credit which any contributor has agreed to extend and any obligation of the joint venture corporation which any contributor has agreed to guarantee.

Three exemptions, §§ 802.20(b), 802.50(b)(1), and 802.51(b), depend for their application on a test which is similar to the size-of-person test. Section 802.20(b) exempts certain transactions in which the acquiring person would not acquire control of an issuer with annual net sales or total assets of $25 million or more. Section 802.50(b)(1) exempts an acquisition of voting securities of a foreign issuer if the issuer does not hold assets located in the United States valued at $15 million or more. Section 802.51(b) exempts an acquisition of voting securities by a foreign person if the acquisition will not confer control of an issuer with United States assets valued at $15 million or more or a United States issuer with annual net sales or total assets of $25 million or more. Amended § 801.40(c) makes explicit that its provisions are to be used in determining the assets of a joint venture or other corporation for purposes of determining whether these exemptions apply to its formation. This proposed change incorporates into the language of the rule the position already taken by the Commission in the Statement of Basis and Purpose to 1978 § 802.20, which says that § 801.40(c) is used to apply the minimum dollar value exemption in these contexts. See 43 FR 33491.

Comment 5 suggests that the language of the proposed change is too broad and, as a result, could produce undesirable consequences. In particular, Section 802.50(b)(1) exempts acquisitions by a United States person of voting securities of a foreign issuer which does not hold assets located in the United States (exclusive of investment assets and the voting and non-voting securities of a person) valued at $15 million or more. The comment points out that § 801.40(c) as amended could lead to the conclusion that the formation of a foreign joint venture corporation is reportable if it has a loan guarantee by a United States contributor and this is its only contact with United States commerce. This result follows because the loan guarantee is an asset of the joint venture corporation according to § 801.40(c) and is arguably located in the United States.

This problem arises because commitments of credit and loan guarantees are counted as assets only in the special circumstances of the formation of a new joint venture corporation. They would not ordinarily appear as assets on a person's balance sheet, and so would not affect the applicability of the exemptions in §§ 802.50 and 802.51. While loan commitments and loan guarantees are important for determining the size of the newly formed corporation, they are not relevant to that corporation's nexus with United States commerce, which is a significant element of the exemptions provided in §§ 802.50 and 802.51. The Commission has therefore amended §§ 802.50 and 802.51 to eliminate loan commitments and loan guarantees from the assets to be included in applying those exemptions. These changes are set forth in item 10 below, with other changes in §§ 802.50 and 802.51.

Section 801.40 is amended by revising paragraph (c) to read as follows:

§ 801.40 Formation of a joint venture or other corporation.

* * * * *

(c) For purposes of paragraph (b) of this section and determining whether any exemptions provided by the act and these rules apply to its formation, the assets of the joint venture or other corporation shall include:

(1) All assets which any person contributing to the formation of the joint venture or other corporation has agreed to transfer or for which agreements have been secured for the joint venture or other corporation to obtain at any time, whether or not such person is subject to the requirements of the act; and

(2) Any amount of credit or any obligations of the joint venture or other corporation which any person contributing to the formation has agreed to extend or guarantee, at any time.

* * * * *

7. Section 802.6 Exemption for Transactions Requiring Approval by the Civil Aeronautics Board

Certain transactions involving the acquisition or consolidation of control of air carriers or persons substantially engaged in the business of aeronuatics require approval by the Civil Aeronautics Board ("CAB") prior to consummation. 49 U.S.C. 1378. New § 802.6(b) would provide a partial exemption for these acquisitions, since the enforcement agencies can evaluate the aeronautical aspects of these transactions in proceedings before the CAB. The Justice Department has authority to intervene in cases before the CAB and may also take other legal action independent of the proceedings before the Board. While the Commission does not have independent jurisdiction over regulated air carriers, it is also authorized to intervene before the Board. As intervenors, both agencies can avail themselves of the discovery procedures provided by the Board's rules of practice to obtain the information necessary to perform an antitrust analysis of the aeronautical aspects of an acquisition. With respect to these aspects, therefore, the agencies do not need the waiting periods or the full reporting requirements of the Act.

New § 802.6(b) exempts those portions of CAB approved transactions involving the businesses of aeronautics or air transportation so long as the parties provide the Federal Trade Commission and the Department of Justice with copies of all information and documentary materials submitted to the CAB. In the original proposal, notice to the Commission was not required because the Commission lacks jurisdiction over regulated air carriers. However, the Commission can intervene before the CAB and present its views on the competitive significance of the proposed merger. Further, the Commission has a statutory obligation to administer the premerger notification program and to monitor compliance with the Act. These responsibilities cannot be carried out adequately unless the Commission receives filings for all transactions required to be reported under the Act. Since the burden of supplying the Commission with a duplicate filing is small, the rule has been changed to require filings with both the Assistant Attorney General and the Commission, as is required for all other filings.

Where the acquired person is involved in both aeronautic and non-aeronautic businesses the entire transaction may not be exempt if the value of the non-aeronautic business which is acquired meets the size of transaction test and the acquisition is not otherwise exempt. In particular, under new § 802.6(b)(2), if the transaction is an acquisition of assets, the non-aeronautic portion of the transaction must be reported if that portion is not exempt under the other provisions of the Act and rules. Similarly, if the transaction is an acquisition of voting securities, or is treated as such under the rules, the non-aeronautic portion of the transaction must be reported if the value of the voting securities exceeds $15 million and if the non-aeronautic portion of the transaction is not exempt under the other provisions of the Act and rules. These limitations are necessary because the CAB has jurisdiction over only that part of the transaction involving air transportation or aeronautics. The antitrust agencies must still review the non-aeronautic part of the transaction if it is not otherwise exempt.

As originally porposed, new § 802.6(b) provided no exemption at all for transactions involving both aeronautic and non-aeronautic businesses if both parties to the transaction had non-aeronautic sales or revenues greater than $10 million. Comment 3 suggests that the $10 million threshold for non-aeronautic businesses is too low, since, according to the comment, a competitive overlap this small is insignificant for substantive antitrust purposes. The comment recommends that the proposed rule simply follow the approach taken in the other exemptions in the rules. While the Commission does not believe that a competitive overlap of this size is generally insignificant, the Commission agrees this exemption should parallel the other exemptions in the rules. Accordingly, the Commission has restyled the rule so that the non-aeronautic part of the transaction will essentially be treated as a separate acquisition, with all existing exemptions applicable to that part of the transaction.

To accomplish this, the rule has been divided into two subsections—(b)(1) and (b)(2)—and subsection (b)(1) has been added to the exemptions listed in § 801.15(a)(2).

Subsection (b)(1) generally retains the language of the original proposal. Thus, subject to the provisions of subsection (b)(2), if a merger is subject to CAB approval it is exempt if copies of all information and documentary material filed with the CAB are contemporaneously filed with both agencies.

Subsection (b)(2) treats mergers involving air carriers with one or more non-aeronautics businesses differently than the original proposal. Under new subsection (b)(2), the acquired person's non-aeronautics business or businesses are treated as assets to be purchased by the acquiring person. If the purchase of these assets is not exempt under some other provision of the rules it must be reported. Where the transaction is structured as a merger, consolidation or acquisition of voting securities the parties must still treat the acquisition of the acquired person's non-aeronautic business or businesses as an acquisition of assets. To determine the value of the assets to be acquired see § 801.10(b). Since all acquisitions of non-aeronautic businesses are deemed acquisitions of assets, the aggregation rule set forth in §801.13(b) will apply to successive acquisitions between the same acquiring and acquired persons. For the same reason, the rule for aggregating acquisitions of voting securities and acquisitions of assets set forth in § 801.14 would not apply.

Where a transaction requiring CAB approval is an acquisition of voting securities, or is treated as such under the rules, new § 802.6(b)(2)(ii) eliminates any reporting obligation with respect to the non-aeronautic part of the transaction if the value of the voting securities acquired is less than $15 million. Conversely, if the acquiring person will hold voting securities of the acquired person valued at $15 million or more, § 802.6(b)(2)(ii) requires the acquiring person to treat the entire non-aeronautic business or businesses of the acquired issuer (and all entities it controls) as assets held as a result of the acquisition. The acquisition will then be reportable (assuming no other exemption applies) if the non-aeronautic business or businesses acquired are valued at $15 million or more.

Comment 6 states that the CAB has no jurisdiction over acquisitions of less than 10% of the voting securities of a person engaged in aeronautics and air-transportation. It is thus possible for an acquisition of less than 10% to be subject to the reporting and waiting period requirements of the Act, while a larger acquisition would be exempt. The comment finds this result anomalous and proposes an exemption for acquisitions of less than 10% of such a person. The Commission believes that such an exemption would be inappropriate. The new exemption in § 802.6(b) for CAB-reviewed acquisitions is justified by the fact that both the CAB and the antitrust agencies can review the antitrust implications of such acquisitions without premerger filings. To exempt acquisitions not so reviewed and not covered by any other exemptions would be contrary to the purposes of the Act.

Transactions subject to new § 802.6(b) should be reported to the antitrust agencies as follows. If some or all of the transaction is exempt under § 802.6(b)(1), and no part of the transaction is reportable because of § 802.6(b)(2), then to secure the exemption under §802.6(b)(1), all copies of the materials filed with the CAB must be contemporaneously filed with both antitrust agencies. If part of the transaction is exempt under § 802.6(b)(1), but part must be reported because of § 802.6(b)(2), then parties must still provide copies of all information and documentary material filed with the CAB. In addition, however, under §803.2(c)(2) they may respond to certain parts of the Form (items 5, 7, 8 and 9 and the appendix) by providing information only with respect to their non-aeronautic business or businesses.

Existing § 802.6 has been redesignated as §802.6(a) and new § 802.6(b) and an example following paragraph (b) have been added as follows. In addition, in § 802.53 the reference to "§ 802.6" is changed to read "§ 802.6(a) and § 801.15 is amended by revising paragraph (a)(2) to read as follows:

§ 802.6 Federal agency approval.

* * * * *

(b) (1) Except as provided in § 802.6(b)(2), any transaction which requires approval by the Civil Aeronautics Board prior to consummation, pursuant to section 408 of the Federal Aviation Act, 49 U.S.C. 1378, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if copies of all information and documentary material filed with the Civil Aeronautics Board are contemporaneously filed with the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General.

(2) The following will be considered assets held as a result of an acquisition requiring approval by the Civil Aeronautics Board pursuant to section 408 of the Federal Aviation Act, and such assets will not be exempt under § 802.6(b)(1):

(i) if the transaction is an acquisition of assets, the assets which are engaged in a business or businesses other than aeronautics or air transportation as defined in section 101 of the Federal Aviation Act, 49 U.S.C. 1301;

(ii) if the transaction is an acquisition of voting securities, or is treated under the rules as an acquisition of voting securities, and the acquiring person will, as a result of the acquisition, hold voting securities of the acquired person valued in excess of $15 million, the business of businesses of the acquired issuer (and all entities which it controls) which are not engaged in aeronautics or air transportation as defined in section 101 of the Federal Aviation Act, 49 U.S.C. 1301.

Example: Assume that A (an entity included within person "A") proposes to acquire voting securities of B (an entity included within person "B") for $100 million. A and B are both air carriers who meet the size-of-person test, but B also owns a commercial data processing business located in the United States with a value of $30 million. Assume that this transaction requires CAB approval under 49 U.S.C. 1378. Since the acquired person has a business other than aeronautics or air transportation, the parties must report under § 802.6(b)(2) because the parties meet the size-of-person test, no other exemption applies to the acquisition of the data processing business, and the acquisition of the non-aeronautic business is deemed to be an acquisition of assets valued at $30 million.

§ 801.15 Aggregation of voting securities and assets the acquisition of which was exempt.

* * * * *

(a) * * *

(2) Sections 802.6(b)(1), 802.8, 802.31, 802.50(a)(1), 802.51(a), 802.52, 802.53, 802.63, and 802.70;

* * * * *

8. Section 802.8: Exemption for Acquisitions Involving Insured Banks or Other Financial Institutions

New § 802.8(b) exempts acquisitions subject to the approval of federal regulatory agencies pursuant to the Change in Bank Control Act and the Change in Savings and Loan Control Act if copies of all information and documentary material filed with the regulatory agency are filed with the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General at least 30 days prior to consummation of the transaction.

Section 7A(c)(7) of the Act completely exempts from reporting and waiting period requirements "transactions which require agency approval under section 18(c) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1828(c)), or section 3 of the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956 (12 U.S.C. 1842)." Subsequent to passage of the Act and the promulgation of the original rules, Congress passed the Financial Institutions Regulatory and Interest Rate Control Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95–630, 92 Stat. 3683, Titles VI and VII, which are known respectively as the Change in Bank Control Act and the Change in Savings and Loan Control Act. These Acts apply to other transactions involving regulated financial institutions and thus broaden the approval requirements imposed on banks and savings and loan holding companies by the statutes cited in section 7A(c)(7). Under these Acts, *all persons* contemplating acquisitions of banks or savings and loans must now notify the appropriate regulatory agency 60 days prior to consummation and provide it with specified information. *See* 12 U.S.C. 1817(j)(6); 12 U.S.C. 1730(q)(6).

The exemption provided for this broader category of transactions by § 802.8(b) is a qualified one, however, patterned after the exemption provided in section 7A(c)(8). As originally proposed, it would have allowed the submission of an index of documents in lieu of copies of all documents, as permitted by § 802.6. Experience with procedures under the new regulatory statutes covered by § 802.8(b), however, has shown that the appropriate regulatory agency cannot always forward the material submitted quickly enough to the Department of Justice to allow adequate opportunity for review. Therefore, the new rule does not permit an index to be submitted in lieu of copies. In addition, the rule as proposed would have required parties to file copies of documents with the Department of Justice only. No notice to the Commission was required because the Commission lacks jurisdiction over banks and savings and loan associations. The Commission, however, has a statutory obligation to administer the premerger notification program and to monitor compliance with the Act. These responsibilities cannot be carried out adequately unless the Commission receives filings for all transactions required to be reported under the Act. Since the burden of supplying a duplicate filing to the Commission is small, the rule has been changed to require filings with both the Assistant Attorney General and the Commission, as is required for all other filings.

New § 802.8(b)(2) exempts a covered acquisition from all requirements of the Act, including the filing requirements, if the appropriate regulatory agency finds that its approval is necessary to prevent the failure of one of the financial institutions involved. This provision is designed to cover situations in which the approving agency must act quickly to prevent the collapse of a bank or other institution, and mirrors a provision in 1978 § 802.8 (redesignated § 802.8(a)).

Section 802.8 is redesignated § 802.8 (a) and paragraph (b) is added to read as follows:

§ 802.8 Certain supervisory acquisitions.

* * * * *

(b)(1) A merger, consolidation, purchase of assets, or acquisition which requires agency approval under 12 U.S.C. 1817(j) or 12 U.S.C. 1730(q) shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if copies of all information and documentary materials filed with any such agency are contemporaneously filed with the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General at least 30 days prior to consummation of the proposed acquisition.

(2) A transaction described in paragraph (b)(1) of this section shall be exempt from the requirements of the act, including specifically the filing requirement, if the agency whose approval is required finds that approval of such transaction is necessary to prevent the probable failure of one of the institutions involved.

9. Section 802.42: Partial Exemption for Acquisitions in Connection With the Formation of Certain Joint Ventures or Other Corporations

New § 802.42 partially exempts contributors to the formation of joint venture corporations in cases where other contributors are entirely exempt under section 7A(c)(8) of the Act. Under § 801.40 of the rules, the formation of a joint venture or other corporation is analyzed as an acquisition of the voting securities of the newly-formed corporation by each contributor, and each contributor must determine whether its acquistion is reportable under the Act. In the case of the formation of a joint venture corporation in which one participant is exempt under section 7A(c)(8) but another participant is not, the non-exempt participant was required to file under the 1978 rules if its acquisition of the voting securities of the joint venture corporation met the size criteria of the Act and was not otherwise exempt. Since contributors exempted by section 7A(c)(8) submit information and documents relating to the formation of a joint venture corporation to the enforcement agencies, the Commission has determined that other participants need not be required to make an initial premerger notification filing.

This exemption is limited to the filing of a Notification and Report Form. In addition, in lieu of the Form, § 802.42(a) requires the party to submit an affidavit claiming this exemption and attesting to a good faith intention of going forward with the transaction. Section 802.42(b) states that the party remains subject to all other provisions of the Act and the rules. The submission of the affidavit thus initiates a 30-day waiting period. During this period, the Commission or the Assistant Attorney General may issue a request for additional information or documentary material to any non-exempt party to the acquisition, and such a request will extend the waiting period until 20 days after a response is received.

Comment 2 expresses a concern that the exemption from filing created by § 802.42 may negate the exemption in § 802.41 for the joint venture or other corporation at the time of its formation. If the exemption in § 802.41 were conditioned on filing being made by one or more contributors to the formation of the joint venture corporation, an exemption for contributors might imply a filing obligation for the joint venture corporation. The exemption for the joint venture or other corporation at the time of its formation is not so conditioned, however, and is unaffected by whether or not any of the contributors are subject to a filing requirement.

Section 802.42 is added to read as follows:

§ 802.42 Partial exemption for acquisitions in connection with the formation of certain joint ventures or other corporations.

(a) Whenever one or more of the contributors in the formation of a joint venture or other corporation which otherwise would be subject to the requirements of the act by reason of § 801.40 are exempt from these requirements under section 7A(c)(8), any other contributor in the formation which is subject to the act and not exempt under section 7A(c)(8) need not file a Notification and Report Form, provided that no less than 30 days prior to the date of consummation any such contributor claiming this exemption has submitted an affidavit to the Federal Trade Commission and to the Assistant Attorney General stating its good faith intention to make the proposed acquisition and asserting the applicability of this exemption.

(b) Persons relieved of the requirement to file a Notification and Report Form pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section remain subject to all other provisions of the act and these rules.

10. Sections 802.50 and 802.51: Acquisitions of and by Foreign Persons

Two changes have been made in §§ 802.50 and 802.51 which exempt, respectively, certain acquisitions of and by foreign persons. First, the minimum amount of contact with United States commerce necessary for a transaction to be reportable has been raised. These amounts now coincide with those in amended § 802.20. See 44 FR 60781 (November 21, 1979). Specifically, § 802.50(a) now exempts acquisitions by a United States person of foreign assets unless sales in or into the United States of $25 million or more are attributable to such assets. New § 802.50(b) exempts acquisitions by a United States person of a foreign issuer unless the foreign issuer (or an entity controlled by it) holds assets located in the United States with an aggregate book value of $15 million or more, or had sales in or into the United States of $25 million or more in its most recent fiscal year. Amended § 802.51(b) exempts an acquisition by a foreign person of a foreign issuer which does not confer control of an issuer with assets located in the United States with an aggregate book value of $15 million or more, or confer control of a United States issuer with annual net sales or total assets of $25 million or more. Finally, new § 802.51(c) exempts acquisitions by a foreign person of assets located in the United States valued at less than $15 million. Three of the examples to §§ 802.50 and 802.51 have been changed to reflect these new levels.

The second change has been to amend §§ 802.51 (b)(1) and (d) to exclude from the determination of the dollar amount of assets located in the United States, in addition to "investment assets," the value of any voting or nonvoting securities of another person held by the acquired person. The 1978 § 802.50(b) excluded from the value of assets located in the United States the value of "investment assets and voting or nonvoting securities of another person" but 1978 § 802.51 referred only to investment assets. Investment assets are defined in § 801.1(i)(2) of the rules as "cash, deposits in financial institutions, other money market instruments, and instruments evidencing government obligations." The Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 802.50 states that the purpose of disregarding these assets is "[t]o exclude assets that do not reflect a substantial business presence in the United States and generally have little competitive significance." 43 FR 33497 (July 31, 1978). Since this rationale applies equally to acquisitions by foreign persons, the provisions of § 802.51 have been made to coincide with those of § 802.50.

In determining whether an acquisition is exempt under § 802.51(c), one need not include the value of any voting or nonvoting securities of another person which are to be acquired because § 801.21(b) must be applied in the determination of the value of such assets. That section excludes such securities from the determination of the value of assets when acquired. Section 802.51(c) has not, therefore, been amended, since it is already consistent with § 802.50(b)(1).

Loan commitments and loan guarantees counted among the assets of a newly-formed joint venture corporation pursuant to § 801.40(c)(2), like investment assets and securities of another person, do not reflect a substantial business presence or competitive significance in the United States. The changes to § 801.40(c) make clear that the assets of a joint venture corporation as determined in accordance with that section are to be used for purposes of applying exemptions provided by the rules including §§ 802.50 and 802.51. Comment 5 points out that the formation of a foreign joint venture with no assets in the United States other than a loan guarantee by a United States corporation would not be exempt under the proposed language of §§ 801.40(c) and 802.51(b), although this result is clearly unintended and undesirable. The Commission has therefore added to the kinds of assets to be excluded when applying §§ 802.50(b)(1), 802.51(b)(2), and 802.51(d), "assets included pursuant to § 801.40(c)(2)."

Two comments address the raising of the reporting floor in §§ 802.50 and 802.51. Comment 3 asserts that the increases are far too small. The comment argues that considerations of comity are particularly important and that foreign governments are especially resentful of the intrusion of United States antitrust law into predominantly foreign transactions. The comment suggests that the minimum threshold be at least $75 million. The Commission does not agree with this suggestion. The present changes in §§ 802.50 and 802.51 are designed to make the reporting floor for transactions involving foreign persons coincide with those for transactions between United States persons as formulated in the minimum dollar value exemption of § 802.20. This change is justified by the Commission's determination when § 802.20 was amended that transactions with less impact on United States commerce are unlikely to violate the antitrust laws. If additional experience shows that transactions with still greater effects on commerce are unlikely to violate the antitrust laws, these thresholds can be raised again.

Comment 6 contends that these changes have introduced a contradiction into § 802.51(b). The comment cites the example of an acquisition by a foreign person of another foreign person having one United States subsidiary all of whose assets are located in the United States and are valued at $20 million and which had $20 million in sales. The acquiring person is acquiring control of an issuer which holds assets located in the United States valued at more than $15 million, and the comment contends that according to § 802.51(b)(1) the transaction is reportable. But, since the acquiring person is gaining control of a United States issuer with less than $25 million in annual net sales and total assets, § 802.51(b)(2) makes it exempt. This comment does not take into consideration the precise wording of §§ 802.50 and 802.51. The provisions of these sections are stated in the alternative. If any one (or more) of the paragraphs is satisfied, the transaction is exempt. See Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 802.51, 43 FR 33498 (July 31, 1978). There is thus no contradiction in new § 802.51(b); since § 802.51(b)(2) is satisfied, the transaction is exempt.

Section 802.50 is amended by revising paragraphs (a)(2), (b)(1), and (b)(2, example 2 which follows paragraph (a), and the example which follows paragraph (b) and § 802.51 is amended by revising paragraphs (b)(1), (b)(2), (c), and (d) and example 2 which follows paragraph (d) to read as follows:

§ 802.50 Acquisitions of foreign assets or of voting securities of a foreign issuer by United States persons.

(a) *Assets.* * * *

* * * * *

(2) The acquisition of assets located outside the United States, to which sales in or into the United States are attributable, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act unless as a result of the acquisition the acquiring person would hold assets of the acquired person to which such sales aggregating $25 million or more during the acquired person's most recent fiscal year were attributable.

Examples: * * *

2. Sixty days after the transaction in example 1, "A" proposes to sell to "B" a second manufacturing plant located abroad: sales in or into the United States attributable to this plant totaled $20 million in the most recent fiscal year. Since "B" would be acquiring the second plant within 180 days of the first plant, both plants would be considered assets of "A" now held by "B" See § 801.13(b)(2). Since the total annual sales in or into the United States exceed $215 million, the acquisition of the second plant would not be exempt under this paragraph.

(b) *Voting Securities.* * * *

(1) Holds assets located in the United States (other than investment assets, voting or nonvoting securities of another person, and assets included pursuant to § 801.40(c)(2)) having an aggregate book value of $15 million or more; or

(2) Made aggregate sales in or into the United States of $25 million or more in its most recent fiscal year.

Example: "A," a U.S. person, is to acquire the voting securities of C, a foreign issuer. C has no assets in the United States, but made aggregate sales into the United States of $27 million in the most recent fiscal year. The transaction is not exempt under this section.

§ 802.51 Acquisitions by foreign persons.

* * * * *

(b) * * *

(1) An issuer which holds assets located in the United States (other than investment assets, voting or nonvoting securities of another person, and assets included pursuant to § 801.40(c)(2)) having an aggregate book value of $15 million or more, or

(2) A U.S. issuer with annual net sales or total assets of $25 million or more;

(c) The acquisition is of less than $15 million of assets located in the United States (other than investment assets); or

(d) The acquired person is also a foreign person, the aggregate annual sales of the acquiring and acquired persons in or into the United States are less than $110 million, and the aggregate total assets of the acquiring and acquired persons located in the United States (other than investment assets, voting or nonvoting securities of another person, and assets included pursuant to § 801.40(c)(2)) are less than $110 million.

Examples: * * *

2. In example 1, assume that "A" is acquiring "B's" stock and that included within "B" is issuer C, a U.S. issuer whose total assets are valued at $27 million. Since C's voting securities will be acquired indirectly, and since "A" thus will be acquiring control of a U.S. issuer with total assets of more than $25 million, the acquisition cannot be exempt under this section.

* * * * *

11. Section 802.70: Acquisitions Requiring the Approval of a Federal Court in a Bankruptcy Proceeding

Paragraph (b) of § 802.70 has been amended to make clear that acquisitions exempted thereunder are limited to those subject to an order and requiring prior approval in connection with actions initiated by the Commission or the Department of Justice. The Commission has made this change specifically to exclude from this exemption acquisitions subject to prior approval of a federal court because they are of, by, or from a corporation in bankruptcy. In bankruptcy proceedings, the court will generally not consider antitrust issues in deciding whether to approve an acquisition. Therefore, such acquisitions should not generally be exempted from the requirements of the Act.

No comments addressed this rule.

Section 802.70 is amended by revising paragraph (b) to read as follows:

§ 802.70 Acquisitions subject to order.

* * * * *

(b) The acquiring person or entity is subject to an order of the Federal Trade Commission or of any Federal court in an action brought by the Federal Trade Commission or the Department of Justice, requiring prior approval of such acquisition by the Federal Trade Commission, such court, or the Department of Justice, and such approval has been obtained.

12. Section 803.2: Incorporation by Reference

This new provision incorporates into the rules the circumstances under which incorporation by reference has been permitted by the staff in formal interpretations issued on April 7, 1981, and April 10, 1979. New paragraph (e) permits a person filing notification to incorporate by reference in item 4(a) of the Notification and Report Form any SEC documents submitted by that person with an earlier filing which remain current and are called for in a later filing. Of course, the person would still be required to submit any documents called for by item 4(a) that were not previously submitted. A reporting person may thus incorporate by reference a Form 10–K from a filing made six months earlier (provided that no Form 10–K has been filed more recently with the SEC) but will be required to submit any more recent Forms 10–Q or 8–K not submitted with an earlier filing. In addition, when the same parties file for a higher notification threshold, (see § 801.1(b)) no more than 90 days after having filed for a lower threshold, they may incorporate by reference any documents or information submitted with the earlier filing provided that the documents and information are the most recent available.

Comment 6 suggests that incorporation by reference also be permitted for documents called for by item 4(b) of the Notification and Report Form; that is, annual reports, annual audit reports, and regularly prepared balance sheets. The Commission has decided to adopt part of this suggestion. New paragraph (e) has been expanded to permit a person filing notification to incorporate by reference in item 4(b) of the Notification and Report Form any annual reports submitted with an earlier filing which remain current and are called for in the later filing. This expansion is feasible because the Commission has recently enlarged its record-keeping system to include annual reports. This change was made in large part because the Securities and Exchange Commission now permits companies to attach annual reports to their Form 10–K's and incorporate by reference into their Form 10–K's information contained in their annual report. As a result, many of the Form 10–K's in the Commission's files already included copies of the annual report.

Since the Commission's record-keeping system does not now include other documents called for by item 4(b), such an annual audit reports and regularly prepared balance sheets, the Commission cannot permit further incorporation by reference at this time. However, the Commission is currently exploring how additional incorporation by reference could be allowed without significantly increasing the cost or reducing the effectiveness of the premerger notification program.

Section 803.2 is amended by adding paragraph (e) to read as follows:

§ 803.2 Instructions applicable to notification and report form.

* * * * *

(e) A person filing notification may incorporate by reference only documentary materials required to be filed in response to item 4(a) of the Notification and Report Form and annual reports required to be filed in response to item 4(b), which were previously submitted with a filing by the same person and which are the most recent versions available; except that when the same parties file for a higher notification threshold no more than 90 days after having made filings with respect to a lower threshold, each party may incorporate by reference in the subsequent filing any documents or information in its earlier filing provided that the documents and information are the most recent available.

13. Section 803.3: Statement of Reasons for Noncompliance

Section 803.3, which sets forth the information which must be contained in a statement of reasons for noncompliance, has been revised to require a more detailed explanation of the filing person's noncompliance. This greater detail is necessary because past statements of noncompliance have not always provided the enforcement agencies with sufficient information to determine whether substantial compliance has been achieved. Section 7A(b)(1)(A) of the Act provides that the waiting period shall begin on the date of receipt by the Commission and the Assistant Attorney General of completed notification or, if such notification is not completed, on the date of receipt of the notification to the extent completed and a statement of the reasons for noncompliance. Section 7A(e)(2) of the Act similarly provides, with respect to a response to a request for additional information, that the waiting period shall begin to run again on the date of receipt of either a completed response or the response to the extent completed accompanied by a statement of reasons for noncompliance.

In the new rule, the introductory paragraph has been revised to emphasize that a statement of reasons for noncompliance must contain all the information relied upon to explain the noncompliance, since the information specifically requested in the rule may not provide an adequate explanation in all cases. Paragraph (a), which is unchanged from the 1978 rule, calls for an explanation of why the person is unable to respond completely. Paragraph (b) calls for an explanation of the information which would have been necessary for a complete response. In the new rule, persons are required to specify which documents or classes of documents would have provided the requested information. Paragraph (c) is intended to enable the enforcement agencies to evaluate the adequacy of the search for responsive information or documents. The reporting person is required to identify persons having the required information, to describe efforts to obtain it and list the names of persons who searched for such information and, if no effort was made, to explain why. Finally, paragraph (d) specifies the information which must be provided where noncompliance is based on a claim of privilege.

Comment 1 objects to the requirement in revised § 803.3(c) that the identity of persons who searched for responsive documents be disclosed on the grounds that such persons would often be legal counsel and disclosure of their names would violate the "work product" exemption from discovery. The Commission believes that this provision of the rule is necessary to allow the investigative staff to evaluate the adequacy of a search for documents. Since the rule does not require the disclosure of any information relating to an attorney's legal analysis or strategy in pending litigation, this requirement presents no threat to the rights the "work product" exemption is intended to protect.

Section 803.3 is revised to read as follows:

§ 803.3 Statement of reasons for noncompliance.

A complete response shall be supplied to each item on the Notification and Report Form and to any request for additional information pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20. Whenever the person filing notification is unable to supply a complete response, that person shall provide, for each item for which less than a complete response has been supplied, a statement of reasons for noncompliance. The statement of reasons for noncompliance shall contain all information upon which a person relies in explanation of its noncompliance and shall include at least the following:

(a) Why the person is unable to supply a complete response;

(b) What information, and what specific documents or categories of documents, would have been required for a complete response;

(c) Who, if anyone, has the required information, and specific documents or categories of documents; and a description of all efforts made to obtain such information and documents, including the names of persons who searched for required information and documents, and where the search was conducted. If no such efforts were made, provide an explanation of the reasons why, and a description of all efforts necessary to obtain required information and documents;

(d) Where noncompliance is based on a claim of privilege, a statement of the claim of privilege and all facts relied on in support thereof, including the identity of each document, its author, addressee, date, subject matter, all recipients of the original and of any copies, its present location, and who has control of it.

14. Section 803.5: Affidavits Submitted With the Notification and Report Form

Two revisions have been made in § 803.5 which sets forth the requirements for the affidavits that must be submitted with the Notification and Report Form. First, new paragraph (3) has been added to § 803.5(a) requiring acquiring persons in transactions covered by § 801.30 to include in their premerger notification filing a copy of the notice served on the acquired person pursuant to § 803.5(a)(1).

Second, a requirement that the parties attest to a good faith intention to consummate the transaction has been included in paragraph (b) of § 805.5, which applies to transactions not covered by § 801.30. Such a requirement already appears in paragraph (a) and has been inserted here to increase the enforcement agencies' assurance that the intention to complete the transaction is current as of the time of filing.

Comment 3 asserts that the new requirement that a copy of the notice transmitted to the acquired person be attached to the acquiring person's affidavit will not solve the problem of assuring that the acquired person receives actual notice of the proposed acquisition. The comment suggests instead that the acquiring person be charged with the responsibility of delivering the notice to the chief executive officer of the acquired person. While the proposal may have merit, the Commission has not had any indications that acquired persons are not actually receiving the notice required. The suggestion was therefore not pursued. The purpose of requiring that a copy of the notice be submitted with the acquiring person's filing is not to assure that the acquired person has received the notice but to enable the enforcement agencies to determine whether the substance of the notice is adequate under the rules.

Comment 3 also argues that it is unnecessary to require the parties to a consensual transaction to attest to a good faith intention to consummate the transaction, since a lack of good faith is never the reason for the failure of such a transaction to be completed. The Commission believes, however, that the additional assurance that at the time of filing the parties intend to go through with the transaction justifies the minimal additional effort to comply with this requirement.

Section 803.5 is amended by adding paragraph (a)(3) and by revising paragraph (b) to read as follows:

§ 803.5 Affidavits required.

(a) * * *

(3) The affidavit required by this paragraph must have attached to it a copy of the written notice received by the acquired person pursuant to paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(b) *Non-section 801.30 acquisitions.* For acquisitions to which § 801.30 does not apply, the notification required by the act shall contain an affidavit, attached to the front of the notification, attesting that a contract, agreement in principle or letter of intent to merge or acquire has been executed, and further attesting to the good faith intention of the person filing notification to complete the transaction.

15. Section 803.8: English Versions of Foreign Language Documents

New § 803.8 sets out the circumstances in which persons submitting foreign language documents are required to provide the same information in English as well. Paragraph 803.8(a) requires that, whenever an "English language version" of any foreign language information or documentary material exists at the time of submission of the Notification and Report Form both the foreign and English language versions shall be submitted. An English language version is an English language outline, summary, extract, or verbatim translation of a foreign language document. Paragraph § 803.8(b) requires that persons submitting foreign language documents or information in response to a request for additional information or documentary material provide verbatim English translations or existing English language versions or both to the extent specified in the request.

Four comments (1, 2, 3, and 6) addressed the new rule. None criticized the requirement that existing English versions of foreign-language documents be submitted with the initial filing. All objected to the requirement that verbatim translations be submitted as required by a request for additional information. Comments 1, 2, and 6 suggest that the provision conflicts with the intent of Congress and gives the enforcement agencies what amounts to an "automatic stay" of acquisitions involving foreign persons. Several comments expressed concern that the enforcement agencies would automatically require translation of all documents requested from a foreign person, unduly delaying consummation. In addition, three comments asserted that the power to impose such a burden is beyond the agencies' authority and will have a detrimental effect on foreign investment in this country.

Two comments suggest alternatives. Comment 1 proposes that the agencies be able to require translations only of documents which would be called for by item 4(c) of the Form, that is, documents analyzing the proposed acquisition in terms of markets and competition. Comment 3 suggests two approaches. One is to allow the recipient of the request to translate selected documents after foreign language versions have been submitted and the waiting period has resumed. Alternatively, the comment proposes that the filing of English summaries should start the waiting period, but that it would be suspended after ten days unless translations of selected documents were submitted.

The Commission does not agree that a request for translations of foreign language documents is beyond the scope of the information-gathering authority granted by Congress when it created the premerger review program. The enforcement agencies are not limited to requesting existing documents and previously compiled information, but are authorized to "require the submission of additional information or documentary material relevant to the proposed acquisition . . . ." 15 U.S.C. 18a(e)(1). Congress could have exempted transactions involving foreign firms from the requirements of the Act or placed limitations on the enforcement agencies' powers to investigate them. That Congress did not do so is a clear indication that it intended the agencies to scrutinize these transactions as thoroughly as any others. This obligation to investigate acquisitions with foreign participants requires that the agencies have access to the same information about the foreign person as they have about a United States person. While the Commission recognizes the delay and expense that may be imposed by a request for English language translations, the tight statutory time limits during which the enforcement agencies must assess the competitive effects of a transaction and take any necessary enforcement action do not include any special extensions for translating essential documents. The only way to assure that the agencies will have the full time period mandated by Congress to analyze the antitrust significance of a transaction is to require that the information necessary be provided in a form that is immediately usable.

The alternatives proposed in the comments appear unsatisfactory for several reasons. First, the suggestion that authority to require translations be limited to particular categories of documents or information could often deprive the enforcement agencies of the information necessary to evaluate the competitive effects of a particular acquisition. The suggestion that the waiting period resume when the foreign language documents are received, with the parties submitting selected translations while the time is running, would prevent the enforcement agencies from using the full, mandated time period to review the information and make a decision about the need for enforcement action. Finally, the proposal to suspend the waiting period a second time until selected verbatim translations are provided would still significantly shorten the agencies' time to review necessary information. In addition, this proposal is inconsistent with the time schedules provided by the Act, and may be beyond the Commission's authority.

While it does not appear possible to limit translations to a specific category of documents or information in all transactions, or to create a special waiting period based on the submission of English language summaries and descriptions of documents, the enforcement agencies have often found it possible to limit requests for translations in particular cases. Two approaches are available. First, representatives of the parties are encouraged to meet with investigating attorneys at the Department of Justice or the Commission before a request for additional information is prepared. Such meetings often provide information helpful in narrowing the scope of a request, limiting the categories of documents for which verbatim translations are required, and identifying categories of documents for which English language summaries are adequate. Even after a request for additional information has been delivered, the investigating attorneys at both enforcement agencies have authority to reduce or modify specifications or requirements for translation in particular cases. Particularly where a person preparing a response to a request believes that a large number of documents are responsive but appear unrelated to the antitrust analysis, the parties should contact the requesting agency to discuss the actual nature of the responsive documents, what points the investigating attorneys anticipated would be elucidated by the documents requested, and whether some or all of the responsive documents should be exempted entirely or not translated.

The enforcement agencies remain aware of the burden placed on recipients of requests for additional information by the requirement that they provide verbatim translations, and will continue to be sensitive to minimizing this burden when such requests are issued. Translations of foreign language documents will be required to the least extent consistent with the agencies' fulfilling their law enforcement obligations. The determination of when translations are necessary must be made on a case-by-case basis, however, and any general limitation on when translation can be required would be inconsistent with the goals of the Act.

Section 803.8 is added to read as follows:

§ 803.8 Foreign language documents.

(a) Whenever at the time of filing a Notification and Report Form there is an English language outline, summary, extract or verbatim translation of any information or of all or portions of any documentary materials in a foreign language required to be submitted by the act or these rules, all such English language versions shall be filed along with the foreign language information or materials.

(b) Documentary materials or information in a foreign language required to be submitted in responses to a request for additional information or documentary material shall be submitted with verbatim English language translations, or all existing English language versions, or both, as specified in such request.

16. Section 803.20(a): Response to Second Requests: Where Submitted

Section 803.20 establishes procedures governing requests for additional information or documentary material ("second requests") by the antitrust enforcement agencies. These requests have the effect of extending the waiting period. Consummation of the proposed acquisition normally cannot occur until 20 days (10 days in the case of a cash tender offer) after completed responses to the request(s) are received by the requesting agency. Section 803.20(a)(2) originally provided that responses to second requests were returnable "at the office designated in § 803.10(c)"—that is, at the headquarters offices of the antitrust enforcement agencies in Washington, D.C. To make procedures for return of responses more flexible, this provision has been revised to make responses to second requests returnable at the location designated in the request or, if no location is designated, at the offices designated in § 803.10(c).

No comments addressed this revision.

Section 803.20 is amended by revising paragraph (a)(2) to read as follows:

§ 803.20 Requests for additional information or documentary material.

(a) * * *

(2) All the information and documentary material required to be submitted pursuant to a request under paragraph (a)(1) of this section shall be supplied to the Commission or to the Assistant Attorney General, whichever made such request, at such location as may be designated in the request, or, if no such location is designated, at the office designated in § 803.10(c). If such request is not fully complied with, a statement of reasons for noncompliance pursuant to § 803.3 shall be provided for each item or portion of such request which is not full complied with.

* * * * *

17. Section 803.20(b): Additional Notification Procedures Regarding Issuance of Second Requests

Section 803.20(b)(2) of the rules specifies when a second request shall be effective. Previously, a second request in writing was effective upon receipt or upon communication (*i.e.*, reading the full text) either in person or by telephone, where such communication was followed by written confirmation mailed within the waiting period. The Commission's experience has been that parties receiving second requests usually prefer to waive communication by telephone and to send an agent to obtain a written copy of it. To provide for this procedure in the rules, the Commission has amended § 803.20(b)(2)(ii).

The amended subsection specifies that a request is effective when notice of its issuance is given to the person to whom the request is issued, provided that written confirmation (*i.e.*, a copy) of the request is mailed to that person before the expiration of the initial waiting period. Such notice may be given by telephone or in person. To assure that a party to whom a second request is issued learns of the contents of the request as soon as possible, the rule also provides that, upon request of the individual receiving notice, the entire contents of the second request will be read.

Section 803.20(b)(2)(ii) requires that persons filing notification keep a designated individual available during normal business hours for purposes of receiving requests for clarification or amplification, requests for additional information or documentary material, or notice of the issuance of such requests. New subsection (iii) has been added to address a particular problem which arises when the individual so designated is not located in this country. The new subsection requires that when a reporting person designates an individual located outside the United States pursuant to subsection (ii), at least one individual located within the United States and accessible by telephone also be designated for the limited purpose of receiving notice of the issuance of a request for additional information or documentary material. This change is designed to facilitate communications between the requesting agency and the receipeient of the request.

Comment 6 urges the Commission to make two additional changes in the procedures governing the issuance of second requests. First, to give the recipient knowledge of the contents of the request as soon as possible, the comment suggests requiring the issuing agency to have a written copy of the request available at its Washington, D.C., office on the day the request is issued to be picked up by the recipient. Second, when the last day of the waiting period falls on a holiday or weekend the comment proposes that notice of a request be required to be given by close of business (*i.e.*, 5:00 p.m. Washington, D.C., time) on the last business day prior to the expiration of the waiting period.

The Commission has decided not to adopt these suggestions. In practice, the staffs of the enforcement agencies when issuing second requests normally employ the procedures which Comment 6 recommends. A written copy of the request is always made available to the recipient at the Washington, D.C., office of the requesting agency so that the recipient may obtain it as quickly and conveniently as possible. Regarding the second suggestion, the requirement to give notice of the issuance of a second request usually means that notice is given during the regular business hours of the recipient. However, the circumstances in which a second request is issued sometimes vary from this pattern. Requiring by rule that these procedures be observed could, in unusual cases, hamper the enforcement agencies in carrying out their responsibilities under the Act. Moreover, the comment gives no reason why incorporating these procedures in the rules is unnecessary.

Section 803.20 is amended by revising paragraph (b)(2)(ii) and adding paragraph (b)(2)(iii). The introductory text of paragraph (b)(2) is republished for the information of the reader.

§ 803.20 Requests for additional information or documentary material.

* * * * *

(b) * * *

(2) *When request effective.* A request for additional information or documentary material shall be effective—

* * * * *

(ii) In the case of a written request, upon notice of the issuance of such request to the person to which it is directed within the original 30-day (or, in the case of a cash tender offer, 15-day) waiting period (or, if § 802.23 applies, such other period as that section provides), provided that written confirmation of the request is mailed to the person to which the request is directed within the original 30-day (or, in the case of a cash tender offer, 15-day) waiting period (or, if § 802.23 applies, such other period as that section provides). Notice to the person to which the request is directed may be given by telephone or in person. The person filing notification shall keep a designated individual reasonably available during normal business hours throughout the waiting period through the telephone number supplied on the certification page of the Notification and Report Form. Notice of a request for additional information or documentary material need be given by telephone only to that individual or to the individual designated in accordance with subparagraph (iii) below. Upon the request of the individual receiving notice of the issuance of such a request, the full text of the request will be read. The written confirmation of the request shall be mailed to the ultimate parent entity of the person filing notification, or if another entity within the person filed notification pursuant to § 803.2(a), then to such entity.

(iii) When the individual designated in accordance with paragraph (b)(2)(ii) above is not located in the United States, the person filing notification shall designate an additional individual located within the United States to be reasonably available during normal business hours throughout the waiting period through a telephone number supplied on the certification page of the Notification and Report Form. This individual shall be designated for the limited purpose of receiving notification of the issuance of requests for additional information or documentary material in accordance with the procedure described in paragraph (b)(2)(ii) above.

* * * * *

In addition to the comments addressed above, the Commission received comments which were outside the scope of the notice of proposed rulemaking. Some of these comments proposed additional changes in the premerger notification rules. The Commission will retain these comments and consider them as it explores additional changes in the rules.

By direction of the Commission.

Emily H. Rock,

Secretary.

[FR Doc. 83-20641 Filed 7-28-83; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 6750-01-M

DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

Federal Energy Regulatory Commission

18 CFR Part 154

[Docket No. RM81-21-000; Order No. 320]

Recovery of Alaska Natural Gas Transportation System Charges

AGENCY: Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, DOE.

ACTION: Final rule.

SUMMARY: Federal Energy Regulatory Commission (Commission) is amending its rules by adding provisions establishing a cost-recovery mechanism for the shippers of Alaska natural gas through the Alaska Natural Gas Transportation System (ANGTS). The final rule establishes the conditions for a permanent tariff provision by which a shipper may flow through to its jurisdictional customers ("track") the jurisdictional portion of changes in its ANGTS charges by means of periodic rate adjustment filings less comprehensive than general rate change filings under section 4(e) of the Natural Gas Act. A shipper may also recover the jurisdictional portion of these charges through a cost-of-service tariff approved by the Commission. The rule also establishes the mechanism for shipper tracking of any charges the sponsors are permitted to impose prior to the flow of gas through the ANGTS ("pre-delivery charges").

DATES: Notice of the effective date of this rule will be published later in the **Federal Register.** This rule will be effective on the latest of the following dates: (1) If rehearing is granted, on the date on which a Commission order on rehearing becomes effective, (2) if rehearing is requested but deemed denied in accordance with 18 CFR 385.713, on the date on which it is deemed denied, (3) if rehearing is not requested, by August 29, 1983, or (4) the date on which the Commission publishes in the **Federal Register** OMB's approval under the Paperwork Reduction Act and the OMB control number.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: Jan Macpherson, Office of the General Counsel, Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, 825 North Capitol Street NE., Washington 20426; (202) 357-8033)

Issued: July 25, 1983.

I. Introduction

The Federal Energy Regulatory Commission (Commission) is amending its regulations by establishing procedures under which a shipper of Alaska natural gas may recover from its jurisdictional customers charges incurred by the shipper for the use of the Alaska Natural Gas Transportation System (ANGTS). These sections (sections 154.201 through 154.213) establish the terms and conditions for a permanent tariff provision that a shipper may propose in order to adjust its rates semiannually to "track" or flow through to its jurisdictional customers the jurisdictional portion of changes in its ANGTS charges. Alternatively, a shipper may recover the jurisdictional portion of these charges through a cost-of-service tariff approved by the Commission. Without this rule, a shipper would be required to make a general rate change filing under section 4(e) of the Natural Gas Act (NGA) every time the shipper wanted to adjust its rates to reflect any changes in its ANGTS charges; in addition, the Commission would have to institute a proceeding under section 5 of the NGA to reduce the shipper's rates to reflect decreases in the shipper's ANGTS charges. Tracking such changes through a permanent tariff provision will enable a shipper to adjust its rates by means of filings less comprehensive than section 4(e) general rate change filings. In these tracking filings, the Commission's review will extend only to the matters essential to permit a finding that the adjusted rates are "just and reasonable." The rule is designed to assure matching of a shipper's ANGTS charges and amounts collected over time to prevent over- or under-collection by the shipper.

As a prerequisite to tracking, a shipper must file a section 4(e) general rate change to establish a Base Tariff Rate, which is subject to periodic review and to which the tracking adjustments will be made. It must also file an ANGTS Charges Recovery Clause (ACR Clause) in its tariff containing provisions to implement the tracking mechanism set forth in this rule. As an alternative, the shipper may seek approval of a cost-of-service tariff. A shipper must decide every three years whether to continue to use the tracking mechanism or a cost-of-service tariff or to recover such charges through general rate change filings. A decision to discontinue tracking or a cost-of-service tariff is subject to Commission approval.

This rulemaking also establishes the procedures by which a shipper may adjust its rates to recover ANGTS charges incurred before the actual delivery of Alaska natural gas (predelivery charges), if any, to the extent that such charges are approved by the Commission or the National Energy Board of Canada (NEB) and to the extent that recovery of Canadian ANGTS charges is consistent with the President's *Findings and Proposed Waiver of Law* (October 15, 1981) (*Waiver*), approved by Joint Resoultion of Congress, S.J. Res. 115, Pub. L. 97-93, 95 Stat. 1204 (1981).

After considering the comments submitted in response to the proposed rule, the Commission finds that the availability of this tracking mechanism is in the public interest because it will facilitate financing and progress on the ANGTS and thereby assist in making available in the contiguous 48 states the large reserves of Alaskan natural gas. The tracking mechanism set forth in this rule will provide incentives for shippers to use the ANGTS and may improve the availability and terms of financing for the ANGTS while assuring a timely flow-through from a shipper to its customers of decreases in ANGTS charges as the initial investment in the ANGTS is depreciated. The Canadian Government also has found that tracking is essential for the financing of the Canadian segment. Accordingly, the Commission finds that issuance of this rule is necessary and related to the construction and intitial operation of the ANGTS within the operation of the ANGTS within the meaning of section 9 of the Alaska Natural Gas Transportation System Act (ANGTA), 15 U.S.C. 719-719O.

federal register

Friday
March 6, 1987

Part II

Federal Trade Commission

16 CFR Parts 801, 802, and 803

Premerger Notification; Reporting and Waiting Period Requirements; Final Rule and Notice of Proposed Rulemaking

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

16 CFR Parts 801, 802, and 803

Premerger Notification; Reporting and Waiting Period Requirements

AGENCY: Federal Trade Commission.

ACTION: Final rules.

SUMMARY: These rules amend the premerger notification rules, which require the parties to certain mergers or acquisitions to file reports with the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice, and to wait a specified period of time before consummating such transactions. The reporting and waiting period requirements are intended to enable these enforcement agencies to determine whether a proposed merger or acquisition might violate the antitrust laws if consummated and, when appropriate, to seek a preliminary injunction in federal court to prevent consummation. During the seven years the rules have been in effect, the Federal Trade Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General for Antitrust, has amended the premerger notification rules several times in order to improve the program's effectiveness and to lessen the burden of complying with the rules. These revisions are intended to reduce further the cost to the public of complying with the rules and to improve the program's effectiveness.

EFFECTIVE DATE: April 10, 1987.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: John M. Sipple, Jr., Senior Attorney, Premerger Notification Office, Bureau of Competition, Room 301, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580. Telephone: (202) 326–3100.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION:

Regulatory Flexibility Act

These amendments to the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification rules are largely technical or designed to reduce the burden to the public of reporting. The Commission has determined that none of the proposed rules is a major rule, as that term is defined in Executive Order 12291. The amendments will not result in: an annual effect on the economy of $100 million or more; a major increase in costs or prices for consumers, individual industries, Federal, State, or local government agencies, or geographic regions; or significant adverse effects on competition, employment, investment, productivity, innovation, or on the ability of United States-based enterprises to compete with foreign-based enterprises in the domestic market. None of the amendments expands the coverage of the premerger notification rules in a way that would affect small business. Therefore, pursuant to section 605(b) of the Administrative Procedure Act, 5 U.S.C. 605(b), as added by the Regulatory Flexibility Act, Pub. L. 96–354 (September 19, 1980), the Federal Trade Commission has certified that these rules will not have a significant economic impact on a substantial number of small entities. Section 603 of the Administrative Procedure Act, 5 U.S.C. 603, requiring a final regulatory flexibility analysis of these rules, is therefore inapplicable.

Paperwork Reduction Act

The Hart-Scott-Rodino Premerger Notification rules and report form contain information collection requirements as defined by the Paperwork Reduction Act, 44 U.S.C. 3501 *et seq.* These requirements have been reviewed and approved by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB Control No. 3084–0005). Because these amendments will affect the information collection requirements of the premerger notification program, they were submitted to OMB for review under section 3504(h) of the Paperwork Reduction Act. They were approved by OMB on September 30, 1985.

Background

Section 7A of the Clayton Act ("the act"), 15 U.S.C. 18a, as added by sections 201 and 202 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, requires persons contemplating certain acquisitions of assets or voting securities to give advance notice to the Federal Trade Commission (hereafter referred to as "the Commission") and the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice (hereafter referred to as "the Assistant Attorney General") and to wait certain designated periods before the consummation of such acquisitions. The transactions to which the advance notice requirement is applicable and the length of the waiting period required are set out respectively in subsections (a) and (b) of section 7A. This amendment to the Clayton Act does not change the standards used in determining the legality of mergers and acquisitions under the antitrust laws.

The legislative history suggests several purposes underlying the act. First, Congress clearly intended to eliminate the large "midnight merger," which is negotiated in secret and announced just before, or sometimes only after, the closing takes place. Second, Congress wanted to assure that large acquisitions were subjected to meaningful scrutiny under the antitrust laws prior to consummation. Third, Congress provided an opportunity for the Commission and the Assistant Attorney General (who are sometimes hereafter referred to collectively as the "antitrust agencies" or the "enforcement agencies") to seek a court order enjoining the completion of those transactions that the agencies deem to present significant antitrust problems. Finally, Congress sought to facilitate an effective remedy when a challenge by one of the enforcement agencies proved successful. Thus the act requires that the agencies receive prior notification of significant acquisitions, provides certain tools to facilitate a prompt, thorough investigation, and assures an opportunity to seek a preliminary injunction before the parties are legally free to complete the transaction, which eliminates the problem of unscrambling the assets after the transaction has taken place.

Subsection 7A(d)(1) of the act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d)(1), directs the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 553, to require that the notification be in such form and contain such information and documentary material as may be necessary and appropriate to determine whether the proposed transaction may, if consummated, violate the antitrust laws. Subsection 7A(d)(2) of the act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d)(2), grants the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 553, the authority: (A) To define the terms used in the act, (B) to exempt additional persons or transactions from the act's notification and waiting period requirements, and (C) to prescribe such other rules as may be necessary and appropriate to carry out the purposes of section 7A.

On December 15, 1976, the Commission issued proposed rules and a proposed Notification and Report Form ("the Form") to implement the act. This proposed rulemaking was published in the **Federal Register** of December 20, 1976, 41 FR 55488. Because of the volume of public comment, it became clear to the Commission that some substantial revisions would have to be made. On July 25, 1977, the Commission determined that additional public comment on the rules would be desirable and approved revised proposed rules and a revised proposed Notification and Report Form, which were published in the **Federal Register** of August 1, 1977, 42 FR 39040.

Additional changes were made after the close of the comment period. The Commission formally promulgated the final rules and Form and issued an accompanying Statement of Basis and Purpose on July 10, 1978. The Assistant Attorney General gave his formal concurrence on July 18, 1978. The final rules and Form and the Statement of Basis and Purpose were published in the **Federal Register** of July 31, 1978, 43 FR 33451, and became effective on September 5, 1978.

The rules are divided into three parts, which appear at 16 CFR Parts 801, 802, and 803. Part 801 defines a number of the terms used in the act and rules, and explains which acquisitions are subject to the reporting and waiting period requirements. Part 802 contains a number of exemptions from these requirements. Part 803 explains the procedures for complying with the act. The Notification and Report Form, which is completed by persons required to file notification, is an appendix to Part 803 of the rules.

Changes of a substantive nature have been made in the premerger notification rules or Form on four occasions since they were first promulgated. The first was an increase in the minimum dollar value exemption contained in § 802.20 of the rules. This amendment was proposed in the **Federal Register** of August 10, 1979, 44 FR 47099, and was published in final form in the **Federal Register** of November 21, 1979, 44 FR 60781. The second amendment replaced the requirement that certain revenue data for the year 1972 be provided in the Notification and Report Form with a requirement that comparable data be provided for the year 1977. This change was made because total revenues for the year 1977 broken down by Standard Industrial Classification (SIC) codes became available from the Bureau of the Census. The amendment appeared in the **Federal Register** of March 5, 1980, 45 FR 14205, and was effective May 3, 1980.

The third set of changes was published by the Federal Trade Commission as proposed rules changes in the **Federal Register** of July 29, 1981, 46 FR 38710. These revisions were designed to clarify and improve the effectiveness of the rules and of the Notification and Report Form as well as to reduce the burden of filing notification. Several comments on the proposed changes were received during the comment period. Final rules, which adopted some of the suggestions received during the comment period but which were substantially the same as the proposed rules, were published in the **Federal Register** on July 29, 1983, 48 FR 34427, and became effective on August 29, 1983. The fourth change, replacing the requirement to provide 1977 revenue data with a requirement to provide 1982 data on the Form, was published in the **Federal Register** on March 28, 1986, 51 FR 10368.

In addition, the Notification and Report Form, found in 16 CFR 803 (Appendix), has undergone minor revisions on two other occasions. The new versions were approved by the Office of Management and Budget on December 29, 1981, and February 23, 1983, respectively. Since that time, the current version of the Notification and Report Form has been approved by the Office of Management and Budget. The most recent approval came on September 30, 1985; it is valid for a period of three years. This form was published in 50 FR 46633 (November 12, 1985).

The current set of changes to the premerger notification rules grows out of a continuing effort by the Commission to reduce the burden of filing premerger notifications. This effort was the focus of a Notice of Request for Comments that the Commission published in the **Federal Register** on July 2, 1982, 47 FR 29182. The Request for Comments outlined four approaches to reducing the burden of the notification program: Narrowing the coverage of the rules by raising the dollar thresholds that determine which acquisitions must be reported; allowing persons filing notifications to reference information and documents filed in previous notifications, rather than requiring them to resubmit those materials; setting separate higher dollar reporting thresholds for acquisitions in some industries; and eliminating one or more of the successive reporting requirements for additional acquisitions of voting securities.

On September 24, 1985, the Commission published in the **Federal Register**, 50 FR 38742, thirteen proposed amendments accompanied by a proposed Statement of Basis and Purpose. All but two of the proposals were based on the burden reduction efforts that began in 1982. The Commission has decided to adopt nine of the proposals, to reject one proposal for budgetary reasons, and temporarily to defer action on the other three. Since one of the two proposals that do not involve burden reduction is also one of the three being deferred for later consideration, all but one of these final rules are based on the 1982 Request for Comments and related burden reduction efforts. The amendments seek to reduce the burden on filing parties by narrowing the types of acquisitions that must be reported, reducing the volume of documents or information that must be filed, and clarifying the meaning of the notification rules. The only change that did not originate from the burden reduction efforts would eliminate the reporting exemption in § 802.70(b) for acquisitions subject to the approval of the Commission or a federal court. It is intended to solve an infrequently occurring administrative problem.

The Commission has deferred final action on: The proposal to require reporting by owners of interests in "acquisition vehicles" (Proposal 1 of the September 24, 1985, proposed amendments); the proposed exemption of certain asset acquisitions, including the acquisition of current supplies, new durable goods, and some types of real estate (Proposal 5); and the proposed increase in the "controlled issuer" threshold that would have expanded the exemption for transactions valued at $15 million or less in § 802.20(b) and for certain foreign transactions described in § 802.50 and § 802.51 (Proposal 6).

The Commission has decided to adopt two approaches to narrow the coverage of the rules. Section 802.35 will exempt the acquisition of an employer's voting securities by certain employee trusts. Also, the aggregation rules of § 801.13 have been modified to reduce the number of successive asset acquisitions involving the same parties that are reportable.

In the September 24, 1985, proposed amendments, the Commission also proposed as a burden reduction measure expanding the permitted scope of incorporation by reference in response to items on the Form. Proposed rule § 803.9, which would have replaced § 803.2(e), would have expanded the ability to incorporate by reference. The implementation of this proposal would entail significant start up costs and require an ongoing commitment of resources to assure that filings could be fully reviewed within the statutory time periods. In view of the existing permission to incorporate by reference and given current budgetary stringencies, the Commission believes it is not appropriate at this time to undertake the kind of new program envisaged by the proposed rule. Although the proposal to expand incorporation by reference is not being adopted, the Commission has adopted several other proposals that have the effect of reducing the burden of filing the Notification and Report Form by both decreasing the amount of information required and narrowing the scope of the search for that information.

As noted when these amendments were proposed, the Commission has not found a basis for establishing separate reporting thresholds for different industries. However, Proposal 5, one of the three on which final action is deferred, would have established a higher threshold for, or exempted entirely, the acquisition of certain kinds of assets. The Commission is continuing to consider what kinds of asset acquisitions can receive separate treatment.

The Commission also has not proposed eliminating any of the sequential thresholds for reporting increased holdings of voting securities. The Commission continues to find that an increase in the percentage of securities held by a person may have competitive significance.

In addition to expanding reporting exemptions and reducing the information required by the Form, the Commission has also decided to reduce the burden of the notification program by adopting several amendments that clarify the meaning of the rules. These largely codify formal or informal interpretations of the Commission staff. These amendments include: A method of calculating the assets of an entity without a regularly prepared balance sheet; a method of calculating the percentage of voting securities a person holds; the requirements for giving notice to an acquired person; the time when the statutory waiting period begins for the formation of joint ventures; and a series of changes to examples in the rules to reflect prior amendments to the rules.

As mentioned above, the Commission has also addressed one matter in these amendments that is unrelated to burden reduction. The Commission has adopted a proposed amendment that deletes the exemption from reporting in § 802.70(b) for acquisitions subject to the prior approval of the Commission or a Federal court. This change will facilitate the administration of the premerger notification program and is expected to increase the volume of notifications only marginally. This proposal did not draw any adverse comment.

Three comments proposed that the Commission provide additional exemptions. One of the comments, comment 22, urged that the size-of-transaction test in § 802.20 of the rules be amended to exempt all acquisitions of less than 50 million. The 1982 Request for Comments had discussed raising the statutory $15 million minimum size-of-transaction criteria of section 7A(a)(3)(B) to $25 million. This discussion was premised in part on statistics from transactions filed in 1981 showing the enforcement agencies had demonstrated a lower level of interest in transactions of less than $25 million. It became clear from statistics covering 1982 and 1983, however, that the pattern of lower enforcement interest did not persist in subsequent years. Consequently, the Commission has not pursued that approach. Comment 14 suggested that § 802.6 be amended to exempt acquisitions of less than 10% of the shares of an air carrier, even though acquisitions at that level do not require the prior approval of the Department of Transportation. Comment 20 suggested more generally that the Commission exempt all acquisitions of less than 5% of the voting securities of an issuer. The Commission will consider whether these suggestions are justified. The Commission welcomes these and any other suggestions about the administration of the program.

Comments

The comment period for these rules was originally scheduled to end on October 24, 1985, but was extended by Commission action to November 29, 1985. The following comments were received:

No.	Date of letter	Organization
1	10-21-85	The RREEF Funds.
2	10-23-85	Anderson, Raymond & Lowenthal.
3	10-23-85	California Federal Savings and Loan Association.
4	10-23-85	Debevoise & Plimpton.
5	10-31-85	National Association of Manufacturers.
6	11-07-85	Shell Oil Company.
7	11-18-85	Association of the Bar of the City of New York, Committee on Antitrust and Trade Regulation.
8	11-19-85	Coldwell Banker Commercial Group, Inc.
9	11-22-85	Aetna Companies.
10	11-26-85	Exxon Corporation.
11	11-27-85	American Council of Life Insurance.
12	11-26-85	National Realty Committee.
13	11-26-85	State Teachers Retirement System of Ohio.
14	11-27-85	Texas Air Corporation.
15	11-27-85	Ropes & Gray.
16	11-28-85	American Bar Association, Section of Antitrust Law.
17	11-26-85	International Council of Shopping Centers.
18	11-29-85	Sullivan & Cromwell.
19	11-29-85	Weil, Gotshal & Manges.
20[1]	11-29-85	Akin, Gump, Strauss, Hauer & Feld.
21[1]	11-25-85	Trammell Crow Company.[2]
22[1]	12-09-85	ITT Corporation.
23[1]	01-13-86	Zaremba Corporation.
24[1]	02-13-86	Exxon Corporation.
25[1]	03-17-86	Pension Real Estate Association.
26[1]	04-21-86	American Council of Life Insurance.
27[1]	06-22-86	International Council of Shopping Centers.

[1] These comments were received after the close of the extended comment period. The Commission has, however, considered the issues raised by these comments in formulating these final rules.

[2] The Commission received several comments from individuals at the Trammell Crow Company.

Statement of Basis and Purpose for the Commission's Revised Premerger Notification Rules

Authority: The Federal Trade Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, promulgates these amendments to the premerger notification rules pursuant to section 7A(d) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d), as added by section 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390.

1. Section 801.11(e): Total Assets of a Person Without a Regularly Prepared Balance Sheet

Amended § 801.11 codifies a longstanding informal position of the Commission staff that a person without a regularly prepared balance sheet generally should not include funds used to make an acquisition in determining its size. This issue arises primarily in connection with newly-formed entities, not controlled by any other entity, that have not yet drawn up a balance sheet. Under this rule, if such an entity's only assets are cash that will be used to make an acquisition and securities of the entity it is acquiring, it generally will not have to file for that acquisition because it will be deemed too small to meet the act's size-of-person test. This rule is intended to limit the coverage of the premerger rules to those situations when an antitrust violation is most likely to be present, that is, when one business entity of a substantial size acquires another business entity of a substantial size. The basic rule is explained below. The rule also contains an exception when the entity acquires assets or voting securities of more than one person.

The Purpose of the Rule

A notification must be filed prior to an acquisition only if the acquiring and acquired persons meet the minimum size criteria of section 7A(a)(2) of the act. In general, the act requires one of the parties to have annual net sales or total assets of at least $10 million and the other annual net sales or total assets of at least $100 million. Section 801.11 establishes the procedure by which the parties to an acquisition must determine their size. Section 801.11(c) provides that the annual net sales of a person shall be as stated on its last regularly prepared income statement, and its total assets shall be as stated on its last regularly prepared balance sheet. It does not directly address the question of how to calculate the total assets of a person that does not have a regularly prepared balance sheet. However, in instances in which a party has no regulary prepared balance sheet and does not have an income statement demonstrating that the act's size criteria for annual sales is met, the 1978 Statement of Basis and Purpose states a balance sheet must be prepared to determine whether the act applies. See 43 FR 33474 (July 31, 1978).

In advising such persons of their obligation to prepare balance sheets, the Commission staff has for some time stated that acquiring persons should not include as assets cash or loans that will be used to make an acquisition. The Commission now adopts this staff position and incorporates it in § 801.11(e). The new rule does not alter the manner in which firms with regularly prepared balance sheets determine whether they meet the act's size-of-person criteria; as provided in § 801.11(a) through (d), they continue to be governed by those regularly prepared statements, which may or may not include such cash or loans.

The distinction between the calculation of assets for business entities with regularly prepared balance sheets and those without them is based on the difference in their competitive significance and on the certainty and simplicity of the 1978 balance sheet rule. First, the size of an acquiring person can provide some measure of its competitive importance, and the act reflects Congress's conclusion that the amount of sales and assets are useful measurements of size. These size criteria can be misleading, however, when applied to entities without regularly prepared balance sheets, which are generally either newly-formed entities or shell corporations being used to make an acquisition. Such entities typically have had no sales and frequently have no assets other than the cash or loans used to make the acquisition. Thus, when they are not controlled by any other entity, the acquiring person has no competitive presence. In such instances the acquisition does not combine businesses but merely changes the ownership of a single ongoing business; it therefore cannot reduce competition. Accordingly, the Commission has concluded that no purpose is served by requiring such acquisitions to be reported.

Similarly, when an entity that is not an operating company acquires voting securities of one person in several sequential transactions, its prior possession of other securities of that person generally does not enhance the anticompetitive potential of the transaction. The already acquired securities do not constitute an independent business that, when combined with additional securities of that issuer, could lessen competition. Only one business is being bought. However, if the acquiring entity purchases assets or voting securities of more than one person, an anticompetitive combination could result. For that reason, § 801.11(e) includes an exception that requires counting cash, loans, and securities in those circumstances.

Although it might be argued that operating companies with regular balance sheets should also be directed to deduct from their total assets any cash or loans earmarked for making the acquisition and any securities issued by the acquired person, the Commission does not believe it advisable to do so. First, to direct that such deductions be made would require many persons to prepare a new balance sheet to determine the reportability of acquisitions. Rules explaining how to prepare that balance sheet would introduce needless complexity into the process of complying with the rules, a problem that the Commission largely obviated when it promulgated the existing financial statements rule of § 801.11 (see 43 FR 33473–33474 (July 31, 1978)).

Second, in most instances, the application of § 801.11(a) through (d) automatically reaches the same result for ongoing companies as § 801.11(e) does for newly-formed and other nonoperating companies. Loans made to ongoing businesses for the purpose of making an acquisition are normally made just prior to consummation of the acquisition and are therefore not reflected on the person's last regularly prepared balance sheet. Thus, under paragraphs (a) through (d), such loans usually are not included when calculating an acquiring person's total assets.

Finally, the Commission regards the predictability and convenience of the balance sheet approach as valuable even if it results in small inconsistencies in measuring a person's size. The approach allows the vast majority of firms to rely on their balance sheets to determine whether they have an obligation to file notification. Businesses can quickly determine from existing records whether they must file and that determination can be reviewed quickly and objectively by the enforcement agencies. This convenience outweighs the value of trying to make more precise or more uniform calculations of the dollar size criteria, which are at best only very preliminary measures of competitive significance. Accordingly, the Commission will continue to require ongoing businesses to determine their size on the basis of regularly prepared balance sheets.

Section 801.11(e)

General rule. Section 801.11(e) states that it applies only when the person does not have a regularly prepared balance sheet. This section applies only to entities not controlled by any other entity, and as a practical matter, it applies primarily to newly formed entities that have not yet drawn up balance sheets. Persons with regularly prepared balance sheets are still required to calculate their size in accordance with paragraphs (a) through (d) of § 801.11. Section 801.11(e) also does not alter the method set forth in § 801.40(c) for determining the size of a joint venture in its formation transaction. Subsection (e)(1) sets forth the general rule that assets including cash or securities are always included on a person's balance sheet, except for cash that will be used to make an acquisition, securities issued by the acquired person (or an entity within the acquired person), and expenses incidental to the acquisition.

This exclusion continues until the acquiring person has a regularly prepared balance sheet. For example, if a newly-formed person buys voting securities of a single acquired person in a series of acquisitions, that series of acquisitions will be treated the same as a single acquisition of those voting securities. Neither the cash to be used to acquire additional voting securities nor any securities of the same acquired person already held by the acquiring person are counted as assets until the acquiring person prepares its first regularly prepared balance sheet. Thus, even if an acquiring person without a regularly prepared balance sheet accumulated $200 million in voting securities of one person in a four-month period, it would not meet the size-of-person test in acquisitions of that acquired person's voting securities as a result of holding those $200 million of voting securities until it had a regularly prepared balance sheet.

In contrast, the rule treats sequential asset acquisitions differently. Assets must be reflected on the acquiring entity's balance sheet as soon as they are acquired. The acquisition of assets by a previously non-operating entity, unlike the infusion of cash into such an entity and unlike its acquisition of a portion of a person's voting securities, can represent the establishment of an operating business. Further purchases of assets, even from the prior owner, can thus be tantamount to the combination of discrete businesses.

The first two examples illustrate the general way in which § 801.11(e) measures size. Example 1 illustrates the application of paragraph (e) when only cash is used in the acquisition. Example 2 illustrates the application of the rule when the acquiring person has non-cash assets.

Exception to the general rule. As explained above, the exclusion provided in § 801.11(e) is appropriate because transactions that may pose an antitrust concern are those in which two or more entities of significant size combine. When an entity without a regularly-prepared balance sheet acquires assets or voting securities of two or more persons, two or more entities of significant size may be combined; therefore § 801.11(e)(1) requires separate size calculations by the acquiring entity "for acquisitions of each acquired person." This means that if the entity will acquire assets or voting securities of person A and of person B, then, in determining whether it is large enough to have to report the acquisition of A, it must include as part of its total assets the cash it will use to acquire B and any securities of B it may hold. Similarly, in measuring its size to determine whether it must report the acquisition of B, the entity must include the cash it will use to acquire A and any securities of A it may hold. Example 4 illustrates the calculation of total assets when the acquiring entity will make two (or more) acquisitions.

Acquired persons without regularly prepared balance sheets. In most circumstances, newly-formed or other non-operating entities without regularly prepared balance sheets are not created or used for the purpose of becoming acquired persons, and the Commission is unaware of any need to give special treatment to such entities when the situation arises. The one exception of which the Commission is aware occurs in connection with the formation of joint venture corporations under § 801.40. Under § 801.40(a), the newly-formed joint venture is considered an acquired person, and § 801.40(c) sets forth a special rule that is used in calculating its size in the formation transaction. This calculation includes, *inter alia,* all assets contributed or to be contributed to the venture plus any credit that any person contributing to the joint venture has agreed to extend and any obligation of the joint venture firm that any contributor has agreed to guarantee. Unlike the calculation in § 801.11(e)(1), this test does not exclude cash.

Accordingly, § 801.11(e)(2) provides that the assets of an acquired person without a regularly prepared balance sheet ordinarily include all assets held, and that in the formation of a joint venture or other corporation, the special size test of § 801.40(c) governs. In either case, the exclusion of cash and voting securities provided in § 801.11(e)(1) does not apply to acquired persons. The text of § 801.11(e) has been altered in the final version of the rule to reflect the relationship of the new rule to § 801.40.

Modifications of the proposed rule. The Commission has made two other modifications of the proposed version of § 801.11(e). The final rule has been changed to make clear that funds used to pay expenses incidental to the acquisition are not included in calculating the acquiring entity's size. Incidental expenses are payments or fees for services rendered in connection with the acquisition, such as bank commitment fees, loan origination fees, investment banking fees, and counsel fees. This expansion of the exemption is a further application of its underlying rationale. Because the cash used to pay these expenses is exhausted by the acquisition, it cannot be combined with the newly-acquired entity to create a competitive problem. Example 3 illustrates the exclusion of acquisition-related expenses. The language of subparagraph (e)(1)(ii) of the rule has also been changed slightly for the sake of clarity.

Comments. Several comments made explicit or implicit reference to proposed § 801.11(e). No comments objected to the general purpose of the rule, and some (16, 18) specifically endorsed the approach taken in the rule. Therefore, the Commission has promulgated § 801.11(e) in substantially the same form as proposed.

Most of the comments dealing with § 801.11(e) revolved around its relationship with proposed § 801.5, the "acquisition vehicle" rule. Comment 2 expressed the view that taking the opposite approach, *i.e.,* counting cash and securities in these circumstances, could eliminate the need for a rule like proposed § 801.5. As stated above, the Commission is continuing to examine the best way to deal with the problems the "acquisition vehicle" proposal was intended to address. While reversal of the approach taken in § 801.11(e) would address these problems and has not been ruled out as a possible solution, the Commission does not believe it is likely that it will ultimately adopt an acquisition vehicle rule that will require acquiring companies without balance sheets to include cash as an asset.

Comment 16 suggested that the term "financial statements" that appeared in the proposed rule be changed to "balance sheet." The comment noted that the rule deals only with balance sheets and has no effect on a person's statement of annual income and expense. The Commission has adopted this suggestion.

2. Section 801.12(b): Calculating Percentage of Voting Securities To Be Held or Acquired

Section 801.12(b) sets out a formula by which persons are to calculate the percentage of voting securities of an issuer that they hold or will hold as a result of an acquisition. This amendment, which codifies an informal interpretation by the Commission staff, modifies the formula to reflect more accurately the amount of voting influence one person has over another where the acquired person has issued separate classes of voting securities with different voting rights.

The voting strength formula is important to the administration of the premerger notification program. Several key concepts in the rules and in the act turn on the percentage of a particular company's voting securities another person holds. For instance, a person is deemed to control a corporation when it holds at least 50 percent of that corporation's voting securities (§ 801.1(b)); the proper notification threshold is usually determined by the percentage of voting securities held (§ 801.1(h)); and the "investment only" exemption is available only for voting securities holdings of 10 percent or less (section 7A(c)(9) of the act and § 802.9). Accordingly, it is important that determinations of the percentage of voting securities held reflect the actual power of the person holding the shares and be made on an objective and readily ascertainable basis.

The formula in § 801.12(b) of the original rules directed an acquiring person to divide the number of votes for directors that it may cast after the acquisition by the total number of votes for directors that anyone may cast after the acquisition. In many cases the resulting ratio accurately portrayed the amount of influence the buyer had over the acquired firm. In some instances, however, the literal application of this formula significantly misrepresented the voting power of the buyer. This discrepancy occurred when there were several classes of voting securities, and one class of voting stock had voting power disproportionate to another class. In such instances, the Commission staff had responded to inquiries by advising persons filing notifications to weigh the number of votes that each class of stock may cast by the number of directors that each class may elect. In this amendment to § 801.12(b), the Commission has adopted that formula, which recognizes both that different classes of stock may exist and that each class may elect different numbers of directors.

The following example illustrates the problem with the literal application of the language in the original rule. Assume Company X has two classes of voting stock, A and B. Class A has 1,000 shares outstanding and elects four of company X's ten directors. Each share of class A stock has one vote in each of these elections. Class B has 100 shares outstanding and elects six of company X's ten directors. Each share of class B stock has one vote in each of these elections. Company Y proposes to acquire all class B shares. Under the language of original § 801.12(b), since Y can only cast 100 votes for directors, the percentage of X's voting securities held by Y after the acquisition would have been 100 divided by 1,100 (the total number of votes for directors that may be cast) or about 9 percent. Using that formula, Y's acquisition would not have crossed the 15 percent threshold; furthermore, the acquisition would be below the threshold for the "solely for the purpose of investment" exemption of section (c)(9) of the act since it would not have exceeded 10 percent of X's voting securities. And since Y would not have held 50 percent or more of X's voting securities, the conclusive presumption of control in § 801.1(b)(1) would not have applied.

Revised § 801.12(b)(1) calculates, more realistically, that company Y holds 60 percent of the voting securities of company X. It reflects Y's influence more accurately by adopting a new formula that first determines Y's voting power within each individual class of stock, and then determines Y's total voting power by summing the ratios calculated for each individual class of stock. Moreover, since the number of directors each class elects can be different, the individual ratios are calculated by weighting Y's voting power over each class by the proportion of the total number of directors that each class may elect. In the example above, the percentage of voting securities held by Y would then be determined by the following formula:

Number of votes of class A stock held by Y divided by Total votes of class A stock times Directors elected by class A stock divided by Total number of directors

Plus

Number of votes of class B stock held by Y divided by Total votes of class B stock times Directors elected by class B stock divided by Total number of directors

Example 1 following new § 801.12(b)(1) applies this formula to that hypothetical acquisition.

The 1978 version of § 801.12(b)(i) referred to voting securities that "presently" entitle the holder to vote for directors. This terminology was intended to make clear that convertible voting securities were not included in the computations in that section. Since the Commission is not changing the treatment of convertible voting securities, the term, which had been inadvertently deleted in the proposed rule, has been restored to the final rule.

Although the revision in § 801.12(b) is a major improvement in many situations, the Commission recognizes that it does not always describe fully the degree of influence over a corporation's affairs that may result from the acquisition or holding of voting securities. For example, holdings of voting securities can be subject to constraints that increase or decrease the actual or potential influence of the holder. These may include staggered elections of corporate directors, cumulative voting rights, voting trusts or agreements, supermajority provisions, and convertible securities.

The Commission has, however, found no objective and administrable criteria that will accurately reflect a holder's degree of influence over a corporation's affairs in all situations. The Commission has been unable to translate these myriad factors into a single proportional measure of voting power. While even after this revision of § 801.12(b), voting power may be measured only roughly in some circumstances, the rule sets forth objective criteria that are quickly ascertainable in most instances. Such certainty of application was an essential consideration in the formulation of the premerger notification rules, which rely primarily and in the first instance on business entities being able to identify for themselves whether they have an obligation to file notification.

The Commission solicited suggestions of a more exact method for calculating the degree of control stemming from holdings of voting securities, but no comments addressed the point. The only comment (16) that mentioned the issue at all simply endorsed this revision of § 801.12(b) as proposed. The Commission thus has concluded that this revision is preferable to an alternative that might measure voting power more precisely in some instances but would be much more difficult to apply. The Commission has promulgated this amendment in the same form as proposed.

3. Section 801.13: Aggregation of Assets and Voting Securities

Sections 801.13 and 801.14 state the circumstances under which parties must aggregate their purchases of voting securities and assets from the same person to determine their obligations under the act and rules. The purpose of aggregation is to treat acquisitions that are split into separate transactions the same as acquisitions that are consummated in a single transaction. The 1978 aggregation rules sometimes required repeated and burdensome reporting of even small asset acquisitions that had no anticompetitive potential. For example, the 1978 rules required the aggregation of two asset purchases from the same person if the purchases occurred within 180 days of each other, even though the first purchase had already been reported and the second was very small. A similar problem arose when a small purchase of assets followed a reportable acquisition of voting securities. To reduce this problem, amended § 801.13 eliminates aggregation when the later acquisition is an asset purchase, as long as the earlier acquisition (whether of assets or voting securities) was reported.

The previous version of § 801.13(b) required a person acquiring assets to add the value of any assets acquired within the past 180 days from the same seller to determine whether the present purchase was reportable. The rule worked well, for example, in requiring notification when a person acquired $10 million worth of assets following a $10 million purchase from the same person the previous month. Similarly, if the original acquisition was of voting securities and the present acquisition was of assets, § 801.14 operated to require aggregation, although in this case without the 180-day time limit. For example, a person that had previously acquired $8 million of a company's stock and a year later planned to purchase $8 million of assets from the same company had to file notification prior to the asset purchase (assuming that the acquisition was otherwise reportable). These results are not altered by this amendment to § 801.13.

The 1978 aggregation rules did not, however, work well in other circumstances. They could, for example, cause acquiring and acquired persons to file multiple notifications for tiny transactions. Once a person made a reportable acquisition by buying more than $15 million of another person's voting securities or assets, the aggregation requirement (which required the inclusion of the prior transaction) often meant that any additional asset purchase, however small, would also satisfy the act's size-of-transaction criteria. Consequently the transaction would again be subject to the notification and waiting requirements of the act (unless otherwise exempted). The Commission recognizes that repeated filings could be quite burdensome to the parties in such transactions, and that little antitrust purpose was served by receiving the subsequent report for the small transaction.

The new rule alleviates this burden by creating a separate reporting obligation for each cluster of transactions that amounts to an aggregate $15 million. Thus, after one acquisition has been reported, the parties are not required to report subsequent asset acquisitions until they again amount to $15 million in the aggregate. With this modification, the small subsequent transactions are no longer reportable.

The aggregation problem does not arise when the later transaction is an acquisition of voting securities only. Under § 801.13(b)(2), an earlier acquisition of assets is only aggregated with a subsequent asset acquisition, not with a later acquisition of voting securities. In addition, in a series of acquisitions involving only voting securities, § 802.21 exempts from the reporting requirements all acquisitions except those that meet or exceed the notification thresholds defined in § 801.1(h).

No comments objected to the Commission's proposal to amend § 801.13, and the Commission is promulgating the rule in substantially the same form as proposed. One comment (16) suggested three technical changes. First, the comment suggests that § 801.13 explicitly require that the earlier acquisition was in fact reported, not merely "subject to the filing and waiting requirements of the act." This change would require a person to continue to aggregate prior asset purchases if they had been reportable under the act but were not actually reported. This suggestion seems sound, and the Commission has adopted it.

The second suggestion is that new § 801.13(a)(3)(ii) explicitly reference § 802.21 (exemption for subsequent acquisitions of voting securities that do not exceed a higher threshold). The Commission believes that the relationship with § 802.21 is clear. Nevertheless, to avoid any possible confusion, explicit reference to the exemption has been added to § 801.13(a)(3)(ii).

The third point raised by the comment is outside the scope of this rulemaking. The comment asserts that the 1978 language of § 801.13 falls "short of [its] goal" of requiring aggregation of all asset acquisitions between the same parties occurring within 180 days of each other. The comment suggests changes intended to make § 801.13 more consistent with its stated goal. Since the point raised in the comment appears to be a useful suggestion, the Commission will study it and will, if appropriate, propose a change in § 801.13 in the future.

4. Section 802.35: Acquisitions by Employee Trusts

New § 802.35 exempts from the act's reporting provisions acquisitions of an employer's voting securities by an employee trust pursuant to an Employee Stock Ownership Plan ("ESOP"). Frequently a pension plan, profit sharing plan, or bonus plan that an employer organizes as an ESOP acquires shares of employer's stock on behalf of its employees. The plan typically holds the shares in trust for the employees. The original rules did not exempt such acquisitions of the employer's voting securities even in the case of an ESOP that the employer controlled by having the contractual right to designate its trustee or trustees. This new rule provides such an exemption. It does not exempt acquisitions by ESOPs of voting securities of persons other than the employer.

Under the 1978 rules, acquisitions of an employer's securities pursuant to an ESOP were likely to be subject to the notification requirements of the act. Such acquisitions are often large enough to satisfy the $15 million size-of-transaction criterion of section 7A(a)(3)(B). Furthermore, the ESOP trust is likely to meet the $10 million size-of-person criterion of section 7A(a)(2) because the trust is ordinarily considered to be controlled by the employer and must, pursuant to § 801.1(a)(1), include the total assets and annual net sales of the employer in determining its size. The intraperson exemption in § 802.30 does not apply, however, because the ESOP is not within the same person as the employer "by reason of holdings of voting securities." No other exemption applied under the original rules.

The conclusion that some ESOP transactions should be exempt is based on the distinctive characteristics of ESOP trusts. If complete ownership of voting securities, rather than just voting rights, were attributed to the individual employee beneficiaries of the ESOP, such acquisitions almost certainly would be too small to meet the $10 million size-of-person and $15 million size-of-transaction criteria of the act. If the securities were held by an entity that was controlled by the employer "by reason of holding voting securities" rather than appointing trustees, then the transaction would be exempted by § 802.30 as an intraperson transaction. The rationales for not requiring small acquisitions to be reported and for exempting intraperson transactions both apply to an ESOP trust's acquisition of an employer's voting securities. The Commission has therefore created a new exemption for such acquisitions based on the mixture of stock ownership characteristics of ESOP trusts discussed below.

Acquisitions of an employer's securities pursuant to an ESOP represent an inexpensive source of financing for the employer because the ESOP is accorded advantageous tax treatment when the securities are acquired with borrowed money. See generally 26 U.S.C. 401 *et seq.* For this reason, the employer, not its employees, generally initiates the formation of an ESOP. In doing so, the employer typically retains the power to appoint and remove the trustee who manages the assets of an ESOP trust, although the trustee may have the authority to appoint a co-trustee as the custodian for the voting securities. Once a trust is established by a publicly held corporation, the employees, not the trustees, vote the employer securities held by the trust that are allocated to their account. 26 U.S.C. 409A(e)(2). The trustees, however, often retain the power to purchase and sell the employer securities.

Under § 801.1(c)(3), the ESOP trust, like any trust, is deemed to hold the employer securities. For most irrevocable trusts, this result serves to guard against a possible antitrust problem because trustees usually have certain indicia of beneficial ownership, including the right to vote and the authority to dispose of all securities. From an antitrust viewpoint, therefore, competition would be threatened if a non-ESOP trust acquired substantial blocks of voting securities of the employer and of a competing firm. If an ESOP trust were to hold securities of both the employer and a competing company, however, the two sets of securities would not necessarily be voted by the ESOP trust. In a publicly held company, the employees would typically vote the securities of their employer. Consequently, one usual situation that causes antitrust concern—the possibility that one entity might control two competing firms—is unlikely to pose a problem when an ESOP holds the shares of both the employer and of a competing firm.

Nevertheless, an acquisition by an ESOP trust of a competing firm's voting securities could restrain competition in other ways. For example, an employer that controls the trust by retaining the power to appoint and remove trustees might cause the trust to acquire a competitor. The existing premerger rules recognize the possibility of exercising influence through the power to appoint trustees. Section 801.1(b) declares that a person controls an entity if it has the right to "designate a majority of the directors of a corporation, or in the case of unincorporated entities, of individuals exercising similar functions" (*e.g.*, trustees). Accordingly, when an employer controls the trust, the employer is considered the acquiring person and must report the trust's acquisition of shares in another firm. Because this provision ensures that the competitive implications of acquiring another firm's voting securities will continue to be reviewed, the Commission does not believe that it is also necessary to make the acquisition by the ESOP of an employer's securities reportable.

The provisions of the new rule take into account these distinctive features of ESOP trusts. Subsection (a) of the rule explicitly limits the exemption to trusts that are part of qualified stock bonus, pension, or profit sharing plans as defined in the Internal Revenue Code. These plans are most likely to make acquisitions large enough to be reportable. Subsection (b) limits the exemption to those trusts in which the employer has the right to appoint and remove the trustees or which the employer otherwise controls under § 801.1(b). Subsection (c) provides further that the exemption applies only to acquisitions of voting securities issued by the employer (or by entities it controls).

The examples emphasize that the ESOP exemption applies only to the acquisition of an employer's voting securities. In example 1 the acquisition illustrates that voting securities issued by more than one entity (but not more than one person) can qualify for the exemption. The acquisition in example 2 is not exempt because the issuer is neither the employer nor an entity within the person of the employer.

The Commission considered as alternatives means of exempting employee trust acquisitions either expanding the intraperson exemption in § 802.30 or changing the definition of "hold" in § 801.1(e). The Commission rejected both approaches for the reasons stated in the Notice of Proposed Rulemaking published on September 24, 1985, 50 FR 38760–38761.

Comment 16, the only one that dealt with this proposal, pointed out certain difficulties that may arise in determining whether an ESOP trust is controlled by the employer. The comment noted that some ESOP agreements provide that the collective bargaining representative of the employee-beneficiaries of the trust may have a veto over the employer's appointment or removal of the trustee(s). Whether this type of veto dilutes the employer's influence over the trust so as to negate the element of control of § 801.1(b) is a factual issue that will need to be determined in each instance. The comment also pointed out that some ESOP trustees appoint a custodian, sometimes designated as a trustee or co-trustee, for the voting securities held by the trust. Again, the question of control under these circumstances is a factual one that will require individual analysis.

Because all acquisitions of employer voting securities by ESOPs are exempt, it would not be appropriate to aggregate such acquisitions in the calculations under § 801.13. Such aggregation can be avoided by listing § 802.35 in § 801.15(a)(2), and that section has been amended accordingly.

5. Section 802.70(b): Acquisitions Subject to Prior Approval

The Commission has deleted paragraph (b) of § 802.70, which had exempted from the notification and waiting requirements of the act certain acquisitions that require prior approval by the Federal Trade Commission or by a federal court. The Commission has concluded that although the principle of this rule—to eliminate duplicative notification requirements—was sound, the rule could well have troublesome practical effects for both the enforcement agencies and the parties subject to an order. The Commission wants to assure that the rule, which exempted only a few transactions each year, does not create a barrier to voluntary settlements of antitrust actions by unnecessarily requiring public disclosures of information about acquisitions. As a consequence, the Commission has concluded that the administration of the premerger program would be better served by eliminating the exemption.

Previously, § 802.70(b) exempted an entire acquisition from the requirements of the act if, pursuant to an order entered in an action brought by the Commission or the Department of Justice, the acquiring person was required to obtain approval of the Commission or a federal court prior to making an acquisition. For example, a diversified company engaged in both the lumber and the cement businesses might, as a result of an acquisition of a cement firm, have become subject to a prior approval order requiring it to submit all future cement acquisitions for review. The company, when contemplating a subsequent cement and lumber acquisition, would have been required to submit both the cement and lumber portions of the acquisition for approval under the order.

When the § 802.70(b) exemption existed, the enforcement agencies were required to insist upon their right to review under a prior approval order all portions of a transaction, not merely those portions relevant to the order. However, this position could, in some instances, become an obstacle to obtaining consensual orders with companies because of the public disclosure procedures that are a part of prior approval orders. In contrast to the confidentiality required by section 7A(h) of the act for filings under the normal premerger notification program, review under an order typically requires the person requesting approval to place on the public record business information demonstrating that the acquisition is not anticompetitive. Thus, in the example from the previous paragraph, the diversified company would be required to disclose information about the lumber, as well as the cement, business. The Commission is concerned that the prospect of such broad disclosures of business information might unnecessarily provoke a company to resist an order settling an antitrust matter.

The Commission considered two approaches to this problem: (1) To require concurrent prior notifications under the order and the premerger notification program, or (2) to require separate notifications for different portions of an acquisition—those that will be reviewed within the terms of the order and those that will be reviewed under the normal premerger notification procedures. The latter resolution, although logically superior, could require extremely complex definitions to include all transactions that might be relevant to the order. Such definitions could result in some transactions being placed in the wrong category and quite possibly would result in others not being adequately reported under either procedure.

Accordingly, the Commission has decided to eliminate the exemption. This change will not significantly increase the number of filings (fewer than a dozen transactions were exempted under § 802.70(b) in 1984), nor the burden of compliance, since a firm would in any case have compiled much of the information required for its premerger filing in order to comply with the prior approval order. The Commission has decided that on balance, the administration of the premerger notification program and the enforcement of the antitrust laws will be enhanced by eliminating the exemption contained in § 802.70(b). No comments addressed this proposal.

The considerations underlying this rules change do not apply to divestitures subject to prior approval because in those orders the Commission or a federal court will have identified the transfers of assets that are relevant to those orders. There is, therefore, no reason to delete the exemption in § 802.70(a) for divestitures pursuant to orders.

6. Section 803.5: Affidavit Obligations of the Acquiring Person

Section 803.5(a) requires that the acquiring person give notice to the acquired person in certain transactions. The Commission has modified this rule (1) to permit the notice to state the notification threshold the acquiring person will meet or exceed in lieu of the number of shares to be acquired and (2) to require the person to state, where applicable, the total number of shares to be held as a result of the acquisition.

This rule requires an acquiring person in transactions subject to § 801.30 (tender offers, open market purchases and other acquisitions of stock from persons other than the issuer) to submit with its Notification and Report Form an affidavit attesting that the issuer has received the notice required by § 803.5(a). The notice procedure serves two related purposes: To inform the issuer of its obligation to file the notification required by the act, and to provide the issuer and the antitrust agencies with evidence that the acquiring person seriously intends to consummate the transaction.

When first promulgated, § 803.5(a) required the acquiring person to disclose in the notice to the issuer, among other things, the identity of the acquiring person and the number of securities of each class to be acquired. Because some acquiring persons could not state their intentions in terms of numbers of securities to be acquired, the Commission, by formal interpretation on December 28, 1978, permitted such persons to state instead which of the reporting thresholds of § 801.1(h) they intended to meet or exceed.

This interpretation did not, however, address a different problem in the 1978 version of § 803.5(a). That rule required the acquiring person to state only the number of securities to be acquired and not the number that would be held as a result of an acquisition. Since § 801.13(a) requires the acquiring person to aggregate the voting securities it plans to acquire with all voting securities of the issuer that it already holds, it is this total number of shares that would give rise to a filing obligation. If the acquiring person had substantial holdings in the issuer before the acquisition, merely stating the number of shares it would acquire would not always make clear to the issuer that the acquisition was reportable.

This amendment both codifies the 1978 formal interpretation on notification thresholds and amends the rule to require the acquiring person to state, in instances in which the number of voting securities is specified, the number of voting securities that would be held as a result of the acquisition.

Notice to the acquired issuer. These changes will assist in fulfilling the principal purpose of § 803.5(a)—to inform the acquired person of its obligation to file a Notification and Report Form with the antitrust enforcement agencies. In the transactions covered by this rule, the issuer may have no reason to know that some or all of its shares are being acquired, because the voting securities are to be acquired from persons other than the issuer or an entity within the same person as the issuer. Section 803.5(a) cures this potential problem by requiring the acquiring person to serve the notice before filing its notification.

These amendments refine that process. By requiring that the notice state either the notification threshold the acquiring person will meet or exceed or the total number of voting securities to be held as a result of an acquisition, the amendments insure that the acquired person will receive notice of the acquiring person's intention to make an acquisition that meets or exceeds the $15 million, or the 15, 25 or 50 percent of voting securities thresholds of § 801.1(h). From this statement and from knowledge about its own voting securities, the acquired person will have a basis for determining whether it has a notification obligation.

The requirement that the notice include nonvoting securities has been deleted because they do not affect the notification obligation.

Credibility of the acquisition plan. This amendment will also aid in fulfilling the second objective of § 803.5(a)—to provide evidence of the seriousness of the acquiring person's plan of action. The antitrust screening process initiated by the acquiring person requires the expenditure of significant resources by the issuer and the antitrust agencies. The rule therefore requires that the acquiring person provide evidence that it intends to make a reportable transaction and is not merely considering the possibility of making one. The evidence required falls into three categories:

(1) The statement that the acquiring person has a "good faith intention . . . to make [an] acquisition" (§ 803.5(a)(2));

(2) The statement of the specific number of securities that the person intends to hold or the filing threshold it intends to meet or exceed (§ 803.5(a)(1)(iii)); and

(3) The communication of these and other facts to the acquired person (§ 803.5(a)(1)).

The statement of "good faith" intent is but one part of the evidence the rules require to establish that an acquiring person intends to make a reportable acquisition. That general statement gains greater credibility when the acquiring person declares the exact number of securities it intends to buy or the filing threshold it intends to cross. The greater specificity suggests that a plan has developed beyond the conceptual stage at least to the point where it could be implemented. In requiring a definite written declaration of a plan to acquire shares, this provision parallels the requirements that agreements to merge be executed (§ 803.5(b)) and that tender offers be publicly announced (§ 803.5(a)(2)) before filing notification.

Because the acquired person and the enforcement agencies are entitled to be reasonably certain that a reportable acquisition will be made, § 803.5(a)(1)(iii) requires the acquiring person to state in the notice a present intention to make such a reportable acquisition of voting securities. Accordingly, the Commission does not accept a statement in a notice, for instance, that the acquiring person intends to make an acquisition that "may exceed" a reporting threshold, because that statement does not specify either a threshold that the person intends to meet or a current intention to acquire any shares. See Example 4. Similarly, the Commission does not accept a statement that a person will acquire "up to" a certain percentage or number of shares, since such a statement does not clearly express a present intent to acquire a percentage or number of shares that is reportable. See Example 5.

The Commission had proposed requiring a statement of the specific present intent to meet or exceed a higher notification threshold once the person had established an intent to make a reportable acquisition. The effect of such an extension would have been, for example, to treat a filing in which the acquiring person states in its notice to the acquired person an intention "that it will acquire more than 15% of the acquired person's voting securities and it may acquire more than 50% of those voting securities" as a filing solely for the 15% threshold. This proposal drew a mixed response from commenters. Comments 7 and 16 objected to the proposal, arguing that requiring a subsequent filing prior to crossing the 25 or 50 percent thresholds would be unnecessary and burdensome. Comment 18, in contrast, supported the proposal, noting that because the percentage of voting securities acquired can be relevant to antitrust analysis, multiple filings can conserve Commission resources and permit smaller acquisitions that otherwise might be blocked if the transaction were analyzed at the 50 percent level.

While the Commission agrees on balance with Comment 18 and does not believe this aspect of its original proposal would have imposed a major burden, it concedes that some additional burden would have resulted. Moreover, since the current practice, which treats the above language as a filing for the 50% threshold, has not created substantial antitrust enforcement problems, the Commission has decided not to adopt this change.

The Commission will thus continue its policy that requires the notice affidavit to demonstrate a firm intention to make a reportable acquisition, but allows filing for a higher threshold even when the intention to make that additional acquisition has not yet become fixed. Example 3 illustrates that when a person files for a threshold it plans to meet or exceed, it may also designate a higher threshold. The less stringent standard for designating the filing threshold accommodates the interest of the parties to a transaction and the antitrust agencies in most circumstances. Once the premerger review process is undertaken, the additional burden on the acquired person and the enforcement agencies occasioned by a review of a transaction at a higher threshold is usually relatively minor in comparison with the burden of conducting a completely separate review based on a subsequent filing by the acquiring person for that higher threshold.

It should be noted, however, that it is unlikely to be advantageous for acquiring persons to file for a higher threshold if they do not expect to cross it within the period provided by § 803.7. As comment 18 noted, there are circumstances in which the antitrust agencies would permit a smaller holding of voting securities, but would challenge larger holdings. By filing for the higher threshold in such a transaction, the acquiring person might make it necessary for one of the agencies to seek to enjoin an acquisition based on the designated threshold, even though the immediate transaction contemplated would not have been challenged.

Comment 2 noted that in many acquisitions to which § 801.30 applies the acquiring and acquired persons have executed an agreement in principle or a letter of intent to merge or acquire. It argues that in such instances it is pointless and burdensome to also require the acquiring person to deliver to the acquired person the notice required by § 803.5(a). While the Commission agrees that the notice can be redundant, it does not agree that delivery of the notice is a substantial burden or unnecessary. Acquisitions to which § 801.30 applies are by definition acquisitions of voting securities from persons other than the acquired person. Consequently, even if the agreement lapses for some reason, the rules still permit the acquiring person to proceed with the acquisition. In such circumstances, since the agreement is no longer in force, the acquired person might not be aware of its continuing responsibility to file. The Commission believes that the current notice requirement makes clear that the acquired person's responsibility to file is based on the acquiring person's intent to make a reportable acquisition and is independent of any agreement. Accordingly, it has not adopted the suggestion.

7. Section 803.10(a): Running of Time in § 801.40 Transactions

The Commission has amended § 803.10(a) in order to clarify when the waiting period begins in connection with the formation of a joint venture or other corporation (hereinafter "joint venture") subject to § 801.40 of the rules. The amendment makes explicit that the waiting period does not begin until all venturers who are required to file have done so. This is consistent with the Commission staff's interpretation of the 1978 version of § 803.10(a).

Before this amendment to § 803.10(a), it was possible to read the rule to provide for a separate waiting period for each individual venturer that began when each filed its notification. The Commission has amended the rule to eliminate this possible misinterpretation, which it believes would preclude effective review by the antitrust agencies of the formation of joint ventures. Separate waiting periods for individual venturers would mean that in some instances one venturer's waiting period could expire before another venturer's filing alerted the antitrust agencies to the need to issue requests for additional information to all venturers. To eliminate any possible ambiguity, the Commission has amended § 803.10(a) to state explicitly that in the case of acquisitions covered by § 801.40, the waiting period begins when all venturers required to file a notification have done so.

Although the Commission is adopting this amendment as proposed, it believes that the staff's prior position correctly interpreted previous § 803.10. Old § 803.10 provided, in relevant part, that the waiting period for all acquisitions, other than those subject to § 801.30, began on the "date of receipt of the notification . . . from: . . . all persons required by the act and these rules to file notification." In other words, the waiting period began only when all venturers required to file had done so. It was, however, possible to argue that the "all persons" language of § 803.10 refers only to those persons required to file notification in connection with a particular "acquisition" and that § 801.40 was intended to treat each individual venturer's acquisition of stock of the joint venture corporation as a discrete acquisition. Since in each such "acquisition" only the venturer is required to file (the joint venture itself need not file), the result would be that the "all persons" requirement would be satisfied whenever an individual venturer filed notification. Thus, according to the argument, each venturer would have a separate waiting period beginning as soon as it filed its notification.

While this argument had support in some language of the rules, it was not consistent with the antitrust enforcement agencies' need to conduct an analysis of the competitive relationships among the persons forming the joint venture corporation. As the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 802.41 notes, "it is the combination of the persons that form the new entity (and not the new entity standing alone) that presents antitrust issues when a new corporation is formed . . . ." 43 FR 33496 (July 31, 1978). Accordingly, to ensure that the enforcement agencies have the opportunity to evaluate the competitive relationships among all the venturers required to file, the agencies must be able to review all their notifications at the same time. It was on this basis that the Commission staff interpreted the language of the 1978 version of § 803.10(a) to mean that the waiting period for acquisitions subject to § 801.40 began when all acquiring persons that were required to report had done so. To avoid any possible ambiguity, however, the rule has been amended to state this requirement explicitly.

The relationship between this amendment and § 803.10(b), (explaining when the waiting period ends) and § 803.20(c) (setting out the rules for an extended waiting period) is as follows: in acquisitions subject to § 801.40 in which a request for additional information is issued, the extended waiting period begins on the date the additional information or documentary material requested is received from all contributors to the joint venture corporation who received a request.

Comment 16, the only comment to discuss this proposal, suggested that item 5(d) instead be revised to require the participants in the joint venture to identify the other persons participating. However, as discussed below in connection with the changes in the Form, the agencies have not had difficulty in ascertaining the identity of joint venture parties. Rather, the problem is that without having the filings of all the participants available at one time, the agencies might fail to notice possible anticompetitive consequences of the venture that would justify a second request. The Commission regards this amendment as an adequate resolution of the problem and believes no further changes are necessary at this time.

8. Changes in Examples To Conform With Prior Amendments to the Rules

On November 21, 1979 and July 29, 1983, the Commission published several changes in the premerger rules. See 44 FR 66781 *et seq.* and 48 FR 34427 *et seq.* Our experience with those changes has indicated that it would be helpful to make several amendments to the examples appearing elsewhere in the premerger rules. The affected examples are example 1 to § 801.4, example 4 to § 801.15, example 3 to § 801.30, the example to § 801.40, and example 1 to § 802.41. These amendments elicited no comments.

9. The Premerger Notification and Report Form

The Commission has promulgated eight changes designed to clarify or simplify the Premerger Notification and Report Form. Seven of the changes were proposed in the **Federal Register** in September 1985; six of these appear in substantially the same form as they were proposed, and one has been reworded for the sake of clarity. One additional change, a clarification of an existing requirement, is a product of the staff's recent experience. The Form and its instructions have been revised to reflect these changes, and the revised version appears in this **Federal Register** Notice.

The eight changes to the Form are discussed in paragraphs a–h below. Some of the changes are based on comments received by the Commission in response to its July 1982 **Federal Register** Notice. These comments are referred to as "earlier comments" or "prior comments." Comments received in response to the 1985 rules change proposals are designated by number.

Following paragraph h, sections 1–4 address new issues that were raised in comments received pursuant to the 1985 proposals. These comments did not specifically address the present changes to the Form but instead suggested further changes in the Form or raised other issues about the Form.

Changes in the Report Form

a. General Instructions.

The general instructions to the Form detail the proper procedures for complying with the notification requirements. Some filing parties have misinterpreted one aspect of these instructions: when making a narrative response to an informational item in the Form on attachment pages, parties have sometimes failed to submit one set of those attachment pages with each copy of their Form. The Commission has therefore changed the general instructions to make clear that each filing person must submit two complete copies of the Form to the Commission and three complete copies of the Form to the Department of Justice and that each copy of the Form must have its own set of attachment pages.

This provision does not apply to "documentary attachments," which, as defined in the instructions to the Form, are the documents, usually prepared by the parties for purposes unrelated to the Form, that are submitted pursuant to item 2(d) (formerly 2(f)(i)), item 4, and §§ 803.1(b) and 803.11. The instructions require multiple submissions to each agency of narrative responses to items on the Form, but only a single copy per agency of each "documentary attachment."

This change in the general Form instructions makes clear that when parties choose to make their narrative responses on separate attachment pages, these responses are not "documentary attachments," and multiple copies of these pages must still be supplied to each agency. Some filing parties had incorrectly treated these pages as "documentary attachments" and had submitted only one copy per agency. Such omissions hamper review by the agencies and could cause a filing to be deemed deficient.

b. Description of Transaction

The Commission has consolidated into one question the three items, formerly items 2(a), 2(b), and 2(c), that request a description of the transaction. Item 2(a) had asked for the names and addresses of the parties to the acquisition, a description of the assets or voting securities to be acquired, the consideration to be received from each party, and, if the acquisition involved a tender offer, the terms of the offer. Item 2(b) had called for the scheduled consummation date, and item 2(c) had required a description of the manner in which the transaction was to be carried out, including scheduled major events such as stockholders' meetings, other requests for government approval or tender offer dates. Parties had often repeated information when responding to these items; the Commission has therefore eliminated this redundancy by combining them into one question.

Comment 22 pointed out that the proposed version of item 2(a) and the 1978 version of item 2(d), which has been redesignated as item 2(b) but which is otherwise being retained unchanged, both asked for a description of the assets to be acquired. The Commission has further revised item 2(a) in response to this comment so that it no longer requires a description of the assets or voting securities. Instead, item 2(a) simply asks whether assets or voting securities (or both) are being acquired. The detailed description of assets to be acquired is required by item 2(b) (formerly 2(d)) and the description of the voting securities to be acquired is found in item 2(c) (formerly 2(e)).

c. Description of Voting Securities To Be Acquired

The Commission has changed item 2(c) (which had been 2(e) but which has been redesignated) to allow persons who intend to acquire 100 percent of the acquired person's voting securities to respond by stating that intent and providing the dollar value of the acquisition. Item 2(c) requires responses to eight subsections that elicit information about separate classes of voting securities and the amount of each that will be held by each acquiring person following the transaction. As the 1978 Statement of Basis and Purpose pointed out, the purpose of the detailed breakdown is to enable the agencies to assess the degree of control resulting from the acquisition. 43 FR 33522 (July 31, 1978). The Commission recognizes that detailed responses are likely to be unnecessary when a person is acquiring 100 percent of the voting securities of a company. In that case, the acquiring person will presumably have complete control of the acquired person. The same is true when two companies are merging or consolidating to form a new company. In these instances, therefore, the Commission has eliminated the detailed responses required by item 2(c). Item 2(c) now permits parties simply to state that 100% of the voting securities are being acquired.

However, to enable the Commission to monitor compliance with the act with regard to previous acquisitions between the parties, parties must still give full responses to item 2(c) if, prior to the acquisition, the acquiring person held 15 percent or more than $15 million of the acquired person's voting securities. Since holdings of this magnitude normally require a filing, disclosure of this information in item 2(c) will permit the agencies to inquire whether the prior acquisition was exempt from the act. For the sake of clarity, the wording of item 2(c) has been altered from the form in which it was proposed.

d. Index to Ancillary Documents

The Commission has deleted item 2(f)(ii), which had asked for an index of ancillary documents related to the acquisition agreement, such as those relating to personnel matters (*e.g.*, union contracts and employment agreements), third-party financing agreements, leases, subleases and documents related to the transfer of realty. The 1978 Statement of Basis and Purpose stated that the index "will permit the agencies to identify particular documents in a second request." 43 FR 33523 (July 31, 1978). In the Commission's experience, however, this index has not been particularly helpful. Second requests do not usually focus on issues related to third-party agreements, subleases, union contracts or other documents listed in the index. If this type of information is needed, the agencies can ask for it descriptively in the second request even without an index of the documents. Since the index can be lengthy and time-consuming to prepare, the Commission has dropped this item from the Form.

e. Shareholders and Holdings of Persons Filing Notification

The Commission has changed the instructions to item 6 to specifically permit parties to identify where responses to this item can be found in a "documentary attachment" to the Form. The Commission does not object to parties responding to these items by referencing "documentary attachments" submitted with a filing as long as they indicate the relevant pages in the attachments and as long as the information provided in the attachments is complete, up-to-date, and accurate. If the information contained in the attachments is not complete, up-to-date, and accurate, the filing will not be deemed substantially compliant and the waiting period will not begin until the correct materials are filed with both agencies.

As revised, item 6(a) asks for a list of the filing person's subsidiaries, except for subsidiaries with total assets of less than $10 million. Item 6(b) asks for a list of shareholders of each entity included within the person filing notification. Holders of 5 percent or more of the voting securities of any entity included within the person must be listed unless the entity has total assets of less than $10 million. Item 6(c) requires parties to list their minority holdings. Parties may omit holdings of less than 5 percent and holdings of issuers with total assets of less than $10 million.

One prior comment stated that the Commission should permit parties to respond to these items by referencing a "documentary attachment" to the Form rather than including a response on the Form itself. The Commission is of the view that a response that references a "documentary attachment" is adequate so long as the specific pages of each attachment are indicated for each item.

f. List of Subsidiaries

The Commission has changed item 6(a) so that parties may omit subsidiaries with total assets of less than $10 million. Item 6(a) requires persons filing notification to provide the name and headquarters mailing address of each entity included within the person filing notification. The 1978 instructions gave parties the option of not listing entities with total assets of less than $1 million. Prior comments questioned whether a list of subsidiaries was helpful to the agencies' antitrust review and especially whether the names of relatively small subsidiaries were necessary.

To conduct their review, the agencies must be able to determine the names and addresses of all significant entities included within the parties to the acquisition. In many instances, the names of these subsidiaries can give the agencies a better understanding of the acquisition and can enable them to seek information from public sources, most of which is only available by company (subsidiary) name. The need for subsidiaries' names is particularly compelling when the subsidiaries are foreign entities, since the SIC code information contained in item 5 is limited to U.S. operations. See § 803.2. Without the name of the foreign subsidiary, information about the person's foreign operations is not readily obtainable. However, the Commission has recognized that some subsidiaries may be so small that even their names are unlikely to produce information relevant to the agencies' antitrust review. The Commission has therefore raised the $1 million cut-off provided in original item 6(a) to $10 million. This change was based in part on the fact that items 6(b) and 6(c) have always been subject to a $10 million cut-off and that these cut-off levels do not appear to have adversely affected the agencies' ability to conduct their antitrust review.

g. Geographic Information in Overlapping SIC Codes

The Commission has changed the level of specificity with which parties must provide certain geographic information. When an overlap occurred in certain SIC codes, the Commission had previously required that each party provide the address, arranged by the state, county, and city or town, of its establishments that derived revenue in the overlapping code. Now, for some of these codes, parties may provide only the state or states in which they derive revenue.

Item 7(a) of the Form requires the filing person to identify 4-digit industry SIC codes in which it has knowledge or belief that it and any other person which is a party to the acquisition also derives revenue (usually referred to as "the overlapping code" or "a four-digit overlap"). Item 7(c) requires the filing person to identify the geographic areas in which it derives revenue in overlapping codes. For most overlapping codes the filing person lists the states in which it derives revenue. In the 1978 version of Item 7(c)(iv), parties were required to provide more detailed geographic information for overlaps in all SIC major groups 52–62 and 64–89.

In most of these major groups, the agencies must determine the precise geographic areas in which the parties operate. For instance, acquisitions involving food stores, gasoline service stations, hospitals, apparel and accessory stores, and banks require a detailed breakdown of geographic information, since the relevant geographic market is often a local area rather than an entire state or region. However, some of the SIC major groups identified in 1978 as requiring the more detailed breakdown have proved in fact not to require such detailed breakdowns in the initial Hart-Scott-Rodino filing. For instance, acquisitions involving securities brokers, insurance agents, investment offices and certain other businesses falling within these codes can be adequately reviewed without the initial filing providing such detailed information. Acquisitions involving overlaps in these codes either do not involve local markets or, if they do involve local markets, can still be adequately reviewed if the parties specify in their initial filings only the states in which they derive revenue. Therefore, the Commission has changed item 7(c) to require only state-by-state information for overlaps occurring in SIC major groups 62, 64–67, 72, 73, 76, 79, and 81–89. The SIC major groups that still require the parties to give the address, arranged by state, county, and city or town, of establishments where they derive revenue are listed in Attachment A.

h. Prior Acquisitions

The Commission has changed item 9 of the Form to require the acquiring person to provide information about acquisitions made within five years of filing rather than the ten years that had been required.

If both the acquiring person and the acquired issuer or the acquired assets had attributable to them $1 million or more in revenue in the same 4-digit SIC code, the acquiring person must list in item 9 its past acquisitions of other persons that also derived revenue in that 4-digit SIC code. Only acquisitions of more than 50 percent of the voting securities or assets of entities that had annual net sales or total assets greater than $10 million in the year prior to the acquisition need be listed. In the original version of item 9 parties were required to list all such acquisitions that had taken place in the past ten years. The Commission has changed item 9 so that it now applies only to acquisitions in the past five years.

The purpose of item 9 is to assist the agencies in identifying prior acquisitions by the acquiring person that may suggest a pattern of acquisitions in a particular industry by that person. See 43 FR 33534 (July 31, 1978). Several earlier comments suggested modifications of item 9. One such comment suggested raising to $10 million the present $1 million cut-off for the overlap in the acquisition that is the subject of the notification. This suggestion was rejected because the agencies sometimes find overlaps of less than $10 million in a given 4-digit SIC code to be of competitive significance. This is particularly true when the parties compete in a small geographic area or when one of the parties has an extremely large share of a market.

Another prior comment suggested that the ten-year period be reduced to five years. The Commission has adopted this suggestion. It believes that this change can be made without harming the agencies' ability to conduct a thorough antitrust review since an account of the acquiring person's acquisitions over the past five years will give adequate notice of possible trends toward concentration. This change should significantly reduce the burden of this item because it will cut in half the number of years that parties will have to search for information about prior acquisitions and because it should be easier for companies to identify more recent acquisitions.

Other Comments

In addition to the comments discussed in paragraphs (a) through (h) above, comment 16 specifically endorsed the changes as proposed, and no comment objected to them. Several other comments suggested additional changes in the Form, requested clarification of existing items, or otherwise made observations about the Form's reporting requirements. The Commission takes this opportunity to respond to the issues raised in these comments.

1. Comments about SIC code revenue required by the Form. Several comments made observations about the existing Report Form's SIC code requirements. Comment 2 said it is difficult for companies to classify information in the correct code since some companies have internal bookkeeping inconsistencies and their SIC code classifications vary from year to year. The comment stated that this problem is especially acute when the classifications are highly detailed. Although compiling SIC-based information may occasionally be difficult, the Commission has found it the most workable way to determine whether and to what extent companies produce competing products.

Similarly, comment 2 stated that it is difficult to provide the detailed breakdown required for 7-digit codes ending in "00." If a 7-digit code ends in "00," the instructions require a further breakdown by codes listed in Appendix B of the *Numerical List of Manufactured Products*. Again, notwithstanding this possible difficulty, the Commission needs this detailed information for its antitrust review.

The same comment also stated that SIC code information on interplant transfers as is required by § 803.2 is difficult to assemble, and that providing such information can result in some double counting. Here as well, despite the possible difficulty of gathering the information, the Commission believes that interplant transfers are relevant to antitrust review since internally consumed products must sometimes be considered in the market along with products sold externally. Furthermore, the Commission has not found the double counting problem insurmountable. Although the inclusion of interplant transfers means that the sum of SIC code revenues may slightly exceed the sales listed on the company's most recent income statement, the agencies can take this possibility into account in performing their antitrust review.

Comment 2 also observed that it is difficult to compile SIC code revenue, especially the more detailed 7-digit information, for recently acquired entities. This problem is more likely to occur if the recent acquisition was not reportable, since in a reported acquisition the acquired entity would already have compiled its SIC code information to fulfill its filing requirements. Again, even if the information has not been previously compiled and may be difficult to compile, it must be compiled in connection with the filing since the agencies' antitrust review depends on it.

Comment 22 objected to item 5(b)(ii)'s requirement that current 7-digit information be provided for products added since the base year. The comment pointed out that this item required companies to annually update 7-digit information for products they have recently added. The comment suggested that the information be supplied only for the year following the addition.

The Commission needs SIC code information on all aspects of a person's business, including recently commenced operations. This information must be as detailed as practicable. In this particular item, the Commission already permits parties the option of providing the information based on 7-digit SIC codes "or in the manner ordinarily used by the person filing notification." It would not be workable, however, to permit parties to provide the information only for the year following its addition. If this were permitted, the parties to an acquisition would be providing dollar revenues for dissimilar years for added products, since any number of different intervening years would appear in addition to the base year and the most recent year. This would make it difficult for the Commission to compare the parties' revenues. Moreover, if parties only provided revenues for new products for the year after the product was introduced, the Commission would often be unable to determine the present level of that person's presence in the market. The new product may have generated very little revenue when it was introduced, but may have since gained a significant presence in the market.

2. Suggested reduction in reporting requirements. Most of the observations about difficulties in complying with filing requirements centered around the need to provide SIC code information. Comment 22, however, also suggested two changes in the Form unrelated to SIC code data: Deletion of the requirement that persons submit an affidavit with the Form and deletion of the requirement that filing persons certify the Form.

The Commission believes that these two requirements impose at most a minimal burden on the parties to an acquisition. The Commission needs to know that the acquisition that is the subject of the filing is actually planned and not hypothetical; this is the goal of the affidavit requirement. The Commission also needs to be certain that the information contained in the Form is accurate. The current certification requirement gives the Commission added assurance that a specific individual has taken responsibility for the accuracy of the information contained in the Form. The Commission believes that the small burden imposed by these requirements is outweighed by the importance of the requirements. If interested persons believe the burden imposed by these requirements is more substantial, the Commission would appreciate submissions describing the extent of the burden.

3. Requests for clarification of Report Form instructions. Comment 2 requested clarification of the instructions for two items on the Form: Item 5(b)(ii) and item 8. The Commission believes that the instructions are adequate and therefore does not propose to change them at this time.

Item 5(b)(ii) requests information about products that have been added or deleted subsequent to 1982. The instruction to this item permits parties to identify added or deleted products either by 7-digit code or "in the manner ordinarily used by the person filing notification." The instruction does not expressly define the term "products added or deleted." Most filing persons have correctly read the instructions to require only additions or deletions of products that comprise a 7-digit product code. In other words, for purposes of this item, parties should define the term "product" to mean all items that are classified in a single 7-digit code. For example, assume all widgets are classified in a single 7-digit code. If a person has always made blue and yellow widgets, and one year it begins production of red widgets, it need not list red widgets in item 5(b)(ii). Similarly, if the person stops making blue widgets, it need not list them as a deleted product. In both instances the addition and deletion took place within a existing or ongoing 7-digit code in which the person derived revenue in 1982.

Comment 2 requested a similar change in the instruction to item 8, which asks for information about any vendor-vendee relationship between the parties to the acquisition. To complete this item, each vendee must list the "products" it purchased from other parties to the acquisition. Only aggregate purchases of "products" of more than $1 million must be listed. To determine whether the $1 million figure applies, most parties have correctly read the existing instructions as defining the term "product" to mean a 7-digit SIC code. Thus, in our example above, if $750,000 worth of red widgets and $750,000 worth of blue widgets were purchased in the most recent year, the person should list widgets in item 8. If, however, blue and red widgets were properly classified in separate 7-digit codes, then in our example widgets would not be listed in item 8 since the $1 million level would not be met for any given "product."

4. Comments regarding joint venture filings. Two comments (7, 16) expressed the concern that the Notification and Report Form did not provide the Commission with enough information to determine whether all the parties to the formation of a joint venture or other corporation had fulfilled their filing requirements. These comments arose in the context of the proposal to change rule 803.10(a), which codifies the Commission's policy of starting joint venture waiting periods after all parties to the venture with a reporting obligation have filed. The comments asserted that the Commission would not be able to determine which parties to the acquisition were required to file and therefore the agencies would not know when to start the applicable waiting period. The Commission believes that the Form already requires enough information to allow the agencies to determine which joint venturers are required to file.

The Form requires certain information about the parties to a joint venture. For instance, item 1(c) requires each party to "[g]ive the names of *all* ultimate parent entities of acquiring ... persons which are parties to the acquisition *whether or not they are required to file notification.*" (emphasis supplied) In the joint venture context, this item requires the name of each person that will acquire any voting securities of the venture, even if the parties do not believe that some of those persons will ultimately have a reporting obligation. Similarly the subparts of item 2(c) (formerly 2(e)) require detailed information about the amount and dollar value of the voting securities to be acquired by each person. Each joint venturer that files must supply this information for each person acquiring securities of a joint venture corporation.

Item 5(d) requires detailed information about all contributions to the joint venture or other corporation. Item 5(d)(ii)(A) requires a list of contributions from each person forming the venture and item 5(d)(ii)(D) requires a full description of the consideration to be received by each person forming the joint venture. Neither item is limited to persons required to file. Therefore each person that files for a joint venture must disclose this information for itself and every other person forming the venture.

These items, when read together, give the Commission considerable information about each venturer. The Commission will know the names of each contributor, the amount and value of the securities each venturer will receive and the contributions made by each venturer. Once the first venturer files, the Commission can readily determine from that filing which other venturers will meet the act's size-of-transaction test. Furthermore, the names of the other venturers will likely permit the Commission to determine from public sources which of the other venturers appear to meet the commerce and size-of-person tests.

Comments 7 and 16 suggested that parties be specifically required to state which other parties to the joint venture are required to file. The Commission agrees that this would not be particularly burdensome and that it would provide further confirmation of the Commission's independent evaluation of who must file. Nevertheless, the Commission has not adopted the suggestion at this time since it has not in the past had difficulty determining which venturers must file. If in the future the Commission experiences difficulty determining which joint venturers must file (particularly if filing persons resist the Commission's attempts to determine this information informally), the Commission will propose a change suitable to remedy the problem.

Attachment A

SIC major groups in which parties are required to provide the address, arranged by state, county, and city or town, of each establishment from which they derive dollar revenues.

Division G. Retail Trade

Major Group 52. Building materials, hardware, garden supply, and mobile home dealers.
Major Group 53. General merchandise stores.
Major Group 54. Food stores.
Major Group 55. Automotive dealers and gasoline service stations.
Major Group 56. Apparel and accessory stores.
Major Group 57. Furniture, home furnishings, and equipment stores.
Major Group 58. Eating and drinking places.
Major Group 59. Miscellaneous retail.

Division H. Finance, Insurance and Real Estate

Major Group 60. Banking.
Major Group 61. Credit Agencies other than banks.

Division I. Services

Major Group 70. Hotels, rooming houses, camps, and other lodging places.
Major Group 75. Automotive repair, services, and garages.
Major Group 78. Motion pictures.
Major Group 80. Health services.

List of Subjects

16 CFR Parts 801 and 802

Antitrust.

16 CFR Part 803

Antitrust, Reporting and recordkeeping requirements.

Accordingly, 16 CFR Parts 801, 802 and 803 are amended as follows:

A. The authority for Parts 801, 802 and 803 continues to read as follows:

Authority: Sec. 7A(d) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d), as added by sec. 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390.

PART 801—COVERAGE RULES

B. Example 1 to § 801.4(b) is revised to read as set forth below.

§ 801.4 Secondary acquisitions.

* * * * *

(b) * * *

Examples: 1. Assume that acquiring person "A" proposes to acquire all the voting securities of corporation B. This section provides that the acquisition of voting securities of issuers held but not controlled by B or by any entity which B controls are secondary acquisitions by "A." Thus, if B holds more than $15 million of the voting securities of corporation X (but does not control X), and "A" and "X" satisfy sections 7A (a)(1) and (a)(2), "A" must file notification separately with respect to its secondary acquisition of voting securities of X. "X" must file notification within fifteen days (or in the case of a cash tender offer, 10 days) after "A" files, pursuant to § 801.30.

* * * * *

C. Section 801.11(a) is revised and a new § 801.11(e) is added to read as set forth below.

§ 801.11 Annual net sales and total assets.

(a) The annual net sales and total assets of a person shall include all net sales and all assets held, whether foreign or domestic, except as provided in paragraphs (d) and (e) of this section.

* * * * *

(e) Subject to the limitations of paragraph (d) of this section, the total assets of:

(1) An acquiring person that does not have the regularly prepared balance sheet described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section shall be, for acquisitions of each acquired person:

(i) All assets held by the acquiring person at the time of the acquisition,

(ii) Less all cash that will be used by the acquiring person as consideration in an acquisition of assets from, or in an acquisition of voting securities issued by, that acquired person (or an entity within that acquired person) and less all cash that will be used for expenses incidental to the acquisition, and less all securities of the acquired person (or an entity within that acquired person); and

(2) An acquired person that does not have the regularly prepared balance sheet described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section shall be either

(i) All assets held by the acquired person at the time of the acquisition, or

(ii) Where applicable, its assets as determined in accordance with § 801.40(c).

Examples: For examples 1–4, assume that A is a newly-formed company which is not controlled by any other entity. Assume also that A has no sales and does not have the balance sheet described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section.

1. A will borrow $105 million in cash and will purchase assets from B for $100 million. In order to establish whether A's acquisition of B's assets is reportable, A's total assets are determined by subtracting the $100 million that it will use to acquire B's assets from the $105 million that A will have at the time of the acquisition. Therefore, A has total assets of $5 million and does not meet the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2).

2. Assume that A will acquire assets from B and that, at the time it acquires B's assets, A will have $85 million in cash and a factory valued at $20 million. A will exchange the factory and $80 million cash for B's assets. To determine A's total assets, A should subtract from the $85 million cash the $80 million that will be used to acquire assets from B and add the remainder to the value of the factory. Thus, A has total assets of $25 million. Even though A will use the factory as part of the consideration for the acquisition, the value of the factory must still be included in A's total assets.

Note that A and B may also have to report the acquisition by B of A's non-cash assets (i.e., the factory). For that acquisition, the value of the cash A will use to buy B's assets is not excluded from A's total assets. Thus, in the acquisition by B, A's total assets are $105 million.

3. Assume that company A will make a $200 million acquisition and that it must pay a loan origination fee of $5 million. A borrows $211 million. A does not meet the size-of-person test in section 7A(a)(2) because its total assets are less than $10 million. $200 million is excluded because it will be consideration for the acquisition and $5 million is excluded because it is an expense incidental to the acquisition. Therefore, A is only a $6 million person.

4. Assume that A borrows $150 million to acquire $100 million of assets from person B and $45 million of voting securities of person C. To determine its size for purposes of its acquisition from person B, A subtracts the $100 million that it will use for that acquisition. Therefore, A has total assets of $50 million for purposes of its acquisition from B. To determine its size with respect to its acquisition from person C, A subtracts the $45 million that will be paid for C's voting

securities. Thus, for purposes of its acquisition from C, A has total assets of $105 million. In the first acquisition A meets the $10 million size-of-person test and in the second acquisition A meets the $100 million size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2).

D. Section 801.12(b)(1) is revised to read as set forth below.

§ 801.12 Calculating percentage of voting securities or assets.

• • • • •

(b) *Percentage of voting securities.* (1) Whenever the act or these rules require calculation of the percentage of voting securities of an issuer to be held or acquired, the percentage shall be the sum of the separate ratios for each class of voting securities, expressed as a percentage. The ratio for each class of voting securities equals:

(i)(A) The number of votes for directors of the issuer which the holder of a class of voting securities is presently entitled to cast, and as a result of the acquisition, will become entitled to cast, divided by,

(B) The total number of votes for directors of the issuer which presently may be cast by that class, and which will be entitled to be cast by that class after the acquisition, multiplied by,

(ii)(A) The number of directors that class is entitled to elect, divided by (B) the total number of directors.

Examples. In each of the following examples company X has two classes of voting securities, class A, consisting of 1000 shares with each share having one vote, and class B, consisting of 100 shares with each share having one vote. The class A shares elect four of the ten directors and the class B shares elect six of the ten directors.

In this situation, § 801.12(b) requires calculations of the percentage of voting securities held to be made according to the following formula:

Number of votes of class A held divided by Total votes of class A times Directors elected by class A stock divided by Total number of directors

Plus

Number of votes of class B held divided by Total votes of class B times Directors elected by class B stock divided by Total number of directors

1. Assume that company Y holds all 100 shares of class B stock and no shares of class A stock. By virtue of its class B holdings, Y has all 100 of the votes which may be cast by class B stock and can elect six of company X's ten directors. Applying the formula which results from the rule, Y calculates that it holds 100/100 x 6/10 or 60 percent of the voting securities of company X because of its holdings of class B stock and no additional percentage derived from holdings of class A stock. Consequently, Y holds a total of 60 percent of the voting securities of company X.

2. Assume that company Y holds 500 shares of class A stock and no shares of class B stock. By virtue of its class A holdings, Y has 500 of the 1000 votes which may be cast by class A to elect four of company X's ten directors. Applying the formula, Y calculates that it holds 500/1000 x 4/10 or 20 percent of the voting securities of company X from its holdings of class A stock and no additional percentage derived from holdings of class B stock. Consequently, Y holds a total of 20 percent of the voting securities of company X.

3. Assume that company Y holds 500 shares of class A stock and 60 shares of class B stock. Y calculates that it holds 20 percent of the voting securities of company X because of its holdings of class A stock (see example 2). Additionally, as a result of its class B holdings Y has 60 of the 100 votes which may be cast by class B stock to elect six of company X's ten directors. Applying the formula, Y calculates that it holds 60/100 x 6/10 or 36 percent of the voting securities of company X because of its holdings of class B stock. Since the formula requires that a person that holds different classes of voting securities of the same issuer add together the separate percentages calculated for each class, Y holds a total of 56 percent (20 percent plus 36 percent) of the voting securities of company X.

• • • • •

E. Section 801.13(a)(1) is revised, a new § 801.13(a)(3) and a new example 4 following § 801.13 (a)(2)(ii) are added, and § 801.13(b)(2)(ii) excluding the example, is revised to read as set forth below.

§ 801.13 Voting securities or assets to be held as a result of an acquisition.

(a) *Voting securities.* (1) Subject to the provisions of § 801.15, and paragraph (a)(3) of this section, all voting securities of the issuer which will be held by the acquiring person after the consummation of an acquisition shall be deemed voting securities held as a result of the acquisition. The value of such voting securities shall be the sum of the value of the voting securities to be acquired, determined in accordance with § 801.10(a), and the value of the voting securities held by the acquiring person prior to the acquisition, determined in accordance with paragraph (a)(2) of this section.

(2) * * *

Examples: * * *

4. On January 1, Company A acquired $30 million of voting securities of Company B. "A" and "B" filed notification and observed the waiting period for that acquisition.

Company A plans to acquire $1 million of assets from company B on May 1 of the same year. Under § 801.13(a)(3), "A" and "B" do not aggregate the value of the earlier acquired voting securities to determine whether the acquisition is subject to the act. Therefore, the value of the acquisition is $1 million and it is not reportable.

(3) Voting securities held by the acquiring person prior to an acquisition shall not be deemed voting securities held as a result of that subsequent acquisition if:

(i) The acquiring person is, in the subsequent acquisition, acquiring only assets; and

(ii) The acquisition of the previously acquired voting securities was subject to the filing and waiting requirements of the act (and such requirements were observed) or was exempt pursuant to § 802.21.

(b) *Assets.* * * *

(2) * * *

(ii) Subject to the provisions of § 801.15, if the acquiring person has acquired from the acquired person within the 180 calendar days preceding the signing of such agreement any assets which are presently held by the acquiring person, and the acquisition of which was not previously subject to the requirements of the act or the acquisition of which was subject to the requirements of the act but they were not observed, then only for purposes of section 7A(a)(3)(B) and § 801.1(h)(1), both the acquiring and the acquired persons shall treat such assets as though they had not previously been acquired and are being acquired as part of the present acquisition. The value of any assets previously acquired which are subject to this subparagraph shall be determined in accordance with § 801.10(b) as of the time of their prior acquisition.

• • • • •

F. Section 801.15(a)(2) is revised to read as set forth below.

§ 801.15 Aggregation of voting securities and assets the acquisition of which was exempt.

• • • • •

(a) * * *

(2) Sections 802.6(b)(1), 802.8, 802.31, 802.35, 802.50(a)(1), 802.51(a), 802.52, 802.53, 802.63, and 802.70;

• • • • •

G. Example 4 to § 801.15(c) is revised to read as set forth below.

§ 801.15 Aggregation of voting securities and assets the acquisition of which was exempt.

• • • • •

(c) * * *

Examples: * * *

4. Assume that acquiring person "B," a United States person, acquired from corporation X two mines located abroad, and assume that the acquisition price was $40 million. In the most recent year, sales in the United States attributable to the mines were $15 million, and thus the acquisition was exempt under § 802.50(a)(2). Within 180 days of that acquisition, "B" seeks to acquire a third mine from X, to which United States sales of $12 million were attributable in the

most recent year. Since under § 801.13(b)(2), as a result of the acquisition, "B" would hold all three mines of X, and the $25 million limitation in § 802.50(a)(2) would be exceeded, under paragraph (b) of this rule, "B" would hold the previously acquired assets for purposes of the second acquisition. Therefore, as a result of the second acquisition, "B" would hold assets of X exceeding $15 million, would not qualify for the exemption in § 802.50(a)(2), and must observe the requirements of the act before consummating the acquisition.

H. Example 3 to § 801.30(b) is revised to read as set forth below.

§ 801.30 Tender offers and acquisitions of voting securities from third parties.

* * * * *

(b) * * *

Examples: * * *

3. Suppose that acquiring person "A" proposes to acquire 50 percent of the voting securities of corporation B which in turn owns 30 percent of the voting securities of corporation C. Thus "A's" acquisition of C's voting securities is a secondary acquisition (see § 801.4) to which this section applies because "A" is acquiring C's voting securities from a third party (B). Therefore, the waiting period with respect to "A's" acquisition of C's voting securities begins when "A" files its separate Notification and Report Form with respect to C, and "C" must file within 15 days (or in the case of a cash tender offer, 10 days) thereafter. "A's" primary and secondary acquisitions of the voting securities of B and C are subject to separate waiting periods; see § 801.4.

I. The example to § 801.40 is revised to read as set forth below.

§ 801.40 Formation of joint venture or other corporations.

* * * * *

Example: Persons "A," "B," and "C" agree to create new corporation N, a joint venture. "A," "B," and "C" will each hold one third of the shares of N. "A" has more than $100 million in annual net sales. "B" has more than $10 million in total assets but less than $100 million in annual net sales and total assets. Both "C"'s total assets and its annual net sales are less than $10 million. "A," "B," and "C" are each engaged in commerce. "A," "B," and "C" have agreed to make an aggregate initial contribution to the new entity of $6 million in assets and each to make additional contributions of $6 million in each of the next three years. Under paragraph (c), the assets of the new corporation are $60 million. Under paragraph (b), only "A" must file notification. Note that "A" also meets the criterion of section 7A(a)(3) since it will be acquiring one third of the voting securities of the new entity for $20 million. N need not file notification; see § 802.41.

PART 802—EXEMPTION RULES

J. Section 802.35 is added to read as set forth below.

§ 802.35 Acquisitions by employee trusts.

An acquisition of voting securities shall be exempt from the notification requirements of the act if:

(a) The securities are acquired by a trust that meets the qualifications of section 401 of the Internal Revenue Code;

(b) The trust is controlled by a person that employs the beneficiaries and,

(c) The voting securities acquired are those of that person or an entity within that person.

Examples: 1. Company A establishes a trust for its employees that meets the qualifications of section 401 of the Internal Revenue Code. Company A has the power to designate the trustee of the trust. That trust then acquires 30% of the voting securities of Company A for $30 million. Later, the trust acquires 20% of the stock of Company B, a wholly-owned subsidiary of Company A, for $20 million. Neither acquisition is reportable.

2. Assume that in the example above, "A" has total assets of $100 million. "C" also has total assets of $100 million and is not controlled by Company A. The trust controlled by Company A plans to acquire 40 percent of the voting securities of Company C for $40 million. Since Company C is not included within "A," "A" must observe the requirements of the act before the trust makes the acquisition of Company C's shares.

K. Example 1 to § 802.41 is revised to read as set forth below.

§ 802.41 Joint venture or other corporations at time of formation.

* * * * *

Examples: 1. Corporations A and B, each having sales of $100 million, each propose to contribute $20 million in cash in exchange for 50 percent of the voting securities of a new corporation, N. Under this section, the new corporation need not file notification, although both "A" and "B" must do so and observe the waiting period prior to receiving any voting securities of N.

* * * * *

L. Section 802.70 is revised to read as set forth below.

§ 802.70 Acquisitions subject to order.

An acquisition shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if the voting securities or assets are to be acquired from an entity ordered to divest such voting securities or assets by order of the Federal Trade Commission or of any Federal court in an action brought by the Federal Trade Commission or the Department of Justice.

PART 803—TRANSMITTAL RULES

M. Section 803.5, is amended by revising paragraph (a)(1)(iii), by adding examples 2, 3, 4, and 5 to paragraph (a)(2), and by designating the unnumbered example as example 1, as set forth below.

§ 803.5 Affidavits required.

(a) (1) * * *

(iii) The specific classes of voting securities of the issuer sought to be acquired; and if known, the number of securities of each such class that would be held by the acquiring person as a result of the acquisition or, if the number is not known, the specific notification threshold that the acquiring person intends to meet or exceed; and, if designated by the acquiring person, a higher threshold for additional voting securities it may hold in the year following the expiration of the waiting period;

* * * * *

(2) * * *

Examples: * * *

In examples 2–5 assume that one percent of B's shares are valued at $15 million.

2. "A" holds 100,000 shares of the voting securities of Company B. "A" has a good faith intention to acquire an additional 900,000 shares of Company B's voting securities. "A" states in its notice to B, inter alia, that as a result of the acquisition it will hold 1,000,000 shares. If 1,000,000 shares of Company B represents 20 percent of Company B's outstanding voting securities, the statement will be deemed by the enforcement agencies a notification for the 15 percent threshold.

3. Company A intends to acquire voting securities of Company B. "A" does not know exactly how many shares it will acquire, but it knows it will definitely acquire 15 percent and may acquire 50 percent of Company B's shares. "A"'s notice to the acquired person would meet the requirements of § 803.5(a)(1)(iii) if it states, inter alia, either: "Company A has a present good faith intention to acquire 15 percent of the outstanding voting securities of Company B, and depending on market conditions, may acquire more of the voting securities of Company B and thus designates the 50 percent threshold" or "Company A has a present good faith intention to acquire 15 percent of the outstanding voting securities of Company B, and depending on market conditions may acquire 50 percent or more of the voting securities of Company B." The Commission would deem either of these statements as intending to give notice for the 50 percent threshold.

4. "A" states, inter alia, that, "depending on market conditions, it may acquire 100 percent of the shares of B." "A"'s notice does not comply with § 803.5 because it does not state an intent to meet or exceed any notification threshold. "A"'s filing will be considered deficient within the meaning of § 803.10(c)(2).

5. "A" states, inter alia, that it has commenced a tender offer for "up to 55 percent of the outstanding voting securities of Company B." "A"'s notice does not comply with § 803.5 because use of the term "up to" does not state an intent to meet or exceed any notification threshold. The filing will

therefore be considered deficient within the meaning of § 803.10 (c)(2).

* * * * *

N. Section 803.10(a) is amended by redesignating paragraph (a)(2) as (a)(3) and by adding a new paragraph (a)(2) to read as set forth below.

§ 803.10 Running of time.

(a) * * *

(2) In the case of the formation of a joint venture or other corporation covered by § 801.40, all persons contributing to the formation of the joint venture or other corporation that are required by the act and these rules to file notification;

* * * * *

(3) In the case of all other acquisitions, all persons required by the act and these rules to file notification.

O. The following amendments are made in the Premerger Notification and Report Form that appears as an appendix to Part 803 of the rules. The revised form is set forth below.

1. A new third paragraph is added to the General Instructions to the Form. The new paragraph appears immediately before the paragraph that defines the term "documentary attachments".

2. Items 2(b) and 2(c) are removed from the instructions and the form, items 2(d)–2(f)(i) are renumbered accordingly, and the instruction for item 2(a) is revised.

3. The instruction for item 2(e), which has been redesignated as item 2(c), is revised.

4. Item 2(f)(ii) is removed in the instructions and the Form.

5. The introductory language in the instructions under item 6 is revised.

6. The instruction for item 6(a) is revised.

7. The instruction for item 7(c)(iv) is revised.

8. Item 7(c)(v) is redesignated as item 7(c)(vi) and new instruction for item 7(c)(v) is added.

9. The instruction for item 9 is revised.

BILLING CODE 6750-01-M

ANTITRUST IMPROVEMENTS ACT NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM for Certain Mergers and Acquisitions

INSTRUCTIONS

GENERAL

The Answer Sheets (pp 1-16) constitute the Notification and Report Form ("the Form") required to be submitted pursuant to § 803.1(a) of the premerger notification rules ("the rules") Filing persons need not, however, record their responses on the Form

These Instructions specify the information which must be provided in response to the Items on the Answer Sheets. *Only* the completed Answer Sheets, together with all documentary attachments are to be filed with the Federal Trade Commission and the Department of Justice

Persons providing responses on attachment pages rather than on answer sheets must submit a complete set of attachment pages with *each* copy of the Form

The term "documentary attachments" refers to materials supplied in responses to Item 2(d), Item 4 and to submissions pursuant to §§ 803.1(b) and 803.11 of the rules

Information—The central office for information and assistance concerning the rules, 16 CFR Parts 801-803, and the Form is Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, 6th St. & Pa. Ave., N.W., Washington, D.C. 20580, phone (202) 326-3100

Definitions—The definitions and other provisions governing this Form are set forth in the rules, 16 CFR Parts 801-803. The governing statute, the rules, and the Statement of Basis and Purpose for the rules are set forth at 43 FR 33450 (July 31, 1978), 44 FR 66781 (November 22, 1979) and 48 FR 34427 (July 29, 1983)

Affidavit—Attach the affidavit required by § 803.5 to page 1 of the Form. Affidavits are not required if the person filing notification is an acquired person in a transaction covered by § 801.30. (See § 801.5(a).)

Responses—*Each answer should identify the Item to which it is addressed.* Use the reverse side of the corresponding answer sheet or attach separate additional sheets as necessary in answering each Item. Each additional sheet should identify at the top of the page the Item to which it is addressed. Voluntary submissions pursuant to § 803.1(b) should also be so identified

Enter the name of the person filing notification appearing in Item 1(a) on page 1 of the Form and the date on which the Form is completed at the top of each page of the Form, at the top of any sheets attached to complete the response to any Item, and at the top of the first or cover page of each documentary attachment

If unable to answer any Item fully, give such information as is available and provide a statement of reasons for noncompliance as required by § 803.3. If exact answers to any Item cannot be given, enter best estimates and indicate the sources or bases of such estimates. Estimated data should be followed by the notation "est." All information should be rounded to the nearest thousand dollars

Year—All references to "year" refer to calendar year. If the data are not available on a calendar year basis, supply the requested data for the fiscal year reporting period which most nearly corresponds to the calendar year specified. References to "most recent year" mean the most recent calendar or fiscal year for which the requested information is available

SIC Data—This Notification and Report Form requests information regarding dollar revenues and lines of commerce at three levels with respect to operations conducted within the United States. (See § 803.2(c)(1).) *All persons must submit certain data at the 4-digit (SIC code) industry level.* To the extent that dollar revenues are derived from *manufactured operations* (SIC major groups 20-39), data must also be submitted at the *5-digit product class* and *7-digit product levels* (SIC based codes)

The term "dollar revenues" is defined in § 803.2(d)

References— In reporting information by "*4-digit (SIC code) industry*" refer to the 1972 edition of the *Standard Industrial Classification Manual* and its 1977 supplement published by the Executive Office of the President, Office of Management and Budget

In reporting information by "*5-digit product class*" and "*7-digit product*" refer to one or both of the following reference publications published by the U.S. Bureau of the Census

(a) Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products, *1982 Census of Manufactures and Census of Mineral Industries* (MC82-R-1). Make sure that the Numerical List you use has MC82-R-1 printed on the cover

Note: Submit information using the codes in the columns labeled "Product code published." Do not submit information using the codes in the columns labeled "Product code collected"

(b) "Industry Series," (MC82-I Pamphlets 20A2-39D), *1982 Census of Manufactures* (GPO Order No. 003-018-00000-8.)

Note: Do not submit information by product codes ending in 00 if the Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products listed above contains a further breakdown. Furthermore, when the Numerical List refers to Appendix C for detail collected in a specified Current Industrial Report ("CIR") for the following SIC code industries, you should provide revenue information using the 7-digit product codes listed in the CIR in the columns labeled "Published"

SIC 2382 (CIR MQ-23X)   SIC 3261 (CIR MQ-34E)
SIC 3312, 3315, 3316 and 3317 (CIR MA-33B)
SIC 3357 (CIR MQ-33L)   SIC 3431 (CIR MQ-34E)

Items 5, 7, 8, 9 and the Insurance Appendix—Supply information *only* with respect to operations conducted within the United States, including its commonwealths, territories, possessions and the District of Columbia. (See §§ 801.1(k), 803.2(c)(1).)

Information need not be supplied regarding assets or voting securities currently being acquired, when the acquisition is exempt under the statute or rules. (See § 803.2(c)(2).)

Limited or separate responses may be required from the person filing notification. (See § 803.2(b).)

Filing—Complete and return two notarized copies (with one set of documentary attachments) of this Notification and Report Form to the Premerger Notification Office, Bureau of Competition, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, 6th Street and Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, D.C. 20580, and *three* notarized copies (with *one* set of documentary attachments) to Director of Operations, Antitrust Division, Department of Justice, Room 3218, 10th and Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, D.C. 20530

ITEM BY ITEM

Affidavit—Attach the affidavit required by § 803.5 to page 1 of the Answer Sheets. Acquiring persons in transactions covered by § 801.30 are required to also submit a copy of the notice served on the acquired person pursuant to § 803.5(a)(1). (See § 803.5(a)(3).)

Cash Tender Offer—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate whether the acquisition is a cash tender offer

Early Termination—Put an X in the yes box to request early termination of the waiting period. Notification of each grant of early termination will be published in the Federal Register as required by § 7A(b)(2) of the Clayton Act

ITEM 1

Item 1(a)—Give the name and headquarters address of the person filing notification. The name of the person is the name of the ultimate parent entity included within that person

Item 1(b)—Indicate whether the person filing notification is an acquiring person, an acquired person, or both an acquiring and acquired person. (See § 801.2.)

Item 1(c)—Give the names of all ultimate parent entities of acquiring and acquired persons which are parties to the acquisition whether or not they are required to file notification

Item 1(d)—Put an X in all the boxes that apply to this acquisition.

Item 1(e)—Acquiring persons put an X in the box to indicate the highest threshold for which notification is being filed (see § 801.1(h)): $15 million, 15%, 25%, or 50%

Item 1(f)—All persons state the value of voting securities held as a result of the acquisition and/or the value of assets held as a result of the acquisition. (Insert responses to Item 3(c).)

Item 1(g)—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate whether the entity in Item 1(a) is a corporation, partnership, or other (specify).

Item 1(h)—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate whether data furnished is by calendar year or fiscal year. If fiscal year, specify period

Item 1(i)—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate if this Form is being filed on behalf of the ultimate parent entity by another entity within the same person authorized by it to file notification on its behalf pursuant to § 803.2(a), or if this Form is being filed pursuant to § 803.4 on behalf of a foreign person. Then provide the name and mailing address of the entity filing notification on behalf of the reporting person named in Item 1(a) on the Form.

Item 1(j)—If an entity within the person filing notification other than the ultimate parent entity listed in Item 1(a) is the entity which is making the acquisition, or if the assets or voting securities of an entity other than the ultimate parent entity listed in Item 1(a) are being acquired, provide the name and mailing address of that entity and the percentage of its voting securities held by the person named in Item 1(a) above. (If control is effected by means other than the direct holding of the entity's voting securities, describe the intermediaries or the contract through which control is effected (see § 801.1(b)).

ITEM 2

Item 2(a)—*Description of acquisition.* Briefly describe the transaction. Include a list of the name and mailing address of each acquiring and acquired person, whether or not required to file notification. Indicate for each party whether assets or voting securities (or both) are to be acquired. Also indicate what consideration will be received by each party. In describing the acquisition, include the expected dates of any major events required to consummate the transaction (e.g., stockholders' meetings, filing of requests for approval, other public filings, terminations of tender offers) and the scheduled consummation date of the transaction.

If the voting securities are to be acquired from a holder other than the issuer (or an entity within the same person as the issuer) separately identify (if known) such holder and the issuer of the voting securities. Acquiring persons in tender offers should describe the terms of the offer

Item 2(b)(i)—*Assets to be acquired.* This Item is to be completed only to the extent that the transaction is an acquisition of assets. Describe all general classes of assets (other than cash and securities) to be acquired by each party to the transaction giving approximate dollar values thereof. If the transaction is the formation of a joint venture or other corporation (see § 801.40), include assets to be acquired by the joint venture or other corporation.

Give the approximate total value or estimated total value of the assets to be acquired in this transaction.

Examples of general classes of assets other than cash and securities are land, merchandising inventory, manufacturing plants (specify location and products produced), and

---

Privacy Act Statement - Section 18a(a) of Title 15 of the U.S. Code authorizes the collection of this information. The primary use of this information is to determine whether the merger or acquisition reported in the Notification and Report Form may violate the antitrust laws. Furnishing the information on this Form is voluntary.

Consummation of an acquisition required to be reported by the statute cited above without having provided this information may, however, render a person liable to civil penalties up to $10,000 per day

FTC Form C 4 (rev. 3/87)

retail stores. For each general class of assets, indicate the page or paragraph number of the contract or other document submitted with this Form in which the assets are more particularly described.

Item 2(b)(ii)—*Assets held by acquiring person.* (To be completed by acquiring persons.) If assets of the acquired person (see § 801.13) are presently held by the person filing notification, furnish a description of each general class of such assets in the manner required by Item 2(b)(i), and the dollar value or estimated dollar value at the time they were acquired.

Item 2(c)—*Voting securities to be acquired.* Furnish the following information separately for each issuer whose voting securities will be acquired in the acquisition. (If, as a result of the acquisition, the acquiring person will hold 100 percent of the voting securities of the acquired issuer or if the acquisition is a merger or consolidation (see § 801.2(d)), the parties may so state and provide the total dollar value of the transaction instead of responding to Items 2(c)(i) - 2(c)(viii). However, this procedure may not be used if the acquiring person currently holds 15 percent or more than $15 million worth of the voting securities of the acquired person or of any entity included within the acquired person.)

Item 2(c)(i)—List each class of voting securities (including convertible voting securities) which will be outstanding after the acquisition has been completed. If there is more than one class of voting securities, include a description of the voting rights of each class. Also list each class of non-voting securities which will be acquired in the acquisition.

Item 2(c)(ii)—Total number of shares of each class of securities listed on page 3 which will be outstanding after the acquisition has been completed.

Item 2(c)(iii)—Total number of shares of each class of securities listed on page 3 which will be acquired in the acquisition. If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person.

Item 2(c)(iv)—Identity of each person acquiring any securities of any class listed on page 3. If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person.

Item 2(c)(v)—Dollar value of securities of each class listed on page 3 to be acquired in this transaction (see § 801.10). If there is more than one acquiring person of any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person. (If the exact dollar value cannot be determined at the time of filing, provide an estimated value and indicate the basis on which the estimate was made.)

Item 2(c)(vi)—Total number of each class of securities listed on page 3 which will be held by acquiring person(s) after the acquisition has been accomplished. If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person.

Item 2(c)(vii)—Percentage of each class of securities listed under 2(c)(vi) above which will be held by the acquiring person(s) after the acquisition has been completed (see § 801.12(b)). If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of security, show data separately for each acquiring person.

Item 2(c)(viii)—Dollar value (or estimated dollar value) of securities to be held as a result of the acquisition (see § 801.13).

Item 2(d)—Furnish copies of final or most recent versions of all documents which constitute the agreement among the acquiring person(s) and the person(s) whose voting securities or assets are to be acquired. (Do not attach these documents to page 4 of the Answer Sheets.)

ITEM 3

Assets and voting securities held as a result of the acquisition (to be completed by both acquiring and acquired persons). State:

Item 3(a)- the percentage of the assets

Item 3(b)- the percentage of the voting securities

Item 3(c)- the aggregate total dollar amount of voting securities and assets of the acquired person to be held by each acquiring person, as a result of the acquisition (see §§ 801.12, 801.13, and 801.14).

ITEM 4

Furnish one copy of each of the following documents. For each entity included within the person filing notification which has prepared its own such documents different from those prepared by the person filing notification, furnish, in addition, one copy of each document from each such other entity. Furnish copies of:

Item 4(a)—all of the following documents which have been filed with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission (or are to be filed contemporaneously in connection with this acquisition): the most recent proxy statement and Form 10-K, each dated not more than three years prior to the date of this Notification and Report Form, all Forms 10-Q and 8-K filed since the end of the period reflected by the Form 10-K being supplied, any registration statement filed in connection with the transaction for which notification is being filed, if the acquisition is a tender offer, Schedule 14D-1. Alternatively, if the person filing notification does not have copies of responsive documents readily available, identification of such documents and citation to date and place of filing will constitute compliance.

NOTE: In response to Item 4(a), the person filing notification may incorporate by reference documents submitted with an earlier filing as explained in the staff formal interpretations dated April 10, 1979, and April 7, 1981, and in § 803.2(e).

Item 4(b)—the most recent annual reports and most recent annual audit reports (of person filing notification and of each unconsolidated United States issuer included within such person) and, if different, the most recent regularly prepared balance sheet of the person filing notification and of each unconsolidated United States issuer included within such person.

Item 4(c)—all studies, surveys, analyses and reports which were prepared by or for any officer(s) or director(s) (or, in the case of unincorporated entities, individuals exercising similar functions) for the purpose of evaluating or analyzing the acquisition with respect to market shares, competition, competitors, markets, potential for sales growth or expansion into product or geographic markets, and indicate (if not contained in the document itself) the date of preparation, the name and title of each individual who prepared each such document.

Persons filing notification may provide an optional index of documents called for by Item 4 on page 5 of the Answer Sheets.

NOTE: If the person filing notification withholds any documents called for by Item 4(c) based on a claim of privilege, the person must provide a statement of reasons for such noncompliance as specified in the staff formal interpretation dated September 13, 1979, and § 803.3(d).

ITEMS 5 through 9 and the Appendix

NOTE: *For Items 5 through 9 and the Appendix limited or separate responses may be required of the person filing notification. (See § 803.2(b) and (c).)*

ITEM 5

ITEMS 5(a) — 5(c). These items request information regarding dollar revenues and lines of commerce at three levels with respect to operations conducted within the United States. (See § 803.2(c)(1).) All persons must submit certain data at the 4-digit (SIC code) industry level. To the extent that dollar revenues are derived from *manufacturing operations* (SIC major groups 20-39), data must also be submitted at the 5-digit *product class* and 7-digit *product levels* (SIC based codes).

Note: See the "References" listed in the General Instructions to the Form. Refer to the 1972 edition of the *Standard Industrial Classification Manual* and its 1977 supplement for the 4-digit (SIC code) industry codes. Refer to the Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products, *1982 Census of Manufactures and Census of Mineral Industries* (MC82-R-1) for the 5-digit product class and 7-digit product codes. Report revenues for the 5-digit and 7-digit codes using the codes in the columns labeled "Product code published." Do not report revenues using the columns labeled "Product code collected."

Insurance carriers (2-digit SIC major group 63) should supply the information requested only with respect to industries not within 2-digit major group 63. Credit agencies other than banks, security and commodity brokers, dealers, exchanges, and services, holding and other investment offices, and real estate companies (2-digit SIC major groups 61, 62, 67 and 65) should identify or explain the revenues reported (e.g., dollar sales, receipts).

Persons filing notification should include the total dollar revenues for 1982 derived by all entities included within the person filing notification at the time this Notification and Report Form is prepared (even if such entities have become included within the person since 1982). For example, if the person filing notification acquired an entity in 1984, it must include that entity's 1982 revenues in Items 5(a) and 5(b)(i).

Item 5(a)—*Dollar revenues by industry.* Provide aggregate 4-digit (SIC code) industry data for 1982.

Item 5(b)(i)—*Dollar revenues by manufactured product.* Provide the following information on the aggregate operations of the person filing notification for 1982 for each 7-digit product of the person in 2-digit SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries).

Do not provide 7-digit data for product codes ending in 00 if the Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products contains a further breakdown. See also the "NOTE" on page I of the these instructions concerning required references to Appendix C of the Numerical List.

Item 5(b)(ii)—*Products added or deleted.* Within 2-digit SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries), identify each product of the person filing notification added or deleted subsequent to 1982, indicate the year of addition or deletion, and state total dollar revenues in the most recent year for each product that has been added. Products may be identified either by 7-digit product code or in the manner ordinarily used by the person filing notification.

Do not include products added since 1982 by reason of mergers or acquisitions occurring since 1982. Dollar revenues derived from such products should be included in response to Item 5(b)(i). However, if an entity acquired since 1982 by the person filing notification (and now included within the person) itself has added any products since 1982, these products and the dollar revenues derived therefrom should be listed here. Products deleted by reason of dispositions of assets or voting securities since 1982 should also be listed here.

Item 5(b)(iii)—*Dollar revenues by manufactured product class.* Provide the following information about the aggregate operations of the person filing notification for the most recent year for each 5-digit *product class* of the person within SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries). If such data have not been compiled for the most recent year, estimates of dollar revenues by 5-digit product class may be provided if a statement describing the method of estimation is furnished.

Item 5(c)—*Dollar revenues by non-manufacturing industry.* Provide the following information concerning the aggregate operations of the person filing notification for the most recent year for each 4-digit (SIC code) industry in SIC major groups other than 20-39 in which the person engaged. If such data have not been compiled for the most recent year, estimates of dollar revenues by 4-digit industry may be provided if a statement describing the method of estimation is furnished. Industries for which the dollar revenues totaled less than one million dollars in the most recent year may be omitted.

NOTE: *This million dollar minimum is applicable only to Item 5(c).*

Insurance carriers (2-digit SIC major group 63) should supply the information requested only with respect to industries not within SIC major group 63, and, if voting securities of an insurance carrier are being acquired directly or indirectly should complete the Insurance Appendix to this Form.

JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATIONS

Item 6(d)—Supply the following information only if the acquisition is the formation of a joint venture or other corporation. (See § 801.40.)

Item 6(d)(i)—List the name and mailing address of the joint venture or other corporation.

Item 6(d)(ii)(A)—List contributions that each person forming the joint venture or other corporation has agreed to make, specifying when each contribution is to be made and the value of the contribution as agreed by the contributors.

Item 6(d)(ii)(B)—Describe any contracts or agreements whereby the joint venture or other corporation will obtain assets or capital from sources other than the persons forming it.

Item 6(d)(ii)(C)—Specify whether and in what amount the persons forming the joint venture or other corporation have agreed to guarantee its credit or obligations.

Item 6(d)(ii)(D)—Describe fully the consideration which each person forming the joint venture or other corporation will receive in exchange for its contribution(s).

Item 6(d)(iii)—Describe generally the business in which the joint venture or other corporation will engage, including location of headquarters and principal plants, warehouses, retail establishments or other places of business, its principal types of products or activities, and the geographic areas in which it will do business.

Item 6(d)(iv)—Identify each 4-digit (SIC code) industry in which the joint venture or other corporation will derive dollar revenues. If the joint venture or other corporation will be engaged in manufacturing, also specify each 5-digit product class in which it will derive dollar revenues.

ITEM 6

This item need not be completed by a person filing notification only as an acquired person if only assets are to be acquired. Persons filing notification may respond to Items 6(a), 6(b), or 6(c) by referencing a "documentary attachment" furnished with this Form if the information so referenced is a complete response and is up-to-date and accurate. Indicate for each item the specific page(s) of the document that are responsive to that item.

Item 6(a)—*Entities within person filing notification.* List the name and headquarters mailing address of each entity included within the person filing notification. Entities with total assets of less than $10 million may be omitted.

Item 6(b)—*Shareholders of person filing notification.* For each entity (including the ultimate parent entity) included within the person filing notification the voting securities of which are held (see § 801.1(c)) by one or more other persons, list the issuer and class of voting securities, the name and headquarters mailing address of each other person which holds five percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of the class, and the number and percentage held by that person. Holders need not be listed for entities with total assets of less than $10 million.

Item 6(c)—*Holdings of person filing notification.* If the person filing notification holds voting securities of any issuer not included within the person filing notification, list the issuer and class, the number and percentage held, and (optionally) the entity within the person filing notification which holds the securities. Holdings of less than five percent of the outstanding voting securities of any issuers, and holdings of issuers with total assets of less than $10 million, may be omitted.

ITEM 7

If, to the knowledge or belief of the person filing notification, the person filing notification derived dollar revenues in the most recent year from operations in any 4-digit (SIC code) industries in which any other person which is a party to the acquisition also derived dollar revenues in the most recent year (or in which a joint venture or other corporation will derive dollar revenues), then for each such 4-digit (SIC code) industry:

Item 7(a)—supply the 4-digit SIC code and description for the industry.

Item 7(b)—list the name of each person which is a party to the acquisition which also derived dollar revenues in the 4-digit industry.

Item 7(c)—*Geographic market information*

Item 7(c)(i)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which, to the knowledge or belief of the person filing notification, the products in that 4-digit industry produced by the person filing notification are sold without a significant change in their form, whether they are sold by the person filing notification or by others to whom such products have been sold or resold.

Item 7(c)(ii)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 01-17 and 40-49 (agriculture, forestry and fishing, mining, construction, transportation, communications, electric, gas and sanitary services) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which the person filing notification conducts such operations.

Item 7(c)(iii)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 50-51 (wholesale trade) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states, (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which the customers of the person filing notification are located.

Item 7(c)(iv)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 52-61, 70, 75, 78, and 80 (retail trade, banking and certain services) listed in Item 7(a) above, provide the address, arranged by state, county and city or town, of each establishment from which dollar revenues were derived in the most recent year by the person filing notification.

Item 7(c)(v)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major group 62, 64-67, 72, 73, 76, 79 and 81-89 (certain finance, insurance and real estate groups and certain services) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which establishments were located from which the person filing notification derived revenues in the most recent year, and

Item 7 (c)(vi)— for each 4-digit industry within SIC 63 (insurance) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the state(s) in which the person filing notification is licensed to write insurance.

NOTE: Except in the case of those SIC major industry groups mentioned in Item 7(c)(iv) above, the person filing notification may respond with the word "national" if business is conducted in all 50 states.

ITEM 8

Item 8—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate if the acquired person and an acquiring person maintained a vendor-vendee relationship during the most recent year with respect to any manufactured product (or, if the acquisition is the formation of a joint venture or other corporation (see § 801.40), if the joint venture or other corporation will supply to any of the persons forming it any manufactured product which such person purchased from another such person during the most recent year) which the vendee either resells or consumes in or incorporates into the manufacture of any product. Persons filing notification which are vendees of such product(s) should list each product purchased, identify each vendor which is a party to the acquisition from which the product was purchased and state the dollar amount of the product purchased from that vendor during the most recent year.

Manufactured products are those within 2-digit SIC major groups 20-39. Any product purchased from the vendor in an aggregate annual amount not exceeding $1 million, or the manufacture, consumption or use of which is not attributable to the assets to be acquired, or to the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired (including entities controlled by the issuer), may be omitted.

ITEM 9

Item 9—*Previous acquisitions* (to be completed by acquiring persons). Determine each 4-digit (SIC code) industry listed in Item 7(a) above in which the person filing notification derived dollar revenues of $1 million or more in the most recent year and in which either the acquired issuer derived revenues of $1 million or more in the most recent year (or in which, in the case of the formation of a joint venture or other corporation, the joint venture or other corporation reasonably can be expected to derive dollar revenues of $1 million or more), or revenues of $1 million or more in the most recent year were attributable to the acquired assets.

For each such 4-digit industry list all acquisitions made by the person filing notification in the five years prior to the date of filing of entities deriving dollar revenues in that 4-digit industry. List only acquisitions of more than 50 percent of the voting securities or assets of entities which had annual net sales or total assets greater than $10 million in the year prior to the acquisition.

For each such acquisition, supply:

(a) the name of the entity acquired,

(b) the headquarters address of the entity prior to the acquisition,

(c) whether securities or assets were acquired,

(d) the consummation date of the acquisition,

(e) the annual net sales of the acquired entity for the year prior to the acquisition,

(f) the total assets of the acquired entity in the year prior to the acquisition, and

(g) the 4-digit (SIC code) industries (by number and description) identified above in which the acquired entity derived dollar revenues.

ITEM 10

Item 10(a)—*Print or type the name and title, firm name, address, and telephone number of the individual to contact regarding this Notification and Report Form.* (See § 803.20(b)(2)(ii).)

Item 10(b)—*Foreign filing persons print or type the name and title, firm name, address, and telephone number of an individual located in the United States designated for the limited purpose of receiving notice of the issuance of a request for additional information or documentary material.* (See § 803.20(b)(2)(iii).)

Certification—(See § 803.6.)

APPENDIX TO NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM INSURANCE

Insurance carriers (2-digit SIC major group 63) are required to complete this Appendix if voting securities of an insurance carrier are being acquired directly or indirectly.

ITEM 1

Item 1(A)—*Life Insurance.* Provide for the most recent year the amount of premium receipts (calculated on the accrual basis) for each of the lines of insurance listed on page 18 of the Answer Sheets.

Item 1(B)—*New Business.* Provide for the most recent year the amount of new life insurance business issued in the United States (exclusive of revivals, increases, dividend additions and reinsurance ceded) for each of the lines of insurance listed on page 18 of the Answer Sheets.

ITEM 2

Item 2(A)—*Property Liability Insurance.* Provide for the most recent year the amount of direct premiums written in the United States for each line of insurance specified in Part 2 of the Underwriting and Investment Exhibit of your carrier's annual convention statement.

Item 2(B)—Provide for the most recent year the amount of net premiums written in the United States for each line of insurance specified in Part 2 of the Underwriting and Investment Exhibit of your carrier's annual convention statement.

ITEM 3

Item 3(A)—*Title Insurance.* Provide for the most recent year the amount of net direct title insurance premiums written in the United States.

Item 3(B)—Provide for the most recent year the amount of direct title insurance premiums earned in the United States.

16 C.F.R. Part 803 - Appendix

Approved by OMB
3084-0005
Expires [illegible]

NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM FOR CERTAIN MERGERS AND ACQUISITIONS

THE INFORMATION REQUIRED TO BE SUPPLIED ON THESE ANSWER SHEETS IS SPECIFIED IN THE INSTRUCTIONS

➡ Attach the Affidavit required by § 803.5 to this page

FOR OFFICE USE ONLY
TRANSACTION NUMBER

CTO ETA

Is this Acquisition a CASH TENDER OFFER? ☐ YES ☐ NO

Do you request Early Termination of the Waiting Period? ☐ YES ☐ NO
(Grants of early termination are published in the Federal Register.)

ITEM 1

(a) NAME AND HEADQUARTERS ADDRESS OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION (ultimate parent entity)

(b) PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION IS

☐ an acquiring person ☐ an acquired person ☐ both

(c) LIST NAMES OF ULTIMATE PARENT ENTITIES OF ALL ACQUIRING PERSONS

LIST NAMES OF ULTIMATE PARENT ENTITIES OF ALL ACQUIRED PERSONS

(d) THIS ACQUISITION IS (put an X in all the boxes that apply)

☐ an acquisition of assets
☐ a merger (see § 801.2)
☐ an acquisition subject to § 801.2(e)
☐ formation of a joint venture or other corporation (see § 801.40)
☐ an acquisition subject to § 801.30 (specify type) ______
☐ other (specify) ______

☐ a consolidation (see § 801.2)
☐ an acquisition of voting securities
☐ a secondary acquisition
☐ an acquisition subject to § 801.31

(e) INDICATE HIGHEST NOTIFICATION THRESHOLD in § 801.1(h) FOR WHICH THIS FORM IS BEING FILED (acquiring person only)

☐ $15 million ☐ 15% ☐ 25% ☐ 50%

(f) VALUE OF VOTING SECURITIES

VALUE OF ASSETS

(g) PUT AN X IN THE APPROPRIATE BOX TO DESCRIBE ENTITY FILING NOTIFICATION

☐ corporation ☐ partnership ☐ other (specify) ______

(h) DATA FURNISHED BY

☐ calendar year ☐ fiscal year (specify period) ______ (month/year) to ______ (month/year)

(i) PUT AN X IN THE APPROPRIATE BOX AND GIVE THE NAME AND ADDRESS OF THE ENTITY FILING NOTIFICATION (if other than ultimate parent entity)

☐ N/A ☐ This report is being filed on behalf of a foreign person pursuant to § 803.4

☐ This report is being filed on behalf of the ultimate parent entity by another entity within the same person authorized by it to file pursuant to § 803.2(a)

NAME OF ENTITY FILING NOTIFICATION

ADDRESS

THIS FORM IS REQUIRED BY LAW and must be filed separately by each person which, by reason of a merger, consolidation or acquisition, is subject to § 7A of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. § 18a, as added by Section 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. No. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390, and rules promulgated thereunder (hereinafter referred to as "the rules" or by section number). The statute and rules are set forth in the *Federal Register* at 43 FR 33450; the rules may also be found at 16 CFR Parts 801-03. Failure to file this Notification and Report Form, and to observe the required waiting period before consummating the acquisition in accordance with the applicable provisions of 15 U.S.C. § 18a and the rules, subjects any "person," as defined in the rules, or any individuals responsible for noncompliance, to liability for a penalty of not more than $10,000 for each day during which such person is in violation of 15 U.S.C. § 18a.

All information and documentary material filed in or with this Form is confidential. It is exempt from disclosure under the Freedom of Information Act, and may be made public only in an administrative or judicial proceeding, or disclosed to Congress or to a duly authorized committee or subcommittee of Congress.

Complete and return two notarized copies (with one set of documentary attachments) of the Notification and Report Form to Premerger Notification Office, Bureau of Competition, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, D.C. 20580, and three notarized copies (with one set of documentary attachments) to Director of Operations, Antitrust Division, Room 3218, Department of Justice, Washington, D.C. 20530. The central office for information and assistance with respect to matters in connection with this Notification and Report Form is Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, D.C. 20580, phone (202) 326-3100.

FTC Form C 4 (rev. [illegible])

1

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

DATE

(j) NAME AND ADDRESS OF ENTITY MAKING ACQUISITION OR WHOSE ASSETS OR VOTING SECURITIES ARE BEING ACQUIRED IF DIFFERENT FROM THE ULTIMATE PARENT ENTITY IDENTIFIED IN ITEM 1(a)

PERCENT OF VOTING SECURITIES HELD BY EACH ENTITY IDENTIFIED IN ITEM 1(j)

ITEM 2

2(a) DESCRIPTION OF ACQUISITION

2

Reproduced from poor document.

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

3(a) ASSETS TO BE ACQUIRED *(to be completed only for assets acquisitions)*

3(b) ASSETS HELD BY ACQUIRING PERSON

3(c) VOTING SECURITIES TO BE ACQUIRED

(i) LIST AND DESCRIPTION OF VOTING SECURITIES AND LIST OF NON-VOTING SECURITIES

(ii) TOTAL NUMBER OF SHARES OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITY

(iii) TOTAL NUMBER OF SHARES OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITY BEING ACQUIRED

(Item 3(c) continued on next page)

3

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

3(c)(iv) IDENTITY OF PERSONS ACQUIRING SECURITIES

3(c)(v) DOLLAR VALUE OF SECURITIES IN EACH CLASS BEING ACQUIRED

3(c)(vi) TOTAL NUMBER OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITIES HELD BY ACQUIRING PERSON AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION

3(c)(vii) PERCENTAGE OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITIES HELD BY ACQUIRING PERSON AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION

3(c)(viii) DOLLAR VALUE OF SECURITIES TO BE HELD AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION

3(d) SUBMIT A COPY OF THE MOST RECENT VERSION OF CONTRACT OR AGREEMENT *(or letter of intent to merge or acquire)*

DO NOT ATTACH THIS DOCUMENT TO THIS PAGE ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER OF CONTRACT OR AGREEMENT ______

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 3

ASSETS AND VOTING SECURITIES HELD AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION

(a) PERCENTAGE OF ASSETS ______

(b) PERCENTAGE OF VOTING SECURITIES ______

(c) AGGREGATE TOTAL VALUE ______

ITEM 4 PERSONS FILING NOTIFICATION MAY PROVIDE BELOW AN OPTIONAL INDEX OF DOCUMENTS REQUIRED TO BE SUBMITTED BY ITEM 4 (SEE ITEM BY ITEM INSTRUCTIONS). THESE DOCUMENTS SHOULD NOT BE ATTACHED TO THIS PAGE.

(a) DOCUMENTS FILED WITH THE UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION — ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER

(b) ANNUAL REPORTS, ANNUAL AUDIT REPORTS AND REGULARLY PREPARED BALANCE SHEETS — ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER

(c) STUDIES, SURVEYS, ANALYSES AND REPORTS — ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 5 (See the "References" listed in the General Instructions to the Form. Refer to the 1972 edition of the *Standard Industrial Classification Manual* and its 1977 Supplement for the 4-digit (SIC Code) industry codes. Refer to the Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products, *1982 Census of Manufactures and Census of Mineral Industries* (MC82-R-1) for the 5-digit product class and 7-digit product codes. Report revenues for the 5-digit and 7-digit codes using the codes in the columns labeled "Product code published." Do not report revenues using codes in the columns labeled "Product code Collected.")

(a) DOLLAR REVENUES BY INDUSTRY

4-DIGIT INDUSTRY CODE Product code published	DESCRIPTION	1982 TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM [illegible] PRODUCTS ADDED OR DELETED

DESCRIPTION (7-DIGIT PRODUCT CODE)	ADD	DELETE	YEAR OF CHANGE	TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

ITEM [illegible] DOLLAR REVENUES BY MANUFACTURED PRODUCT CLASS

5-DIGIT PRODUCT CLASS CODE Product data published	DESCRIPTION	YEAR ____ TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

(Item [illegible] continued on page 9)

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM [illegible] DOLLAR REVENUES BY MANUFACTURED PRODUCTS

7-DIGIT PRODUCT CODE Product data published	DESCRIPTION	1980 TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

DATE

[illegible] DOLLAR REVENUES BY MANUFACTURED PRODUCT CLASS CONTINUED

5-DIGIT PRODUCT CLASS CODE	DESCRIPTION	YEAR TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

[illegible] DOLLAR REVENUES BY NON-MANUFACTURING INDUSTRY

4-DIGIT INDUSTRY CODE	DESCRIPTION	YEAR TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

9

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

DATE

[illegible] COMPLETE ONLY IF ACQUISITION IS THE FORMATION OF A JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATION

[illegible] NAME AND ADDRESS OF THE JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATION

[illegible]

(A) CONTRIBUTIONS THAT EACH PERSON FORMING THE JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATION HAS AGREED TO MAKE

(B) DESCRIPTION OF ANY CONTRACTS OR AGREEMENTS

(C) DESCRIPTION OF ANY CREDIT GUARANTEES OR OBLIGATIONS

(D) DESCRIPTION OF CONSIDERATION WHICH EACH PERSON FORMING THE JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATION WILL RECEIVE

[illegible] DESCRIPTION OF THE BUSINESS IN WHICH THE JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATION WILL ENGAGE

[illegible] SOURCES OF DOLLAR REVENUES BY 4-DIGIT SIC CODE [illegible] MANUFACTURING AND BY 5-DIGIT PRODUCT CLASS [illegible]

10

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

DATE

ITEM 6

(a) ENTITIES WITHIN PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

(b) SHAREHOLDERS OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

DATE

(c) HOLDINGS OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

ITEM 7 DOLLAR REVENUES

(a) 4-DIGIT SIC CODE AND DESCRIPTION

(b) NAME OF EACH PERSON WHICH ALSO DERIVED DOLLAR REVENUES

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

7(d) GEOGRAPHIC MARKET INFORMATION

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 8 VENDOR-VENDEE RELATIONSHIP

☐ NO ☐ YES (if yes and you are the vendee, complete the following)

PRODUCT PURCHASED	VENDOR	DOLLAR AMOUNT

ITEM 9 PRIOR ACQUISITIONS (to be completed by acquiring person only)

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 10 IDENTIFICATION OF PERSON TO CONTACT REGARDING THIS REPORT

10(a) NAME OF CONTACT PERSON	TITLE OF CONTACT PERSON
FIRM NAME AND BUSINESS ADDRESS	BUSINESS TELEPHONE NUMBER

10(b) IDENTIFICATION OF AN INDIVIDUAL LOCATED IN THE UNITED STATES DESIGNATED FOR THE LIMITED PURPOSE OF RECEIVING NOTICE OF ISSUANCE OF A REQUEST FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION OR DOCUMENTS (See § 803.20(b)(2)(i))

NAME	TITLE
ADDRESS	BUSINESS TELEPHONE NUMBER

CERTIFICATION

This **NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM**, together with any and all appendices and attachments thereto, was prepared and assembled under my supervision in accordance with instructions issued by the Federal Trade Commission. Subject to the recognition that, where so indicated, reasonable estimates have been made because books and records do not provide the required data, the information is, to the best of my knowledge, true, correct, and complete in accordance with the statute and rules.

NAME (Please print or type)	TITLE
SIGNATURE	DATE

Subscribed and sworn to before me at the

City of ____________________, State of ________________

this ____________________ day of ____________________ 19____.

Signature ________________________________

My Commission expires ____________________________

[SEAL]

15

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

APPENDIX INSURANCE

ITEM 1

	YEAR ______ AMOUNT
A PREMIUM RECEIPTS	
1 LIFE INSURANCE	
1a ORDINARY LIFE INSURANCE	
1b GROUP LIFE INSURANCE (including Federal Employees' Group Life Insurance and Servicemen's Group Life Insurance, but excluding credit life insurance)	
1c INDUSTRIAL LIFE INSURANCE	
1d CREDIT LIFE INSURANCE	
2 ANNUITY CONSIDERATIONS	
2a INDIVIDUAL ANNUITY CONSIDERATIONS	
2b GROUP ANNUITY CONSIDERATIONS	
3 HEALTH INSURANCE	
3a INDIVIDUAL HEALTH INSURANCE	
3b GROUP HEALTH INSURANCE	
TOTAL	

	YEAR ______ AMOUNT
B NEW BUSINESS	
1 ORDINARY LIFE INSURANCE	
2 GROUP LIFE INSURANCE	
3 INDUSTRIAL LIFE INSURANCE	
4 CREDIT LIFE INSURANCE	
TOTAL	

ITEM 2 PROPERTY LIABILITY INSURANCE

YEAR ______

LINE OF INSURANCE	A DIRECT PREMIUMS	B NET PREMIUMS

ITEM 3 TITLE INSURANCE

A NET DIRECT PREMIUMS WRITTEN	B DIRECT PREMIUMS EARNED	YEAR ______

16

By direction of the Commission.

Emily H. Rock,

Secretary.

[FR Doc. 87-4370 Filed 3-5-87; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 6750-01-M

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

16 CFR Parts 801, 802 and 803

Premerger Notification; Reporting and Waiting Period Requirements

AGENCY: Federal Trade Commission.

ACTION: Notice of proposed rulemaking.

SUMMARY: These proposed rules would amend the premerger notification rules that require the parties to certain mergers or acquisitions to file reports with the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice, and to wait a specified period of time before consummating such transactions. The reporting and waiting period requirements are intended to enable these enforcement agencies to determine whether a proposed merger or acquisition might violate the antitrust laws if consummated and, when appropriate, to seek a preliminary injunction in federal court to prevent consummation. During the eight years the rules have been in effect, the Federal Trade Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General for Antitrust, has amended the premerger notification rules several times in order to improve the program's effectiveness and to lessen the burden of complying with the rules. These proposed revisions are intended to improve the program's effectiveness by amending the definition of the term "control" as it applies to partnerships and other entities that do not have outstanding voting securities.

DATE: Comments must be received on or before April 6, 1987.

ADDRESSES: Written comments should be submitted to both (1) the Secretary, Federal Trade Commission, Room 136, Washington, DC 20580, and (2) the Assistant Attorney General, Antitrust Division, Department of Justice, Room 3214, Washington, DC 20530.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: Kenneth M. Davidson, Attorney, Evaluation Office, Bureau of Competition, Room 394, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580. Telephone: (202) 326–3300.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION:

Regulatory Flexibility Act

The proposed amendments to the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification rules are designed to improve the effectiveness of the premerger notification program. They alter the approach to rulemaking proposed on September 24, 1985 (50 FR 38742, see Proposal 1) by narrowing the types of transactions that would have been made reportable by the previously proposed rules. The Commission has determined that none of the proposed rules is a major rule, as that term is defined in Executive Order 12291. The proposed rules will not result in: An annual effect on the economy of $100 million or more; a major increase in costs or prices for consumers, individual industries, Federal, State, or local government agencies, or geographic regions; or significant adverse effects on competition, employment, investment, productivity, innovation or the ability of United States-based enterprises to compete with foreign-based enterprises in the domestic market. None of the amendments would expand the coverage of the premerger notification rules in a way that would affect small business. Therefore, pursuant to section 605(b) of the Administrative Procedure Act, 5 U.S.C. 605(b), as added by the Regulatory Flexibility Act, Pub. L. 96–354 (September 19, 1980), the Federal Trade Commission certifies that these rules will not have a significant economic impact on a substantial number of small entities. Section 603 of the Administrative Procedure Act, 5 U.S.C. 603, requiring a final regulatory flexibility analysis of some rules, is therefore inapplicable.

Paperwork Reduction Act

The Hart-Scott-Rodino Premerger Notification rules and report form contain information collection requirements as defined by the Paperwork Reduction Act, 44 U.S.C. 3501 *et seq.* These requirements have been reviewed and approved by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB Control No. 3084–0005). Because the proposed amendments would affect the information collection requirements of the premerger notification program, the proposed amendments have been submitted to OMB for review under section 3504(h) of the Paperwork Reduction Act. Comments on that submission may be directed to the Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs, Office of Management and Budget, Washington, DC 20503, Attention: Don Arbuckle, Desk Officer for the Federal Trade Commission.

Background

Section 7A of the Clayton Act ("the act"), 15 U.S.C. 18a, as added by sections 201 and 202 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, requires persons contemplating certain acquisitions of assets or voting securities to give advance notice to the Federal Trade Commission (hereafter referred to as "the Commission") and the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice (hereafter referred to as "the Assistant Attorney General"), and to wait certain designated periods before the consummation of such acquisitions. The transactions to which the advance notice requirement is applicable and the length of the waiting period required are set out respectively in subsections (a) and (b) of section 7A. This amendment to the Clayton Act does not change the standards used in determining the legality of mergers and acquisitions under the antitrust laws.

The legislative history suggests several purposes underlying the act. Congress wanted to assure that large acquisitions were subjected to meaningful scrutiny under the antitrust laws prior to consummation. To this end, Congress clearly intended to eliminate the large "midnight merger," which is negotiated in secret and announced just before, or sometimes only after, the closing takes place. Congress also provided an opportunity for the Commission or the Assistant Attorney General (who are sometimes hereafter referred to collectively as the "antitrust agencies" or the "enforcement agencies") to seek a court order enjoining the completion of those transactions that the agencies deem to present significant antitrust problems. Finally, Congress sought to facilitate an effective remedy when a challenge by one of the enforcement agencies proved successful. Thus, the act requires that the antitrust agencies receive prior notification of significant acquisitions, provides certain tools to facilitate a prompt, thorough investigation of the competitive implications of these acquisitions, and assures the enforcement agencies an opportunity to seek a preliminary injunction before the parties to an acquisition are legally free to consummate it, reducing the problem of unscrambling the assets after the transaction has taken place.

Subsection 7A(d)(1) of the act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d)(1), directs the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 553, to require that the notification be in such form and contain such information and documentary material as may be necessary and appropriate to determine whether the proposed transaction may, if consummated, violate the antitrust laws. Subsection 7A(d)(2) of the act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d)(2), grants the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 553, the authority (A) to define the terms used in the act, (B) to exempt additional persons or transactions from the act's notification and waiting period requirements, and (C) to prescribe such other rules as may be necessary and appropriate to carry out the purposes of section 7A.

On December 15, 1976, the Commission issued proposed rules and a proposed Notification and Report Form ("the Form") to implement the act. This proposed rulemaking was published in the **Federal Register** of December 20, 1976, 41 FR 55488. Because of the volume of public comment, it became clear to the Commission that some substantial revisions would have to be made in the original rules. On July 25, 1977, the Commission determined that additional public comment on the rules would be desirable and approved revised proposed rules and a revised proposed Notification and Report Form. The revised rules and Form were published in the **Federal Register** of August 1, 1977, 42 FR 39040. Additional changes in the revised rules and Form were made after the close of the comment period. The Commission formally promulgated the final rules and Form, and issued an accompanying Statement of Basis and Purpose on July 10, 1978. The Assistant Attorney General gave his formal concurrence on July 18, 1978. The final rules and Form and the Statement of Basis and Purpose were published in the **Federal Register** of July 31, 1978, 43 FR 33451, and became effective on September 5, 1978.

The rules are divided into three parts, which appear at 16 CFR Parts 801, 802 and 803. Part 801 defines a number of the terms used in the act and rules, and explains which acquisitions are subject to the reporting and waiting period requirements. Part 802 contains a number of exemptions from these requirements. Part 803 explains the procedures for complying with the act. The Notification and Report Form, which is completed by persons required to file notification, is an appendix to Part 803 of the rules.

Changes of a substantive nature have been made in the premerger notification rules or Form on five occasions since they were first promulgated. The first was an increase in the minimum dollar value exemption contained in § 802.20 of the rules. This amendment was proposed in the **Federal Register** of August 10, 1979, 44 FR 47099, and was published in final form in the **Federal Register** of November 21, 1979, 44 FR 60781. The second amendment replaced the requirement that certain revenue data for the year 1972 be provided in the Notification and Report Form with a requirement that comparable data be provided for the year 1977. This change was made because total revenues for the year 1977 broken down by Standard Industrial Classification (SIC) codes became available from the Bureau of the Census. The amendment appeared in the **Federal Register** of March 5, 1980, 45 FR 14205, and was effective May 3, 1980.

The third set of changes was published by the Federal Trade Commission as proposed rules changes in the **Federal Register** of July 29, 1981, 46 FR 38710. These revisions were designed to clarify and improve the effectiveness of the rules and of the Notification and Report Form as well as to reduce the burden of filing notification. Several comments on the proposed changes were received during the comment period. Final rules, which adopted some of the suggestions received during the comment period but which were substantially the same as the proposed rules, were published in the **Federal Register** of July 29, 1983, 48 FR 34427, and became effective on August 29, 1983. The fourth change, replacing the requirement to provide 1977 revenue data with a requirement to provide 1982 data on the Form, was published in the **Federal Register** of March 26, 1986, 51 FR 10368.

In addition, the Notification and Report Form, found in 16 CFR 803 (Appendix), has undergone minor revisions on two other occasions. The new versions were approved by the Office of Management and Budget on December 29, 1981, and February 23, 1983, respectively. Most recently, the information collection requirements of the Notification and Report Form were approved by the Office of Management and Budget on September 30, 1985, for a period of three years.

The fifth set of changes to the rules and the Notification and Report Form was published by the Federal Trade Commission as proposed rule changes in the **Federal Register** of September 24, 1985, 50 FR 38742. Those thirteen proposed revisions were designed to reduce the cost to the public of complying with the rules and to improve the program's effectiveness. Numerous comments were received on the thirteen proposals. The Commission decided to adopt nine of the proposals (one in significantly modified form), to reject one proposal for budgetary reasons, and to defer action on the other three: The proposal to require reporting by owners of "acquisition vehicles" (Proposal 1 of the September 24, 1985, proposed amendments); the proposed exemption of certain asset acquisitions, including the acquisitions of current supplies, new durable goods, and some types of real estate (Proposal 5); and, the proposal to increase the "controlled issuer" threshold that would have expanded the exemption for transactions valued at $15 million or less in § 802.20(b) and for certain foreign transactions described in § 802.50 and § 802.51 (Proposal 6). Final rules, which adopted some of the suggestions received from public comments, were published this day in the **Federal Register** and will become effective on April 10, 1987. These changes included further revisions to the Notification and Report Form.

The current set of proposals to change the premerger notification rules grows out of the comments to Proposal 1 of the September 24, 1985, **Federal Register** notice, the proposed "acquisition vehicle" rules. The underreporting problem that the "acquisition vehicle" approach was designed to solve is extensively discussed in that notice of proposed rulemaking. It explains both how in some circumstances an acquisition made by a partnership is not subject to the reporting and waiting obligations of the act, and how in similar circumstances an acquisition made by a newly formed corporation that has no controlling owner is not subject to the obligations of the act. The proposed rules would have required both types of transactions to be reported.

The proposed "acquisition vehicle" rules received the second largest number of public comments. They were discussed by comments 2, 4, 7, 15, 16, 18, and 19. While the comments differed on numerous points, and not all were critical, three significant points emerged: First, it is likely the proposed rules would generate a large number of notification filings; second, the rules might be subject to evasion by relatively simple expedients; and finally, there are less inclusive approaches that could accomplish the primary objective of the "acquisition vehicle" proposal.

Because of the importance of these issues to the effectiveness of the premerger program, the Commission has reconsidered its proposal and developed a new approach that applies only to partnerships and other entities that do not issue voting securities. While not based directly on suggestions from the public comments, the Commission believes its new proposal is responsive to the concerns raised in those comments.

The Commission invites interested persons to submit comments on the nature and scope of the problems described in the Proposed Statement of Basis and Purpose, as well as on the appropriateness of the proposed amendments to the rules as solutions to those problems.

The Commission also invites responses to the following specific questions:

1. Does the partnership control proposal sufficiently decrease the possibility that a competitively significant transaction might occur without being reportable under the premerger notification program?

2. The American Bar Association ("ABA"), in its comments on the "acquisition vehicle" rules, proposed to amend the definition of control in a manner similar to the partnership control approach. The ABA suggested that the rules include an alternative definition of control that would apply to all acquiring persons that do not otherwise meet the act's section 7A(a)(2) size-of-person test. With respect to such persons, control would be ascribed to that "owner" holding the largest interest in the acquiring person equal to or greater than 25 percent, regardless of whether such person was otherwise exempt from reporting. The percentage ownership interest would be determined in accordance with the method proposed by the Commission in the "acquisition vehicle" rules and retained in the partnership control rule. Is the ABA proposal, or some other variant, a preferable alternative to the partnership control rule?

3. What are the costs and benefits of the partnership control proposal?

4. What are the costs and benefits of the ABA proposal?

Proposed Statement of Basis and Purpose for the Commission's Revised Premerger Notification Rules

Section 801.1(b) Control

Having considered the comments received concerning the proposed "acquisition vehicle" rules published on September 24, 1985, 50 FR 38742, the Commission has decided to propose a different and less inclusive regulation. It appears that the "acquisition vehicle" approach would have required filings in connection with numerous competitively insignificant transactions, such as management buyouts. Since the Commission is not aware of any transaction to date that violated the antitrust laws but was not reported under the premerger notification program because the acquisition vehicle was not a controlled entity, it seems inappropriate to employ an approach that is likely to require notifications for a host of competitively insignificant transactions.

The Commission remains concerned, however, about the possibility under the existing rules that an anticompetitive transaction might occur without being reported under the premerger notification program. For example, there have been a number of unreportable transactions involving firms in the same industry. The Commission therefore proposes to expand the definition of "control" for purposes of the rules. This change, together with § 801.90 (which provides that the use of any particular acquisition vehicle "for the purpose of avoiding the obligation to comply with the requirements of the act shall be disregarded, and the obligation to comply shall be determined by applying the act . . . to the substance of the transaction") should insure that competitively significant transactions of this type will be reported under the premerger notification program. If, however, the proposed rule becomes effective and unreportable acquisitions raising competitive concerns occur, the Commission will promptly consider returning to the approach underlying its previously proposed "acquisition vehicle" rules.

The Commission is proposing a rule that would expand the definition of control to include persons owning 50 percent or more of partnerships or other entities that do not issue voting securities. They would be required to report acquisitions by the entities they own, just as persons must currently report acquisitions by corporations if they own 50 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of those corporations. Unlike the previously proposed "acquisition vehicle" rules, this proposal would not require minority owners to report acquisitions.

The Commission is also proposing to change the existing alternative definition of control, which is based on the contractual power to designate members of an entity's board of directors or analogous body. The proposed change—from the power to designate a majority to the power to designate 50 percent—will result in a uniform 50 percent criterion for all three definitions of control in the rule.

Before discussing the operation of the proposed partnership control rule, it should be helpful to examine some of the considerations that led the Commission to move from an "acquisition vehicle" approach to the new "control of partnership" approach. First, the drafting of an acquisition vehicle rule has certain inherent problems. That approach tends to be overinclusive and, at least arguably, might not deter a person determined to avoid the notification obligation. Second, further examination of the kinds of potentially significant acquisitions that are not reported under the current rules indicates they are likely to be acquisitions by partnerships dominated by one person. While unreported takeovers by corporations and other business entities in which ownership is fragmented are theoretically possible, they do not yet appear to have been sources of competitive problems. Accordingly, because it is possible to draft a less complex rule that would make acquisitions by persons who control partnerships reportable, the Commission has decided it is more appropriate to determine whether existing underreporting problems can be adequately addressed by adopting this more limited approach.

Problems With the Acquisition Vehicle Approach

The overinclusiveness of the acquisition vehicle approach is derived from its structure. It disregards, for purposes of determining reporting obligations, the existence of the acquiring entity. Thus, that approach could require a notification from every person who, through its holdings of voting securities in an acquisition vehicle, was deemed to be acquiring more than a $15 million interest in a target. With the recent proliferation of large leveraged management buyouts, this approach would likely have generated a large number of filings concerning transactions that have little or no competitive significance.

Leveraged buyouts are commonly made by shell corporations formed for the purpose of making the acquisition. As the Commission stated today in this **Federal Register** in the statement of basis and purpose describing § 801.11(e), shell corporations "typically have had no sales and frequently have no assets other than the cash or loans used to make the acquisition. Thus, when they are not controlled by any other entity, the acquiring person has no competitive presence. In such instances the acquisition does not combine businesses but merely changes the ownership of a single ongoing business; it therefore cannot reduce competition. Accordingly, the Commission has concluded that no purpose is served by requiring such acquisitions to be reported." Similarly, because management buyouts usually do not combine businesses, no purpose is served by requiring such transactions to be reported, as would an acquisition vehicle rule.

Of course, an acquisition vehicle (whether heavily leveraged or not) might include among its owners competitors or potential competitors of the acquired entity. In such instances there would be a reason to require reporting. Unfortunately, it is difficult to formulate a criterion that would exempt competitively insignificant groups but would not also exempt competitively significant groups. As a result, there is a strong tendency in the acquisition vehicle approach, exacerbated by the growing popularity of management buyouts, to require a substantial number of unnecessary additional filings.

The proposed "acquisition vehicle" rules sought to solve underreporting problems for both known and theoretically possible means of avoiding the obligations of the act. The comprehensive scope of those proposed rules is, in part, responsible for the substantial problems of overinclusiveness and enforceability. The Commission now believes it is more appropriate initially to direct its rulemaking at persons who make acquisitions through partnerships they dominate. Until now, the most significant unreported transactions of which the Commission is aware were all acquisitions by partnerships that were dominated by one person. Consequently, the Commission believes it need not require any reporting by minority shareholders of corporate acquisition vehicles.

Should the Commission find persuasive evidence that this form of transaction appears to be omitting from the premerger notification system competitively significant transactions, it would reexamine the acquisition vehicle approach.

Control of Partnerships and Other Entities That Have Not Issued Voting Securities

There have been widely publicized instances in which acquisitions were structured to be made by partnerships rather than corporations, and were not reported under the act, even though the partnerships were owned and operated principally by one person, and that person was a competitor of the acquired person. That result is inconsistent with the treatment of corporations that are dominated by one person, and with the objectives of the act and the rules.

Acquisitions by partnerships can avoid premerger review as a result of two principles of premerger reporting: one, a formal rule for calculating assets of an entity, 16 CFR 801.11(e), and the other, a Premerger Notification Office informal interpretation that a partnership is its own "ultimate parent entity" (that is, a partnership is not controlled by its partners). Section 801.11(e) directs that an entity without a balance sheet not include, in determining its size, any assets that are contributed to the entity for the purpose of making an acquisition. Thus, for example, if a partnership is formed to buy a $1 billion company and the partners contribute $1 billion in cash, the acquisition of the company by the partnership is not reportable. The partnership does not meet the $10 million minimum size criterion of section 7A(a)(2) of the act because § 801.11(e) directs the partnership not to count the $1 billion that will be used to pay for the acquisition. The informal interpretation deems the acquisition to have been made by the partnership itself, which has no other assets, rather than its partners, who may well have other assets.

Of course, if the partnership were employed in the acquisition "for the purpose of avoiding the obligations to comply with the requirements of the act," its existence would be disregarded and the obligations of the act would be determined by applying the act and the rules to the substance of the transaction. 16 CFR 801.90. For example, some persons might be tempted to make an acquisition through a partnership for the purpose of delaying their premerger notifications to the antitrust agencies until they were required by the Federal securities laws to announce their acquisition publicly. If a partnership were used for the purpose of delaying or avoiding reporting, § 801.90 would attribute the acquisitions to the partners individually. They would be required to comply with the obligations of the act personally prior to consummating the transaction.

The Commission now proposes to require partners, rather than partnerships, to report transactions in certain other circumstances. It proposes to accomplish this result by amending the rule defining control, § 801.1(b), to provide that a partnership or other unincorporated entity will be deemed to be controlled by any person who owns 50 percent or more of the entity. Thus, a partner who met the statutory $10 million minimum size criterion and owned 50 percent or more of the partnership would be required to report acquisitions made by the partnership. The rule would be analogous to the circumstances in which a corporation is deemed to be controlled by one or more of its shareholders. It would thereby abolish the overly general presumption that partnerships are always independent entities.

This change would mean, in the example of the acquisition of the $1 billion company discussed above, the transaction could be reportable if one of the partners was entitled to fifty percent or more of the firm's profits (or, upon dissolution, of its assets), and that partner's total assets or net annual sales were $10 million or more. That controlling partner, or its parent, would become the "ultimate parent entity" pursuant to § 801.1(a)(3). It would therefore be deemed to be the person making the acquisition.

This proposed attribution of control to persons owning such large economic interests in entities that do not issue voting securities seems to be a more appropriate way to apply the premerger notification procedures. As matters currently stand, for example, a person can make a purchase through a limited partnership in which it is the general partner and 95 percent beneficial owner. If, pursuant to § 801.11(e), the partnership does not meet the size-of-person criteria of section 7A(a)(2), and the partnership was not created for the purpose of avoiding compliance with the act, the transaction would not be reportable because the partnership is deemed to be its own ultimate parent entity. It seems more appropriate for such transactions to be reportable by any person that dominates the acquiring entity. That is what the proposed rule seeks to do.

In the past, the Premerger Notification Office has not deemed partnerships to be controlled. Section 801.1(b) provides, in part, that control exists if one person can "designate a majority of the directors of a corporation, or in the case of unincorporated entities, of individuals exercising similar functions." The Commission staff has declined to equate partners with "individuals exercising similar functions" to "directors of a corporation." This interpretation was adopted principally because the variable structure of partnerships made it too difficult to specify an objective set of criteria by which to attribute control. For example, partnerships can provide for equal operating authority for all partners or can restrict those rights in any of a number of ways. However, in formulating the acquisition vehicle proposal, the Commission developed the concept of attributing control of unincorporated entities on the basis of beneficial interests. See, for example, proposed § 801.5(b)(2), 50 FR 38748. While not perfect, this concept, which relies on the entitlement to profits or to assets in the event of dissolution, seems an adequate indicator of control where one person has a right to 50 percent or more of the profits or is entitled to 50 percent or more of the assets upon dissolution. At the very least, it seems unlikely that such an entity would be permitted to continue its existence if it operated in any way that was adverse to the wishes of the 50 percent owner. Consequently, quite apart from any concern about intentional avoidance of the act's obligations, the Commission considers this proposal to be an appropriate supplement to its existing definition of control.

The 50 percent beneficial ownership requirement would parallel in important respects the treatment of corporations under the existing control rule. Although effective or working control of a corporation can exist as a practical matter with a smaller percentage of shares, § 801.1(b) deems a corporation to be a controlled entity only if one person owns "50 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities" or has a right "presently to designate a majority of the board of directors." While this 50 percent requirement understates actual control of many corporations, the rule is clear and easily determinable. It is also arguably overinclusive because one corporation with two 50 percent owners is deemed to have two ultimate parent entities. Nevertheless, this arguable overinclusiveness correctly reflects the joint control that generally exists in such circumstances. In the Commission's experience, this requirement that both controlling entities file has not prevented persons from fulfilling the premerger notification requirements.

The 50 percent ownership criterion would serve similar functions for determining control of unincorporated entities. It would be an objective and predictable standard. Moreover, the degree of ownership should be sufficient to assure in almost all instances that the entities and those deemed to be controlling owners will act in concert to comply with the act's obligations.

In formulating the 50 percent ownership criterion, consideration was given to whether other indicators of control should be included. For example, the Commission might have proposed treating the sole general partner of a limited partnership as controlling the partnership. While the Commission did not doubt its authority to attribute control on this and on other criteria, the Commission declined to utilize that authority at this time because it might require many unnecessary filings. For example, limited partnerships with sole general partners are common entities whose investments often have little competitive significance. Moreover, if a rule required sole general partners to file notifications, some might attempt to avoid it by appointing a second or third general partner. At present, a rule requiring all general partners to file seems unnecessary and therefore unduly burdensome, but the Commission reserves the option of promulgating such a rule should underreporting of significant acquisitions occur under the currently proposed rule.

Finally, some consideration was given to adopting a rule that would attribute assets of unincorporated entities to all owners, even if they held only a minority interest. This would have been similar to the coverage of the previously proposed acquisition vehicle rule. The Commission does not feel such a proposal is warranted at this time. In the Commission's experience, partnership vehicles that had any potential for anticompetitive consequences have been dominated by a single person or by two persons holding equal rights. Accordingly, the Commission believes it is sufficient at present to extend the scope of the premerger notification program to an unincorporated entity only if at least one person is entitled to either 50 percent of its profits or, upon dissolution, of its assets. However, should competitively significant transactions escape reporting obligations under the proposed new rule because no person controlled the partnerships undertaking those acquisitions, the Commission would reconsider the acquisition vehicle approach.

Changing the Majority Control Criterion

Under the existing rules, an entity is deemed controlled by a person that has a contractual power to designate a majority of the entity's board of directors. Both the current and the proposed rules reflect the Commission's belief that such a person should be deemed by the rules to control the entity whether or not that entity also is deemed to be controlled according to other criteria. Thus, a single entity may be deemed controlled by one person that holds 50 percent of the outstanding voting securities of the entity and also by another person who has a contractual right to appoint a majority of that entity's board of directors (or of individuals exercising similar functions). The Commission has concluded, however, that no purpose is served and some confusion has been generated by inferring control of a board of directors only when one person may appoint more than 50 percent of the directors. It therefore proposes to revise this criterion to parallel the other control concepts based on 50 percent ownership. Under this proposed amendment, an entity would be deemed to be controlled by a person with the right to appoint as few as 50 percent of the entity's directors.

The basis of this decision is illustrated by the following example. Consider a nonprofit joint venture corporation created by two persons that is not subject to proposed § 801.1(b)(1) because it does not issue voting securities, it will not distribute profits and it would disburse assets widely in the event of dissolution. If the power to appoint directors of this venture is split evenly between the two persons forming the entity, such an entity can be deemed controlled solely as a result of the contractual right to appoint directors. There is no reason to treat the control of this corporation differently from a corporation in which the voting shares are split evenly. Both rights are likely to result in an evenly divided board of directors. Accordingly, the proposed rule would deem an entity to be controlled by a person that had a contractual right to appoint half or more of the "directors of a corporation, or in the case of unincorporated entities, of individuals exercising similar functions."

As noted in the discussion above, the Commission has experienced no problems administering its "50 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities" criterion. Even though that requires in appropriate circumstances more than one person to file as the ultimate parent entity of a single issuer, all persons required to file have been able to supply the information required. This experience appears to confirm the Commission's premise that if one person owns 50 percent of an entity it is at least in joint control of the entity. In the case of a person controlling 50 percent of a board of directors (or individuals exercising similar functions), it is even clearer that the entity cannot act without that person's assent. The Commission therefore proposes to infer control if a person has the contractual right to appoint 50 percent or more of the board of directors (or of individuals exercising similar functions).

This proposal would modify a Commission staff informal interpretation of § 801.1(b). Currently, the Premerger Notification Office deems a corporation controlled if a person can designate a *majority* of the board as a result of both holding voting securities and having a contractual power to designate directors. In other words, in determining whether an entity is controlled pursuant to § 801.1(b)(2), the staff adds directors elected to the board as a result of holding voting securities to directors designated as a result of a contractual power. Under the proposed amendments, the staff would deem the entity controlled by a person who, as a result of such combined rights, had the power to designate 50 percent or more of the directors.

Operation of the Proposed Rule

The Commission proposes to amend its rules by adding to the definition of the term "control" in § 801.1(b). The amendment, proposed new § 801.1(b)(1)(ii), would deem an entity to be controlled by a person entitled to 50 percent or more of the entity's profits, or by a person entitled, upon dissolution, to 50 percent or more of the entity's assets. The amendment would not apply if the entity had outstanding voting securities. The amendment thus creates two systems for determining control: one for entities that issue voting securities, and another for all other entities.

These non-overlapping rules for determining control are each supplemented by the alternate—contractual power to designate—control concept. In other words, proposed § 801.1(b)(1) would not deem an entity to be controlled both under paragraph (b)(1)(i) by a person that holds 50 percent of the voting securities issued by the entity and under proposed paragraph (b)(1)(ii) by another person that has a right to 50 percent of the entity's profits. Because the entity had issued voting securities, proposed paragraph (b)(1)(ii) would not apply; thus the entity would not be controlled on the basis of a right to profits or to assets upon dissolution. In contrast, under proposed paragraph (b)(2) the entity deemed controlled under (b)(1)(i) as a result of voting securities held by one person would be deemed also controlled under proposed paragraph (b)(2) by another person that had a contractual right to appoint 50 percent or more of the entity's board of directors.

Similarly, an entity that was deemed controlled under proposed paragraph (b)(1)(ii), because a person had a right to 50 percent of its profits or assets, would also be deemed controlled under proposed (b)(2) if another person had the right to appoint at least 50 percent of that entity's board of directors (or analogous body). This overlap would be quite rare, however. As explained above, the Commission staff has not deemed partnerships to possess "individuals exercising similar functions" to directors; therefore, proposed paragraph (b)(2) will apply only to other entities that do not issue voting securities.

In addition, the 50 percent or more criteria in paragraph (b)(1)(i), proposed paragraph (b)(1)(ii) and proposed paragraph (b)(2) means that under each paragraph two persons can be deemed to control an entity. It is, thus, theoretically possible that as many as six persons could be deemed to control one entity. However, it would be extraordinary for an entity to allocate those incidents of ownership in such different percentages.

As described above, proposed paragraph (b)(1)(ii) is intended to apply only in circumstances in which paragraph (b)(1)(i) does not apply, that is, it applies only to entities that have not issued voting securities. Typically, this means paragraph (b)(1)(i) will apply to corporations and proposed paragraph (b)(1)(ii) will apply to non-corporate entities. It should be noted, however, that some corporations (for example, entities incorporated under not-for-profit statutes that do not issue voting securities) would be subject to proposed paragraph (b)(1)(ii). Similarly, some unincorporated entities (for example, joint stock companies) issue voting securities. For them, control would continue to be determined by paragraph (b)(1)(i).

For purposes of these rules, the fact that an entity issues securities that have some voting rights is not sufficient to deem them voting securities. Limited partnerships commonly issue certificates subject to the Securities Act of 1933 to limited partners. These partnership shares may be transferable and may entitle their holders to vote on a variety of matters, but typically the entities would not be subject to paragraph (b)(1)(i). The definition of "voting security" in § 801.1(f)(1) states the holder of the security must be entitled "to vote for the election of directors of the issuer, or with respect to unincorporated entities, individuals exercising similar functions." Because most unincorporated entities do not have bodies analogous to boards of directors or do not elect the membership of such bodies, the securities are not "voting securities" within the meaning of the rules.

The rights to profits and to assets, upon dissolution, described in proposed paragraph (b)(1)(ii) are ownership rights and not creditor rights. Thus, the right to assets, upon dissolution, means after all debt obligations have been satisfied. The right to profits would be calculated after payment of any royalty, franchise fee or other expense based on income.

As is the case with other control provisions, a person deemed to control an entity under proposed paragraph (b)(1)(ii) is attributed all the assets of the controlled entity. See § 801.1(c)(8). Thus if "A" controls pursuant to proposed paragraph (b)(1)(ii) a partnership B (because "A" is entitled to 50 percent of B's profits, or 50 percent of B's assets upon dissolution), "A" must include the value of all of B's assets in determining A's total assets. "A" must include all of B's assets to determine whether it meets the minimum size criteria of section 7A(a)(2) of the act, even though "A" does not have a right to the other 50 percent of B's profits or assets. Furthermore, if B is entitled to 50 percent of the profits of partnership C, "A" will be deemed to control C also and also must include all the assets of C in determining the size of "A."

List of Subjects in 16 CFR Part 801

Antitrust, Reporting and recordkeeping requirements.

The Commission proposes to amend Title 16, Chapter I, Subchapter H, the code of Federal Regulations as follows:

Accordingly the Commission proposes the amendments set out below.

1. The authority for Part 801 continues to read as follows:

Authority: Sec. 7A(d) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d), as added by sec. 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390.

2. The Commission proposes to amend § 801.1 by revising the introductory text of paragraph (b), paragraphs (b) (1) and (2) and by designating the existing example as example (1), and adding new examples (2) through (4), as set forth below. New language is indicated by arrows: (►new language◄). Deleted language is indicated by brackets: (【deleted language】).

PART 801—COVERAGE RULES

§ 801.1 Definitions.

* * * * *

(b) *Control.* The term "control" (as used in the terms "control(s)," "controlling," "controlled by" and "under common control with") means►:

(1—◄ Either

►(i)◄ 【(1)】 Holding 50 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer 【;】 ►,◄ or

►(ii) In the case of an entity that has no outstanding voting securities, having the right to 50 percent or more of the profits of the entity, or, having the right in the event of dissolution to 50 percent or more of the assets of the entity; or◄

(2) Having the contractual power presently to designate 【a majority】 ►50 percent or more◄ of the directors of a corporation, or in the case of unincorporated entities, of individuals exercising similar functions.

Example ►s◄ : ►1.◄ * * *

►2. A statutory limited partnership agreement provides as follows: The general partner "A" is entitled to 50 percent of the partnership profits, "B" is entitled to 40 percent of the profits and "C" is entitled to 10 percent of the profits. Upon dissolution, "B" is entitled to 75 percent of the partnership assets and "C" is entitled to 25 percent of those assets. All limited and general partners are entitled to vote on the following matters: the dissolution of the partnership, the transfer of assets not in the ordinary course of business, any change in the nature of the business and the removal of the general partner. The interest of each partner is evidenced by an ownership certificate that is transferable under the terms of the partnership agreement and is subject to the Securities Act of 1933. For purposes of these rules, control of this partnership is determined by paragraph (b)(1)(ii) of this section. Although partnership interests may be securities and have some voting rights attached to them, they do not entitle the owner of that interest to vote for a corporate "director" or "an individual exercising similar functions" as required by § 801.1 (f)(1), and thus are not subject to either paragraph (b) (1)(i) or (2) of this section. Consequently, "A" is deemed to control the partnership because of its right to 50 percent of the partnership's profits. "B" is also deemed to control the partnership because it is entitled to 75 percent of the partnership's assets upon dissolution.

3. "A" is a nonprofit charitable foundation that enters into a partnership joint venture with "B", a nonprofit university, to establish C, a nonprofit hospital corporation that does not issue voting securities. Pursuant to its charter all surplus revenue from the hospital in excess of expenses and necessary capital investments is to be disbursed evenly to "A" and "B". In the event of dissolution of the hospital corporation, the assets of the hospital are to be contributed to a local charitable medical facility then in need of financial assistance. Notwithstanding the hospital's designation of its disbursement funds as surplus rather than profits to maintain its charitable image, "A" and "B" would each be deemed to control C, pursuant to § 801.1(b)(1)(ii), because each is entitled to 50 percent of the excess of the hospital's revenues over expenditures.

4. "A" is entitled to 50 percent of the profits of partnership B and 50 percent of the profits of partnership C. B and C form a partnership E with "D" in which each entity has a right to one-third of the profits. When E acquires company X, "A" must report the transaction (assuming it is otherwise reportable). Pursuant to § 801.1(b)(1)(ii), E is deemed to be controlled by "A", even though A ultimately will receive only one-third of E's profits. Because B and C are considered as part of "A", the rules attribute all profits to which B and C are entitled (two thirds of E's profits in this example) to "A."◄

By direction of the Commission.

Emily H. Rock,

Secretary.

[FR Doc. 87-4371 Filed 3-5-87; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 6750-01-M

1. The authority citation of Parts 272 and 273 continues to read as follows:

Authority: 7 U.S.C. 2011–2029.

PART 272—REQUIREMENTS FOR PARTICIPATING STATE AGENCIES

2. In § 272.1, a new paragraph (g)(88) is added to read as follows:

§ 272.1 General terms and conditions.

* * * * *

(g) *Implementation* * * *

(88) *Amendment No. 292.* (i) The effective date of the provisions of this amendment is retroactive to November 6, 1986.

(ii) The actual dates upon which aliens may become eligible under § 273.4(a) (8), (9), (10), and (11) are specified in those paragraphs. State agencies must inform their staff of the respective dates as they pertain to the eligibility or ineligibility of applicant aliens.

PART 273—CERTIFICATION OF ELIGIBLE HOUSEHOLDS

3. In § 273.2:

a. Paragraph (f)(1)(ii)(A) is amended by removing the reference to "(a)(7)" and adding the reference to "(a)(11)" in its place.

b. Paragraph (f)(1)(ii)(B) is amended by removing the second, third, and fourth sentences.

c. Paragraphs (f)(1)(ii)(D), (f)(1)(ii)(E), (f)(1)(ii)(F) are redesignated as paragraphs (f)(1)(ii)(E), (f)(1)(ii)(F), (f)(1)(ii)(G), respectively, and a new paragraph (f)(1)(ii)(D) is added which reads as follows:

§ 273.2 Application processing.

* * * * *

(f) *Verification.* * * *

(1) *Mandatory verification.* * * *

(ii) *Alien status.* * * *

(D) Aliens in the categories specified in § 273.4(a) (8) through (11) shall present documentation such as, but not limited to, a letter, notice of eligibility, or identification card which clearly identifies the alien has been granted legal status in one of those categories.

* * * * *

4. In § 273.4:

a. Paragraph (a)(2) is amended by adding a new sentence at the end of the paragraph which reads, "However, an alien lawfully admitted for permanent residence pursuant to section 245A of the Immigration and Nationality Act must be eligible as specified in paragraphs (a)(8) or (a)(9) of this section.".

b. Paragraph (a)(3) is amended by replacing the date June 30, 1948 with January 1, 1972.

c. Paragraph (a)(4) is amended by replacing the word "Nationalization" with "Nationality".

d. Paragraph (a)(5) is amended by replacing the word "Nationalization" with "Nationality".

e. New paragraphs (a)(8), (a)(9), (a)(10), and (a)(11) are added.

The additions read as follows:

§ 273.4 Citizenship and alien status.

(a) *Citizens and eligible aliens.* * * *

(8) An alien who is defined as aged, blind or disabled in accordance with section 1614(a)(1) of the Social Security Act and is considered to be lawfully admitted for permanent residence pursuant to section 245A(b)(1) of the Immigration and Nationality Act. Such aliens may obtain lawful permanent resident status under section 245(b)(1) of the Immigration and Nationality Act no earlier than November 7, 1988.

(9) An alien who is granted lawful temporary resident pursuant to section 245A of the Immigration and Nationality Act at least five years prior to applying for food stamps and who subsequently gained lawful permanent resident status pursuant to section 245A of the Immigration and Nationality Act. Such aliens may obtain temporary residence status no earlier than May 5, 1987.

(10) An alien who is, as of June 1, 1987, or thereafter, a special agricultural worker and lawfully admitted for temporary residence in accordance with section 210(a) of the Immigration and Nationality Act.

(11) An alien who is lawfully admitted for temporary residence as an additional special agricultural worker as of October 1, 1989 through September 30, 1993 in accordance with section 210A(a) of the Immigration and Nationality Act.

* * * * *

Dated: May 26, 1987.

John W. Bode,

Assistant Secretary for Food and Consumer Services.

[FR Doc. 87–12307 Filed 5–28–87; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 3410-30-M

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

16 CFR Part 801

Premerger Notification; Reporting and Waiting Period Requirements

AGENCY: Federal Trade Commission.

ACTION: Final rule.

SUMMARY: This action promulgates amendments to the premerger notification rules that require the parties to certain mergers or acquisitions to file reports with the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice, and to wait a specified period of time before consummating such transactions. The reporting and waiting period requirements are intended to enable these enforcement agencies to determine whether a proposed merger or acquisition might violate the antitrust laws if consummated and, when appropriate, to seek a preliminary injunction in federal court to prevent consummation. During the eight years the rules have been in effect, the Federal Trade Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General for Antitrust, has amended the premerger notification rules several times in order to improve the program's effectiveness and to lessen the burden of complying with the rules. These revisions are intended to improve the program's effectiveness by amending the definition of the term "control" as it applies to partnerships and other entities that do not have outstanding voting securities.

EFFECTIVE DATE: July 3, 1987.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: John M. Sipple, Jr., Senior Attorney, Premerger Notification Office, Bureau of Competition, Room 301, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580. Telephone: (202) 326–3100.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION:

Regulatory Flexibility Act

These amendments to the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification rules are designed to improve the effectiveness of the premerger notification program. The Commission has determined that none of the amendments is a major rule, as that term is defined in Executive Order 12291. The amendments will not result in: An annual effect on the economy of $100 million or more; a major increase in costs or prices for consumers, individual industries, Federal, State, or local government agencies, or geographic regions; or significant adverse effects on competition, employment, investment, productivity, innovation or the ability of United States-based enterprises to compete with foreign-based enterprises in the domestic market. None of the amendments expands the coverage of the premerger notification rules in a way that would affect small business. Therefore, pursuant to section 605(b) of the Administrative Procedure Act, 5 U.S.C. 605(b), as added by the Regulatory Flexibility Act, Pub. L. 96–354 (September 19, 1980), the Federal Trade Commission certifies that these rules will not have a significant economic impact on a substantial number of small entities. Section 603 of the Administrative Procedure Act, 5 U.S.C. 603, requiring a final regulatory flexibility analysis of some rules, is therefore inapplicable.

Paperwork Reduction Act

The Hart-Scott-Rodino Premerger Notification rules and report form contain information collection requirements as defined by the Paperwork Reduction Act, 44 U.S.C. 3501–3518. Prior to promulgation, these requirements were reviewed and approved by the Office of Management and Budget. The amendments contained in this Notice were approved by OMB on April 29, 1987, for use through March 31, 1990 (OMB Control No. 3084–0005).

Background

Section 7A of the Clayton Act ("the act"), 15 U.S.C. 18a, as added by sections 201 and 202 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, requires persons contemplating certain acquisitions of assets or voting securities to give advance notice to the Federal Trade Commission (hereafter referred to as "the Commission") and the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice (hereafter referred to as "the Assistant Attorney General"), and to wait certain designated periods before the consummation of such acquisitions. The transactions to which the advance notice requirement is applicable and the length of the waiting period required are set out respectively in subsections (a) and (b) of section 7A. This amendment to the Clayton Act does not change the standards used in determining the legality of mergers and acquisitions under the antitrust laws.

The legislative history suggests several purposes underlying the act. Congress wanted to assure that large acquisitions were subjected to meaningful scrutiny under the antitrust laws prior to consummation. To this end, Congress clearly intended to eliminate the large "midnight merger," which is negotiated in secret and announced just before, or sometimes only after, the closing takes place. Congress also provided an opportunity for the Commission or the Assistant Attorney General (who are sometimes hereafter referred to collectively as the "antitrust agencies" or the "enforcement agencies") to seek a court order enjoining the completion of those transactions that the agencies deem to present significant antitrust problems. Finally, Congress sought to facilitate an effective remedy when a challenge by one of the enforcement agencies proved successful. Thus, the act requires that the antitrust agencies receive prior notification of significant acquisitions, provides certain tools to facilitate a prompt, thorough investigation of the competitive implications of these acquisitions, and assures the enforcement agencies an opportunity to seek a preliminary injunction before the parties to an acquisition are legally free to consummate it, reducing the problem of unscrambling the assets after the transaction has taken place.

Subsection 7A(d)(1) of the act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d)(1), directs the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 553, to require that the notification be in such form and contain such information and documentary material as may be necessary and appropriate to determine whether the proposed transaction may, if consummated, violate the antitrust laws. Subsection 7A(d)(2) of the act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d)(2), grants the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 553, the authority (A) to define the terms used in the act, (B) to exempt additional persons or transactions from the act's notification and waiting period requirements, and (C) to prescribe such other rules as may be necessary and appropriate to carry out the purposes of section 7A.

On December 15, 1976, the Commission issued proposed rules and a proposed Notification and Report Form ("the Form") to implement the act. This proposed rulemaking was published in the **Federal Register** of December 20, 1976, 41 FR 55488. Because of the volume of public comment, it became clear to the Commission that some substantial revisions would have to be made in the original rules. On July 25, 1977, the Commission determined that additional public comment on the rules would be desirable and approved revised proposed rules and a revised proposed Notification and Report Form. The revised rules and Form were published in the **Federal Register** of August 1, 1977, 42 FR 39040. Additional changes in the revised rules and Form were made after the close of the comment period. The Commission formally promulgated the final rules and Form, and issued an accompanying Statement of Basis and Purpose on July 10, 1978. The Assistant Attorney General gave his formal concurrence on July 18, 1978. The final rules and Form and the Statement of Basis and Purpose were published in the **Federal Register** of July 31, 1978, 43 FR 33451, and became effective on September 5, 1978.

The rules are divided into three parts, which appear at 16 CFR Parts 801, 802, and 803. Part 801 defines a number of the terms used in the act and rules, and explains which acquisitions are subject to the reporting and waiting period requirements. Part 802 contains a number of exemptions from these requirements. Part 803 explains the procedures for complying with the act. The Notification and Report Form, which is completed by persons required to file notification, is an appendix to Part 803 of the rules.

Changes of a substantive nature have been made in the premerger notification rules or Form on five occasions since they were first promulgated. The first was an increase in the minimum dollar value exemption contained in § 802.20 of the rules. This amendment was proposed in the **Federal Register** of August 10, 1979, 44 FR 47099, and was published in final form in the **Federal Register** of November 21, 1979, 44 FR 60781. The second amendment replaced the requirement that certain revenue data for the year 1972 be provided in the Notification and Report Form with a requirement that comparable data be provided for the year 1977. This change was made because total revenues for the year 1977 broken down by Standard Industrial Classification (SIC) codes became available from the Bureau of the Census. The amendment appeared in the **Federal Register** of March 5, 1980, 45 FR 14205, and was effective May 3, 1980.

The third set of changes was published by the Federal Trade Commission as proposed rules changes in the **Federal Register** of July 29, 1981, 46 FR 38710. These revisions were designed to clarify and improve the effectiveness of the rules and of the Notification and Report Form as well as to reduce the burden of filing notification. Several comments on the proposed changes were received during the comment period. Final rules, which adopted some of the suggestions received during the comment period, but which were substantially the same as the proposed rules, were published in the **Federal Register** of July 29, 1983, 48 FR 34427, and became effective on August 29, 1983. The fourth change, replacing the requirement to provide 1977 revenue data with a requirement to provide 1982 data on the Form was published in the **Federal Register** of March 26, 1986, 51 FR 10368.

The fifth set of changes to the rules and the Notification and Report Form was published by the Federal Trade Commission as proposed rule changes in the **Federal Register** of September 24, 1985, 50 FR 38742. Those thirteen proposed revisions were designed to reduce the cost to the public of complying with the rules and to improve the program's effectiveness. The Commission decided to adopt nine of the proposals, to reject one proposal and to defer action on the other three. Final rules, which adopted some of the suggestions received from public comments, were published in the **Federal Register** of March 6, 1987, 52 FR 7066 and became effective on April 10, 1987. These changes included revisions to the Notification and Report Form, found in 16 CFR Part 803 (Appendix). The Form had previously undergone minor revisions on two other occasions.

These amendments to the premerger notification rules grow out of the comments on Proposal 1 of the September 24, 1985, **Federal Register** notice, the proposed "acquisition vehicle" rules. The underreporting problem that the "acquisition vehicle" approach was designed to solve is extensively discussed in that notice of proposed rulemaking. It explains both how in some circumstances an acquisition made by a partnership is not subject to the reporting and waiting obligations of the act, and how in similar circumstances an acquisition made by a newly-formed corporation that has no controlling owner is not subject to the obligations of the act. The proposed rules would have required both types of transactions to be reported.

Upon reviewing the comments on the "acquisition vehicle" proposal, the Commission concluded that that approach appeared likely to require filings in connection with numerous competitively insignificant transactions and that a less inclusive approach could accomplish the primary objective of the proposal: Covering acquisitions by partnerships that really are controlled by another entity. In addition, it appears that there have been no problems associated with acquisitions by newly-formed corporations. The Commission therefore reconsidered its proposal and developed a new approach that applies only to partnerships and other entities that do not have outstanding voting securities. On March 6, 1987, the Commission proposed in the **Federal Register**, 52 FR 7095, amendments to its premerger notification rules to implement this approach.

Four comments were received.

Comments

1. Unocal Corporation
2. Latham & Watkins
3. American Bar Association Section on Antitrust Law
4. Sullivan & Cromwell.

Authority: The Federal Trade Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, promulgates these amendments to the premerger notification rules pursuant to section 7A(d) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d), as added by section 201 of the Hart-Scott Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390.

Statement of Basis and Purpose for the Commission's Revised Premerger Notification Rules

Section 801.1(b) Control

Under previous staff interpretations, acquisitions made by certain partnerships were not reportable under the act although acquisitions by similarly structured corporations were reportable. No report was required even if an acquisition was by a partnership that was owned and operated principally by one person, and even if that person was a competitor of the acquired person. Because that result is inconsistent with the treatment of corporations that are dominated by one person and with the objectives of the act and the rules, the Commission proposed amendments to its rules to alter that special treatment of partnerships. Having considered public comments on its proposals, the Commission now amends the definition of control in § 801.1(b) to provide that persons owning 50 percent or more of partnerships or other entities that do not have outstanding voting securities will control such entities. Those persons will now be required to report acquisitions by the entities they own, just as persons must report acquisitions by corporations if they own 50 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of those corporations. This proposal imposes no reporting obligation on owners of minority interests.

The Commission is also amending the alternative definition of control, which is based on the contractual power to designate members of an entity's board of directors or analogous body. The change—from the power to designate a majority to the power to designate 50 percent—results in a uniform 50 percent criterion for all three definitions of control in the rules.

The Purpose of the New Control Definition

Previously, acquisitions by partnerships and other entities that have no outstanding voting securities were frequently not subject to premerger review as a result of two principles of premerger reporting: One, a formal rule for calculating assets of an entity, 16 CFR 801.11(e), and the other, a Premerger Notification Office informal interpretation that a partnership is its own "ultimate parent entity" (that is, a partnership is not controlled by its partners). Section 801.11(e) directs that an entity without a balance sheet not include, in determining its size, any assets that are contributed to the entity for the purpose of making an acquisition. Thus, for example, assume that a partnership is formed to buy a $1 billion company and the partners contribute $1 billion in cash for the purpose of making the acquisition. If the partnership has no other assets (and no sales), the subsequent acquisition of the $1 billion company by the partnership is not reportable. The partnership does not meet the $10 million minimum asset criterion of section 7A(a)(2) of the act because § 801.11(e) directs the partnership not to count the $1 billion that will be used to pay for the acquisition. The informal interpretation deems the acquisition to have been made by the partnership itself, which has no other assets, rather than by its partners, who may well have other assets. Consequently, the size of the partnership is determined by valuing only the partnership's assets.

Of course, if the partnership were employed in the acquisition "for the purpose of avoiding the obligations to comply with the requirements of the act," its existence would be disregarded and the obligations of the act would be determined by applying the act and the rules to the substance of the transaction. 16 CFR 801.90. For example, some persons might be tempted to make an acquisition through a partnership for the purpose of avoiding reporting or delaying their premerger notifications to the antitrust agencies until they were required by the federal securities laws to announce their acquisition publicly. If a partnership were formed for the purpose of avoiding or delaying reporting, § 801.90 would base the reporting requirement on the substance of the transaction. If, for example, the substance is an acquisition by a single person, notwithstanding the structuring of the transaction in the form of a partnership, that person would be required to comply with the obligations of the act prior to consummating the transaction.

These amendments require controlling partners, rather than partnerships, to report transactions in certain other circumstances. Section 801.1(b)(1)(ii) provides that a partnership or other unincorporated entity is deemed to be controlled by any person who owns 50 percent or more of the entity. Thus, a partner who meets the statutory $10 million minimum size criteria and owns

50 percent or more of the partnership would be required to file the notification for an otherwise reportable acquisition by the partnership. The amendments abolish the overly general presumption that partnerships are always independent entities.

These amendments mean, in the example of the acquisition of the $1 billion company discussed above, that the transaction would be reportable if one of the partners were entitled to fifty percent or more of the partnership's profits (or, upon dissolution, of its assets), and that partner's total assets or annual net sales were $10 million or more. That controlling partner, or its parent, would be the "ultimate parent entity" pursuant to § 801.1(a)(3). It would therefore be deemed to be the person making the acquisition.

This attribution of control to persons owning such large economic interests is appropriate, because, as a general rule, they control these entities in the common sense of that word. The antitrust review should therefore include a comparison of the business holdings of the acquired entity with the business holdings of both the partnership and the controlling partner. By requiring the controlling partner to file, the premerger antitrust review will automatically consider both. While not perfect, this concept, which relies on the entitlement to profits or to assets in the event of dissolution, seems an adequate indicator of control where one person has a right to 50 percent or more of the profits or is entitled to 50 percent or more of the assets upon dissolution. At the very least, it seems unlikely that such an entity would be permitted to continue its existence if it operated in any way that was adverse to the wishes of the 50 percent owner. Consequently, the Commission considers this proposal to be an appropriate supplement to its existing definition of control.

The 50 percent ownership requirement parallels in important respects the treatment of corporations under the existing control rule. Although effective or working control of a corporation can exist as a practical matter with a smaller percentage of shares, § 801.1(b) deems a corporation to be a controlled entity only if one person owns "50 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities" or has a right "presently to designate a majority of the board of directors." While this 50 percent requirement understates actual control of many corporations, the rule is clear and easily determinable.

The rule is arguably overinclusive because one corporation with two 50 percent owners is deemed to have two ultimate parent entities. Nevertheless, this rule correctly reflects the joint control that generally exists in such circumstances. In the Commission's experience, this requirement that both controlling entities file has neither prevented persons from fulfilling the premerger notification requirements nor had a negative impact on business decisions.

The 50 percent ownership criterion serves similar functions for determining control of unincorporated entities. It is an objective and predictable standard. Moreover, the degree of ownership is sufficient to assure in almost all instances that the entities and those deemed to be controlling owners will act in concert to comply with the act's obligations.

In formulating the 50 percent ownership criterion, consideration was given to whether other indicators of control should be included. For example, the Commission might have proposed treating all general partners or the sole general partner of a limited partnership as controlling the partnership. While the Commission did not doubt its authority to attribute control on the basis of this and other criteria, the Commission declined to utilize that authority at this time because it might require many unnecessary filings. For example, limited partnerships with sole general partners are common entities whose investments often have little competitive significance. Moreover, if a rule required sole general partners to file notifications, it could easily be avoided by appointing a second or third general partner. At present, a rule requiring all general partners to file seems unnecessary and therefore unduly burdensome, but the Commission retains the option of promulgating such a rule should underreporting of significant acquisitions occur under the rule promulgated here.

Each of the four comments received addresses whether the amendments as proposed are adequate to remedy the underreporting problem caused by the interpretation that makes some acquisitions by partnerships and certain other entities not subject to reporting requirements. All four support "the concepts underlying these proposals" and consider them to be "a considerable improvement over the present Rules" (See Comment 3). The comments neither suggest that these amendments would not have required all the publicized unreported partnership transactions to have been reported, nor criticize the workability of the amendments. Three of the comments noted that partnerships could be set up in such a manner that no partner would control it under the amendments as proposed. Accordingly, these comments favor some action in addition to the proposed rule, but each makes a different suggestion.

The Commission welcomes the suggestions, which relate to abuses that may occur in the future. For the present, the Commission believes its proposed amendments are sufficient, and that the public interest will be served best by their immediate adoption. The amendments as proposed place acquisitions undertaken by partnerships on equal footing with acquisitions undertaken by corporations, and the Commission is not aware of any problem with the existing definition of control as it pertains to corporations. The Commission is not persuaded of the need to expand the reporting obligation to cover numerous competitively insignificant transactions in anticipation of avoidance devices that may never be used.

However, the Commission is considering whether, in light of its adoption of the "partnership control" rule, it should also revise its rules to require reporting the acquisition of control of a partnership. Currently, the staff interpretation makes acquisition of less than a 100 percent interest in a partnersnip not reportable, because a partnership interest is deemed to be neither a voting security nor an asset. The Commission is also considering the suggestion of Comment 3 from the American Bar Association Section of Antitrust Law that the economic incentive not to observe premerger reporting obligations might be eliminated by adopting a blanket exemption for all transactions in which an acquiring person would hold less than 5 percent of the voting securities of an issuer. That comment suggests that such acquisitions are unlikely to have antitrust implications.

Changing the Majority Control Criterion

Prior to these amendments, an entity was deemed controlled by a person that had the contractual power to designate a majority of the entity's board of directors. That rule reflects the Commission's belief that such a person should be deemed to control the entity whether or not that entity also is deemed to be controlled according to other criteria. Thus, under the existing rules, a single entity may be deemed controlled by one person that holds 50 percent of the outstanding voting securities of the entity and also by another person who has a contractual right to appoint a majority (i.e., more than 50 percent) of that entity's board of directors (or of individuals exercising similar functions). The Commission has concluded, however, that no purpose *was served* and *some* confusion was generated by inferring control by virtue of ability to appoint directors only when one person may appoint *more than* 50 percent of the directors. It has therefore revised this criterion to parallel the other control concepts that are based on 50 percent ownership. Under this amendment, an entity is deemed to be controlled by a person with the right to appoint exactly 50 percent, as well as more than 50 percent, of the entity's directors.

The basis of this decision is illustrated by the following example. Consider a nonprofit joint venture corporation created by two persons that is not deemed to be controlled under § 801.1(b)(1) because it does not issue voting securities, it does not distribute profits and it would disburse assets widely in the event of dissolution. If the power to appoint directors of this venture is split evenly between the two persons that formed the entity, such an entity can be deemed controlled solely as a result of the contractual right to appoint directors. There is no reason to treat the control of this corporation differently from a corporation in which the voting shares are split evenly. Both rights are likely to result in an evenly divided board of directors. Accordingly, the amended rule deems an entity to be controlled by a person that has a contractual right to appoint 50 percent or more of the "directors of a corporation, or in the case of unincorporated entities, of individuals exercising similar functions."

As noted in the discussion above, the Commission has experienced no problems administering its "50 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities" criterion. Even though that requires in appropriate circumstances more than one person to file as the ultimate parent entity of a single issuer, all persons required to file have been able to supply the information required. This experience appears to confirm the Commission's premise that if one person owns 50 percent of an entity it is at least in joint control of the entity. In the case of a person able to appoint 50 percent of a board of directors (or individuals exercising similar functions), it is even clearer that the entity cannot act without that person's assent. The Commission therefore has amended its rules so as to deem a person to control an entity if that person has the contractual right to appoint 50 percent or more of the board of directors (or of individuals exercising similar functions) of the entity.

This amendment similarly modifies a Commission staff informal interpretation of § 801.1(b). The Premerger Notification Office deems a corporation controlled if a person can designate a *majority* of the board as a result of both holding voting securities and having a contractual power to designate directors. In other words, in determining whether an entity is controlled pursuant to § 801.1(b)(2), the staff adds directors elected to the board as a result of holding voting securities to directors designated as a result of a contractual power. Under the amendment, the staff will deem the entity controlled by a person who, as a result of such combined rights, has the power to designate 50 percent or more of the directors.

Operation of the Control Rules

Amended § 801.1(b)(1)(ii) deems an entity to be controlled by a person entitled to 50 percent or more of the entity's profits, or by a person entitled, upon dissolution, to 50 percent or more of the entity's assets. This provision does not apply if the entity has outstanding voting securities. The amendment thus creates two systems for determining control: One for entities that have outstanding voting securities, and another for all other entities.

These non-overlapping rules for determining control are each supplemented by the alternative—contractual power to designate—control concept. In other words, § 801.1(b)(1)(i) and § 801.1(b)(1)(ii) are mutually exclusive; an entity cannot be controlled both under paragraph (b)(1)(i) by a person that holds 50 percent of the voting securities issued by the entity and under paragraph (b)(1)(ii) by another person that has a right to 50 percent of the entity's profits. Because the entity had outstanding voting securities, paragraph (b)(1)(ii) does not apply; thus the entity would not be controlled on the basis of a right to profits or to assets upon dissolution. In contrast, under proposed paragraph (b)(2) the entity deemed controlled under (b)(1)(i) as a result of voting securities held by one person would be deemed also controlled under proposed paragraph (b)(2) by another person that had a contractual right to appoint 50 percent or more of the entity's board of directors.

Similarly, an entity that was deemed controlled under paragraph (b)(1)(ii), because a person had a right to 50 percent of its profits or assets, would also be deemed controlled under (b)(2) if another person had the right to appoint at least 50 percent of that entity's board of directors (or analogous body). This overlap would be quite rare, however. As explained above, the Commission staff concluded that partnerships do not possess "individuals exercising similar functions" to directors; therefore, paragraph (b)(2) applies only to other entities that do not have outstanding voting securities.

In addition, the 50 percent or more criteria in paragraphs (b)(1)(i) and (b)(2) means that under each paragraph two persons can be deemed to control an entity; and under paragraph (b)(1)(ii), four persons could conceivably control an entity, as two persons could each be entitled to 50 percent of the entity's profits and two different persons each be entitled to 50 percent of the entity's assets upon dissolution. It is, thus, theoretically possible that as many as six persons could be deemed to control one entity (four under (b)(1)(ii) plus two under (b)(2)). However, as Comment 3 notes, it would be extraordinary for an entity to allocate those incidents of ownership in such different percentages.

As described above, paragraph (b)(1)(ii) is intended to apply only in circumstances in which paragraph (b)(1)(i) does not apply; that is, it applies only to entities that have no outstanding voting securities. Typically, this means paragraph (b)(1)(i) applies to corporations and paragraph (b)(1)(ii) applies to non-corporate entities. It should be noted, however, that some corporations (for example, entities incorporated under not-for-profit statutes that do not issue voting securities) are subject to paragraph (b)(1)(ii). Similarly, some unincorporated entities (for example, joint stock companies) may have outstanding voting securities. For them, control is determined by paragraph (b)(1)(i).

For purposes of these rules, the fact that an entity issues securities that have some voting rights is not sufficient to deem them voting securities. Limited partnerships commonly issue certificates subject to the Securities Act of 1933 to limited partners. These partnership shares may be transferable and may entitle their holders to vote on a variety of matters, but typically the entities would not be subject to paragraph (b)(1)(i). The definition of "voting security" in § 801.1(f)(1) states that the holder of the security must be entitled "to vote for the election of directors of the issuer, or with respect to unincorporated entities, individuals exercising similar functions." Because most unincorporated entities do not have bodies analogous to boards of directors or do not elect the membership of such bodies, the securities are not "voting securities" within the meaning of the rules.

The rights to profits and to assets, upon dissolution, described in paragraph (b)(1)(ii) are ownership rights and not creditor rights. Thus, the right to assets, upon dissolution, means after all debt obligations have been satisfied. The right to profits is calculated after payment of any royalty, franchise fee or other expense based on income. Also, as Comment 3 notes, there may be instances in which profits are shared with employees in lieu of compensation, rather than as a return on investment. These compensation distributions should not be included in calculating the right to profits under paragraph (b)(1)(ii). Where parties are in doubt as to the manner in which they should calculate percentage rights to profits or to assets, upon dissolution, they should seek the advice of the Premerger Notification Office.

As is the case with other control provisions, a person deemed to control an entity under paragraph (b)(1)(ii) has attributed to it all the assets of the controlled entity. See § 801.1(c)(8). Thus if "A" controls pursuant to paragraph (b)(1)(ii) a partnership B (because "A" is entitled to 50 percent of B's profits, or 50 percent of B's assets upon dissolution), "A" must include the value of all of B's assets in determining the total assets of "A." "A" must include all of B's assets to determine whether it meets the minimum size criteria of section 7A(a)(2) of the act, even though "A" does not have a right to the other 50 percent of B's profits or assets. Furthermore, if B is entitled to 50 percent of the profits of partnership C, "A" will be deemed to control C also and also must include all the assets of C in determining the size of "A."

Finally, Comment 3 from the ABA Section of Antitrust Law raises three additional questions about these amendments: First, it asks whether the following transaction is exempt from reporting obligations: A person that controls a partnership acquires assets from the partnership. As a general matter, the Commission agrees it would be logical to exempt such transactions if acquisition of control of the partnership were a reportable event. However, as noted above, under current staff interpretations, acquisition of control is not normally a reportable event. Consequently, the Commission is not prepared now to exempt the asset acquisition. It will consider such an exemption as it considers making the acquisition of control of a partnership a reportable event.

Second, Comment 3 asks how to resolve the apparent conflict between the amended definition of control and the definition in § 801.1(c)(5), which states that the beneficiary of a trust (regardless of the percentage of its profits to which he is entitled) does not hold the assets of the trust. It is the Commission's intention that the control amendments, although adopted more recently, do not supersede the more specific treatment of trust assets mandated by § 801.1(c).

The Section of Antitrust Law also raises concerns that rapid implementation of the amendments might disrupt transactions that are nearing completion. For these reasons the section suggests the effective date of the amendments should be delayed for 60 or even 90 days after promulgation of the amendments. The Commission believes that its 35 day period is adequate to prevent disruption and that a longer period might invite the very abuses these amendments are intended to eliminate.

List of Subjects in 16 CFR Part 801

Antitrust.

Accordingly 16 CFR Part 801 is amended as set out below.

PART 801—COVERAGE RULES

1. *Authority.* The authority for Part 801 continues to read as follows:

Authority: Sec. 7A(d) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d), as added by sec. 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94–435, 90 Stat. 1390.

2. Section 801.1 is amended by revising the introductory text of paragraph (b), paragraphs (b) (1) and (2), and by designating the existing example as example (1), and adding new examples (2) through (4), as set forth below.

§ 801.1 Definitions.

* * * * *

(b) *Control.* The term "control" (as used in the terms "control(s)," "controlling," "controlled by" and "under common control with") means:

(1) *Either.* (i) Holding 50 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer or

(ii) In the case of an entity that has no outstanding voting securities, having the right to 50 percent or more of the profits of the entity, or having the right in the event of dissolution to 50 percent or more of the assets of the entity; or

(2) Having the contractual power presently to designate 50 percent or more of the directors of a corporation, or in the case of unincorporated entities, of individuals exercising similar functions.

Examples 1. * * *

2. A statutory limited partnership agreement provides as follows: The general partner "A" is entitled to 50 percent of the partnership profits, "B" is entitled to 40 percent of the profits and "C" is entitled to 10 percent of the profits. Upon dissolution, "B" is entitled to 75 percent of the partnership assets and "C" is entitled to 25 percent of those assets. All limited and general partners are entitled to vote on the following matters: the dissolution of the partnership, the transfer of assets not in the ordinary course of business, any change in the nature of the business, and the removal of the general partner. The interest of each partner is evidenced by an ownership certificate that is transferable under the terms of the partnership agreement and is subject to the Securities Act of 1933. For purposes of these rules, control of this partnership is determined by subparagraph (1)(ii) of this paragraph. Although partnership interests may be securities and have some voting rights attached to them, they do not entitle the owner of that interest to vote for a corporate "director" or "an individual exercising similar functions" as required by § 801.1(f)(1) below. Thus control of a partnership is not determined on the basis of either subparagraph (1)(i) or (2) of this paragraph. Consequently, "A" is deemed to control the partnership because of its right to 50 percent of the partnership's profits. "B" is also deemed to control the partnership because it is entitled to 75 percent of the partnership's assets upon dissolution.

3. "A" is a nonprofit charitable foundation that has formed a partnership joint venture with "B," a nonprofit university, to establish C, a nonprofit hospital corporation that does not issue voting securities. Pursuant to its charter all surplus revenue from the hospital in excess of expenses and necessary capital investments is to be disbursed evenly to "A" and "B." In the event of dissolution of the hospital corporation, the assets of the hospital are to be contributed to a local charitable medical facility then in need of financial assistance. Notwithstanding the hospital's designation of its disbursement funds as surplus rather than profits to maintain its charitable image, "A" and "B" would each be deemed to control C, pursuant to § 801.1(b)(1)(ii), because each is entitled to 50 percent of the excess of the hospital's revenues over expenditures.

4. "A" is entitled to 50 percent of the profits of partnership B and 50 percent of the profits of partnership C. B and C form a partnership E with "D" in which each entity has a right to one-third of the profits. When E acquires company X, "A" must report the transaction (assuming it is otherwise reportable). Pursuant to § 801.1(b)(1)(ii), E is deemed to be controlled by "A," even though "A" ultimately will receive only one-third of the profits of E. Because B and C are considered as part of "A," the rules attribute all profits to which B and C are entitled (two-thirds of the profits of E in this example) to "A."

By direction of the Commission.

Benjamin I. Berman,

Acting Secretary.

[FR Doc. 87–12256 Filed 5–28–87; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 6750-01-M

10 CFR Part 26

Fitness-for-Duty Program; Meeting

AGENCY: Nuclear Regulatory Commission.

ACTION: Meeting.

SUMMARY: The NRC staff will conduct a meeting to further public understanding of a proposed rule that will require nuclear power plant licensees to implement a fitness-for-duty program. The proposed rule appears in this issue of the **Federal Register**.

DATE: October 17, 1988.

ADDRESS: Holiday Inn Crowne Plaza (Ballroom, Meeting Group No. 4836), 1750 Rockville Pike, Rockville, MD 20852. Telephone: (301) 468–1100, 1–800–638–5963.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: Nancy Ervin, Office of Nuclear Reactor Regulation, U.S. Nuclear Regulatory Commission, Washington, DC 20555, telephone (301) 492–0946.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION: The purpose of the meeting is to provide a forum for discussion of issues raised by the Commission's proposed rule on fitness for duty, and in particular, aspects related to random urine tests for drugs.

The NRC wishes to facilitate the public comment process by providing an opportunity for members of the public to raise issues and have questions answered on the proposed rule.

The tentative meeting agenda is shown below:

Morning Session

9:00 am Opening Remarks (NRC)
9:20–9:30 Brief History and Purpose of Rule (NRC staff)
9:30–10:45 Guidelines for Drug Testing Programs (National Institute on Drug Abuse)
10:45–11:45 Provisions of the Proposed Rule and Issues (NRC staff and Attendees)
11:45–1:00 Lunch Break

Afternoon Session

1:00–3:30 Provisions of the Proposed Rule and Issues, cont. (NRC staff and Attendees)
3:00–4:30 Comments Requested by the Commission (NRC staff and Attendees)
4:30–4:45 Closing Remarks (NRC staff)

Dated at Washington, DC, this 8th day of September, 1988.

For The Nuclear Regulatory Commission.

Brian K. Grimes,

Director, Division of Reactor Inspection and Safeguard, Office of Nuclear Reactor Regulation.

[FR Doc. 88–21414 Filed 9–21–88; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 7590-01-M

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

16 CFR Part 13

[Docket No. C–2932]

National Indemnity Co., et al.

AGENCY: Federal Trade Commission.

ACTION: Notice of period for public comment on petition to reopen and set aside the order.

SUMMARY: National Indemnity Company and six subsidiary respondents in the order in Docket No. C–2932, filed a petition on August 30, 1988, requesting that the Commission reopen and set aside the order concerning the failure to comply with the Fair Credit Reporting Act.

DATE: Deadline for filing comments in this matter is October 14, 1988.

ADDRESS: Comments should be sent to the Office of the Secretary, Federal Trade Commission, 6th Street and Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, DC 20580. Requests for copies of the petition should be sent to Public Reference Branch, Room 130.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: George T. O'Brien, Enforcement Division, Bureau of Consumer Protection, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580, (202) 326–2972.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION: The order in Docket No. C–2932 was published at 43 FR 52467 on November 13, 1978. The petitioners are engaged in the underwriting and sale to the public of property and liability insurance throughout the United States. The order requires that in connection with the consideration of applications for insurance respondents disclose to the consumer that an investigative consumer report may be procured and that the consumer has the right to request a disclosure of the nature and scope of the report. The order modification requested by petitioners would set aside the order on the basis that they have complied with the order for 10 years and all but one of the petitioners no longer use investigative consumer reports. The petition was placed on the public record on August 30, 1988.

List of Subjects in 16 CFR Part 13

Fair Credit Reporting Act: utilizing consumer reports.

Donald S. Clark,

Secretary.

[FR Doc. 88–21650 Filed 9–21–88; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 6750-01-M

---

16 CFR Parts 801, 802, and 803

Premerger Notification; Reporting and Waiting Period Requirements

AGENCY: Federal Trade Commission.

ACTION: Notice of proposed rulemaking.

SUMMARY: This notice proposes amendments to the premerger notification rules that require the parties to certain mergers or acquisitions to file reports with the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice, and to wait a specified period of time before consummating such transactions. The reporting and waiting period requirements are intended to enable these enforcement agencies to determine whether a proposed merger or acquisition may violate the antitrust laws if consummated and, when appropriate, to seek a preliminary injunction in federal court to prevent consummation. This notice seeks comments on one principal proposal and two alternative approaches to revising the rules, each of which is designed to eliminate unnecessary notification burdens and to reduce incentives to violate the rules. The principal proposal would exempt from the premerger notification obligations all acquisitions of 10% or less of an issuer's voting securities on the grounds that such acquisitions are unlikely to violate the antitrust laws. The alternative proposals would alter existing notification procedures for acquisitions of 10% or less of an issuer's voting securities. One would permit the purchase, but require that the securities be placed in escrow pending antitrust review; the other would eliminate the reporting requirement imposed on the target firm, thus freeing the acquiror of its obligation to give the target prior notice.

DATE: Comments must be received on or before November 21, 1988.

ADDRESSES: Written comments should be submitted to both (1) the Secretary, Federal Trade Commission, Room 136, Washington, DC 20580, and (2) the Assistant Attorney General, Antitrust Division, Department of Justice, Room 3214, Washington, DC 20530.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: Kenneth M. Davidson, Attorney, Evaluation Office, Bureau of Competition, Room 394, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580. Telephone: (202) 326–3300.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION:

Regulatory Flexibility Act

Each of these proposed amendments to the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification rules is designed to reduce the burden and improve the effectiveness of the premerger notification program. The Commission has determined that none of the amendments is a major rule, as that term is defined in Executive Order 12291. The amendments will not result in: an annual effect on the economy of $100 million or more; a major increase in costs or prices for consumers, individual industries, Federal, State, or local government agencies, or geographic regions; or significant adverse effects on competition, employment, investment, productivity, innovation or the ability of United States-based enterprises to compete with foreign-based enterprises in the domestic market. None of the proposed amendments expands the coverage of the premerger notification rules in a way that would affect small business. Therefore, pursuant to section 605(b) of the Administrative Procedure Act, 5 U.S.C. 605(b), as added by the Regulatory Flexibility Act, Pub. L. 96–354 (September 19, 1980), the Federal Trade Commission certifies that these rules will not have a significant economic impact on a substantial number of small entities. Section 603 of the Administrative Procedure Act, 5 U.S.C. 603, requiring a final regulatory flexibility analysis of some rules, is therefore inapplicable.

Paperwork Reduction Act

The Hart-Scott-Rodino Premerger Notification rules and report form contain information collection requirements as defined by the Paperwork Reduction Act, 44 U.S.C. 3501–3518. These requirements were reviewed and approved by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB Control No. 3084–0005). Because the proposed amendments would affect the information collection requirement of the premerger notification program, the proposed amendments have been submitted to OMB for review under section 3504(h) of the Paperwork Reduction Act. The Supporting Statement accompanying the Request for OMB Review estimates the principal proposal would reduce the number of notifications required, on average, by 20 filings per year. This would reduce the existing burden estimate of 142,000 hours annually by about 300 hours. The two alternatives being considered would not materially change the current burden estimate. Each of those proposed procedures would be optional if adopted. Persons who wish to do so could continue to file notifications under existing procedures. Comments on the Commission's submission may be directed to the Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs, Office of Management and Budget, Washington, DC 20503, Attention: Don Arbuckle, Desk Officer for the Federal Trade Commission.

Background

Section 7A of the Clayton Act ("the act"), 15 U.S.C. 18a, as added by sections 201 and 202 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, requires persons contemplating certain acquisitions of assets or voting securities to give advance notice to the Federal Trade Commission (hereafter referred to as "the Commission") and the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice (hereafter referred to as "the Assistant Attorney General"), and to wait certain designated periods before the consummation of such acquisitions. The transactions to which the advance notice requirement is applicable and the length of the waiting period required are set out respectively in subsections (a) and (b) of section 7A. This amendment to the Clayton Act does not change the standards used in determining the legality of mergers and acquisitions under the antitrust laws.

The legislative history suggests several purposes underlying the act. Congress wanted to assure that large acquisitions were subjected to meaningful scrutiny under the antitrust laws prior to consummation. To this end, Congress clearly intended to eliminate the large "midnight merger," which is negotiated in secret and announced just before, or sometimes only after, the closing takes place. Congress also provided an opportunity for the Commission or the Assistant Attorney General (who are sometimes hereafter referred to collectively as the "antitrust agencies" or the "enforcement agencies") to seek a court order enjoining the completion of those transactions that the agencies deem to present significant antitrust problems. Finally, Congress sought to facilitate an effective remedy when a challenge by one of the enforcement agencies proved successful. Thus, the act requires that the antitrust agencies receive prior notification of significant acquisitions, provides certain tools to facilitate a prompt, thorough investigation of the competitive implications of these acquisitions, and assures the enforcement agencies an opportunity to seek a preliminary injunction before the parties to an acquisition are legally free to consummate it, reducing the problem of unscrambling the assets after the transaction has taken place. Subsection 7A(d)(1) of the act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d)(1), directs the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 553, to require that the notification be in such form and contain such information and documentary material as may be necessary and appropriate to determine whether the proposed transaction may, if consummated, violate the antitrust laws. Subsection 7A(d)(2) of the act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d)(2), grants the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 553, the authority (A) to define the terms used in the act, (B) to exempt additional persons or transactions from the act's notification and waiting period requirements, and (C) to prescribe such other rules as may be necessary and appropriate to carry out the purposes of section 7A.

On December 15, 1976, the Commission issued proposed rules and a proposed Notification and Report Form ("the Form") to implement the act. This proposed rulemaking was published in the Federal Register of December 20, 1976, 41 FR 55488. Because of the volume of public comment, it became clear to the Commission that some substantial revisions would have to be made in the original rules. On July 25, 1977, the Commission determined that additional public comment on the rules would be desirable and approved revised proposed rules and a revised proposed Notification and Report Form. The revised rules and Form were published in the Federal Register of August 1, 1977, 42 FR 39040. Additional changes in the revised rules and Form were made after the close of the comment period. The Commission formally promulgated the final rules and Form, and issued an accompanying Statement of Basis and Purpose on July 10, 1978. The Assistant Attorney General gave his formal concurrence on July 18, 1978. The final rules and Form and the Statement of Basis and Purpose were published in the Federal Register of July 31, 1978, 43 FR 33451, and became effective on September 5, 1978.

The rules are divided into three parts, which appear at 16 CFR Parts 801, 802, and 803. Part 801 defines a number of the terms used in the act and rules, and explains which acquisitions are subject to the reporting and waiting period requirements. Part 802 contains a number of exemptions from these requirements. Part 803 explains the procedures for complying with the act. The Notification and Report Form, which is completed by persons required to file notification, is an appendix to Part 803 of the rules.

Changes of a substantive nature have been made in the premerger notification rules or Form on six occasions since they were first promulgated. The first was an increase in the minimum dollar value exemption contained in § 802.20 of the rules. This amendment was proposed in the Federal Register of August 10, 1979, 44 FR 47099, and was published in final form in the Federal Register of November 21, 1979, 44 FR 60781. The second amendment replaced the requirement that certain revenue data for the year 1972 be provided in the Notification and Report Form with a requirement that comparable data be provided for the year 1977. This change was made because total revenues for the year 1977 broken down by Standard Industrial Classification (SIC) codes became available from the Bureau of the Census. The amendment appeared in the Federal Register of March 5, 1980, 45 FR 14205, and was effective May 3, 1980.

The third set of changes was published by the Federal Trade Commission as proposed rule changes in the Federal Register of July 29, 1981, 46 FR 38710. These revisions were designed to clarify and improve the effectiveness of the rules and of the Notification and Report Form as well as to reduce the burden of filing notification. Several comments on the proposed changes were received during the comment period. Final rules, which adopted some of the suggestions received during the comment period, but which were substantially the same as the proposed rules, were published in the Federal Register of July 29, 1983, 48 FR 34427, and became effective on August 29, 1983. The fourth change, replacing the requirement to provide 1977 revenue data with a requirement to provide 1982 data on the Form, was published in the Federal Register of March 28, 1986, 51 FR 10368.

The fifth set of changes to the rules and the Notification and Report Form was published by the Federal Trade Commission as proposed rules changes in the Federal Register of September 24, 1985, 50 FR 38742. Those thirteen proposed revisions were designed to reduce the cost to the public of complying with the rules and to improve the program's effectiveness. The Commission decided to adopt nine of the proposals, to reject one proposal and to defer action on the other three. Final rules, which adopted some of the suggestions received from public comments, were published in the Federal Register of March 6, 1987, 52 FR 7066 and became effective on April 10, 1987. These changes included revisions to the Notification and Report Form, found in 16 CFR 803 (Appendix). The Form had previously undergone minor revisions on two other occasions.

The sixth set of amendments to the premerger notification rules grew out of the comments on Proposal 1 of the September 24, 1985, Federal Register notice, the proposed "acquisition vehicle" rules. Upon reviewing the comments on the "acquisition vehicle" proposal, the Commission reconsidered its proposal and proposed a new approach that applies only to partnerships and other entities that do not have outstanding voting securities. On March 6, 1987, the Commission proposed in the Federal Register, 52 FR 7095, amendments to its premerger notification rules to implement this approach. The final rule was published in the Federal Register of May 29, 1987, 52 FR 20058, and became effective on July 4, 1987.

The current set of proposals grew out of efforts by the Commission to insure compliance with the antitrust premerger notification obligations. The Commission has investigated a number of transactions in which persons purchased voting securities without filing notification or waiting the requisite period. Few of these transactions raised any competitive issues. In addition, in almost every case, acquiring stock without notifying the issuer and at the lowest possible price, rather than escaping antitrust review, appears to have been the reason for avoiding the premerger notification process.

The Commission recognizes that premerger notification obligations can create delay even for acquisitions that do not raise competitive concerns, and that this delay can impose significant burdens on buyers and sellers. However, this interruption does not reflect a Congressional decision that the Commission should regulate generally the acquisition of voting securities or assets. It is, rather, the necessary consequence of preventing consummation while the antitrust agencies assess the likelihood that proposed transactions will violate the antitrust laws. The special treatment of cash tender offers in section 7A(b)(1)(B) of the Act illustrates Congressional concern to avoid unnecessary disruption of the operation of the market for corporate control. *See* 122 Cong. Rec. H. 10,293 (daily ed. Sept. 16, 1976). In addition, the Commission has tried to minimize any unnecessary disruptive effect of premerger review by the design of its procedures and the speed with which it reviews proposed transactions. In addition, whenever the Commission can determine that a class of transactions is unlikely to violate the antitrust laws, it has sought, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General for Antitrust, to exempt such transactions from all notification obligations and the delay inherent in premerger review. Accordingly, the Commission is exploring whether, consistent with its antitrust responsibilities, it can modify its premerger notification rules so as to: (1) Substantially reduce the non-antitrust-related incentive to evade the obligations of the program; (2) eliminate any unnecessary burden on the parties; and (3) avoid any unneeded interference with the securities laws' disclosure requirements and the market for corporate control.

This Notice discusses in some detail the nature of the transactions in which the compliance problems have arisen, laws and regulations that affect the non-antitrust related incentives not to comply with the Commission's rules, and the extent to which these and other purchases of minority interests have competitive significance. It then offers one principal and two alternative methods of modifying the rules that would diminish the avoidance incentive and explains what the Commission believes are the advantages and disadvantages of each. The Commission has undertaken the somewhat unusual step of presenting an extended discussion of the problem and proposing two alternatives in addition to the principal proposal because this area involves numerous issues and each of the proposed solutions appears plausible.

The Commission, therefore, invites interested persons to submit comments on the nature and scope of the problems described, on the desirability of each of the proposed amendments, and on other alternatives.

Statement of Basis and Purpose for the Commission's Proposed Revision of its Premerger Notification Rules

The purpose of section 7A of the Clayton Act is clear: to give the antitrust agencies an opportunity to determine whether a proposed acquisition might violate the antitrust laws and an opportunity to challenge any such transaction prior to consummation. It is solely in order to meet this objective that section 7A requires advance notification to federal antitrust agencies of proposed acquisitions.

The Act was never intended to generate public disclosure of stock acquisitions. To the contrary, Section 7A(b) sets forth a rigorous confidentiality standard. Nonetheless, in order to assure that premerger notification and information are received from the acquired person, in circumstances in which the acquired person might not otherwise be aware of its filing obligation (*e.g.*, open market stock purchases), the antitrust premerger notification rules require that the acquiring person disclose its holdings and intentions to the acquired person at an early stage-before the $15 million reporting threshold is crossed. (See 16 CFR 803.5.)

The securities laws have as their purpose investor protection and the efficient functioning of capital markets. There has been vigorous and continuing debate over the years as to when Congress should require public disclosure of stock acquisitions through the securities laws.

The antitrust review procedures can require disclosure to the issuer whose stock is being acquired before any disclosure to a takeover "target" can be very costly, both in terms of driving up the price of the stock and more generally by enabling the target to undertake defensive maneuvers. As a result, it appears that some purchasers have used various techniques to avoid their antitrust notification obligation. Their aim has evidently been to buy stock immediately and secretly and to delay notice to the issuer at least until public disclosure is required by securities laws.

The Commission rejects the view that violation of the premerger notification requirements may be justified by the non-antitrust-related incentive to avoid disclosure to a takeover target or the public until required by the securities laws. The Commission will continue to require compliance with its rules. Nevertheless, it may be the case that certain aspects of the Commission's rules that require filing notifications create an incentive to avoid that obligation, but do not play any significant role in the effective operation of the premerger review. It may be possible, therefore, to broaden the circumstances in which voting securities may be purchased without prior notification to the antitrust agencies or prior notice to the target. In particular, the Commission believes that the premerger notification rules should be amended if they can be changed in a way that would reduce compliance problems and reduce filing burdens while maintaining the program as an effective antitrust enforcement tool. If such changes can be made, a major benefit would be the freeing up of Commission resources currently expended on compliance investigations regarding transactions that lack antitrust significance.

This Notice seeks public comment on three alternative means of achieving these ends. The principal proposal would exempt any acquisition of 10 percent or less of an issuer's voting securities, regardless of value. The Commission's experience, particularly its eight years experience reviewing premerger notifications, supports the conclusion that such acquisitions are unlikely to violate the antitrust laws. This exemption would subsume the "solely for the purpose of investment" exemption in section 7A(c)(9) of the act (15 U.S.C. 18a(c)(9)), and, as a result, eliminate the need for the parallel provision in § 802.9 of the rules. The two alternatives propose procedures designed to address the apparently unlikely possibility that an anticompetitive acquisition of 10 percent or less might occur. One procedure would allow an acquiror to purchase up to 10 percent of an issuer's voting securities without reporting to the enforcement agencies, provided that the stock remains in escrow until the agencies have completed their antitrust review. The other would enable a purchaser of up to 10 percent of the voting securities of an issuer to meet the premerger notification requirements without notifying the target firm. For certain non-consensual transaction, it would eliminate the reporting requirement currently imposed on the target firm if the acquiring person submits specified information not required by the existing notification and report form.

I. The Compliance Problem

Experience with the premerger notification program demonstrates a persistent problem in obtaining full compliance with notification obligations for acquisitions of 10 percent or less of an issuer's voting securities. As outlined above, those compliance problems are largely, if not entirely, the result of non-anti-trust related economic incentives to avoid the notification procedures. In order to describe and assess these proposals more fully, it is important to understand the operation of the antitrust notification procedures and the securities laws, the point at which their requirements result in disclosures, and the types of transactions that are most affected by these requirements.

A. Hart-Scott-Rodino Requirements

The Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 requires that certain acquisitions be reported to the Commission and Department of Justice prior to consummation. Assuming all other criteria are satisfied and not exemptions are applicable, an acquisition of voting securities or assets must be reported to the enforcement agencies and a waiting period must be observed before consummation if the transaction is valued at $15 million or more, or if the transaction would result in the acquiring person holding 50 percent or more of the voting securities of an issuer with sales or assets of $25 million or more. Section 7A(a)(3)(B) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(a)(3)(B), and § 802.20. The Commission's regulations establish three additional "notification thresholds" for acquisitions of voting securities valued at more than $15 million. *See* § 801.1(h). The next thresholds are 15 percent; 25 percent; and, finally, 50 percent. The regulations impose a potential filing and waiting requirement for each threshold that will be crossed. However, subsequent filings can be avoided if the initial filing is for the highest threshold the acquiror will meet. *See, e.g.*, § 802 21 and examples.

The waiting period prior to consummation of an acquisition is the keystone of the act. During this 30-day period (15 days in the case of a cash tender offer) the antitrust agencies can examine whether the proposed transaction is likely to violate the antitrust laws. *See* section 7A(b) of the act. They are authorized to require additional information from the parties and extend the waiting period up to another 20 days (10 in the case of cash tender offers) to review the additional submission. *See* section 7A(e) of the act. Armed with the information developed while the waiting period preserves the status quo, the agencies can and do challenge proposed mergers. *See* section 7A(f) of the act. They thereby avoid the complex remedial problems of undoing anticompetitive transactions.

Typically, however, the waiting period is less than the statutory maximum. Few transactions need to be challenged, and only a small percentage receive requests for additional information. For most transactions, the agencies complete their antitrust review within about two weeks and terminate the waiting period in less than half of the maximum time allowed by statute.

The filing obligation for a typical acquisition of voting securities contains two notification obligations. The acquiring person must file the Notification and Report Form with the antitrust agencies. *See* § 803.2. It also must notify the issuer of the voting securities, if the shares are to be bought from a third party. *See* §§ 801.30 and 803.5. The acquiror must serve this notice on the issuer prior to notifying the enforcement agencies. *See* § 803.5.

The prior notice of the target, therefore, is a precondition to the initiation of the waiting period for an acquisition of voting securities from a person other than the issuer. Pursuant to § 801.30, the waiting period begins when the acquiring person files its notification. The acquired person must file its notification within the 15 days (10 if the transaction is a cash tender offer) thereafter. Without notice from the acquiring person, the acquired person might not know that its voting securities were being acquired, that it might have a filing obligation, or when it is required to file. Section 803.5(a), therefore, requires the acquiring person to inform the target firm of the following:

(i) The identity of the acquiring person;

(ii) The fact that the acquiring person intends to acquire voting securities of the issuer;

(iii) The specific classes of voting securities of the issuer sought to be acquired; and if known, the number of securities of each each class that would be held by the acquiring person as a result of the acquisition or, if the number is not known, the specific notification threshold that the acquiring person intends to meet or exceed; and, if designated by the acquiring person, a higher threshold for additional voting securities it may hold in the year following the expiration of the wating period;

(iv) The fact that the acquisition may be subject to the act, and that the acquiring person will file notification under the act with the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General;

(v) The anticipated date of receipt of such notification under § 803.10(c).

One exception to these filing requirements should be noted. Congress declared in section 7A(c)(9) that acquisitions of up to 10 percent of an issuer's voting securities would not be subject to the Act's obligations if made solely for the purpose of investment. The Commission has broadened the solely-for-investment exemption and permits institutional investors to acquire up to 15 percent of an issuer's voting securities without filing notification. *See* § 802.64.

At this point in the discussion, then, the class of transactions of interest comprises acquisitions of voting securities that are valued at more than $15 million and are not made solely for the purpose of investment. These proposed transactions must be reported regardless of the percentage acquired, unless another exemption is applicable. For acquisitions of the stock of large, publicly-traded firms relatively small acquisitions in terms of percentage acquired may therefore be reportable. If a firm's outstanding voting securities are valued at $1 billion, a $15 million purchase would constitute only 1.5 percent of the outstanding shares. It would require $50 million to acquire a 5 percent share or $150 million to acquire a 15 percent share.

B. Securities Laws

The Williams Act, passed in 1968 as a series of amendments to the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, had as its primary objective the regulation of tender offers. Pub. L. 90–439, 82 Stat. 454 (1968). It requires acquiring persons to disclose publicly, at the time of making a tender offer, who the acquiring persons are, where they will raise the money for the purchase, what their plans for the company are, and whether they have special agreements with other shareholders of the target management. Acquirors are required to keep the office open to all shareholders for a minimum of 20 business days. *See* section 14(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, 15 U.S.C. 78m(d) and the rules thereunder. The Williams Act also requires any person who acquires beneficial ownership of more than 5 percent (reduced in 1970 from the original 10 percent) of an issuer's voting securities to make a similar public disclosure within 10 days *after* acquiring more than 5 percent. *See* section 13(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, 15 U.S.C. 78m(d).

In some respects, Williams Act disclosures parallel antitrust premerger requirements. The securities law disclosures concerning tender offers, like the antitrust premerger notifications, take place prior to the acquisition of shares. Thus, the § 803.5 notice given in connection with a tender offer provides no new information to the target firm.

The requirement to disclose beneficial ownership under section 13(d), however, does not apply to purchases of 5 percent or less, and the required disclosures for larger purchases need not be made until after the 5 percent threshold has been crossed. Consequently, an acquiror may buy 5 percent without any disclosure. The § 803.5 notice to the target can thus reveal an acquiror's otherwise secret plans. These acquirors have an incentive not to comply with the premerger notification rules in order to purchase shares more cheaply in secret.

In addition, although the section 13(d) disclosure obligation is triggered by the acquisition of more than a 5 percent interest, an acquiror may accumulate a substantially larger percentage of the target's shares before making the disclosures. For example, the acquiror conceivably might, through block purchases, obtain a majority or even all of the target's shares before making its public disclosure. Moreover, section 13(d) permits the acquiror to continue buying shares during the 10 days it has to make the disclosures.

The percentage of shares an acquiror is likely to purchase initially and during this 10-day period is significant for determining whether the level of purchases at which secrecy is maintained under the Williams Act can be matched under the antitrust rules without compromising the effectiveness of the premerger review program as an antitrust enforcement tool. If purchasers typically acquire enough voting securities to transfer working control of target firms before they make their acquisitions public, the Commission would be unable to bring its rules into close harmony with section 13(d). The enforcement agencies must have information in advance from both the acquiring and the acquired firm to evaluate adequately the antitrust implications of a transfer of control. If, however, purchasers more typically limit their non-public acquisitions to a lower percentage of voting securities—one that is unlikely to allow them to influence the firm's management—it may be possible to revise the premerger notification requirements to accommodate the level at which Congress permitted secrecy under the securities laws.

Analysis of a random sample of one hundred Schedule 13D disclosures of beneficial interest filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission shows that 59 of the acquirors held less than 10 percent of the target's securities. Of the remainder, it appears that none of the acquirors had an incentive to violate their premerger notification obligations. Those acquisitions exceeding 10 percent fell into several categories: exempt from premerger notification obligations (because the acquisitions were valued at $15 million or less or were stock options); otherwise not reportable; made by the issuer's managers who had little reason to hide their transactions from the issuer; or made after filing the required antitrust notification. A conclusion that acquisitions of more than 10 percent are less likely to be involved in antitrust notification compliance problems would also be consistent with the Commission's experience under the Hart-Scott-Rodino act described in the following section.

There appear to be a least two reasons that holdings greater than 10 percent are often not amassed before filing a Schedule 13D, despite existence of the "10 day window" between the crossing of the 5 percent threshold and the mandatory disclosure. First, it may be difficult or unduly expensive to acquire such holdings during that time period. Second, section 16(b) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, 15 U.S.C. 78p(b), may discourage purchases beyond the 10 percent level. Section 16(b) requires a person holding more than 10 percent of a company's shares to disgorge to the company any profits that person makes on the sale of company shares held for less than six months. Thus, persons whose plans contemplate, as one possibility, selling shares within the six-month period may limit their acquisitions to less than 10 percent. If, for example, there objective is to obtain control, acquirors may prefer to seek additional shares through a tender offer that conditions acceptance of additional shares on having a specified percentage of shares tendered. Then the acquiror can be sure of obtaining control when it buys the tendered shares or, if the acquisition plan fails because too few shares are tendered, the acquiror risks loss only on the 10 percent holding and can retain any gain if it sells those shares at a profit.

The ability of acquirors to amass holdings greater than 5 percent without disclosure may be significantly reduced as a result of legislation introduced in Congress to alter the Williams Act requirements. One approach would narrow the "10 day window" or close it entirely by forbidding purchases beyond 5 percent until disclosure had been made. *See, e.g.*, Tender Offer Reform Act of 1987, H.R. 2172, 100th Cong., 1st Sess. (1987). Another proposal would, in addition, lower the disclosure threshold to 3 percent or less. Tender Offer Disclosure and Fairness Act of 1987, S 1323, 100th Cong., 1st Sess. (1987).

C. Experience under the Hart-Scott-Rodino Act

The Commission's experience with the premerger notification program suggests that acquiring persons have in a number of instances sought, through various devices, to avoid filing premerger notifications. These acquirors appear to have done so not in order to escape or delay antitrust review but, rather in order to acquire voting securities prior to informing the issuer. Acquirors have tried at least two ways to argue under the Commission's rules that purchases of a small percentage of an issuer's voting securities were exempt: (1) They acquired shares directly and claimed the transaction was exempt under § 802.9, because the shares were acquired "solely for the purpose of investment;" and (2) they acquired shares "indirectly" through brokers under what were described as option agreements, claiming an exemption under § 802.31. In most of these instances the acquiring person held less than 10 percent of the issuer's voting securities. Furthermore, in a number of these instances the acquirors had actually filed or declared an intention of file the antitrust notifications for shares purchased subsequent to disclosing their beneficial ownership under the securities laws. This experience and our assessment of the current situation under the securities laws set forth above suggest that the secrecy-based incentive to avoid filing premerger notifications is greatest for acquisitions of less than 10 percent.

Accordingly, the Commission believes that most acquirors would submit additional purchases to an antitrust premerger review, if they could acquire up to 10 percent without prior notice to the issuer. The question raised in this Notice is whether the Commission can alter its premerger-notification rules in a way that will reduce this incentive while maintaining an effective antitrust enforcement mechanism. The answer to that question depends in large part on the antitrust significance of acquisitions of up to 10 percent of an issuer's voting securities.

II. The Antitrust Significance of 10 Percent Acquisitions

The Commission has examined three sources of guidance in considering the antitrust implications of acquisitions of 10 percent or less: antitrust chase law, experience with antitrust premerger filings, and federal statutory presumptions. All these indicate that acquisitions of up to 10 percent are less likely to violate the antitrust laws than acquisitions of greater percentages.

A. Antitrust Case Law

Section 7 of the Clayton Act prohibits acquisitions where the effect "may be substantially to lessen competition, or to tend to create a monopoly." 15 U.S.C. 18. It requires courts to predict whether a stock acquisition may give the acquiring person the power to influence target management in an anticompetitive manner. *United States v. E.I. du Pont de Nemours and Co.*, 353 U.S. 586 (1957).

An acquiring person does not need to purchase as much as 50% of another company's stock to violate section 7. *See, e.g., Denver & R.G.W.R.R. Co. v. United States*, 387 U.S. 485 (1967); *United States v. E.I. du Pont De Nemours and Co., supra*. In *Du Pont*, the court stated that an acquisition of "any part of the stock of another corporation, * * * is within reach of the Section whenever the reasonable likelihood appears that the acquisition will result in a restraint of commerce of in the creation of a monopoly * * *" 353 U.S. at 592. The court held that Du Pont's 23% share of General Motors securities violated section 7.

Other antitrust cases have recognized the influence on a target's management that the holder of a 20 percent interest can exert. *See, e.g., Crane v. Briggs*, 280 F.2d 747 (6th Cir 1960) (22% and the power to elect two directors enjoined as a violation of section 7); *Jacobson Manufacturing Co. v. Sterling Precision Corp.*, 282 F. Supp 598 (E.D. Wisc. 1968) (a 22% owner "is going to be in position to exercise some form of control"). Other courts have indicated that it would be appropriate to enjoin an acquisition that would result in the acquiror holding 20 percent of a target's shares. *See, e.g., Gulf and Western Industries, Inc. v. Great A&P Tea Co., Inc.* 476 F.2d 687 (2d Cir. 1973) (19% share); *Hamilton Watch Co. v. Benrus Watch Co.*, 114 F. Supp 307 (D. Conn.), *aff'd*, 206 F.2d 738 (2d Cir. 1953) (24% share).

Acquisitions of under 10 percent have received a mixed appraisal in cases not involving section 7. For example, in *Dan River, Inc. v. Unitex, Ltd.*, 624 F.2d 1216 (4th Cir. 1980), a securities law case, the court noted that 20 percent is "frequently regarded as control of a corporation * * * [but] at this point in their purchase program when they have but some eight percent of Dan River's stock, they could not hope to exercise control." 624 F.2d at 1225. However, the Civil Aeronautics Board has declared that a carrier may be in a position to exert control over another carrier at any percentage. *See, e.g., Toolco-Northeast Control Case*, 42 C.A.B. 822, 825 (1965); *Allegheny Airlines*, 41 C.A.B. 743, 744–5 (1964). With the agreement of incumbent management, an acquisition of only a few percent of shares sometimes has been the basis of a transfer of control to the acquiror. *See generally Matter of Caplan v. Lionel Corp*, 14 N.Y.2d 679 (1964), *aff'g*, 20 A.D.2d 301 (1964); *cf. Essex Universal Corp v. Yates*, 305 F.2d 572 (2d Cir. 1962).

There has apparently been no section 7 case that addressed directly and in detail the implications of an acquisition of less than 10 percent of the target's voting securities. There are two cases, however, that suggest that acquisitions of less than 10 percent may violate section 7. In the first, a district court issued a preliminary injunction against an acquisition of 9.9 percent of the target's shares. While this injunction was vacated on appeal, *Kennecott Copper Corp v. Curtiss-Wright Corp.*, 584 F.2d 1195 (2d Cir. 1978), the reversal appears to rest on the inadequate definitions of product and geographic markets not on the ground that a 9.9 percent holding and the power to elect one director was insufficient to trigger section 7. In *Vanadium Corp. of America v. Susquehanna Corp.*, 203 F. Supp. 686 (D. Del. 1962), the court enjoined Susquehanna, its president and related interests from voting their combined 19.7 percent block of shares in Vanadium on the grounds that the exercise of those voting rights would probably lessen competition in the vanadium market. It issued the injunction notwithstanding that no person or entity in the Susquehanna group held as much as 10 percent of Vanadium's shares. Consequently, it appears that a court might also enjoin the acquisition of shares by individual members of a group even where no individual's holdings would be sufficient alone to influence the target management.

Finally, in one instance an acquisition of under 10 percent resulted in an interlocking directorate which the Commission found illegal under section 8 of the Clayton Act. In *Borg-Warner Corp. v. Federal Trade Commission*, 746 F.2d 108 (2d Cir. 1984), Bosch GmbH had placed two of its directors on the board of Borg-Warner after acquiring 9.5 percent of Borg-Warner's shares. The Commission held that the presence of common directors on both corporate boards violated both section 8 of the Clayton Act and section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, because the firms competed in three lines of business. The Second Circuit reversed the Commission's order, but only on grounds of mootness (competition between the two firms had ceased as a result of divesting the competing business line, and the firms no longer had common directors).

These decisions indicate that although there are circumstances in which the acquisition of 10 percent or less of an issuer's voting securities may violate the antitrust laws, the occurrence of actual anticompetitive acquisitions in this range has been rare or non-existent. In addition, there are reasons why anticompetitive acquisitions of under 10 percent would be unusual. Anticompetitive acquisitions appear to be of two principal types: acquisitions conferring control of an issuer, and acquisitions that facilitate collusion by obtaining the power to elect a member of the issuer's board of directors. Ten percent is not enough to guarantee control without the agreement of the issuer's management; a person seeking control is therefore likely to purchase more shares individually or set up a group to purchase the requisite shares. The former would not be protected by an exemption (or other rules modification) that was limited to holdings of 10 percent or less. The latter would require a public disclosure under the securities laws and would risk liability under section 1 of the Sherman Act as well as under section 7 of the Clayton Act. Obtaining a seat on the board of directors might be an efficient way to facilitate collusion between the parties, but it too would normally be a public act likely to incite unwanted scrutiny by the antitrust agencies. Accordingly, it appears probable that nearly all acquisitions of 10 percent or less will have no antitrust significance.

The same reasoning applies even more forcefully to voting security acquisitions of 5 percent or less. Obtaining control or a seat on the board is even less likely, while all the risks of unwanted antitrust scrutiny from using a group or obtaining the seat are the same. Moreover, even the sparse precedent for finding antitrust violations for acquisitions of less than 10 percent evaporates for acquisitions of less than 5 percent of an issuer's voting securities. *Kennecott*, *Vanadium*, and *Borg-Warner* all involved acquirors of more than 5 percent. We are aware of no case in which a tribunal at any level found a violation of section 7 for an acquisition of less than 5 percent, apart from acquisitions by a person operating as a member of a group.

B. Antitrust Enforcement Activities

Available records indicate neither of the antitrust agencies has ever challenged an acquisition of 10 percent or less of an issuer's voting securities as a violation of section 7. (In *Borg-Warner*, though, the Commission challenged under § 8 an interlocking directorate achieved through a 9.5 percent acquisition.) The complete absence of section 7 actions by federal enforcement agencies is not surprising. Rather, it is consistent with the conclusion of the preceding section that acquisitions of 10 percent or less do not appear to have presented competitive problems.

This conclusion is further supported by an even more sensitive preliminary indicator of antitrust enforcement interest. The Commission maintains records of two levels of preliminary enforcement interest on all transactions filed under the premerger notification program: "clearance," the first indication of antitrust concern, initiates a procedure by which the two antitrust agencies decide which agency will begin an in-depth review of a transaction, and "second requests," the procedure under the act for obtaining additional information from the parties that generally indicates a higher level of concern. We have complete statistics for the years 1981–1984 (see table below), and these demonstrate a much lower than average level of enforcement interest in acquisitions of 10 percent or less. Overall, the percentage of clearances for these transactions was under 10 percent, which is less than two-thirds the percent in which clearances were sought for all transactions. The more recent but incomplete data for 1985 and 1986 show, for 1986, a higher number of transactions reported and a higher percentage of clearances. The larger number of transactions involving acquisitions of up to 10 percent probably reflects the larger number of transactions reported overall that year. The higher percentage of clearances may be just a chance variation.

ENFORCEMENT INTEREST IN SELECTED PREMERGER TRANSACTIONS

Calendar year	Transactions	Total clearances granted (FTC & DOJ)		Second requests issued (FTC & DOJ)		Transactions as a percentage of annual total adjusted transactions
		Number	Percent	Number	Percent	
A. Voting Securities Acquired—10% and Less:						
1981	16	1	6.3	0	-	2.1
1982	10	1	10.0	0	-	1.4
1983	36	3	8.3	1	2.8	4.0

ENFORCEMENT INTEREST IN SELECTED PREMERGER TRANSACTIONS—Continued

Calendar year	Transactions	Total clearances granted (FTC & DOJ)		Second requests issued (FTC & DOJ)		Transactions as a percentage of annual total adjusted transactions
		Number	Percent	Number	Percent	
1984	12	2	16.7	0	-	1.1
1985	26	2	7.7	1	3.8	N.A.
1986	45	12	26.7	0	-	N.A.
1981–1986 Total	145	21	14.5	2	1.4	N.A.
1981–1984 Total	74	7	9.5	1	1.4	6.6
B. Voting Securities Acquired—5% and Less:						
1981	11	1	9.1	0	-	1.4
1982	1	0	-	0	-	0.1
1983	22	1	4.5	1	4.5	2.4
1984	5	1	20.0	0	-	0.4
1985	14	1	7.1	0	-	N.A.
1986	25	6	24.0	0	-	N.A.
1981–1986 Total	78	10	12.8	1	1.3	N.A.
1981–1984 Total	39	3	7.7	1	2.6	4.3
C. All Transactions (Adjusted) [1]:						
1981	765	167	21.8	78	10.2	
1982	710	136	19.2	42	5.9	
1983	903	129	14.3	51	5.6	
1984	1,119	175	15.6	71	6.3	
1981–1984 Total	3,497	607	17.4	242	6.9	

[1] Data not available for calendar years 1985 and 1986.

Even more significant are the "second request" data that show virtually no interest in these transactions beyond the most preliminary stage. The two second requests on the table involved special circumstances. Both transactions were subject to second requests because the securities were being received in exchange for the independently reported acquisition of 100 percent of the acquiror's assets. In other words, the concern that generated the second request was the merging of the two businesses, not the acquisition of a small amount of voting securities by what would become a shell corporation. Had the acquisition of voting securities in these two instances been exempt from reporting obligations, the asset acquisitions would still have been reported and the agencies' investigations, which included issuance of second requests, would not have been impeded. Apart from these transactions we know of no second requests issued that were for acquisitions of 10 percent or less since the program was established in 1978.

The small number of transactions reported in these categories and the low degree of enforcement interest should be interpreted with some caution. Because a premerger notification remains in effect for a year, acquirors generally file for the highest threshold they expect to cross. Otherwise, an additional filing and waiting period would be required if a subsequent acquisition would increase the acquiror's holdings over the 15, 25, or 50 percent thresholds. Thus, it is possible that a clearance or second request recorded in these statistics at a higher threshold level might have been sought by the enforcement agencies if the percentage of voting securities intended to be held were 10 percent or less. There is, however, no indication of whether this is the case in any of these transactions.

In addition, historical data on enforcement interest may not always be of great value in assessing whether a rules change would be likely to let anticompetitive transactions go unreported. If all acquisitions up to 10 percent were exempt, more persons might be encouraged to make initial acquisitions within this range before making a filing, and it is possible that some of these acquisitions would raise competitive issues. Nonetheless, the central fact that we are unable to uncover any instance of either of the antitrust agencies ever challenging a stock acquisition of less than 10 percent under section 7 alleviates this concern.

The enforcement interest statistics, like the case law, indicate that there has been relatively little antitrust interest in acquisitions of small percentages of an issuer's voting securities. The enforcement agencies' interest has been demonstrated only at the "clearance" level and even at that level the interest has been must lower than for other transactions. There have been no relevant second requests. Moreover, neither antitrust agency has ever challenged an acquisition of 10 percent or less of an issuer's voting securities as a violation of section 7.

C. Federal Statutory Presumptions

There are a number of federal statutes that establish reporting and other regulatory requirements based on the percentage of securities a person holds. They frequently reflect an implicit or explicit assumption that below the stated percentage the acquiror is unlikely to control the issuer or above that percent it is likely to control the issuer. While not determinative for the premerger rules, the generalizations in those laws provide a useful perspective.

Federal regulatory statutes have generally used three percentages as benchmarks: 5, 10, and 25. Most common is a presumption of control at a 25 percent holding: Bank Holding Company Act of 1956, 12 U.S.C. 1841 *et seq.*; Federal Deposit Insurance Act, 12 U.S.C. 1811 *et seq.*; Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation Act, 12 U.S.C. 1730(q)(8)(B); National Housing Act, 12 U.S.C. 1730a (a)(2)(B); and the Investment Company Act of 1940, 15 U.S.C. 80a–2 *et seq.* Another significant group of statutes use 10 percent either to presume control or the possibility of control or more simply as a notification threshold: Federal Aviation Act of 1953, 15 U.S.C. 1378(f); Securities Exchange Act of 1934, 15 U.S.C. 78p(a); and Public Utilities Holding Company Act of 1935, 15 U.S.C. 79b(a)(9) and (10). Still other statutes have used a 5 percent holding as a notification threshold without any necessary implication of control: Bank Holding Company Act of 1956, 12 U.S.C. 1841(a)(2); Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, 15 U.S.C. 78m(d). Finally, several acts have established a presumption that control does not exist for holdings of less than 5 percent: Bank Holding Company Act of 1956, 12 U.S.C. 1841(a)(3); Federal Deposit Insurance Act, 12 U.S.C. 1817(j)(1)(A).

The legislative history of the securities laws, especially of section 13(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, includes extensive discussion of whether a holder of 5 percent or less is likely to control an issuer. The purpose of section 13(d) is to alert the marketplace to rapid accumulations of securities which might represent a potential shift in control. *Mosinee Paper Corp. v. Rondeau*, 500 F.2d 1011 (7th Cir. 1974); *GAF Corp. v. Milstein*, 453 F.2d 709 (2d Cir. 1971). An acquisition which reaches the 5% level signals "the earliest possible moment of the potential for a shift in control." *Mosinee Paper*, 500 F.2d at 1016.

As noted earlier, section 13(d) was amended in 1970 to reduce from 10 percent to 5 percent the threshold level at which an acquisition of shares must be disclosed. The principal reason for the change was evidence presented to Congress that companies limited their open market purchases to just below 10 percent as a means of avoiding the prior disclosure requirement applicable to tender offers. Pub. L. 91–567, 84 Stat. 1497 (1970). Because of the "ten day window," during which additional shares may be bought prior to disclosure, the amendment may not have achieved its objective. However, the legislative history shows Senator Williams' concern that "even 5 percent, can involve large amounts of money and can have a significant impact on corporate control." *Hearings of S. 336 and S. 3431 Before the Subcommittee on Securities of the Senate Committee on Banking and Currency*, 91st Cong., 2d Sess. 1 (1970).

On the other hand, the Chairman of the Federal Securities Acts Committee of the Investment Bankers Association, who also spoke in favor of the amendment to decrease the section 13(d) threshold, stated, "We believe it has not been demonstrated that ownership of less than 10 percent of the equity securities of any company constitutes "control" of the company in any way, even in the case of large corporations where the value of 9 percent of the equity securities would be many millions of dollars." *Hearings, supra*, at 115.

If other federal statutes imply that holders of 10 percent or less of an issuer's voting securities are unlikely to control the issuer, the legislative history of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Act tends more to the opposite view. Congress was aware that the premerger notification program would require filing for far smaller percentage acquisitions of voting securities than those covered by other statutes. Representative Hutchinson responded to a criticism that the notification requirements of the act—$15 million or 15 percent—were not strict enough: "If the percentage test were the only test of substantiality, the cited statutes might provide appropriate guidance. But the [$15] million figure, in effect, operates to reduce the percentage required as the transaction gets larger. Thus, the two-pronged committee test is both more flexible and more exact than the other statutory test." *Id.* Cong. Rec. H–8140 (daily ed. Aug. 2, 1976).

When Congress considered a *de minimis* exemption for voting security acquisitions, it limited the exemption to acquisitions that (1) were "solely for the purpose of investment," and (2) constituted 10 percent or less of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer. Section 7a(c)(9) of the act. The Commission could and did broaden this exemption using its authority under section 7A(d)(2)(B) to exempt "transactions which are not likely to violate the antitrust laws." Section 802.64 exempts an acquisition of up to 15 percent of an issuer's voting securities by an institutional investor if made solely for the purpose of investment. Neither this nor any of the other exemptions in the rules are based on other federal statutory presumptions about control of corporations.

Overall, these other statutory presumptions support the proposition that acquisitions of up to 10 percent are less likely to confer control or create competitive problems than acquisitions of greater percentages. Similarly, they indicate that any such problems are even less likely for holdings of 5 percent or less. In contrast, the $15 million reporting threshold in the Hart-Scott-Rodino Act and the "solely for the purpose of investment" qualification to its voting securities exemption indicate a Congressional interest in subjecting some types of acquisitions of 10 percent or less to premerger review. At the same time, however, Congress gave the enforcement agencies broad authority in the act to exempt classes of transactions that are unlikely to violate the antitrust laws.

III. Proposed Solutions

The proposals outlined below are directed at acquisitions of 10 percent or less of an issuer's outstanding voting securities. In part because the antitrust agencies appear never to have challenged such an acquisition, such acquisitions appear unlikely to violate the antitrust laws. As the foregoing discussion makes clear, the Commission has identified the 10 percent level based also in part on marketplace incentives related to the securities laws. If the federal securities laws are amended, the Commission may want to focus on a different threshold level. At present, though, the 10 percent level seems appropriate in light of both the securities laws and antitrust enforcement interest.

There are basically two approaches to reducing the conflict between the acquiror's desire to purchase small percentages of voting securities in secret, which is permitted by the securities laws, and the obligation to notify the issuer contained in the premerger rules. The first is simply to exempt small percentage acquisitions from all premerger obligations. The second is to alter the notification procedures in a way that removes the obligation to notify the target but assures that the antitrust agencies receive the information they require and have an opportunity to review it before consumers are harmed or remedial options are lost or become unworkably complex.

The principal proposal follows the first approach and would exempt all acquisitions of 10 percent or less of an issuer's outstanding voting securities. The alternative proposals follow the other approach and are designed to prevent competitive harm in those apparently unlikely instances when an acquisition of 10 percent or less would be anticompetitive. One would permit an acquiror to purchase 10 percent or less of an issuer's voting securities without filing notification, provided the securities are held in escrow until the antitrust agencies have completed their review. The other would permit an acquiror to file its prior notification for an acquisition of 10 percent or less without notifying the issuer (who would not have a filing obligation), provided the acquiror supplies certain information about the transaction and the issuer that is not now required. Under this proposal, the enforcement agencies would retain the authority to seek information from the issuer if necessary.

The Commission presents these alternatives with the recognition that there are disadvantages, as well as advantages, to each of the proposals. It requests comments on the provisions of each proposal. It would also welcome suggestions for other proposals as well as comments on the problems described in this Notice and the proposals set out below. In addition, the Commission would appreciate comments on several specific issues. Those that relate to a particular proposal are stated after the discussion of that proposal. The following questions concern all the proposals.

1. Is promulgation of any one of these proposals likely to change significantly existing patterns of acquiring voting securities? Would, for example, many more persons make acquisitions of up to 10 percent of the voting securities of an issuer?

The dearth of antitrust cases involving acquisitions of 10 percent or less suggests that it is unlikely that such acquisitions will raise competitive problems. It is possible, however, that some acquisitions of more than 10 percent that were found to be anticompetitive would also have had significant anticompetitive effects if they had involved 10 percent or less. Special treatment of acquisitions of 10 percent or less could encourage some acquirors who might not otherwise have done so to limit their initial or total purchases to 10 percent. Under what circumstances might acquirors be so influenced, and in what situations would such small acquisitions be likely to violate the antitrust laws?

2. Under any of these proposals, will a substantial number of purchasers typically seek to acquire more than 10 percent of the voting securities of an issuer before notifying the target? If so, is it likely that any of these proposals will effectively reduce the Commission's burden of policing compliance with the premerger rules?

Analysis of the random sample of Schedule 13Ds filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission discussed earlier indicates that few acquirors with an antitrust notification obligation exceed the 10 percent level without first previously satisfying their antitrust premerger notification obligations. The Commission's own experience also suggests that most, but not all, such acquirors file with the SEC and this Commission before exceeding the 10 percent level.

Even for those who seek to acquire more, however, it appears that the incentive to avoid the rules would be diminished if the Commission eliminated notice to the target for a lower percentage than the acquiror had intended to accumulate. For example, assume that for $15 million an acquiror could purchase one percent of the voting securities of an issuer. Assume further that the acquiror expects to obtain a $1.5 million profit upon resale of the shares and that the expected costs and profits are proportional for acquisitions of 5 and 10 percent, provided the acquiror does not notify the issuer prior to these acquisitions. Finally, assume that the acquiror can buy 11 percent of the shares before the securities laws would require a public disclosure. In deciding how much to buy under the current premerger rules, the acquiror must balance a no risk $1.5 million profit on 1 percent of the stock against a risky $16.5 million profit on 11 percent. (This profit is risky because it can be achieved only by violating the rules, which may result in substantial civil penalties.) If, under any of these proposals, the acquiror could buy 5 percent of the shares without notifying the target, the acquiror would face a different choice, balancing a $7.5 million profit without any risk of violating the rules, against the riskier $16.5 million profit option. If the rules permitted the acquisition of 10 percent without notice to the target, the choice would be between the risky $16.5 million profit and a legal profit of $15 million. In that case the incentives appear to be very different.

Are there other factors which would affect a purchaser's decision?

3. If Congress amends the securities laws to eliminate the "ten day window," how should that change be reflected in these proposals?

Under those circumstances, should all the proposals be restricted to voting security acquisition of 5 percent or lower? Would applying any or all of these proposals to acquisitions of 5 percent (or percent), rather than 10 percent, of an issuer's voting securities be a better approach even without changes in the securities laws? In this regard, it should be noted that all relevant transactions identified by the staff to date as being possible violations of the premerger notification requirements have involved acquisitions of more than 5 percent.

4. Should the Commission revise the other voting securities thresholds of § 801.1(h) if it exempts acquisitions of 5 percent or 10 percent of the voting securities of an issuer?

For example, if a 10 percent exemption were adopted, would it make sense to retain the 15 and 25 percent reporting thresholds? Would the program be diminished or enhanced by replacing those with 10 and 20 percent thresholds?

A. The Principal Proposal: An Unrestricted Exemption

Proposed § 802.24 would exempt from the obligations of the act the accumulation by any persons of up to 10 percent of any issuer's voting securities. Acquirors would not have to suspend consummation of transactions during a waiting period nor would they be required to notify the antitrust agencies or the target of their acquisitions before or after consummation. This proposal appears to address most directly the non-antitrust-related incentive to avoid premerger notification obligations that acquirors face prior to the point when § 13(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 requires them to disclose their beneficial ownership. The Commission will also consider whether a lower percentage exemption, such as 5 percent, might be appropriate, particularly if the provisions of the securities laws are amended.

Acquirors are reluctant to file premerger notifications because both the delay imposed by the waiting period and informing the target could increase the cost to them of acquiring the issuer's voting securities. In general, this class of persons would not acquire more than 10 percent of a target's voting securities because of the strictures on short-swing profits imposed by section 16(b) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and because of the difficulties of acquiring more shares at low prices in the ten-day Williams Act period. Where such persons do seek to acquire more than 10 percent of the shares, the Commission expects that they would comply voluntarily with the obligations of the premerger notification program. Unless the securities laws are changed, a 5 percent exemption would reduce but not eliminate this non-antitrust-related incentive to avoid premerger notification requirements for most persons.

Currently, acquisitions of voting securities valued at more than $15 million, but which constitute 10 percent or less of an issuer's voting securities, are exempt under § 802.9 if the shares are held "solely for the purpose of investment." That exemption is not now available if the securities are purchased "with the intention of influencing the basic business decisions of the issuer, or with the intention of participating in the management of the issuer." *See* letter of Bureau Director Thomas J. Campbell dated August 19, 1982, included as Exhibit D in the Commission's Sixth Annual Report to Congress on the Hart-Scott-Rodino Act (July 26, 1983). This proposal would subsume that exemption by eliminating the filing requirement for all acquisitions of 10 percent or less of an issuer's voting securities, regardless of the intent of the acquired person.

In 1978 when the premerger rules were originally adopted, the Commission rejected the suggestion "that investment intent should be disregarded and that all acquisitions below the 10 percent level should be exempt.'" 43 FR 33490, July 31, 1978. The Commission's current consideration of an unrestricted 10 percent exemption is based on eight years experience reviewing premerger notifications which supports the view that such acquisitions are unlikely to violate the antitrust laws. It also responds to persistent problems enforcing filing obligations for acquisitions of 10 percent or less, an continued suggestions for some type of unrestricted exemption for acquisitions of small percentages of voting securities. See Comment 20 to the proposed "acquisition vehicle" rule 50 FR 38742, September 24, 1985 and comment 4 to the proposed "partnership control" rule, 50 FR 7095, March 6, 1987, promulgated 50 FR 20058, May 29, 1987.

The Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, is authorized to "exempt, from the requirements of [the act], classes of * * * transactions which are not likely to violate the antitrust laws." Section 7A(d)(2)(B) of the act. The finding required by the statute can be demonstrated in different ways. The Commission can exempt a class of transactions on the grounds that that type of transaction is inherently unlikely to be anticompetitive. For example, § 802.30 and section 7A(c)(3) exempt acquisitions of voting securities by persons who already own 50 percent or more of an issuer. Given that such an acquiror already controls the issuer it is possible, but not likely, that as a result of the acquisition the issuer will act in a way that significantly diminishes competition in any relevant market. The Commission relied in part on this rationale when it adopted § 802.35 which permits Employee Stock Option Plans (ESOPs) to acquire shares in their employer's firm if the employer controls the ESOP by a contractual right to appoint the plan's trustees.

Exemptions can also be based on enforcement experience and statistics. In 1985 the Commission proposed to raise the § 802.2(b) "controlled issuer" annual net sales and total assets thresholds. That proposal was based on the observation that few of the reportable "controlled issuer" transactions have raised competitive problems, not that they could not do so. The proposal rested on the grounds that many persons, whose transactions typically raised no competitive problems, were unnecessarily burdened by reporting obligations because of the possibility that statistically unlikely anticompetitive transactions might occur.

It is not possible to say that voting securities acquisitions of 10 percent or less, or 5 percent or less, cannot violate the antitrust laws. The proposed exemption is rather based on the evidently low likelihood that "the class of transactions" will violate the antitrust laws. The statistics compiled by the Commission, discussed earlier, demonstrate a much lower level of enforcement interest in acquisitions of 10 percent or less than in other transactions. Our review of antitrust litigation and inability to find any section 7 cases filed by the agency with 10 percent or less ownership provides even stronger support for the exemption. The conclusion that the class of transactions is unlikely to violate the antitrust laws is also supported both by the reasons that make it likely that persons who have anticompetitive objectives would not acquire only small percentages and the likelihood that the antitrust agencies would become aware of such anticompetitive transactions even without premerger notifications. Of course, such anticompetitive transactions occur, the proposed exemption would provide no basis for arguing the legality of the transaction.

The advantages of proposed § 802.24 are clear. The exemption directly reduces the non-antitrust-related incentives to avoid filing. Its criteria are objective—10 percent or less of an issuer's voting securities—and therefore easy to administer. The antitrust agencies would not have to devote their resources to determining whether particular acquisitions were made solely for the purpose of investment.

The disadvantages of proposed § 802.24 are also evident. The antitrust agencies would not have the benefit of prior notice, information about the parties to a transaction, or the waiting period to prevent any anticompetitive acquisitions of 10 percent or less of an issuer's voting securities. In addition, the Commission may continue to have a significant compliance problem with persons who seek to acquire more than 10 percent of the voting securities of issuers without prior disclosure to the target companies. However, as discussed at some length above, it appears unlikely that an acquisition of 10 percent or less of the voting securities of an issuer will violate the antitrust laws. And the Commission's experience has shown that most reportable acquisitions without notice to the target have been at or below the 10 percent level.

The Commission has considered the foregoing but has not finally evaluated the merits of proposed § 802.24. Its further consideration would be aided by comments on the following matters.

1. When would the antitrust agencies likely learn of an acquisition of 10 percent or less of the voting securities of an issuer if the acquisition were anticompetitive?

The Commission could of course monitor Schedule 13D filings, but most of those are not transactions that would have antitrust notification obligations and, in any case, do not contain adequate information to do a quick screening.

2. Should the Commission consider some limitation on the 10 percent exemption?

The Commission might, for example, specifically exclude transactions that enable the acquiror to elect a director or that include an agreement to appoint one or more directors to the issuer's board.

3. Should the Commission reconsider using the group concept from the securities laws if it exempts acquisitions of 5 percent or 10 percent of the voting securities of an issuer?

One aspect of the antitrust interest in 5 percent holdings is raised by the decision in *Susquehanna* discussed above that enjoins the exercise of rights to 2 percent of the issuer's voting securities. That decision was premised on the collective exercise of rights held by a "group" holding 19 percent of the shares. While such groups can act anticompetitively, the antitrust premerger notification rules have not used the group concept, perhaps because the $15 million criterion effectively lowers the percentage threshold in large transactions. The Commission never used the securities law group concept in defining the acquiring person, and formally deleted the term "group" from the definition of "entity" in a 1983 amendment to § 801.1(a)(2). 48 FR 34428, July 29, 1983. It should be noted that if such a group formed an entity that was not controlled under § 801.1(b) and used that entity to make an acquisition, the transaction probably would not be reportable if, pursuant to § 801.11(e) the entity did not itself meet the minimum size-of-person test.

4. Would a 5 percent exemption unduly complicate the rules by creating for acquisitions of voting securities a 5 percent unrestricted exemption under proposed § 802.24, on top of a 10 percent "investment only" exemption under § 802.9, and the 15, 25 and 50 percent reporting thresholds of § 801.1(h)?

B. The Escrow Proposal

Proposed § 801.34 would permit acquirors to purchase, but not take possession of, up to 10 percent of an issuer's voting securities without filing a notification. The shares purchased would be placed in escrow and voted by the escrow agent in proportion to the votes cast by all other shares. The acquiror would be required to file and observe the waiting period prior to purchasing more than 10 percent of an issuer's voting securities or prior to taking the shares out of escrow. Like the unrestricted exemption, this proposal directly addresses the source of the incentive not to file antitrust premerger notifications. Both permit the purchase of shares without delay or prior notification to the target. The acquiror can thereby obtain the economic benefit of acquiring in secret. Thus, unless it would acquire more than 10 percent prior to making its securities law disclosures, the acquiror has no confidentiality reasons to avoid its subsequent antitrust premerger obligations.

The escrow proposal, unlike the unrestricted exemption, would not necessarily require a conclusion by the Commission that holdings of 10 percent or less are unlikely to violate the antitrust laws. Rather the proposal could be based in part on the judgement that in the relatively rare event such antitrust enforcement actions must be undertaken, the escrow arrangement normally will be an effective guard against competitive harm and preserve the opportunity for effective remedies. This procedure would not be available for acquisitions through tender offers. Because tender offers are announced in advance, there is no interest served in delaying the antitrust review.

The primary advantage of this proposal is that the antitrust agencies will learn of an acquisition and have an opportunity to review it before the purchaser can vote its shares. Its weakness is that this opportunity occurs after the shares have been separated from the prior holder(s).

The Commission has considered whether it has the authority under the act to promulgate the proposed treatment of voting securities held in escrow. The question arises because this proposal creates a procedure under which the filing and waiting requirements of the act would be met before shares are taken out of escrow but after they are purchased. In contrast, the act explicitly prescribes procedures which provide for the antitrust review to be completed before an acquisition takes place. The Commission has concluded that its authority under the act to "define terms," exempt certain "categories of transactions," and prescribe other rules "necessary and appropriate to carry out the purposes" of the act (section 7A(d)(2) of the act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d)(2)) would enable it to establish the procedures prescribed in proposed § 801.34 as a solution to the problem described in this Notice.

The treatment of acquisitions under proposed § 801.34 parallels the treatment of tender offers under the Commission's rules. Section 801.33 establishes what steps in the acquisition process may be undertaken in a tender offer prior to the end of the waiting period without violating the act: the offer may be made, the tender pool may be established and the shares may be tendered, but the acquiror may not accept the shares for payment. Thus, § 801.33 establishes acceptance for payment as the consummation of an acquisition. Similarly, proposed § 801.34 would determine the steps in the acquisition process that may be undertaken prior to filing by defining when consummation of an acquisition occurs for certain escrow purchases.

In one respect, though, the proposed treatment of these escrow purchases differs from the treatment of tender offers. Proposed § 801.34 would permit payment and complete termination of the previous shareholder's rights without antitrust review. In this respect it is more like the acquisition of convertible voting securities. Under § 802.31 the acquisition of unconverted securities, including the termination of the previous shareholder's rights, is exempt. Section § 801.32 requires a filing only when the shares are subsequently exchanged with the issuer for voting securities.

The Commission has previously created other procedures to permit escrow purchases before filing in limited circumstances. Section § 801.31 allows persons who tender their shares in a non-cash tender offer to accept in payment shares from the offeror, if those shares are placed in escrow during the pendency of their waiting period. Also, the Premerger Notification Office staff has permitted cash tender offerors seeking control of an issuer to consummate acquisitions after the expiration of their waiting periods even if the target held a reportable amount of another issuer's securities. The staff has allowed in appropriate transactions the reportable secondary acquisition on the condition that the secondary target's shares be placed in escrow pending expiration of the waiting period for the secondary acquisition.

It should be noted here, however, that the circumstances in which the Commission has permitted purchases in escrow have been very limited. The antitrust enforcement agencies have opposed escrow agreements and continue to believe that, in general, purchases in escrow or hold separate agreements do not adequately protect against interim competitive harm or ensure adequate relief. *See, e.g., FTC v. PPG Industries,* 798 F. 2d 1500 (D.C. Cir. 1986) and *Application of Texas Air Corporation,* U.S. Department of Transportation, Order 88–3–48 (March 14, 1988). The use of the escrow procedures proposed here may be justified because the small percentages of voting securities involved make it likely that there will be no competitive harm and that divestiture will be available as an effective remedy.

Other agencies operating under similar statutes have also permitted purchases to be made and kept in escrow before the agencies exercised their power to examine the transactions. For example, one airline may not acquire control of another until the proposed acquisition had been reviewed and approved by the Civil Aeronautic Board and now the Department of Transportation. 49 U.S.C. 1378(a)(5). Beneficial ownership of 10 percent or more of the voting securities of an airline creates a rebuttable presumption of control. 49 U.S.C. 1378(f). Nevertheless, the Department of Transportation after a case by case review, permits the prior acquisition of stock and requires only that it be placed in a voting trust while the acquisiton is under review.

The fact that other agencies permit escrow purchases offers some support for the view that the Commission may be justified in establishing a similar procedure. There are, however, significant differences in the procedures they use and the statutes they enforce. The CAB, for example, had extensive regulatory authority over airlines when it developed the escrow policy. Different programmatic needs or legislative expectations may have different implications for the appropriateness of escrow procedures.

The Hart-Scott-Rodino Act and its legislative history unequivocally emphasize the requirement and expectation of antitrust review prior to an acquisition. The focus on prior review reflects the Congressional commitment to creating a program which would assure that transactions could be evaluated and, if necessary, prevented, before businesses become so intertwined as to make it impossible to restore effective competiton. However, none of the examples in the Congressional debate illustrating the need for prior review included an acquisition of a small percentage of voting securities. And none of the debates about establishing the $15 million/15 percent of voting securities reporting threshold mentioned problems of formulating antitrust remedies for such transactions. The Commission has drafted the proposed procedures for escrow purchases in light of the clear Congressional concern specifically to prevent the scrambling of businesses by assuring that the shares cannot be voted. And, because the proposal is limited to purchases of 10 percent or less of the voting securities of an issuer, there would appear to be little problem in obtaining an effective divestiture if that became necessary.

In evaluating the merits of the escrow purchase proposal, the Commission is considering—in addition to issues discussed above—the following propositions and welcomes comment on them.

1. Is there a significant possibility of competitive harm during the time the stock would be placed in escrow given that acquirors will not be able to acquire more than 10 percent of an issuer's voting securities?

There is of course, the possibility of harm to the issuer from the fact of purchase and the concern about more to come. Employees may leave, or customers or suppliers may alter their plans based on expectations of events following release of the securities from escrow. These effects seem, however, to be of much the same character as those resulting from a tender offer or a definitive contract to buy shares, both of which can be made, under the rules, prior to filing.

2. Would the acquisition of a small percentage of shares, held in escrow, prevent an effective antitrust remedy?

Because no intermingling of assets or businesses seems likely during the escrow period, any remedy for an antitrust violation would be the sale of the voting securities. In most instances to maintain or fully restore competition it ought not be necessary to return these shares to their former owners, even if those owners were, de facto, in control of the business. The likelihood of the remaining instances in which the transaction would both violate the antitrust laws and require resale to the former owner seems small.

The Commission is also considering as an alternative to a 10 percent escrow proposal, a 5 percent escrow proposal, for the reasons and in the circumstances described in the unrestricted exemption proposal.

C. The Optional Notification Proposal

The optional notification proposal would establish a separate system for antitrust premerger notifications for certain transactions in which the acquiring person would hold 10 percent or less of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer. This optional system would require the acquiror to submit specified public documents describing the entity to be acquired, but would not require that the issuer be given notice of the intended acquisition. The optional form would thus be available only for the acquisition of 10 percent or less of the voting securities of firms that file Schedule 10Ks with the Securities and Exchange Commission and have publicly available annual reports. While the acquired person would not be required to file an initial notification, the antitrust agency reviewing the filing would remain authorized to seek information from the acquired person either informally or through a formal request for additional information.

The optional notification proposal would reduce the incentive to avoid filing the antitrust premerger notification by eliminating the prior notice to the issuer of the voting securities. Like the other two proposals, its provisions limit the special treatment to acquisitions of up to 10 percent of the voting securities of an issuer. Like the escrow proposal, but unlike the unrestricted exemption proposal, the notification alternative does not rely necessarily on a finding by the Commission that acquisitions of 10 percent or less of the voting securities of an issuer are unlikely to violate the antitrust laws. Like the other proposals, it would be likely to reduce the non-antitrust-related incentive to violate the Commission's rules,.

The primary strength of this proposal is that it provides prior notice to the antitrust agencies of transactions. It maintains the full statutory period to review and, in appropriate instances, challenge them before there is any change in the status quo. The proposal has, however, several possible drawbacks. The antitrust agencies may contact the target during the waiting period, so that acquirors seeking secrecy still may be reluctant to file. In addition, this proposal maintains the full waiting period, so that those who may be more concerned about the ability to buy the moment the price is right, may still be inclined to avoid filing. Moreover, the proposal is likely to reduce the initial information available to the antitrust agencies because the target will not file a Notification and Report Form.

The Optional Notification and Report Form attempts to mitigate this last disadvantage by significant revisions to the requirements of items 4 and 7. The Optional Form would require the acquiror to submit certain information and documents relating to the issuer. Items 4(d) and 4(e) would require that the acquiror provide copies of Schedule 10Ks and annual reports of the issuer. This will assure some independent verification of the characteristics of the target firm. The instructions to the Optional Form would state that if the issuer is not required to submit periodic reports to the Securities and Exchange Commission so that the documents listed in item 4(d) do not exist, then the acquiror cannot take advantage of the alternative procedure allowed by § 801.30(c) by submitting the Optional Form. The actual documents must be submitted; no incorporation by reference to previous filings would be acceptable for either item 4(d) or 4(e). Item 4(c) would also be expanded. It would require that the acquiror submit all information it has developed about the target or used in consideration of the takeover, not merely the information prepared for officers or directors.

In addition, the form would require the acquiror to develop information about the issuer. Item 7 would require the acquiring person to determine for each product or service it offers, whether the target produces a competing product or service. The form details a series of minimum efforts that the acquiror must make to identify the target's businesses. For each competing product or service, the Optional Form requires the acquiror to identify the geographic areas in which it or the issuer operates. If the acquiror concludes that the acquiror and the issuer produce no competing products or services, then Item 7 requires that the acquiror detail the search upon which it based that conclusion. An acquiror who does not conduct the necessary search or submit the required information for this item may not use the Optional Form.

Item 6 would also be expanded to require the acquiror to submit additional information about the issuer. Items 6(d), 6(e), and 6(f) would require a description of entities included within the isuer, shareholders of the issuer, and holdings of the issuer, the same information the acquiror must submit about itself in Items 6(a), 6(b), and 6(c).

The Optional Form requires the acquiror to assemble or compile information about the issuer because the antitrust agencies will not have the benefit of a form from the issuer. This requirement could be burdensome in some instances. In such instances the acquiror is free to use the existing procedures under § 802.20(b).

The Optional Form and instructions would differ from the existing form and instructions in a number of other, less significant areas. Because the optional form could be used only for an acquisition of 10% or less of the voting securities of an issuer, references to other types of transactions and questions soliciting information with respect to other types of transactions would be deleted. For example, questions regarding a cash tender offer, formation of a joint venture, or an acquisition of assets would be omitted. The question requiring identification of the threshold to be crossed as a result of the acquisition would also be deleted.

Finally, reference in the instructions to the requirement that notice be served on the target issuer regarding its probable filing obligation would also be deleted; in § 801.30(c) transactions the target issuer would have no filing obligation and the acquiror would not be required to notify the target of the acquisition.

In addition to an Operational Notification and Report Form, this proposal would require a series of amendments to the rules. The following is a brief outline of the necessary changes:

Proposed Section 801.30(c). This provision would state that the 30-day initial waiting period will commence after an acquiring person that seeks to acquire 10 percent or less of the voting securities of an issuer, in a transaction other than a tender offer, files the Optional Notification and Report Form.

This provision together with § 803.5(c) would establish three central elements of this procedure. First, this procedure is optional. Second, the acquiring person need not give notice to the issuer (§ 803.5(c)). Third, the acquired person has no obligation to file a Notification and Report Form.

This proposal, like the escrow proposal, would not be applicable to acquisitions made through tender offers because securities laws require that such offers be made openly with advance notice. As a result, with respect to such transactions, acquirors do not have an incentive to avoid filing premerger notifications for the purpose of making acquisitions without giving notice to the issuer.

Proposed Section 802.25. This provision would exempt certain acquired persons from the obligation to file the Notification and Report Form. It would also make clear that the acquired person would not be exempt from a request for additional information.

Because section 7A(e)(1) authorizes the antitrust agencies to issue "second requests" to any person required to file a notification under section 7A(a), a quick reading of the statute may suggest the Commission lacks the authority to require additional information from persons it has exempted from the initial notification obligation. A closer examination suggests, however, that the determinative factor under paragraph (e)(1) is whether the person was obliged to file a notification under section 7A(a) of the act, not whether the Commission in its discretion exempted that person from that obligation.

Proposed Section 803.1. This provision would add reference to the Notification and Report Form.

Proposed Section 803.2(b)(3). This provision would reflect that the acquired person has no obligation to file if the waiting period is initiated by filing the Optional Form, and specify for what entities the acquiring person is to complete the Optional Form.

Proposed Section 803.3(e). This provision would state that the acquiring person must provide the copies of certain SEC documents and annual reports describing the acquired entity and required by items 4 (d) and (e) on the Optional Form. In contrast, the more usual standard requires only the acquiring person to submit what it knows about the issuer. Because the Commission would intend to do an initial review without contracting the issuer, it would insist that the acquiror supply at a minimum this information. Of course, the antitrust agencies would be free to contact the issuer for any information they may think relevant, but the expectation is that such instances would be rare. If the acquiror fails to include this required information about the issuer, then the filing will be deemed deficient and no waiting period will be initiated in accordance with § 803.10(c)(2).

Proposed Section 803.5(c). This provision would require the acquiror to submit an affidavit that it intends to make an acquisition of 10 percent or less of the outstanding voting securities. Section 803.5 is designed in part to make sure that the antitrust agencies do not review hypothetical transactions.

Proposed Section 803.30. This provision would reflect the fact the second requests may be issued to acquired persons that have been exempted, pursuant to proposed § 802.25, from the obligation to file a notification.

Proposed Part 803 Appendix. The amendment would add the Optional Notification and Report Form.

In evaluating the merits of the optional notification proposal, the Commission is considering the following propositions and welcomes comment on them.

1. It is likely that the optional notification system can significantly reduce the incentive to avoid notification, given the delay inherent in prior review?

2. Can the antitrust agencies conduct their premerger review without contacting the acquired person and other firms in the industry in most transactions?

In this connection, it should be noted Canada recently adopted a premerger notification program that allows for a confidential filing solely from the acquiror. Their early experience suggests it is possible to conduct some reviews in secret.

3. Would the adoption of the optional notification system require the antitrust agencies to impose even more stringent rules protecting the confidentiality of the information or monitor the stock transactions of persons who have access to information included on an Optional Form?

The antitrust agencies have an unblemished record in maintaining the confidentiality of information submitted pursuant to the premerger notification program. Most confidential information associated with premerger filings is either not easily exploitable or, like a decision to seek an injunction, valuable only for a very short time. The information contained in the Optional Form, however, is likely to come in well in advance of the typical price run up that precedes takeover announcements.

List of Subjects

16 CFR Parts 801 and 802

Antitrust.

16 CFR Part 803

Antitrust, Reporting and recordkeeping requirements.

IV. Proposals

The Commission proposes to amend Title 16, Chapter I, Subpart H, the Code of Federal Regulations as follows:

PARTS 801, 802 AND 803—[AMENDED]

1. The authority citation for Parts 801, 802 and 803 continues to read as follows:

Authority: Sec. 7A(d) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d), as added by sec. 201 of the

Reproduced from poor document.

Hart-Scott-Radino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390.

2. In the amendments the Commission proposes below new language is indicated by arrows: [——>new language<——] and deleted language is indicated by brackets: [deleted language].

Proposal I

This proposal would amend the rules by revising § 801.15(b) and republishing the introductory text of § 801.15, removing § 802.9, and adding new § 802.24.

§ 801.15 *Aggregation of voting securities and assets the acquisition of which was exempt.*

Notwithstanding § 801.13, for purposes of section 7A(a)(3) and § 801.1(h), none of the following will be held as a result of an acquisition:

* * * * *

(b) Assets or voting securities the acquisition of which was exempt at the time of acquisition (or would have been exempt, had the act and these rules been in effect), or the present acquisition of which is exempt, under [section 7A(c)(9) and] §§ ——>802.24<——802.50(a)(2), 802.50(b), 802.51(b) and 802.64 unless the limitations contained in [section 7A(c)(9) or] those sections do not apply or as a result of the acquisition would be exceeded, in which case the assets or voting securities so acquired will be held:

* * * * *

§ 802.9 [Removed]

——>§ 802.24 *De minimis acquisitions of voting securities.*

An acquisition of voting securities shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if as a result of the acquisition the acquiring person would hold ten percent or less of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer, regardless of the dollar value of the voting securities so acquired or held.<——

Proposal II

This proposal would amend the rules by adding new § 801.34.

——>§ 801.34 *De minimis acquisitions of voting securities.*

(a) An acquiring person shall not be considered to have consummated an acquisition of voting securities within the meaning of the act if:

(1) The acquiring person:

(i) Holds as a result of the acquisition ten percent or less of the issuer's outstanding voting securities;

(ii) Immediately places into escrow any voting securities whose acquisition is subject to the notification obligations of the act; and

(iii) Requires the escrow agent to vote and withhold from voting all such voting securities placed into escrow in the same proportion that all other voting securities of the issuer are voted and withheld from voting; and

(2) The acquisition is not the result of a tender offer.

(b) The release of such voting securities from escrow shall be considered consummation of an acquisition of those voting securities.<——

Proposal III

This proposal would amend the rules by:

1. Section 801.30 is amended by revising paragraph (b) introductory text and adding paragraph (c) to read as follows:

§ 801.30 *Tender offers and acquisitions of voting securities from third parties.*

* * * * *

(b) For acquisitions described by paragraph (a) of this section——>for which no notification has been filed pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section<——

* * * * *

——>(c) For acquisitions described by paragraph (a) of this section, other than tender offers, that would result in the acquiring person holding 10 percent or less of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer, the acquiring person may file notification by submitting the Optional Notification and Report Form.

(1) The waiting period required under the act shall commence upon such filing of notification by the acquiring person as provided in § 803.10(a); and

(2) Pursuant to § 802.25, the acquired person is exempt from filing the notification required by paragraph (b)(2) of this section.

2. Section 802.25 is added to read as follows:

——>§ 802.25 *Optional Notification and Report Form exemption.*

For any acquisition in which the acquiring person filed an Optional Notification and Report Form pursuant to § 801.30(c), the acquired person is exempt from the obligation to file notification described in § 801.30(b)(2), but is not exempt from the obligation to submit additional information or documentary material pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20.<——

3. Section 803.1 is amended by revising paragraph (a) to read as follows:

§ 803.1 *Notification and Report Form.*

(a) The notification required by the act shall be the Notification and Report Form ——>or the Optional Notification and Report Form<—— set forth in the appendix to this Part (803), as amended from time to time. All acquiring and acquired persons required to file notification by the act and these rules shall do so by completing and filing the Notification and Report Form, or a photostatic or other equivalent reproduction thereof, in accordance with the instructions thereon and these rules ——>except that acquiring persons may choose to file instead the Optional Notification and Report Form for transactions described by § 801.30(c), in accordance with the instructions thereon and these rules.<—— Copies of the Notification and Report Form ——>and the Optional Notification and Report Form<—— may be obtained in person from the Public Reference Branch, Room 130, Federal Trade Commission, Sixth Street and Pennsylvania Avenue NW., Washington, DC, or by writing to the Premerger Notification Office, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580.

* * * * *

4. Section 803.2 is amended by revising the section heading and by adding (b)(3), a heading for (b)(1) and the phrase "and the Optional Notification and Report Form" to the introductory text of paragraph (c), the first sentence of paragraph (e), and paragraph (d) after the phrase "Notification and Report Form" to read as follows:

§ 803.2 *Instructions Applicable to Notification and Report Form ——>and Optional Notification and Report Form<——*

* * * * *

(b)(1) ——>*Notification and Report Form.* ——> * * *

——>(3) *Optional Notification and Report Form.* Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section,

(i) An acquiring person responding to the request for information about the acquiring person in items 5-9 and the Appendix to the Optional Notification and Report Form must include information about itself and all entities included within the acquiring person;

(ii) An acquiring person responding to the request for information about the acquired person in item 6-8 and the Appendix to the Optional Notification and Report Form must include information about the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired and all entities controlled by such issuer. <——

* * * * *

(c) In response to items 5, 7, 8, and 9 and the appendix to the Notification and Report Form ——> and the Optional Notification and Report Form <——

* * * * *

(d) The term "dollar revenues" as used in the Notification and Report Form ——> and the Optional Notification and Report Form <—— * * *

(e) A person filing notification may incorporate by reference only documentary materials required to be filed in response to item 4a of the Notification and Report Form ——> and the Optional Notification and Report Form ——> * * *

5. Section 803.3 is amended by revising the introductory text and adding paragraph (e) to read as follows:

§ 803.3 Statement of reasons for noncompliance.

A complete response shall be supplied to each item on the Notification and Report Form ——> or Optional Notification and Report Form <—— and to any request for additional information pusuant to § 7A(e) and § 803.20. Whenever the person filing notification is unable to supply a complete response, that person shall provide, for each item for which less than a complete response has been supplied, a statement or reasons for noncompliance. The statement of reasons for noncompliance shall contain all information upon which a person relies in explanation of its noncompliance and shall include at least the followings:

* * * * *

——> (e) Provided, however, an Optional Notification and Report Form will be considered incomplete and deficient within the meaning of § 803.10(c)(2) if it is submitted without the information or documents required by item 4(d) and (e), regardless of the reason for non-compliance. <——

6. Section 803.5 is amended by revising paragraph (a)(1) introductory text and adding paragraph (c) to read as follows:

§ 803.5 Affidavits required.

(a)(1) *Section 801.30 acquisitions.* For acquisitions to which § 801.30 applies ——> and for which the acquiring person is not filing the Optional Notification and Report Form pursuant to § 801.30(c) <——, the notification required by the act from each acquiring person shall contain an affidavit, attached to the front of the notification, attesting that the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired has received notice in writing by certified or registered mail, by wire or by hand delivery, at its principal executive offices, of:

* * * * *

——> (c) *§ 801.30(c) acquisitions.* For acquisitions to which § 801.30 applies and for which the acquiring person is filing the Optional Notification and Report Form in accordance with § 801.30(c), the notification required by the act from each acquiring person shall contain an affidavit attached to the front of the notification attesting the good faith intention of the acquiring person filing notification to make the acquisition described in the Optional Notification and Report Form. <——

7. Section 803.6 is amended by revising paragraph (b) to read as follows:

§ 803.6 Certification.

* * * * *

(b) Additional information or documentary material submitted in response to a request pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20 shall be accompanied by a certification in the format appearing at the end of the Notification and Report Form ——> or Optional Notification and Report Form <—— completed in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section by the person or individual to whom it was directed.

* * * * *

8. Section 803.8 is amended by revising paragraph (a) to read as follows:

§ 803.8 Foreign language documents.

(a) Whenever at the time of filing a Notification and Report Form ——> or Optional Notification and Report Form <—— there is an English language outline, summary, extract or verbatim translation of any information or of all or portions of any documentary materials in a foreign language required to be submitted by the act or these rules, all such English language versions shall be filed along with the foreign language information or materials.

* * * * *

9. Section 803.20 is amended by revising paragraph (a)(1), designating the example in (a)(1) as 1 and revising it, and adding example 2 to read as follows:

§ 803.20 Requests for additional information or documentary material.

(a)(1) Persons and individuals subject to request. Pursuant to section 7A(e)(1), the submission of additional information or documentary material relevant to the acquisition may be required from one or more persons required ——> by section 7A(a) of the act <—— to file notification, and, with respect to each such person, from one or more entities included therein, or from one or more officers, directors, partners, agents, or employees thereof, if so required by the same request.

Example ——>s<——: ——>1.<—— A request for additional information may require a corporation and, in addition, a named officer or employee to provide certain information or documents, if both the corporation and the officer or employee are named in the same request. See sub-paragraph (b)(3) of this section.

——> 2. Where the acquiring person has filed an Optional Notification and Report Form pursuant to § 801.30(c), a request for additional information may require the acquired person to submit certain information or documentary material notwithstanding that § 802.25 exempts that person from the obligation to file notification, because pursuant to section 7A(a) the acquired person is a person required to file notification with respect to such acquisition. <——

* * * * *

10. The Appendix to Part 803 is amended by adding at the end, the Optional Notification and Report Form to read as follows:

BILLING CODE 6750-01-M

ANTITRUST IMPROVEMENTS ACT OPTIONAL NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM

for Certain Mergers and Acquisitions

INSTRUCTIONS

GENERAL

The Answer Sheets (pp. 1-16) constitute the Optional Notification and Report Form ("the Optional Form") required to be submitted pursuant to § 803.1(a) of the premerger notification rules ("the rules"). Only those persons described in § 801.30 (c) of the rules may file this Optional Form. Filing persons need not, however, record their responses on the Optional Form.

These Instructions specify the information which must be provided in response to the Items on the Answer Sheets. *Only* the completed Answer Sheets, together with all documentary attachments are to be filed with the Federal Trade Commission and the Department of Justice.

Persons providing responses on attachment pages rather than on answer sheets must submit a complete set of attachment pages with each copy of the Optional Form.

The term "documentary attachments" refers to materials supplied in responses to Item 2(f)(i), Item 4 and to submissions pursuant to §§ 803.1(b) and 803.11 of the rules.

Information—The central office for information and assistance concerning the rules, 16 CFR Parts 801-803, and the Optional Form is Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, 6th Street and Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, D.C. 20580, phone (202) 326-3100.

Definitions—The definitions and other provisions governing this Optional Form are set forth in the rules, 16 CFR Parts 801-803. The governing statute, the rules, and the Statement of Basis and Purpose for the rules are set forth at 43 FR 33450 (July 31, 1978), 44 FR 66781 (November 22, 1979) and 48 FR 34427 (July 29, 1983).

Affidavit—Attach the affidavit required by § 803.5 to page 1 of the Optional Form.

Responses—*Each answer* should identify the Item to which it is addressed. Use the reverse side of the corresponding answer sheet or attach separate additional sheets as necessary in answering each Item. Each additional sheet should identify at the top of the page the Item to which it is addressed. Voluntary submissions pursuant to § 803.1(b) should also be so identified.

Enter the name of the person filing notification appearing in Item 1(a) on page 1 of the Optional Form and the date on which the Optional Form is completed at the top of each page of the Optional Form, at the top of any sheets attached to complete the response to any Item, and at the top of the first or cover page of each documentary attachment.

If the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired is not required to file periodic reports to the Securities and Exchange Commission, so that the documents listed in Item 4(d) are not available, then the Optional Form may not be submitted. Furthermore, if the person filing notification is unable to respond completely to Items 4(e) or 7 of the Optional Form, then the Optional Form may not be submitted. (See 16 CFR § 803.3(e)).

If unable to answer any other Item fully, give such information as is available and provide a statement of reasons for noncompliance as required by § 803.3. If exact answers to any Item cannot be given, enter best estimates and indicate the sources or bases of such estimates. Estimated data should be followed by the notation, "est." All information should be rounded to the nearest thousand dollars.

Year—All references to "year" refer to calendar year. If the data are not available on a calendar year basis, supply the requested data for the fiscal year reporting period which most nearly corresponds to the calendar year specified. References to "most recent year" mean the most recent calendar or fiscal year for which the requested information is available.

SIC Data—This Optional Notification and Report Form requests information regarding dollar revenues and lines of commerce at three levels with respect to operations conducted within the United States. (See § 803.2(c)(1).) *All persons* must submit certain data at the 4-digit (SIC code) *industry* level. To the extent that dollar revenues are derived from *manufactured operations* (SIC major groups 20-39), data must also be submitted at the *5-digit product class* and *7-digit product levels* (SIC based codes).

The term "dollar revenues" is defined in § 803.2(d).

References— In reporting information by "*4-digit (SIC code) industry*" refer to the 1972 edition of the *Standard Industrial Classification Manual* and its 1977 supplement published by the Executive Office of the President, Office of Management and Budget.

In reporting information by "*5-digit product class*" and "*7-digit product*" refer to one or both of the following reference publications published by the U.S. Bureau of the Census:

(a) Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products, *1982 Census of Manufactures and Census of Mineral Industries* (MC82-R-1). Make sure that the Numerical List you use has MC82-R-1 printed on the cover.

Privacy Act Statement - Section 18a(a) of Title 15 of the U.S. Code authorized the collection of this information. *The primary use of this information* is to determine whether the merger or acquisition reported in the Optional Notification and Report Form may violate the antitrust laws. Furnishing the information on this Optional Form is voluntary.

Consummation of an acquisition required to be reported by the statute cited above without having provided this information may, however, render a person liable to civil penalties up to $10,000 per day.

Note: Submit information using the codes in the columns labeled "Product code published." Do not submit information using the codes in the columns labeled "Product code collected."

(b) Volume II, "Industry Series," (MC82-1-20 A2-39D), *1982 Census of Manufactures.*

Note: Do not submit information by product codes ending in 00 if the Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products listed above contains a further breakdown. Furthermore, when the Numerical List refers to Appendix C for detail collected in a specified Current Industrial Report ("CIR") for the following SIC code industries, you should provide revenue information using the 7-digit product codes listed in the CIR in the columns labeled "Published."

SIC 2392 (CIR MQ-23X) SIC 3261 (CIR MQ-34E)
SIC 3312, 3315, 3316 and 3317 (CIR MA-33B)
SIC 3357 (CIR MQ-33L) SIC 3431 (CIR MQ-34E)

Items 5, 7, 8, 9 and the Insurance Appendix—Supply information *only* with respect to operations conducted within the United States, including its commonwealths, territories, possessions and the District of Columbia. (See §§ 801.1(k), 803.2(c)(1).)

Information need *not* be supplied regarding assets or voting securities currently being acquired, when the acquisition is exempt under the statute or rules. (See § 803.2(c)(2).)

Limited or separate responses may be required from the person filing notification. (See § 803.2(b).)

Filing—Complete and return two notarized copies (with *one set* of documentary attachments) of this Optional Notification and Report Form to the Premerger Notification Office, Bureau of Competition, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, 6th Street and Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, D.C. 20580, and *three* notarized copies (with one set of documentary attachments) to Director of Operations, Antitrust Division, Department of Justice, Room 3218, 10th and Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, D.C. 20530.

ITEM BY ITEM

Affidavit—Attach the affidavit required by § 803.5 to page 1 of the Answer Sheets.

Applicability of § 801.30(c)—Put an X in the Yes box to indicate that § 801.30(c) is applicable to this acquisition; *i.e.*, that 10% or less of an issuer's voting securities will be acquired.

Early Termination—Put an X in the yes box to request early termination of the waiting period. Notification of each grant of early termination will be published in the Federal Register as required by § 7A(b)(2) of the Clayton Act.

ITEM 1

Item 1(a)—Give the name and headquarters address of the person filing notification. The name of the person is the name of the ultimate parent entity included within that person.

Item 1(b)—Give the name and headquarters address of the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired in this acquisition.

Item 1(c)—Give the names of all ultimate parent entities of acquiring and acquired persons which are parties to the acquisition whether or not they are required to file notification.

Item 1(d)—State the value of voting securities held as a result of the acquisition. (Insert responses to Item 3(c).)

Item 1(e)—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate whether the entity in Item 1(a) is a corporation, partnership, or other (specify).

Item 1(f)—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate whether the entity in Item 1(b) is a corporation or other (specify).

Item 1(g)—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate whether data furnished is by calendar year or fiscal year. If fiscal year, specify period.

Item 1(h)—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate if this Optional Form is being filed on behalf of the ultimate parent entity by another entity within the same person authorized by it to file notification on its behalf pursuant to § 803.2(a), or if this Optional Form is being filed pursuant to § 803.4 on behalf of a foreign person. Then provide the name and mailing address of the entity filing notification on behalf of the reporting person named in Item 1(a) on the Optional Form.

Item 1(i)—If an entity within the person filing notification other than the ultimate parent entity listed in Item 1(a) is the entity which is making the acquisition, or if the voting securities of an entity other than the ultimate parent entity listed in Item 1(a) are being acquired, provide the name and mailing address of that entity and the percentage of its voting securities held by the person named in Item 1(a) above. (If control is effected by means other than the direct holding of the entity's voting securities, describe the intermediaries or the contract through which control is effected (see § 801.1(b)).

ITEM 2

Item 2(a)—*Description of acquisition.* Briefly describe the transaction. Include a list of the name and mailing address of each acquiring and acquired person, whether or not required to file notification. Indicate what consideration will be received by each party. In describing the acquisition, include the expected dates of any major events required to consummate the transaction (e.g., stockholders' meetings, filing of requests for approval, other public filings, terminations of tender offers) and the scheduled consummation date of the transaction.

If the voting securities are to be acquired from a holder other than the issuer (or an entity within the same person as the issuer) separately identify (if known) such holder and the issuer of the voting securities.

Item 2(b)—*Assets held by acquiring person.* If assets of the acquired person (see § 801.13) are presently held by the person filing notification, furnish a description of each general class of such assets in the manner required by item 2(b)(i), and the dollar value or estimated dollar value at the time they were acquired.

Item 2(c)—*Voting securities to be acquired.* Furnish the following information separately for each issuer whose voting securities will be acquired in the acquisition:

Item 2(c)(i)—List each class of voting securities (including convertible voting securities) which will be outstanding after the acquisition has been completed. If there is more than one class of voting securities, include a description of the voting rights of each class. Also list each class of non-voting securities which will be acquired in the acquisition;

Item 2(c)(ii)—Total number of shares of each class of securities listed on page 3 which will be outstanding after the acquisition has been completed;

Item 2(c)(iii)—Total number of shares of each class of securities listed on page 3 which will be acquired in this acquisition. If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person;

Item 2(c)(iv)—Identity of each person acquiring any securities of any class listed on page 3. If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person;

Item 2(c)(v)—Dollar value of securities of each class listed on page 3 to be acquired in this transaction (see § 801.10). If there is more than one acquiring person of any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person; (If the exact dollar value cannot be determined at the time of filing, provide an estimated value and indicate the basis on which the estimate was made.)

Item 2(c)(vi)—Total number of each class of securities listed on page 3 which will be held by acquiring person(s) after the acquisition has been accomplished. If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person;

Item 2(c)(vii)—Percentage of each class of securities listed under 2(c)(vi) above which will be held by the acquiring person(s) after the acquisition has been completed (see § 801.12(b)). If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of security, show data separately for each acquiring person;

Item 2(c)(viii)—Dollar value (or estimated dollar value) of securities to be held as a result of the acquisition (see § 801.13).

Item 2(d)—Furnish copies of final or most recent versions of all documents which constitute the agreement among the acquiring person(s) and the person(s) whose voting securities or assets are to be acquired. (Do not attach these documents to page 4 of the Answer Sheets.)

ITEM 3

Assets and voting securities held as a result of the acquisition. State: .

Item 3(a)- the percentage of the assets;

Item 3(b)- the percentage of the voting securities;

Item 3(c)- the aggregate total dollar amount of voting securities and assets of the acquired person to be held by each acquiring person, as a result of the acquisition (see §§ 801.12, 801.13, and 801.14).

ITEM 4

Furnish one copy of each of the following documents.

Item 4(a)—all of the following documents which have been filed with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission (or are to be filed contemporaneously in connection with this acquisition) by the person filing notification: the most recent proxy statement and Form 10-K, each dated not more than three years prior to the date of this Optional Notification and Report Form; all Forms 10-Q and 8-K filed since the end of the period reflected by the Form 10-K being supplied; any registration statement filed in connection with the transaction for which notification is being filed. For each entity included within the person filing notification which has prepared its own such documents different from those prepared by the person filing notification, furnish, in addition, one copy of each document from each such other entity.

Item 4(b)—the most recent annual reports and most recent annual audit reports (of person filing notification and of each unconsolidated United States issuer included within such person) and, if different, the most recent regularly prepared balance sheet of the person filing notification and of each unconsolidated United States issuer included within such person;

Item 4(c)—all studies, surveys, analyses and reports which were prepared for the purpose of evaluating or analyzing the acquisition with respect to market shares, competition, competitors, markets, potential for sales growth or expansion into product or geographic markets, and indicate (if not contained in the document itself) the date of preparation, the name and title of each individual who prepared each such document;

Item 4(d)—all of the following items which have been filed with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission by the entity whose voting securities are to be acquired (and, if different, for each issuer included within that entity): the most recent proxy statement and Form 10-K, each dated not more than three years prior to the date of this Optional Notification and Report Form; all Forms 10-Q and 8-K filed since the end of the period reflected by the Form 10-K being supplied; and

Item 4(e)-the most recent annual reports and the most recent annual audit reports of the entity whose voting securities are to be acquired (and of each unconsolidated United States issuer included within that entity) and, if different, the most recent regularly prepared balance sheet of the entity whose voting securities are to be acquired and of each unconsolidated United States issuer included within that entity. The reports must be prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles and certified as such.

NOTE: If the person filing notification does not have copies of documents responsive to Item 4(a) readily available, identification of such documents and citation to date and place of filing will constitute compliance; alternatively, the person filing notification may incorporate by reference documents submitted with an earlier filing as explained in the staff formal interpretations dated April 10, 1979, and April 7, 1981, and in § 803.2(e).

However, to comply with the act and the rules, a person electing to file this Optional Form must submit copies of documents responsive to Items 4(d) and 4(e). Neither identification of such documents and citation to date and place of filing nor incorporation by reference will be adequate.

Persons filing notification may provide an optional index of documents called for by Item 4 on page 5 of the Answer Sheets.

NOTE: If the person filing notification withholds any documents called for by Item 4(c) based on a claim of privilege, the person must provide a statement of reasons for such noncompliance as specified in the staff formal interpretation dated September 13, 1979, and § 803.3(d).

* * * *

ITEMS 5 through 9 and the Appendix

NOTE: *For Items 5 through 9 and the Appendix limited or separate responses may be required of the person filing notification. (See § 803.2(b) and (c).)*

ITEM 5

ITEMS 5(a) — 5(c): These Items request information regarding dollar revenues and lines of commerce at three levels with respect to operations conducted within the United States by the person filing notification. (See § 803.2(c)(1).) All persons filing notification must submit certain data at the 4-digit (SIC code) *industry* level. To the extent that dollar revenues are derived from *manufacturing operations* (SIC major groups 20-39), data must also be submitted at the 5-digit *product class* and 7-digit *product levels* (SIC based codes).

Note: See the "References" listed in the General Instructions to the Form. Refer to the 1972 edition of the *Standard Industrial Classification Manual* and its 1977 supplement for the 4-digit (SIC code) industry codes. Refer to the Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products, *1982 Census of Manufactures and Census of Mineral Industries* (MC82-R-1) for the 5-digit product class and 7-digit product codes. Report revenues for the 5-digit and 7-digit codes using the codes in the columns labeled "Product code published." Do not report revenues using the columns labeled "Product code collected." Insurance carriers (2-digit SIC major group 63) should supply the information requested only with respect to industries not within 2-digit major group 63. Credit agencies other than banks; security and commodity brokers, dealers, exchanges, and services; holding and other investment offices, and real estate companies (2-digit SIC major groups 61, 62, 67 and 65) should identify or explain the revenues reported (e.g., dollar sales, receipts).

Include the total dollar revenues for 1982 derived by all entities included within the person filing notification at the time this Optional Notification and Report Form is prepared (even if such entities have become included within the person since 1982). For example, if the person filing notification acquired an entity in 1984, it must include that entity's 1982 revenues in Items 5(a) and 5(b)(i).

Item 5(a)—*Dollar revenues by industry*. Provide aggregate 4-digit (SIC code) *industry* data for 1982.

Item 5(b)(i)—*Dollar revenues by manufactured product.* Provide the following information on the aggregate operations of the person filing notification for 1982 for each 7-digit product of the person in 2-digit SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries).

Do not provide 7-digit data for product codes ending in 00 if the Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products contains a further breakdown. See also the 'NOTE' on page I of the these instructions concerning required references to Appendix C of the Numerical List.

Item 5(b)(ii)—*Products added or deleted.* Within 2-digit SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries), identify each product of the person filing notification added or deleted subsequent to 1982, indicate the year of addition or deletion, and state total dollar revenues in the most recent year for each product that has been added. Products may be identified either by 7-digit product code or in the manner ordinarily used by the person filing notification.

Do not include products added since 1982 by reason of mergers or acquisitions occurring since 1982. Dollar revenues derived from such products should be included in response to Item 5(b)(i). However, if an entity acquired since 1982 by the person filing notification (and now included within the person) itself has added any products since 1982, these products and the dollar revenues derived therefrom should be listed here. Products deleted by reason of dispositions of assets or voting securities since 1982 should also be listed here.

Item 5(b)(iii)—*Dollar revenues by manufactured product class.* Provide the following information about the aggregate operations of the person filing notification for the most recent year for each 5-digit *product class* of the person within SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries). If such data have not been compiled for the most recent year, estimates of dollar revenues by 5-digit product class may be provided if a statement describing the method of estimation is furnished.

Item 5(c)—*Dollar revenues by non-manufacturing industry.* Provide the following information concerning the aggregate operations of the person filing notification for the most recent year for each 4-digit (SIC code) industry in SIC major groups other than 20-39 in which the person engaged. If such data have not been compiled for the most recent year, estimates of dollar revenues by 4-digit industry may be provided if a statement describing the method of estimation is furnished. Industries for which the dollar revenues totaled less than one million dollars in the most recent year may be omitted.

NOTE: *This million dollar minimum is applicable only to Item 5(c).*

Insurance carriers (2-digit SIC major group 63) should supply the information requested only with respect to industries not within SIC major group 63, and, if voting securities of an insurance carrier are being acquired directly or indirectly should complete the Insurance Appendix to this Optional Form.

ITEM 6

Persons filing notification may respond to Items 6(a), 6(b), or 6(c) by referencing a "documentary attachment" furnished with this Optional Form if the information so referenced is a complete response and is up-to-date and accurate. Indicate for each Item the specific page(s) of the document that are responsive to that Item.

Item 6(a)—*Entities within person filing notification.* List the name and headquarters mailing address of each entity included within the person filing notification. Entities with total assets of less than $10 million may be omitted.

Item 6(b)—*Shareholders of person filing notification.* For each entity (including the ultimate parent entity) included within the person filing notification the voting securities of which are held (see § 801.1(c)) by one or more other persons, list the issuer and class of voting securities, the name and headquarters mailing address of each other person which holds five percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of the class, and the number and percentage held by that person. Holders need not be listed for entities with total assets of less than $10 million.

Item 6(c)—*Holdings of person filing notification.* If the person filing notification holds voting securities of any issuer not included within the person filing notification, list the issuer and class, the number and percentage held, and (optionally) the entity within the person filing notification which holds the securities. Holdings of less than five percent of the outstanding voting securities of any issuers, and holdings of issuers with total assets of less than $10 million, may be omitted.

Item 6(d)—*Entities within entity whose voting securities are to be acquired.* List the names and headquarters address of each entity included within the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired. Entities with total assets of less than $10 million may be omitted.

Item 6(e)—*Shareholders of entity whose voting securities are to be acquired.* For each entity included within the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired as well as the issuer itself the voting securities of which are held (see §801.1(c)) by one or more other persons, list the issuer and class of voting securities, the name and headquarters mailing address of each other person which holds five percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of the class, and the number and percentage held by that person. Holders need not be listed for entities with total assets of less than $10 million.

Item 6(f)—*Holdings of entity whose voting securities are to be acquired.* If the entity whose voting securities are to be acquired holds voting securities of any issuer not included within that entity, list the issuer and class, the number and percentage held, and the entity which holds the securities. Holdings of less than five percent of the outstanding securities of any issuers, and holdings of issuers with total assets of less than $10 million may be omitted.

ITEM 7

If, after a diligent search of all relevant information available to it (including, but not limited to, directories such as Standard & Poor's Corporate Records, Moody's Industrial Manual, Dun & Bradstreet Reference Book; indices such as Predicasts F & S Index; trade journals and publications; internal corporate files; and reports, studies, analyses, or memoranda completed internally or by outside consultants or advisors), the person filing notification concludes that it derived dollar revenues in the most recent year from operations in any 4-digit (SIC code) industries in which any other person which is a party to the acquisition also derived dollar revenues in the most recent year (or in which a joint venture or other corporation will derive dollar revenues), then for each such 4-digit (SIC code) industry:

Item 7(a)—supply the 4-digit SIC code and description for the industry;

Item 7(b)—list the name of each person which is a party to the acquisition which also derived dollar revenues in the 4-digit industry;

Item 7(c)—*Geographic market information for the person filing notification:*

Item 7(c)(i)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which, to the knowledge or belief of the person filing notification, the products in that 4-digit industry produced by the person filing notification are sold without a significant change in their form, whether they are sold by the person filing notification or by others to whom such products have been sold or resold;

Item 7(c)(ii)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 01-17 and 40-49 (agriculture, forestry and fishing, mining, construction, transportation, communications, electric, gas and sanitary services) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which the person filing notification conducts such operations;

Item 7(c)(iii)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 50-51 (wholesale trade) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states, (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which the customers of the person filing notification are located;

Item 7(c)(iv)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 52-61, 70, 75, 78, and 80 (retail trade, banking, and certain services) listed in Item 7(a) above, provide the address, arranged by state, county and city or town, of each establishment from which dollar revenues were derived in the most recent year by the person filing notification.

Item 7(c)(v)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major group 62, 64-67, 72, 73, 76, 79, and 81-89 (certain finance, insurance and real estate groups and certain services) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which establishments were located from which the person filing notification derived revenues in the most recent year; and

Item 7 (c)(vi)— for each 4-digit industry within SIC 63 (insurance) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the state(s) in which the person filing notification is licensed to write insurance.

Item 7(d)—*Geographic market information for the entity whose voting securities are to be acquired.*

Item 7(d)(i)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which, to the knowledge or belief of the person filing notification, the products in that 4-digit industry produced by the entity whose voting securities are to be acquired are sold without a significant change in their form, whether they are sold by that entity or by others to whom such products have been sold or resold;

Item 7(d)(ii)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 01-17 and 40-49 (agriculture, forestry and fishing, mining, construction, transportation, communications, electric, gas and sanitary services) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which the entity whose voting securities are to be acquired conducts such operations;

Item 7(d)(iii)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 50-51 (wholesale trade) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states, (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which the customers of the entity whose voting securities are to be acquired are located;

Item 7(d)(iv)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 52-61, 70, 75, 78, and 80 (retail trade, banking, and certain services) listed in Item 7(a) above, provide the address, arranged by state, county and city or town, of each establishment from which dollar revenues were derived in the most recent year by the entity whose voting securities are to be acquired.

Item 7(d)(v)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major group 62, 64-67, 72, 73, 76, 79, and 81-89 (certain finance, insurance and real estate groups and certain services) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which establishments were located from which the entity whose voting securities are to be acquired derived revenues in the most recent year; and

Item 7(d)(vi)— for each 4-digit industry within SIC 63 (insurance) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the state(s) in which the entity whose voting securities are to be acquired is licensed to write insurance.

NOTE: Except in the case of those SIC major industry groups mentioned in Item 7(c)(iv) and 7(d)(iv) above, the person filing notification may respond with the word "national" if business is conducted in all 50 states.

NOTE: If, after the required search, the person filing notification concludes that it derived no dollar revenue from any 4-digit (SIC code) industries in which any person which is a party to this acquisition also derived dollar revenues in the most recent year, then the person filing notification shall provide a detailed description of the search it conducted, including, but not limited to, the sources it relied upon, the files it searched, and the name and title of all persons responsible for conducting the search.

ITEM 8

Item 8—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate if the acquired person and an acquiring person maintained a vendor-vendee relationship during the most recent year with respect to any manufactured product which the vendee either resells or consumes in or incorporates into the manufacture of any product. Persons filing notification which are vendees of such product(s) should list each product purchased, identify each vendor which is a party to the acquisition from which the product was purchased and state the dollar amount of the product purchased from that vendor during the most recent year.

Manufactured products are those within 2-digit SIC major groups 20-39. Any product purchased from the vendor in an aggregrate annual amount not exceeding $1 million, or the manufacture, consumption or use of which is not attributable to the assets to be acquired, or to the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired (including entities controlled by the issuer), may be omitted.

ITEM 9

Item 9—*Previous acquisitions.* Determine each 4-digit (SIC code) industry listed in Item 7(a) above, in which the person filing notification derived dollar revenues of $1 million or more in the most recent year and in which the acquired issuer derived revenues of $1 million or more in the most recent year.

For each such 4-digit industry, list all acquisitions made by the person filing notification in the five years prior to the date of filing of entities deriving dollar revenues in that 4-digit industry. List only acquisitions of more than 50 percent of the voting securities or assets of entities which had annual net sales or total assets greater than $10 million in the year prior to the acquisition.

For each such acquisition, supply:
(a) the name of the entity acquired;
(b) the headquarters address of the entity prior to the acquisition;
(c) whether securities or assets were acquired;
(d) the consummation date of the acquisition;
(e) the annual net sales of the acquired entity for the year prior to the acquisition;
(f) the total assets of the acquired entity in the year prior to the acquisition; and
(g) the 4-digit (SIC code) industries (by number and description) identified above in which the acquired entity derived dollar revenues.

ITEM 10

Item 10(a)—Print or type the name and title, firm name, address, and telephone number of the individual to contact regarding this Notification and Report Form. (See § 803.20(b)(2)(ii).)

Item 10(b)—Foreign filing persons print or type the name and title, firm name, address, and telephone number of an individual located in the United States designated for the limited purpose of receiving notice of the issuance of a request for additional information or documentary material. (See § 803.20(b)(2)(iii).)

Certification—(See § 803.6.)

APPENDIX TO NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM: INSURANCE

Insurance carriers (2-digit SIC major group 63) are required to complete this Appendix if voting securities of an insurance carrier are being acquired directly or indirectly.

ITEM 1

Item 1(A)—*Life Insurance.* Provide for the most recent year the amount of premium receipts (calulated on the accrual basis) for each of the lines of insurance listed on page 16 of the Answer Sheets.

Item 1(B)—*New Business.* Provide for the most recent year the amount of new life insurance business issued in the United States (exclusive of revivals, increases, dividend additions and reinsurance ceded) for each of the lines of insurance listed on page 16 of the Answer Sheets.

ITEM 2

Item 2(A)—*Property Liability Insurance.* Provide for the most recent year the amount of direct premiums written in the United States for each line of insurance specified in Part 2 of the Underwriting and Investment Exhibit of your carrier's annual convention statement.

Item 2(B)—Provide for the most recent year the amount of net premiums written in the United States for each line of insurance specified in Part 2 of the Underwriting and Investment Exhibit of your carrier's annual convention statement.

ITEM 3

Item 3(A)—*Title Insurance.* Provide for the most recent year the amount of net direct title insurance premiums written in the United States.

Item 3(B)—Provide for the most recent year the amount of direct title insurance premiums earned in the United States.

[illegible]

16 C.F.R. Part 803 - Appendix

OPTIONAL NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM FOR CERTAIN MERGERS AND ACQUISITIONS

THE INFORMATION REQUIRED TO BE SUPPLIED ON THESE ANSWERS SHEETS IS SPECIFIED IN THE INSTRUCTIONS

► Attach the Affidavit required by §803.5 to this page.

FOR OFFICE USE ONLY
Transaction Number

☐ ETR

IS THIS ACQUISITION SUBJECT TO § 801.30(c)?

☐ YES ☐ NO

DO YOU REQUEST EARLY TERMINATION OF THE WAITING PERIOD? *(Grants of early termination are published in the Federal Register.)*

☐ YES ☐ NO

ITEM 1 (a) NAME AND HEADQUARTERS ADDRESS OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION *(ultimate parent entity)*

(b) NAME AND HEADQUARTERS ADDRESS OF ENTITY WHOSE VOTING SECURITIES ARE TO BE ACQUIRED

(c) LIST NAMES OF ULTIMATE PARENT ENTITIES OF ALL ACQUIRING PERSONS

LIST NAMES OF ULTIMATE PARENT ENTITIES OF ALL ACQUIRED PERSONS

(d) VALUE OF VOTING SECURITIES TO BE ACQUIRED

(e) PUT AN "X" IN THE APPROPRIATE BOX TO DESCRIBE ENTITY FILING NOTIFICATION

☐ Corporation ☐ Partnership ☐ Other *(Specify)* ____________

(f) PUT AN "X" IN THE APPROPRIATE BOX TO DESCRIBE ENTITY WHOSE VOTING SECURITIES ARE TO BE ACQUIRED

☐ Corporation ☐ Other *(Specify)* ____________

(g) DATA FURNISHED BY

☐ calendar year ☐ fiscal year *(specify period)* ____________ *(month/year)* to ____________ *(month/year)*

(h) PUT AN "X" IN THE APPROPRIATE BOX AND GIVE THE NAME AND ADDRESS OF THE ENTITY FILING NOTIFICATION *(if other than ultimate parent entity)*

☐ NA ☐ This report is being filed on behalf of a foreign person pursuant to § 803.4 ☐ This report is being filed on behalf of the ultimate parent entity by another entity within the same person authorized by it to file pursuant to § 803.2(a).

(i) NAME OF ENTITY FILING NOTIFICATION

ADDRESS

THIS FORM IS REQUIRED BY LAW and must be filed separately by each person which, by reason of a merger, consolidation or acquisition, is subject to § 7A of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. § 18a, as added by Section 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. No. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390, and rules promulgated thereunder (hereinafter referred to as "the rules" or by section number). The statute and rules are set forth in the *Federal Register* at 43 FR 33450; the rules may also be found at 16 CFR Parts 801-03. Failure to file the Optional Notification and Report Form, and to observe the required waiting period before consummating the acquisition in accordance with the applicable provisions of 15 U.S.C. § 18a and the rules, subjects any "person," as defined in the rules, or any individuals responsible for noncompliance, to liability for a penalty of not more than $10,000 for each day during which such person is in violation of 15 U.S.C. § 18a.

All information and documentary material filed in or with this Optional Form is confidential. It is exempt from disclosure under the Freedom of Information Act, and may be made public only in an administrative or judicial proceeding, or disclosed to Congress or to a duly authorized committee or subcommittee of Congress.

Complete and return *two* notarized copies (with one set of documentary attachments) of the Optional Notification and Report Form to Premerger Notification Office, Bureau of Competition, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, D.C. 20580, and *three* notarized copies (with one set of documentary attachments) to Director of Operations, Antitrust Division, Room 3218, Department of Justice, Washington, D.C. 20530. The central office for information and assistance with respect to matters in connection with this *Optional Notification and Report Form* is Room 301, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, D.C. 20580, phone (202) 326-3100.

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

DATE

(f) NAME AND ADDRESS OF ENTITY MAKING ACQUISITION IF DIFFERENT FROM THE ULTIMATE PARENT ENTITY IDENTIFIED IN ITEM 1(a)

PERCENT OF VOTING SECURITIES HELD BY EACH ENTITY IDENTIFIED IN ITEM 1(a)

ITEM 2

2(a) DESCRIPTION OF ACQUISITION

NAME OF PERSON FILING MODIFICATION	DATE

2(b)(i) ASSETS HELD BY ACQUIRING PERSON

2(c) VOTING SECURITIES TO BE ACQUIRED

(c)(i) LIST AND DESCRIPTION OF VOTING SECURITIES AND LIST OF NON-VOTING SECURITIES

(c)(ii) TOTAL NUMBER OF SHARES OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITY

(c)(iii) TOTAL NUMBER OF SHARES OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITY BEING ACQUIRED

(Item 2(c) continued on next page)

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

(ii)(iv) IDENTITY OF PERSONS ACQUIRING SECURITIES

(ii)(v) DOLLAR VALUE OF SECURITIES IN EACH CLASS BEING ACQUIRED:

(ii)(vi) TOTAL NUMBER OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITIES HELD BY ACQUIRING PERSON AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION:

(ii)(vii) PERCENTAGE OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITIES HELD BY ACQUIRING PERSON AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION:

(ii)(viii) DOLLAR VALUE OF SECURITIES TO BE HELD AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION

(iii) SUBMIT A COPY OF THE MOST RECENT VERSION OF CONTRACT OR AGREEMENT *(or letter of intent to acquire)*

DO NOT ATTACH THIS DOCUMENT TO THIS PAGE.

ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER OF CONTRACT OR AGREEMENT ________

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 3 ASSETS AND VOTING SECURITIES HELD AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION

(A) PERCENTAGE OF ASSETS	(b) PERCENTAGE OF VOTING SECURITIES	(c) AGGREGATE TOTAL VALUE

ITEM 4 PERSONS FILING NOTIFICATION MAY PROVIDE BELOW AN OPTIONAL INDEX REQUIRED TO BE SUBMITTED BY ITEM 4 (SEE ITEM BY ITEM INSTRUCTIONS). THESE DOCUMENTS SHOULD NOT BE ATTACHED TO THIS PAGE.

(a) DOCUMENTS FILED WITH THE UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION BY PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER
(b) ANNUAL REPORTS, ANNUAL AUDIT REPORTS, AND REGULARLY PREPARED BALANCE SHEETS OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER
(c) STUDIES, SURVEYS, ANALYSES AND REPORTS BY PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER
(d) DOCUMENTS FILED WITH THE UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION BY ENTITY WHOSE VOTING SECURITIES ARE TO BE ACQUIRED OR BY ENTITY WITHIN WHICH THAT ENTITY IS INCLUDED	
(e) ANNUAL REPORTS, ANNUAL AUDIT REPORTS AND REGULARLY PREPARED BALANCE SHEETS BY ENTITY WHOSE VOTING SECURITIES ARE TO BE ACQUIRED OR BY ENTITY WITHIN WHICH THAT ENTITY IS INCLUDED	

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 5 (See the "References" listed in the General Instructions to the Optional Form. Refer to the 1972 edition of the *Standard Industrial Classification Manual* and its 1977 Supplement for the 4-digit (SIC Code) industry codes. Refer to the Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products, *1982 Census of Manufactures and Census of Mineral Industries* (MC82-R-1) for the 5-digit product class and 7-digit product codes. Report revenues for the 5-digit and 7-digit codes using the codes in the columns labeled "Product code published." Do not report revenues using codes in the columns labeled "Product code Collected.")

5(a) DOLLAR REVENUES BY INDUSTRY

4-DIGIT INDUSTRY CODE *Product code published*	DESCRIPTION	1982 TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 5(b)(i) DOLLAR REVENUES BY MANUFACTURED PRODUCTS

7-DIGIT PRODUCT CODE *Product code published*	DESCRIPTION	1982 TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 5(b)(ii) PRODUCTS ADDED OR DELETED

DESCRIPTION (7-DIGIT PRODUCT CODE)	ADD	DELETE	YEAR OF CHANGE	TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

ITEM 5(b)(iii) DOLLAR REVENUES BY MANUFACTURED PRODUCT CLASS

5-DIGIT PRODUCT CLASS CODE *Product code published*	DESCRIPTION	YEAR TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

(Item 5(b)(iii) continued on page 9)

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

5(b)(ii) DOLLAR REVENUES BY MANUFACTURED PRODUCT CLASS - CONTINUED

5-DIGIT PRODUCT CLASS CODE	DESCRIPTION	YEAR ____ TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

5(c) DOLLAR REVENUES BY NON-MANUFACTURING INDUSTRY

4-DIGIT INDUSTRY CODE	DESCRIPTION	YEAR ____ TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 6

6(a) ENTITIES WITHIN PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

6(b) SHAREHOLDERS OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

6(c) HOLDINGS OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

6(d) ENTITIES INCLUDED WITHIN THE ENTITY WHOSE VOTING SECURITIES ARE TO BE ACQUIRED

6(e) SHAREHOLDERS OF ENTITY WHOSE VOTING SECURITIES ARE TO BE ACQUIRED

6(f) HOLDINGS OF ENTITY WHOSE VOTING SECURITIES ARE TO BE ACQUIRED

ITEM 7 DOLLAR REVENUES
7(a) 4-DIGIT SIC CODE AND DESCRIPTION

7(b) NAME OF EACH PERSON WHICH ALSO DERIVED DOLLAR REVENUES

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

DATE

7(k) GEOGRAPHIC MARKET INFORMATION FOR PERSON FILING NOTIFICAION

(l) GEOGRAPHIC MARKET INFORMATION FOR ENTITY WHOSE VOTING SECURITIES ARE TO BE ACQUIRED

7(m) DESCRIPTION OF SEARCH

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 8 VENDOR-VENDEE RELATIONSHIP

☐ NO ☐ YES *(if yes and you are the vendee, complete the following)*

PRODUCT PURCHASES	VENDOR	DOLLAR AMOUNT

ITEM 9 PRIOR ACQUISITIONS *(to be completed by acquiring person only)*

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 10 IDENTIFICATION OF PERSON TO CONTACT REGARDING THIS REPORT

10(a) NAME OF CONTACT PERSON	TITLE OF CONTACT PERSON
FIRM NAME AND BUSINESS ADDRESS	BUSINESS TELEPHONE NUMBER

10(b) IDENTIFICATION OF AN INDIVIDUAL LOCATED IN THE UNITED STATES DESIGNATED FOR THE LIMITED PURPOSE OF RECEIVING NOTICE OF ISSUANCE OF A REQUEST FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION OR DOCUMENTS *(See § 803.20(b)(2)(iii))*

NAME	TITLE
ADDRESS	BUSINESS TELEPHONE NUMBER

CERTIFICATION

This **OPTIONAL NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM**, together with any and all appendices and attachments thereto, was prepared and assembled under my supervision in accordance with instructions issued by the Federal Trade Commission. Subject to the recognition that, where so indicated, reasonable estimates have been made because books and records do not provide the required data, the information is, to the best of my knowledge, true, correct, and complete in accordance with the statute and rules.

NAME *(Please print or type)*	TITLE
SIGNATURE	DATE

Subscribed and sworn to before me at the

City of ______________________, State of ________________

this ______________________ day of ______________________, 19____

Signature ____

My Commission expires ________________________________

[SEAL]

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

APPENDIX: INSURANCE

ITEM 1

YEAR

AMOUNT

A. PREMIUM RECEIPTS
- 1 LIFE INSURANCE
  - 1a. ORDINARY LIFE INSURANCE
  - 1b. GROUP LIFE INSURANCE (including Federal Employees' Group Life Insurance and Servicemen's Group Life Insurance, but excluding credit life insurance)
  - 1c. INDUSTRIAL LIFE INSURANCE
  - 1d. CREDIT LIFE INSURANCE
- 2 ANNUITY CONSIDERATIONS
  - 2a. INDIVIDUAL ANNUITY CONSIDERATIONS
  - 2b. GROUP ANNUITY CONSIDERATIONS
- 3 HEALTH INSURANCE
  - 3a. INDIVIDUAL HEALTH INSURANCE
  - 3b. GROUP HEALTH INSURANCE

TOTAL

B NEW BUSINESS

YEAR

AMOUNT

1 ORDINARY LIFE INSURANCE
2 GROUP LIFE INSURANCE
3 INDUSTRIAL LIFE INSURANCE
4 CREDIT LIFE INSURANCE

TOTAL

ITEM 2 PROPERTY LIABILITY INSURANCE

YEAR

LINE OF INSURANCE	A. DIRECT PREMIUMS	B. NET PREMIUMS

ITEM 3 TITLE INSURANCE

A. NET DIRECT PREMIUMS WRITTEN	B. DIRECT PREMIUMS EARNED	YEAR

BILLING CODE 6750-01-C

By Direction of the Commission.

Donald S. Clark,

Secretary.

Separate Statement of Commissioner Strenio

I am skeptical about whether the proposed amendments would confer net benefits. Nonetheless, these proposals are entitled to serious consideration and public comment should serve that end.

[FR Doc. 88-21524 Filed 9-21-88; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 6750-01-M

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY

40 CFR Part 300

[FRL-3450-3]

Intent to Delete the New Castle Steel Site From the National Priorities List

AGENCY: Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).

ACTION: Notice of intent.

SUMMARY: The Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) Region III announces its intent to delete a site from the National Priorities List (NPL) and requests public comments. The NPL is Appendix B to the National Oil and Hazardous Substances Contingency Plan (NCP), which EPA promulgated pursuant to section 105 of the Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and Liability Act of 1980 (CERCLA), as amended.

DATE: Comments concerning the site may be submitted on or before October 24, 1988.

ADDRESSES: Comments may be mailed to the Regional Docket. Comprehensive information on the site is maintained and available through the EPA Regional Docket Clerk.

The Regional Docket is located at the U.S. EPA Region III office and is available for viewing by appointment only from 9:00 a.m. to 4:00 p.m. Monday through Friday, excluding holidays. Requests for copies of the information from the Regional public docket should be directed to the EPA Region III docket office.

Addresses for the Regional and Local Docket office are:

U.S. EPA Region III, 841 Chestnut Building, Philadelphia, PA 19107

Wilmington Library, 10th & Market Streets, Wilmington, Delaware 19801

DNREC, 715 Grantham Lane, New Castle, Delaware 19720.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: Colleen Leden at (215) 597-8593.

For background information on the site, contact:

Leonard Nash, DELMARVA/DC/WV CERCLA, Remedial Enforcement Section (3HW16), U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Region III, 841 Chestnut Building, Philadelphia, PA 19107, (215) 597-0978.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION:

Table of Contents:

I. Introduction
II. NPL Deletion Criteria
III. Deletion Procedures
IV. Basis for Intended Site Deletion

I. Introduction

The Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) Region III announces its intent to delete the New Castle Steel site from the National Priorities List (NPL), Appendix B of the National Oil and Hazardous Substances Contingency Plan (NCP), and requests comments on this deletion. The EPA identifies sites that appear to present a significant risk to public health, welfare or the environment and maintains the NPL as the list of those sites. Sites on the NPL may be the subject of Hazardous Substance Response Trust Fund ("Fund") financed remedial actions. Any site deleted from the NPL remains eligible for Fund-financed remedial actions in the unlikely event that future conditions at the site warrant such action.

II. NPL Deletion Criteria

The NCP establishes the criteria that the Agency uses to delete sites from the NPL. In accordance with 40 CFR § 300.66(c)(7), sites may be deleted from the NPL where no further response is appropriate. In making this determination, EPA will consider whether any of the following criteria have been met:

(i) EPA, in consultation with the State, has determined that responsible or other parties have implemented all appropriate response actions required; or

(ii) All appropriate Fund-financed responses under CERCLA have been implemented and EPA, in consultation with the State, has determined that no further cleanup by responsible parties is appropriate; or

(iii) Based on a remedial investigation, EPA, in consultation with the State, has determined that the release poses no significant threat to public health or the environment and, therefore, taking of remedial measures is not appropriate.

Before deciding to delete a site, EPA must first determine that the remedy (or no remedy if appropriate) is protective of public health, welfare, and the environment. In addition, section 121(f)(1)(c) of CERCLA requires State concurrence for deleting a site from the NPL.

Deletion of a site from the NPL does not preclude eligibility for subsequent Fund-financed actions if future conditions warrant such actions. Section 105(e) of CERCLA states:

> "Whenever there has been, after January 1, 1985, a significant release of hazardous substances or pollutants or contaminants from a site which is listed by the President as a 'Site Cleaned Up To Date' on the National Priorities List, the site shall be restored to the National Priorities List without application of the hazard ranking system."

III. Deletion Procedures

In the NPL rulemaking published in the **Federal Register** on October 15, 1984 (49 FR 40320), the Agency solicited and received comments on whether the notice and comment procedures followed for adding sites to the NPL should also be used before sites are deleted. Comments were also received in response to the amendments to the NCP that were proposed in the **Federal Register** on February 12, 1985 (50 FR 5862). Deletion of sites from the NPL does not itself create, alter, or revoke any individual's rights or obligations. The NPL is designed primarily for informational purposes and to assist Agency management. As is mentioned in Section II of this notice, Section 105(e) of CERCLA makes clear that deletion of a site from the NPL does not preclude eligibility for future Fund-financed response actions.

EPA Region III will accept and evaluate public comments. The Agency believes that deletion procedures should focus on notice and comment at the local level. Comments from the local community are likely to be the most pertinent to deletion decisions. The following procedures were used for the intended deletion of this site:

1. EPA Region III has recommended deletion and has prepared the relevant documents.

2. The State of Delaware has concurred with the deletion decision.

3. Concurrent with this National Notice of Intent to Delete, a local notice has been published in local and community newspapers and has been distributed to appropriate federal, state, and local officials, and other interested parties. This local notice announces a thirty (30) day public comment period on the deletion package, which starts two weeks from the date of the notice, October 6, 1988, and will conclude on October 24, 1988.

4. The Region has made all relevant documents available in the Regional Office and local site information repository.

(e) Any time limit prescribed in this section may be extended by the Administrator for good cause for a period not to exceed 30 days, either upon his/her own motion or upon written request from the appellant, permit applicant or permittee, stating the reason(s) therefor.

§ 943.10 Other authorities.

(a) All permits, licenses, and other authorizations issued pursuant to any other authority are valid within the Sanctuary subject only to the activity restrictions set forth in § 943.6. All applicable regulatory programs remain in effect. Where regulations promulgated by another authority are in conflict with Sanctuary regulations, the more restrictive regulations shall prevail.

Appendix: Flower Garden Banks National Marine Sanctuary Boundary Coordinates

Point no	Latitude	Longitude
East Flower Garden Bank		
E-1	27°52′52.13″	93°37′40.52″
E-2	27°53′33.81″	93°38′22.33″
E-3	27°55′13.31″	93°38′39.07″
E-4	27°57′30.14″	93°38′32.26″
E-5	27°58′27.79″	93°37′42.93″
E-6	27°59′00.29″	93°35′29.56″
E-7	27°58′59.23″	93°35′09.91″
E-8	27°55′20.23″	93°34′13.75″
E-9	27°54′03.35″	93°34′16.42″
E-10	27°53′25.95″	93°35′03.79″
E-11	27°52′51.14″	93°36′57.59″
West FLower Garden Bank		
W-1	27°49′09.24″	93°50′43.35″
W-2	27°50′10.23″	93°52′07.96″
W-3	27°51′13.14″	93°52′50.68″
W-4	27°51′31.24″	93°52′49.79″
W-5	27°52′49.55″	93°52′21.89″
W-6	27°54′59.08″	93°49′41.87″
W-7	27°54′57.08″	93°48′38.52″
W-8	27°54′33.46″	93°47′10.36″
W-9	27°54′13.51″	93°46′48.96″
W-10	27°53′37.67″	93°46′50.67″
W-11	27°52′56.44″	93°47′14.10″
W-12	27°50′38.31″	93°47′22.86″
W-13	27°49′11.23″	93°48′42.59″

[FR Doc. 89-4030 Filed 2-23-89; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 3510-08-M

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

16 CFR Parts 801, 802 and 803

Premerger Notification; Reporting and Waiting Period Requirements

AGENCY: Federal Trade Commission.

ACTION: Advance notice of proposed rulemaking: request for comments.

SUMMARY: The purpose of this advance notice of proposed rulemaking and request for comments by the Federal Trade Commission is to incorporate public views on the operation of the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification program prior to formulating specific proposals. The Federal Trade Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General for Antitrust, has several times amended the rules in order to improve the program's effectiveness. This notice is directed principally toward reducing the number of non-reportable transactions that may raise antitrust concerns and reducing the availability of devices for avoiding reporting and waiting requirements.

DATES: Comments must be received on or before April 25, 1989.

ADDRESSES: Written comments should be submitted to both (1) the Secretary, Federal Trade Commission, Room 172, Washington, DC 20580, and (2) the Assistant Attorney General, Antitrust Division, Department of Justice, Room 3214, Washington, DC 20530.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: Roberta S. Baruch, Deputy Assistant Director for Evaluation, Bureau of Competition, Room 394, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580. Telephone: (202) 326-3300.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION: In furtherance of its efforts to improve the effectiveness of the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification program, the Federal Trade Commission has considered preliminary, and now seeks public comments on, five approaches to reducing the number of non-reportable transactions that may raise antitrust concerns and to reducing the availability of devices for avoiding reporting and waiting requirements.

This notice is divided into two parts. Part One describes the development of the premerger notification rules and provides some background specific to the approaches discussed here. Part Two briefly describes each of the five options, discusses some of the merits and disadvantages of each, and raises questions about each to which concerned members of the public may wish to direct their comments. The public is also specifically invited to address any other issues raised by any of these options, and to suggest alternative approaches to addressing the problems of concern.

Part One: Background

Section 7A of the Clayton Act ("the act"), 15 U.S.C. 18a, as added by sections 201 and 202 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, requires persons contemplating certain acquisitions of assets or voting securities to give advance notice to the Federal Trade Commission (hereafter referred to as "the Commission") and the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice (hereafter referred to as "the Assistant Attorney General"), and to wait certain designated periods before the consummation of such acquisitions. The transactions to which the advance notice requirement is applicable and the length of the waiting period required are set out respectively in subsections (a) and (b) of section 7A. This amendment to the Clayton Act does not change the standards used in determining the legality of mergers and acquisitions under the antitrust laws.

The legislative history suggests several purposes underlying the act. Congress wanted to assure that large acquisitions were subjected to meaningful scrutiny under the antitrust laws prior to consummation. To this end, Congress clearly intended to eliminate the large "midnight merger," which is negotiated in secret and announced just before, or sometimes only after, the closing takes place. Congress also provided an opportunity for the Commission or the Assistant Attorney General (sometimes hereafter referred to collectively as the "antitrust agencies" or the "enforcement agencies") to seek a court order enjoining the completion of those transactions that the agencies deem to present significant antitrust problems. Finally, Congress sought to facilitate an effective remedy when a challenge by one of the enforcement agencies proved successful. Thus, the act requires that the antitrust agencies receive prior notification of significant acquisitions, provides certain tools to facilitate a prompt, thorough investigation of the competitive implications of these acquisitions, and assures the enforcement agencies an opportunity to seek a preliminary injunction before the parties to an acquisition are legally free to consummate it, reducing the problem of unscrambling the assets after the transaction has taken place.

Subsection 7A(d)(1) of the act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d)(1), directs the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 553, to require that the notification be in such form and contain such information and documentary material as may be necessary and appropriate to determine whether the proposed transaction may, if consummated, violate the antitrust laws. Subsection 7A(d)(2) of the act, 15 U.S.C.

18a(d)(2), grants the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 553, the authority (A) to define the terms used in the act, (B) to exempt additional persons or transactions from the act's notification and waiting period requirements, and (C) to prescribe such other rules as may be necessary and appropriate to carry out the purposes of section 7A.

On December 15, 1976, the Commission issued proposed rules and a proposed Notification and Report Form ("the Form") to implement the act. This proposed rulemaking was published in the **Federal Register** of December 20, 1976, 41 FR 55488. Because of the volume of public comment, it became clear to the Commission that some substantial revisions would have to be made in the original rules. On July 25, 1977, the Commission determined that additional public comment on the rules would be desirable and approved revised proposed rules and a revised proposed Notification and Report Form. The revised rules and Form were published in the **Federal Register** of August 1, 1977, 42 FR 39040. Additional changes in the revised rules and Form were made after the close of the comment period. The Commission formally promulgated the final rules and Form, and issued an accompanying Statement of Basis and Purpose on July 10, 1978. The Assistant Attorney General gave his formal concurrence on July 18, 1978. The final rules and Form and the Statement of Basis and Purpose were published in the **Federal Register** of July 31, 1978, 43 FR 33451, and became effective on September 5, 1978.

The rules are divided into three parts, which appear at 16 CFR Parts 801, 802, and 803. Part 801 defines a number of the terms used in the act and rules, and explains which acquisitions are subject to the reporting and waiting period requirements. Part 802 contains a number of exemptions from these requirements. Part 803 explains the procedures for complying with the act. The Notification and Report Form, which is completed by persons required to file notification, is an appendix to Part 803 of the rules.

Final changes of a substantive nature have been made in the premerger notification rules or Form on six occasions since they were first promulgated. In addition, on September 22, 1988, the Federal Trade Commission published in the **Federal Register** a proposal for a seventh change. That notice of proposed rulemaking sought comments on one principal proposal and two alternative approaches to revising the rules, each of which is designed to eliminate unnecessary notification burdens and to reduce incentives to violate the rules. The principal proposal would exempt from the premerger notification obligations all acquisitions of 10% or less of an issuer's voting securities on the grounds that such acquisitions are unlikely to violate the antitrust laws. The alternative proposals would alter existing notification procedures for acquisitions of 10% or less of an issuer's voting securities. One would permit the purchase, but require that the securities be placed in escrow pending antitrust review; the other would eliminate the reporting requirement imposed on the target firm, thus freeing the acquiror of its obligation to give the target prior notice. The period for submitting public comments on this proposal expired on December 23, 1988.

The first final rule change increased (to $15 million) the minimum dollar value exemption contained in § 802.20 of the rules. This amendment was proposed in the **Federal Register** of August 10, 1979, 44 FR 47099, and was published in final form in the **Federal Register** of November 21, 1979, 44 FR 60781. The second amendment replaced the requirement that certain revenue data for the year 1972 be provided in the Notification and Report Form with a requirement that comparable data be provided for the year 1977. This change was made because total revenues for the year 1977 broken down by Standard Industrial Classification (SIC) codes became available from the Bureau of the Census. The amendment appeared in the **Federal Register** of March 5, 1980, 45 FR 14205, and was effective May 3, 1980.

The third set of changes was published by the Commission as proposed rules changes in the **Federal Register** of July 29, 1981, 46 FR 38710. These revisions were designed to clarify and improve the effectiveness of the rules and of the Notification and Report Form as well as to reduce the burden of filing notification. Several comments on the proposed changes were received during the comment period. Final rules, which adopted some of the suggestions received during the comment period, but which were substantially the same as the proposed rules, were published in the **Federal Register** of July 29, 1983, 48 FR 34427, and became effective on August 29, 1983. The fourth change, replacing the requirement to provide 1977 revenue data with a requirement to provide 1982 data on the Form, was published in the **Federal Register** of March 28, 1986, 51 FR 10368.

The fifth set of changes to the rules and the Notification and Report Form was published by the Federal Trade Commission as proposed rule changes in the **Federal Register** of September 24, 1985, 50 FR 38742. Those thirteen proposed revisions were designed to reduce the cost to the public of complying with rules and to improve the program's effectiveness. The Commission decided to adopt nine of the proposals, to reject one, and to defer action on the other three. Final rules, which adopted some of the suggestions received from public comments, were published in the **Federal Register** of March 6, 1987, 52 FR 7066 and became effective on April 10, 1987. These changes included revisions to the Notification and Report Form, found in 16 CFR 803 (Appendix). The Form had previously undergone minor revisions on two other occasions.

The sixth set of changes was published by the Federal Trade Commission as proposed rules changes in the **Federal Register** of March 6, 1987, 52 FR 7095, and as final rules in the **Federal Register** of May 29, 1987, 52 FR 20058. Those amendments to the premerger notification rules grew out of the comments on Proposal 1 of the September 24, 1985, **Federal Register** notice, the proposed "acquisition vehicle" rules. The underreporting problem that the "acquisition vehicle" approach was designed to solve is extensively discussed in that notice of proposed rulemaking. It explains both how in some circumstances an acquisition made by a partnership is not subject to the reporting and waiting obligations of the act, and how in similar circumstances an acquisition made by a newly-formed corporation that has no controlling owner is not subject to the obligations of the act. The proposed rules would have required both types of transactions to be reported.

Upon reviewing the comments on the "acquisition vehicle" proposal, the Commission concluded that that approach appeared likely to require filings in connection with numerous competitively insignificant transactions and that a less inclusive approach could accomplish the primary objective of the proposal: covering acquisitions by partnerships that really are controlled by another entity. In addition, it appeared that there had been no problems associated with acquisitions by newly-formed corporations. The Commission therefore reconsidered its proposal and developed a new approach that applied only to partnerships and other entities that did not have outstanding voting securities.

Under previous staff interpretations, acquisitions made by certain partnerships were not reportable under the act although acquisitions by similarly structured corporations were reportable. No report was required even if an acquisition was by a partnership that was owned and operated principally by one person, and even if that person was a competitor of the acquired person. Because that result was inconsistent with the treatment of corporations that are dominated by one person and with the objectives of the act and the rules, the Commission amended the definition of control in § 801.1(b) to provide that persons owning 50 percent or more of partnerships or other entities that do not have outstanding voting securities control such entities. Those persons are now required to report acquisitions by the entities they own, just as persons must report acquisitions by corporations if they own 50 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of those corporations.

The Commission also amended the alternative definition of control, which is based on the contractual power to designate members of an entity's board of directors or analogous body. The change—from the power to designate a majority to the power to designate 50 percent—resulted in a uniform 50 percent criterion for all three definitions of control in the rules.

In the statement of basis and purpose accompanying the promulgation of the amendments to the definition of control at 52 FR 20061 the Commission noted that more inclusive definitions of control were possible and, indeed, that each of the comments on the proposed rule had suggested some more expansive approach. The Commission rejected greater coverage at that time, preferring first to amend the definitions of control to equalize the treatment of partnerships and corporations. It noted, however, that it might reexamine the need for more inclusive definitions if it appeared that significant underreporting remained after implementation of the changes being promulgated at that time.

Based on the Commission's experience with the new partnership control rules in effect for 18 months, we believe that there may continue to be acquisitions that may not be covered by the HSR premerger reporting requirements that it would be useful for the enforcement agencies to have an opportunity to review. At the same time, the Commission continues to be concerned about any unnecessary increase in the number of filings that might result from any of these rules.

Thus, to facilitate the analysis of the more inclusive options available, and to highlight the merits and disadvantages of each, the Commission seeks public comments in response to this advance notice of proposed rulemaking. The Commission seeks comments on several general questions posed here, as well as on five more specific options discussed in the next section.

General Questions

How many transactions take place each year that it would be useful for the enforcement agencies to have an opportunity to review but that the parties believe are not covered by the HSR premerger reporting requirements' definition of "control"?

Based on the Commission's experience, it appears that intermediary entities created to carry out acquisitions are most often in the form of partnerships. What are the reasons for the apparent preference for this business form for this kind of business activity?

More specifically, under the current rules, why have partnerships rather than corporations been used to avoid reporting?

What would be the effect of having a more inclusive definition of "control" for partnerships than for corporations?

Part Two: Options

Option One: Change the "Flow-through rule" of § 801.11(e). Section 801.11(e) was amended in the March 6, 1987, **Federal Register**, 52 FR 7066, to codify a long-standing informal position of the Commission staff that a person without a regularly prepared balance sheet generally should not include funds used to make an acquisition in determining its size. The issue arises primarily in connection with newly-formed entities, not controlled by any other entity, that have not yet drawn up a balance sheet. Under this rule, if such an entity's only assets are cash that will be used to make an acquisition and securities of the entity it is acquiring, it generally will not have to file for that acquisition because it will be deemed too small to meet the act's size-of-person test. The rule is intended to limit the coverage of the premerger rules to those situations when an antitrust violation is most likely to be present, that is, when one business entity of a substantial size acquires another business entity of a substantial size. The operation and purpose of the rule is discussed in some detail in the statement of basis and purpose accompanying the final rule.

Most new entities that do not have to report significant acquisitions are exempt from filing obligations because they fail independently to meet the act's size-of-person test through the operation of this rule. If such an intity is not controlled by another entity with sufficient sales or assets to fall within the coverage of the act, then the acquisition may not be subject to the reporting and waiting requirements.

The focus of both the proposed "acquisition vehicle" rule and the more limited partnership control rule ultimately adopted by the Commission was on providing a mechanism for the enforcement agencies to receive filings from the entities with controlling or other ownership interests in the newly-formed entities that would not, themselves, have to report. It may be, however, that it would be helpful to change the flow-through rule in some way that would require certain newly-formed entities to report.

There are at least two potentially significant problems with this approach. First, there are many transactions without antitrust significance that are exempt under the current rule but that would be reportable with a change in the flow-through rule. The additional reporting that would likely result from such a change might be limited by adopting a different, higher threshold for such newly-formed entities. However, the Commission does not currently have sufficient information to identify the appropriate threshold.

Second, if newly-formed entities were themselves required to report, their filings would not provide much information useful for an initial assessment of the antitrust significance of the transaction. It is likely that any competitive effects would be associated with the ongoing business interests of those with ownership interests in the new acquiring entity, even if they did not meet the rules' narrow definition of control. To reflect their operations in a filing by the acquiring entity could require significant changes in the information required by the Notification and Report Form.

Questions for Option One

How many transactions currently exempt from reporting and waiting requirements would be required to report if the flow-through rule were eliminated?

Are these transactions concentrated in any particular industry?

What might be an appropriate alternative threshold level for newly-formed entities?

What changes would need to be made in the Notification and Report Form to provide useful information from entities with less-than-controlling interests in newly-formed entities? Could these be made without requiring extensive additional information from all reporting parties?

Are there other changes that could be made in the flow-through rule that would achieve these objectives without requiring as many additional filings?

Option Two: Define each general partner or a managing partner as controlling a partnership. Under the current partnership control rule, any partner with a 50 percent or greater ownership interest in a partnership is deemed to control the partnership. However, partnerships are often set up with many limited partners and a small number of general partners, none of which has a 50 percent interest but any of which could exercise significant control over the business of the partnership. An acquisition made by such a partnership entity might well be exempt from current reporting requirements. This is especially likely if the partnership were newly-formed and did not have a regularly prepared balance sheet so that it failed to meet the size-of-person test as a result of the operation of the flow-through rule.

Deeming each general partner to control the partnership would be consistent with the power of general partners under common law. It would also assure that any party with potential control over a partnership would have to report any acquisition (that otherwise meets the statutory requirements) made by that partnership. The primary problem with this option is that it would likely require filings for many transactions that are unlikely to present significant antitrust concerns and that have, until now, been exempt from reporting requirements.

There are at least two ways the Commission might be able to limit this effect. One is to exempt certain types of partnerships, or industries that often use partnerships, where it is possible to identify significant numbers of otherwise reportable acquisitions that would not raise antitrust concerns. The other is to exempt general partners that relinquish certain crucial elements of partnership control through the partnership agreement. Thus, rather than defining every general partner as controlling every partnership, the definition of control might include only partners with certain critical powers, for example, the powers to acquire and dispose of assets, to enter into certain kinds of agreements, or to perform certain management functions of an ongoing business. This definition of control, designed for partnerships, might also be applied to entities with similar powers to direct the business operations of corporations or other entities. Thus, the "managing" entity would include the value of the controlled entities when determining whether it met the size-of-person test, and it would include information about the business activities of the controlled entities on its notification and report forms. One effect of applying the rule in this way would be to resolve a question that has been of concern on several occasions: how to obtain information in a premerger filing from an entity with little or no ownership interest in a compny but with management contracts giving it actual control over the company's ongoing business. Such a change, whether or not limited to control of a partnership, might take the form of an expansion or clarification of § 801.1(b)(2), which defines control to include:

(2) Having the contractual power presently to designate 50 percent or more of the directors of a corporation, or in the case of unincorporated entities, of individuals exercising similar functions.

Questions for Option Two

How many additional filings would the enforcement agencies likely receive as the result of such a change, if the change included all general partners? If the change were limited to partners with specific elements of management authority? If the change applied to any entity with similar elements of management authority over corporations or other entities, as well as partnerships?

What proportion of those transactions are likely to have antitrust significance?

What industries are likely to be significantly affected by such a change?

What elements of authority might be used to define when a partner or other entity is deemed to control a partnership or other entity?

Option Three: lower ownership level for control from 50 percent. Several comments to the Commission, including comments by the American Bar Association ("ABA") offered in response to the proposed "Acquisition Vehicle" rule, have suggested that the Commission base its definition of control of a partnership on an ownership level lower than the 50 percent used to define control of a corporation. The ABA comments and others have suggested 25 percent as an alternative. Although the 50-percent ownership level appears to have been adequate for attributing control of a corporation, it may be that a different standard is warranted for partnerships in light of their more frequent use as acquisition vehicles and their greater flexibility in allocating power among partners.

Any such change would almost certainly subject to premerger antitrust review some transactions that it would be useful for the antitrust agencies to assess and that currently are not reported. However, the change would also increase the number of filings of transactions raising no antitrust concerns. To limit the number of additional filings that the agencies would receive as a result of a lower ownership threshold for control of a partnership, the ABA proposal would attribute control *only* to the partner with the largest ownership share equal to or greater than 25 percent. Thus, if there were a 50-percent partner and two 25-percent partners, only the 50-percent partner would file. If there were two 25-percent partners and 50 one-percent partners, the 25-percent partners each would be deemed to control the partnership. A possible disadvantage of requiring reports by minority owners is that minority owners might thereby obtain effective veto power over acquisitions.

Questions for Option Three:

How many additional filings might the enforcement agencies expect from any of these changes?

Would different definitions of control for corporations than for partnerships create an incentive for parties to structure transactions in inefficient ways to avoid reporting and waiting requirements?

Option Four: restore the concept of a "group" to the definition of "entity" and include in it the kind of group recognized by the Securities and Exchange Commission. The definition of "entity" is a critical link in determining who must report and wait before completing a proposed transaction. Section 801.1(a)(2) defines "entity" by setting forth a list of the types of organizational units that are included within that term. In the original HSR rule published in the July 31, 1978 **Federal Register**, 43 FR 33450, the list included the phrase, "or other group organized for any purpose." Informal contacts between the Commission staff and persons wishing to determine the reportability of particular transactions indicated that the concept of "group" was a source of considerable uncertainty. The concern was caused in part by the fact that the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") also requires reporting by entities called groups. However, the Commission concluded that the SEC's definition of "group," geared as it is to securities regulation, was too broad for purposes of the HSR premerger rules. The Commission concluded that the other organizational units included in the definition of "entity" had proven to be adequate, and that in light of the confusion it engendered, the concept of "group" was unnecessary. Accordingly, the Commission eliminated the concept of "group" from the definition of "entity" on July 29, 1983, 48 FR 34427.

It may be time to reevaluate both of the Commission's earlier conclusions about the appropriateness of using the SEC's definition of group and value of including "group" within the definition of "entity." The Commission believes that unnecessary inconsistencies between the HSR rules and the SEC rules may create both confusion and distortions in the market that can result in inefficiently structured transactions as well as incentives to violate one set of regulations. Accordingly, the Commission seeks comments on the effects of including the SEC definition of "group" within the HSR rules' definition of "entity."

One problem with this approach is how to define control by, or of, a "group." If the group neither controls nor is controlled by any of its members, a filing by the group would likely contain little information useful to a preliminary antitrust analysis. Indeed, in many cases a group formed to make an acquisition would probably be exempt from filing requirements by operation of the flow-through rule (discussed in Option One, above). If a group were deemed to control all of its members, the rules would probably have to provide some special mechanism for a joint filing. And if a group were deemed controlled by some or all of its members, the rules would have to provide some way of determining who controls the group. For that purpose, one of the two options discussed above for defining control of a partnership might be useful.

Questions for Option Four:

How many additional filings would the enforcement agencies likely receive if this rule were adopted?

Is the existing SEC definition of "group" clear enough to be incorporated into the Commission's premerger rules?

Would the SEC definition of "group" necessarily include every partnership?

If a "group" were deemed to control all of its members, how might information from all of the members be provided?

Option Five: return to the "acquisition vehicle" rule. the "acquisition vehicle" rule, proposed by the Commission on September 24, 1985, at 50 FR 38742, would have required the owners of an entity used primarily to make an acquisition (an "acquisition vehicle") to file notification for an acquisition made by the acquisition vehicle as if the owners had made the acquisition directly without the acquisition vehicle. Although the premerger notification rules subject many indirect acquisitions to antitrust review, acquisitions made by entities that are not "controlled" by other persons frequently are not reportable.

Thus, under current rules, if four corporations each acquired 25 percent of the voting securities of another corporation, each of those acquisitions would be separately reported and reviewed by the antitrust agencies (assuming the act's other requirements were met). However, if, for purposes of acquiring the voting securities, the four corporations were to create a new entity to make the acquisition, the acquisition would probably not be reported, even though the antitrust interest in the transaction would be identical. Indeed, such an acquisition typically would be followed by a statutory merger that would not be covered by the rules' reporting requirements. Such a merger would, thus, transfer direct ownership of the acquired voting securities to the original four purchasers with no opportunity for review by the antitrust enforcement agencies. The "acquisition vehicle" rule would require the four purchasers in the above example to report the acquisition in the same way whether they acquired the voting securities directly or through the device of an "acquisition vehicle."

The "acquisition vehicle" rule has a particular advantage in that, with respect both to underreporting and avoidance, "acquisition vehicles" have been the entities of greatest concern to the Commission. This approach also would treat transactions with similar characteristics in the same manner and would assure that many transactions not now reported to the enforcement agencies would be subject to meaningful premerger antitrust review. At the same time, commenters on the proposed rule suggested that the "acquisition vehicle" rule would require the unnecessary reporting of a significant number of transactions, and could be particularly susceptible to manipulation for avoidance purposes because of difficulties in defining "acquisition vehicle."

The Commission is interested in further suggestions on how reporting created by the acquisition vehicle rule could be limited while obtaining the benefits of this approach.

Questions for Option 5:

How many additional transactions would likely be received by the enforcement agencies if the rule as previously proposed were adopted?

How could the rule be revised to reduce any overreporting that might result?

How could "acquisition vehicle" be defined to avoid both confusion and manipulation by those seeking to avoid reporting?

By direction of the Commission.

Donald S. Clark,

Secretary.

[FR Doc. 89-4310 Filed 2-23-89; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 6750-01-M

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY

40 CFR Part 52

[FRL-3527-5; GA-013]

Approval and Promulgation of Implementation Plans; Georgia Stack Height Review

AGENCY: Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).

ACTION: Proposed rule.

SUMMARY: EPA is proposing to approve a declaration by Georgia that recent revisions to EPA's stack height regulations do not necessitate source-specific revisions to the State Implementation Plan (SIP) in this State. The State was required to review its SIP for consistency within nine months of final promulgation of the stack height regulations. The intended effect of this action is to formally document that Georgia has satisfied its obligations under Section 406 of Pub. L. 95-95 to review its SIP with respect to EPA's revised stack height regulations. No emission limitations were affected by stack height credit above GEP or any other dispersion technique with the possible exception of five sources. These sources will be dealt with in a subsequent notice.

DATE: Comments must be received on or before March 27, 1989.

ADDRESSES: Comments may be mailed to Beverly T. Hudson of EPA Region IV's Air Programs Branch. (See EPA Region IV address below.) Copies of the submission and EPA's evaluation are available for public inspection during normal business hours at the following locations:

Air Programs Branch, Region IV, Environmental Protection Agency, 345 Courtland Street, NE., Atlanta, Georgia 30365.

Georgia Department of Natural Resources, Floyd Towers East, Room 1162, 205 Butler Street, Atlanta, Georgia 30334.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION:

History

On March 1, 1989, the FAA proposed to amend Part 71 of the Federal Aviation Regulations (14 CFR Part 71) to designate the Huntingdon, TN, transition area (54 FR 8553). This notice proposed to lower the base of controlled airspace from 1,200 feet to 700 feet above the surface in the vicinity of the Carroll County Airport. A SIAP has been developed for the airport. The additional controlled airspace is required for protection of IFR aeronautical operations. If approved, concurrent with publication of the SIAP, the operating status of the airport will be changed from VFR to IFR. Interested parties were invited to participate in this rulemaking proceeding by submitting written comments on the proposal to the FAA. No comments objecting to the proposal were received. Section 71.181 of Part 71 of the Federal Aviation Regulations was republished in FAA handbook 7400.6E dated January 3, 1989.

The Rule

This amendment to Part 71 of the Federal Aviation Regulations designates the Huntingdon, TN, transition area. The base of controlled airspace will be lowered from 1,200 feet to 700 feet above the surface in the vicinity of Carroll County Airport. The additional controlled airspace is required for protection of IFR aeronautical operations.

The FAA has determined that this regulation only involves an established body of technical regulations for which frequent and routine amendments are necessary to keep them operationally current. It, therefore, (1) is not a "major rule" under Executive Order 12291; (2) is not a "significant rule" under DOT Regulatory Policies and Procedures (44 FR 11034; February 26, 1979); and (3) does not warrant preparation of a regulatory evaluation as the anticipated impact is so minimal. Since this is a routine matter that will only affect air traffic procedures and air navigation, it is certified that this rule will not have a significant economic impact on a substantial number of small entities under the criteria of the Regulatory Flexibility Act.

List of Subjects in 14 CFR Part 71

Aviation safety, Transition area.

Accordingly, pursuant to the authority delegated to me, Part 71 of the Federal Aviation Regulations (14 CFR Part 71) is amended, as follows:

Adoption of The Amendment

PART 71—DESIGNATION OF FEDERAL AIRWAYS, AREA LOW ROUTES, CONTROLLED AIRSPACE, AND REPORTING POINTS

1. The authority citation for Part 71 continues to read as follows:

Authority: 49 U.S.C. 1348(a), 1354(a), 1510; Executive Order 10854; 49 U.S.C. 106(g) (Revised Pub. L. 97–449, January 12, 1983); 14 CFR 11.69.

§ 71.181 [Amended]

2. Section 71.181 is amended as follows:

Huntingdon, TN [New]

That airspace extending upward from 700 feet above the surface within a 7-mile radius of the Carroll County Airport (Lat. 36°05'23" N., Long. 88°27'45" W); within 3.5 miles each side of the 180° bearing from the Huntingdon NDB (Lat. 36°05'17" N., Long. 88°28'10" W), extending from the 7-mile radius area to 10 miles south of the NDB.

Issued in East Point, Georgia, on May 3, 1989.

William D. Wood,

Acting Manager, Air Traffic Division, Southern Region.

[FR Doc. 89–11858 Filed 5–17–89; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 4910-13-M

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

16 CFR Part 803

Premerger Notification; Reporting and Waiting Period Requirements

AGENCY: Federal Trade Commission.

ACTION: Interim Rule with Request for Comments.

SUMMARY: This interim rule amends the premerger notification rules that require the parties to certain mergers or acquisitions to file reports with the Federal Trade Commission ("the Commission") and the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice ("the Assistant Attorney General"), and to wait a specified period of time before consummating such transactions. The reporting and waiting period requirements are intended to enable these enforcement agencies to determine whether a proposed merger or acquisition may violate the antitrust laws if consummated and, when appropriate, to seek a preliminary injunction in federal court to prevent consummation. This interim rule codifies the practices of the Federal Trade Commission that make public administrative grants of early termination of the waiting period through means other than publication in the Federal Register.

DATE: The interim rule is effective on June 19, 1989. The Commission will, however, accept comments on the revised rule that are received on or before June 19, 1989, and may reevaluate the rule in light of those comments.

ADDRESSES: Written comments should be submitted to both (1) the Secretary, Federal Trade Commission, Room 159, Washington, DC 20580, and (2) the Assistant Attorney General, Antitrust Division, Department of Justice, Room 3214, Washington, DC 20530.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: Thomas F. Hancock, Attorney, Premerger Notification Office, Bureau of Competition, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580. Telephone: (202) 326–3100.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION:

Regulatory Flexibility Act

This amendment to the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification rules is purely technical relating to the procedures the Commission and the Assistant Attorney General will use to make public information about their decisions not to take enforcement action during the waiting period provided in section 7A(b) of the Clayton Act. This amendment does not affect the substantive obligations of persons subject to the act's notification requirement.

This amendment is not subject to notice and comment under the Administrative Procedure Act, 5 U.S.C. 553(b)(A). The requirements of the Regulatory Flexibility Act also do not apply. 5 U.S.C. 601(2).

Paperwork Reduction Act

The Hart-Scott-Rodino Premerger Notification rules and report form contain information collection requirements as defined by the Paperwork Reduction Act, 44 U.S.C. 3501–3518. These requirements were reviewed and approved by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB Control No. 3084–0005). Because this amendment would not affect the information collection requirement of the premerger notification program, the amendment has not been submitted to OMB for review under setion 3504(h) of the Paperwork Reduction Act.

Background

Section 7A of the Clayton Act ("the act"), 15 U.S.C. 18a, as added by sections 201 and 202 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, requires persons contemplating certain acquisitions of assets or voting securities to give advance notice to the Commission and the Assistant Attorney General and to wait certain designated periods before the consummation of such acquisitions. The transactions to which the advance notice requirement is applicable and the length of the waiting period required are set out respectively in subsections (a) and (b) of section 7A.

Subsection 7A(d)(1) of the act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d)(1), directs the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, in accordance with 5 U.S.C., 553, to require that the notification be in such form and contain such information and documentary material as may be necessary and appropriate to determine whether the proposed transaction may, if consummated, violate the antitrust laws. Subsection 7A(d)(2) of the act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d)(2), grants the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 553, the authority (A) to define the terms used in the act, (B) to exempt additional persons or transactions from the act's notification and waiting period requirements, and (C) to prescribe such other rules as may be necessary and appropriate to carry out the purposes of section 7A.

On July 31, 1978, the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, promulgated final premerger notification rules pursuant to subsections 7A(d)(1) and (2). See 43 FR 33451. The rules have been modified several times since they were first promulgated. The rules are divided into three parts, which appear at 16 CFR Parts 801, 802, and 803. Part 801 defines a number of the terms used in the act and rules, and explains which acquisitions are subject to the reporting and waiting period requirements. Part 802 contains a number of exemptions from these requirements. Part 803 explains the procedures for complying with the act. The Notification and Report Form, which is completed by persons required to file notification, is an appendix to Part 803 of the rules.

Statement of basis and Purpose for the Commission's Revision of Its Premerger Notification Rules

The Commission has long had a practice of making public the enforcement agencies' decisions to grant early termination of the Hart-Scott-Rodino waiting period both formally in the **Federal Register** and informally over the phone and through the Commission's Public Reference Section. Recently, it came to the Commission's attention that persons could profit because of their knowledge and use of these practices to obtain information about early terminations to the detriment of other investors who were not aware that the information was available. This revision of § 803.11(c) of the premerger notification rules, 16 CFR 803.11(c), codifies the Commission's informal procedure and provides notice to the public that the procedure exists.

Section 7A(a) of the act provides that persons of a specified size contemplating acquisitions of a specified size must file notification with the antitrust enforcement agencies and wait a designated period of time before consummating. The waiting period, designated in section 7A(b)(1) of the act, generally begins when both parties to the transaction file notification and ends thirty days later. Section 7A(b)(2) of the act empowers the Commission and the Assistant Attorney General to terminate the waiting period provided by section 7A(b)(1) of the act in particular transactions before it would otherwise expire. 15 U.S.C. 18a(b)(2). The act further specifies that when parties receive early termination of the waiting period the Commission and the Assistant Attorney General "promptly shall cause to be published in the **Federal Register** a notice that neither intends to take any action within such period with respect to such acquisition." *Id.* When the Commission promulgated the premerger notification rules it acknowledged this requirement. In § 803.11(c), the Commission stated that early termination would be effective upon notice to any requesting person by phone, that this communication would be confirmed in writing, and that "notice thereof shall be published in the **Federal Register** in accordance with section 7A(b)(2)." 16 CFR 803.11(c).

The statutory requirement that the Commission publish notice of grants of early termination indicates Congress' intent that this information should be made public promptly. This provision is one of the few exceptions to the broad grant of confidentiality accorded information filed with the enforcement agencies in connection with a premerger notification filing. *See* section 7A(h) of the act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(h). The legislative history does not reveal why Congress included this provision or what Congress intended to achieve by its inclusion. But the fact that it was included evidences Congress' willingness to depart from its policy of strict confidentiality to assure that information concerning the agencies' decisions not to take any action to prevent consummation of particular transactions be made public.

The present revision in § 803.11(c) reflects the Commission's practices administering the premerger notification program. Over the last six years, the Commission's Premerger Notification Office has sent a Notice to the **Federal Register** every two weeks listing early terminations granted during the preceding two-week period. This practice was adopted after the Commission issued its Formal Interpretation in August of 1982 eliminating the requirement that parties provide a business reason to qualify for early termination. As a result of the Formal Interpretation, requests for and grants of early termination increased significantly. (In FY 82 early termination was requested in 222 transactions and granted in 142, in FY 83 it was requested in 606 transactions and granted in 495, and in FY 88 it was requested in 2433 transactions and granted in 1880.) This change in procedure was adopted because of the time and expense to continue the prior practice of daily publication and a separate notice for each transaction.

While the practice of publishing notice every two weeks (rather than daily) is preferable administratively, it can result in delays. For example, there is a four-day delay between the time a Notice is sent to the **Federal Register** and the time it actually appears in print. Thus, publication occurs anywhere between four days and three weeks after the grant of early termination. Under this procedure, parties to a transaction may be informed of early termination several weeks before the public has access to this information through the **Federal Register**.

In part because of this delay, but primarily because this information was to be published soon in the **Federal Register**, it was determined early in the program's history that it was desirable and appropriate to make information about early terminations public in other ways as soon as the parties had been informed that early termination had been granted. As a result, the Premerger Notification Office has provided information about early terminations in response to telephone inquiries. The Premerger Notification Office also made available, in the Commission's Public Reference Section, a list of early terminations granted.

These dissemination procedures were discontinued this past summer. It appears that some investors could have profited from their knowledge and use of access to this information to the detriment of other investors who were unaware that the information was available. Upon learning of this disparity of information, the Commission suspended these dissemination procedures until it could establish procedures to make the public at large aware of how the early terminations would be available, and the Commission could consider whether it was appropriate to release the information by methods other than the **Federal Register**.

The Commission has determined that sections 7A(b)(2) and 7A(h) do not preclude the use of means other than the **Federal Register** to make information about early terminations public. The reference in the act to publication in the **Federal Register** does not limit the release of this information exclusively to this means. This reference merely assures that the information will promptly be made public in some manner. So long as the information is published in the **Federal Register** the Commission is free also to make it public in other ways which are more efficient and less costly.

The Commission has determined that there is no reason why the public should not be informed of grants of early termination as soon as practicable. This is particularly true for transactions involving companies whose stock is publicly traded. One solution might be to publish more frequent notices in the **Federal Register**. But this would be very costly and would still result in delays of four days or more. The Commission has determined that making this information public through its Public Reference section is a less costly and more efficient alternative.

The present change in § 803.11(c) makes clear that the Commission may use other means to make public grants of early termination. The new language will put the public on notice that other procedures may be used to make this information public. The effective date of the new provision is delayed for 30 days so that persons filing notification will know that this information may be made public in ways in addition to the **Federal Register** before they request early termination.

The Commission will provide in the Public Reference Section of the Commission's headquarters each work day a list of transactions in which early termination was granted the previous work day. This information will also be made available through the Public Reference Section's telephone information system which can be reached using a touch tone phone by calling (202) 326-2222. The information will be available on a prerecorded message. These procedures will give the public access to this information without imposing an undue administrative burden on the Commission. Release of this information will supplement the current schedule of publication in the **Federal Register**. This information will not be available through the Premerger Notification Office. We note that several commercial reporting services have expressed interest in obtaining this information. Thus we expect that the information will be made available expeditiously by wire to their subscribers nationwide. The Commission will make information about early terminations available through additional means as they become available. In addition, the Commission may revise its public notice procedures in response to comments. The Commission specifically invites comments on the procedures it plans to adopt. We hope to receive comments as to how best to implement the procedures so that all members of the public are placed on equal footing. Future modifications will be publicly announced through the Public Reference Section and through press releases.

List of Subjects in 16 CFR Part 803

Antitrust.

Interim Rule

The Commission amends Title 16 Chapter I, Subpart H, The Code of Federal Regulations as follows:

PART 803—[AMENDED]

1. Authority. The authority citation for Part 803 continues to read as follows:

Authority: Sec. 7A(d) of the Clayton Act 15 U.S.C. 18a(d), as added by sec. 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390.

2. The Commission amends the rules by revising § 803.11(c) to read as follows:

§ 803.11 [Amended]

* * * * *

(c) The Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General may in their discretion terminate a waiting period upon the written request of any person filing notification or, notwithstanding paragraph (a) of this section, sua sponte. A request for termination of the waiting period shall be sent to the offices designated in § 803.10(c). Termination shall be effective upon notice to any requesting person by telephone, and such notice shall be given as soon as possible. Such notice shall also be confirmed in writing to each person which has filed notification, and notice thereof shall be published in the **Federal Register** in accordance with section 7A(b)(2). The Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General also may use other means to make the termination public, prior to publication in the **Federal Register** in a manner that will make the information equally accessible to all members of the public.

* * * * *

Donald S. Clark,

Secretary.

[FR Doc. 89-11956 Filed 5-17-89; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 6750-01-M

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY

40 CFR Part 144

Underground Injection Control Program

CFR Correction

In the July 1, 1988 revision of Title 40 (Parts 100 to 149) of the Code of Federal Regulations, on page 613, second column, in paragraph (h) of § 144.1, the cite now reading "§ 256.430" should read "§ 265.430".

BILLING CODE 1505-01-M

---

40 CFR Part 180

[PP 8F3665/R1027; FRL-3573-2]

Pesticide Tolerances for Glyphosate

AGENCY: Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).

ACTION: Final rule.

SUMMARY: This rule establishes a regulation to permit the residues of the herbicide glyphosate (*N*-(phosphonomethyl)-glycine) and its metabolite aminomethylphosphonic acid resulting from the application of the sodium sesqui salt for plant growth regulator purposes in or on peanuts at 0.1 part per million (ppm), peanut hay at 0.5 ppm, and peanut hulls at 0.5 ppm. The rule was requested by Monsanto Co.

EFFECTIVE DATE: May 18, 1989.

ADDRESS: Written objections, identified by the document control number (PP 8F3665/R1027), may be submitted to the: Hearing Clerk (A-110), Environmental Protection Agency, Room 3708, 401 M Street SW., Washington, DC 20460.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT:

By mail: Robert J. Taylor, Product Manager (PM) 25, Registration Division (H-7505C), Office of Pesticide Programs, Environmental Protection Agency, 401 M Street, SW., Washington, DC 20460

Office location and telephone number: Room 243, Crystal Mall #2, 1921 Jefferson Davis Highway, Arlington, VA 22202, (703)-557-1800.

FEDERAL REGISTER NOTICES

Federal Register Notice, July 31, 1978

Federal Register Notice, November 21, 1979

Federal Register Notice, July 23, 1983

Federal Register Notice, March 6, 1987

Federal Register Notice, May 29, 1987

Federal Register Notice, September 22, 1988

Federal Register Notice, February 24, 1989

Federal Register Notice, May 18, 1989

FORMAL INTERPRETATIONS

IV. FORMAL INTERPRETATIONS

FI - 1

COVINGTON & BURLING
888 SIXTEENTH STREET, N. W.
WASHINGTON, D. C. 20006

TELEPHONE (202) 452-6000

WRITER'S DIRECT DIAL NUMBER
(202) 452-6042

NEWELL W. ELLISON
JOHN G. LAYLIN
H. THOMAS AUSTERN
FONTAINE C. BRADLEY
EDWARD BURLING, JR.
COUNSEL

JOHN SHERMAN COOPER
OF COUNSEL

August 15, 1978

Malcolm R. Pfunder, Esq.
Associate Director, Premerger
  Notification and Screening
Federal Trade Commission
Pennsylvania Avenue at 16th Street
Washington, D.C. 20580

Dear Mr. Pfunder:

I write to record my understanding, based upon our telephone conversation of August 14, that it is the staff's position that so long as companies will be filing premerger notification reports as to a merger or acquisition under the requirements of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Act, they need not also file letters of notification and reports as to such merger or acquisition under the Commission's existing notification requirements. I refer, of course, to transactions which are agreed on in principle before the effectiveness of the new regulations but which will not be consummated until after effectiveness. This interpretation sensibly avoids unnecessary and duplicative filings.

Sincerely,

Edwin M. Zimmerman

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION
WASHINGTON. D. C. 20580

AU OF COMPETITION

August 25, 1978

Edwin M. Zimmerman, Esquire
Covington & Burling
888 Sixteenth Street, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20006

Re: Premerger Notification Requirements
under Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust
Improvements Act of 1976

Dear Mr. Zimmerman:

Your letter of August 15 gives me the opportunity to explain a couple of points which have been the subject of numerous telephone and letter inquiries over the past few weeks. I have taken the liberty of putting your letter and my response on the public record, in order to clarify the relationship between the Commission's existing premerger notification program and the new program which is to be implemented under Section 7A of the Clayton Act, as added by Section 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976.

The existing program, in its present form, dates back to 1974 (39 Federal Register 35717, October 3, 1974). That program required that certain mergers or acquisitions be reported to the Commission by filing of a letter of notification and one or more "Special Reports." In most situations covered by that program, each of the parties to a merger or acquisition was required to file a Special Report within ten days after reaching an agreement or understanding in principle to merge or to acquire assets or stock.

The Commission has recently amended its existing program to eliminate these requirements for any company (1) that files notification under Section 7A of the Clayton Act or (2) that is exempt from filing requirements under Section 7A or the rules implementing that section (43 Federal Register 28046, June 28, 1978). That amendment becomes effective on the effective date of the new premerger notification rules, which were published on July 31 (43 Federal Register 33450) and become effective on September 5, 1978 (see 43 Federal Register 34443). Promulgation of the new rules raises the question posed by your letter: must companies which are covered by and will be reporting under the new rules also file Special Reports under the existing program where an agreement or understanding in principle to merge or acquire is reached more than ten days prior to September 5, 1978?

Your letter of August 15 correctly summarizes the staff's position. While the existing program technically requires the filing of a Special Report in this situation, that filing would in our view unnecessarily duplicate the requirements of the new program. Reporting under the existing program is thus no longer required of any person who files under the new program. The only transactions which must still be reported under the Commission's 1974 program are (1) those which will be fully consummated before September 5, 1978 (because they will not be subject to the requirements of Section 7A), and (2) those which will be consummated on or after September 5, 1978, are subject to the reporting requirements of Section 7A and the new premerger notification rules, and are not reported under the new program. In other words, on and after September 5, 1978, the existing premerger notification requirements will continue to apply only to those persons who are parties to transactions covered by the Hart-Scott-Rodino program but who, for whatever reason, decline to comply with the requirements of the new program.

Thank you for your inquiry.

Sincerely yours,

Malcolm R. Pfunder
Associate Director for
Premerger Notification

FI - 4

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20580

REAU OF COMPETITION

September 26, 1978

Mr. Laurence T. Sorkin
Cahill, Gordon & Reindel
Eighty Pine Street
New York, New York 10005

Re: Formal interpretation of § 802.70 of the
Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements
Act of 1976

Dear Mr. Sorkin:

First National City Bank ("Citicorp") has requested an interpretation of § 802.70 of the premerger notification rules as it relates to Citicorp's proposed acquisition of Carte Blanche Corporation ("Carte Blanche"). In accordance with the provisions of § 803.30 of the rules, Commission staff has elected to render, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice, a formal response to this request.

Section 802.70(b) of the rules exempts from the reporting and waiting period requirements of the Act and rules acquisitions "subject to an order of the Federal Trade Commission or of any Federal court requiring prior approval of such acquisition by the Federal Trade Commission, such court, or the Department of Justice, and such approval has been obtained." A 1968 consent decree specifically prohibited the reacquisition of Carte Blanche by Citicorp. The court retained jurisdiction, however, to enable the parties to apply for further orders or modifications of the decree. Citicorp obtained the approval of the Department of Justice to petition for vacation of the consent decree and the court vacated the decree on September 7, 1978. Under these facts the proposed acquisition is within the bounds of § 802.70 and thus is exempt from the requirements of the Act and rules.

This formal interpretation is rendered without prejudice to the right of rescission of either the Commission or the Assistant Attorney General. In the event of such rescission, Citicorp will be notified in writing.

Very truly yours,

Malcolm R. Pfunder
Associate Director for
Premerger Notification

FI - 5

CAHILL GORDON & REINDEL
EIGHTY PINE STREET
NEW YORK, N.Y. 10005

TELEPHONE 212-825-0100
TELEX 127068

LOYD ABRAMS
ENRY G. BISGAIER
ARL H. BORNMANN
ALTER C. CLIFF
OSEPH P. CONWAY
ARSHALL COX
HOMAS F. CURNIN
ARNOLD DAUM
ILLIAM L. DENNIS
HARLES F. DETMAR, JR
LESLIE DUFFY
AYMOND L. FALLS, JR.
IRO A. GAMBONI
ARVIN S. GOLDKLANG
STEPHEN A. GREENE
DWARD A. HANSEN
LIVER H. HAVENS
WILLIAM E. HEGARTY
AVID R. HYDE
ALLEN S. JOSLYN
MMANUEL KOHN
WILLIAM T. LIFLAND

O CARLYSLE McCANDLESS
DENIS McINERNEY
GERARD M. MEISTRELL
RALPH C. MENAPACE, JR.
CLIFFORD L. MICHEL
MATHIAS E. MONE
DONALD J. MULVIHILL
KENNETH W. ORCE
ROY L. REGOZIN
WILLIAM M. SAYRE
IRWIN SCHNEIDERMAN
H. RICHARD SCHUMACHER
LAURENCE T. SORKIN
LEONARD A. SPIVAK
DUDLEY B. TENNEY
MICHAEL P. TIERNEY
ROBERT USADI
JOHN R. VAUGHAN
RALPH O. WINGER
GARY W. WOLF
JOHN R. YOUNG
R. ANTHONY ZEIGER

HAROLD F. REINDEL
JERROLD G. VAN CISE
COUNSEL

WASHINGTON, D. C. OFFICE
FEDERAL BAR BUILDING WEST
1819 H STREET, N.W.
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20006

EUROPEAN OFFICE
4, PLACE DE LA CONCORDE
75008 PARIS, FRANCE

RADIO AND CABLE ADDRESSES
"COTTOFRANK NEWYORK"
"COTTOFRANK WASHINGTON"
"COTTOFRANK PARIS"

August 25, 1978

Re: United States v. First National City Bank, et. al., 65 Civ. 3963 (S.D.N.Y.)

Dear Mr. Pfunder:

This letter will confirm our contemporaneous oral request for an informal interpretation of Section 802.70 of the Commission's rules implementing Title II of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Act. This request is made pursuant to Section 803.30 of the rules. Section 802.70 exempts an acquisition from the requirements of the act if the acquiring person is subject to a federal court order requiring prior approval of that acquisition by the court or the Department of Justice and such approval has been obtained. Citicorp believes that its proposed acquisition of Carte Blanche Corporation, which will follow vacation of the 1968 consent decree which prohibited it, comes within this exemption.

On August 23, William M. Sayre of this office telephoned you, and due to your unavailability, spoke with Ms. Wilkof of your office. He described to her the proposed acquisition, the steps taken by Citicorp in seeking to vacate the consent decree, and the investigation which was undertaken by the Department of Justice before deciding not to oppose vacation of the decree. He indicated that we were not at that time seeking an informal interpretation, but merely wanted a preliminary reaction to our suggestion that Section 802.70 exempts Citicorp from the requirements of the act. He informed her that before actually seeking an informal interpretation of this Section we would prepare a letter containing the relevant information, which we would then submit to your office; Ms. Wilkof indicated to him that she considered this "an excellent way to proceed". This is the letter which we so promised.

In December, 1965, Citicorp's predecessor (First National City Bank) acquired Carte Blanche Corporation, the operator of the Carte Blanche credit card. The Department of Justice brought suit under Section 7 of the Clayton Act on December 30, 1965, in the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York, 65 Civ. 3963 (Case No. 1882 in the Department of Justice). Subsequently, First National City Bank agreed to sell Carte Blanche to Avco Corporation, and on May 10, 1968 a consent decree was entered by the Court terminating the litigation. The consent decree is reported at 1968 Trade Cases ¶ 72,411 and a copy is attached hereto. This consent decree stated that: "Defendants . . . are hereby enjoined from reacquiring the stock of Carte Blanche, or by any other means acquiring control over the business of Carte Blanche." The decree also provided that:

> "Jurisdiction is retained by this Court for the purpose of enabling any of the parties to this Final Judgment to apply to this Court at any time for such further orders and directions as may be necessary or appropriate for the construction or effectuation of this Final Judgment, for the modification or termination of any of the provisions hereof, for the enforcement of compliance herewith and for the punishment of violations thereof."

On August 18, 1977, Citicorp requested that the Department of Justice consent to modification of the consent decree to permit Citicorp to reacquire Carte Blanche. Citicorp submitted memoranda containing detailed information about the parties' activities, market shares and future plans necessary to permit the Department to analyze all antitrust aspects of the proposed acquisition. In particular, Citicorp pointed out that since the decree was entered Carte Blanche's share of the market for "travel and entertainment cards" had declined from about 15 percent to about 2.5 percent, and that as a result of the development of the two national bank cards (Visa and Master Charge) Carte Blanche's share of the "general purpose credit card market" (identified by the Department in its 1965 complaint) had shrunk from 15 percent to about 1/2 of 1 percent.

The Department investigated the proposed acquisition for more than seven months. During the course of its investigation, the Department requested, and received, additional information and extensive documentary material from Citicorp, Carte Blanche and Avco, and interviewed officers of these companies. In addition, we understand that the Department interviewed other persons and obtained information from sources other than the parties to the proposed reacquisition. On March 31, 1978, John H. Shenefield, Assistant Attorney General for the Antitrust Division, notified Citicorp that the Department would not oppose a petition by Citicorp to vacate the consent decree, and that if Citicorp filed such petition, it would not oppose the proposed reacquisition of Carte Blanche by Citicorp.

On April 28, 1978, Citicorp filed a notice of motion in the District Court for the Southern District of

New York seeking to vacate the consent decree, and filed supporting affidavits and a memorandum at that time. On May 3, 1978, the Department of Justice filed a memorandum setting forth the reasons why it had determined not to oppose Citicorp's motion. In its memorandum, the Department stated that "[i]f the decree were to be vacated, the most probable and immediate effects are likely to be procompetitive." It further stated that the proposed acquisition "does not meet the criteria set forth in the Department's Merger Guidelines for challenging a merger," and concluded that "[i]f the decree were not in effect today, it is unlikely that the Department of Justice would challenge the proposed acquisition under the antitrust laws."

Before acting on Citicorp's motion to vacate the decree, the court entered an order requiring Citicorp to publish notice of its motion and to invite the filing of comments with the Court during a 30-day period. As a result of this invitation, comments adverse to Citicorp's motion were filed by American Express Company (the dominant issuer of travel and entertainment ("T&E") cards) and a Mr. Anthony R. Martin-Trigona (who sought unsuccessfully to intervene pro se). The Department of Justice on July 14, 1978, filed a memorandum in response to the comments filed by American Express. The Department stated in its memorandum that:

> "The most important consideration for the Department in deciding not to object to vacation of this decree was the likelihood that the acquisition would provide important and immediate competition by a revitalized Carte Blanche against Amex and possibly the two bank card systems as well. Nothing in the Amex comments has changed our opinion in this regard. Whether one views the acquisition as a foothold entry by Citicorp into a T&E submarket or as a merger between Citicorp and Carte Blanche in the broader national general purpose credit card market makes no difference. No matter which way one looks at it, vacation of the decree is likely to promote competition among credit cards."

Citicorp's motion to vacate the consent decree came before Judge Cannella for a hearing on August 1, 1978. At that hearing, Citicorp urged vacation of the decree on the ground that the acquisition would be procompetitive, and responded to assertions by American Express that the acquisition could lessen competition. The Department reaffirmed to the Court that it did not oppose Citicorp's motion. Citicorp's motion is now sub judice.

No premerger notification report would have to be filed under the old premerger rules if the acquisition were consummated prior to September 5, because the acquisition would be made by a bank not subject to the jurisdiction of the Federal Trade Commission.

It now appears that favorable action by Judge Cannella and the Comptroller of the Currency may not occur in time to permit consummation of the proposed acquisition by September 5. If consummation occurs after that date, premerger notification under the new rules would be required unless the transaction is exempted. We are now asking your informal interpretation as to whether the transaction is exempted, in order that the reacquisition may proceed at once if Judge Cannella vacates the decree and the Comptroller approves the transaction on or after September 5.

It is Citicorp's view that the consent decree "require[s] prior approval" of any reacquisition of Carte Blanche by Citicorp, since the acquisition could not be made without favorable action by the decree Court. If the consent decree is vacated by the Court, the purpose and intent underlying the Section 802.70 exemption will have been satisfied. In addition, the proposed transaction has been thoroughly studied by the Department, which is a party to the consent decree, and the Department has advised the Court that vacation of the decree and the resulting acquisition would be procompetitive. Citicorp therefore requests that you or an appropriate member of your staff give us an informal interpretation that the exemption applies to Citicorp's acquisition of Carte Blanche.

If you have any questions or require additional information, please feel free to contact William M. Sayre, William T. Lifland or the undersigned. The individual at the Department of Justice who is familiar with this matter is Gregory B. Hovendon, Assistant Chief of the Judgment Enforcement Section.

Thank you for your prompt attention to this matter.

Very truly yours,

Laurence T. Sorkin

Laurence T. Sorkin

Malcolm R. Pfunder, Esq.
Associate Director for Premerger
Notification,
Bureau of Competition
Room 303
Federal Trade Commission
Washington, D.C. 20580

cc: Sandra G. Wilkof, Esq.
Gregory B. Hovendon, Esq.
William E. Swope, Esq.

[¶ 72,411] United States v. First National City Bank, FNCB Services Corp., Hilton Credit Corp., Hilton Hotels Corp., and Carte Blanche Corp.

In the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York. 65 Civ. 3963. Entered May 10, 1968.

Case No. 1882 in the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice.

Final Judgment

RYAN, D. J.: Plaintiff, United States of America, having filed its complaint herein on December 30, 1965, and each of the defendants having appeared and filed answers denying the substantive allegations thereof; and plaintiff and defendants, by their respective attorneys, having each consented to the making and entry of this Final Judgment, without trial or adjudication of any issue of fact or law herein, and without this Final Judgment constituting any evidence or an admission by any party hereto with respect to any such issue, and the Court having considered the matter and being duly advised,

Now, Therefore, before the taking of any testimony and without trial or adjudication of any issue of fact or law herein and upon the consent of the parties hereto, it is hereby

Ordered, Adjudged And Decreed as follows:

I.

[*Jurisdiction*]

This Court has jurisdiction of the subject matter of this action and of the parties hereto. The amended complaint herein states a claim upon which relief can be granted against defendants under Section 7 of the Act of Congress of October 15, 1914 (15 U. S. C. § 18), commonly known as the Clayton Act, as amended.

II.

[*Definitions*]

As used in this Final Judgment:

(A) "FNCB" means defendant First National City Bank, a banking association organized under the laws of the United States;

(B) "FNCB Services" means defendant FNCB Services Corporation, a New York corporation;

(C) "Carte Blanche" means Carte Blanche Corporation, a Delaware corporation;

(D) "Person" means an individual, partnership, firm, corporation, association, trustee or other business or legal entity.

III.

[*Applicability*]

The provisions of this Final Judgment applicable to any defendant shall also apply to each of its directors, officers, agents and employees acting for such defendant, its affiliates or subsidiaries, successors and assigns, and to all other Persons in active concert or participation with any such defendant who shall have received actual notice of this Final Judgment by personal service or otherwise.

IV.

[*Bar to Reacquisition*]

Defendants FNCB and FNCB Services are hereby enjoined from reacquiring the stock of Carte Blanche, or by any other means acquiring control over the business of Carte Blanche.

V.

[*Inspection and Compliance*]

For the purpose of securing compliance with this Final Judgment, and for no other purpose, duly authorized representatives of the Department of Justice shall, upon written request of the Attorney General or the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division, and on reasonable notice to any defendant made to its principal office, be permitted, subject to any legally recognized privilege:

(A) access during the office hours of such defendant to all books, ledgers, accounts, correspondence, memoranda and other records and documents in the possession, custody or control of such defendant related to any matters contained in this Final Judgment; and

(B) subject to the reasonable convenience of such defendant, but without restraint or interference from it, to interview officers, directors, agents or employees of such defendant, who may have counsel present, regarding any such matters.

Upon written request of the Attorney General or the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division, any defendant shall submit such reports in writing, with respect to the matters contained in this Final Judgment, as may from time to time be requested; *provided, however,* that no information obtained by the means provided in this Section V shall be divulged by any representative of the Department of Justice to any person other than a duly authorized representative of the Executive Branch of the United States of America, except in the course of legal proceedings to which the United States of America is a party for the purpose of securing compliance with this Final Judgment, or as otherwise required by law.

VI.

[*Jurisdiction Retained*]

Jurisdiction is retained by this Court for the purpose of enabling any of the parties to this Final Judgment to apply to this Court at any time for such further orders and directions as may be necessary or appropriate for the construction or effectuation of this Final Judgment, for the modification or termination of any of the provisions hereof, for the enforcement of compliance herewith and for the punishment of violations thereof.

FORMAL INTERPRETATION UNDER 16 C.F.R. § 803.30 CONCERNING AFFIDAVITS FILED BY ACQUIRING PERSONS IN CONNECTION WITH PURCHASES OF VOTING SECURITIES IN CERTAIN OPEN MARKET TRANSACTIONS.

Commission staff have recently received several requests for interpretations of § 803.5(a) of the Commission's premerger notification rules implementing Title II of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 ("the Act"), 15 U.S.C. § 18a, in the context of purchases of voting securities on the open market. These requests relate to the four "notification thresholds" in § 801.1(h) and to the requirement in § 803.5(a) of an affidavit stating first, that the acquired person has received from the acquiring person written notice *inter alia* of "(t)he specific classes of voting and nonvoting securities of the issuer, and the number of securities of each such class sought to be acquired" (§ 803.5(a)(1)(iii), and second, that the acquiring person has a "good faith intention . . . to make the acquisition" (§ 803.5(a)(2)). Certain persons have inquired whether § 801.1(h) and § 803.5, read together, require the acquiring person to notify the acquired person of, and to state in the acquiring person's affidavit and response to item 2(e) on the Notification and Report Form ("Form"), the exact number of shares to be acquired and the particular notification threshold with respect to which the filing is made. These persons have suggested that in the context of open market conditions, the acquiring firm cannot know with certainty how many shares (and thus which notification thresholds) will be crossed.

The Commission staff has taken the position that where the exact number of shares to be acquired on the open market is known, the acquiring person must disclose this information in its notice to the acquired person and in its affidavit under § 803.5(a). Where the number of shares to be acquired cannot be determined, the acquiring person's Form must be based on, and the affidavit must attest to, a present good faith intention to acquire a sufficient number of voting securities to meet or exceed at least one of the notification thresholds of § 801.1(h). The precise number or shares to be held as a result of the acquisition need not be stated, but the specific reporting threshold to be crossed must be indicated. Thus, the affidavit may, consistent with § 803.5(a)(2), state that the exact number of shares to be acquired and time of acquisition is subject to market conditions, *provided* that the affidavit attests to a good faith intention to cross a specific reporting threshold.

A special case exists where the acquiring person crossed a notification threshold prior to the effective date of the rules (§ 801.20(b)), and wishes to acquire additional voting securities of the acquired person. Under such circumstances, the acquiring person's filing for the acquisition of additional shares should indicate the new notification threshold to be crossed. If the acquiring person fails to indicate which new notification threshold the person intends to reach or exceed, the filing will be treated as covering only the highest threshold crossed prior to the effective date of the rules.

Some examples may illustrate:

Example 1

Person "A" currently holds no voting securities (or less than 15% and less than $15 million of voting securities) issued by Person "B" and wishes to acquire such shares on the open market. Person "A" may not file notification unless "A" has the present good faith intention to acquire at least 15% or $15 million worth (whichever is less) of the voting securities of Person "B." It would not be sufficient for Person "A" to send Person "B" a notice that states that Person "A" may, from time to time, purchase shares of Person "B" on the open market, and that the number of shares to be acquired may, at some point, reach 15% or $15 million value. Such a notice would not satisfy the requirement of § 803.5(a)(2) that the acquiring person have a present good faith intention to make a reportable acquisition. A filing containing this notice would be deficient within the meaning of § 803.10(c)(2).

Example 2

Person "C," on the effective date of the premerger notification rules, held 12% of the voting securities of Person "D," with a value of $20 million. Under these circumstances, the acquisition of any additional shares of Person "D" would be reportable, since "C" has already crossed the $15 million threshold (see § 801.20(b)). Person "C" wishes to purchase an undetermined number of additional shares on the open market. Person "C" may satisfy the requirements of § 803.5 by providing "D" with written notice that "C" intends to acquire an undetermined number of shares that will, together with present holdings, result in a reportable acquisition. Because the acquiring person has not indicated an intention to cross a specific threshold, the staff, consistent with information contained in the acquiring person's response to item 2(e) (from which pre-acquisition holdings may be determined), will treat such a filing as a filing for the $15 million threshold of § 801.1(h)(1) alone. Further acquisitions meeting or exceeding the 15% threshold of § 801.1(h)(2) or any greater threshold would require another filing and compliance with another waiting period.

Example 3

Person "E," on the effective date of the premerger notification rules, held 20% of the voting securities of Person "F," with a value of $50 million. Person "E" wishes to purchase an undetermined number of additional shares on the open market. Person "E" may satisfy the requirements of § 803.5 by providing "F" with notice that "E" intends to acquire an undetermined number of shares that will, together with present holdings, result in a reportable acquisition. Such a filing will be treated by the staff as a filing for the 15% threshold of § 801.1(h)(2) alone. Further acquisitions meeting or exceeding the 25% threshold of § 801.1(h)(3) would require another filing and compliance with another waiting period.

Of course, Person "E" could cover the 15%, 25% and 50% notification thresholds in a single filing. Thus, if Person "E" wished to acquire control of Person "F," Person "E" would be required to file notification for the 50% threshold of § 801.1(h)(4), specifically informing the agencies and the acquired person of its intention to meet or exceed that level. After expiration of the waiting period, Person "E" would have one year within which to acquire a sufficient number of voting securities of Person "F" to equal or exceed 50%. If that level had not been reached within one year following expiration of the waiting period, Person "E's" notification would expire under § 803.7 of the rules.

Summary

In conclusion, where the acquiring person has no holdings (or holdings valued at less than $15 million) of voting securities of the acquired person, the acquiring person's notice to the acquired person and affidavit required by § 803.5(a) must describe and attest to a good faith intention to cross a specific notification threshold of § 801.1(h). Where, on the effective date of the rules, the acquiring person had holdings of voting securities of the acquired person in excess of one or more of the notification thresholds, the acquiring person's notice and affidavit must describe and attest to a good faith intention to cross one or more additional thresholds. A filing that does not state the additional notification threshold to be reached will be treated as a filing for the highest threshold crossed prior to the effective date of the rules.

The Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division has concurred in this interpretation.

Daniel C. Schwartz

Daniel C. Schwartz
Deputy Director
Bureau of Competition

Date: December 28, 1978

FI - 18

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION
WASHINGTON. D. C. 20580

UREAU OF COMPETITION

January 17, 1979

Laurence T. Sorkin, Esquire
Cahill, Gordon & Reindel
Eighty Pine Street
New York, New York 10005

Dear Mr. Sorkin:

This formal interpretation is issued by the staff of the Federal Trade Commission under 16 C.F.R. § 803.30 in response to your letter of October 11, 1978. You ask whether an acquiring person that has filed a Notification and Report Form ("Form") under § 7A of the Clayton Act ("the Act"), 15 U.S.C. § 18a, stating an intention to acquire holdings in excess of 10% of the voting securities of an issuer may, during the statutory waiting period, acquire holdings of 10% or less of such voting securities (worth more than $15 million) pursuant to the "solely for the purpose of investment" exemption provided by § 7A(c)(9) of the Act 1/ and § 802.9 of the premerger notification rules ("rules") 2/. You suggest that the acquiring person's stated intention to acquire more than 10% of the voting securities of an issuer might be considered inconsistent with the acquisition of any shares during the statutory waiting period solely for the purpose of investment.

1/ § 7A(c). The following classes of transaction are exempt from the requirements of this section.

* * *

> (9) acquisition, solely for the purpose of investment, of voting securities if, as a result of such acquisition, the securities acquired or held do not exceed 10 per centum of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer.

2/ § 802.9 Acquisition solely for the purpose of investment.

> An acquisition of voting securities shall be exempt from the requirements of the act pursuant to section 7A(c)(9) if made solely for the purpose of investment and if, as a result of the acquisition, the acquiring person would hold ten percent or less of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer, regardless of the dollar value of voting securities so acquired or held.

The staff has taken the position that the fact of filing by the acquiring person under these circumstances is not necessarily inconsistent with an investment intention. Thus, the "solely for the purpose of investment" exemption should not be withheld solely because the acquiring person has filed a Form stating an intention to acquire sufficient voting securities to exceed the 10% investment threshold.

The exemption provided by § 7A(c)(9) and § 802.9 comprises two elements. First, the acquisition must be solely for the purpose of investment, as defined by § 801.1(i)(1) 3/, which focuses on the intention of the acquiring person vis-a-vis the basic business decisions of the acquired issuer. Whether or not the requisite intention exists will depend largely on the facts surrounding an acquisition (or series of acquisitions) by the acquiring person and must be determined on a case-by-case basis. 4/

Second, the acquiring person's holdings may not exceed 10% of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer. Once such holdings exceed 10%, the intention of the acquiring person becomes immaterial to the acquiring person's obligations under the Act and rules. 5/ The fact that the reporting person has indicated through a filing that it intends to exceed the 10% investment threshold after expiration of the statutory waiting period does not, of itself, constitute an intention inconsistent with that of investment. Thus, acquisitions that do not result in holdings exceeding 10% may be consummated during the statutory waiting period, provided that the intention of the acquiring person remains consistent with § 801.1(i)(1).

3/ (i)(1) Solely for the purpose of investment. Voting securities are held or acquired "solely for the purpose of investment" if the person holding or acquiring such voting securities has no intention of participating in the formulation, determination, or direction of the basic business decisions of the issuer.

4/ See Statement of Basis and Purpose, 42 F.R. at 33465 (July 31, 1978).

5/ See Statement of Basis and Purpose, 42 F.R. at 33490 (July 31, 1978).

The Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 801.1(i)(1) described various types of conduct that the Commission considered inconsistent with an investment intention. The decision to acquire or seek working control of the issuer (regardless of the percentage of voting securities that may actually confer such control) is clearly inconsistent with investment intent under § 801.1(i)(1). Thus, an intention (indicated through a premerger notification filing or otherwise) to acquire shares resulting in holdings of 50% or more of the shares of the issuer would necessarily eliminate the applicability of the exemption. An intention to acquire less than 50% of the shares of the issuer could also preclude the applicability of the exemption, depending on the extent of the acquiring person's anticipated holdings and all other circumstances relating to the acquiring person's intentions regarding the basic business decisions of the acquired issuer. This interpretation should not be construed to impede the abilities of the Commission and the Department of Justice to investigate the acquisition activity of acquiring persons during the statutory waiting period and to seek civil penalties under the Act where evidence exists that acquiring persons have improperly invoked the exemption provided by § 7A(c)(9) and § 802.9.

The Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division has concurred in this interpretation.

Yours truly,

Malcolm R. Pfunder
Assistant Director for Evaluation

FI -21

CAHILL GORDON & REINDEL

EIGHTY PINE STREET

NEW YORK, N.Y. 10005

TELEPHONE 212-825-0100
TELEX 127068

OYD ABRAMS
NRY G. BISGAIER
RL R. BORNMANN
TER E. CLIFF
EPH P. CONWAY
SHALL COX
MAS F. CURNIN
RNOLD DAUM
LIAM L. DENNIS
ARLES F. DETMAR, JR.
ESLIE DUFFY
MOND L FALLS, JR.
A. GAMBONI
VIN B. GOLDKLANG
PHEN A. GREENE
ARD A. HANSEN
VER H. HAVENS
LIAM E. HEGARTY
ID R. HYDE
EN B. JOSLYN
AMUEL KOHN
LIAM T. LIFLAND

G. CARLYSLE McCANDLESS
DENIS McINERNEY
GERARD M. MEISTRELL
RALPH C. MENAPACE, JR.
CLIFFORD L. MICHEL
MATHIAS E. MONE
DONALD J. MULVIHILL
KENNETH W. ORCE
ROY L. REGOZIN
WILLIAM M. SAYRE
IRWIN SCHNEIDERMAN
H. RICHARD SCHUMACHER
LAURENCE T. SORKIN
LEONARD A. SPIVAK
DUDLEY B. TENNEY
MICHAEL P. TIERNEY
ROBERT USADI
JOHN R. VAUGHAN
RALPH O WINGER
GARY W. WOLF
JOHN R. YOUNG
R. ANTHONY ZEIGER

HAROLD F. REINDEL
JERROLD G. VAN CISE
COUNSEL

WASHINGTON, D.C. OFFICE
FEDERAL BAR BUILDING WEST
1819 H STREET, N.W.
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20006

EUROPEAN OFFICE
4, PLACE DE LA CONCORDE
75008 PARIS, FRANCE

RADIO AND CABLE ADDRESSES
"COTTOFRANK NEWYORK"
"COTTOFRANK WASHINGTON"
"COTTOFRANK PARIS"

October 11, 1978

Re: Request for an Interpretation of the Report and Wait Requirements of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976

Dear Mr. Pfunder:

I am writing to request an interpretation of the report and wait requirements of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 ("the Act"), with regard to a question which has already risen several times in inquiries made by various clients of my firm.

The typical factual background from which my question arises is as follows:

> Company A intends to acquire X% (X% is greater than 10%) of the voting securities of Company B, and states that the acquisition is made "solely for the purpose of investment", pursuant to sub-section (c)(9) of the Act, and § 802.9 of the rules. Company A and Company B each meet at least one of the applicable criteria of the Act with respect to size of parties to the transaction. The purchase of 10% of the voting securities of Company B is, for purposes of the Act, of a value exceeding $15,000,000.

The question which has repeatedly arisen with regard to the factual situation described above is as follows:

PRE MERGER NOTIFICATION OFFICE

OCT 1 [illegible]

> After Company A has formed its intention to purchase X% of the voting securities of Company B, and has filed a report and notification form, may Company A purchase shares of voting securities of Company B, so long as its holdings do not exceed 10% of the outstanding voting securities of Company B? Or, must Company A desist from making any further purchases until the end of the waiting period?

It would appear that there is ho clear answer to the question in the Act, or in the regulations promulgated thereunder. Arguments of more or less equal weight can be made in support either of allowing continued purchases prior to the end of the waiting period (so long as the acquiring company's holdings do not exceed 10%), or of prohibiting them. They are set forth below.

One factor which may influence your interpretation is the percentage of outstanding voting securities of Company B which is sought by Company A in any particular case. The higher that percentage is, the more suspect the claim of "investment purpose" may be.

Arguments that Further Purchases Should be Stopped Until the Termination of the Waiting Period

> (a) The provisions of the Act and the regulations with regard to acquisitions "solely for the purpose of investment" require, by implication, that purchases be stopped until the end of the applicable waiting period, once an intention to purchase X% of the voting securities has been formed. The regulations clearly impose two mutual independent requirements on the availability of the exemption for acquisitions which are "solely for the purpose of investment": (a) that the acquiring person hold 10% or less of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer; and (b) that the acquisition be solely for the purpose of investment. See § 802.9, and Statement of Basis and Purpose for § 802.9.

There is no express presumption or determination in the Act or the regulations that the intention to hold more than 10% of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer is or is presumed to be not made solely for the purpose of investment. Unless there is such a determination or presumption, however, the Commission's requirement that the acquisition be "solely for the purpose of investment" will be utterly unenforceable, since the determination of investment purpose must be

FI - 23

made on a case-by-case basis, thus necessitating a factual inquiry into the intent of the acquiring person. Such an inquiry is likely to be made only in those cases in which someone strongly objects to the availability of the exemption, or in those cases in which the acquiring person clearly acts in a manner contradictory to its expressed purpose of making an acquisition solely for the purpose of investment.

There are obvious examples of situations in which a declaration that an acquisition is solely for the purpose of investment can and should be disregarded. As an extreme example, if a company has expressed an intention to acquire 49% of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer, the claim that the purchase of the first 10% of the issuer's securities is made solely for the purpose of investment would seem incredible and should probably be disregarded.

(b) It would be contrary to the basic policy underlying the Act to allow Company A to increase its holdings of the voting securities of Company B to the 10% level, pending review by FTC and the Department of Justice.

The filing of a notification and report form with regard to the proposed acquisition of X% of the shares of the outstanding voting securities of Company B triggers the operation of the Act, and initiates review by the FTC and Department of Justice. An unfavorable determination will result in the institution of an injunctive proceeding, which may seek the divestiture of all of Company A's holdings. To allow Company A to increase its holdings in Company B may provide a basis for Company A to argue in the injunctive proceeding that it has changed its position and purchased 10% of Company B, and that it would be inequitable to require it to divest itself of holding acquired under these circumstances.

In addition, the interests of shareholders in Company B (other than Company A) should be taken into account. The larger the holding owned by Company A which will be "in limbo" during the waiting period, the larger the block of stock which Company A may be required to divest. Such a large block of available stock may well "hang" over the market, and tend to depress the price which other prospective sellers of the security may obtain, until well after that large block has been sold.

Arguments in Favor of Allowing Continued Purchases

(a) The Act and the regulations clearly operate only at particular threshold levels. There is a sufficient number of opportunities for review at those thresholds to provide a meaningful analysis of the antitrust aspects of any proposed transaction. To prohibit continued purchases up to the 10% level, merely because of an expressed intention to acquire more than 10% of that security, would ignore the plain and clear fact that purchases beyond the 10% level can be made, only if the regulatory authorities decide to forego any challenge to such purchases. Thus, although the ownership of, for example, a 30% block of the voting securities of a widely-held issuer may be inconsistent with an intention to acquire shares solely for the purpose of investment, the holding of a 10% block -- and only a 10% block -- of such stock by Company A which is prohibited from increasing its holding is in no way inconsistent with its expressed intention to hold that 10% block solely for the purpose of investment.

(b) Prior draft regulations would have required acquisitions made for investment purposes to be reported, even if they did not reach the 10% level, provided that they crossed an otherwise applicable notification threshold. The deletion of that requirement is clear evidence that there is little concern that acquisitions of the voting securities of large companies up to the 10% level, under the guise of the investment exemption, pose a significant threat to competition.

The contentions set forth above are representative of arguments which might be made, although they clearly do not exhaust the limits of imagination. No particular resolution of the question appears to be compelled by policy considerations, but it does seem important for there to be a clear answer to this question.

Sincerely,

Laurence T. Sorkin

Laurence T. Sorkin

Malcolm R. Pfunder, Esq.
Associate Director for
  Premerger Notification
Bureau of Competition
Room 303
Federal Trade Commission
Washington, D. C. 20580

FORMAL INTERPRETATION
UNDER 16 C.F.R. § 803.30
CONCERNING EARLY TERMINATION
UNDER § 7A(b)(2) AND § 803.11

Commission staff have received several requests for interpretation of § 803.11 of the premerger notification rules ("the rules"), promulgated pursuant to § 7A of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. § 18a (the "Act"). These requests concern the standards applied by the Commission and the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division ("Assistant Attorney General") in granting or denying requests for early termination of the waiting period specified in § 7A(b)(1) of the Act.

Section 7A(b)(2) of the Act provides:

> The Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General may, in individual cases, terminate the waiting period specified in paragraph (1) and allow any person to proceed with any acquisition subject to this section, and promptly shall cause to be published in the Federal Register a notice that neither intends to take any action within such period with respect to such acquisition.

Section 803.11 of the rules, which implements § 7A(b)(2), specifies the conditions and procedures under which a waiting period may be terminated prior to its normal expiration. However, neither that section nor § 7A(b)(2) sets forth any general criteria to be applied by the Commission and the Assistant Attorney General in deciding whether or not requests for early termination should be granted. This formal interpretation states the position of the staff in this respect.

The staff interprets the early termination provision of § 7A(b)(2) and § 803.11 as a mandate to both agencies to consider each request for early termination on an individual basis and to exercise discretion in making such decisions. No specific criteria can be identified that will be applied invariably in each case; however, the following general principles will be applied by the agency staffs in exercising their discretion.

First, early termination will not be granted unless the staffs of the agencies have concluded that neither will take any further action within the waiting period. Second, early termination will usually not be granted unless the requesting party or parties can demonstrate some special business reason that warrants early termination of the waiting period. In other words, the requesting party should explain the need to complete the transaction before the waiting period would normally expire; it may also be helpful to indicate why an earlier expiration date could not have been obtained simply by filing the original notification earlier. Some examples of reasons that may be considered sufficient are the existence of a financing contingency that might fail during the waiting period, the need to infuse cash quickly into a financially weak firm, or the importance of preserving existing contractual relationships that might be placed in jeopardy because of uncertainty generated during a full waiting period. Such reasons are relevant to the early termination decision, of course, only when both agencies have determined that no further action will be taken during the waiting period.

The language of § 7A(b)(2) that permits termination "in individual cases" supports the interpretation that a determination based on the specific facts of the acquisition is contemplated, and that early termination should not be granted as a matter of course. Additionally, the staff notes that the Commission has an advisory opinion procedure (16 C.F.R. § 1.1) and the Antitrust Division has a business review procedure (28 C.F.R. § 50.6) under which prior antitrust agency review of a proposed acquisition may be obtained. The early termination provision is not intended to duplicate or replace such other procedures.

The Assistant Attorney General has concurred in this interpretation.

Malcolm R. Pfunder
Assistant Director for Evaluation
Bureau of Competition

Date: April 10, 1979

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION
WASHINGTON, D. C. 20580

BUREAU OF COMPETITION

April 10, 1979

Formal Staff Interpretation Under 16 C.F.R. § 803.30 Concerning Incorporation by Reference in the Antitrust Improvements Act Premerger Notification and Report Forms.

With regard to several recent filings of the Antitrust Improvements Act Notification and Report Form, 16 C.F.R. § 803 - Appendix ("the Form"), the following question has arisen: To what extent may a filing person respond to items on, or to requirements that documentary material be supplied with, its Form by referring to information on or to materials accompanying another Form filed either by it or by another person? The issue of incorporation by reference has been raised most frequently in connection with the SEC documents required to be supplied by Item 4(a), although it might arise with other items as well. Persons filing for an acquisition have sought to incorporate by reference documents supplied with the Form relating to a previous acquisition by the same person. The Commission staff has taken the position that Forms which incorporate by reference information not supplied on, or documents not accompanying, the same Form will generally be deemed deficient within the meaning of § 803.10(c)(2) of the premerger notification rules, 16 C.F.R. § 803.10(c)(2).

This decision is based in part on the fact that in the antitrust review of a transaction, the Form and all accompanying documents are frequently sent by the Federal Trade Commission and the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice to their various litigating groups, including the regional offices of both agencies. These documents may not, therefore, be available to the premerger notification offices of both agencies which must review any subsequent transactions by that person. In view of the time constraints under which the staffs of both agencies must operate, the review of the premerger Forms which is mandated by Title II of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, 15 U.S C. §18a ("the Act") necessitates that all documentary materials which are required to be supplied with the Form accompany each filing, even though some inconvenience to filing persons may result.

This position will be taken even when the parties to a previously reported acquisition are filing again at a higher notification threshold. Under § 802.21(b) of the premerger notification rules, 16 C.F.R.§ 802.21(b), the parties to a reportable acquisition may, after the expiration of the waiting period, make additional acquisitions which do not cross a higher notification threshold. Such acquisitions are exempt from reporting and waiting period requirements for five years. Thus substantial time may elapse between notifications involving the same parties, and the agencies may during that time have destroyed some or all of the information previously provided. Incorporation by reference would, in this situation, tend to interfere with the prompt review of premerger notification Forms required by the Act.

An exception to this restriction seems justified in the following circumstances. For tax or other reasons, parties to a merger or takeover sometimes choose to implement the transaction through an essentially contemporaneous, two-step process, such as a cash tender offer for less than 50% of the target's stock, followed by a merger of the acquiring person with the target. The staff is willing to permit incorporation by reference where filings by the same parties are made with respect to a higher notification threshold and are received by the enforcement agencies within ninety days after the earlier filings with respect to the lower threshold.

The above discussion does not restrict incorporation by reference of the answer to one item on the Form, or of accompanying documentary materials, in the response to another item on the same Form. The only limitation to such incorporation is the requirement that the responses to all items must be clear, complete, and unambiguous.

The Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division has concurred in this interpretation.

Malcolm R. Pfunder
Assistant Director
for Evaluation

FORMAL INTERPRETATION UNDER 16 C.F.R. § 803.30 CONCERNING ACQUISITIONS BY CERTAIN BANK HOLDING COMPANIES

Commission staff have recently received several requests for interpretation of the exemption provided by § 7A(c)(8) of the Clayton Act ("Act"), 15 U.S.C. § 18a(c)(8), and § 802.8 of the premerger notification rules ("rules"), 16 CFR § 802.8, which exempt from the general notification and waiting requirements of the Act certain acquisitions approved by the Federal Reserve System. These requests inquire whether the exemption applies to acquisitions by bank holding companies that have filed with the Federal Reserve Board ("Board") irrevocable declarations that the companies, through divestiture of their banks, will cease to be bank holding companies by January 1, 1981. The staff has determined that the regulatory oversight exercised by the Federal Reserve System over acquisitions by such companies does not constitute "approval" within the meaning of § 7A(c)(8) and § 802.8. Therefore, the exemption is not available, and such companies, if planning to engage in acquisitions covered by the Act and rules, must comply fully with the general notification and waiting requirements. A more complete discussion follows.

Section 7A(c)(8) of the Clayton Act exempts from general premerger notification requirements, *inter alia*,

> transactions which require agency approval under section 4 of the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956 (12 U.S.C. 1843) . . . .

In general, § 4(a) of the Bank Holding Company Act ("Bank Act") restricts the ability of bank holding companies to acquire or maintain interests in firms not engaged in banking. Section 4(c) contains several exemptions to this regulatory scheme. In particular, § 4(c)(12) of the Bank Act provides that the proscriptions of § 4(a) shall not apply to

> shares retained or acquired, or activities engaged in, by any company which becomes, as a result of the enactment of the Bank Holding Company Act Amendments of 1970, a bank holding company on the date of such enactment, or by any subsidiary thereof, if such company --
>
> (A) within the applicable time limits prescribed in subsection (a)(2) of this section (i) ceases to be a bank holding company . . ., and
>
> (B) complies with such other conditions as the Board may by regulation or order prescribe . . . .

The provisions of § 4(c)(12) are codified in Board rule § 225.4(d), 12 CFR § 225.4(d).1/ This rule provides a separate regulatory scheme for bank holding companies that have filed an irrevocable declaration with the Board that the company, by divestiture of its bank, will cease to be a bank holding company by January 1, 1981.2/ Such bank holding companies, until the time of divestiture, may acquire other going concerns, provided that the company has given the local Federal Reserve Bank ("Reserve Bank") 45 days notice of the company's intention to make the acquisition. Absent opposition by the Reserve Bank, the company may consummate the acquisition after expiration of the 45 day period. Where opposition is expressed, the matter may be forwarded to the Board for further consideration. In exigent circumstances, the Reserve Bank may accelerate the time in which consummation may be made.

The issue presented is whether this procedure provides authority for "approval" within the meaning of § 7A(c)(8) of the Clayton Act. In determining whether authority exists, it is necessary to examine the competitive issues addressed in the course of Reserve Bank review and the Congressional intentions underlying both § 4 of the Bank Act and § 7A of the Clayton Act.

Neither the provisions of § 4(c)(8) and § 225.4(d), nor the regulations of the Board delegating authority to the Reserve Banks to receive notice from bank holding companies

---

1/ § 225.4(d). Certain acquisitions by companies that became holding companies on December 31, 1970, as a result of the 1970 amendments: Except as provided in this paragraph, no bank holding company may acquire, directly or indirectly, any shares or commence to engage in any activities on the basis of section 4(c)(12) of the Act. A company may file with the Board an irrevocable declaration, in the form approved by the Board, that it will cease to be a bank holding company by January 1, 1981, unless it is granted an exemption under section 4(d) of the Act. A company that has filed such a declaration may (1) commence new activities de novo, either directly or through a subsidiary, without further action under this paragraph, until such time as the Board notifies the company to the contrary, and (2) make an acquisition of a going concern 45 days after the company has informed its Reserve Bank of the proposed acquisition, unless the company is notified to the contrary within that time or unless it is permitted to make the acquisition at an earlier date based on exigent circumstances of a particular case. . . .

2/ Section 4(c)(12) also governs acquisitions by a bank holding company, that, because it has chosen not to file an irrevocable declaration to divest its bank, must divest its nonbanking interests by 1981. The application of § 7A(c)(8) and § 802.8 to bank holding companies in the latter situation is not addressed in this interpretation.

(12 C.F.R. § 265.2(f)(19))3/ provide meaningful guidance. Therefore, a review of secondary sources is appropriate, i.e., the legislative history of § 4(c)(12)4/ and a Federal Reserve Board instruction to Reserve Banks dated May 24, 1971. From a review of the legislative history, it is clear that Congress intended to permit bank holding companies that filed irrevocable declarations freely to acquire other enterprises, provided that such acquisitions did not afford the company an "undue advantage." Discussing the conference committee version of § 4(c)(12), Senator Sparkman stated that:

> The conference adopted the provision from the Senate bill which will allow any company covered by this legislation to retain or acquire whatever shares, or engage in whatever activities, it wishes so long as, within the applicable divestiture period, it . . . ceases to be a bank holding company . . .
>
> . . . It is contemplated that the Board will insure that the authority to make . . . acquisitions and engage in the activities provided by this particular provision will not be utilized by a bank holding company covered by this legislation to go into activities and make acquisitions which are totally unrelated to its present activities in order to obtain an undue advantage during the applicable divestiture period, or for any other purpose inconsistent with the intent and purpose of the Act. (116 Cong. Rec. 42425 (December 18, 1970)).

It is unclear whether the "undue advantage" alluded to in the Congressional Record was intended to be limited to advantages in the financial markets of the bank holding company, or whether it would include advantages in the financial and (possibly) nonfinancial markets of acquired firms.

3/ (19) Under § 225.4(d) of this chapter (Regulation Y), [Reserve Banks have the authority] (i) To notify a bank holding company that has informed it of a proposed acquisition of a going concern that because the circumstances surrounding the application indicate that additional information is required or that the acquisition should be considered by the Board, the acquisition should not be consummated until specifically authorized by the Reserve Bank or by the Board; (ii) To permit a bank holding company that has informed it of a proposed acquisition of a going concern to make the acquisition before the expiration of the 45 day period referred to in that paragraph, because exigent circumstances justify consummation of the acquisition at an earlier time.

4/ S.Rep. No. 91-1084, 91st Cong., 2d Sess. 7 (1970), 116 Cong. Rec. 42425 and 42437 (1970).

This issue is addressed more clearly in the Board letter of May 24, 1971. Regarding the criteria for review of proposed acquisitions, the following guideline is provided:

> In deciding whether a proposed acquisition is appropriate, the Reserve Bank should consider the period of time for which the company will likely continue to own its bank, and base its decision on its judgment as to whether common ownership for that period of time of the bank and the company to be acquired may present undue dangers to the bank or to competitors of the bank or the company to be acquired. Undue danger to the bank would be indicated where, for example, the bank has been criticized in the past for loans to its nonbanking affiliates, the holding company, or related interests. In order to satisfy itself on this question, the Reserve Bank should review the bank's examination report or seek the advice of the bank's supervisor.
>
> Acquisitions by a holding company which has filed the appropriate irrevocable declaration need not be closely related to banking. Therefore, the absence of such a relationship is not, in itself, a cause for concern.
>
> It is anticipated that, with respect to most acquisitions under § 4(c)(12), competitive considerations will not present serious questions. If the company to be acquired is not located within the subsidiary bank's market, no further investigation of competitive effects of the proposal would ordinarily be necessary; such would also appear true, even if the company to be acquired is located within that market, if the bank and affiliated deposit-type institutions have only a small share of the deposits and loans in the area. If, however, the subsidiary bank and other deposit-type institutions within the holding company organization have a large share of the market, the acquisition of a large company within that market would warrant closer inquiry. . . .

Regarding the Board's instructions to Reserve Banks, it is clear that the Reserve Bank's inquiry encompasses both competition in the bank's financial markets and competition in financial and nonfinancial markets in which the acquired firm may be engaged. However, as regards competition in the markets of the acquired firm, this inquiry appears to be limited to the issue of whether the acquired firm's access to the capital resources of its affiliated bank will afford the acquired firm an undue advantage, and adversely affect competition, in the firm's product markets. Moreover, Reserve Banks are under no statutory or regulatory obligation to consider the cumulative effect on competition of a series of acquisitions of firms in the same or related product markets. Thus, many issues of primary concern to the antitrust laws are not considered in the course of review by the Reserve Banks. 5/

In light of the limited scope of Reserve Bank review, the Commission staff has concluded that the Congressional intentions underlying § 7A of the Clayton Act are best served by requiring bank holding companies that, pursuant to § 4(c)(12) of the Bank Act, have filed irrevocable declarations to divest themselves of their banks by January 1, 1981, to comply fully with the general premerger notification and waiting requirements of the Act. This conclusion is supported by the comments of the Federal Reserve Board (attached) submitted during the two comment periods preceding promulgation of the premerger notification rules. Nevertheless, nothing contained herein shall affect any acquisition consummated prior to this date.

The Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division has indicated his concurrence with this formal interpretation.

Malcolm R. Pfunder
Assistant Director
for Evaluation

MAY 08 1979

5/ See Heller, Handbook of Federal Bank Holding Company Law (1976), at 187 n. 87, concerning § 4(c)(12) acquisitions:

> Inaction by the Federal Reserve following notice to it of a proposed acquisition does not mean, for example, that the acquisition will have no significantly adverse effect on competition. Acquisitions by a company that has filed an irrevocable declaration are subject to the antitrust laws and to the jurisdiction of the Justice Department and the Federal Trade Commission in the administration of those laws.

Attachment

(a) Comment of the Board of Governors, Federal Reserve System (February 18, 1977) in response to Federal Trade Commission Notice of Proposed Rulemaking Under Title II of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, 41 Fed. Reg. 55488, December 20, 1976.

* * *

A. Section 4(c)(12) Acquisitions

It is unclear whether section 7A(c)(8) would exempt those acquisitions made pursuant to section 4(c)(12) of the Bank Holding Company Act and section 225.4(d) of the Board's Regulation Y. Under those provisions, a company that became a bank holding company as a result of the 1970 Amendments to the Act and has filed with the Board an irrevocable declaration that it will cease to be a bank holding company by January 1, 1981, may make an acquisition of a going non-banking concern 45 days after the company has informed its Reserve Bank of the proposed acquisition, unless the company is notified of the contrary within the time or unless it is permitted to make the acquisition at an earlier date, based on exigent circumstances of a particular case. The status of such acquisitions is uncertain under the FTC's proposed regulations because it is unclear whether an acquisition made pursuant to section 4(c)(12) and section 225.4(d) of Regulation Y is a transaction requiring agency approval under section 4 of the Bank Holding Company Act. From a policy standpoint, there does not appear to be any compelling reason to exempt from the requirements of the Act transactions pursuant to section 4(c)(12). Recommendation: The FTC should consider whether it should assert jurisdiction over acquisitions made pursuant to section 4(c)(12) of the Bank Holding Company Act and section 225.4(d) of Regulation Y and clarify their status under the FTC's proposed regulations.

FI - 35

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20580

BUREAU OF COMPETITION

September 13, 1979

John W. Barnum, Esquire
White & Case
1747 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20006

Dear Mr. Barnum:

This is in response to your March 1, 1979, letter to Chairman Pertschuk, discussing the treatment of attorney-client communications in the premerger notification rules under the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976.

We appreciate your concern that the integrity of the attorney-client relationship not be compromised and we share this concern. The Act, however, mandates that the Federal Trade Commission and the Department of Justice shall require that filing parties submit information and documents relevant to the proposed acquisition that are necessary and appropriate for an assessment of the transaction. Clayton Act § 7A(d)(1). The Act does not exempt any categories of documents from this requirement. We therefore do not believe it is appropriate to amend the rules to provide a broad exemption for "privileged" documents, especially because the rules already provide a mechanism by which the reporting person may assert a privilege.

In appropriate instances a reporting person, both in its initial notification and in a response to a request for additional information or documentary material, may make an incomplete response, provided that each omission is accompanied by a statement of reasons for noncompliance. So long as other required responses have been provided, the inclusion of such a statement begins the applicable waiting period. The content of such a statement is prescribed by § 803.3 of the premerger notification rules. In the situation you describe, the statement should identify each document by author, recipient, date and its subject matter. The statement should also state who has control of the document and where it is located and should invoke the attorney-client privilege as the reason for not supplying it.

As is set forth in the Statement of Basis and Purpose for the premerger notification rules, 43 Fed. Reg 33526

(July 31, 1978), we have responded and will continue to respond to claims of privilege on a case by case basis. Our procedure is to determine (usually through a request for clarification or amplification under § 803.20(d)(2) of the rules) whether the privilege has been properly invoked.

We have no interest in compromising the relationship between a party to an acquisition and its attorney. We are concerned only with fulfilling the main objective of the Act -- evaluation of the antitrust implications of a proposed merger or acquisition prior to its consummation. We believe that a general exemption to 4(c) could frustrate that objective.

I hope that this reply meets your concerns, and I would be happy to continue to discuss these issues with you if you have further questions.

Very truly yours,

Malcolm R. Pfunder
Assistant Director
for Evaluation

FI - 37

[illegible] WALL STREET
NEW YORK, N.Y. [illegible]
(212) 732-[illegible]

[illegible] PARK AVENUE
NEW YORK, N.Y. [illegible]
(212) 75[illegible]

[illegible] PARIS
TELEPHONE [illegible] 266-30-05

[illegible] ST., LONDON EC2V 7LD
TELEPHONE (01) 606 [illegible]

AVENUE LOUISE 80, 1050 BRUSSELS
TELEPHONE (02) 538 00 70

WHITE & CASE
1747 PENNSYLVANIA AVENUE, N.W.
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20006
(202) 872-0013

CABLE
WHITECASE NEW YORK
WHITECASE WASHINGTON
WHITECASE, PARIS
WHITECASE, LONDON
WHITECASE, BRUSSELS

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION
RECEIVED
MAR 5 1979
CHAIRMAN

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION
RECEIVED
MAR 07 1979
BUREAU OF COMPETITION

March 1, 1979

The Honorable Michael Pertschuk
Chairman
Federal Trade Commission
8th & Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20580

Dear Mike:

Following your appearance at the American Enterprise Institute in January, a BNA reporter who had been present followed up on our discussion of the treatment of attorney-client communications in the premerger notification rules and the result was the attached blurb in the February 15 issue. Although I have not gone back through the comments on the draft regulations to see whether the "chilling effect" point was made or stressed, I would like to repeat the argument that I offered at AEI because I think that the FTC's responses that I see in BNA and have heard elsewhere miss the underlying policy problem.

I believe that the premerger notification regulations should not require production of antitrust counsel's communications to management or a board of directors because the effect of that requirement will be (and already has been) to deter companies from obtaining such opinions when considering an acquisition. Companies will want to avoid having to submit such opinions and then having to risk an incomplete filing and a subsequent argument that the statutory time has not expired because such opinions were not supplied. While companies are still asking antitrust counsel to do much of the same analysis, when they are alerted to the problems that formal delivery of the resulting memoranda may entail they are limiting the transmission of the results of that analysis to an oral presentation to a few members of management.

I do not think that is a very satisfactory way for either counsel or management to do business. I believe that on a major acquisition a board of directors should have an opportunity to study a comprehensive antitrust opinion. Moreover the company should have such a document in its files in order to be able to demonstrate, should the need arise, that the board and management proceeded prudently. I am not just thinking of creating a paper record to defend against possible shareholder suits (or of assuring more work for the antitrust bar); I am concerned with the substance of the record upon which the merger decision is taken. If the board or members of management must proceed on the basis of an oral regurgitation of counsel's opinion, the antitrust implications of the transaction are less likely to receive adequate attention and in any event counsel's views become vulnerable to both conscious and unconscious distortion in their oral repetition. (I note in passing that someone may raise the question whether the regulations now require submission of notes of such an oral presentation that members of the board or management may have taken while counsel is talking or their analysis is being regurgitated.)

It is this chilling effect on responsible and effective antitrust analysis and the communication of the results that is unfortunate in the present regulations. It has often been said that the best enforcers of the antitrust laws are the private bar. While sometimes I think that characterization has been overdone, it is nevertheless true that the private bar has deterred management from violating the antitrust laws. Although aborting anticompetitive mergers has probably been less important than, for example, preventing price fixing or similar anticompetitive practices, I still think that you should not create a barrier to complete antitrust analysis of a proposed merger.

It is not enough, in my judgment, for the Commission merely to exercise restraint in requiring actual production of otherwise privileged memoranda. The problem is created by the perception that nonproduction would be an exception to the general rule. It should be the other way around. In a situation where the staff has decided to investigate a transaction more completely after the initial filing, and obviously in any subsequent litigation, there is always the opportunity to attempt discovery of such communications in circumstances where such discovery might be warranted. But it is a different matter to require in the premerger notification regulations that any such opinion be submitted in the first instance as an ingredient of substantial compliance. It puts the company on notice that it will have to either submit the opinion or obtain an exception, either affirmatively or by acquiescence or even by a court ruling, before it can consummate the transaction. If the regulations did not include the express requirement, a corporation that is willing to take its chances on having to submit an attorney-client communication in the course of an investigation or subsequent litigation would be willing to obtain the full written analysis for its executives to study. But after the Commission has expressly rejected the criticism of the requirement and included it in the final regulations, the same company would be less inclined to assume the risks or to invite the dilemma that the regulations now create.

Having the requirement in the regulations also raises the possibility that the antitrust opinion will be prepared more with an eye to its submission in connection with premerger notification than to its consideration by the management and the board of directors. The temptation for counsel to make the best case for the merger, rather than to give the company their most dispassionate advice, presumably would not affect the result of the FTC investigation, but it could have a significantly different effect on the company's decision, no matter what oral caveats accompany its transmission. Obviously I would prefer that antitrust counsel resist that temptation in rendering an opinion, but we should not overlook the fact that your regulation also makes that opinion ipso facto a brief.

If you think there is any validity to these observations, I would appreciate your forwarding them to the appropriate docket or office of the Commission, and of course I would be pleased to pursue the question with anyone on your staff who would be interested.

Thank you again for your excellent presentation at AEI, and also for your cogent speech on licensing at the Mayflower last week.

Sincerely,

John W. Barnum

Enclosure

FORMAL INTERPRETATION PURSUANT TO § 803.30 OF THE PREMERGER NOTIFICATION RULES, 16 C.F.R. § 803.30:

The Treatment of Accounts Receivable under § 801.21 of the Premerger Notification Rules, 16 C.F.R. § 801.21

The Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 ("the Act") established a requirement that persons of a certain size intending to carry out an acquisition exceeding a certain size must file notification with the Federal Trade Commission and with the Department of Justice and wait a specified period of time before consummating the transaction. Whether an acquisition is subject to the premerger notification requirements of the Act is determined by applying two tests. The size-of-person test ascertains whether the parties to the acquisition are of sufficient size to come under the jurisdiction of the Act and the size-of-transaction test determines whether the transaction itself is large enough to be reportable.

Section 7A(d)(2)(B) of the Act directs the Federal Trade Commission, with the concurrence of the Department of Justice, by rule to exempt from the notification requirements of the Act transactions which are unlikely to violate the antitrust laws. The premerger notification rules, 16 C.F.R. Parts 801-803 ("the rules"), promulgated pursuant to the Act eliminate in two ways the reporting requirements for acquisitions of little antitrust interest. First, certain categories of acquisitions such as those made for investment purposes or those which occur as a result of a stock split or stock dividend are entirely exempted from the Act's notification requirements. Second, § 801.21 of the rules, 16 C.F.R. § 801.21, provides that certain kinds of assets are not counted in determining the size of a proposed acquisition and thus whether it is reportable. Assets which are exempt for purposes of determining whether an acquisition meets the size-of-transaction test include cash, investment securities, and mortgages.

In the past, the Commission staff has taken the position in informal interpretations that accounts receivable are assets which are exempt for purposes of the size-of-transaction test pursuant to the provisions of § 801.21. This position was based on the belief that little antitrust significance would generally attach to acquisitions of accounts receivable. A recent court decision implies, however, that such acquisitions may be of antitrust concern under certain circumstances, and a reevaluation of the position that accounts receivable are covered by § 801.21 is thus called for.

The court held in United States v. Household Finance Corp. */ that cash loans by finance companies constitute a line of commerce within the meaning of § 7 of the Clayton Act. Since the assets of finance companies are primarily accounts receivable, an acquisition of accounts receivable could affect competition in a line of commerce and hence be of significance for purposes of antitrust enforcement.

In view of this decision, the staff has decided that its previous position on the treatment of accounts receivable under § 801.21 should no longer be maintained. To assure that premerger notifications are received for all acquisitions which may violate the antitrust laws, accounts receivable will no longer be treated as exempt assets when acquired and will no longer be covered by § 801.21 of the premerger notification rules. The Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice has concurred in this formal interpretation.

Malcolm R. Pfunder

Malcolm R. Pfunder
Assistant Director
for Evaluation
Bureau of Competition
Federal Trade Commission

March 20, 1980

---

*/ 602 F.2d 1255 (7th Cir. 1979).

FI - 42

Formal Interpretation

In accordance with the provisions of § 803.30 of the Commission's premerger notification rules, 16 C.F.R. § 803.30, the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice, issues this formal interpretation.

Section 7A(h) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. § 18a(h), exempts documents or information submitted pursuant to the premerger notification program from Freedom of Information Act disclosure and forbids public disclosure "except as may be relevant to any administrative or judicial action or proceeding." Neither the statute nor the premerger notification rules, 16 C.F.R. § 801.1 *et seq.*, require advance notice to the submitting person before premerger submissions are made public in a proceeding, but the Statement of Basis and Purpose to the Premerger Notification Rules states that submitting persons will be given "reasonable notice, when possible," before premerger submissions are placed on the public record in any proceeding to which the submitting person is not a party. 43 Fed. Reg. 33450, 33519 (July 31, 1978).

The Commission and the Assistant Attorney General have determined that a flexible 10 day notice requirement would not hinder the administration of the premerger notification program.

Accordingly, it is hereafter the policy of each agency to instruct its staff to give a submitting person 10 days' notice, whenever possible, before placing on the public record in any administrative or judicial action or proceeding any documents or information submitted pursuant to the Premerger Notification Program, regardless of whether the submitting person is a party to the action or proceeding. In cases where 10 days' notice is not feasible -- for example, where a temporary restraining order is being sought -- staff is instructed to give the submitting person as much advance notice as reasonably can be given, advise the court or administrative agency that the material was obtained under the premerger notification program, and request that the tribunal receive the material *in camera* for sufficient time to afford the submitting person an opportunity to seek a protective order, if appropriate.

By direction of the Commission.

Carol M. Thomas
Secretary

March 28, 1980

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20580

BUREAU OF COMPETITION

FI - 43

April 7, 1981

Formal Interpretation Pursuant to § 803.30 of the Premerger Notification Rules, 16 C.F.R. § 803.30, Concerning Incorporation by Reference in the Antitrust Improvements Act Notification and Report Form

On April 10, 1979, the Federal Trade Commission staff, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice, issued a formal interpretation pursuant to § 803.30 of the premerger notification rules ("the rules"), 16 C.F.R. § 803.30, concerning incorporation by reference in the Antitrust Improvements Act Notification and Report Form ("the Form"), 16 C.F.R. Part 803--Appendix. This interpretation specified a narrow set of circumstances in which a person filing notification would be permitted to incorporate by reference in its initial filing documents submitted with an earlier filing and precluded such incorporation in all other cases. This position was based on practical considerations concerning the review of premerger notification filings. Filings are often sent for analysis to divisions in Washington, D.C., or to regional offices in other parts of the country. Filings by the same person with respect to different transactions are not necessarily reviewed by the same office. The analysis of subsequent filings by the same person, within the time limits imposed by the Act, would be made more difficult in such cases if all documentary materials required to be supplied with the Form do not accompany each filing.

Certain documents filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") are among the documentary attachments which are required to be supplied with the Form, provided they are readily available to the filing person. The United States General Accounting Office ("GAO") has recently taken the position that the restrictions imposed by this formal interpretation on the incorporation by reference in later filings of current SEC documents supplied with earlier filings, constitutes unnecessary duplication within the meaning of the Federal Reports Act, 44 U.S.C. § 3512. The Commission staff disagrees with GAO's assertion that these restrictions result in unnecessary duplication. In the interest of cooperation between government agencies, however, the Commission staff will hereafter permit wider use of incorporation by reference of such documents.

In the future, persons filing notification may incorporate by reference all SEC documents supplied with earlier filings which remain current and are called for in the subsequent filing. Item 4(a) of the Form requests specified documents filed with the SEC (or to be filed contemporaneously with the premerger notification filing) if any such documents have been filed within the three years prior to the date of the premerger notification filing and if copies of them are readily available to the filing person. The SEC documents requested are: the most recent Form 10-K, all registration statements and all Forms 10-Q and 8-K filed since the end of the period reflected in the most recent Form 10-K, the most recent proxy statement, and, if the acquisition is a tender offer, Schedule 14D-1. Thus, for example, if a person has made a premerger notification filing in the third quarter following the filing of Form 10-K and has submitted that Form 10-K, Forms 10-Q for the first two quarters, a registration statement, and a Form 8-K, it may now incorporate these documents by reference in a filing made in the fourth quarter. In the latter filing, it must supply only copies of the Form 10-Q for the third quarter and subsequent registration statements and Forms 8-K (assuming that any such documents have been filed with the SEC). After the end of the fourth quarter, however, if a new Form 10-K has been filed, these documents would no longer be called for by item 4(a), and the new Form 10-K would be filed with the premerger notification Form together with any subsequent registration statements and Forms 10-Q and 8-K.

Persons wishing to incorporate documents accompanying an earlier filing should identify that filing by the name of the person and the date on which the Form was submitted. Such persons must also specifically identify each document incorporated by reference from an earlier filing. The formal interpretation of April 10, 1979, remains in effect except to the extent it has been modified here.

The Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice has concurred in this formal interpretation.

FI - 45

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION
WASHINGTON, D. C. 20580

REAU OF COMPETITION

June 2, 1981

Lewis A. Kaplan, Esquire
Paul, Weiss, Rifkind, Wharton & Garrison
345 Park Avenue
New York, New York 10154

Re: Sun Company, Inc. 10-3/4% Subordinated Exchangeable Debentures Due 2006

Dear Mr. Kaplan:

This letter responds to your letter of April 8, 1981, and constitutes a formal interpretation under § 803.30 of the Commission's premerger notification rules, 16 C.F.R. § 803.30, in which the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice has concurred.

Your letter requests a formal interpretation stating that the above referenced subordinated exchangeable debentures are voting securities of Becton, Dickinson and Company within the meaning of Section 7A(b)(3)(A) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. § 18a(b)(3)(A), and § 801.1(f)(1) of the premerger notification rules, 16 C.F.R. § 801.1(f)(1).

Section 7A(b)(3)(A) of the Clayton Act states:

> The term "voting securities" means any securities which at present or upon conversion entitle the owner or holder thereof to vote for the election of directors of the issuer . . . .

Section 801.1(f)(1) of the premerger notification rules states:

> *Voting securities*. The term "voting securities" means any securities which at present or upon conversion entitle the owner or holder thereof to vote for the election of directors of the issuer, or of an entity included within the same person as the issuer . . . .

As we understand it, the above referenced debentures are a debt obligation of Sun Company, Inc., which are convertible into common stock of Becton, Dickinson and Company and allow the owner or holder to direct the manner in which a proportionate number of the underlying Becton, Dickinson shares shall be voted for the election of directors of Becton, Dickinson. The question of interpretation which arises under the premerger notification rules stems from the fact that Sun Company is technically the issuer of the debentures, and the present voting rights which attach to those debentures relate to the election of directors of Becton, Dickinson, which is not technically "the issuer, or . . . an entity included within the same person as the issuer."

We have no doubt that Congress, in enacting Title II of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, intended that the antitrust enforcement agencies have an opportunity to review any antitrust issues arising out of the acquisition of securities with present voting rights such as those which attach to the Sun Company subordinated exchangeable debentures, provided that the statutory size-of-person and size-of-transaction tests are met. In drafting and promulgating § 801.1(f)(1) of the premerger notification rules, the Commission and the Assistant Attorney General did not consider the possibility that, in an unusual case, one company might issue securities which conferred on the owner or holder the right to vote for election of directors of a company that was not controlled by the issuer.

The Commission, in issuing the final premerger notification rules, did state, however:

> "Voting securities" are securities that at present or upon conversion entitle the owner or holder to vote for directors of any issuer . . . . [Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 801.1(f)(1), 43 Federal Register at 33462 (July 31, 1978)(emphasis supplied)]

It was not intended that the definition of "voting securitites" be limited to securities which give the owner or holder a right to vote for "directors" of a specific "issuer"; rather, that definition contains reference to an "issuer" so that the "acquired person" can be identified.

The fact that a purchaser of these subordinated exchangeable debentures acquires a present right to designate how the votes of the underlying Becton, Dickinson common shares will be cast for directors of Becton, Dickinson means that such a purchaser would, in this respect, be in the same position as a purchaser of an equivalent number of Becton, Dickinson shares. While we do not believe that circumstances such as these arise sufficiently often to justify a change in the Commission's premerger notification rules, we believe it appropriate under those rules to regard these subordinated exchangeable debentures as "voting securities" within the meaning of § 7A(b)(3)(A) of the Clayton Act and

§ 801.1(f)(1) of the rules. We also believe it appropriate and in keeping with the intent of the Act and the rules to regard Becton, Dickinson and Company as the "issuer" of those debentures under the Act and the premerger notification rules.

Therefore, any purchase of these subordinated exchangeable debentures is a transaction which is subject to the reporting and waiting period requirements of § 7A of the Clayton Act, provided the statutory size-of-person and size-of-transaction tests (in § 7A(a)(2) and (a)(3)) are met. If such a purchase is reportable under § 7A, the acquired person would be Becton, Dickinson and Company, and all other provisions of the Act and the rules would be applied in the normal fashion.

It is theoretically possible that the subsequent conversion or exchange of these debentures for common stock of Becton, Dickinson would give rise to another filing and waiting period obligation under § 7A, since under § 801.32 of the rules a conversion is an acquisition within the meaning of §7A. It appears unlikely, however, that such a conversion would increase the acquiring person's percentage of Becton, Dickinson's outstanding voting securities above the percentage represented by the subordinated exchangeable debentures held prior to conversion. The conversion is therefore likely to be exempt from reporting and waiting period requirements under § 7A(c)(10).

Note that, while these subordinated exchangeable debentures are "voting securities" under § 7A of the Clayton Act and the Commission's premerger notification rules, they are not "convertible voting securities" under § 801.1(f)(2) of the rules, because they carry a present right to vote. Acquisition of these debentures is therefore not exempt from reporting and waiting period obligations under § 802.31, which exempts acquisitions of convertible voting securities.

Sincerely yours,

Malcolm R. Pfunder
Assistant Director for
Evaluation

FI - 48

PAUL, WEISS, RIFKIND, WHARTON & GARRISON
345 PARK AVENUE NEW YORK, NEW YORK 10154

TELEPHONE (212) 644-8000
TELECOPIER (212) 644-8202

TELEX WU 12-7631
WUI 666-843
CABLE LONGSIGHT, N.Y.

RANDOLPH E. PAUL (1946-1956)
LOUIS S. WEISS (1927-1950)
JOHN F. WHARTON (1927-1977)

WRITER'S DIRECT DIAL NUMBER

LLOYD K. GARRISON
HOWARD A. SEITZ
COUNSEL

5, PLACE VENDÔME
75001 PARIS, FRANCE
TELEPHONE 296 41 45
TELEX 213648
CABLE LONGSIGHT, PARIS
CAMERON CLARK
CONSEIL JURIDIQUE
RESIDENT PARTNER

SIMON H. RIFKIND
ADRIAN W. DEWIND
MORRIS B. ABRAM
MORDECAI ROCHLIN
PAUL J. NEWLON
JOSEPH S. ISEMAN
JAMES B. LEWIS
THEODORE C. SORENSEN
NORMAN ZELENKO
JOHN E. MASSENGALE
JAY TOPKIS
EDWARD N. COSTIKYAN
BAYLESS MANNING
ROBERT H. MONTGOMERY, JR.
JOHN C. TAYLOR 3RD
BERNARD H. GREENE
ERNEST RUBENSTEIN
STUART ROBINOWITZ
JAMES L. PURCELL
ARTHUR KALISH
DAVID T. WASHBURN
BERNARD FINKELSTEIN
ARTHUR L. LIMAN
SEYMOUR HERTZ
WALTER F. LEINHARDT
GERALD D. STERN
ANTHONY B. KUKLIN
MARTIN LONDON
DAVID C. BRODHEAD
PETER R. HAJE

LEONARD V. QUIGLEY
ALLAN BLUMSTEIN
NEALE M. ALBERT
JAY GREENFIELD
KEVIN J. O'BRIEN
ALFRED D. YOUNGWOOD
DONALD F. MOORE
JOSEPH S. BROWDY
SIDNEY S. ROSDEITCHER
ROBERT L. LAUFER
ALLEN L. THOMAS
PETER L. FELCHER
MARK H. ALCOTT
JOHN P. McENROE
PETER J. ROTHENBERG
JUDITH R. THOYER
RICHARD A. ENGELMAN
GEORGE P. FELLEMAN
STEVEN B. ROSENFELD
ALBERT P. HAND
MAX GITTER
JOHN J. O'NEIL
CAMERON CLARK
LEWIS A. KAPLAN
JOSE E. TRIAS
RICHARD S. BORISOFF
MARK A. BELNICK
JOHN F. BREGLIO

(212) 644-8646

April 8, 1981

Malcolm P. Pfunder, Esq.
Assistant Director, Evaluation
 and Premerger Notification
Bureau of Competition
Attention: John Weber, Esq.
Federal Trade Commission
Sixth Street and Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W.
Washington, D. C. 20580

Gentlemen:

We represent Becton, Dickinson and Company ("BD").

The purpose of this letter is to request public issuance of a formal interpretation of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 (the "Act") stating that certain subordinated exchangeable debentures of Sun Company, Inc. ("Sun Debentures") are "voting securities" of BD within the meaning of Section 7A(b)(2)(A) of the Act and 17 C.F.R. § 803.1(f)(1) (1980). Put more generally, we ask that the term "voting securities" be construed to include any security which at present entitles the owner or holder thereof to vote for the election of directors of any corporation.

Briefly stated, the significance of this request is that the Sun Debentures, upon issuance, will carry the aggregate right to cast 32% of the votes for election of directors of BD and are exchangeable into shares of BD common stock ("BD Shares") totaling the same proportion of the total number of shares issued and outstanding. Thus, acquisition of Sun Debentures, in our view, is equivalent to acquisition of BD Shares for Hart-Scott-Rodino purposes.

The Act's legislative history shows clearly that the purpose of the Act was to provide advance notification of large acquisitions to the antitrust authorities in order to permit effective action to be taken against those acquisitions that may violate the Clayton Act. E.g., H.R. Rep. No. 94-1373, 94th Cong., 2d Sess. (1976).

Acquisition of Sun Debentures entails precisely the risk that Congress sought to protect against in adopting the Act. Because the Sun Debentures carry the right to vote for directors of BD immediately upon issuance, the potential exists for another company to obtain effective control of BD by acquiring Sun Debentures. Accordingly, the policy of the Act, we submit, surely requires its application to an acquisition of Sun Debentures.

Despite this clear legislative purpose, the wording of the Act and the Regulations (which track the language of the statute on this point) create some uncertainty with respect to whether the Act would apply to an acquisition of Sun Debentures.

The background of the relationship between BD and Sun, which explains the reason for the issuance of the Sun Debentures, is set forth at pages 21-22 of the preliminary prospectus for the Sun Debentures, dated March 24, 1981, which is contained in Sun's registration statement on Form S-16, a copy of which is enclosed.*

Hart-Scott-Rodino Treatment of The Acquisition Of Sun Debentures

Sun now owns 6,485,493 BD Shares, which is approximately 32% of all BD Shares issued and outstanding. (PP 12, 21) Sun will issue Sun Debentures that are exchangeable for the BD Shares it now owns. (PP 12) After issuance and sale of the Sun Debentures and prior to their exchange for BD Shares, Sun's BD Shares are to be voted in accordance with and in proportion to (by principal amount) the instructions given by those holders of Sun Debentures who give instructions. (PP 20) Thus, a Sun Debenture in substance will entitle the owner or holder thereof to vote for the election of directors of BD immediately upon issuance.

Assuming Sun Debentures are acquired in a transaction in which the "commerce," "size of person," and "size of transaction" tests are satisfied, the acquisition is subject to the report and wait provisions of the Act if Sun Debentures are "voting securities" within the meaning of the Act.

---

* References to the preliminary prospectus are indicated by "PP" followed by the page number.

Section 7A(b)(2)(A) of the Act, 15 U.S.C. § 18A(b)(2)(A), insofar as is relevant here, states:

> "The term 'voting securities' means any securities which at present or upon conversion entitle the owner or holder thereof to vote for the election of directors of the issuer . . . "

If Sun is deemed to be "the issuer" of the Sun Debentures, Section 7A(b)(2)(A), if read literally, might indicate that the Sun Debentures are not "voting securities" for Hart-Scott-Rodino purposes because they do not entitle the owner or holder thereof to vote for the election of directors of Sun, which could be considered to be "the issuer." In that event, an acquirer of Sun Debentures could acquire the equivalent of 32% of BD without compliance with the report and wait provisions of the Act.

If, on the other hand, Section 7A(b)(2)(A) is read to define "voting securities" as any security entitling the owner or holder to vote for the election of directors of any corporation, then Sun Debentures are "voting securities." In that event, an acquisition of Sun Debentures subject to the Act would have to comply with the report and wait provisions. This result, we submit, is mandated by the legislative history and the policy of the Act.

Legislative History

The legislative history of the Act shows that Congress intended that a security entitling its owner or holder to vote for the election of directors of any corporation is a "voting security."

S. 1284, 94th Cong., 2d Sess., was the first of the premerger notification bills to be reported out of committee in Congress. S. 1284 applied to acquisitions of "stock or assets", and the term "voting security" was not directly relevant to coverage. The bill, however, would have exempted certain transactions, some of which were defined with reference to "voting security." § 7A(b)(4)(B). "Voting security" was defined for purposes of the exemptions as "any security presently entitling the owner or holder thereof to vote for the election of directors of a company . . . " § 7A(b)(4)(C). Thus, S. 1284 plainly would have treated the Sun Debentures as "voting securities" because they entitle the owner "to vote for the election of directors of a company . . . . " The same language appeared in H.R. 8532, which passed the Senate on June 10, 1976.

The House version of the premerger notification bill, which initially passed the House on August 2, 1976, took a similar approach to this issue. It covered the acquisition of any "voting securities or assets . . . " Section 2 of H.R. 14580, 94th Cong., 2d Sess. (1976) [in a clause denominated 7A(b)(3)(B)] defined the term "voting securities" as "any stock or other share capital presently entitling the owner or holder thereof to vote for the election of directors of a corporation." 122 Cong. Rec. H 8137 (Aug. 2, 1976). Thus, under the House version of the bill, the Sun Debentures clearly would have been "voting securities" because they "presently [entitle] the owner or holder thereof to vote for the election of directors of a corporation."

Following the passage of H.R. 14580 by the House on August 2, 1976 and of H.R. 8532 by the Senate on June 10, 1976, the House asked for a conference. The conference proved impossible to hold, however, in light of the press of adjournment and the threat of filibusters in the Senate. Accordingly, informal negotiations were held between Senators Kennedy, Abourezk and Scott and Chairman Rodino and other members of the House. 122 Cong. Rec. S. 14888 (Aug. 27, 1976). This culminated in an agreement on an amended version of H.R. 8532 which the Senate passed by motion on September 8, 1976. 122 Cong. Rec. S 15420. The compromise bill, of course, contained the definition of "voting securities" that now appears in Section 7A(b)(2)(A) of the Act. (The text of the compromise bill appears at 122 Cong. Rec. S 14867-72 [Aug. 27, 1976].)

On September 16, 1976, the date on which the compromise bill was passed by the House, Chairman Rodino explained the differences between the prior versions of the bill and the final bill. With respect to the definition of "voting securities", Chairman Rodino stated:

> "The House bill covered acquisitions of assets and 'voting securities' -- any debt or equity instrument entitling the holder to elect directors of a corporation. Nonvoting securities were completely exempt from the House-passed bill. However, nonvoting securities that can be converted into voting securities were covered 'upon conversion,' and compliance with the bill's notification and waiting requirements would thus have been required prior to conversion. In contrast, the Senate bill covered acquisitions of assets; voting securities; nonvoting but convertible securities; and, apparently, nonvoting, nonconvertible equity securities. Nonvoting, nonconvertible debt securities were completely exempt from the Senate bill under subsection (b)(4)(B)(ii). The compromise bill completely exempts acquisitions of nonvoting, nonconvertible debt or equity securities. Further, the compromise bill covers nonvoting but convertible securities upon acquisition, not conversion. Finally, the compromise bill covers acquisitions of voting securities in all instances, except in the case of de minimus [sic] 'solely for purpose of investment' acquisitions expressly exempted by the bill." 122 Cong. Rec. H 10294 (Sept. 16, 1976) (emphasis added).

Thus, according to Chairman Rodino's explanation, the original House-passed bill would have covered the Sun Debentures because they entitled the holder to vote to elect directors of a corporation. The Senate bill also would have covered them because they were "voting securities" as Chairman Rodino used that term. Moreover, there is no suggestion in his comprehensive explanation of the compromise bill that the change in language between (a) the Act as finally passed and (b) the House and Senate bills was intended to alter the substance of the definition of voting securities insofar as is relevant here. Indeed, the Senate floor debate suggests that the change was purely stylistic and not substantive. 122 Cong. Rec. S 14873-88 (Aug. 27, 1976) (Senator Allen). Accordingly, we submit that the Sun Debentures are "voting securities" within the meaning of the Act because they entitle the owner or holder thereof to vote for the election of directors of BD.

The Sun Debentures Are "Voting Securities" Even If The Act Is Read Literally

The same result may be reached by another route.

The Act defines "voting securities" as securities that entitle the owner or holder thereof to vote for the election of directors of "the issuer." If both BD and Sun are deemed to be "issuers" of the Sun Debentures, then the Sun Debentures are "voting securities" under the literal terms of the Act.

The term "issuer" is not defined in the Act or the Regulations. It therefore might well be construed in light of the lengthy history of its use in the Securities Act of 1933 ("1933 Act") and Securities Exchange Act of 1934. That history, we suggest, shows that both BD and Sun are "issuers" here.

Section 2(4) of the 1933 Act, 15 U.S.C. § 77b(4), provides:

> "The term 'issuer' means every person who issues or proposes to issue any security except that with respect to certificates of deposit, voting-trust certificates, or collateral-trust certificates, or with respect to certificates of interest or shares in an unincorporated investment trust not having a board of directors (or persons performing similar functions) or of the fixed, restricted management, or unit type, the term 'issuer' means the person or persons performing the acts and assuming the duties of depositor or manager pursuant to the provisions of the trust or other agreement or instrument under which such securities are issued; except that in the case of an unincorporated association which provides by its articles for limited liability of any or all of its members, or in the case of a trust, committee, or other legal entity, the trustees or members thereof shall not be individually liable as issuers of any security issued by the association, trust, committee, or other legal entity; except that with respect to equipment-trust certificates or like securities, the term 'issuer' means the person by whom the equipment or property is or is to be used; and except that with respect to fractional undifided interests in oil,

> gas, or other mineral rights, the term 'issuer' means the owner of any such right or of any interest in such right (whether whole or fractional who creates fractional interests therein for the purpose of public offering." (Emphasis added)

Thus, the term "issuer" under the 1933 Act includes "the person or persons performing the acts and assuming the duties of . . . managers" pursuant to a voting trust or other such agreement under which the certificates are issued.

The Sun Debentures are to be issued pursuant to the settlement agreement in the Sun-BD litigation. (PP 22) The BD Shares for which the Sun Debentures are exchangeable are to be deposited in escrow pending their exchange for Sun Debentures. (PP 12, 22) The voting of the BD Shares is to be governed by a voting agreement. The purchase of a Sun Debenture carries with it not only the debt obligation of Sun, but, in substance, the right to vote the BD Shares for which the Debenture is exchangeable. Accordingly, for present purposes, a Sun Debenture may be viewed both as a debt obligation of Sun and as a voting trust certificate governing the voting of BD Shares. Moreover, because the Sun Debentures are to be issued and the BD Shares are to be voted pursuant to agreements to which both Sun and BD are parties, both Sun and BD should be viewed as managers of what amounts to a voting trust containing BD Shares. In consequence, both should be viewed as "issuers" for purposes of Section 7A(b)(2)(A) of the Act.

The Need For Issuance of A Formal Interpretation

We believe that the Sun Debentures are "voting securities" within the meaning of the Act, particularly when Section 7A(b)(2)(A) is considered in light of the Act's purpose and its legislative history. We acknowledge, however, that this conclusion is not necessarily self-evident solely from a literal reading of the language of the statute. Accordingly, one acquiring Sun Debentures might fail to report and wait, as required by the Act, in good faith.

best copy available

Malcolm P. Pfunder, Esq.

In these circumstances, there is no unquestionably effective remedy for dealing after the fact with a failure to report and wait. There is no private cause of action under the Act. There is little likelihood that the civil penalty provisions of section 7A(g)(1) of the Act would be invoked against a firm claiming that it had acted in good faith. And while the Commission could proceed under section 7A(g)(2) against an acquirer of Sun Debentures, it is unclear whether a district court would prevent the voting of the BD Shares pending compliance with the Act if the failure to comply was inadvertent. Hence, an acquisition of Sun Debentures in violation of the Act could well leave the offender free to vote a 32% interest in BD.

The Commission may readily avoid these potential problems by publicly issuing a formal interpretation of the Act pursuant to Section 803.30 of the Regulations, 17 C.F.R. § 803.30 (1980). Such action would place all potential acquirers of Sun Debentures on notice that the acquisition of those debentures is subject to the Act. This almost surely would avoid the need for any enforcement action by securing voluntary compliance with the statute. This, we submit, is in the public interest and is exactly what Congress intended in adopting the Act. Indeed, Congress explicitly contemplated such action by empowering the Commission to define terms used in the Act. 15 U.S.C. § 18A(d)(2)(A)

We are ready to provide you with any additional information that may be necessary in connection with this request. In addition, I would appreciate an opportunity to meet with you or your staff to discuss this matter.

Very truly yours,

Lewis A. Kaplan

Formal Interpretation Pursuant to § 803.30 of the Premerger Notification Rules, 16 CFR § 803.30, Concerning Early Termination of the Waiting Period under the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976.

This formal interpretation of the Premerger Notification Rules concerning "early termination" of the waiting period provided by the Hart-Scott-Rodino Act is issued by the Federal Trade Commission pursuant to 16 CFR § 803.30. It supersedes a formal interpretation issued by the staff of the Federal Trade Commission on April 10, 1979. That interpretation announced criteria that would be used by the Federal Trade Commission and the Department of Justice in determining whether a request under 16 CFR § 803.11 for early termination would be granted. One of those criteria was a requirement that the parties demonstrate some special business reason that warranted early termination of the waiting period.

After experience with the standard for early termination announced on April 10, 1979, the agencies have determined that early termination requests may be appropriately granted in a wider range of circumstances without diminishing the effectiveness of the enforcement process. In the future, the agencies will normally grant a request for termination of the waiting period under the following circumstances:

1. At least one party to the proposed transaction has requested early termination in writing;
2. All parties to the proposed transaction have submitted notification and report forms and any other information required; and,

3. The Federal Trade Commission and the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice have determined not to take any enforcement action during the waiting period.

Thus, it will no longer be necessary to include in a request for early termination a statement of reasons why the requesting party wishes to consummate the transaction before the end of the waiting period. The amount of time needed to act upon such requests cannot be predicted with precision. It will necessarily vary according to several factors, including the workload of the agencies, the complexity of the proposed transaction, and the seriousness of the antitrust concerns (if any) raised by the proposed transaction.

Notification of each grant of early termination will be published in the Federal Register as required by § 7A(b)(2) of the Clayton Act. 15 U.S.C. § 18a(b)(2). In addition, if any party's request for early termination has been granted, it is the practice of the Federal Trade Commission to so notify by telephone all parties who have filed in connection with that acquisition.

The Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice concurs in this interpretation.

August 20, 1982

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

16 CFR Part 802

Premerger Notification: Reporting and Waiting Period Requirements

AGENCY: Federal Trade Commission

ACTION: Notice of Formal Interpretation

SUMMARY: On November 14, 1988, the Federal Trade Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice, issued Formal Interpretation Number 14 pursuant to § 803.30 of the Commission's Premerger Notification Rules, 16 C.F.R. § 803.30. The formal interpretation discusses the effect of the CAB Sunset Act, 49 U.S.C. § 1551(a)(7), on § 802.6(b) of the Commission's premerger notification rules, 16 C.F.R. § 802.6(b). Its primary purpose is to state that any airline merger or acquisition that is to be consummated on or after January 1, 1989, must be reviewed under the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification program, regardless of whether the parties to it have sought or even obtained approval from the Department of Transportation before that time.

EFFECTIVE DATE: November 14, 1988

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: John M. Sipple, Jr., Chief, Premerger Notification Office, Bureau of Competition, Room 301, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580. Telephone: (202) 326-3100.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION: The text of Formal Interpretation Number 14 is set out below:

Interpretation Number 14

Formal Interpretation Pursuant to § 803.30 of the Premerger Notification Rules, 16 CFR § 803.30, Concerning § 802.6(b) of the Rules, 16 CFR § 802.6(b), As It May Relate To Transactions Between Air Carriers And Others Consummated On Or After January 1, 1989.

Mergers and similar transactions between airlines have for decades required federal regulatory approval prior to consummation. Until 1985, that authority was granted to the Civil Aeronautics Board, and since then, to the Department of Transportation (DOT). The Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification rules, 16 C.F.R. § 801.1 et seq., have taken account of the prior approval requirement and have attempted to eliminate duplicative notification and review by providing in § 802.6(b)(1) that:

> [A]ny transaction which requires approval by [DOT] prior to consummation, pursuant to section 408 of the Federal Aviation Act, 49 U.S.C. 1378, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if copies of all information and documentary material filed with [DOT] are contemporaneously filed with the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General.

As of January 1, 1989, under the provisions of the CAB Sunset Act, 49 U.S.C. § 1551(a)(7), DOT will no longer have authority over airline mergers. The Federal Trade Commission is issuing this formal interpretation in anticipation of the following question that may arise concerning the transition: Is a transaction for which DOT approval has been sought or obtained (and for which papers filed with DOT have been contemporaneously filed with the antitrust agencies) but which has not been consummated prior to January 1, 1989, exempt from premerger notification requirements pursuant to § 802.6(b)(1), or is a Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification required?

The Commission construes § 802.6(b)(1) as not exempting such a transaction; therefore, Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification would be required, assuming that the size thresholds are met and no other exemption applies. A transaction that takes place after January 1, 1989, is not "[a] transaction which requires approval by [DOT] prior to consummation" and thus does not come within the § 802.6(b)(1) exemption.

This interpretation is consistent with the most basic policy behind the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act and DOT statutory authority over airline mergers. That policy is to assure that a merger or similar transaction will be subjected to a premerger competitive review. This interpretation eliminates the possibility that a transaction would avoid all premerger review if the parties sought, but did not receive, final approval by DOT of a merger or acquisition.

This interpretation limits the exemption provided by § 802.6 to transactions that are both approved by DOT and consummated by the parties prior to January 1, 1989. Without these limitations, approval of a transaction by DOT might enable the parties to complete a transaction without further premerger competitive review at a much later date when the likely competitive effects of the transaction could be significantly different. This interpretation thus meets the premerger notification rules' concern about the amount of change that can take place in the marketplace between the review and the completion of the transaction. (That concern is addressed by § 803.7 of the premerger notification rules, which requires that the parties complete the acquisition for which notification was filed within a limited time following the Hart-Scott-Rodino review or seek another such review before they complete it.)

The Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification obligation that may arise for transactions for which DOT approval has been sought need not significantly delay such transactions. Parties may file Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification and seek early termination of their waiting period. If the antitrust agencies have, in the course of a DOT section 408 proceeding, actually completed their antitrust analysis of the proposed transaction, early termination could be granted promptly.

In addition, parties need not wait until January, 1989, to submit Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notifications for proposed transactions. In the unique circumstances of this sunset law, the Commission and the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice will review a premerger notification notwithstanding that the transaction would be exempt if consummated with DOT approval prior to January 1989. In other words, the parties may both claim the exemption provided for in § 802.6 and separately file for antitrust premerger review of the same transaction. If both procedures are invoked, the parties would be free to consummate a transaction before January 1989 with DOT approval even if the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification waiting period had not terminated.

> Section 802.6(b)(2) provides that acquisition of:
>
> (2) The following . . . assets will not be exempt under § 802.6(b)(1):
>
> (i) if the transaction is an acquisition of assets, the assets which are engaged in a business or businesses other than aeronautics or air transportation . . . ;
>
> (ii) if the transaction is an acquisition of voting securities. . . , the business or businesses of the acquired issuer (and all entities which it controls) which are not engaged in aeronautics or air transportation . . . .

Because there will no longer be any transactions that satisfy the criteria of § 802.6(b)(1), § 802.6(b)(2) will no longer be invoked with respect to transactions that were previously covered by § 408 of the FAA. However, through informal interpretations pursuant to § 803.30, the Commission's Premerger Notification Office has used the method reflected in § 802.6(b)(2) to define the extent to which "assets held as a result of a transaction requiring approval" by other federal regulatory agencies are exempt from premerger notification requirements. The Premerger Notification Office will continue to apply this method to such other transactions consummated after December 31, 1988.

The Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice concurs in this formal interpretation.

By direction of the Commission.

Date: November 14, 1988

Donald S. Clark
Donald S. Clark
Secretary

FORMAL INTERPRETATIONS

Pre-existing Notification Program

First National City Bank

Affidavits for Certain Open Market Transactions

Investment

Early Termination

Incorporation by Reference

Certain Bank Holding Companies

Attorney-Client Communications

Accounts Receivable

Confidentiality

Incorporation by Reference

Sun Company - Subordinated Exchangeable Debentures

Early Termination

CAB Sunset Act

BUREAU STATEMENTS

V. BUREAU STATEMENTS

Bureau of Competition
FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20580

August 19, 1982

Michael N. Sohn, Esquire
Arnold & Porter
1200 New Hampshire Avenue, N.W.
Washington, D.C.

Re: O'Connor & Associates' Obligation to File a Hart-Scott-Rodino Premerger Notification Form under Section 7A of the Clayton Act

Dear Mr. Sohn:

This letter is to inform you of our proposed action with respect to your client O'Connor & Associates ("Associates"). On July 16, 1982, Associates purchased voting securities issued by The Trane Company ("Trane") resulting in Associates holding voting securities valued in excess of $15 million. Prior to purchasing this stock, Associates did not file a Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification and report form nor observe the waiting period required by Section 7A of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. § 18a ("the Act"). It is our understanding that Associates did not file a notification and report form because it was of the view that the purchases were being made within the meaning of the term "solely for the purpose of investment" as that term is used in the Act 1/ and the Act's implementing regulations. 2/ The Bureau of Competition believes that certain of Associates' conduct and intentions described in Associates' filings with the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") are inconsistent with the purchase of voting securities solely for the purpose of investment as that term is defined in the premerger rules.

The Bureau construes the term "solely for the purpose of investment," as used in the Act and in the premerger rules, to apply only to purchasers who intend to hold the voting securities as passive investors. If an acquiring person purchases voting securities with the intention of influencing the basic business decisions of the issuer, or with the intention of participating in the management of the issuer, the exemption is not available.

1/ 15 U.S.C. § 18a(c)(4)

2/ The term is defined at 16 C.F.R. § 801.1 and is used in the premerger rules at 16 C.F.R. § 802.9 and at 16 C.F.R. § 802.64. As an institutional investor under 16 C.F.R. § 802.64(a), Associates would be entitled to purchase up to 15% of Trane's voting securities without filing if the purchases were made "solely for the purpose of investment."

If a purchaser invests in a company, and later attempts to influence the management of the company, further purchases of stock are not within the exemption. It is irrelevant for purposes of the exemption why the shareholder intends to influence management, even if it is only to protect its original investment.

The Bureau has reviewed the Schedule 13D's filed by Associates with the SEC, and the information in those submissions indicates that Associates improperly availed itself of the "investment only" exemption. Any one of a number of expressions of intent or actions described in the SEC filings indicates that Associates was not a passive investor. For example, Associates stated that it might seek control of Trane and that, while it did not intend to merge, liquidate or reorganize the company, "[i]n the future, however, the Reporting Persons may formulate such plans or proposals." 3/ Associates also disclosed that it had demanded Trane's shareholder list for the purpose of communicating to Trane shareholders about the proposed transaction between Trane and The General Electric Company ("G.E."), and had retained the services of a proxy solicitation concern. On Friday, July 16, 1982, Associates was sued by Trane for alleged violations of the securities laws. Late that same day, Associates purchased a particularly large block of Trane stock (more than doubling its holdings in Trane). The following Monday, Associates counterclaimed naming Trane, G.E., and certain directors of both companies as defendants. These activities as disclosed in Associates schedule 13D's are inconsistent with an intent to purchase voting securities "solely for the purpose of investment" as that term is used in the Act and the premerger rules. 4/

3/ Schedule 13D filed by Associates on June 16, 1982, page 7.

4/ The range of activities which may be inconsistent with an investment intent is not limited to the course of conduct described here. Furthermore, any one of the actions taken by Associates (e.g., preparation for a proxy fight) might negate a claim that a particular acquisition of voting securities was made solely for the purpose of investment.

The Bureau of Competition has concluded that the July 16 purchase of Trane voting securities represents a violation of the Act, thus subjecting Associates to a potential enforcement action under Section (g)(1) of the Act. As a matter of prosecutorial discretion, however, the Bureau has decided not to recommend that the Commission refer this matter to the Department of Justice for resolution of the matter in a civil penalties action. Among the factors considered were: Associates' conduct was undertaken to protect its investment in Trane with the good faith belief that its conduct was not inconsistent with the exemption set forth at 16 C.F.R. § 802.64; the exemption had not previously been the subject of any public formal interpretation or legal opinion by the Bureau, the Commission or the courts; Associates, when apprised of the Bureau's position, agreed to file a notification and report form within three working days; and counsel assured the Bureau that Associates would refrain from voting the securities purchased on or after July 16, 1982, and refrain from purchasing additional voting securities of Trane until the expiration of any applicable waiting period.

On the assumption that the information you have provided is accurate and complete, the Bureau has determined not to recommend that the Commission take any further action. However, nothing in this letter should be construed to limit the authority of the Commission to take any enforcement action in the future should such action be appropriate.

Sincerely,

Thomas J. Campbell

Thomas J. Campbell
Director
Bureau of Competition

FTC news

Federal Trade Commission *Washington, D.C. 20580*

FOR IMMEDIATE RELEASE: December 23, 1986

FTC BUREAU DIRECTOR WARNS OF PREMERGER ACT VIOLATIONS

Jeffrey I. Zuckerman, Director of the Federal Trade Commission's Bureau of Competition, today stated that some investment banking firms and their clients are engaging in a stock acquisition activity that may subject the clients to substantial civil penalties.

According to Mr. Zuckerman, the Commission staff has discovered several instances in which a client has arranged for an investment banking firm to purchase voting securities of a company on the client's behalf, but has failed to report the transactions as required by the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976.

Under that act, a person who intends to acquire a firm's voting securities beyond certain threshold limits is required to file written notice with the FTC and the Department of Justice. The person is then required to wait a specified period of time before making the stock purchases so that the federal agencies may review the proposed acquisition and determine whether it should be challenged under the federal antitrust laws.

In the transactions being examined by the Commission staff, the client has agreed that if the investment banking firm makes the initial purchase of securities, the client will either purchase the securities from the firm at a stated price in the future or reimburse the firm if it has to sell the shares at a loss. Investment banks apparently are not filing premerger reports on the ground that their acquisitions of voting securities are covered by an exemption to the Commission's premerger notification rules, which applies to acquisitions "solely for the purpose of investment." Their clients also are not filing, apparently on the ground that they have acquired only an option, a transaction that is exempt.

Mr. Zuckerman warned that clients in that position were at serious risk of violating the premerger reporting law.

"The nature of the agreements between the investment bankers and their clients," Mr. Zuckerman said, "makes it evident that the voting securities are not being purchased for investment purposes by the investment bankers. Rather, they are being purchased on behalf of the clients, who assume most of the risks and benefits of stock ownership. In effect, the investment banks are buying the stock as their clients' agents, unlike a true option transaction. The clients are therefore required by law to file notification forms, and are subject to penalties if they fail to do so.

"Our Premerger Notification Office has consistently advised all who have inquired that no exemption applies, because the beneficial owner of the shares is the client. If the Bureau's investigations reveal that the law has been violated, the Bureau will recommend that the Commission initiate appropriate law enforcement action."

(More)

The maximum penalty for failure to comply with the premerger notification requirements is $10,000 for each day a person is in violation of the act. The penalties may be assessed against the acquiring party and any officer, director, or partner of that party.

# # #

MEDIA CONTACT:	Susan Ticknor, Office of Public Affairs, 202-326-2179
STAFF CONTACT:	James Mullenix, Bureau of Competition, 202-326-2566

(HSRVio)

VI. CURRENT ANNUAL REPORT

CURRENT ANNUAL REPORT

TENTH ANNUAL REPORT
TO CONGRESS
PURSUANT TO SECTION 201 OF THE
HART-SCOTT-RODINO ANTITRUST
IMPROVEMENTS ACT OF 1976

INTRODUCTION

Section 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, amended the Clayton Act by adding a new Section 7A, 15 U.S.C. Section 18a. Subsection (j) of this section provides as follows:

> Beginning not later than January 1, 1978, the Federal Trade Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, shall annually report to the Congress on the operation of this section. Such report shall include an assessment of the effects of this section, of the effects, purpose, and the need for any rules promulgated pursuant thereto, and any recommendations for revisions of this section.

This is the tenth annual report to Congress pursuant to this provision.

In general, Section 7A establishes a mechanism under which certain proposed acquisitions of stock or assets must be reported to the Federal Trade Commission and the Department of Justice prior to consummation. The parties must then wait a specified period, usually thirty days (fifteen days in the case of a cash tender offer), before they may complete the transaction. Whether a particular acquisition is subject to these requirements depends upon the value of the acquisition and the size of the parties, as measured by their sales and assets. Small acquisitions, acquisitions involving small parties and other classes of acquisitions which are unlikely to raise antitrust concerns are excluded from the Act's coverage.

The primary purpose of the statutory scheme, as the legislative history makes clear, is to provide the antitrust enforcement agencies with a meaningful opportunity to review mergers and acquisitions before they occur. The premerger notification program, with its filing and waiting period requirements, provides the agencies with both the time and the information to conduct this antitrust review. Much of the information needed for a preliminary antitrust evaluation is included in the notification filed with the agencies and thus is immediately available for review during the initial thirty-day waiting period.

If either agency determines during that initial waiting period that further inquiry is necessary, it is authorized by Section 7A(e) to request additional information or documentary materials from either or both of the parties to a reported transaction. Such a request extends the waiting period for a specified period, usually twenty days, after the requested information and documents are received. This additional time provides the agencies with the opportunity to review the information and to take appropriate action before the transaction is consummated. If either agency believes that a proposed transaction may violate the antitrust laws, the agency may seek an injunction in federal district court to prohibit consummation of the transaction.

Final rules implementing the premerger notification program were promulgated by the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, on July 31, 1978.[1] At that time, a comprehensive Statement of Basis and Purpose was also published containing a section-by-section analysis of the rules and an item-by-item analysis of the Premerger Notification and Report Form. The program became effective on September 5, 1978. In 1983, the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, made several changes in the premerger notification rules. Those amendments became effective on August 29, 1983.[2] Additional amendments were published in the Federal Register on March 6, 1987, and May 29, 1987, and will be discussed hereinafter.

CHANGE TO FISCAL YEAR BASIS

Effective October 1, 1985, the Commission converted the Premerger Notification program to a fiscal year reporting basis from a calendar year basis. Beginning with this year's annual report, information will be furnished for periods covering October 1st through September 30th. The information in this annual report was compiled for fiscal years 1986 and 1987.

STATISTICAL PROFILE OF THE PREMERGER NOTIFICATION PROGRAM

The appendices to this report provide a statistical summary of the operation of the premerger notification program. Appendix A shows for each fiscal year in which the program has been in operation the number of transactions reported, the number of filings received, the number of transactions in which requests for additional information or documentary material (hereinafter referred to as "second requests") were issued, and the number of transactions in which requests for early termination of the waiting period were received, granted, and denied. Appendix B provides a month-by-month comparison of the number of filings received and the number of transactions reported for fiscal year 1979 through 1987. Appendix C shows, for calendar years 1979 through 1985 and fiscal years 1986 and 1987, the number of transactions in which the agencies could have issued second requests, the number of second requests issued, and the percentage of transactions in which second requests were issued. As we explained in the Eighth Annual Report, we believe that Appendix C provides a more meaningful measure of the second request rate than Appendix A because Appendix C eliminates from the total number of transactions certain transactions in which the agencies could not, or as a practical matter would not, issue second requests.[3]

---

[1] 43 Fed. Reg. 33,450 (1978). The rules also appear in 16 C.F.R. Parts 801 through 803. For more information concerning the development of the rules and operating procedures of the premerger notification program, see the second, third and seventh annual reports covering the years 1978, 1979 and 1983, respectively.

[2] 48 Fed. Reg. 34,427 (1983) (codified at 16 C.F.R. Parts 801 through 803).

The statistics set out in these appendices show that the number of transactions reported in 1987 increased 30 percent over the number of transactions reported in 1986 while the number of transactions reported in 1986 increased 22 percent over the number reported in 1985 (2,533 transactions were reported in 1987, 1,949 in 1986 and 1,603 in 1985). The statistics also report the number of second requests issued remained relatively constant from 1985 to 1986 but decreased in 1987. Appendix A shows that 91 second requests were issued in 1985 and in 1986 and that 78 were issued in 1987 while Appendix C shows an increase from 78 in 1985 to 83 in 1986 and a decrease to 81 in 1987. These numbers represent a decrease in the number of second requests issued as a percentage of reported transactions (from 5.7 percent in 1985 to 4.7 percent in 1986 to 3.1 percent in 1987, based on Appendix A, and from 6.0 percent in 1985 to 5.0 percent in 1986 to 3.7 percent in 1987, based on Appendix C).

The statistics also show that the number of transactions involving requests for early termination has again increased dramatically.[4] In 1987, early termination was requested in 2,251 transactions, while in 1986 it was requested in 1,639 transactions and in only 1,281 in 1984. This represents, as a percentage of reported transactions, a request rate in 1987 of 88.9 percent, as compared with 84.1 percent in 1986 and 79.9 percent in 1985. The number of requests granted has increased (from 975 in 1985, to 1,263 in 1986, to 1,739 in 1987) and the percentage of requests granted has also increased slightly (from 76.1 percent in 1985, to 77.1 percent in 1986, to 77.3 percent in 1987).

---

[3] See Appendix C, notes 1 and 2. The second request statistics in Appendices A and C also differ in two other respects. Appendix C includes only the number of second requests issued for transactions reported in each specified year, while Appendix A includes all second requests issued during each fiscal year irrespective of when the filing was actually received. In addition, Appendix A includes secondary acquisitions while Appendix C does not.

We have also included in the report, as Exhibit A, eleven tables containing other information about transactions reported in fiscal year 1985. Some tables break down the number of transactions reported by the dollar value of transactions or by the reporting threshold and indicate the number and percentage of transactions in which clearances to investigate were granted by one antitrust agency to the other and second requests issued for each category of transaction. Other tables provide a breakdown of transactions based on the sales or the assets of the acquiring person or the acquired person or the acquired entity or on the industry group (2-digit SIC code) in which the acquiring person or the acquired entity derive most of their revenues. These statistics have been included in prior annual reports for the calendar years 1981-1984.[5]

RECENT DEVELOPMENTS RELATING TO PREMERGER NOTIFICATION RULES AND PROCEDURES

1. Rule Changes

On September 24, 1985, the Commission published in the Federal Register a Notice of Proposed Rulemaking proposing thirteen changes to the premerger notification rules and the Notification and Report Form.[6] With two exceptions, the proposed rules were designed primarily to reduce the burden of the premerger notification program in three ways: by narrowing the types of acquisitions that are subject to the notification requirement; by reducing the documents and information that must accompany notifications; and by clarifying the meaning of several of the premerger notification rules. The Commission, with the concurrence of the Department of Justice, adopted eight of the proposed changes and they became effective on March 6, 1987.[7] The following list of amendments briefly characterizes each new rule.

---

[4] As noted in the Seventh Annual Report, the increases in the number of requests for early termination and the high proportion of those requests which have been granted are probably attributable to the change in the agencies' standard for granting early termination, adopted in the formal interpretation issued by the Commission on August 20, 1982.

[5] See the Ninth Annual Report, Exhibit A, for 1984 transactions, the Eighth Annual Report, Exhibit A, for 1983 transactions, the Seventh Annual Report, Exhibit B for 1982 transactions, and the Sixth Annual Report, Exhibit A for 1981 transactions.

[6] 50 Fed. Reg. 38,742 (1985).

a. Section 801.11(e): Total Assets of a Newly-Formed Person. This rule codifies an informal interpretation by the Commission staff. The rule states that for determining if a person has the minimum amount of assets to be subject to the reporting requirements of the Act, a newly-formed entity need not include cash that will be used to make an acquisition of assets or voting securities, or securities of the person the entity is acquiring. Thus, the rule does not require notification where the acquisition merely transfers ownership of one business and does not combine two previously separate businesses.

b. Section 801.12(b): Calculating Percentage of Voting Securities to be Held or Acquired. This rule also codifies an informal staff interpretation. The rule states how to calculate the percentage of a person's voting securities held by each shareholder where the person has issued classes of securities that have different voting rights.

c. Section 801.13: Aggregation of Assets and Voting Securities. This rule limits an existing rule. It is no longer necessary to report small acquisitions of assets solely because the acquiring person has made a previous reportable acquisition from the same seller. The effect of this rule is to reduce the coverage of the rules by removing reporting requirements for small acquisitions that are unlikely to pose competitive problems.

d. Section 802.35: Acquisitions by Employee Trusts. This rule creates a new exemption for acquisitions of an employer's voting securities by certain employee trusts. Since the adoption of the tax incentives for certain acquisitions pursuant to Employee Stock Option Plans, such trusts have become common. The rule reduces the coverage of the notification rules but continues the review of other acquisitions by employee trusts that could pose competitive problems.

---

[7] 52 Fed. Reg. 7066 (1987) (to be codified at 16 C.F.R. Parts 801-803). Attached as part of Exhibit B is a copy of the final rules.

e. Section 802.70(b): Acquisitions Subject to Prior Approval. This rule deletes an exemption for acquisitions subject to prior approval orders. Although the exemption affected few transactions, it could have created problems in obtaining consent agreements or orders from businesses subject to prior approval orders.

f. Section 803.5: Affidavit Requirements of the Acquiring Person. This rule codifies the Commission's formal interpretation concerning the notice which must be sent to an acquired person by an acquiring person and describes language for that notice that will be considered acceptable.

g. Section 803.10(a): Running of Time in Section 801.40 Transactions. This rule codifies an informal staff interpretation by stating that the statutory waiting period for the formation of a joint venture does not begin until all persons that are required to report the formation have filed notifications.

h. Revision of the Premerger Notification and Report Form. The Commission adopted eight changes which simplify the Notification and Report Form, and thereby reduce the time required to prepare the Form without impairing the ability to review transactions.

On March 6, 1987, the Commission published in the Federal Register a Notice of Proposed Rulemaking proposing a change in the premerger notification rules to improve their effectiveness by amending the term "control" as it applies to partnerships and other entities that do not have outstanding voting securities.[8] The proposed rule was designed to eliminate a loophole that was perceived to exist for acquisitions undertaken by newly-formed partnerships. The new rule treats partnerships essentially the same as corporations are treated by stating that a partnership is controlled by any person having the right to 50 percent or more of the profits or a right to 50 percent or more of the assets of the partnership in the event of dissolution. The Commission, with the concurrence of the Department of Justice, adopted the proposal as a final rule on May 29, 1987. It became effective on July 3, 1987.[9]

---

[8] 52 Fed. Reg. 7095 (1987). Attached as part of Exhibit B is a copy of the Notice published in the Federal Register.

[9] 52 Fed Reg. 20058 (1987) (to be codified at 16 C.F.R. Part 801). Attached as Exhibit C is a copy of the Notice published in the Federal Register.

2. Compliance

Generally, compliance with the premerger notification program's filing requirements continued to be good in fiscal years 1986 and 1987. As of the end of fiscal year 1987, only two actions have been brought under Section 7A(g)(1) to recover civil penalties for non-compliance since the the program's inception.[10]

However, the agencies examined an unprecedented number of transactions for possible violations of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Act in fiscal years 1986 and 1987. These investigations focused primarily on two issues: the validity of claims that the transactions were exempt and the possibility that transactions were unlawfully structured to evade the reporting requirements of the Act. These investigations grew out of the agencies' monitoring of current transactions to ensure compliance with the program's filing requirements.

The agencies review newspapers and industry publications for announcements of transactions that may not have been reported in accordance with the requirements of the Act. In addition, industry sources, such as competitors, customers and suppliers, and interested members of the public often provide the agencies with further information about transactions and possible violations of the filing requirements. If a proposed transaction is announced that appears to be covered by the statute and rules, but no filing is received within a reasonable time, Commission staff sends letters to the parties requesting an explanation for their failure to file. The same procedure is followed when the staff learns of a consummated transaction for which no prior filing was received. In most of these cases, the inquiries have established that the transactions were not covered by the Act or were exempt from it.

In addition, the agencies have also learned of a number of violations of the Act from parties who have failed to meet their notification requirements. In each of these cases, the parties have belatedly filed Notification and Report Forms when they were made aware of their filing obligation and submitted detailed letters explaining how the violations occurred. In all of the investigations closed by the end of fiscal year 1987, the failure to file was inadvertent rather than deliberate or the result of gross negligence. None of these investigations has involved a transaction that presented the serious possibility of a violation of the antitrust laws.

---

[10] One action was brought in 1984. United States v. Coastal Corporation, Cv. No. 84-2675 (D.D.C. filed Aug. 30, 1984). Coastal paid the maximum civil penalty authorized and divested the stock that it was alleged to have acquired illegally. The other action was brought in 1985. United States v. Bell Resources Ltd., Weeks Petroleum Ltd., and M.R.H. Holmes a Court, 85 Civ. 6202 (S.D.N.Y. filed Aug. 9, 1985). Under a consent decree, Weeks was required to pay a civil penalty of $450,000.

MERGER ENFORCEMENT ACTIVITY DURING FY 1986[11]

The Antitrust Division filed six complaints in merger cases during fiscal year 1986.[12] Five of these cases, United States v. Baxter Travenol Laboratories, Inc. and American Hospital Supply Corporation, United States v. S.p.A. Officine Maccaferri, et al., United States v. Pacific Telesis Group and Communications Industries, Inc., United States v. General Electric Company, and United States v. Data Card Corporation, have been settled by the entry of consent decrees. The other case, United States v. Syufy Enterprises and Raymond J. Syufy, is pending.

In United States v. Baxter Travenol Laboratories, Inc. and American Hospital Supply Corporation, the Division challenged Baxter Travenol's proposed acquisition of American Hospital Supply Corporation. The suit alleged that Baxter Travenol's acquisition of American Hospital Supply would lessen competition in five health-care product markets: parenteral solutions (sterile intravenous (IV) fluids); fluid administration sets (disposable devices attached to parenteral solutions or blood containers through which parenteral solutions or blood flows to patients); electronic flow control devices (electro-mechanical devices that infuse fluids at predetermined rates into patients during intravenous therapy); therapeutic hemapheresis equipment (devices that separate blood into components for therapeutic uses); and surgeons' gloves and procedure gloves (used inside and outside the operating room for surgical procedures). The defendants entered into a series of divestiture and contractual agreements to resolve the competitive problems that would arise from the acquisition. The consent decree ensures that the defendants will perform each of these agreements, and, if they do not, that the assets involved will be divested by a trustee in a manner that will preserve effective competition in each of the five affected markets.

---

[11] The cases mentioned in this report were not necessarily reportable under the premerger notification program. Because of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Act's provisions regarding the confidentiality of the information obtained pursuant to this program, it would be inappropriate to identify which cases were initiated under the premerger notification program.

[12] United States v. Baxter Travenol Laboratories, Inc. and American Hospital Supply Corporation, Cv. No. 85C09856 (N.D. Ill. filed Nov. 22, 1985); United States v. S.p.A. Officine Maccaferri, et al., Cv. No. B-86-612 (D. Md. filed Feb. 24, 1986); United States v. Pacific Telesis Group and Communications Industries, Inc., Cv. No. 86-1298-RMT (C.D. Cal. filed Feb. 28, 1986); United States v. Syufy Enterprises and Raymond J. Syufy, Cv. No. C-86-3057 (N.D. Cal. filed June 6, 1986); United States v. General Electric Company, Cv. No. 86-1578 (D.D.C. filed June 6, 1986); and United States v. Data Card Corporation, Cv. No. 86-2339 (D.D.C. filed Aug. 22, 1986).

In United States v. S.p.A. Officine Maccaferri, et al., the Division challenged the 1983 acquisition of Terra Aqua, Inc. of Reno, Nevada, by S.p.A. Officine Maccaferri of Bologna, Italy, alleging a lessening of competition in the United States for the manufacture and sale of gabions. Prior to the acquisition, these companies were the only two manufacturers of gabions in the United States. Gabions are rectangular wire mesh containers which are filled with hand-size stones and wired together to form large structures that are used in river training, flood control, landscaping, and erosion control. They are used primarily in public works projects. The consent decree required Officine Maccaferri and River and Sea Gabions (London) Limited to sell their interests in Terra Aqua within six months.

In United States v. Pacific Telesis Group and Communications Industries, Inc., the Division challenged Pacific Telesis' (a San Francisco corporation) proposed acquisition of Communications Industries (a Dallas, Texas corporation) alleging a violation of Section 7 of the Clayton Act and Section 1 of the Sherman Act in the market for the provision of cellular radio service in Los Angeles. (The only two firms licensed to provide cellular radio service in Los Angeles would become partners in Dallas-Ft. Worth and the transfer of information between the two firms could impede competition in the Los Angeles cellular radio service market.) Cellular radio service is a high-capacity, two-way mobile telephone service. Under the consent decree, Pacific Telesis' participation in the Dallas-Ft. Worth partnership is limited to an essentially passive investment interest. The decree prohibits Pacific Telesis from playing an active role in the Metroplex Telephone Company in Dallas-Ft. Worth and from obtaining information about that system to which it would otherwise be entitled.

In United States v. General Electric Company, the Division challenged the acquisition by General Electric of RCA Corporation's assets used in the manufacture and sale of vidicon tubes. Vidicon tubes are image tubes that convert an optical image into an electrical signal. They are used in camera systems for television broadcasting, closed-circuit monitor services, medical applications, industrial processes, and military applications, such as tracking surveillance. The consent decree required General Electric to sell its vidicon tube business by November 3, 1986.

In United States v. Data Card Corporation, the Division alleged that Data Card's proposed acquisition of DBS, Incorporated would prove anticompetitive in the market for automatically fed, low-volume embossers. Embossers are machines used to make the raised lettering on plastic or metal cards, such as credit or identification cards. Such embossers (which are capable of producing 100-200 cards per hour) are used primarily by hospitals to produce embossed plastic patient identification cards. The consent decree required Data Card to sell one of the embosser product lines it acquired from DBS.

In United States v. Syufy Enterprises and Raymond J. Syufy, the Division challenged Syufy's October, 1984, acquisition of the Red Rock Theatre in Las Vegas on the grounds that the acquisition unduly decreased competition in the market for first-run motion picture exhibition in Las Vegas, Nevada. In addition, the suit alleged that since at least 1982, Syufy Enterprises attempted to monopolize, and since at least October, 1984, has monopolized the business of first-run motion picture exhibition in Las Vegas, Nevada, in violation of Section 2 of the Sherman Act. The suit is pending.

On several occasions during fiscal year 1986 the Division investigated bank merger transactions for which divestitures were required to cure competitive problems. In the following transactions, a "not significantly adverse" letter was sent to the Federal Reserve Board or FDIC, conditioned on divestiture prior to or concurrent with consummation of the transaction:

1. First Alabama Bank, Montgomery, AL- First State Bank of Alabama, Decatur, AL.

2. Wells Fargo Co., San Francisco, CA- Crocker National Corp., San Francisco, CA.

3. First of America Corp., Kalamazoo, MI- New Century Bank Corp., Bay City, MI.

4. Marshall & Ilsley Bancorp., Milwaukee, WI- Affiliated Bancorp., Stevens Point, WI.

Finally, the Division entered into a consent decree in one merger case in which the complaint had been filed prior to October 1, 1985.[13]

---

[13] United States v. Allied Corporation, Civ. No. 85-2475 (D.D.C. filed August 2, 1985, consent decree entered November 4, 1985).

The Commission authorized its staff to seek a preliminary injunction in five merger cases during fiscal year 1986.

In one of those cases, the parties abandoned the transaction before the motion for a preliminary injunction was filed in court.[14]

In Federal Trade Commission v. Occidental Petroleum Corp.,[15] the Commission charged that Occidental's proposed acquisition of certain plastic-production assets of Tenneco Inc. would substantially reduce competition in the production of three polyvinyl chloride resin products. The court granted the Commission's request for a temporary restraining order on April 3, 1986. The Commission's motion for a preliminary injunction was denied on April 30, 1986. The parties consummated the transaction and the case against Occidental is currently in litigation before an Administrative Law Judge. In the case against Tenneco, the Commission has issued a decision and order which requires Tenneco to consent to the assignment of assets by Occidental if the Commission issues an order requiring Occidental to divest certain assets.[16]

In Federal Trade Commission v. The Coca-Cola Co.,[17] the Commission charged that Coca-Cola's proposed acquisition of the Dr Pepper Co. would reduce competition in the production, distribution, and sale of carbonated soft drinks and soft drink concentrates. A preliminary injunction action was filed on June 24, 1986, and the court granted the preliminary injunction on July 31, 1986. Subsequently, the parties abandoned the proposed acquisition. The administrative complaint is currently in litigation.

---

[14] FTC news release issued June 20, 1986, involving the proposed acquisition by PepsiCo Inc. of the Seven-Up Co. The news release reported that the Commission believed that the proposed acquisition could reduce competition in the distribution and sale of carbonated soft drinks in the United States.

[15] Federal Trade Commission v. Occidental Petroleum Corp., 1986-1 Trade Cas. (CCH) ¶67,071 at 62,508 (D.D.C. 1986), vacated as moot, No. 86-5254 (D.C. Cir. Oct. 23, 1986).

[16] Tenneco Inc. (issued July 19, 1988).

[17] Federal Trade Commission v. Coca-Cola Co., 641 F. Supp. 1128 (D.D.C. 1986). The Court of Appeals vacated the preliminary injunction on the ground of mootness and remanded with instructions to dismiss the court action. Federal Trade Commission v. Coca-Cola Co., 829 F.2d 191 (D.C. Cir. 1987).

In Federal Trade Commission v. PPG Industries, Inc. and Swedlow, Inc.,[18] the Commission charged that a proposed merger between two leading manufacturers of aircraft windshields, canopies, and cockpit and cabin windows would create a single firm possessing a near monopoly on the technology for the fabrication of glass and acrylic aircraft transparencies. A preliminary injunction action was filed on January 6, 1986. On February 21, 1986, the court granted the preliminary injunction pending the submission of an acceptable hold separate order. Subsequently, the court modified its decree by entering a hold separate order. The Commission appealed that decision and, on August 22, 1986, the appellate court reversed the lower court's ruling and directed the issuance of a preliminary injunction. In February, 1987, the parties abandoned the merger.

The fifth case in which the Commission authorized staff to seek a preliminary injunction involved Occidental Petroleum Corporation's proposed acquisition of Midcon Corporation. The Commission charged that Occidental's merger with Midcon would substantially lessen competition in pipeline transportation and the sale of natural gas in the St. Louis area. The preliminary injunction action was not filed since Occidental agreed to divest Midcon's Mississippi River Transmission Corp. subsidiary which operates a natural gas pipeline from the east Texas and northern Louisiana producing areas to St. Louis. The Commission issued a complaint and decision and order on June 25, 1986.[19]

The Commission issued a decision and complaint and order in six other merger cases in fiscal year 1986 in which it had previously accepted consent agreements for public comment.[20]

In Columbian Enterprises, Inc., Columbian, the third largest U.S. producer of carbon black, sought to acquire the Continental Carbon Company, the nation's sixth largest producer. In 1984, the Commission sought and was granted a preliminary injunction against Columbian, based upon the anticompetitive effects of the proposed acquisition. In November, 1985, the Commission issued an order under which Columbian agreed not to acquire, for a period of five years, any part of the U.S. rubber carbon black business of any other person if, as a result of the acquisition, Columbian would increase its U.S. rubber carbon black production capacity by more than 130 million pounds. Columbian further agreed, for a period of five years, to obtain the prior approval of the Commission before completing any acquisition not prohibited by the order.

---

[18] Federal Trade Commission v. PPG Industries, Inc. and Swedlow, Inc., 628 F. Supp. 881 (D.D.C. 1986), aff'd in part and rev'd in part, 798 F.2d 1500 (D.C. Cir. 1986).

[19] Occidental Petroleum Corporation, 109 F.T.C. 167 (1986).

[20] Columbian Enterprises, Inc., 106 F.T.C. 551 (1985); MidCon Corporation, 107 F.T.C. 48 (1986); Ashland Oil Inc., 107 F.T.C. 303 (1986); Bass Brothers Enterprises, Inc., 108 F.T.C. 51 (1986); Warner Communications, Inc., 108 F.T.C. 105 (1986); and Polygram Records, Inc., 108 F.T.C. 112 (1986).

In Occidental Petroleum Corporation, the Commission charged that Occidental's merger with MidCon Corporation would substantially lessen competition in pipeline transportation and the sale of natural gas in the St. Louis area. Occidental agreed to divest MidCon's Mississippi River Transmission Corp. subsidiary which operates a natural gas pipeline from the east Texas and northern Louisiana producing areas to St. Louis.

In MidCon Corporation, the Commission charged that MidCon's acquisition of the stock of United Energy Resources, Inc. would lessen competition in the transportation of natural gas in various parts of the United States. MidCon agreed to divest various gas gathering and transmission facilities.

In Ashland Oil Inc., the Commission charged that a proposed merger between Bass Brothers Enterprises, Inc. and Ashland's Carbon Black Division would be anticompetitive. Ashland Oil Inc. agreed to obtain Commission approval before selling any of its domestic carbon black plants to a major competitor. In Bass Brothers Enterprises, Inc., Bass Brothers agreed to terminate any agreement that provided for the acquisition of Ashland's carbon black business.

In Warner Communications, Inc. and PolyGram Records, Inc. the Commission issued complaints and decisions and orders settling charges that the proposed merger of Warner Communications and PolyGram Records would lessen competition in the prerecorded music industry. Under the orders, Warner and Polygram are prohibited from acquisitions involving three major competitors without the prior approval of the Commission and both must provide the Commission with notice before entering into relationships with those competitors.

In fiscal year 1986, the Commission also accepted a consent order for public comment in Champion International Corporation[21] settling antitrust charges stemming from Champion's acquisition of St. Regis Corporation. The consent order was withdrawn after Champion voluntarily divested a St. Regis linerboard mill in Tacoma, Washington.

MERGER ENFORCEMENT ACTIVITY DURING FY 1987

The Antitrust Division filed six complaints in merger cases during fiscal year 1987.[22] Four of these cases, United States v. Rohm and Haas Company, United States v. Domtar Inc., et al., United States v. Hughes Tool Company and Baker International Corporation, and United States v. The Dow Chemical Company and Ethyl Corporation, have been settled by the entry of consent decrees. In the two remaining cases, United States v. MacAndrews and Forbes Group, Inc., et al., and United States v. Rheem Manufacturing Company, et al., the Division voluntarily dismissed the lawsuits when the proposed transactions were abandoned by the parties.

In United States v. Rohm and Haas Company, the Division challenged the acquisition by Rohm and Haas Company of the ion exchange resins business and assets of Duolite International, Inc., a subsidiary of Diamond Shamrock Corporation. Ion exchange resins are synthetic resinous beads principally used to remove objectionable ions from aqueous solutions, thereby purifying the solution. In 1983, total sales of such resins in the United States amounted to approximately $112 million. Rohm and Haas accounted for approximately 35 percent of those sales and Duolite accounted for approximately 16 percent. The consent decree required Rohm and Haas to seek a buyer for the Duolite ion exchange resin plant located in Redwood City, California, and to license relevant technology for the manufacture and sale of Duolite ion exchange resins.

---

[21] Champion International Corporation (accepted for public comment on February 20, 1986; withdrawn July 10, 1986).

[22] United States v. Rohm and Haas Company, Cv. No. 86-3091 (D.D.C. filed November 10, 1986); United States v. MacAndrews and Forbes Group, Inc., et al., Cv. No. 86-8055JMI(KX) (C.D. Cal. filed December 10, 1986); United States v. Rheem Manufacturing Company, et al., Cv. No. G87-40CA1 (W.D. Mich. filed January 16, 1987); United States v. Domtar Inc., et al., Cv. No. C87-0689RFP (N.D. Cal. filed February 25, 1987); United States v. Hughes Tool Company and Baker International Corporation, Cv. No. 87-0932 (D.D.C. filed April 3, 1987); and United States v. The Dow Chemical Company and Ethyl Corporation, Cv. No. 87-C-4280 (N.D. Ill. filed May 11, 1987).

In United States v. Domtar Inc., et al., the Division challenged Domtar's proposed acquisition of the Genstar Gypsum Products Company. The complaint alleged that the acquisition would prove anticompetitive in the market for gypsum board in the Pacific Southwest, an area consisting of southern California, southern Nevada and Arizona. Gypsum board is a principal component in new building construction. In 1985, total sales of gypsum board in the Pacific Southwest market were over $250 million--Domtar was the third largest producer and Genstar was the fourth largest producer. The consent decree required Domtar to sell Genstar's Pacific Southwest operations within six months.

In United States v. Hughes Tool Company and Baker International Corporation, the Division challenged the proposed merger of the two companies alleging a lessening of competition in the U.S. markets for tricon rock bits and electric submersible oil well pumps. Tricon rock bits are drill bits, with steel teeth or tungsten carbide inserts, that are used in oil and gas drilling. Electric submersible oil well pumps are driven by electric motors and placed at the bottom of an oil well to lift oil to the surface. Both Hughes Tool and Baker International are major manufacturers of tricon rock bits and electric submersible oil well pumps. In 1986, total sales of tricon rock bits in the United States totaled approximately $200 million. Hughes Tool accounted for approximately 28 percent and Baker International accounted for approximately 17 percent of those sales. Total sales of electric submersible oil well pumps in the United States were approximately $110 million in 1986. Hughes Tool accounted for approximately 28 percent and Baker Lift Systems accounted for approximately six percent. The consent decree required Baker International to sell the tricon rock bit operations of its Reed Tool Company subsidiary and the electric submersible oil well pump operations of its Baker Lift Systems division.

In United States v. The Dow Chemical Company and Ethyl Corporation, the Division challenged Ethyl's proposed acquisition of Dow's Bromine and Brominated Chemicals Division. The complaint alleged that the proposed acquisition would substantially lessen competition in the United States for the manufacture and sale of bromides used in brominated clear brine fluids (used in the oil and gas industry to counterbalance the downhole pressure of oil and gas wells during completion and workover procedures to prevent blowouts or geysers). In 1986, sales to the U.S. oil and gas industry of bromides used in brominated clear brine fluids totalled over $30 million. Dow is the second largest producer of these bromides and Ethyl is the third largest, with 1986 sales in the U.S. of about $9 million and $5 million, respectively. The consent decree required divestiture of Dow's brominated clear brine fluid business.

In United States v. MacAndrews and Forbes Group, Inc., et al., the Division challenged the proposed acquisition by MacAndrews & Forbes Group, Inc. of Metrocolor Laboratories from Lorimar-Telepictures alleging a lessening of competition in two markets: the production of 35 millimeter release prints for motion pictures receiving national distribution and the production of 70 millimeter release prints. Total sales in 1985 of 35 millimeter release prints for exhibition in the U.S. exceeded $100 million; 70 millimeter release prints exceeded $10 million. The acquisition would have combined two of the three primary film laboratories used by motion picture studios in the U.S. for processing 35 millimeter and 70 millimeter release prints for major motion pictures. After the Division filed suit, MacAndrews announced it would abandon its attempt to acquire Metrocolor. To settle other concerns of the Division, MacAndrews and Lorimar entered into an agreement whereby Lorimar would operate Metrocolor as a vigorous competitor in the film laboratory business. The complaint was then moot and was voluntarily dismissed by the Division.

In United States v. Rheem Manufacturing Company, et al., the Division challenged the proposed acquisition by Rheem Manufacturing Co. of Bradford-White Corporation. The complaint alleged that the proposed acquisition would lessen competition in the manufacture and sale of residential water heaters in the United States. In 1985, sales of residential water heaters in the U.S. totalled approximately $915 million; Rheem and Bradford-White had total sales of approximately $262 million. The parties abandoned the transaction and the Division dismissed the lawsuit.

On several occasions during fiscal year 1987 the Division investigated bank merger transactions for which divestitures were required to cure competitive problems. In the following four transactions, a "not significantly adverse" letter was sent to the Federal Reserve Board, conditioned on divestiture prior to or concurrent with consummation of the transaction:

1. Bank of New England Corporation, Boston, Massachusetts, acquisition of Conifer Group, Inc., Worcester, Massachusetts;

2. Republicbank Corporation, Dallas, Texas, acquisition of Interfirst Corporation, Dallas, Texas;

3. Amoskeag Bank Shares, Inc., Manchester, New Hampshire, acquisition of NTC Corporation, Nashua, New Hampshire; and

4. Marshall & Isley Corporation, Milwaukee, Wisconsin, acquisition of Central Wisconsin Bankshares, Inc., Wausau, Wisconsin.

In addition, during fiscal year 1987, the Division advised parties in two merger transactions that it would file suit if the mergers were consummated. In one instance, the parties abandoned the proposed transaction (Surgical Associates of Western Connecticut, P.C., and Danbury Surgical Associates, P.C.); in the other instance, the merger was approved after certain restructuring conditions were met (American Brands proposed merger with Acco World Corporation).

Finally, the Division entered into consent decrees in two merger cases in which the complaints had been filed prior to October 1, 1986.[23]

The Commission authorized its staff to seek a preliminary injunction in seven merger cases in fiscal year 1987.

In four of those cases, the parties abandoned the transaction before the motion for preliminary injunction was filed in court.[24]

---

[23] United States v. National Medical Enterprises, Inc. and NME Hospitals, Inc., Cv. No. F-83-481-REC (E.D. Cal. filed February 21, 1984; consent decree entered April 16, 1987); and United States v. Industrial Asphalt, et al., Cv. No. 85-4631(RG) (C.D. Cal. filed July 15, 1985; consent decree entered June 25, 1987).

[24] FTC news release issued September 16, 1987, involving the proposed acquisition by Sunds AB, a Swedish company, of the Impco division of Ingersoll-Rand Co. The Impco division makes and sells pulp machinery and equipment. The news release reported that the Commission believed that the acquisition would substantially reduce competition in the production and sale of equipment used to bleach wood pulp to be made into paper. FTC news release issued August 7, 1987, involving the proposed merger of Huntco Health Care Inc. into Invacare Corp. The news release reported that the Commission had reason to believe that the proposed merger would substantially lessen competition in the production and sale of homecare beds, which are portable health-care beds rented by consumers for home use. FTC news release issued December 30, 1986, involving the proposed acquisition by Conoco, Inc., a subsidiary of E.I. Dupont DeNemours & Co., of Asamera Inc. The news release reported that the Commission believed that the acquisition of Asamera's Denver area refinery would substantially lessen competition and increase prices for gasoline, diesel fuel, and other refined products in Denver and in eastern Colorado, and that the acquisition would lessen competition in the purchase and transportation of crude oil in the Denver area. FTC news release issued December 2, 1986, involving the proposed acquisition by Kidde Inc. of the crane

(continued...)

In Federal Trade Commission v. Pacific Resources, Inc., et al.,[25] the Commission filed for a preliminary injunction charging that the acquisition by Pacific Resources, Inc. of Shell Oil Company's Hawaiian petroleum and marketing assets would substantially reduce competition in the distribution of gasoline and other petroleum fuels in Hawaii. The court granted the preliminary injunction on November 6, 1987. Subsequently, the parties abandoned the transaction. On August 29, 1988, the Commission accepted a consent agreement for public comment to settle the charges in this matter.

In two of the cases in which a preliminary injunction action was authorized in fiscal year 1987 and in which the Commission had accepted a consent agreement for public comment, the Commission has issued a complaint and decision and order. In American Hoechst Corporation,[26] the Commission charged that American Hoechst Corporation's acquisition of Celanese Corporation would substantially lessen competition in the production of polyester textile fiber in the United States by greatly increasing concentration and significantly enhancing the likelihood of collusion among the remaining firms in the industry. American Hoechst agreed to divest certain polyester fiber assets and to hold the Celanese polyester textile fiber assets separate until the divestiture is made.

In Supermarket Development Corporation,[27] Supermarket Development Corporation ("SDC") sought to acquire Safeway's El Paso Division which operates supermarkets in south and west Texas and New Mexico. The order calls for SDC to hold separate Safeway's El Paso Division until it divests certain of the Division's assets.

The Commission issued a complaint and decision and order in two other merger cases in fiscal year 1987 in which it had previously accepted consent agreements for public comment. In

---

[24] (...continued) business of Harnischfeger Corporation. The news release reported that the Commission believed that the proposed acquisition would reduce competition in the sale of mobile hydraulic cranes in the United States.

[25] Federal Trade Commission v. Pacific Resources, Inc., et al., Cv. No. C87-1390C (W.D. Wash. filed October 15, 1987; preliminary injunction order entered November 6, 1987).

[26] American Hoechst Corporation (issued July 2, 1987).

[27] Supermarket Development Corporation (issued Mar. 17, 1988).

Alleghany Corporation,[28] the Commission charged that Alleghany's proposed acquisition of Safeco Title Insurance Company would reduce competition in the production and sale of title information in Cook County, Illinois, and Los Angeles County, California. Alleghany agreed to divest either Safeco's or Alleghany's title information plants.

In L'Air Liquide,[29] the Commission charged that L'Air Liquide S.A.'s proposed acquisition of Big Three Industries Inc. would reduce competition in the production and sale of liquid gas. Under the order, L'Air Liquide agreed to divest certain assets, including several air separation gases plants, to resolve the Commission's antitrust concerns.

In one merger case in which the administrative complaint was issued before October 1, 1985, the Commission's final order became effective after the Supreme Court denied respondent's petition for certiorari.[30] In Hospital Corporation of America, the Commission charged that HCA's acquisition of two hospitals may substantially lessen competition in the acute care hospital services market in the Chattanooga, Tennessee, area. HCA was ordered to divest two hospitals it had acquired in Hamilton County, Tennessee, and to terminate a management contract it had with another hospital in Hamilton County. HCA was further ordered to obtain Commission approval for a period of ten years prior to consummating certain future hospital acquisitions.

ASSESSMENT OF THE EFFECTS OF THE PREMERGER NOTIFICATION PROGRAM

Although a complete assessment of the impact of the premerger notification program on the business community and on antitrust enforcement is not possible in this limited report, the following observations can be made.

First, as indicated in past annual reports, one of the premerger notification program's primary objectives, eliminating the so-called "midnight merger," has been achieved. The requirement that parties file and wait ensures that virtually all significant mergers or acquisitions occurring in the United States will be reviewed by the antitrust agencies prior to consummation. The agencies generally have the opportunity to challenge unlawful transactions before they occur, thus avoiding the problem of constructing effective post-acquisition relief.

---

[28] Allegheny Corporation (issued September 9, 1987).

[29] L'Air Liquide (issued July 15, 1987).

[30] Hospital Corporation of America, 106 F.T.C. 361 (1985), aff'd and enforced, Hospital Corporation of America v. Federal Trade Commission, 807 F.2d 1381 (7th Cir. 1986), cert. denied, 107 S.Ct. 1975 (1987).

Second, in most cases the parties provide sufficient information to allow the enforcement agencies to determine promptly whether a transaction raises any antitrust problems. In addition, over the years, parties have increasingly supplied information voluntarily to the Commission and the Antitrust Division. This cooperation has resulted in fewer second requests than would otherwise have been necessary.

Finally, the existence of the premerger notification program alerts businesses to the antitrust concerns raised by proposed transactions. In addition, the greatly increased probability that antitrust violations will be detected prior to consummation may deter some competitively questionable transactions. Prior to the premerger notification program, businesses could, and frequently did, consummate transactions which raised significant antitrust concerns, before the antitrust agencies had the opportunity to adequately consider their competitive effects. The enforcement agencies were forced to pursue lengthy post-acquisition litigation during the course of which the consummated transaction continued in place (and afterwards as well, where effective post-acquisition relief was not possible or available). Because the premerger notification program requires reporting before consummation, this problem has been significantly reduced.

The Assistant Attorney General of the Antitrust Division concurs with this annual report.

November 10, 1988

List of Appendices

Appendix A - Summary of Transactions, Fiscal Years 1979-1987.

Appendix B - Number of Filings Received and Transactions Reported by Month for Fiscal Years 1979-1987.

Appendix C - Transactions in Which Additional Information Was Requested for Calendar Years 1981-1985 and Fiscal Years 1986-1987.

List of Attachments

Exhibit A - Statistical tables for fiscal year 1985, presenting data profiling Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification filings and enforcement interest.

Exhibit B - Notices of Final Rulemaking, 52 Fed. Reg. 7066 (1987) and Notice of Proposed Rulemaking, 52 Fed. Reg. 7095 (1987).

Exhibit C - Notice of Final Rulemaking, 52 Fed. Reg. 20058 (1987).

APPENDIX A

SUMMARY OF TRANSACTIONS
FISCAL YEARS

	1979	1980	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
TRANSACTIONS REPORTED	861	784	996*	1203	1093	1340	1603	1949	2533
FILINGS RECEIVED 1/	1643	1552	1804	2056	1971	2418	2975	3611	4742
TRANSACTIONS WHERE ADDITIONAL INFORMATION WAS REQUESTED	124	71	74	72	36	75	91	91	78
FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION 2/	71 4/	35 6/	38 8/	44 10/	14 12/	36 14/	32 16/	43 18/	26 20/
JUSTICE DEPARTMENT 3/	53 5/	36 7/	36 9/	28 11/	22 13/	39 15/	59 17/	48 19/	52 21/
NUMBER OF TRANSACTIONS INVOLVING A REQUEST FOR EARLY TERMINATION 3/	123 22/	100 22/	164 22/	222 22/	606 22/	963 22/	1281 22/	1639 22/	2251 22/
GRANTED 3/	60 23/	75	135	142	495	781	975	1263	1739
NOT GRANTED 3/	62	22	26	63	103	153	288	362	494

---

1 Usually, two filings are received, one from the acquiring person and one from the acquired person when a transaction is reported. Only one filing is received when an acquiring party files for an exemption under sections 7A (c)(6) or (c)(8) of the Clayton Act.

2 These statistics are based on the date the request was issued and not the date of the H-S-R filing.

3 These statistics are based on the date of the H-S-R filing and not the date action was taken on the request.

4 Includes fifteen transactions for which H-S-R filings were withdrawn after the issuance of a second request. Also, one additional filing was withdrawn after a request for a preliminary injunction was filed.

5 Includes three transactions for which H-S-R filings were withdrawn after the issuance of a second request.

quest. One additional filing was withdrawn after the FTC authorized its staff to seek a preliminary injunction. Also includes one transaction in which the FTC withdrew its request.

7 Includes four transactions for which H-S-R filings were withdrawn after the issuance of a second request.

8 Includes two transactions for which H-S-R filings were withdrawn after issuance of a second request.

9 Includes one transaction for which H-S-R filings were withdrawn after the issuance a second request and one in which the Antitrust Division withdrew its request.

10 Includes six transactions for which H-S-R filings were withdrawn after the issuance of a second request and three that were withdrawn after a request for a preliminary injunction was filed. Also, includes one in which the FTC withdrew its request.

11 Includes one transaction in which the Antitrust Division withdrew its request.

12 Includes one transaction for which H-S-R filings were withdrawn after the issuance of a second request.

13 Includes one transaction for which H-S-R filings were withdrawn after the issuance of a second request, and one in which the Antitrust Division withdrew its request.

14 Includes five transactions for which H-S-R filings were withdrawn after the issuance of a second request, one that was restructured and refiled, and one that was withdrawn after the FTC authorized its staff to seek a preliminary injunction.

15 Includes two transactions in which the parties abandoned the proposed acquisition after the issuance of a second request.

16 Includes one transaction in which the parties abandoned the proposed acquisition after the issuance of a second request. The H-S-R filings in three other transactions were withdrawn after the FTC authorized its staff to seek three separate preliminary injunctions and one transaction was abandoned after the filing of a preliminary injunction and the issuance of an administrative complaint.

17 Includes five transactions for which the H-S-R filings were withdrawn after the issuance of a second request.

18 Includes two transactions for which the H-S-R filings were withdrawn after the issuance of a second request. The H-S-R filings in two other transactions were withdrawn after the FTC authorized its staff to seek a preliminary injunction and one other was withdrawn after a motion for a preliminary injunction had been filed.

19 Includes two transactions for which the H-S-R filings were withdrawn after the issuance of a second request.

20 Includes three transactions abandoned after the issuance of a second request. Three other transactions were abandoned after the FTC authorized staff to seek a preliminary injunction.

21 The H-S-R filings were withdrawn in one transaction after the issuance of a second request; another was withdrawn after a complaint was filed in a federal district court.

22 Includes the following number of non-reportable transactions: three in both 1979 and 1980; two in 1981; fifteen in 1982; eight in 1983, twenty-nine in 1984; eighteen in 1985, fourteen in 1986, and eighteen in 1987.

23 Includes two transactions that were granted early termination sua sponte.

APPENDIX B

Table 1. Number of Filings Received 1/ by Month for the Fiscal Years 1979 - 1987

	1979	1980	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
October	122	228	159	249	199	155	229	350	623
November	158	207	142	200	181	210	269	348	821
December	108	108	152	200	167	212	194	263	404
January	127	105	134	144	149	131	211	199	177
February	150	113	108	104	116	180	210	221	193
March	146	103	145	181	148	255	295	287	278
April	112	108	111	152	129	212	267	238	314
May	166	94	163	169	139	199	286	350	351
June	142	110	161	213	191	193	232	308	360
July	168	104	183	178	169	211	302	337	417
August	141	143	162	144	199	260	239	351	378
September	103	129	184	122	184	200	241	361	428
TOTAL	1643	1552	1804	2056	1971	2418	2975	3611	4742

---

1 Usually, two filings are received, one from the acquiring person and one from the acquired person, when a transaction is reported. Only one filing is received when an acquiring person files for a transaction that is exempt under Sections 7A (c)(6) and (c)(8) of the Clayton Act.

APPENDIX B

Table 2. Number of Transactions Reported by Month for the Fiscal Years 1979 - 1987

	1979	1980	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
October	63	78	91	116	89	89	132	195	280
November	80	65	78	117	100	107	145	187	494
December	67	54	88	111	96	124	103	144	199
January	71	56	73	92	91	76	111	108	96
February	75	64	60	67	57	98	110	120	104
March	75	58	75	105	80	138	153	149	163
April	57	60	84	95	81	118	149	131	162
May	84	55	92	105	88	107	156	211	185
June	78	64	87	131	104	112	126	145	197
July	68	80	107	102	92	120	160	180	216
August	75	82	92	91	116	144	136	187	194
September	50	68	89	71	99	109	122	192	231
TOTAL	861	784	996	1203	1093	1340	1603	1949	2533

Appendix C

Transactions in Which Additional Information Was Requested for Calendar Years 1981 - 1984 and Fiscal Years 1985 - 1987 1/

	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Transactions 2/	762	713	903	1119	1301	1660	2187
Requests for Additional Information							
Number	78	42	51	71	78	83	81
Percent 3/	10.2	5.9	5.6	6.3	6.0	5.0	3.7

---

1 The statistics are based on the date of the H-S-R filing, not the date on which the request was issued.

2 These figures omit from the total number of transactions reported all transactions for which the agencies were not authorized to request additional information. These include (1) incomplete transactions (only one party filed a compliant notification); (2) transactions reported pursuant to the exemption provisions of sections 7A(c) (6) and 7A(c) (8) of the Act; and (3) transactions which were found to be non-reportable. In addition, where a party filed more than one notification in the same year to acquire voting securities of the same corporation, e.g., filing for the 15% threshold and later filing for the 25% threshold, only a single consolidated transaction has been counted because, as a practical matter, the agencies do not issue more than one second request in such a case. Similarly, where a party has filed for a cash tender offer to acquire 50% of a target's voting securities and has also filed for the exercise of an option to acquire shares from the target issuer and for a subsequent merger, the transaction is assigned three numbers by the Premerger Office but treated in this table as one transaction. In contrast, the same transaction would be counted as three transactions on Table A and, if second requests were issued, as three second requests.

These statistics also omit from the total number of transactions reported secondary acquisitions filed pursuant to §801.30 (a) (4) of the premerger notification rules. Secondary acquisitions have been deducted in order to be consistent with the statistics for the fiscal 1985 transactions included in Exhibit A, Tables I through XI, and similar statistics for calendar 1981-1984 transactions included in prior annual reports. Appendix C in the Eighth Annual Report did not exclude secondary acquisitions. Accordingly, the number of transactions for 1981 - 1984 appearing herein differ from those that appear in Appendix C in that report. Note also that Appendix C in the Ninth Annual Report contained calendar year 1985 figures while this chart shows fiscal 1985 figures.

[3] Second requests as a percentage of the total number of transactions listed in this table.

TABLE 1

ACQUISITIONS BY SIZE OF TRANSACTION, 1/ FISCAL YEAR 1985 2/
(BY SIZE RANGE)

TRANSACTION RANGE	H-S-R TRANSACTIONS		CLEARANCE GRANTED TO FTC OR DOJ					SECOND REQUESTS ISSUED				
			NUMBER		PERCENT 3/			NUMBER		PERCENT 5/		
($MILLIONS)	NUMBER3/	PERCENT4/	FTC	DOJ	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	FTC	DOJ	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL
LESS THAN 15	129	9.9	5	4	3.9	3.1	7.0	1	2	.8	1.6	2.3
15 UP TO 25	272	20.9	5	18	1.8	6.6	8.5	2	5	.7	1.8	2.6
25 UP TO 50	342	26.3	20	26	5.8	7.6	13.5	6	18	1.8	5.3	7.0
50 UP TO 100	234	18.0	22	20	9.4	8.5	17.9	8	7	3.4	3.0	6.4
100 UP TO 150	109	8.4	9	5	8.3	4.6	12.8	1	2	.9	1.8	2.8
150 UP TO 200	58	4.5	7	4	12.1	6.9	19.0	3	2	5.2	3.4	8.6
200 UP TO 300	49	3.8	2	7	4.1	14.3	18.4	0	3	-	6.1	6.1
300 UP TO 500	54	4.2	7	10	13.0	18.5	31.5	2	4	3.7	7.4	11.1
500 UP TO 1000	21	1.6	5	2	23.8	9.5	33.3	2	0	9.5	-	9.5
1000 AND UP	33	2.5	7	12	21.2	36.4	57.6	2	8	6.1	24.2	30.3
ALL TRANSACTIONS	1301	100.0	89	108	6.8	8.3	15.1	27	51	2.1	3.8	5.9

1/The size of transaction is based on the aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets to be held by the acquiring person as a result of the transaction and is taken from the response to Item 3 (c) of the notification and report form.

2/Fiscal 1985 includes transactions reported between October 1, 1984 and September 30, 1985. Data for October through December, 1984 was also included in the Appendix of the Ninth Annual Report.

3/During fiscal year 1985 , 1603 transactions were reported under the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification program. The smaller number, 1301, reflects adjustments to eliminate the following types of transactions: (1) 12 transactions reported under Section (c) (6) and 158 transactions reported under Section (c) (8) (transactions involving certain regulated industries and financial businesses); (2) 80 transactions which were followed by separate notifications for one or more additional transactions between the same parties during fiscal 1985 (such transactions are listed here as a single consolidated transaction); (3) 26 transactions found to be non-reportable; (4) 16 incomplete transactions (only one party in each transaction filed a compliant notification); and, (5) 10 secondary acquisitions (filed pursuant to Section 801.40 (a) (4)) reported as a result of reportable primary transactions. The table does not however, exclude 17 competing offers or 98 multiple-party transactions (transactions involving two or more acquiring or acquired persons).

4/Percentage of total transactions.

5/Percentage of transaction range group.

NOTE: Detail may not add to total due to rounding.

TABLE II

ACQUISITIONS BY SIZE OF TRANSACTION 1/, FISCAL YEAR 1985 2/ (CUMULATIVE)

TRANSACTION RANGE ($MILLIONS)	H-S-R TRANSACTIONS		CLEARANCE GRANTED TO FTC OR DOJ					SECOND REQUESTS ISSUED				
			NUMBER		PERCENTAGE OF TOTAL NUMBER OF CLEARANCES GRANTED			NUMBER		PERCENTAGE OF TOTAL NUMBER OF SECOND REQUESTS		
	NUMBER 3/	PERCENT 4/	FTC	DOJ	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	FTC	DOJ	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL
LESS THAN 15	129	9.9	5	4	2.5	2.0	4.6	1	2	1.3	2.6	3.8
15 UP TO 25	401	30.8	10	22	5.1	11.2	16.2	3	7	3.8	9.0	12.8
25 UP TO 50	743	57.1	30	48	15.2	24.4	39.6	9	25	11.5	32.1	43.6
50 UP TO 100	977	75.1	52	68	26.4	34.5	60.9	17	32	21.8	41.0	62.8
100 UP TO 150	1086	83.5	61	73	31.0	37.1	68.0	18	34	23.1	43.6	66.7
150 UP TO 200	1144	87.9	68	77	34.5	39.1	73.6	21	36	26.9	46.2	73.1
200 UP TO 300	1193	91.7	70	84	35.5	42.6	78.2	21	39	26.9	50.0	76.9
300 UP TO 500	1247	95.8	77	94	39.1	47.7	86.8	23	43	29.5	55.1	84.6
500 UP TO 1000	1268	97.5	82	96	41.6	48.7	90.4	25	43	32.1	55.1	87.2
1000 AND UP	1301	100.0	89	108	45.2	54.8	100.0	27	51	34.6	65.4	100.0

1/The size of transaction is based on the aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets to be held by the acquiring person as a result of the transaction and is taken from the response to Item 3 (c) of the notification and report form.

2/Fiscal 1985 includes transactions reported between October 1, 1984 and September 30, 1985. Data for October through December, 1984 was also included in the Appendix of the Ninth Annual Report.

3/During fiscal year 1985 , 1603 transactions were reported under the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification program. The smaller number, 1301, reflects adjustments to eliminate the following types of transactions: (1) 12 transactions reported under Section (c) (6) and 158 transactions reported under Section (c) (8) (transactions involving certain regulated industries and financial businesses); (2) 80 transactions which were followed by separate notifications for one or more additional transactions between the same parties during fiscal 1985 (such transactions are listed here as a single consolidated transaction); (3) 26 transactions found to be non-reportable; (4) 16 incomplete transactions (only one party in each transaction filed a compliant notification); and, (5) 10 secondary acquisitions (filed pursuant to Section 801.40 (a) (4)) reported as a result of reportable primary transactions. The table does not however, exclude 17 competing offers or 98 multiple-party transactions (transactions involving two or more acquiring or acquired persons).

4/Percentage of total transactions.

NOTE: Detail may not add to total due to rounding.

TABLE III

TRANSACTIONS INVOLVING THE GRANTING OF CLEARANCE BY AGENCY, FISCAL 1985 1/

TRANSACTION RANGE ($MILLIONS)	CLEARANCE GRANTED BY AGENCY			CLEARANCE GRANTED AS A PERCENTAGE OF:								
				TOTAL NUMBER OF TRANSACTIONS 2/			TRANSACTIONS IN EACH TRANSACTION RANGE GROUP 3/			TOTAL NUMBER OF CLEARANCES GRANTED		
	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL
LESS THAN 15	5	4	9	.4	.3	.7	3.9	3.1	7.0	2.5	2.0	4.6
15 UP TO 25	5	18	23	.4	1.4	1.8	1.8	6.6	8.5	2.5	9.1	11.7
25 UP TO 50	20	26	46	1.5	2.0	3.5	5.8	7.6	13.5	10.2	13.2	23.4
50 UP TO 100	22	20	42	1.7	1.5	3.2	9.4	8.5	17.9	11.2	10.2	21.3
100 UP TO 150	9	5	14	.7	.4	1.1	8.3	4.6	12.8	4.6	2.5	7.1
150 UP TO 200	7	4	11	.5	.3	.8	12.1	6.9	19.0	3.6	2.0	5.6
200 UP TO 300	2	7	9	.2	.5	.7	4.1	14.3	18.4	1.0	3.6	4.6
300 UP TO 500	7	10	17	.5	.8	1.3	13.0	18.5	31.5	3.6	5.1	8.6
500 UP TO 1000	5	2	7	.4	.2	.5	23.8	9.5	33.3	2.5	1.0	3.6
1000 AND UP	7	12	19	.5	.9	1.5	21.2	36.4	57.6	3.6	6.1	9.6
ALL CLEARANCES	89	108	197	6.8	8.3	15.1	6.8	8.3	15.1	45.2	54.8	100.0

1/Fiscal 1985 includes transactions reported between October 1, 1984 and September 30, 1985. Data for October through December, 1984 was also included in the Appendix of the Ninth Annual Report.

2/During fiscal year 1985 , 1603 transactions were reported under the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification program. The smaller number, 1301, reflects adjustments to eliminate the following types of transactions: (1) 12 transactions reported under Section (c) (6) and 158 transactions reported under Section (c) (8) (transactions involving certain regulated industries and financial businesses); (2) 80 transactions which were followed by separate notifications for one or more additional transactions between the same parties during fiscal 1985 (such transactions are listed here as a single consolidated transaction); (3) 26 transactions found to be non-reportable; (4) 16 incomplete transactions (only one party in each transaction filed a compliant notification); and, (5) 10 secondary acquisitions (filed pursuant to Section 801.40 (a) (4)) reported as a result of reportable primary transactions. The table does not however, exclude 17 competing offers or 98 multiple-party transactions (transactions involving two or more acquiring or acquired persons).

3/Percentages also appear in TABLE I.

NOTE: Detail may not add to total due to rounding.

TABLE IV

TRANSACTIONS INVOLVING THE ISSUANCE OF SECOND REQUESTS, FISCAL YEAR 1985 1/

TRANSACTION RANGE ($MILLIONS)	TRANSACTIONS INVOLVING THE ISSUANCE OF SECOND REQUESTS			SECOND REQUESTS ISSUED AS A PERCENTAGE OF:								
				TOTAL NUMBER OF TRANSACTIONS 2/			TRANSACTIONS IN EACH TRANSACTION RANGE GROUP 3/			TOTAL NUMBER OF SECOND REQUESTS		
	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL
LESS THAN 15	1	2	3	.1	.2	.2	.8	1.6	2.3	1.3	2.6	3.8
15 UP TO 25	2	5	7	.2	.4	.5	.7	1.8	2.6	2.6	6.4	9.0
25 UP TO 50	6	18	24	.5	1.4	1.8	1.8	5.3	7.0	7.7	23.1	30.8
50 UP TO 100	8	7	15	.6	.5	1.2	3.4	3.0	6.4	10.3	9.0	19.2
100 UP TO 150	1	2	3	.1	.2	.2	.9	1.8	2.8	1.3	2.6	3.8
150 UP TO 200	3	2	5	.2	.2	.4	5.2	3.4	8.6	3.8	2.6	6.4
200 UP TO 300	0	3	3	-	.2	.2	-	6.1	6.1	-	3.8	3.8
300 UP TO 500	2	4	6	.2	.3	.5	3.7	7.4	11.1	2.6	5.1	7.7
500 UP TO 1000	2	0	2	.2	-	.2	9.5	-	9.5	2.6	-	2.6
1000 AND UP	2	8	10	.2	.6	.8	6.1	24.2	30.3	2.6	10.3	12.8
ALL TRANSACTIONS	27	51	78	2.1	3.9	6.0	2.1	3.8	5.9	34.6	65.4	100.0

1/Fiscal 1985 includes transactions reported between October 1, 1984 and September 30, 1985. Data for October through December, 1984 was also included in the Appendix of the Ninth Annual Report.

2/During fiscal year 1985 , 1603 transactions were reported under the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification program. The smaller number, 1301, reflects adjustments to eliminate the following types of transactions: (1) 12 transactions reported under Section (c) (6) and 158 transactions reported under Section (c) (8) (transactions involving certain regulated industries and financial businesses); (2) 80 transactions which were followed by separate notifications for one or more additional transactions between the same parties during fiscal 1985 (such transactions are listed here as a single consolidated transaction); (3) 26 transactions found to be non-reportable; (4) 16 incomplete transactions (only one party in each transaction filed a compliant notification); and, (5) 10 secondary acquisitions (filed pursuant to Section 801.40 (a) (4)) reported as a result of reportable primary transactions. The table does not however, exclude 17 competing offers or 98 multiple-party transactions (transactions involving two or more acquiring or acquired persons).

3/Percentages also appear in TABLE I.

NOTE: Detail may not add to total due to rounding.

TABLE V

ACQUISITIONS BY REPORTING THRESHOLD, FISCAL YEAR 1985 1/

THRESHOLD	H-S-R TRANSACTIONS		CLEARANCE GRANTED TO FTC OR DOJ					SECOND REQUESTS ISSUED				
			NUMBER		PERCENTAGE OF THRESHOLD GROUP			NUMBER		PERCENTAGE OF THRESHOLD GROUP		
	NUMBER 2/	PERCENT	FTC	DOJ	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	FTC	DOJ	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL
$15 MILLION	23	1.8	1	1	4.3	4.3	8.7	0	1	-	4.3	4.3
15%	49	3.8	4	1	8.2	2.0	10.2	0	1	-	2.0	2.0
25%	52	4.0	6	10	11.5	19.2	30.8	3	5	5.8	9.6	15.4
50%	763	58.6	54	62	7.1	8.1	15.2	16	29	2.1	3.8	5.9
ASSETS ONLY	414	31.8	24	34	5.8	8.2	14.0	8	15	1.9	3.6	5.6
ALL TRANSACTIONS	1301	100.0	89	108	6.8	8.3	15.1	27	51	2.1	3.9	6.0

1/ Fiscal 1985 includes transactions reported between October 1, 1984 and September 30, 1985. Data for October through December, 1984 was also included in the Appendix of the Ninth Annual Report.

2/ During fiscal year 1985 , 1603 transactions were reported under the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification program. The smaller number, 1301, reflects adjustments to eliminate the following types of transactions: (1) 12 transactions reported under Section (c) (6) and 158 transactions reported under Section (c) (8) (transactions involving certain regulated industries and financial businesses); (2) 80 transactions which were followed by separate notifications for one or more additional transactions between the same parties during fiscal 1985 (such transactions are listed here as a single consolidated transaction); (3) 26 transactions found to be non-reportable; (4) 16 incomplete transactions (only one party in each transaction filed a compliant notification); and, (5) 10 secondary acquisitions (filed pursuant to Section 801.40 (a) (4)) reported as a result of reportable primary transactions. The table does not however, exclude 17 competing offers or 98 multiple-party transactions (transactions involving two or more acquiring or acquired persons).

NOTE: Detail may not add to total due to rounding.

TABLE VI

TRANSACTIONS BY ASSETS OF ACQUIRING PERSONS, FISCAL YEAR 1985 1/

ASSET RANGE	H-S-R TRANSACTIONS		CLEARANCE GRANTED TO FTC OR DOJ					SECOND REQUESTS ISSUED				
($MILLIONS)			NUMBER		PERCENTAGE OF ASSET RANGE GROUP			NUMBER		PERCENTAGE OF ASSET RANGE GROUP		
	NUMBER 2/	PERCENT	FTC	DOJ	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	FTC	DOJ	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL
LESS THAN 15	35	2.7	0	2	-	5.7	5.7	0	2	-	5.7	5.7
15 UP TO 25	25	1.9	0	1	-	4.0	4.0	0	1	-	4.0	4.0
25 UP TO 50	50	3.8	0	0	-	-	-	0	0	-	-	-
50 UP TO 100	85	6.5	6	3	7.1	3.5	10.6	0	1	-	1.2	1.2
100 UP TO 150	82	6.3	3	3	3.7	3.7	7.3	1	0	1.2	-	1.2
150 UP TO 200	48	3.7	1	4	2.1	8.3	10.4	0	1	-	2.1	2.1
200 UP TO 300	74	5.7	3	1	4.1	1.4	5.4	1	1	1.4	1.4	2.7
300 UP TO 500	91	7.0	7	5	7.7	5.5	13.2	0	1	-	1.1	1.1
500 UP TO 1000	174	13.4	12	18	6.9	10.3	17.2	2	7	1.1	4.2	5.2
1000 AND UP	620	47.7	57	66	9.2	10.6	19.8	23	33	3.7	5.3	9.0
ASSETS NOT AVAILABLE 3/	17	1.3	0	5	-	29.4	29.4	0	4	-	23.6	23.6
ALL TRANSACTIONS	1301	100.0	89	108	6.8	8.3	15.1	27	51	2.1	3.8	5.9

1/Fiscal 1985 includes transactions reported between October 1, 1984 and September 30, 1985. Data for October through December, 1984 was also included in the Appendix of the Ninth Annual Report.

2/During fiscal year 1985 , 1603 transactions were reported under the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification program. The smaller number, 1301, reflects adjustments to eliminate the following types of transactions: (1) 12 transactions reported under Section (c) (6) and 158 transactions reported under Section (c) (8) (transactions involving certain regulated industries and financial businesses); (2) 80 transactions which were followed by separate notifications for one or more additional transactions between the same parties during fiscal 1985 (such transactions are listed here as a single consolidated transaction); (3) 26 transactions found to be non-reportable; (4) 16 incomplete transactions (only one party in each transaction filed a compliant notification); and, (5) 10 secondary acquisitions (filed pursuant to Section 801.40 (a) (4)) reported as a result of reportable primary transactions. The table does not however, exclude 17 competing offers or 98 multiple-party transactions (transactions involving two or more acquiring or acquired persons).

3/This category is composed of newly-formed acquiring persons whose assets could not be accurately determined based on the submitted documents.

NOTE: Detail may not add to total due to rounding.

TABLE VII

TRANSACTIONS BY SALES OF ACQUIRING PERSONS, FISCAL YEAR 1985[1]

SALES RANGE ($MILLIONS)	H-S-R TRANSACTIONS		CLEARANCE GRANTED TO FTC OR DOJ: NUMBER		CLEARANCE GRANTED TO FTC OR DOJ: PERCENTAGE OF ASSET RANGE GROUP			SECOND REQUESTS ISSUED: NUMBER		SECOND REQUESTS ISSUED: PERCENTAGE OF ASSET RANGE GROUP		
	NUMBER[2]	PERCENT	FTC	DOJ	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	FTC	DOJ	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL
LESS THAN 15	49	3.8	1	6	2.0	12.2	14.3	0	6	-	12.2	12.2
15 UP TO 25	24	1.8	0	0	-	-	-	0	0	-	-	-
25 UP TO 50	43	3.3	3	1	7.0	2.3	9.3	0	1	-	2.3	2.3
50 UP TO 100	86	6.6	2	4	2.3	4.7	7.0	0	1	-	1.2	1.2
100 UP TO 150	62	4.8	2	0	3.2	-	3.2	0	0	-	-	-
150 UP TO 200	58	4.5	2	4	3.4	6.9	10.3	1	2	1.7	3.4	5.2
200 UP TO 300	68	5.2	1	4	1.5	5.9	7.4	0	1	-	1.5	1.5
300 UP TO 500	103	7.9	8	7	7.8	6.8	14.6	1	0	1.0	-	1.0
500 UP TO 1000	152	11.7	10	12	6.6	7.9	14.5	2	7	1.3	4.6	5.9
1000 AND UP	623	47.9	58	70	9.3	11.2	20.5	23	33	3.7	5.3	9.0
SALES NOT AVAILABLE [3]	33	2.5	2	0	6.0	-	6.0	0	0	-	-	-
ALL TRANSACTIONS	1301	100.0	89	108	6.8	8.3	15.1	27	51	2.1	3.8	5.9

---

[1] Fiscal 1985 includes transactions reported between October 1, 1984 and September 30, 1985. Data for October through December, 1984 was also included in the Appendix of the Ninth Annual Report.

[2] During fiscal year 1985 , 1603 transactions were reported under the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification program. The smaller number, 1301, reflects adjustments to eliminate the following types of transactions: (1) 12 transactions reported under Section (c) (6) and 158 transactions reported under Section (c) (8) (transactions involving certain regulated industries and financial businesses); (2) 80 transactions which were followed by separate notifications for one or more additional transactions between the same parties during fiscal 1985 (such transactions are listed here as a single consolidated transaction); (3) 26 transactions found to be non-reportable; (4) 16 incomplete transactions (only one party in each transaction filed a compliant notification); and, (5) 10 secondary acquisitions (filed pursuant to Section 801.40 (a) (4)) reported as a result of reportable primary transactions. The table does not however, exclude 17 competing offers or 98 multiple-party transactions (transactions involving two or more acquiring or acquired persons).

[3] This category is composed of newly-formed acquiring persons, foreign acquiring persons with no U. S. revenues and individuals whose revenues could not be accurately determined based on the submitted documents.

NOTE: Detail may not add to total due to rounding.

TABLE VIII

TRANSACTIONS BY ASSETS OF ACQUIRED ENTITIES[1], FISCAL YEAR 1985[2]

ASSET RANGE ($MILLIONS)	H-S-R TRANSACTIONS		CLEARANCE GRANTED TO FTC OR DOJ					SECOND REQUESTS ISSUED				
			NUMBER		PERCENTAGE OF ASSET RANGE GROUP			NUMBER		PERCENTAGE OF ASSET RANGE GROUP		
	NUMBER[3]	PERCENT	FTC	DOJ	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	FTC	DOJ	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL
LESS THAN 15	117	9.0	2	8	1.7	6.8	8.5	1	4	.9	3.4	4.3
15 UP TO 25	208	16.0	7	16	3.4	7.7	11.1	3	4	1.4	1.9	3.4
25 UP TO 50	287	22.1	19	15	6.6	5.2	11.8	3	10	1.0	3.5	4.5
50 UP TO 100	193	14.8	19	17	9.8	8.8	18.7	9	10	4.7	5.2	9.8
100 UP TO 150	103	7.9	9	6	8.7	5.8	14.6	2	3	1.9	2.9	4.8
150 UP TO 200	60	4.6	5	9	8.3	15.0	23.3	1	1	1.7	1.7	3.3
200 UP TO 300	66	5.1	1	10	1.5	15.2	16.7	0	6	–	9.1	9.1
300 UP TO 500	60	4.6	5	8	8.3	13.3	21.7	1	2	1.7	3.3	5.0
500 UP TO 1000	48	3.7	9	3	18.8	6.2	25.0	2	1	4.2	2.1	6.2
1000 AND UP	83	6.4	9	12	10.8	14.5	25.3	2	9	2.4	10.8	13.3
ASSETS NOT AVAILABLE[4]	76	5.8	4	4	5.3	5.3	10.5	3	1	3.9	1.3	5.3
ALL TRANSACTIONS	1301	100.0	89	108	6.8	8.3	15.1	27	51	2.1	3.8	5.9

---

[1] The assets of the acquired entity were taken from responses to Item 2(d) (i) (Assets to be Acquired) or from Items 4(a) or 4(b) (SEC documents and annual reports) of the premerger notification and report form.

[2] Fiscal 1985 includes transactions reported between October 1, 1984 and September 30, 1985. Data for October through December, 1984 was also included in the Appendix of the Ninth Annual Report.

[3] During fiscal year 1985 , 1603 transactions were reported under the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification program. The smaller number, 1301, reflects adjustments to eliminate the following types of transactions: (1) 12 transactions reported under Section (c) (6) and 158 transactions reported under Section (c) (8) (transactions involving certain regulated industries and financial businesses); (2) 80 transactions which were followed by separate notifications for one or more additional transactions between the same parties during fiscal 1985 (such transactions are listed here as a single consolidated transaction); (3) 26 transactions found to be non-reportable; (4) 16 incomplete transactions (only one party in each transaction filed a compliant notification); and, (5) 10 secondary acquisitions (filed pursuant to Section 801.40 (a) (4)) reported as a result of reportable primary transactions. The table does not however, exclude 17 competing offers or 98 multiple-party transactions (transactions involving two or more acquiring or acquired persons).

[4] The value of the assets of the entity being acquired is not available for the seventy-six transactions in this category.

NOTE: Detail may not add to total due to rounding.

TABLE IX

TRANSACTIONS BY SALES OF ACQUIRED ENTITIES 1/, FISCAL YEAR 1985 2/

SALES RANGE ($MILLIONS)	H-S-R TRANSACTIONS		CLEARANCE GRANTED TO FTC OR DOJ					SECOND REQUESTS ISSUED				
			NUMBER		PERCENTAGE OF ASSET RANGE GROUP			NUMBER		PERCENTAGE OF ASSET RANGE GROUP		
	NUMBER 3/	PERCENT	FTC	DOJ	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	FTC	DOJ	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL
LESS THAN 15	159	12.2	2	7	1.3	4.4	5.7	0	2	-	1.3	1.3
15 UP TO 25	107	8.2	5	6	4.7	5.6	10.3	3	2	2.8	1.9	4.7
25 UP TO 50	261	20.1	11	18	4.2	6.9	11.1	4	5	1.5	1.9	3.4
50 UP TO 100	261	20.1	14	21	5.4	8.0	13.4	4	10	1.5	3.8	5.4
100 UP TO 150	115	8.8	9	9	7.8	7.8	15.7	5	5	4.3	4.3	8.7
150 UP TO 200	58	4.5	9	5	15.5	8.6	24.1	2	4	3.4	6.9	10.3
200 UP TO 300	81	6.2	9	7	11.1	8.6	19.8	1	3	1.2	3.7	4.9
300 UP TO 500	62	4.8	5	6	8.1	9.7	17.7	1	2	1.6	3.2	4.8
500 UP TO 1000	50	3.8	8	9	16.0	18.0	34.0	1	2	2.0	4.0	6.0
1000 AND UP	92	7.1	12	14	13.0	15.2	28.3	4	10	4.3	10.9	15.2
SALES NOT AVAILABLE 4/	55	4.2	5	6	9.1	10.9	20.0	2	6	3.6	10.9	14.5
ALL TRANSACTIONS	1301	100.0	89	108	6.8	8.3	15.1	27	51	2.1	3.8	5.9

1/The sales of the acquired entity were taken from responses to Item 5 (dollar revenues) and Items 4(a) and 4(b) (SEC documents and annual reports) of the premerger notification report form.

2/Fiscal 1985 includes transactions reported between October 1, 1984 and September 30, 1985. Data for October through December, 1984 was also included in the Appendix of the Ninth Annual Report.

3/During fiscal year 1985 , 1603 transactions were reported under the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification program. The smaller number, 1301, reflects adjustments to eliminate the following types of transactions: (1) 12 transactions reported under Section (c) (6) and 158 transactions reported under Section (c) (8) (transactions involving certain regulated industries and financial businesses); (2) 80 transactions which were followed by separate notifications for one or more additional transactions between the same parties during fiscal 1985 (such transactions are listed here as a single consolidated transaction); (3) 26 transactions found to be non-reportable; (4) 16 incomplete transactions (only one party in each transaction filed a compliant notification); and, (5) 10 secondary acquisitions (filed pursuant to Section 801.40 (a) (4)) reported as a result of reportable primary transactions. The table does not however, exclude 17 competing offers or 98 multiple-party transactions (transactions involving two or more acquiring or acquired persons).

4/Transactions in this category are represented by the accquisition of newly-formed corporations or corporate joint ventures from which no sales have been generated and the acquisitions of assets which had produced no sales or revenues.

NOTE: Detail may not add to total due to rounding.

TABLE X

INDUSTRY GROUP OF ACQUIRING PERSONS, FISCAL YEAR 1985 1/

2-DIGIT SIC CODE 2/	INDUSTRY DESCRIPTION	ACQUIRING PERSON						
			CLEARANCE GRANTED TO FTC OR DOJ			SECOND REQUESTS ISSUED		
		NUMBER 3/	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL
01	Agricultural Production-Crops	7	-	2	2	-	1	1
02	Agricultural Production-Livestock	3	-	-	-	-	-	-
10	Metal Mining	11	-	-	-	-	-	-
11	Anthracite Mining	1	-	-	-	-	-	-
12	Bituminous Coal and Lignite Mining	6	1	-	-	-	-	-
13	Oil and Gas Extraction	42	5	-	5	1	-	1
14	Mining and Quarrying of Nonmetallic Minerals, Except Fuels	9	1	2	3	-	1	1
15	Building Construction-General Contractors and Operative Builders	7	-	-	-	-	-	-
16	Construction other than Building Construction-General Contractors	3	-	-	-	-	-	-
17	Construction-Special Grade Contractors	3	-	1	1	-	1	1
20	Food and Kindred Products	80	-	10	10	-	4	4
21	Tobacco Manufactures	2	1	-	1	-	-	-
22	Textile Mill Products	3	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	Apparel and other Finished Products made from Fabrics and Similar Materials	7	-	-	-	-	-	-
24	Lumber and Wood Products, Except Furniture	10	1	1	2	1	-	1
25	Furniture and Fixtures	12	1	-	1	-	-	-
26	Paper and Allied Products	14	1	-	1	1	-	1
27	Printing, Publishing and Allied Products	43	2	6	8	-	3	3
28	Chemicals and Allied Products	47	7	9	16	3	6	9

TABLE X

INDUSTRY GROUP OF ACQUIRING PERSONS, FISCAL YEAR 1985[1]

2-DIGIT SIC CODE[2]	INDUSTRY DESCRIPTION	ACQUIRING PERSON						
			CLEARANCE GRANTED TO FTC OR DOJ			SECOND REQUESTS ISSUED		
		NUMBER[3]	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL
29	Petroleum Refining and Related Industries	16	1	1	2	-	1	1
30	Rubber and Misc. Plastics Products	13	2	-	2	-	-	-
32	Stone, Clay, Glass, and Concrete Products	17	5	2	7	1	-	1
33	Primary Metal Industries	16	1	-	1	-	-	-
34	Fabricated Metal Products, Except Machinery and Transportation Equipment	21	3	2	5	1	-	1
35	Machinery, Except Electrical	39	4	4	8	-	4	4
36	Electrical and Electronic Machinery, Equipment and Supplies	16	4	1	5	1	-	1
37	Transportation Equipment	18	1	1	2	1	-	1
38	Measuring, Analyzing and Controlling Instruments; Photographic, Medical and Optical Goods; Watches and Clocks	4	-	2	2	-	2	2
39	Miscellaneous Manufacturing Industries	4	-	-	-	-	-	-
40	Railroad Transporation	2	-	-	-	-	-	-
41	Local and Suburban Transit and Interurban Highway Passenger Transportation	3	-	-	-	-	-	-
42	Motor Freight Transportation and Warehousing	1	-	-	-	-	-	-
44	Water Transportation	2	-	-	-	-	-	-
45	Transportation by Air	10	1	2	3	-	-	-
48	Communication	32	-	4	4	-	1	1
49	Electric, Gas, and Sanitary Services	21	-	-	-	-	-	-

TABLE X

INDUSTRY GROUP OF ACQUIRING PERSONS, FISCAL YEAR 1985[1]

2-DIGIT SIC CODE[2]	INDUSTRY DESCRIPTION	ACQUIRING PERSON						
			CLEARANCE GRANTED TO FTC OR DOJ			SECOND REQUESTS ISSUED		
		NUMBER[3]	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL
50	Wholesale Trade-Durable Goods	30	-	1	1	-	1	1
51	Wholesale Trade-Nondurable Goods	31	-	1	1	-	-	-
52	Building Materials, Hardware, Garden Supply and Mobile Home Dealers	4	-	-	-	-	-	-
53	General Merchandise Stores	13	-	-	-	-	-	-
54	Food Stores	11	-	-	-	-	-	-
55	Automotive Dealers and Gasoline Service Stations	2	-	-	-	-	-	-
56	Apparel and Accessory Stores	5	2	-	2	-	-	-
57	Furniture, Home Furnishing, and Equipment Stores	3	-	-	-	-	-	-
58	Eating and Drinking Places	9	-	-	-	-	-	-
59	Miscellaneous Retail	10	3	-	3	-	-	-
60	Banking	14	-	-	-	-	-	-
61	Credit Agencies other than Banks	42	-	2	2	-	1	1
62	Security and Commodity Brokers, Dealers, Exchanges, and Services	11	-	-	-	-	-	-
63	Insurance	40	-	2	2	-	2	2
64	Insurance Agents, Brokers, and Services	6	-	-	-	-	-	-
65	Real Estate	14	-	-	-	-	-	-
67	Holding and other Investment Offices	22	1	-	1	-	-	-
70	Hotels, Rooming Houses, Camps, and other Lodging Places	10	1	-	1	-	-	-
72	Personal Services	1	-	-	-	-	-	-
73	Business Services	17	-	-	-	-	-	-

TABLE X

INDUSTRY GROUP OF ACQUIRING PERSONS, FISCAL YEAR 1985[1]

2-DIGIT SIC CODE[2]	INDUSTRY DESCRIPTION	ACQUIRING PERSON						
			CLEARANCE GRANTED TO FTC OR DOJ			SECOND REQUESTS ISSUED		
		NUMBER[3]	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL
75	Automotive Repair, Services, and Garages	4	-	-	-	-	-	-
78	Motion Pictures	5	-	-	-	-	-	-
80	Health Services	35	1	4	5	1	3	4
89	Miscellaneous Services	3	1	2	3	-	-	-
DV	Diversified Companies	379	36	46	82	16	20	36
00	Not Available [4]	35	2	-	2	-	-	-
	ALL TRANSACTIONS	1301	89	108	197	27	51	78

[1] Fiscal 1985 includes transactions reported between October 1, 1984 and September 30, 1985. Data for October through December, 1984 was also included in the Appendix of the Ninth Annual Report.

[2] 2-Digit SIC codes are part of the system of Standard Industrial Classification established by the U.S. GOVERNMENT STANDARD CLASSIFICATION MANUAL, 1972, Executive Office of the President - Office of Management and Budget. The SIC groupings used in this table were determined from responses submitted by filing parties to Item 5 of the premerger notification and report form.

[3] During fiscal year 1985 , 1603 transactions were reported under the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification program. The smaller number, 1301, reflects adjustments to eliminate the following types of transactions: (1) 12 transactions reported under Section (c) (6) and 158 transactions reported under Section (c) (8) (transactions involving certain regulated industries and financial businesses); (2) 80 transactions which were followed by separate notifications for one or more additional transactions between the same parties during fiscal 1985 (such transactions are listed here as a single consolidated transaction); (3) 26 transactions found to be non-reportable; (4) 16 incomplete transactions (only one party in each transaction filed a compliant notification); and, (5) 10 secondary acquisitions (filed pursuant to Section 801.40 (a) (4)) reported as a result of reportable primary transactions. The table does not however, exclude 17 competing offers or 98 multiple-party transactions (transactions involving two or more acquiring or acquired persons).

[4] Transactions included in this category represent newly-formed companies, companies with no U.S. operations, notifications filed by individuals, and filings withdrawn before the industry classification could be. determined.

TABLE XI

INDUSTRY GROUP OF ACQUIRED ENTITY, FISCAL YEAR 1985 1/

2-DIGIT SIC CODE 2/	INDUSTRY DESCRIPTION	ACQUIRING PERSON							
			CLEARANCE GRANTED TO FTC OR DOJ			SECOND REQUESTS ISSUED			NUMBER OF 2-DIGIT INTRA-INDUSTRY TRANSACTIONS
		NUMBER 3/	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	
01	Agricultural Production-Crops	8	-	-	-	-	-	-	1
02	Agricultural Production-Livestock	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
07	Agricultural Services	3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
10	Metal Mining	3	1	-	1	-	-	-	-
12	Bituminous Coal and Lignite Mining	15	-	-	-	-	-	-	2
13	Oil and Gas Extraction	83	3	-	3	-	-	-	24
14	Mining and Quarrying of Nonmetallic Minerals, Except Fuels	11	1	4	5	-	3	3	4
15	Building Construction-General Contractors and Operative Builders	9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
16	Construction other than Building Construction-General Contractors	7	1	-	1	1	-	1	1
17	Construction-Special Grade Contractors	4	1	-	1	-	-	-	1
20	Food and Kindred Products	86	3	10	13	-	5	5	48
21	Tobacco Manufactures	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
22	Textile Mill Products	7	1	-	1	-	-	-	1
23	Apparel and other Finished Products made from Fabrics and Similar Materials	9	-	-	-	-	-	-	5
24	Lumber and Wood Products, Except Furniture	14	1	-	1	1	-	1	1
25	Furniture and Fixtures	13	1	2	3	-	1	1	3
26	Paper and Allied Products	19	-	1	1	-	-	-	8
27	Printing, Publishing and Allied Products	47	3	5	8	-	4	4	23
28	Chemicals and Allied Products	62	9	10	19	4	7	11	27

TABLE XI

INDUSTRY GROUP OF ACQUIRED ENTITY, FISCAL YEAR 1985 1/

2-DIGIT SIC CODE 2/	INDUSTRY DESCRIPTION	ACQUIRING PERSON							
			CLEARANCE GRANTED TO FTC OR DOJ			SECOND REQUESTS ISSUED			NUMBER OF 2-DIGIT INTRA-INDUSTRY TRANSACTIONS
		NUMBER 3/	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	
29	Petroleum Refining and Related Industries	12	4	2	6	2	2	4	2
30	Rubber and Misc. Plastics Products	22	3	2	5	1	-	1	3
31	Leather and Leather Products	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
32	Stone, Clay, Glass, and Concrete Products	19	5	3	8	-	-	-	8
33	Primary Metal Industries	33	2	1	3	-	-	-	4
34	Fabricated Metal Products, Except Machinery and Transportation Equipment	31	1	4	5	-	-	-	6
35	Machinery, Except Electrical	51	6	8	14	2	5	7	19
36	Electrical and Electronic Machinery, Equipment and Supplies	49	13	6	19	7	4	11	8
37	Transportation Equipment	19	4	3	7	1	2	3	2
38	Measuring, Analyzing and Controlling Instruments; Photographic, Medical and Optical Goods; Watches and Clocks	17	1	1	2	1	1	2	-
39	Miscellaneous Manufacturing Industries	7	-	-	-	-	-	-	2
40	Railroad Transportation	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
42	Motor Freight Transportation and Warehousing	5	-	1	1	-	-	-	-
44	Water Transportation	7	-	-	-	-	-	-	1
45	Transportation by Air	8	-	2	2	-	-	-	7
46	Pipe Lines, Except Natural Gas	5	1	-	1	1	-	1	-
47	Transportation Services	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
48	Communication	51	-	4	4	-	1	1	23
49	Electric, Gas, and Sanitary Services	16	1	-	1	1	-	1	8

TABLE XI

INDUSTRY GROUP OF ACQUIRED ENTITY, FISCAL YEAR 1985 1/

2-DIGIT SIC CODE 2/	INDUSTRY DESCRIPTION	ACQUIRING PERSON							NUMBER OF 2-DIGIT INTRA-INDUSTRY TRANSACTIONS
			CLEARANCE GRANTED TO FTC OR DOJ			SECOND REQUESTS ISSUED			
		NUMBER 3/	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	
50	Wholesale Trade-Durable Goods	47	3	3	6	1	3	4	15
51	Wholesale Trade-Nondurable Goods	48	-	2	2	-	-	-	18
52	Building Materials, Hardware, Garden Supply and Mobile Home Dealers	8	-	-	-	-	-	-	2
53	General Merchandise Stores	18	-	-	-	-	-	-	9
54	Food Stores	15	1	-	1	1	-	1	4
55	Automotive Dealers and Gasoline Service Stations	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
56	Apparel and Accessory Stores	6	2	-	2	-	-	-	4
57	Furniture, Home Furnishing, and Equipment Stores	7	-	-	-	-	-	-	3
58	Eating and Drinking Places	18	-	-	-	-	-	-	5
59	Miscellaneous Retail	24	4	1	5	-	-	-	6
60	Banking	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	2
61	Credit Agencies other than Banks	41	1	2	3	1	1	2	19
62	Security and Commodity Brokers, Dealers, Exchanges, and Services	12	-	2	2	-	-	-	2
63	Insurance	44	-	2	2	-	2	2	29
64	Insurance Agents, Brokers, and Services	9	-	-	-	-	-	-	5
65	Real Estate	17	-	1	1	-	-	-	2
67	Holding and other Investment Offices	13	-	1	1	-	1	1	4
70	Hotels, Rooming Houses, Camps, and other Lodging Places	17	1	-	1	-	-	-	6
72	Personal Services	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	1
73	Business Services	34	-	3	3	-	-	-	5

2-DIGIT SIC CODE 1/	INDUSTRY DESCRIPTION	ACQUIRING PERSON							NUMBER OF 2-DIGIT INTRA-INDUSTRY TRANSACTIONS
			CLEARANCE GRANTED TO FTC OR DOJ			SECOND REQUESTS ISSUED			
		NUMBER 2/	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	FTC	DOJ	TOTAL	
75	Automotive Repair, Services, and Garages	1	1	-	1	-	-	-	5
76	Miscellaneous Repair Services	2	-	1	1	-	-	-	-
78	Motion Pictures	13	-	4	4	-	-	-	1
79	Amusement and Recreation Services, Except Motion Pictures	3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
80	Health Services	46	1	3	4	1	2	3	31
82	Educational Services	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
89	Miscellaneous Services	3	1	2	3	-	-	-	-
99	Nonclassifiable Establishments	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
DV	Diversified Companies	62	7	10	17	1	5	6	27
00	Not Available 4/	18	1	2	3	-	2	2	1
	ALL TRANSACTIONS	1301	89	108	197	27	51	78	445

1/2-Digit SIC codes are part of the system of Standard Industrial Classification established by the U.S. GOVERNMENT STANDARD CLASSIFICATION MANUAL, 1972, Executive Office of the President - Office of Management and Budget. The SIC groupings used in this table were determined from responses submitted by filing parties to Item 5 of the premerger notification and report form.

2/During fiscal year 1985 , 1603 transactions were reported under the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification program. The smaller number, 1301, reflects adjustments to eliminate the following types of transactions: (1) 12 transactions reported under Section (c) (6) and 158 transactions reported under Section (c) (8) (transactions involving certain regulated industries and financial businesses); (2) 80 transactions which were followed by separate notifications for one or more additional transactions between the same parties during fiscal 1985 (such transactions are listed here as a single consolidated transaction); (3) 26 transactions found to be non-reportable; (4) 16 incomplete transactions (only one party in each transaction filed a compliant notification); and, (5) 10 secondary acquisitions (filed pursuant to Section 801.40 (a) (4)) reported as a result of reportable primary transactions. The table does not however, exclude 17 competing offers or 98 multiple-party transactions (transactions involving two or more acquiring or acquired persons).

3/Transactions in this category include filings withdrawn before an industry group could be determined and newly-formed acquired entities.

federal register

Friday
March 6, 1987

Part II

Federal Trade Commission

16 CFR Parts 801, 802, and 803

Premerger Notification; Reporting and Waiting Period Requirements; Final Rule and Notice of Proposed Rulemaking

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

16 CFR Parts 801, 802, and 803

Premerger Notification; Reporting and Waiting Period Requirements

AGENCY: Federal Trade Commission.

ACTION: Final rules.

SUMMARY: These rules amend the premerger notification rules, which require the parties to certain mergers or acquisitions to file reports with the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice, and to wait a specified period of time before consummating such transactions. The reporting and waiting period requirements are intended to enable these enforcement agencies to determine whether a proposed merger or acquisition might violate the antitrust laws if consummated and, when appropriate, to seek a preliminary injunction in federal court to prevent consummation. During the seven years the rules have been in effect, the Federal Trade Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General for Antitrust, has amended the premerger notification rules several times in order to improve the program's effectiveness and to lessen the burden of complying with the rules. These revisions are intended to reduce further the cost to the public of complying with the rules and to improve the program's effectiveness.

EFFECTIVE DATE: April 10, 1987.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: John M. Sipple, Jr., Senior Attorney, Premerger Notification Office, Bureau of Competition, Room 301, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580. Telephone: (202) 326–3100.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION:

Regulatory Flexibility Act

These amendments to the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification rules are largely technical or designed to reduce the burden to the public of reporting. The Commission has determined that none of the proposed rules is a major rule, as that term is defined in Executive Order 12291. The amendments will not result in: an annual effect on the economy of $100 million or more; a major increase in costs or prices for consumers, individual industries, Federal, State, or local government agencies, or geographic regions; or significant adverse effects on competition, employment, investment, productivity, innovation, or on the ability of United States-based enterprises to compete with foreign-based enterprises in the domestic market. None of the amendments expands the coverage of the premerger notification rules in a way that would affect small business. Therefore, pursuant to section 605(b) of the Administrative Procedure Act, 5 U.S.C. 605(b), as added by the Regulatory Flexibility Act, Pub. L. 96–354 (September 19, 1980), the Federal Trade Commission has certified that these rules will not have a significant economic impact on a substantial number of small entities. Section 603 of the Administrative Procedure Act, 5 U.S.C. 603, requiring a final regulatory flexibility analysis of these rules, is therefore inapplicable.

Paperwork Reduction Act

The Hart-Scott-Rodino Premerger Notification rules and report form contain information collection requirements as defined by the Paperwork Reduction Act, 44 U.S.C. 3501 *et seq.* These requirements have been reviewed and approved by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB Control No. 3084–0005). Because these amendments will affect the information collection requirements of the premerger notification program, they were submitted to OMB for review under section 3504(h) of the Paperwork Reduction Act. They were approved by OMB on September 30, 1985.

Background

Section 7A of the Clayton Act ("the act"), 15 U.S.C. 18a, as added by sections 201 and 202 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, requires persons contemplating certain acquisitions of assets or voting securities to give advance notice to the Federal Trade Commission (hereafter referred to as "the Commission") and the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice (hereafter referred to as "the Assistant Attorney General") and to wait certain designated periods before the consummation of such acquisitions. The transactions to which the advance notice requirement is applicable and the length of the waiting period required are set out respectively in subsections (a) and (b) of section 7A. This amendment to the Clayton Act does not change the standards used in determining the legality of mergers and acquisitions under the antitrust laws.

The legislative history suggests several purposes underlying the act. First, Congress clearly intended to eliminate the large "midnight merger," which is negotiated in secret and announced just before, or sometimes only after, the closing takes place. Second, Congress wanted to assure that large acquisitions were subjected to meaningful scrutiny under the antitrust laws prior to consummation. Third, Congress provided an opportunity for the Commission and the Assistant Attorney General (who are sometimes hereafter referred to collectively as the "antitrust agencies" or the "enforcement agencies") to seek a court order enjoining the completion of those transactions that the agencies deem to present significant antitrust problems. Finally, Congress sought to facilitate an effective remedy when a challenge by one of the enforcement agencies proved successful. Thus the act requires that the agencies receive prior notification of significant acquisitions, provides certain tools to facilitate a prompt, thorough investigation, and assures an opportunity to seek a preliminary injunction before the parties are legally free to complete the transaction, which eliminates the problem of unscrambling the assets after the transaction has taken place.

Subsection 7A(d)(1) of the act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d)(1), directs the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 553, to require that the notification be in such form and contain such information and documentary material as may be necessary and appropriate to determine whether the proposed transaction may, if consummated, violate the antitrust laws. Subsection 7A(d)(2) of the act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d)(2), grants the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 553, the authority: (A) To define the terms used in the act, (B) to exempt additional persons or transactions from the act's notification and waiting period requirements, and (C) to prescribe such other rules as may be necessary and appropriate to carry out the purposes of section 7A.

On December 15, 1976, the Commission issued proposed rules and a proposed Notification and Report Form ("the Form") to implement the act. This proposed rulemaking was published in the Federal Register of December 20, 1976, 41 FR 55488. Because of the volume of public comment, it became clear to the Commission that some substantial revisions would have to be made. On July 25, 1977, the Commission determined that additional public comment on the rules would be desirable and approved revised proposed rules and a revised proposed Notification and Report Form, which were published in the Federal Register of August 1, 1977, 42 FR 39040.

Additional changes were made after the close of the comment period. The Commission formally promulgated the final rules and Form and issued an accompanying Statement of Basis and Purpose on July 10, 1978. The Assistant Attorney General gave his formal concurrence on July 18, 1978. The final rules and Form and the Statement of Basis and Purpose were published in the Federal Register of July 31, 1978, 43 FR 33451, and became effective on September 5, 1978.

The rules are divided into three parts, which appear at 16 CFR Parts 801, 802, and 803. Part 801 defines a number of the terms used in the act and rules, and explains which acquisitions are subject to the reporting and waiting period requirements. Part 802 contains a number of exemptions from these requirements. Part 803 explains the procedures for complying with the act. The Notification and Report Form, which is completed by persons required to file notification, is an appendix to Part 803 of the rules.

Changes of a substantive nature have been made in the premerger notification rules or Form on four occasions since they were first promulgated. The first was an increase in the minimum dollar value exemption contained in § 802.20 of the rules. This amendment was proposed in the Federal Register of August 10, 1979, 44 FR 47099, and was published in final form in the Federal Register of November 21, 1979, 44 FR 60781. The second amendment replaced the requirement that certain revenue data for the year 1972 be provided in the Notification and Report Form with a requirement that comparable data be provided for the year 1977. This change was made because total revenues for the year 1977 broken down by Standard Industrial Classification (SIC) codes became available from the Bureau of the Census. The amendment appeared in the Federal Register of March 5, 1980, 45 FR 14205, and was effective May 3, 1980.

The third set of changes was published by the Federal Trade Commission as proposed rules changes in the Federal Register of July 29, 1981, 46 FR 38710. These revisions were designed to clarify and improve the effectiveness of the rules and of the Notification and Report Form as well as to reduce the burden of filing notification. Several comments on the proposed changes were received during the comment period. Final rules, which adopted some of the suggestions received during the comment period but which were substantially the same as the proposed rules, were published in the Federal Register on July 29, 1983, 48 FR 34427, and became effective on August 29, 1983. The fourth change, replacing the requirement to provide 1977 revenue data with a requirement to provide 1982 data on the Form, was published in the Federal Register on March 28, 1986, 51 FR 10368.

In addition, the Notification and Report Form, found in 16 CFR 803 (Appendix), has undergone minor revisions on two other occasions. The new versions were approved by the Office of Management and Budget on December 29, 1981, and February 23, 1983, respectively. Since that time, the current version of the Notification and Report Form has been approved by the Office of Management and Budget. The most recent approval came on September 30, 1985; it is valid for a period of three years. This form was published in 50 FR 46633 (November 12, 1985).

The current set of changes to the premerger notification rules grows out of a continuing effort by the Commission to reduce the burden of filing premerger notifications. This effort was the focus of a Notice of Request for Comments that the Commission published in the Federal Register on July 2, 1982, 47 FR 29182. The Request for Comments outlined four approaches to reducing the burden of the notification program: Narrowing the coverage of the rules by raising the dollar thresholds that determine which acquisitions must be reported; allowing persons filing notifications to reference information and documents filed in previous notifications, rather than requiring them to resubmit those materials; setting separate higher dollar reporting thresholds for acquisitions in some industries; and eliminating one or more of the successive reporting requirements for additional acquisitions of voting securities.

On September 24, 1985, the Commission published in the Federal Register, 50 FR 38742, thirteen proposed amendments accompanied by a proposed Statement of Basis and Purpose. All but two of the proposals were based on the burden reduction efforts that began in 1982. The Commission has decided to adopt nine of the proposals, to reject one proposal for budgetary reasons, and temporarily to defer action on the other three. Since one of the two proposals that do not involve burden reduction is also one of the three being deferred for later consideration, all but one of these final rules are based on the 1982 Request for Comments and related burden reduction efforts. The amendments seek to reduce the burden on filing parties by narrowing the types of acquisitions that must be reported, reducing the volume of documents or information that must be filed, and clarifying the meaning of the notification rules. The only change that did not originate from the burden reduction efforts would eliminate the reporting exemption in § 802.70(b) for acquisitions subject to the approval of the Commission or a federal court. It is intended to solve an infrequently occurring administrative problem.

The Commission has deferred final action on: The proposal to require reporting by owners of interests in "acquisition vehicles" (Proposal 1 of the September 24, 1985, proposed amendments); the proposed exemption of certain asset acquisitions, including the acquisition of current supplies, new durable goods, and some types of real estate (Proposal 5); and the proposed increase in the "controlled issuer" threshold that would have expanded the exemption for transactions valued at $15 million or less in § 802.20(b) and for certain foreign transactions described in § 802.50 and § 802.51 (Proposal 6).

The Commission has decided to adopt two approaches to narrow the coverage of the rules. Section 802.35 will exempt the acquisition of an employer's voting securities by certain employee trusts. Also, the aggregation rules of § 801.13 have been modified to reduce the number of successive asset acquisitions involving the same parties that are reportable.

In the September 24, 1985, proposed amendments, the Commission also proposed as a burden reduction measure expanding the permitted scope of incorporation by reference in response to items on the Form. Proposed rule § 803.9, which would have replaced § 803.2(e), would have expanded the ability to incorporate by reference. The implementation of this proposal would entail significant start up costs and require an ongoing commitment of resources to assure that filings could be fully reviewed within the statutory time periods. In view of the existing permission to incorporate by reference and given current budgetary stringencies, the Commission believes it is not appropriate at this time to undertake the kind of new program envisaged by the proposed rule. Although the proposal to expand incorporation by reference is not being adopted, the Commission has adopted several other proposals that have the effect of reducing the burden of filing the Notification and Report Form by both decreasing the amount of information required and narrowing the scope of the search for that information.

As noted when these amendments were proposed, the Commission has not found a basis for establishing separate reporting thresholds for different industries. However, Proposal 5, one of the three on which final action is deferred, would have established a higher threshold for, or exempted entirely, the acquisition of certain kinds of assets. The Commission is continuing to consider what kinds of asset acquisitions can receive separate treatment.

The Commission also has not proposed eliminating any of the sequential thresholds for reporting increased holdings of voting securities. The Commission continues to find that an increase in the percentage of securities held by a person may have competitive significance.

In addition to expanding reporting exemptions and reducing the information required by the Form, the Commission has also decided to reduce the burden of the notification program by adopting several amendments that clarify the meaning of the rules. These largely codify formal or informal interpretations of the Commission staff. These amendments include: A method of calculating the assets of an entity without a regularly prepared balance sheet; a method of calculating the percentage of voting securities a person holds; the requirements for giving notice to an acquired person; the time when the statutory waiting period begins for the formation of joint ventures; and a series of changes to examples in the rules to reflect prior amendments to the rules.

As mentioned above, the Commission has also addressed one matter in these amendments that is unrelated to burden reduction. The Commission has adopted a proposed amendment that deletes the exemption from reporting in § 802.70(b) for acquisitions subject to the prior approval of the Commission or a Federal court. This change will facilitate the administration of the premerger notification program and is expected to increase the volume of notifications only marginally. This proposal did not draw any adverse comment.

Three comments proposed that the Commission provide additional exemptions. One of the comments, comment 22, urged that the size-of-transaction test in § 802.20 of the rules be amended to exempt all acquisitions of less than 50 million. The 1982 Request for Comments had discussed raising the statutory $15 million minimum size-of-transaction criteria of section 7A(a)(3)(B) to $25 million. This discussion was premised in part on statistics from transactions filed in 1981 showing the enforcement agencies had demonstrated a lower level of interest in transactions of less than $25 million. It became clear from statistics covering 1982 and 1983, however, that the pattern of lower enforcement interest did not persist in subsequent years. Consequently, the Commission has not pursued that approach. Comment 14 suggested that § 802.6 be amended to exempt acquisitions of less than 10% of the shares of an air carrier, even though acquisitions at that level do not require the prior approval of the Department of Transportation. Comment 20 suggested more generally that the Commission exempt all acquisitions of less than 5% of the voting securities of an issuer. The Commission will consider whether these suggestions are justified. The Commission welcomes these and any other suggestions about the administration of the program.

Comments

The comment period for these rules was originally scheduled to end on October 24, 1985, but was extended by Commission action to November 29, 1985. The following comments were received:

No.	Date of letter	Organization
1	10-21-85	The RREEF Funds.
2	10-23-85	Anderson, Raymond & Lowenthal.
3	10-23-85	California Federal Savings and Loan Association.
4	10-23-85	Debevoise & Plimpton.
5	10-31-85	National Association of Manufacturers.
6	11-07-85	Shell Oil Company.
7	11-18-85	Association of the Bar of the City of New York, Committee on Antitrust and Trade Regulation.
8	11-19-85	Coldwell Banker Commercial Group, Inc.
9	11-22-85	Aetna Companies.
10	11-26-85	Exxon Corporation.
11	11-27-85	American Council of Life Insurance.
12	11-26-85	National Realty Committee.
13	11-26-85	State Teachers Retirement System of Ohio.
14	11-27-85	Texas Air Corporation.
15	11-27-85	Ropes & Gray.
16	11-28-85	American Bar Association, Section of Antitrust Law.
17	11-26-85	International Council of Shopping Centers.
18	11-29-85	Sullivan & Cromwell.
19	11-29-85	Weil, Gotshal & Manges.
20[1]	11-29-85	Akin, Gump, Strauss, Hauer & Feld.
21[1]	11-25-85	Trammell Crow Company.[2]
22[1]	12-09-85	ITT Corporation.
23[1]	01-13-86	Zaremba Corporation.
24[1]	02-13-86	Exxon Corporation.
25[1]	03-17-86	Pension Real Estate Association.
26[1]	04-21-86	American Council of Life Insurance.
27[1]	08-22-86	International Council of Shopping Centers.

[1] These comments were received after the close of the extended comment period. The Commission has, however, considered the issues raised by these comments in formulating these final rules.

[2] The Commission received several comments from individuals at the Trammell Crow Company.

Statement of Basis and Purpose for the Commission's Revised Premerger Notification Rules

Authority: The Federal Trade Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, promulgates these amendments to the premerger notification rules pursuant to section 7A(d) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d), as added by section 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390.

1. Section 801.11(e): Total Assets of a Person Without a Regularly Prepared Balance Sheet

Amended § 801.11 codifies a longstanding informal position of the Commission staff that a person without a regularly prepared balance sheet generally should not include funds used to make an acquisition in determining its size. This issue arises primarily in connection with newly-formed entities, not controlled by any other entity, that have not yet drawn up a balance sheet. Under this rule, if such an entity's only assets are cash that will be used to make an acquisition and securities of the entity it is acquiring, it generally will not have to file for that acquisition because it will be deemed too small to meet the act's size-of-person test. This rule is intended to limit the coverage of the premerger rules to those situations when an antitrust violation is most likely to be present, that is, when one business entity of a substantial size acquires another business entity of a substantial size. The basic rule is explained below. The rule also contains an exception when the entity acquires assets or voting securities of more than one person.

The Purpose of the Rule

A notification must be filed prior to an acquisition only if the acquiring and acquired persons meet the minimum size criteria of section 7A(a)(2) of the act. In general, the act requires one of the parties to have annual net sales or total assets of at least $10 million and the other annual net sales or total assets of at least $100 million. Section 801.11 establishes the procedure by which the parties to an acquisition must determine their size. Section 801.11(c) provides that the annual net sales of a person shall be as stated on its last regularly prepared income statement, and its total assets shall be as stated on its last regularly prepared balance sheet. It does not directly address the question of how to calculate the total assets of a person that does not have a regularly prepared balance sheet. However, in instances in which a party has no regulary prepared balance sheet and does not have an income statement demonstrating that the act's size criteria for annual sales is met, the 1978 Statement of Basis and Purpose states a balance sheet must be prepared to determine whether the act applies. See 43 FR 33474 (July 31, 1978).

In advising such persons of their obligation to prepare balance sheets, the Commission staff has for some time stated that acquiring persons should not include as assets cash or loans that will be used to make an acquisition. The Commission now adopts this staff position and incorporates it in § 801.11(e). The new rule does not alter the manner in which firms with regularly prepared balance sheets determine whether they meet the act's size-of-person criteria; as provided in § 801.11(a) through (d), they continue to be governed by those regularly prepared statements, which may or may not include such cash or loans.

The distinction between the calculation of assets for business entities with regularly prepared balance sheets and those without them is based on the difference in their competitive significance and on the certainty and simplicity of the 1978 balance sheet rule. First, the size of an acquiring person can provide some measure of its competitive importance, and the act reflects Congress's conclusion that the amount of sales and assets are useful measurements of size. These size criteria can be misleading, however, when applied to entities without regularly prepared balance sheets, which are generally either newly-formed entities or shell corporations being used to make an acquisition. Such entities typically have had no sales and frequently have no assets other than the cash or loans used to make the acquisition. Thus, when they are not controlled by any other entity, the acquiring person has no competitive presence. In such instances the acquisition does not combine businesses but merely changes the ownership of a single ongoing business; it therefore cannot reduce competition. Accordingly, the Commission has concluded that no purpose is served by requiring such acquisitions to be reported.

Similarly, when an entity that is not an operating company acquires voting securities of one person in several sequential transactions, its prior possession of other securities of that person generally does not enhance the anticompetitive potential of the transaction. The already acquired securities do not constitute an independent business that, when combined with additional securities of that issuer, could lessen competition. Only one business is being bought. However, if the acquiring entity purchases assets or voting securities of more than one person, an anticompetitive combination could result. For that reason, § 801.11(e) includes an exception that requires counting cash, loans, and securities in those circumstances.

Although it might be argued that operating companies with regular balance sheets should also be directed to deduct from their total assets any cash or loans earmarked for making the acquisition and any securities issued by the acquired person, the Commission does not believe it advisable to do so. First, to direct that such deductions be made would require many persons to prepare a new balance sheet to determine the reportability of acquisitions. Rules explaining how to prepare that balance sheet would introduce needless complexity into the process of complying with the rules, a problem that the Commission largely obviated when it promulgated the existing financial statements rule of § 801.11 (see 43 FR 33473–33474 (July 31, 1978)).

Second, in most instances, the application of § 801.11(a) through (d) automatically reaches the same result for ongoing companies as § 801.11(e) does for newly-formed and other nonoperating companies. Loans made to ongoing businesses for the purpose of making an acquisition are normally made just prior to consummation of the acquisition and are therefore not reflected on the person's last regularly prepared balance sheet. Thus, under paragraphs (a) through (d), such loans usually are not included when calculating an acquiring person's total assets.

Finally, the Commission regards the predictability and convenience of the balance sheet approach as valuable even if it results in small inconsistencies in measuring a person's size. The approach allows the vast majority of firms to rely on their balance sheets to determine whether they have an obligation to file notification. Businesses can quickly determine from existing records whether they must file and that determination can be reviewed quickly and objectively by the enforcement agencies. This convenience outweighs the value of trying to make more precise or more uniform calculations of the dollar size criteria, which are at best only very preliminary measures of competitive significance. Accordingly, the Commission will continue to require ongoing businesses to determine their size on the basis of regularly prepared balance sheets.

Section 801.11(e)

General rule. Section 801.11(e) states that it applies only when the person does not have a regularly prepared balance sheet. This section applies only to entities not controlled by any other entity, and as a practical matter, it applies primarily to newly formed entities that have not yet drawn up balance sheets. Persons with regularly prepared balance sheets are still required to calculate their size in accordance with paragraphs (a) through (d) of § 801.11. Section 801.11(e) also does not alter the method set forth in § 801.40(c) for determining the size of a joint venture in its formation transaction. Subsection (e)(1) sets forth the general rule that assets including cash or securities are always included on a person's balance sheet, except for cash that will be used to make an acquisition, securities issued by the acquired person (or an entity within the acquired person), and expenses incidental to the acquisition.

This exclusion continues until the acquiring person has a regularly prepared balance sheet. For example, if a newly-formed person buys voting securities of a single acquired person in a series of acquisitions, that series of acquisitions will be treated the same as a single acquisition of those voting securities. Neither the cash to be used to acquire additional voting securities nor any securities of the same acquired person already held by the acquiring person are counted as assets until the acquiring person prepares its first regularly prepared balance sheet. Thus, even if an acquiring person without a regularly prepared balance sheet accumulated $200 million in voting securities of one person in a four-month period, it would not meet the size-of-person test in acquisitions of that acquired person's voting securities as a result of holding those $200 million of voting securities until it had a regularly prepared balance sheet.

In contrast, the rule treats sequential asset acquisitions differently. Assets must be reflected on the acquiring entity's balance sheet as soon as they are acquired. The acquisition of assets by a previously non-operating entity, unlike the infusion of cash into such an entity and unlike its acquisition of a portion of a person's voting securities, can represent the establishment of an operating business. Further purchases of assets, even from the prior owner, can thus be tantamount to the combination of discrete businesses.

The first two examples illustrate the general way in which § 801.11(e) measures size. Example 1 illustrates the application of paragraph (e) when only cash is used in the acquisition. Example 2 illustrates the application of the rule when the acquiring person has non-cash assets.

Exception to the general rule. As explained above, the exclusion provided in § 801.11(e) is appropriate because transactions that may pose an antitrust concern are those in which two or more entities of significant size combine. When an entity without a regularly-prepared balance sheet acquires assets or voting securities of two or more persons, two or more entities of significant size may be combined; therefore § 801.11(e)(1) requires separate size calculations by the acquiring entity "for acquisitions of each acquired person." This means that if the entity will acquire assets or voting securities of person A and of person B, then, in determining whether it is large enough to have to report the acquisition of A, it must include as part of its total assets the cash it will use to acquire B and any securities of B it may hold. Similarly, in measuring its size to determine whether it must report the acquisition of B, the entity must include the cash it will use to acquire A and any securities of A it may hold. Example 4 illustrates the calculation of total assets when the acquiring entity will make two (or more) acquisitions.

Acquired persons without regularly prepared balance sheets. In most circumstances, newly-formed or other non-operating entities without regularly prepared balance sheets are not created or used for the purpose of becoming acquired persons, and the Commission is unaware of any need to give special treatment to such entities when the situation arises. The one exception of which the Commission is aware occurs in connection with the formation of joint venture corporations under § 801.40. Under § 801.40(a), the newly-formed joint venture is considered an acquired person, and § 801.40(c) sets forth a special rule that is used in calculating its size in the formation transaction. This calculation includes, *inter alia,* all assets contributed or to be contributed to the venture plus any credit that any person contributing to the joint venture has agreed to extend and any obligation of the joint venture firm that any contributor has agreed to guarantee. Unlike the calculation in § 801.11(e)(1), this test does not exclude cash.

Accordingly, § 801.11(e)(2) provides that the assets of an acquired person without a regularly prepared balance sheet ordinarily include all assets held, and that in the formation of a joint venture or other corporation, the special size test of § 801.40(c) governs. In either case, the exclusion of cash and voting securities provided in § 801.11(e)(1) does not apply to acquired persons. The text of § 801.11(e) has been altered in the final version of the rule to reflect the relationship of the new rule to § 801.40.

Modifications of the proposed rule. The Commission has made two other modifications of the proposed version of § 801.11(e). The final rule has been changed to make clear that funds used to pay expenses incidental to the acquisition are not included in calculating the acquiring entity's size. Incidental expenses are payments or fees for services rendered in connection with the acquisition, such as bank commitment fees, loan origination fees, investment banking fees, and counsel fees. This expansion of the exemption is a further application of its underlying rationale. Because the cash used to pay these expenses is exhausted by the acquisition, it cannot be combined with the newly-acquired entity to create a competitive problem. Example 3 illustrates the exclusion of acquisition-related expenses. The language of subparagraph (e)(1)(ii) of the rule has also been changed slightly for the sake of clarity.

Comments. Several comments made explicit or implicit reference to proposed § 801.11(e). No comments objected to the general purpose of the rule, and some (16, 18) specifically endorsed the approach taken in the rule. Therefore, the Commission has promulgated § 801.11(e) in substantially the same form as proposed.

Most of the comments dealing with § 801.11(e) revolved around its relationship with proposed § 801.5, the "acquisition vehicle" rule. Comment 2 expressed the view that taking the opposite approach, *i.e.,* counting cash and securities in these circumstances, could eliminate the need for a rule like proposed § 801.5. As stated above, the Commission is continuing to examine the best way to deal with the problems the "acquisition vehicle" proposal was intended to address. While reversal of the approach taken in § 801.11(e) would address these problems and has not been ruled out as a possible solution, the Commission does not believe it is likely that it will ultimately adopt an acquisition vehicle rule that will require acquiring companies without balance sheets to include cash as an asset.

Comment 16 suggested that the term "financial statements" that appeared in the proposed rule be changed to "balance sheet." The comment noted that the rule deals only with balance sheets and has no effect on a person's statement of annual income and expense. The Commission has adopted this suggestion.

2. Section 801.12(b): Calculating Percentage of Voting Securities To Be Held or Acquired

Section 801.12(b) sets out a formula by which persons are to calculate the percentage of voting securities of an issuer that they hold or will hold as a result of an acquisition. This amendment, which codifies an informal interpretation by the Commission staff, modifies the formula to reflect more accurately the amount of voting influence one person has over another where the acquired person has issued separate classes of voting securities with different voting rights.

The voting strength formula is important to the administration of the premerger notification program. Several key concepts in the rules and in the act turn on the percentage of a particular company's voting securities another person holds. For instance, a person is deemed to control a corporation when it holds at least 50 percent of that corporation's voting securities (§ 801.1(b)); the proper notification threshold is usually determined by the percentage of voting securities held (§ 801.1(h)); and the "investment only" exemption is available only for voting securities holdings of 10 percent or less (section 7A(c)(9) of the act and § 802.9). Accordingly, it is important that determinations of the percentage of voting securities held reflect the actual power of the person holding the shares and be made on an objective and readily ascertainable basis.

The formula in § 801.12(b) of the original rules directed an acquiring person to divide the number of votes for directors that it may cast after the acquisition by the total number of votes for directors that anyone may cast after the acquisition. In many cases the resulting ratio accurately portrayed the amount of influence the buyer had over the acquired firm. In some instances, however, the literal application of this formula significantly misrepresented the voting power of the buyer. This discrepancy occurred when there were several classes of voting securities, and one class of voting stock had voting power disproportionate to another class. In such instances, the Commission staff had responded to inquiries by advising persons filing notifications to weigh the number of votes that each class of stock may cast by the number of directors that each class may elect. In this amendment to § 801.12(b), the Commission has adopted that formula, which recognizes both that different classes of stock may exist and that each class may elect different numbers of directors.

The following example illustrates the problem with the literal application of the language in the original rule. Assume Company X has two classes of voting stock, A and B. Class A has 1,000 shares outstanding and elects four of company X's ten directors. Each share of class A stock has one vote in each of these elections. Class B has 100 shares outstanding and elects six of company X's ten directors. Each share of class B stock has one vote in each of these elections. Company Y proposes to acquire all class B shares. Under the language of original § 801.12(b), since Y can only cast 100 votes for directors, the percentage of X's voting securities held by Y after the acquisition would have been 100 divided by 1,100 (the total number of votes for directors that may be cast) or about 9 percent. Using that formula, Y's acquisition would not have crossed the 15 percent threshold; furthermore, the acquisition would be below the threshold for the "solely for the purpose of investment" exemption of section (c)(9) of the act since it would not have exceeded 10 percent of X's voting securities. And since Y would not have held 50 percent or more of X's voting securities, the conclusive presumption of control in § 801.1(b)(1) would not have applied.

Revised § 801.12(b)(1) calculates, more realistically, that company Y holds 60 percent of the voting securities of company X. It reflects Y's influence more accurately by adopting a new formula that first determines Y's voting power within each individual class of stock, and then determines Y's total voting power by summing the ratios calculated for each individual class of stock. Moreover, since the number of directors each class elects can be different, the individual ratios are calculated by weighting Y's voting power over each class by the proportion of the total number of directors that each class may elect. In the example above, the percentage of voting securities held by Y would then be determined by the following formula:

Number of votes of class A stock held by Y divided by Total votes of class A stock times Directors elected by class A stock divided by Total number of directors

Plus

Number of votes of class B stock held by Y divided by Total votes of class B stock times Directors elected by class B stock divided by Total number of directors

Example 1 following new § 801.12(b)(1) applies this formula to that hypothetical acquisition.

The 1978 version of § 801.12(b)(i) referred to voting securities that "presently" entitle the holder to vote for directors. This terminology was intended to make clear that convertible voting securities were not included in the computations in that section. Since the Commission is not changing the treatment of convertible voting securities, the term, which had been inadvertently deleted in the proposed rule, has been restored to the final rule.

Although the revision in § 801.12(b) is a major improvement in many situations, the Commission recognizes that it does not always describe fully the degree of influence over a corporation's affairs that may result from the acquisition or holding of voting securities. For example, holdings of voting securities can be subject to constraints that increase or decrease the actual or potential influence of the holder. These may include staggered elections of corporate directors, cumulative voting rights, voting trusts or agreements, supermajority provisions, and convertible securities.

The Commission has, however, found no objective and administrable criteria that will accurately reflect a holder's degree of influence over a corporation's affairs in all situations. The Commission has been unable to translate these myriad factors into a single proportional measure of voting power. While even after this revision of § 801.12(b), voting power may be measured only roughly in some circumstances, the rule sets forth objective criteria that are quickly ascertainable in most instances. Such certainty of application was an essential consideration in the formulation of the premerger notification rules, which rely primarily and in the first instance on business entities being able to identify for themselves whether they have an obligation to file notification.

The Commission solicited suggestions of a more exact method for calculating the degree of control stemming from holdings of voting securities, but no comments addressed the point. The only comment (16) that mentioned the issue at all simply endorsed this revision of § 801.12(b) as proposed. The Commission thus has concluded that this revision is preferable to an alternative that might measure voting power more precisely in some instances but would be much more difficult to apply. The Commission has promulgated this amendment in the same form as proposed.

3. Section 801.13: Aggregation of Assets and Voting Securities

Sections 801.13 and 801.14 state the circumstances under which parties must aggregate their purchases of voting securities and assets from the same person to determine their obligations under the act and rules. The purpose of aggregation is to treat acquisitions that are split into separate transactions the same as acquisitions that are consummated in a single transaction. The 1978 aggregation rules sometimes required repeated and burdensome reporting of even small asset acquisitions that had no anticompetitive potential. For example, the 1978 rules required the aggregation of two asset purchases from the same person if the purchases occurred within 180 days of each other, even though the first purchase had already been reported and the second was very small. A similar problem arose when a small purchase of assets followed a reportable acquisition of voting securities. To reduce this problem, amended § 801.13 eliminates aggregation when the later acquisition is an asset purchase, as long as the earlier acquisition (whether of assets or voting securities) was reported.

The previous version of § 801.13(b) required a person acquiring assets to add the value of any assets acquired within the past 180 days from the same seller to determine whether the present purchase was reportable. The rule worked well, for example, in requiring notification when a person acquired $10 million worth of assets following a $10 million purchase from the same person the previous month. Similarly, if the original acquisition was of voting securities and the present acquisition was of assets, § 801.14 operated to require aggregation, although in this case without the 180-day time limit. For example, a person that had previously acquired $8 million of a company's stock and a year later planned to purchase $8 million of assets from the same company had to file notification prior to the asset purchase (assuming that the acquisition was otherwise reportable). These results are not altered by this amendment to § 801.13.

The 1978 aggregation rules did not, however, work well in other circumstances. They could, for example, cause acquiring and acquired persons to file multiple notifications for tiny transactions. Once a person made a reportable acquisition by buying more than $15 million of another person's voting securities or assets, the aggregation requirement (which required the inclusion of the prior transaction) often meant that any additional asset purchase, however small, would also satisfy the act's size-of-transaction criteria. Consequently the transaction would again be subject to the notification and waiting requirements of the act (unless otherwise exempted). The Commission recognizes that repeated filings could be quite burdensome to the parties in such transactions, and that little antitrust purpose was served by receiving the subsequent report for the small transaction.

The new rule alleviates this burden by creating a separate reporting obligation for each cluster of transactions that amounts to an aggregate $15 million. Thus, after one acquisition has been reported, the parties are not required to report subsequent asset acquisitions until they again amount to $15 million in the aggregate. With this modification, the small subsequent transactions are no longer reportable.

The aggregation problem does not arise when the later transaction is an acquisition of voting securities only. Under § 801.13(b)(2), an earlier acquisition of assets is only aggregated with a subsequent asset acquisition, not with a later acquisition of voting securities. In addition, in a series of acquisitions involving only voting securities, § 802.21 exempts from the reporting requirements all acquisitions except those that meet or exceed the notification thresholds defined in § 801.1(h).

No comments objected to the Commission's proposal to amend § 801.13, and the Commission is promulgating the rule in substantially the same form as proposed. One comment (16) suggested three technical changes. First, the comment suggests that § 801.13 explicitly require that the earlier acquisition was in fact reported, not merely "subject to the filing and waiting requirements of the act." This change would require a person to continue to aggregate prior asset purchases if they had been reportable under the act but were not actually reported. This suggestion seems sound, and the Commission has adopted it.

The second suggestion is that new § 801.13(a)(3)(ii) explicitly reference § 802.21 (exemption for subsequent acquisitions of voting securities that do not exceed a higher threshold). The Commission believes that the relationship with § 802.21 is clear. Nevertheless, to avoid any possible confusion, explicit reference to the exemption has been added to § 801.13(a)(3)(ii).

The third point raised by the comment is outside the scope of this rulemaking. The comment asserts that the 1978 language of § 801.13 falls "short of [its] goal" of requiring aggregation of all asset acquisitions between the same parties occurring within 180 days of each other. The comment suggests changes intended to make § 801.13 more consistent with its stated goal. Since the point raised in the comment appears to be a useful suggestion, the Commission will study it and will, if appropriate, propose a change in § 801.13 in the future.

4. Section 802.35: Acquisitions by Employee Trusts

New § 802.35 exempts from the act's reporting provisions acquisitions of an employer's voting securities by an employee trust pursuant to an Employee Stock Ownership Plan ("ESOP"). Frequently a pension plan, profit sharing plan, or bonus plan that an employer organizes as an ESOP acquires shares of employer's stock on behalf of its employees. The plan typically holds the shares in trust for the employees. The original rules did not exempt such acquisitions of the employer's voting securities even in the case of an ESOP that the employer controlled by having the contractual right to designate its trustee or trustees. This new rule provides such an exemption. It does not exempt acquisitions by ESOPs of voting securities of persons other than the employer.

Under the 1978 rules, acquisitions of an employer's securities pursuant to an ESOP were likely to be subject to the notification requirements of the act. Such acquisitions are often large enough to satisfy the $15 million size-of-transaction criterion of section 7A(a)(3)(B). Furthermore, the ESOP trust is likely to meet the $10 million size-of-person criterion of section 7A(a)(2) because the trust is ordinarily considered to be controlled by the employer and must, pursuant to § 801.1(a)(1), include the total assets and annual net sales of the employer in determining its size. The intraperson exemption in § 802.30 does not apply, however, because the ESOP is not within the same person as the employer "by reason of holdings of voting securities." No other exemption applied under the original rules.

The conclusion that some ESOP transactions should be exempt is based on the distinctive characteristics of ESOP trusts. If complete ownership of voting securities, rather than just voting rights, were attributed to the individual employee beneficiaries of the ESOP, such acquisitions almost certainly would be too small to meet the $10 million size-of-person and $15 million size-of-transaction criteria of the act. If the securities were held by an entity that was controlled by the employer "by reason of holding voting securities" rather than appointing trustees, then the transaction would be exempted by § 802.30 as an intraperson transaction. The rationales for not requiring small acquisitions to be reported and for exempting intraperson transactions both apply to an ESOP trust's acquisition of an employer's voting securities. The Commission has therefore created a new exemption for such acquisitions based on the mixture of stock ownership characteristics of ESOP trusts discussed below.

Acquisitions of an employer's securities pursuant to an ESOP represent an inexpensive source of financing for the employer because the ESOP is accorded advantageous tax treatment when the securities are acquired with borrowed money. See generally 26 U.S.C. 401 *et seq.* For this reason, the employer, not its employees, generally initiates the formation of an ESOP. In doing so, the employer typically retains the power to appoint and remove the trustee who manages the assets of an ESOP trust, although the trustee may have the authority to appoint a co-trustee as the custodian for the voting securities. Once a trust is established by a publicly held corporation, the employees, not the trustees, vote the employer securities held by the trust that are allocated to their account. 26 U.S.C. 409A(e)(2). The trustees, however, often retain the power to purchase and sell the employer securities.

Under § 801.1(c)(3), the ESOP trust, like any trust, is deemed to hold the employer securities. For most irrevocable trusts, this result serves to guard against a possible antitrust problem because trustees usually have certain indicia of beneficial ownership, including the right to vote and the authority to dispose of all securities. From an antitrust viewpoint, therefore, competition would be threatened if a

best copy available

non-ESOP trust acquired substantial blocks of voting securities of the employer and of a competing firm. If an ESOP trust were to hold securities of both the employer and a competing company, however, the two sets of securities would not necessarily be voted by the ESOP trust. In a publicly held company, the employees would typically vote the securities of their employer. Consequently, one usual situation that causes antitrust concern—the possibility that one entity might control two competing firms—is unlikely to pose a problem when an ESOP holds the shares of both the employer and of a competing firm.

Nevertheless, an acquisition by an ESOP trust of a competing firm's voting securities could restrain competition in other ways. For example, an employer that controls the trust by retaining the power to appoint and remove trustees might cause the trust to acquire a competitor. The existing premerger rules recognize the possibility of exercising influence through the power to appoint trustees. Section 801.1(b) declares that a person controls an entity if it has the right to "designate a majority of the directors of a corporation, or in the case of unincorporated entities, of individuals exercising similar functions" (*e.g.*, trustees). Accordingly, when an employer controls the trust, the employer is considered the acquiring person and must report the trust's acquisition of shares in another firm. Because this provision ensures that the competitive implications of acquiring another firm's voting securities will continue to be reviewed, the Commission does not believe that it is also necessary to make the acquisition by the ESOP of an employer's securities reportable.

The provisions of the new rule take into account these distinctive features of ESOP trusts. Subsection: (a) Of the rule explicitly limits the exemption to trusts that are part of qualified stock bonus, pension, or profit sharing plans as defined in the Internal Revenue Code. These plans are most likely to make acquisitions large enough to be reportable. Subsection (b) limits the exemption to those trusts in which the employer has the right to appoint and remove the trustees or which the employer otherwise controls under § 801.1(b). Subsection (c) provides further that the exemption applies only to acquisitions of voting securities issued by the employer (or by entities it controls).

The examples emphasize that the ESOP exemption applies only to the acquisition of an employer's voting securities. In example 1 the acquisition illustrates that voting securities issued by more than one entity (but not more than one person) can qualify for the exemption. The acquisition in example 2 is not exempt because the issuer is neither the employer nor an entity within the person of the employer.

The Commission considered as alternatives means of exempting employee trust acquisitions either expanding the intraperson exemption in § 802.30 or changing the definition of "hold" in § 801.1(e). The Commission rejected both approaches for the reasons stated in the Notice of Proposed Rulemaking published on September 24, 1985, 50 FR 38760–38761.

Comment 16, the only one that dealt with this proposal, pointed out certain difficulties that may arise in determining whether an ESOP trust is controlled by the employer. The comment noted that some ESOP agreements provide that the collective bargaining representative of the employee-beneficiaries of the trust may have a veto over the employer's appointment or removal of the trustee(s). Whether this type of veto dilutes the employer's influence over the trust so as to negate the element of control of § 801.1(b) is a factual issue that will need to be determined in each instance. The comment also pointed out that some ESOP trustees appoint a custodian, sometimes designated as a trustee or co-trustee, for the voting securities held by the trust. Again, the question of control under these circumstances is a factual one that will require individual analysis.

Because all acquisitions of employer voting securities by ESOPs are exempt, it would not be appropriate to aggregate such acquisitions in the calculations under § 801.13. Such aggregation can be avoided by listing § 802.35 in § 801.15(a)(2), and that section has been amended accordingly.

8. Section 802.70(b): Acquisitions Subject to Prior Approval

The Commission has deleted paragraph (b) of § 802.70, which had exempted from the notification and waiting requirements of the act certain acquisitions that require prior approval by the Federal Trade Commission or by a federal court. The Commission has concluded that although the principle of this rule—to eliminate duplicative notification requirements—was sound, the rule could well have troublesome practical effects for both the enforcement agencies and the parties subject to an order. The Commission wants to assure that the rule, which exempted only a few transactions each year, does not create a barrier to voluntary settlements of antitrust actions by unnecessarily requiring public disclosures of information about acquisitions. As a consequence, the Commission has concluded that the administration of the premerger program would be better served by eliminating the exemption.

Previously, § 802.70(b) exempted an entire acquisition from the requirements of the act if, pursuant to an order entered in an action brought by the Commission or the Department of Justice, the acquiring person was required to obtain approval of the Commission or a federal court prior to making an acquisition. For example, a diversified company engaged in both the lumber and the cement businesses might, as a result of an acquisition of a cement firm, have become subject to a prior approval order requiring it to submit all future cement acquisitions for review. The company, when contemplating a subsequent cement and lumber acquisition, would have been required to submit both the cement and lumber portions of the acquisition for approval under the order.

When the § 802.70(b) exemption existed, the enforcement agencies were required to insist upon their right to review under a prior approval order all portions of a transaction, not merely those portions relevant to the order. However, this position could, in some instances, become an obstacle to obtaining consensual orders with companies because of the public disclosure procedures that are a part of prior approval orders. In contrast to the confidentiality required by section 7A(h) of the act for filings under the normal premerger notification program, review under an order typically requires the person requesting approval to place on the public record business information demonstrating that the acquisition is not anticompetitive. Thus, in the example from the previous paragraph, the diversified company would be required to disclose information about the lumber, as well as the cement, business. The Commission is concerned that the prospect of such broad disclosures of business information might unnecessarily provoke a company to resist an order settling an antitrust matter.

The Commission considered two approaches to this problem: (1) To require concurrent prior notifications under the order and the premerger notification program, or (2) to require separate notifications for different portions of an acquisition—those that will be reviewed within the terms of the order and those that will be reviewed under the normal premerger notification procedures. The latter resolution, although logically superior, could require extremely complex definitions to include all transactions that might be relevant to the order. Such definitions could result in some transactions being placed in the wrong category and quite possibly would result in others not being adequately reported under either procedure.

Accordingly, the Commission has decided to eliminate the exemption. This change will not significantly increase the number of filings (fewer than a dozen transactions were exempted under § 802.70(b) in 1984), nor the burden of compliance, since a firm would in any case have compiled much of the information required for its premerger filing in order to comply with the prior approval order. The Commission has decided that on balance, the administration of the premerger notification program and the enforcement of the antitrust laws will be enhanced by eliminating the exemption contained in § 802.70(b). No comments addressed this proposal.

The considerations underlying this rules change do not apply to divestitures subject to prior approval because in those orders the Commission or a federal court will have identified the transfers of assets that are relevant to those orders. There is, therefore, no reason to delete the exemption in § 802.70(a) for divestitures pursuant to orders.

6. Section 803.5: Affidavit Obligations of the Acquiring Person

Section 803.5(a) requires that the acquiring person give notice to the acquired person in certain transactions. The Commission has modified this rule (1) to permit the notice to state the notification threshold the acquiring person will meet or exceed in lieu of the number of shares to be acquired and (2) to require the person to state, where applicable, the total number of shares to be held as a result of the acquisition.

This rule requires an acquiring person in transactions subject to § 801.30 (tender offers, open market purchases and other acquisitions of stock from persons other than the issuer) to submit with its Notification and Report Form an affidavit attesting that the issuer has received the notice required by § 803.5(a). The notice procedure serves two related purposes: To inform the issuer of its obligation to file the notification required by the act, and to provide the issuer and the antitrust agencies with evidence that the acquiring person seriously intends to consummate the transaction.

When first promulgated, § 803.5(a) required the acquiring person to disclose in the notice to the issuer, among other things, the identity of the acquiring person and the number of securities of each class to be acquired. Because some acquiring persons could not state their intentions in terms of numbers of securities to be acquired, the Commission, by formal interpretation on December 28, 1978, permitted such persons to state instead which of the reporting thresholds of § 801.1(h) they intended to meet or exceed.

This interpretation did not, however, address a different problem in the 1978 version of § 803.5(a). That rule required the acquiring person to state only the number of securities to be acquired and not the number that would be held as a result of an acquisition. Since § 801.13(a) requires the acquiring person to aggregate the voting securities it plans to acquire with all voting securities of the issuer that it already holds, it is this total number of shares that would give rise to a filing obligation. If the acquiring person had substantial holdings in the issuer before the acquisition, merely stating the number of shares it would acquire would not always make clear to the issuer that the acquisition was reportable.

This amendment both codifies the 1978 formal interpretation on notification thresholds and amends the rule to require the acquiring person to state, in instances in which the number of voting securities is specified, the number of voting securities that would be held as a result of the acquisition.

Notice to the acquired issuer. These changes will assist in fulfilling the principal purpose of § 803.5(a)—to inform the acquired person of its obligation to file a Notification and Report Form with the antitrust enforcement agencies. In the transactions covered by this rule, the issuer may have no reason to know that some or all of its shares are being acquired, because the voting securities are to be acquired from persons other than the issuer or an entity within the same person as the issuer. Section 803.5(a) cures this potential problem by requiring the acquiring person to serve the notice before filing its notification.

These amendments refine that process. By requiring that the notice state either the notification threshold the acquiring person will meet or exceed or the total number of voting securities to be held as a result of an acquisition, the amendments insure that the acquired person will receive notice of the acquiring person's intention to make an acquisition that meets or exceeds the $15 million, or the 15, 25 or 50 percent of voting securities thresholds of § 801.1(h). From this statement and from knowledge about its own voting securities, the acquired person will have a basis for determining whether it has a notification obligation.

The requirement that the notice include nonvoting securities has been deleted because they do not affect the notification obligation.

Credibility of the acquisition plan. This amendment will also aid in fulfilling the second objective of § 803.5(a)—to provide evidence of the seriousness of the acquiring person's plan of action. The antitrust screening process initiated by the acquiring person requires the expenditure of significant resources by the issuer and the antitrust agencies. The rule therefore requires that the acquiring person provide evidence that it intends to make a reportable transaction and is not merely considering the possibility of making one. The evidence required falls into three categories:

(1) The statement that the acquiring person has a "good faith intention . . . to make [an] acquisition" (§ 803.5(a)(2));

(2) The statement of the specific number of securities that the person intends to hold or the filing threshold it intends to meet or exceed (§ 803.5(a)(1)(iii)); and

(3) The communication of these and other facts to the acquired person (§ 803.5(a)(1)).

The statement of "good faith" intent is but one part of the evidence the rules require to establish that an acquiring person intends to make a reportable acquisition. That general statement gains greater credibility when the acquiring person declares the exact number of securities it intends to buy or the filing threshold it intends to cross. The greater specificity suggests that a plan has developed beyond the conceptual stage at least to the point where it could be implemented. In requiring a definite written declaration of a plan to acquire shares, this provision parallels the requirements that agreements to merge be executed (§ 803.5(b)) and that tender offers be publicly announced (§ 803.5(a)(2)) before filing notification.

Because the acquired person and the enforcement agencies are entitled to be reasonably certain that a reportable acquisition will be made, § 803.5(a)(1)(iii) requires the acquiring person to state in the notice a present intention to make such a reportable acquisition of voting securities. Accordingly, the Commission does not accept a statement in a notice, for instance, that the acquiring person intends to make an acquisition that "may exceed" a reporting threshold, because that statement does not specify either a threshold that the person intends to meet or a current intention to acquire any shares. See Example 4. Similarly, the Commission does not accept a statement that a person will acquire "up to" a certain percentage or number of shares, since such a statement does not clearly express a present intent to acquire a percentage or number of shares that is reportable. See Example 5.

The Commission had proposed requiring a statement of the specific present intent to meet or exceed a higher notification threshold once the person had established an intent to make a reportable acquisition. The effect of such an extension would have been, for example, to treat a filing in which the acquiring person states in its notice to the acquired person an intention "that it will acquire more than 15% of the acquired person's voting securities and it may acquire more than 50% of those voting securities" as a filing solely for the 15% threshold. This proposal drew a mixed response from commenters. Comments 7 and 16 objected to the proposal, arguing that requiring a subsequent filing prior to crossing the 25 or 50 percent thresholds would be unnecessary and burdensome. Comment 18, in contrast, supported the proposal, noting that because the percentage of voting securities acquired can be relevant to antitrust analysis, multiple filings can conserve Commission resources and permit smaller acquisitions that otherwise might be blocked if the transaction were analyzed at the 50 percent level.

While the Commission agrees on balance with Comment 18 and does not believe this aspect of its original proposal would have imposed a major burden, it concedes that some additional burden would have resulted. Moreover, since the current practice, which treats the above language as a filing for the 50% threshold, has not created substantial antitrust enforcement problems, the Commission has decided not to adopt this change.

The Commission will thus continue its policy that requires the notice affidavit to demonstrate a firm intention to make a reportable acquisition, but allows filing for a higher threshold even when the intention to make that additional acquisition has not yet become fixed. Example 3 illustrates that when a person files for a threshold it plans to meet or exceed, it may also designate a higher threshold. The less stringent standard for designating the filing threshold accommodates the interest of the parties to a transaction and the antitrust agencies in most circumstances. Once the premerger review process is undertaken, the additional burden on the acquired person and the enforcement agencies occasioned by a review of a transaction at a higher threshold is usually relatively minor in comparison with the burden of conducting a completely separate review based on a subsequent filing by the acquiring person for that higher threshold.

It should be noted, however, that it is unlikely to be advantageous for acquiring persons to file for a higher threshold if they do not expect to cross it within the period provided by § 803.7. As comment 18 noted, there are circumstances in which the antitrust agencies would permit a smaller holding of voting securities, but would challenge larger holdings. By filing for the higher threshold in such a transaction, the acquiring person might make it necessary for one of the agencies to seek to enjoin an acquisition based on the designated threshold, even though the immediate transaction contemplated would not have been challenged.

Comment 2 noted that in many acquisitions to which § 801.30 applies the acquiring and acquired persons have executed an agreement in principle or a letter of intent to merge or acquire. It argues that in such instances it is pointless and burdensome to also require the acquiring person to deliver to the acquired person the notice required by § 803.5(a). While the Commission agrees that the notice can be redundant, it does not agree that delivery of the notice is a substantial burden or unnecessary. Acquisitions to which § 801.30 applies are by definition acquisitions of voting securities from persons other than the acquired person. Consequently, even if the agreement lapses for some reason, the rules still permit the acquiring person to proceed with the acquisition. In such circumstances, since the agreement is no longer in force, the acquired person might not be aware of its continuing responsibility to file. The Commission believes that the current notice requirement makes clear that the acquired person's responsibility to file is based on the acquiring person's intent to make a reportable acquisition and is independent of any agreement. Accordingly, it has not adopted the suggestion.

7. Section 803.10(a): Running of Time in § 801.40 Transactions

The Commission has amended § 803.10(a) in order to clarify when the waiting period begins in connection with the formation of a joint venture or other corporation (hereinafter "joint venture") subject to § 801.40 of the rules. The amendment makes explicit that the waiting period does not begin until all venturers who are required to file have done so. This is consistent with the Commission staff's interpretation of the 1978 version of § 803.10(a).

Before this amendment to § 803.10(a), it was possible to read the rule to provide for a separate waiting period for each individual venturer that began when each filed its notification. The Commission has amended the rule to eliminate this possible misinterpretation, which it believes would preclude effective review by the antitrust agencies of the formation of joint ventures. Separate waiting periods for individual venturers would mean that in some instances one venturer's waiting period could expire before another venturer's filing alerted the antitrust agencies to the need to issue requests for additional information to all venturers. To eliminate any possible ambiguity, the Commission has amended § 803.10(a) to state explicitly that in the case of acquisitions covered by § 801.40, the waiting period begins when all venturers required to file a notification have done so.

Although the Commission is adopting this amendment as proposed, it believes that the staff's prior position correctly interpreted previous § 803.10. Old § 803.10 provided, in relevant part, that the waiting period for all acquisitions, other than those subject to § 801.30, began on the "date of receipt of the notification . . . from: . . . all persons required by the act and these rules to file notification." In other words, the waiting period began only when all venturers required to file had done so. It was, however, possible to argue that the "all persons" language of § 803.10 refers only to those persons required to file notification in connection with a particular "acquisition" and that § 801.40 was intended to treat each individual venturer's acquisition of stock of the joint venture corporation as a discrete acquisition. Since in each such "acquisition" only the venturer is required to file (the joint venture itself need not file), the result would be that the "all persons" requirement would be satisfied whenever an individual venturer filed notification. Thus, according to the argument, each venturer would have a separate waiting period beginning as soon as it filed its notification.

While this argument had support in some language of the rules, it was not consistent with the antitrust enforcement agencies' need to conduct an analysis of the competitive relationships among the persons forming the joint venture corporation. As the Statement of Basis and Purpose to § 802.41 notes, "it is the combination of the persons that form the new entity (and not the new entity standing alone) that presents antitrust issues when a new corporation is formed . . . ." 43 FR 33496 (July 31, 1978). Accordingly, to ensure that the enforcement agencies have the opportunity to evaluate the competitive relationships among all the venturers required to file, the agencies must be able to review all their notifications at the same time. It was on this basis that the Commission staff interpreted the language of the 1978 version of § 803.10(a) to mean that the waiting period for acquisitions subject to § 801.40 began when all acquiring persons that were required to report had done so. To avoid any possible ambiguity, however, the rule has been amended to state this requirement explicitly.

The relationship between this amendment and § 803.10(b), (explaining when the waiting period ends) and § 803.20(c) (setting out the rules for an extended waiting period) is as follows: In acquisitions subject to § 801.40 in which a request for additional information is issued, the extended waiting period begins on the date the additional information or documentary material requested is received from all contributors to the joint venture corporation who received a request.

Comment 16, the only comment to discuss this proposal, suggested that item 5(d) instead be revised to require the participants in the joint venture to identify the other persons participating. However, as discussed below in connection with the changes in the Form, the agencies have not had difficulty in ascertaining the identity of joint venture parties. Rather, the problem is that without having the filings of all the participants available at one time, the agencies might fail to notice possible anticompetitive consequences of the venture that would justify a second request. The Commission regards this amendment as an adequate resolution of the problem and believes no further changes are necessary at this time.

8. Changes in Examples To Conform With Prior Amendments to the Rules

On November 21, 1979 and July 29, 1983, the Commission published several changes in the premerger rules. See 44 FR 66781 *et seq.* and 48 FR 34427 *et seq.* Our experience with those changes has indicated that it would be helpful to make several amendments to the examples appearing elsewhere in the premerger rules. The affected examples are example 1 to § 801.4, example 4 to § 801.15, example 3 to § 801.30, the example to § 801.40, and example 1 to § 802.41. These amendments elicited no comments.

9. The Premerger Notification and Report Form

The Commission has promulgated eight changes designed to clarify or simplify the Premerger Notification and Report Form. Seven of the changes were proposed in the **Federal Register** in September 1985; six of these appear in substantially the same form as they were proposed, and one has been reworded for the sake of clarity. One additional change, a clarification of an existing requirement, is a product of the staff's recent experience. The Form and its instructions have been revised to reflect these changes, and the revised version appears in this **Federal Register** Notice.

The eight changes to the Form are discussed in paragraphs a–h below. Some of the changes are based on comments received by the Commission in response to its July 1982 **Federal Register** Notice. These comments are referred to as "earlier comments" or "prior comments." Comments received in response to the 1985 rules change proposals are designated by number.

Following paragraph h, sections 1–4 address new issues that were raised in comments received pursuant to the 1985 proposals. These comments did not specifically address the present changes to the Form but instead suggested further changes in the Form or raised other issues about the Form.

Changes in the Report Form

a. General Instructions.

The general instructions to the Form detail the proper procedures for complying with the notification requirements. Some filing parties have misinterpreted one aspect of these instructions: when making a narrative response to an informational item in the Form on attachment pages, parties have sometimes failed to submit one set of those attachment pages with each copy of their Form. The Commission has therefore changed the general instructions to make clear that each filing person must submit two complete copies of the Form to the Commission and three complete copies of the Form to the Department of Justice and that each copy of the Form must have its own set of attachment pages.

This provision does not apply to "documentary attachments," which, as defined in the instructions to the Form, are the documents, usually prepared by the parties for purposes unrelated to the Form, that are submitted pursuant to item 2(d) (formerly 2(f)(i)), item 4, and §§ 803.1(b) and 803.11. The instructions require multiple submissions to each agency of narrative responses to items on the Form, but only a single copy per agency of each "documentary attachment."

This change in the general Form instructions makes clear that when parties choose to make their narrative responses on separate attachment pages, these responses are not "documentary attachments," and multiple copies of these pages must still be supplied to each agency. Some filing parties had incorrectly treated these pages as "documentary attachments" and had submitted only one copy per agency. Such omissions hamper review by the agencies and could cause a filing to be deemed deficient.

b. Description of Transaction

The Commission has consolidated into one question the three items, formerly items 2(a), 2(b), and 2(c), that request a description of the transaction. Item 2(a) had asked for the names and addresses of the parties to the acquisition, a description of the assets or voting securities to be acquired, the consideration to be received from each party, and, if the acquisition involved a tender offer, the terms of the offer. Item 2(b) had called for the scheduled consummation date, and item 2(c) had required a description of the manner in which the transaction was to be carried out, including scheduled major events such as stockholders' meetings, other requests for government approval or tender offer dates. Parties had often repeated information when responding to these items; the Commission has therefore eliminated this redundancy by combining them into one question.

Comment 22 pointed out that the proposed version of item 2(a) and the 1978 version of item 2(d), which has been redesignated as item 2(b) but which is otherwise being retained unchanged, both asked for a description of the assets to be acquired. The Commission has further revised item 2(a) in response to this comment so that it no longer requires a description of the assets or voting securities. Instead, item 2(a) simply asks whether assets or voting securities (or both) are being acquired. The detailed description of assets to be acquired is required by item 2(b) (formerly 2(d)) and the description of the voting securities to be acquired is found in item 2(c) (formerly 2(e)).

c. Description of Voting Securities To Be Acquired

The Commission has changed item 2(c) (which had been 2(e) but which has been redesignated) to allow persons who intend to acquire 100 percent of the acquired person's voting securities to respond by stating that intent and providing the dollar value of the acquisition. Item 2(c) requires responses to eight subsections that elicit information about separate classes of voting securities and the amount of each that will be held by each acquiring person following the transaction. As the 1978 Statement of Basis and Purpose pointed out, the purpose of the detailed breakdown is to enable the agencies to assess the degree of control resulting from the acquisition. 43 FR 33522 (July 31, 1978). The Commission recognizes that detailed responses are likely to be unnecessary when a person is acquiring 100 percent of the voting securities of a company. In that case, the acquiring person will presumably have complete control of the acquired person. The same is true when two companies are merging or consolidating to form a new company. In these instances, therefore, the Commission has eliminated the detailed responses required by item 2(c). Item 2(c) now permits parties simply to state that 100% of the voting securities are being acquired.

However, to enable the Commission to monitor compliance with the act with regard to previous acquisitions between the parties, parties must still give full responses to item 2(c) if, prior to the acquisition, the acquiring person held 15 percent or more than $15 million of the acquired person's voting securities. Since holdings of this magnitude normally require a filing, disclosure of this information in item 2(c) will permit the agencies to inquire whether the prior acquisition was exempt from the act. For the sake of clarity, the wording of item 2(c) has been altered from the form in which it was proposed.

d. Index to Ancillary Documents

The Commission has deleted item 2(f)(ii), which had asked for an index of ancillary documents related to the acquisition agreement, such as those relating to personnel matters (*e.g.*, union contracts and employment agreements), third-party financing agreements, leases, subleases and documents related to the transfer of realty. The 1978 Statement of Basis and Purpose stated that the index "will permit the agencies to identify particular documents in a second request." 43 FR 33523 (July 31, 1978). In the Commission's experience, however, this index has not been particularly helpful. Second requests do not usually focus on issues related to third-party agreements, subleases, union contracts or other documents listed in the index. If this type of information is needed, the agencies can ask for it descriptively in the second request even without an index of the documents. Since the index can be lengthy and time-consuming to prepare, the Commission has dropped this item from the Form.

e. Shareholders and Holdings of Persons Filing Notification

The Commission has changed the instructions to item 6 to specifically permit parties to identify where responses to this item can be found in a "documentary attachment" to the Form. The Commission does not object to parties responding to these items by referencing "documentary attachments" submitted with a filing as long as they indicate the relevant pages in the attachments and as long as the information provided in the attachments is complete, up-to-date, and accurate. If the information contained in the attachments is not complete, up-to-date, and accurate, the filing will not be deemed substantially compliant and the waiting period will not begin until the correct materials are filed with both agencies.

As revised, item 6(a) asks for a list of the filing person's subsidiaries, except for subsidiaries with total assets of less than $10 million. Item 6(b) asks for a list of shareholders of each entity included within the person filing notification. Holders of 5 percent or more of the voting securities of any entity included within the person must be listed unless the entity has total assets of less than $10 million. Item 6(c) requires parties to list their minority holdings. Parties may omit holdings of less than 5 percent and holdings of issuers with total assets of less than $10 million.

One prior comment stated that the Commission should permit parties to respond to these items by referencing a "documentary attachment" to the Form rather than including a response on the Form itself. The Commission is of the view that a response that references a "documentary attachment" is adequate so long as the specific pages of each attachment are indicated for each item.

f. List of Subsidiaries

The Commission has changed item 6(a) so that parties may omit subsidiaries with total assets of less than $10 million. Item 6(a) requires persons filing notification to provide the name and headquarters mailing address of each entity included within the person filing notification. The 1978 instructions gave parties the option of not listing entities with total assets of less than $1 million. Prior comments questioned whether a list of subsidiaries was helpful to the agencies' antitrust review and especially whether the names of relatively small subsidiaries were necessary.

To conduct their review, the agencies must be able to determine the names and addresses of all significant entities included within the parties to the acquisition. In many instances, the names of these subsidiaries can give the agencies a better understanding of the acquisition and can enable them to seek information from public sources, most of which is only available by company (subsidiary) name. The need for subsidiaries' names is particularly compelling when the subsidiaries are foreign entities, since the SIC code information contained in item 5 is limited to U.S. operations. See § 803.2. Without the name of the foreign subsidiary, information about the person's foreign operations is not readily obtainable. However, the Commission has recognized that some subsidiaries may be so small that even their names are unlikely to produce information relevant to the agencies' antitrust review. The Commission has therefore raised the $1 million cut-off provided in original item 6(a) to $10 million. This change was based in part on the fact that items 6(b) and 6(c) have always been subject to a $10 million cut-off and that these cut-off levels do not appear to have adversely affected the agencies' ability to conduct their antitrust review.

g. Geographic Information in Overlapping SIC Codes

The Commission has changed the level of specificity with which parties must provide certain geographic information. When an overlap occurred in certain SIC codes, the Commission had previously required that each party provide the address, arranged by the state, county, and city or town, of its establishments that derived revenue in the overlapping code. Now, for some of these codes, parties may provide only the state or states in which they derive revenue.

Item 7(a) of the Form requires the filing person to identify 4-digit industry SIC codes in which it has knowledge or belief that it and any other person which is a party to the acquisition also derives revenue (usually referred to as "the overlapping code" or "a four-digit overlap"). Item 7(c) requires the filing person to identify the geographic areas in which it derives revenue in overlapping codes. For most overlapping codes the filing person lists the states in which it derives revenue. In the 1978 version of Item 7(c)(iv), parties were required to provide more detailed geographic information for overlaps in all SIC major groups 52–62 and 64–89.

In most of these major groups, the agencies must determine the precise geographic areas in which the parties operate. For instance, acquisitions involving food stores, gasoline service stations, hospitals, apparel and accessory stores, and banks require a detailed breakdown of geographic information, since the relevant geographic market is often a local area rather than an entire state or region. However, some of the SIC major groups identified in 1978 as requiring the more detailed breakdown have proved in fact not to require such detailed breakdowns in the initial Hart-Scott-Rodino filing. For instance, acquisitions involving securities brokers, insurance agents, investment offices and certain other businesses falling within these codes can be adequately reviewed without the initial filing providing such detailed information. Acquisitions involving overlaps in these codes either do not involve local markets or, if they do involve local markets, can still be adequately reviewed if the parties specify in their initial filings only the states in which they derive revenue. Therefore, the Commission has changed item 7(c) to require only state-by-state information for overlaps occurring in SIC major groups 62, 64–67, 72, 73, 78, 79, and 81–89. The SIC major groups that still require the parties to give the address, arranged by state, county, and city or town, of establishments where they derive revenue are listed in Attachment A.

h. Prior Acquisitions

The Commission has changed item 9 of the Form to require the acquiring person to provide information about acquisitions made within five years of filing rather than the ten years that had been required.

If both the acquiring person and the acquired issuer or the acquired assets had attributable to them $1 million or more in revenue in the same 4-digit SIC code, the acquiring person must list in item 9 its past acquisitions of other persons that also derived revenue in that 4-digit SIC code. Only acquisitions of more than 50 percent of the voting securities or assets of entities that had annual net sales or total assets greater than $10 million in the year prior to the acquisition need be listed. In the original version of item 9 parties were required to list all such acquisitions that had taken place in the past ten years. The Commission has changed item 9 so that it now applies only to acquisitions in the past five years.

The purpose of item 9 is to assist the agencies in identifying prior acquisitions by the acquiring person that may suggest a pattern of acquisitions in a particular industry by that person. See 43 FR 33534 (July 31, 1978). Several earlier comments suggested modifications of item 9. One such comment suggested raising to $10 million the present $1 million cut-off for the overlap in the acquisition that is the subject of the notification. This suggestion was rejected because the agencies sometimes find overlaps of less than $10 million in a given 4-digit SIC code to be of competitive significance. This is particularly true when the parties compete in a small geographic area or when one of the parties has an extremely large share of a market.

Another prior comment suggested that the ten-year period be reduced to five years. The Commission has adopted this suggestion. It believes that this change can be made without harming the agencies' ability to conduct a thorough antitrust review since an account of the acquiring person's acquisitions over the past five years will give adequate notice of possible trends toward concentration. This change should significantly reduce the burden of this item because it will cut in half the number of years that parties will have to search for information about prior acquisitions and because it should be easier for companies to identify more recent acquisitions.

Other Comments

In addition to the comments discussed in paragraphs (a) through (h) above, comment 16 specifically endorsed the changes as proposed, and no comment objected to them. Several other comments suggested additional changes in the Form, requested clarification of existing items, or otherwise made observations about the Form's reporting requirements. The Commission takes this opportunity to respond to the issues raised in these comments.

1. Comments about SIC code revenue required by the Form. Several comments made observations about the existing Report Form's SIC code requirements. Comment 2 said it is difficult for companies to classify information in the correct code since some companies have internal bookkeeping inconsistencies and their SIC code classifications vary from year to year. The comment stated that this problem is especially acute when the classifications are highly detailed. Although compiling SIC-based information may occasionally be difficult, the Commission has found it the most workable way to determine whether and to what extent companies produce competing products.

Similarly, comment 2 stated that it is difficult to provide the detailed breakdown required for 7-digit codes ending in "00." If a 7-digit code ends in "00," the instructions require a further breakdown by codes listed in Appendix B of the *Numerical List of Manufactured Products*. Again, notwithstanding this possible difficulty, the Commission needs this detailed information for its antitrust review.

The same comment also stated that SIC code information on interplant transfers as is required by § 803.2 is difficult to assemble, and that providing such information can result in some double counting. Here as well, despite the possible difficulty of gathering the information, the Commission believes that interplant transfers are relevant to antitrust review since internally consumed products must sometimes be considered in the market along with products sold externally. Furthermore, the Commission has not found the double counting problem insurmountable. Although the inclusion of interplant transfers means that the sum of SIC code revenues may slightly exceed the sales listed on the company's most recent income statement, the agencies can take this possibility into account in performing their antitrust review.

Comment 2 also observed that it is difficult to compile SIC code revenue, especially the more detailed 7-digit information, for recently acquired entities. This problem is more likely to occur if the recent acquisition was not reportable, since in a reported acquisition the acquired entity would already have compiled its SIC code information to fulfill its filing requirements. Again, even if the information has not been previously compiled and may be difficult to compile, it must be compiled in connection with the filing since the agencies' antitrust review depends on it.

Comment 22 objected to item 5(b)(ii)'s requirement that current 7-digit information be provided for products added since the base year. The comment pointed out that this item required companies to annually update 7-digit information for products they have recently added. The comment suggested that the information be supplied only for the year following the addition.

The Commission needs SIC code information on all aspects of a person's business, including recently commenced operations. This information must be as detailed as practicable. In this particular item, the Commission already permits parties the option of providing the information based on 7-digit SIC codes "or in the manner ordinarily used by the person filing notification." It would not be workable, however, to permit parties to provide the information only for the year following its addition. If this were permitted, the parties to an acquisition would be providing dollar revenues for dissimilar years for added products, since any number of different intervening years would appear in addition to the base year and the most recent year. This would make it difficult for the Commission to compare the parties' revenues. Moreover, if parties only provided revenues for new products for the year after the product was introduced, the Commission would often be unable to determine the present level of that person's presence in the market. The new product may have generated very little revenue when it was introduced, but may have since gained a significant presence in the market.

2. Suggested reduction in reporting requirements. Most of the observations about difficulties in complying with filing requirements centered around the need to provide SIC code information. Comment 22, however, also suggested two changes in the Form unrelated to SIC code data: Deletion of the requirement that persons submit an affidavit with the Form and deletion of the requirement that filing persons certify the Form.

The Commission believes that these two requirements impose at most a minimal burden on the parties to an acquisition. The Commission needs to know that the acquisition that is the subject of the filing is actually planned and not hypothetical; this is the goal of the affidavit requirement. The Commission also needs to be certain that the information contained in the Form is accurate. The current certification requirement gives the Commission added assurance that a specific individual has taken responsibility for the accuracy of the information contained in the Form. The Commission believes that the small burden imposed by these requirements is outweighed by the importance of the requirements. If interested persons believe the burden imposed by these requirements is more substantial, the Commission would appreciate submissions describing the extent of the burden.

3. Requests for clarification of Report Form instructions. Comment 2 requested clarification of the instructions for two items on the Form: Item 5(b)(ii) and item 8. The Commission believes that the instructions are adequate and therefore does not propose to change them at this time.

Item 5(b)(ii) requests information about products that have been added or deleted subsequent to 1982. The instruction to this item permits parties to identify added or deleted products either by 7-digit code or "in the manner ordinarily used by the person filing notification." The instruction does not expressly define the term "products added or deleted." Most filing persons have correctly read the instructions to require only additions or deletions of products that comprise a 7-digit product code. In other words, for purposes of this item, parties should define the term "product" to mean all items that are classified in a single 7-digit code. For example, assume all widgets are classified in a single 7-digit code. If a person has always made blue and yellow widgets, and one year it begins production of red widgets, it need not list red widgets in item 5(b)(ii). Similarly, if the person stops making blue widgets, it need not list them as a deleted product. In both instances the addition and deletion took place within a existing or ongoing 7-digit code in which the person derived revenue in 1982.

Comment 2 requested a similar change in the instruction to item 8, which asks for information about any vendor-vendee relationship between the parties to the acquisition. To complete this item, each vendee must list the "products" it purchased from other parties to the acquisition. Only aggregate purchases of "products" of more than $1 million must be listed. To determine whether the $1 million figure applies, most parties have correctly read the existing instructions as defining the term "product" to mean a 7-digit SIC code. Thus, in our example above, if $750,000 worth of red widgets and $750,000 worth of blue widgets were purchased in the most recent year, the person should list widgets in item 8. If, however, blue and red widgets were properly classified in separate 7-digit codes, then in our example widgets would not be listed in item 8 since the $1 million level would not be met for any given "product."

4. Comments regarding joint venture filings. Two comments (7, 16) expressed the concern that the Notification and Report Form did not provide the Commission with enough information to determine whether all the parties to the formation of a joint venture or other corporation had fulfilled their filing requirements. These comments arose in the context of the proposal to change rule 803.10(a), which codifies the Commission's policy of starting joint venture waiting periods after all parties to the venture with a reporting obligation have filed. The comments asserted that the Commission would not be able to determine which parties to the acquisition were required to file and therefore the agencies would not know when to start the applicable waiting period. The Commission believes that the Form already requires enough information to allow the agencies to determine which joint venturers are required to file.

The Form requires certain information about the parties to a joint venture. For instance, item 1(c) requires each party to "[g]ive the names of *all* ultimate parent entities of acquiring … persons which are parties to the acquisition *whether or not they are required to file notification.*" (emphasis supplied) In the joint venture context, this item requires the name of each person that will acquire any voting securities of the venture, even if the parties do not believe that some of those persons will ultimately have a reporting obligation. Similarly the subparts of item 2(c) (formerly 2(e)) require detailed information about the amount and dollar value of the voting securities to be acquired by each person. Each joint venturer that files must supply this information for each person acquiring securities of a joint venture corporation.

Item 5(d) requires detailed information about all contributions to the joint venture or other corporation. Item 5(d)(ii)(A) requires a list of contributions from each person forming the venture and item 5(d)(ii)(D) requires a full description of the consideration to be received by each person forming the joint venture. Neither item is limited to persons required to file. Therefore each person that files for a joint venture must disclose this information for itself and every other person forming the venture.

These items, when read together, give the Commission considerable information about each venturer. The Commission will know the names of each contributor, the amount and value of the securities each venturer will receive and the contributions made by each venturer. Once the first venturer files, the Commission can readily determine from that filing which other venturers will meet the act's size-of-transaction test. Furthermore, the names of the other venturers will likely permit the Commission to determine from public sources which of the other venturers appear to meet the commerce and size-of-person tests.

Comments 7 and 16 suggested that parties be specifically required to state which other parties to the joint venture are required to file. The Commission agrees that this would not be particularly burdensome and that it would provide further confirmation of the Commission's independent evaluation of who must file. Nevertheless, the Commission has not adopted the suggestion at this time since it has not in the past had difficulty determining which venturers must file. If in the future the Commission experiences difficulty determining which joint venturers must file (particularly if filing persons resist the Commission's attempts to determine this information informally), the Commission will propose a change suitable to remedy the problem.

Attachment A

SIC major groups in which parties are required to provide the address, arranged by state, county, and city or town, of each establishment from which they derive dollar revenues.

Division G. Retail Trade

Major Group 52. Building materials, hardware, garden supply, and mobile home dealers.
Major Group 53. General merchandise stores.
Major Group 54. Food stores.
Major Group 55. Automotive dealers and gasoline service stations.
Major Group 56. Apparel and accessory stores.
Major Group 57. Furniture, home furnishings, and equipment stores.
Major Group 58. Eating and drinking places.
Major Group 59. Miscellaneous retail.

Division H. Finance, Insurance and Real Estate

Major Group 60. Banking.
Major Group 61. Credit Agencies other than banks.

Division I. Services

Major Group 70. Hotels, rooming houses, camps, and other lodging places.
Major Group 75. Automotive repair, services, and garages.
Major Group 78. Motion pictures.
Major Group 80. Health services.

List of Subjects

16 CFR Parts 801 and 802

Antitrust.

16 CFR Part 803

Antitrust, Reporting and recordkeeping requirements.

Accordingly, 16 CFR Parts 801, 802 and 803 are amended as follows:

A. The authority for Parts 801, 802 and 803 continues to read as follows:

Authority: Sec. 7A(d) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d), as added by sec. 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390.

PART 801—COVERAGE RULES

B. Example 1 to § 801.4(b) is revised to read as set forth below.

§ 801.4 Secondary acquisitions.

* * * * *

(b) * * *

Examples: 1. Assume that acquiring person "A" proposes to acquire all the voting securities of corporation B. This section provides that the acquisition of voting securities of issuers held but not controlled by B or by any entity which B controls are secondary acquisitions by "A." Thus, if B holds more than $15 million of the voting securities of corporation X (but does not control X), and "A" and "X" satisfy sections 7A (a)(1) and (a)(2), "A" must file notification separately with respect to its secondary acquisition of voting securities of X. "X" must file notification within fifteen days (or in the case of a cash tender offer, 10 days) after "A" files, pursuant to § 801.30.

* * * * *

C. Section 801.11(a) is revised and a new § 801.11(e) is added to read as set forth below.

§ 801.11 Annual net sales and total assets.

(a) The annual net sales and total assets of a person shall include all net sales and all assets held, whether foreign or domestic, except as provided in paragraphs (d) and (e) of this section.

* * * * *

(e) Subject to the limitations of paragraph (d) of this section, the total assets of:

(1) An acquiring person that does not have the regularly prepared balance sheet described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section shall be, for acquisitions of each acquired person:

(i) All assets held by the acquiring person at the time of the acquisition,

(ii) Less all cash that will be used by the acquiring person as consideration in an acquisition of assets from, or in an acquisition of voting securities issued by, that acquired person (or an entity within that acquired person) and less all cash that will be used for expenses incidental to the acquisition, and less all securities of the acquired person (or an entity within that acquired person); and

(2) An acquired person that does not have the regularly prepared balance sheet described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section shall be either

(i) All assets held by the acquired person at the time of the acquisition, or

(ii) Where applicable, its assets as determined in accordance with § 801.40(c).

Examples: For examples 1–4, assume that A is a newly-formed company which is not controlled by any other entity. Assume also that A has no sales and does not have the balance sheet described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section.

1. A will borrow $105 million in cash and will purchase assets from B for $100 million. In order to establish whether A's acquisition of B's assets is reportable, A's total assets are determined by subtracting the $100 million that it will use to acquire B's assets from the $105 million that A will have at the time of the acquisition. Therefore, A has total assets of $5 million and does not meet the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2).

2. Assume that A will acquire assets from B and that, at the time it acquires B's assets, A will have $86 million in cash and a factory valued at $20 million. A will exchange the factory and $80 million cash for B's assets. To determine A's total assets, A should subtract from the $86 million cash the $80 million that will be used to acquire assets from B and add the remainder to the value of the factory. Thus, A has total assets of $25 million. Even though A will use the factory as part of the consideration for the acquisition, the value of the factory must still be included in A's total assets.

Note that A and B may also have to report the acquisition by B of A's non-cash assets (i.e., the factory). For that acquisition, the value of the cash A will use to buy B's assets is not excluded from A's total assets. Thus, in the acquisition by B, A's total assets are $105 million.

3. Assume that company A will make a $200 million acquisition and that it must pay a loan origination fee of $5 million. A borrows $211 million. A does not meet the size-of-person test in section 7A(a)(2) because its total assets are less than $10 million. $200 million is excluded because it will be consideration for the acquisition and $5 million is excluded because it is an expense incidental to the acquisition. Therefore, A is only a $6 million person.

4. Assume that A borrows $150 million to acquire $100 million of assets from person B and $45 million of voting securities of person C. To determine its size for purposes of its acquisition from person B, A subtracts the $100 million that it will use for that acquisition. Therefore, A has total assets of $50 million for purposes of its acquisition from B. To determine its size with respect to its acquisition from person C, A subtracts the $45 million that will be paid for C's voting

securities. Thus, for purposes of its acquisition from C, A has total assets of $106 million. In the first acquisition A meets the $10 million size-of-person test and in the second acquisition A meets the $100 million size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2).

D. Section 801.12(b)(1) is revised to read as set forth below.

§ 801.12 Calculating percentage of voting securities or assets.

* * * * *

(b) *Percentage of voting securities.* (1) Whenever the act or these rules require calculation of the percentage of voting securities of an issuer to be held or acquired, the percentage shall be the sum of the separate ratios for each class of voting securities, expressed as a percentage. The ratio for each class of voting securities equals:

(i)(A) The number of votes for directors of the issuer which the holder of a class of voting securities is presently entitled to cast, and as a result of the acquisition, will become entitled to cast, divided by,

(B) The total number of votes for directors of the issuer which presently may be cast by that class, and which will be entitled to be cast by that class after the acquisition, multiplied by,

(ii)(A) The number of directors that class is entitled to elect, divided by (B) the total number of directors.

Examples: In each of the following examples company X has two classes of voting securities, class A, consisting of 1000 shares with each share having one vote, and class B, consisting of 100 shares with each share having one vote. The class A shares elect four of the ten directors and the class B shares elect six of the ten directors.

In this situation, § 801.12(b) requires calculations of the percentage of voting securities held to be made according to the following formula:

Number of votes of class A held divided by Total votes of class A times Directors elected by class A stock divided by Total number of directors

Plus

Number of votes of class B held divided by Total votes of class B times Directors elected by class B stock divided by Total number of directors

1. Assume that company Y holds all 100 shares of class B stock and no shares of class A stock. By virtue of its class B holdings, Y has all 100 of the votes which may be cast by class B stock and can elect six of company X's ten directors. Applying the formula which results from the rule, Y calculates that it holds 100/100 x 6/10 or 60 percent of the voting securities of company X because of its holdings of class B stock and no additional percentage derived from holdings of class A stock. Consequently, Y holds a total of 60 percent of the voting securities of company X.

2. Assume that company Y holds 500 shares of class A stock and no shares of class B stock. By virtue of its class A holdings, Y has 500 of the 1000 votes which may be cast by class A to elect four of company X's ten directors. Applying the formula, Y calculates that it holds 500/1000 x 4/10 or 20 percent of the voting securities of company X from its holdings of class A stock and no additional percentage derived from holdings of class B stock. Consequently, Y holds a total of 20 percent of the voting securities of company X.

3. Assume that company Y holds 500 shares of class A stock and 60 shares of class B stock. Y calculates that it holds 20 percent of the voting securities of company X because of its holdings of class A stock (see example 2). Additionally, as a result of its class B holdings Y has 60 of the 100 votes which may be cast by class B stock to elect six of company X's ten directors. Applying the formula, Y calculates that it holds 60/100 x 6/10 or 36 percent of the voting securities of company X because of its holdings of class B stock. Since the formula requires that a person that holds different classes of voting securities of the same issuer add together the separate percentages calculated for each class, Y holds a total of 56 percent (20 percent plus 36 percent) of the voting securities of company X.

* * * * *

E. Section 801.13(a)(1) is revised, a new § 801.13(a)(3) and a new example 4 following § 801.13 (a)(2)(ii) are added, and § 801.13(b)(2)(ii) excluding the example, is revised to read as set forth below.

§ 801.13 Voting securities or assets to be held as a result of an acquisition.

(a) *Voting securities.* (1) Subject to the provisions of § 801.15, and paragraph (a)(3) of this section, all voting securities of the issuer which will be held by the acquiring person after the consummation of an acquisition shall be deemed voting securities held as a result of the acquisition. The value of such voting securities shall be the sum of the value of the voting securities to be acquired, determined in accordance with § 801.10(a), and the value of the voting securities held by the acquiring person prior to the acquisition, determined in accordance with paragraph (a)(2) of this section.

(2) * * *

Examples: * * *

4. On January 1, Company A acquired $20 million of voting securities of Company B. "A" and "B" filed notification and observed the waiting period for that acquisition.

Company A plans to acquire $1 million of assets from company B on May 1 of the same year. Under § 801.13(a)(3), "A" and "B" do not aggregate the value of the earlier acquired voting securities to determine whether the acquisition is subject to the act. Therefore, the value of the acquisition is $1 million and it is not reportable.

(3) Voting securities held by the acquiring person prior to an acquisition shall not be deemed voting securities held as a result of that subsequent acquisition if:

(i) The acquiring person is, in the subsequent acquisition, acquiring only assets; and

(ii) The acquisition of the previously acquired voting securities was subject to the filing and waiting requirements of the act (and such requirements were observed) or was exempt pursuant to § 802.21.

(b) *Assets.* * * *

(2) * * *

(ii) Subject to the provisions of § 801.15, if the acquiring person has acquired from the acquired person within the 180 calendar days preceding the signing of such agreement any assets which are presently held by the acquiring person, and the acquisition of which was not previously subject to the requirements of the act or the acquisition of which was subject to the requirements of the act but they were not observed, then only for purposes of section 7A(a)(3)(B) and § 801.1(h)(1), both the acquiring and the acquired persons shall treat such assets as though they had not previously been acquired and are being acquired as part of the present acquisition. The value of any assets previously acquired which are subject to this subparagraph shall be determined in accordance with § 801.10(b) as of the time of their prior acquisition.

* * * * *

F. Section 801.15(a)(2) is revised to read as set forth below.

§ 801.15 Aggregation of voting securities and assets the acquisition of which was exempt.

* * * * *

(a) * * *

(2) Sections 802.6(b)(1), 802.8, 802.31, 802.35, 802.50(a)(1), 802.51(a), 802.52, 802.53, 802.63, and 802.70;

* * * * *

G. Example 4 to § 801.15(c) is revised to read as set forth below.

§ 801.15 Aggregation of voting securities and assets the acquisition of which was exempt.

* * * * *

(c) * * *

Examples: * * *

4. Assume that acquiring person "B," a United States person, acquired from corporation X two mines located abroad, and assume that the acquisition price was $40 million. In the most recent year, sales in the United States attributable to the mines were $15 million, and thus the acquisition was exempt under § 802.50(a)(2). Within 180 days of that acquisition, "B" seeks to acquire a third mine from X, to which United States sales of $12 million were attributable in the

most recent year. Since under § 801.13(b)(2), as a result of the acquisition, "B" would hold all three mines of X, and the $15 million limitation in § 802.50(a)(2) would be exceeded, under paragraph (b) of this rule, "B" would hold the previously acquired assets for purposes of the second acquisition. Therefore, as a result of the second acquisition, "B" would hold assets of X exceeding $15 million, would not qualify for the exemption in § 802.50(a)(2), and must observe the requirements of the act before consummating the acquisition.

H. Example 3 to § 801.30(b) is revised to read as set forth below.

§ 801.30 Tender offers and acquisitions of voting securities from third parties.

* * * * *

(b) * * *

Examples: * * *

3. Suppose that acquiring person "A" proposes to acquire 50 percent of the voting securities of corporation B which in turn owns 30 percent of the voting securities of corporation C. Thus "A's" acquisition of C's voting securities is a secondary acquisition (see § 801.4) to which this section applies because "A" is acquiring C's voting securities from a third party (B). Therefore, the waiting period with respect to "A's" acquisition of C's voting securities begins when "A" files its separate Notification and Report Form with respect to C, and "C" must file within 15 days (or in the case of a cash tender offer, 10 days) thereafter. "A's" primary and secondary acquisitions of the voting securities of B and C are subject to separate waiting periods; see § 801.4.

I. The example to § 801.40 is revised to read as set forth below.

§ 801.40 Formation of joint venture or other corporations.

* * * * *

Example: Persons "A," "B," and "C" agree to create new corporation N, a joint venture. "A," "B," and "C" will each hold one third of the shares of N. "A" has more than $100 million in annual net sales. "B" has more than $10 million in total assets but less than $100 million in annual net sales and total assets. Both "C"'s total assets and its annual net sales are less than $10 million. "A," "B," and "C" are each engaged in commerce. "A," "B," and "C" have agreed to make an aggregate initial contribution to the new entity of $8 million in assets and each to make additional contributions of $8 million in each of the next three years. Under paragraph (c), the assets of the new corporation are $80 million. Under paragraph (b), only "A" must file notification. Note that "A" also meets the criterion of section 7A(a)(3) since it will be acquiring one third of the voting securities of the new entity for $20 million. N need not file notification; see § 802.41.

PART 802—EXEMPTION RULES

J. Section 802.35 is added to read as set forth below.

§ 802.35 Acquisitions by employee trusts.

An acquisition of voting securities shall be exempt from the notification requirements of the act if:

(a) The securities are acquired by a trust that meets the qualifications of section 401 of the Internal Revenue Code;

(b) The trust is controlled by a person that employs the beneficiaries and,

(c) The voting securities acquired are those of that person or an entity within that person.

Examples: 1. Company A establishes a trust for its employees that meets the qualifications of section 401 of the Internal Revenue Code. Company A has the power to designate the trustee of the trust. That trust then acquires 30% of the voting securities of Company A for $30 million. Later, the trust acquires 20% of the stock of Company B, a wholly-owned subsidiary of Company A, for $20 million. Neither acquisition is reportable.

2. Assume that in the example above, "A" has total assets of $100 million. "C" also has total assets of $100 million and is not controlled by Company A. The trust controlled by Company A plans to acquire 40 percent of the voting securities of Company C for $40 million. Since Company C is not included within "A," "A" must observe the requirements of the act before the trust makes the acquisition of Company C's shares.

K. Example 1 to § 802.41 is revised to read as set forth below.

§ 802.41 Joint venture or other corporations at time of formation.

* * * * *

Examples: 1. Corporations A and B, each having sales of $100 million, each propose to contribute $20 million in cash in exchange for 50 percent of the voting securities of a new corporation, N. Under this section, the new corporation need not file notification, although both "A" and "B" must do so and observe the waiting period prior to receiving any voting securities of N.

* * * * *

L. Section 802.70 is revised to read as set forth below.

§ 802.70 Acquisitions subject to order.

An acquisition shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if the voting securities or assets are to be acquired from an entity ordered to divest such voting securities or assets by order of the Federal Trade Commission or of any Federal court in an action brought by the Federal Trade Commission or the Department of Justice.

PART 803—TRANSMITTAL RULES

M. Section 803.5, is amended by revising paragraph (a)(1)(iii), by adding examples 2, 3, 4, and 5 to paragraph (a)(2), and by designating the unnumbered example as example 1, as set forth below.

§ 803.5 Affidavits required.

(a) (1) * * *

(iii) The specific classes of voting securities of the issuer sought to be acquired; and if known, the number of securities of each such class that would be held by the acquiring person as a result of the acquisition or, if the number is not known, the specific notification threshold that the acquiring person intends to meet or exceed; and, if designated by the acquiring person, a higher threshold for additional voting securities it may hold in the year following the expiration of the waiting period;

* * * * *

(2) * * *

Examples: * * *

In examples 2–5 assume that one percent of B's shares are valued at $15 million.

2. "A" holds 100,000 shares of the voting securities of Company B. "A" has a good faith intention to acquire an additional 900,000 shares of Company B's voting securities. "A" states in its notice to B, inter alia, that as a result of the acquisition it will hold 1,000,000 shares. If 1,000,000 shares of Company B represents 20 percent of Company B's outstanding voting securities, the statement will be deemed by the enforcement agencies a notification for the 15 percent threshold.

3. Company A intends to acquire voting securities of Company B. "A" does not know exactly how many shares it will acquire, but it knows it will definitely acquire 15 percent and may acquire 50 percent of Company B's shares. "A"'s notice to the acquired person would meet the requirements of § 803.5(a)(1)(iii) if it states, inter alia, either: "Company A has a present good faith intention to acquire 15 percent of the outstanding voting securities of Company B, and depending on market conditions, may acquire more of the voting securities of Company B and thus designates the 50 percent threshold" or "Company A has a present good faith intention to acquire 15 percent of the outstanding voting securities of Company B, and depending on market conditions may acquire 50 percent or more of the voting securities of Company B." The Commission would deem either of these statements as intending to give notice for the 50 percent threshold.

4. "A" states, inter alia, that, "depending on market conditions, it may acquire 100 percent of the shares of B." "A"'s notice does not comply with § 803.5 because it does not state an intent to meet or exceed any notification threshold. "A"'s filing will be considered deficient within the meaning of § 803.10(c)(2).

5. "A" states, inter alia, that it has commenced a tender offer for "up to 55 percent of the outstanding voting securities of Company B." "A"'s notice does not comply with § 803.5 because use of the term "up to" does not state an intent to meet or exceed any notification threshold. The filing will

therefore be considered deficient within the meaning of § 803.10 (c)(2).

* * * * *

N. Section 803.10(a) is amended by redesignating paragraph (a)(2) as (a)(3) and by adding a new paragraph (a)(2) to read as set forth below.

§ 803.10 Running of time.

(a) * * *

(2) In the case of the formation of a joint venture or other corporation covered by § 801.40, all persons contributing to the formation of the joint venture or other corporation that are required by the act and these rules to file notification;

* * * * *

(3) In the case of all other acquisitions, all persons required by the act and these rules to file notification.

O. The following amendments are made in the Premerger Notification and Report Form that appears as an appendix to Part 803 of the rules. The revised form is set forth below.

1. A new third paragraph is added to the General Instructions to the Form. The new paragraph appears immediately before the paragraph that defines the term "documentary attachments".

2. Items 2(b) and 2(c) are removed from the instructions and the form, items 2(d)–2(f)(i) are renumbered accordingly, and the instruction for item 2(e) is revised.

3. The instruction for item 2(e), which has been redesignated as item 2(c), is revised.

4. Item 2(f)(ii) is removed in the instructions and the Form.

5. The introductory language in the instructions under item 8 is revised.

6. The instruction for item 8(a) is revised.

7. The instruction for item 7(c)(iv) is revised.

8. Item 7(c)(v) is redesignated as item 7(c)(vi) and new instruction for item 7(c)(v) is added.

9. The instruction for item 9 is revised.

BILLING CODE 6750-01-M

ANTITRUST IMPROVEMENTS ACT
NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM
for Certain Mergers and Acquisitions

INSTRUCTIONS

GENERAL

The Answer Sheets (pp. 1-16) constitute the Notification and Report Form ("the Form") required to be submitted pursuant to § 803.1(a) of the premerger notification rules ("the rules"). Filing persons need not, however, record their responses on the Form.

These Instructions specify the information which must be provided in response to the items on the Answer Sheets. Only the completed Answer Sheets, together with all documentary attachments are to be filed with the Federal Trade Commission and the Department of Justice.

Persons providing responses on attachment pages rather than on answer sheets must submit a complete set of attachment pages with each copy of the Form.

The term "documentary attachments" refers to materials supplied in responses to Item 2(d), Item 4 and to submissions pursuant to §§ 803.1(b) and 803.11 of the rules.

Information—The central office for information and assistance concerning the rules, 16 CFR Parts 801-803, and the Form is Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, 6th St. & Pa. Ave., N.W., Washington, D.C. 20580, phone (202) 326-3100.

Definitions—The definitions and other provisions governing this Form are set forth in the rules, 16 CFR Parts 801-803. The governing statute, the rules, and the Statement of Basis and Purpose for the rules are set forth at 43 FR 33450 (July 31, 1978), 44 FR 66781 (November 22, 1979) and 48 FR 34427 (July 28, 1983).

Affidavit—Attach the affidavit required by § 803.5 to page 1 of the Form. Affidavits are not required if the person filing notification is an acquired person in a transaction covered by § 801.30. (See § 801.5(a).)

Responses—*Each answer should identify the item to which it is addressed.* Use the reverse side of the corresponding answer sheet or attach separate additional sheets as necessary in answering each item. Each additional sheet should identify at the top of the page the item to which it is addressed. Voluntary submissions pursuant to § 803.1(b) should also be so identified.

Enter the name of the person filing notification appearing in Item 1(a) on page 1 of the Form and the date on which the Form is completed at the top of each page of the Form, at the top of any sheets attached to complete the response to any item, and at the top of the first or cover page of each documentary attachment.

If unable to answer any item fully, give such information as is available and provide a statement of reasons for noncompliance as required by § 803.3. If exact answers to any item cannot be given, enter best estimates and indicate the sources or bases of such estimates. Estimated data should be followed by the notation "est." All information should be rounded to the nearest thousand dollars.

Year—All references to "year" refer to calendar year. If the data are not available on a calendar year basis, supply the requested data for the fiscal year reporting period which most nearly corresponds to the calendar year specified. References to "most recent year" mean the most recent calendar or fiscal year for which the requested information is available.

SIC Data—This Notification and Report Form requests information regarding dollar revenues and lines of commerce at three levels with respect to operations conducted within the United States. (See § 803.2(c)(1).) *All persons must submit* certain data at the 4-digit (SIC code) industry level. To the extent that dollar revenues are derived from manufactured operations (SIC major groups 20-39), data must also be submitted at the *5-digit product class* and *7-digit product* levels (SIC based codes).

The term "dollar revenues" is defined in § 803.2(d).

References— In reporting information by "*4-digit (SIC code) industry*" refer to the 1972 edition of the *Standard Industrial Classification Manual* and its 1977 supplement published by the Executive Office of the President, Office of Management and Budget.

In reporting information by "*5-digit product class*" and "*7-digit product*" refer to one or both of the following reference publications published by the U.S. Bureau of the Census:

(a) Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products, *1982 Census of Manufactures and Census of Mineral Industries* (MC82-R-1). Make sure that the Numerical List you use has MC82-R-1 printed on the cover.

Note: Submit information using the codes in the columns labeled "Product code published." Do not submit information using the codes in the columns labeled "Product code collected."

(b) "Industry Series," (MC82-I Pamphlets 20A2-39D), *1982 Census of Manufactures* (GPO Order No. 003-018-00000-8.)

Note: Do not submit information by product codes ending in 00 if the Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products listed above contains a further breakdown. Furthermore, when the Numerical List refers to Appendix C for detail collected in a specified Current Industrial Report ("CIR") for the following SIC code industries, you should provide revenue information using the 7-digit product codes listed in the CIR in the columns labeled "Published."

SIC 2392 (CIR MQ-23X)	SIC 3241 (CIR MQ-34E)
SIC 3312, 3315, 3316 and 3317 (CIR MA-33B)	
SIC 3357 (CIR MQ-33L)	SIC 3431 (CIR MQ-34E)

Privacy Act Statement - Section 18a(a) of Title 15 of the U.S. Code authorizes the collection of this information. The primary use of this information is to determine whether the merger or acquisition reported in the Notification and Report Form may violate the antitrust laws. Furnishing the information on this Form is voluntary.

Consummation of an acquisition required to be reported by the statute cited above without having provided this information may, however, render a person liable to civil penalties up to $10,000 per day.

FTC Form C 4 (rev. 3/87)

Items 5, 7, 8, 9 and the Insurance Appendix—*Supply information only with respect to operations conducted within the United States, including its commonwealths, territories, possessions and the District of Columbia.* (See §§ 801.1(k), 803.2(c)(1).)

Information need not be supplied regarding assets or voting securities currently being acquired, when the acquisition is exempt under the statute or rules. (See § 803.2(c)(2).)

Limited or separate responses may be required from the person filing notification. (See § 803.2(b).)

Filing—Complete and return two notarized copies (with one set of documentary attachments) of the Notification and Report Form to the Premerger Notification Office, Bureau of Competition, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, 6th Street and Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, D.C. 20580, and three notarized copies (with one set of documentary attachments) to Director of Operations, Antitrust Division, Department of Justice, Room 3218, 10th and Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, D.C. 20530.

ITEM BY ITEM

Affidavit—Attach the affidavit required by § 803.5 to page 1 of the Answer Sheets. Acquiring persons in transactions covered by § 801.30 are required to also submit a copy of the notice served on the acquired person pursuant to § 803.5(a)(1). (See § 803.5(a)(3).)

Cash Tender Offer—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate whether the acquisition is a cash tender offer.

Early Termination—Put an X in the yes box to request early termination of the waiting period. Notification of each grant of early termination will be published in the Federal Register as required by § 7A(b)(2) of the Clayton Act.

ITEM 1

Item 1(a)—Give the name and headquarters address of the person filing notification. The name of the person is the name of the ultimate parent entity included within that person.

Item 1(b)—Indicate whether the person filing notification is an acquiring person, an acquired person, or both an acquiring and acquired person. (See § 801.2.)

Item 1(c)—Give the names of all ultimate parent entities of acquiring and acquired persons which are parties to the acquisition whether or not they are required to file notification.

Item 1(d)—Put an X in all the boxes that apply to this acquisition.

Item 1(e)—Acquiring persons put an X in the box to indicate the highest threshold for which notification is being filed (see § 801.1(h)): $15 million, 15%, 25%, or 50%.

Item 1(f)—All persons state the value of voting securities held as a result of the acquisition and/or the value of assets held as a result of the acquisition. (Insert responses to Item 3(c).)

Item 1(g)—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate whether the entity in Item 1(a) is a corporation, partnership, or other (specify).

Item 1(h)—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate whether data furnished is by calendar year or fiscal year. If fiscal year, specify period.

Item 1(i)—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate if this Form is being filed on behalf of the ultimate parent entity by another entity within the same person authorized by it to file notification on its behalf pursuant to § 803.2(a), or if this Form is being filed pursuant to § 803.4 on behalf of a foreign person. Then provide the name and mailing address of the entity filing notification on behalf of the reporting person named in Item 1(a) on the Form.

Item 1(j)—If an entity within the person filing notification other than the ultimate parent entity listed in Item 1(a) is the entity which is making the acquisition, or if the assets or voting securities of an entity other than the ultimate parent entity listed in Item 1(a) are being acquired, provide the name and mailing address of that entity and the percentage of its voting securities held by the person named in Item 1(a) above. (If control is effected by means other than the direct holding of the entity's voting securities, describe the intermediaries or the contract through which control is effected (see § 801.1(b)).

ITEM 2

Item 2(a)—*Description of acquisition.* Briefly describe the transaction. Include a list of the name and mailing address of each acquiring and acquired person, whether or not required to file notification. Indicate for each party whether assets or voting securities (or both) are to be acquired. Also indicate what consideration will be received by each party. In describing the acquisition, include the expected dates of any major events required to consummate the transaction (e.g., stockholders' meetings, filing of requests for approval, other public filings, terminations of tender offers) and the scheduled consummation date of the transaction.

If the voting securities are to be acquired from a holder other than the issuer (or an entity within the same person as the issuer) separately identify (if known) such holder and the issuer of the voting securities. Acquiring persons in tender offers should describe the terms of the offer.

Item 2(b)(1)—*Assets to be acquired.* This item is to be completed only to the extent that the transaction is an acquisition of assets. Describe all general classes of assets (other than cash and securities) to be acquired by each party to the transaction giving approximate dollar values thereof. If the transaction is the formation of a joint venture or other corporation (see § 801.40), include assets to be acquired by the joint venture or other corporation.

Give the approximate total value or estimated total value of the assets to be acquired in this transaction.

Examples of general classes of assets other than cash and securities are land, merchandising inventory, manufacturing plants (specify location and products produced), and

retail stores. For each general class of assets, indicate the page or paragraph number of the contract or other document submitted with this Form in which the assets are more particularly described.

Item 2(b)(ii)—*Assets held by acquiring person.* (To be completed by acquiring persons.) If assets of the acquired person (see § 801.13) are presently held by the person filing notification, furnish a description of each general class of such assets in the manner required by Item 2(b)(i), and the dollar value or estimated dollar value at the time they were acquired.

Item 2(c)—*Voting securities to be acquired.* Furnish the following information separately for each issuer whose voting securities will be acquired in the acquisition. (If, as a result of the acquisition, the acquiring person will hold 100 percent of the voting securities of the acquired issuer or if the acquisition is a merger or consolidation (see § 801.2(d)), the parties may so state and provide the total dollar value of the transaction instead of responding to Items 2(c)(i) - 2(c)(viii). However, this procedure may not be used if the acquiring person currently holds 15 percent or more than $15 million worth of the voting securities of the acquired person or of any entity included within the acquired person.)

Item 2(c)(i)—List each class of voting securities (including convertible voting securities) which will be outstanding after the acquisition has been completed. If there is more than one class of voting securities, include a description of the voting rights of each class. Also list each class of non-voting securities which will be acquired in the acquisition.

Item 2(c)(ii)—Total number of shares of each class of securities listed on page 3 which will be outstanding after the acquisition has been completed.

Item 2(c)(iii)—Total number of shares of each class of securities listed on page 3 which will be acquired in this acquisition. If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person.

Item 2(c)(iv)—Identity of each person acquiring any securities of any class listed on page 3. If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person.

Item 2(c)(v)—Dollar value of securities of each class listed on page 3 to be acquired in the transaction (see § 801.10). If there is more than one acquiring person of any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person. (If the exact dollar value cannot be determined at the time of filing, provide an estimated value and indicate the basis on which the estimate was made.)

Item 2(c)(vi)—Total number of each class of securities listed on page 3 which will be held by acquiring person(s) after the acquisition has been accomplished. If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person.

Item 2(c)(vii)—Percentage of each class of securities listed under 2(c)(vi) above which will be held by the acquiring person(s) after the acquisition has been completed (see § 801.12(b)). If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of security, show data separately for each acquiring person.

Item 2(c)(viii)—Dollar value (or estimated dollar value) of securities to be held as a result of the acquisition (see § 801.13).

Item 2(d)—Furnish copies of final or most recent versions of all documents which constitute the agreement among the acquiring person(s) and the person(s) whose voting securities or assets are to be acquired. (Do not attach these documents to page 4 of the Answer Sheets.)

ITEM 3

Assets and voting securities held as a result of the acquisition (to be completed by both acquiring and acquired persons). State:

Item 3(a)- the percentage of the assets,

Item 3(b)- the percentage of the voting securities,

Item 3(c)- the aggregate total dollar amount of voting securities and assets of the acquired person to be held by each acquiring person, as a result of the acquisition (see §§ 801.12, 801.13, and 801.14).

ITEM 4

Furnish one copy of each of the following documents. For each entity included within the person filing notification which has prepared its own such documents different from those prepared by the person filing notification, furnish, in addition, one copy of each document from each such other entity. Furnish copies of:

Item 4(a)—all of the following documents which have been filed with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission (or are to be filed contemporaneously in connection with this acquisition): the most recent proxy statement and Form 10-K, each dated not more than three years prior to the date of this Notification and Report Form, all Forms 10-Q and 8-K filed since the end of the period reflected by the Form 10-K being supplied, any registration statement filed in connection with the transaction for which notification is being filed, if the acquisition is a tender offer, Schedule 14D-1. Alternatively, if the person filing notification does not have copies of responsive documents readily available, identification of such documents and citation to date and place of filing will constitute compliance.

NOTE: In response to Item 4(a), the person filing notification may incorporate by reference documents submitted with an earlier filing as explained in the staff formal interpretations dated April 10, 1979, and April 7, 1981, and in § 803.2(e).

Item 4(b)—the most recent annual reports and most recent annual audit reports (of person filing notification and of each unconsolidated United States issuer included within such person) and, if different, the most recent regularly prepared balance sheet of the person filing notification and of each unconsolidated United States issuer included within such person.

Item 4(c)—all studies, surveys, analyses and reports which were prepared by or for any officer(s) or director(s) (or, in the case of unincorporated entities, individuals exercising similar functions) for the purpose of evaluating or analyzing the acquisition with respect to market shares, competition, competitors, markets, potential for sales growth or expansion into product or geographic markets, and indicate (if not contained in the document itself) the date of preparation, the name and title of each individual who prepared each such document.

Persons filing notification may provide an optional index of documents called for by Item 4 on page 5 of the Answer Sheets.

NOTE: If the person filing notification withholds any documents called for by Item 4(c) based on a claim of privilege, the person must provide a statement of reasons for such noncompliance as specified in the staff formal interpretation dated September 13, 1979, and § 803.3(d).

* * * * *

ITEMS 5 through 9 and the Appendix

NOTE: *For Items 5 through 9 and the Appendix limited or separate responses may be required of the person filing notification. (See § 803.2(b) and (c).)*

ITEM 5

ITEMS 5(a) — 5(c): These Items request information regarding dollar revenues and lines of commerce at three levels with respect to operations conducted within the United States. (See § 803.2(c)(1).) All persons must submit certain data at the 4-digit (SIC code) industry level. To the extent that dollar revenues are derived from manufacturing operations (SIC major groups 20-39), data must also be submitted at the 5-digit product class and 7-digit product levels (SIC based codes).

Note: See the "References" listed in the General Instructions to the Form. Refer to the 1972 edition of the *Standard Industrial Classification Manual* and its 1977 supplement for the 4-digit (SIC code) industry codes. Refer to the Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products, 1982 *Census of Manufactures and Census of Mineral Industries* (MC82-R-1) for the 5-digit product class and 7-digit product codes. Report revenues for the 5-digit and 7-digit codes using the codes in the columns labeled "Product code published." Do not report revenues using the columns labeled "Product code collected."

Insurance carriers (2-digit SIC major group 63) should supply the information requested only with respect to industries not within 2-digit major group 63. Credit agencies other than banks, security and commodity brokers, dealers, exchanges, and services, holding and other investment offices, and real estate companies (2-digit SIC major groups 61, 62, 67 and 65) should identify or explain the revenues reported (e.g., dollar sales, receipts).

Persons filing notification should include the total dollar revenues for 1982 derived by all entities included within the person filing notification at the time this Notification and Report Form is prepared (even if such entities have become included within the person since 1982). For example, if the person filing notification acquired an entity in 1984, it must include that entity's 1982 revenues in Items 5(a) and 5(b)(i).

Item 5(a)—*Dollar revenues by industry.* Provide aggregate 4-digit (SIC code) industry data for 1982.

Item 5(b)(i)—*Dollar revenues by manufactured product.* Provide the following information on the aggregate operations of the person filing notification for 1982 for each 7-digit product of the person in 2-digit SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries).

Do not provide 7-digit data for product codes ending in 00 if the Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products contains a further breakdown. See also the "NOTE" on page I of the these instructions concerning required references to Appendix C of the Numerical List.

Item 5(b)(ii)—*Products added or deleted.* Within 2-digit SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries), identify each product of the person filing notification added or deleted subsequent to 1982, indicate the year of addition or deletion, and state total dollar revenues in the most recent year for each product that has been added. Products may be identified either by 7-digit product code or in the manner ordinarily used by the person filing notification.

Do not include products added since 1982 by reason of mergers or acquisitions occurring since 1982. Dollar revenues derived from such products should be included in response to Item 5(b)(i). However, if an entity acquired since 1982 by the person filing notification (and now included within the person) itself has added any products since 1982, these products and the dollar revenues derived therefrom should be listed here. Products deleted by reason of dispositions of assets or voting securities since 1982 should also be listed here.

Item 5(b)(iii)—*Dollar revenues by manufactured product class.* Provide the following information about the aggregate operations of the person filing notification for the most recent year for each 5-digit product class of the person within SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries). If such data have not been compiled for the most recent year, estimates of dollar revenues by 5-digit product class may be provided if a statement describing the method of estimation is furnished.

Item 5(c)—*Dollar revenues by non-manufacturing industry.* Provide the following information concerning the aggregate operations of the person filing notification for the most recent year for each 4-digit (SIC code) industry in SIC major groups other than 20-39 in which the person engaged. If such data have not been compiled for the most recent year, estimates of dollar revenues by 4-digit industry may be provided if a statement describing the method of estimation is furnished. Industries for which the dollar revenues totaled less than one million dollars in the most recent year may be omitted.

NOTE: *The million dollar minimum is applicable only to Item 5(c).*

Insurance carriers (2-digit SIC major group 63) should supply the information requested only with respect to industries not within SIC major group 63, and, if voting securities of an insurance carrier are being acquired directly or indirectly, should complete the Insurance Appendix to the Form.

JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATIONS

Item 5(d)—Supply the following information only if the acquisition is the formation of a joint venture or other corporation. (See § 801.40.)

Item 5(d)(i)—List the name and mailing address of the joint venture or other corporation.

Item 5(d)(ii)(A)—List contributions that each person forming the joint venture or other corporation has agreed to make, specifying when each contribution is to be made and the value of the contribution as agreed by the contributors.

Item 5(d)(ii)(B)—Describe any contracts or agreements whereby the joint venture or other corporation will obtain assets or capital from sources other than the persons forming it.

Item 5(d)(ii)(C)—Specify whether and in what amount the persons forming the joint venture or other corporation have agreed to guarantee its credit or obligations.

Item 5(d)(ii)(D)—Describe fully the consideration which each person forming the joint venture or other corporation will receive in exchange for its contribution(s).

Item 5(d)(iii)—Describe generally the business in which the joint venture or other corporation will engage, including location of headquarters and principal plants, warehouses, retail establishments or other places of business, its principal types of products or activities, and the geographic areas in which it will do business.

Item 5(d)(iv)—Identify each 4-digit (SIC code) industry in which the joint venture or other corporation will derive dollar revenues. If the joint venture or other corporation will be engaged in manufacturing, also specify each 5-digit product class in which it will derive dollar revenues.

ITEM 6

This item need not be completed by a person filing notification only as an acquired person if only assets are to be acquired. Persons filing notification may respond to Items 6(a), 6(b), or 6(c) by referencing a "documentary attachment" furnished with the Form if the information so referenced is a complete response and is up-to-date and accurate. Indicate for each item the specific page(s) of the document that are responsive to that item.

Item 6(a)—*Entities within person filing notification.* List the name and headquarters mailing address of each entity included within the person filing notification. Entities with total assets of less than $10 million may be omitted.

Item 6(b)—*Shareholders of person filing notification.* For each entity (including the ultimate parent entity) included within the person filing notification the voting securities of which are held (see § 801.1(c)) by one or more other persons, list the issuer and class of voting securities, the name and headquarters mailing address of each other person which holds five percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of the class, and the number and percentage held by that person. Holders need not be listed for entities with total assets of less than $10 million.

Item 6(c)—*Holdings of person filing notification.* If the person filing notification holds voting securities of any issuer not included within the person filing notification, list the issuer and class, the number and percentage held, and (optionally) the entity within the person filing notification which holds the securities. Holdings of less than five percent of the outstanding voting securities of any issuers, and holdings of issuers with total assets of less than $10 million, may be omitted.

ITEM 7

If, to the knowledge or belief of the person filing notification, the person filing notification derived dollar revenues in the most recent year from operations in any 4-digit (SIC code) industries in which any other person which is a party to the acquisition also derived dollar revenues in the most recent year (or in which a joint venture or other corporation will derive dollar revenues), then for each such 4-digit (SIC code) industry:

Item 7(a)—supply the 4-digit SIC code and description for the industry.

Item 7(b)—list the name of each person which is a party to the acquisition which also derived dollar revenues in the 4-digit industry.

Item 7(c)—*Geographic market information*

Item 7(c)(i)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which, to the knowledge or belief of the person filing notification, the products in that 4-digit industry produced by the person filing notification are sold without a significant change in their form, whether they are sold by the person filing notification or by others to whom such products have been sold or resold.

Item 7(c)(ii)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 01-17 and 40-49 (agriculture, forestry and fishing, mining, construction, transportation, communications, electric, gas and sanitary services) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which the person filing notification conducts such operations.

Item 7(c)(iii)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 50-51 (wholesale trade) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states, (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which the customers of the person filing notification are located.

Item 7(c)(iv)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 52-61, 70, 75, 78, and 80 (retail trade, banking, and certain services) listed in Item 7(a) above, provide the address, arranged by state, county and city or town, of each establishment from which dollar revenues were derived in the most recent year by the person filing notification.

Item 7(c)(v)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major group 62, 64-67, 72, 73, 76, 79 and 81-89 (certain finance, insurance and real estate groups and certain services) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which establishments were located from which the person filing notification derived revenues in the most recent year; and

Item 7(c)(vi)—for each 4-digit industry within SIC 63 (insurance) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the state(s) in which the person filing notification is licensed to write insurance.

NOTE: Except in the case of those SIC major industry groups mentioned in Item 7(c)(iv) above, the person filing notification may respond with the word "national" if business is conducted in all 50 states.

ITEM 8

Item 8—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate if the acquired person and an acquiring person maintained a vendor-vendee relationship during the most recent year with respect to any manufactured product (or, if the acquisition is the formation of a joint venture or other corporation (see § 801.40), if the joint venture or other corporation will supply to any of the persons forming it any manufactured product which such person purchased from another such person during the most recent year) which the vendee either resells or consumes in or incorporates into the manufacture of any product. Persons filing notification which are vendees of such product(s) should list each product purchased, identify each vendor which is a party to the acquisition from which the product was purchased and state the dollar amount of the product purchased from that vendor during the most recent year.

Manufactured products are those within 2-digit SIC major groups 20-39. Any product purchased from the vendor in an aggregate annual amount not exceeding $1 million, or the manufacture, consumption or use of which is not attributable to the assets to be acquired, or to the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired (including entities controlled by the issuer), may be omitted.

ITEM 9

Item 9—*Previous acquisitions* (to be completed by acquiring persons). Determine each 4-digit (SIC code) industry listed in Item 7(a) above in which the person filing notification derived dollar revenues of $1 million or more in the most recent year and in which either the acquired issuer derived revenues of $1 million or more in the most recent year (or in which, in the case of the formation of a joint venture or other corporation, the joint venture or other corporation reasonably can be expected to derive dollar revenues of $1 million or more), or revenues of $1 million or more in the most recent year were attributable to the acquired assets.

For each such 4-digit industry, list all acquisitions made by the person filing notification in the five years prior to the date of filing of entities deriving dollar revenues in that 4-digit industry. List only acquisitions of more than 50 percent of the voting securities or assets of entities which had annual net sales or total assets greater than $10 million in the year prior to the acquisition.

For each such acquisition, supply:

(a) the name of the entity acquired;

(b) the headquarters address of the entity prior to the acquisition;

(c) whether securities or assets were acquired;

(d) the consummation date of the acquisition;

(e) the annual net sales of the acquired entity for the year prior to the acquisition;

(f) the total assets of the acquired entity in the year prior to the acquisition; and

(g) the 4-digit (SIC code) industries (by number and description) identified above in which the acquired entity derived dollar revenues.

ITEM 10

Item 10(a)—Print or type the name and title, firm name, address, and telephone number of the individual to contact regarding this Notification and Report Form. (See § 803.20(b)(2)(ii).)

Item 10(b)—Foreign filing persons print or type the name and title, firm name, address, and telephone number of an individual located in the United States designated for the limited purpose of receiving notice of the issuance of a request for additional information or documentary material. (See § 803.20(b)(2)(iii).)

Certification—(See § 803.6.)

APPENDIX TO NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM: INSURANCE

Insurance carriers (2-digit SIC major group 63) are required to complete this Appendix if voting securities of an insurance carrier are being acquired directly or indirectly.

ITEM 1

Item 1(A)—*Life insurance.* Provide for the most recent year the amount of premium receipts (calculated on the accrual basis) for each of the lines of insurance listed on page 16 of the Answer Sheets.

Item 1(B)—*New Business.* Provide for the most recent year the amount of new life insurance business issued in the United States (exclusive of revivals, increases, dividend additions and re-insurance ceded) for each of the lines of insurance listed on page 16 of the Answer Sheets.

ITEM 2

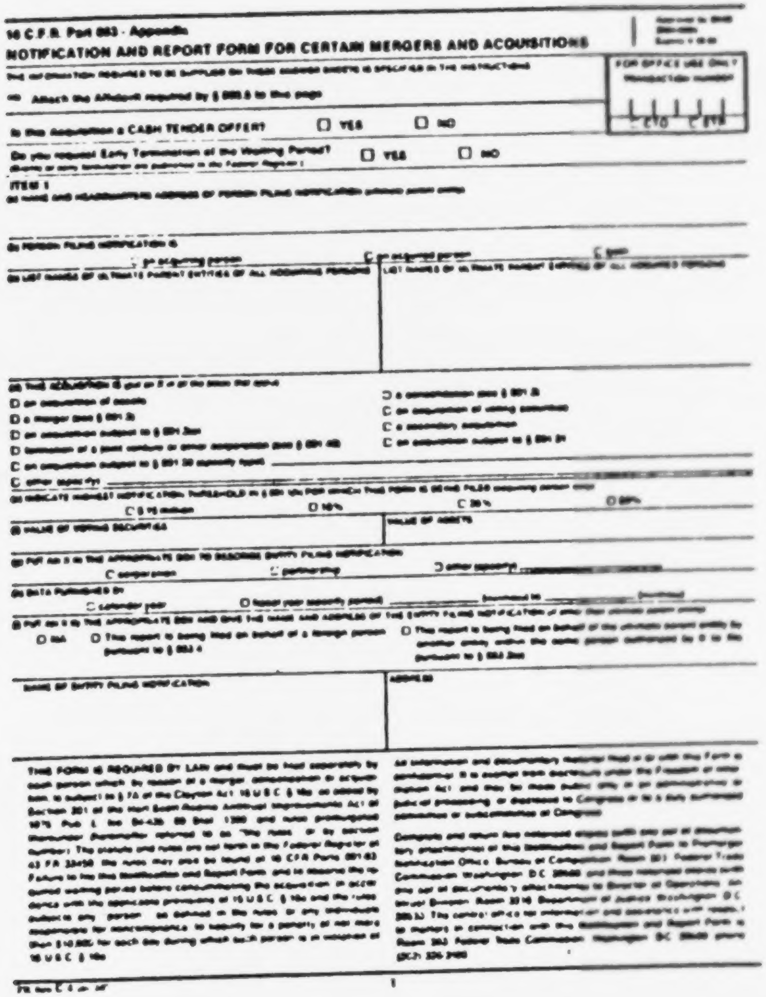
Item 2(A)—*Property Liability Insurance.* Provide for the most recent year the amount of direct premiums written in the United States for each line of insurance specified in Part 2 of the Underwriting and Investment Exhibit of your carrier's annual convention statement.

Item 2(B)—Provide for the most recent year the amount of net premiums written in the United States for each line of insurance specified in Part 2 of the Underwriting and Investment Exhibit of your carrier's annual convention statement.

ITEM 3

Item 3(A)—*Title Insurance.* Provide for the most recent year the amount of net direct title insurance premiums written in the United States.

Item 3(B)—Provide for the most recent year the amount of direct title insurance premiums earned in the United States



16 C.F.R. Part 803 - Appendix

NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM FOR CERTAIN MERGERS AND ACQUISITIONS

Approved by OMB [illegible]

FOR OFFICE USE ONLY
TRANSACTION NUMBER

THE INFORMATION REQUIRED TO BE SUPPLIED ON THESE ANSWER SHEETS IS SPECIFIED IN THE INSTRUCTIONS

Attach the Affidavit required by § 803.5 to this page

Is this Acquisition a CASH TENDER OFFER? ☐ YES ☐ NO

Do you request Early Termination of the Waiting Period? ☐ YES ☐ NO
(Grants of early termination are published in the Federal Register.)

ITEM 1

(a) NAME AND HEADQUARTERS ADDRESS OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION (ultimate parent entity)

(b) PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION IS
☐ an acquiring person ☐ an acquired person ☐ both

(c) LIST NAMES OF ULTIMATE PARENT ENTITIES OF ALL ACQUIRING PERSONS	LIST NAMES OF ULTIMATE PARENT ENTITIES OF ALL ACQUIRED PERSONS

(d) THIS ACQUISITION IS (put an X in all the boxes that apply)
☐ an acquisition of assets
☐ a merger (see § 801.2)
☐ an acquisition subject to § 801.2(e)
☐ formation of a joint venture or other corporation (see § 801.40)
☐ an acquisition subject to § 801.30 (specify type) ______
☐ other (specify) ______
☐ a consolidation (see § 801.2)
☐ an acquisition of voting securities
☐ a secondary acquisition
☐ an acquisition subject to § 801.31

(e) INDICATE HIGHEST NOTIFICATION THRESHOLD in § 801.1(h) FOR WHICH THIS FORM IS BEING FILED (acquiring person only)
☐ $15 million ☐ 15% ☐ 25% ☐ 50%

(f) VALUE OF VOTING SECURITIES	VALUE OF ASSETS

(g) PUT AN X IN THE APPROPRIATE BOX TO DESCRIBE ENTITY FILING NOTIFICATION
☐ corporation ☐ partnership ☐ other (specify) ______

(h) DATA FURNISHED BY
☐ calendar year ☐ fiscal year (specify period) ______ (month) to ______ (month)

(i) PUT AN X IN THE APPROPRIATE BOX AND GIVE THE NAME AND ADDRESS OF THE ENTITY FILING NOTIFICATION (if other than ultimate parent entity)
☐ NA
☐ This report is being filed on behalf of a foreign person pursuant to § 803.4
☐ This report is being filed on behalf of the ultimate parent entity by another entity within the same person authorized by it to file pursuant to § 803.2(a)

NAME OF ENTITY FILING NOTIFICATION	ADDRESS

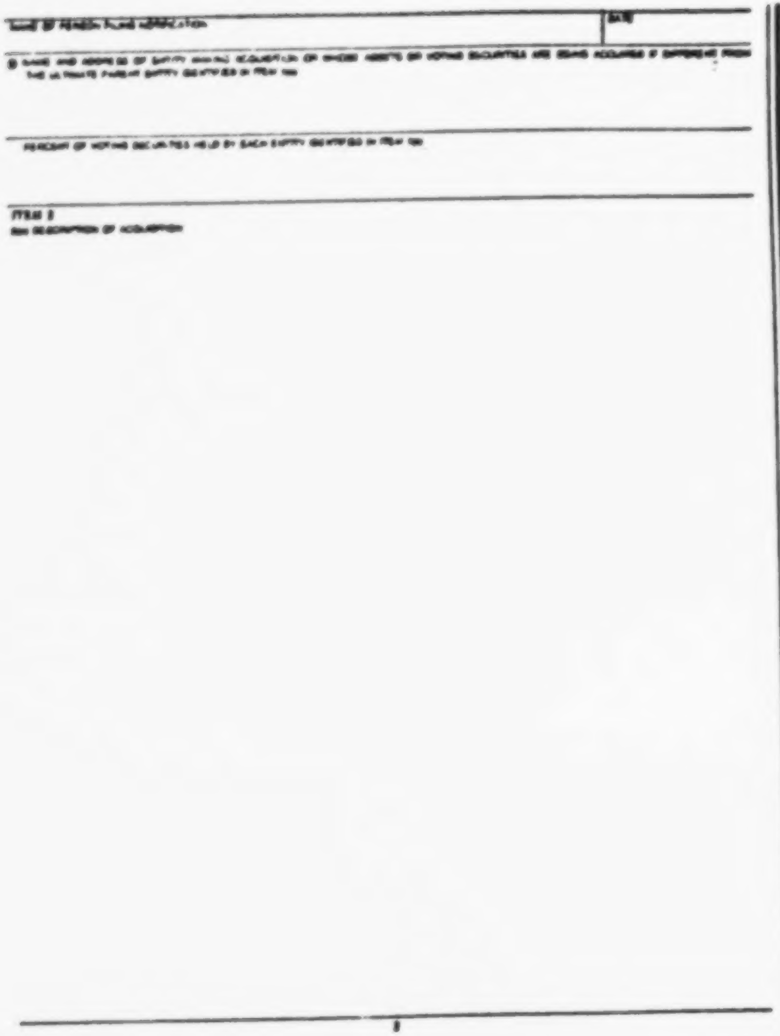
THIS FORM IS REQUIRED BY LAW and must be filed separately by each person which, by reason of a merger, consolidation or acquisition, is subject to § 7A of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. § 18a, as added by Section 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. No. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390, and rules promulgated thereunder (hereinafter referred to as "the rules" or by section number). The statute and rules are set forth in the Federal Register at 43 FR 33450; the rules may also be found at 16 CFR Parts 801-03. Failure to file this Notification and Report Form, and to observe the required waiting period before consummating the acquisition in accordance with the applicable provisions of 15 U.S.C. § 18a and the rules, subjects any "person," as defined in the rules, or any individuals responsible for noncompliance, to liability for a penalty of not more than $10,000 for each day during which such person is in violation of 15 U.S.C. § 18a.

All information and documentary material filed in or with this Form is confidential. It is exempt from disclosure under the Freedom of Information Act, and may be made public only in an administrative or judicial proceeding, or disclosed to Congress or to a duly authorized committee or subcommittee of Congress.

Complete and return two notarized copies (with one set of documentary attachments) of this Notification and Report Form to Premerger Notification Office, Bureau of Competition, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, D.C. 20580, and three notarized copies (with one set of documentary attachments) to Director of Operations, Antitrust Division, Room 3218, Department of Justice, Washington, D.C. 20530. The central office for information and assistance with respect to matters in connection with the Notification and Report Form is Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, D.C. 20580, phone (202) 326-3100.

FTC Form C 4 [illegible]

1



NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

(j) NAME AND ADDRESS OF ENTITY MAKING ACQUISITION OR WHOSE ASSETS OR VOTING SECURITIES ARE BEING ACQUIRED IF DIFFERENT FROM THE ULTIMATE PARENT ENTITY IDENTIFIED IN ITEM 1(a)

PERCENT OF VOTING SECURITIES HELD BY EACH ENTITY IDENTIFIED IN ITEM [illegible]

ITEM 2

(a) DESCRIPTION OF ACQUISITION

2

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION | DATE

3(b)(i) ASSETS TO BE ACQUIRED (or in component only for assets acquisitions)

3(b)(ii) ASSETS HELD BY ACQUIRING PERSON

3(c) VOTING SECURITIES TO BE ACQUIRED

3(c)(i) LIST AND DESCRIPTION OF VOTING SECURITIES AND LIST OF NON-VOTING SECURITIES

3(c)(ii) TOTAL NUMBER OF SHARES OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITY

3(c)(iii) TOTAL NUMBER OF SHARES OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITY BEING ACQUIRED

(3(c) continued on next page)

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION | DATE

3(c)(iv) IDENTITY OF PERSONS ACQUIRING SECURITIES

3(c)(v) DOLLAR VALUE OF SECURITIES IN EACH CLASS BEING ACQUIRED

3(c)(vi) TOTAL NUMBER OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITIES HELD BY ACQUIRING PERSON AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION

3(c)(vii) PERCENTAGE OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITIES HELD BY ACQUIRING PERSON AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION

3(c)(viii) DOLLAR VALUE OF SECURITIES TO BE HELD AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION

3(d) SUBMIT A COPY OF THE MOST RECENT VERSION OF CONTRACT OR AGREEMENT (or letter of intent to merge or acquire)

DO NOT ATTACH THIS DOCUMENT TO THIS PAGE ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER OF CONTRACT OR AGREEMENT ______

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 3
ASSETS AND VOTING SECURITIES HELD AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION

(a) PERCENTAGE OF ASSETS ______

(b) PERCENTAGE OF VOTING SECURITIES ______

(c) AGGREGATE TOTAL VALUE ______

ITEM 4 [illegible]

(a) DOCUMENTS FILED WITH THE UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION — ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER

(b) ANNUAL REPORTS, ANNUAL AUDIT REPORTS, AND REGULARLY PREPARED BALANCE SHEETS — ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER

(c) STUDIES, SURVEYS, ANALYSES AND REPORTS — ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 5 Give the "References" listed in the General Instructions to the Form. Refer to the 1972 edition of the *Standard Industrial Classification Manual* and its 1977 Supplement for the 4-digit (SIC Code) industry codes. Refer to the Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products, *1982 Census of Manufactures and Census of Mineral Industries* (MC82-R-1) for the 5-digit product class and 7-digit product codes. Report revenues for the 5-digit and 7-digit codes using the codes in the columns labeled "Product code published." Do not report revenues using codes in the columns labeled "Product code Collected.")

(a) DOLLAR REVENUES BY INDUSTRY

4-DIGIT INDUSTRY CODE Product code published	DESCRIPTION	1982 TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

Reproduced from poor document.

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

[illegible] PRODUCTS ADDED OR DELETED

DESCRIPTION ([illegible]-DIGIT PRODUCT CODE)	ADD	DELETE	YEAR OF CHANGE	TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

[illegible] DOLLAR REVENUES BY MANUFACTURED PRODUCT CLASS

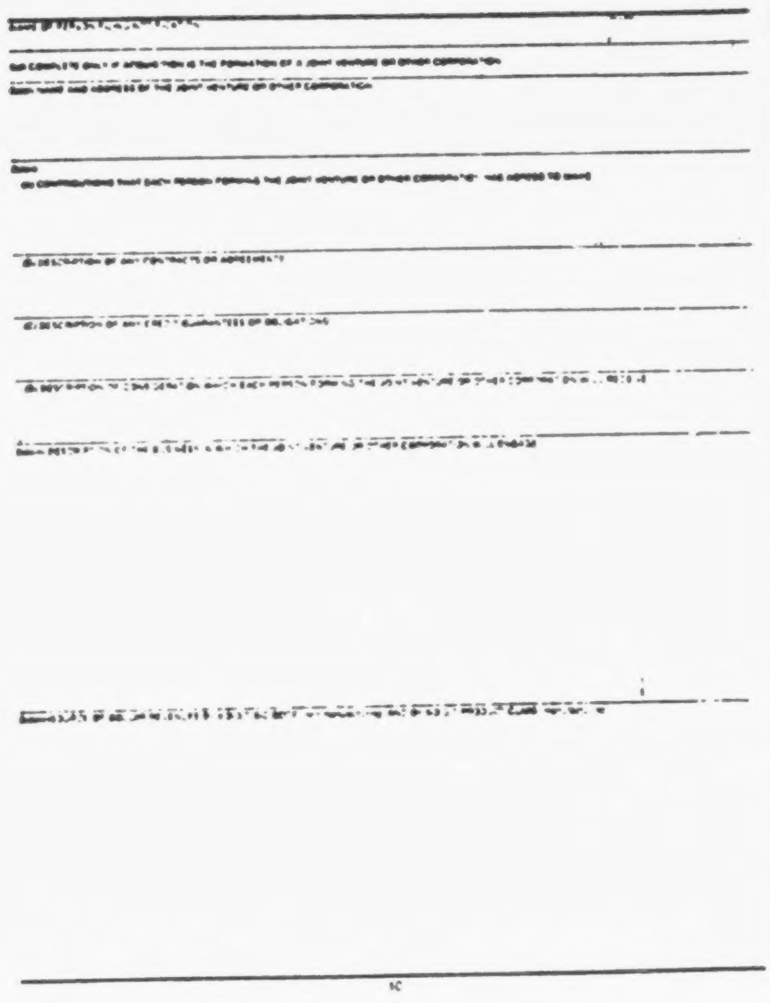
[illegible]-DIGIT PRODUCT CLASS CODE [illegible]	DESCRIPTION	YEAR TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

[illegible] continued on page 9

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

[illegible] DOLLAR REVENUES BY MANUFACTURED PRODUCTS

[illegible]-DIGIT PRODUCT CODE [illegible]	DESCRIPTION	[illegible] TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES



[illegible]

ITEM 6

(a) ENTITIES WITHIN PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

(b) SHAREHOLDERS OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

[illegible]

(c) HOLDINGS OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

ITEM 7 DOLLAR REVENUES

(a) 4-DIGIT SIC CODE AND DESCRIPTION

(b) NAME OF EACH PERSON WHICH ALSO DERIVES DOLLAR REVENUES

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

7(d) GEOGRAPHIC MARKET INFORMATION

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 8 [illegible]

☐ NO ☐ YES [illegible]

[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]

ITEM 9 [illegible]

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 10 IDENTIFICATION OF PERSON TO CONTACT REGARDING THIS REPORT

10(a) NAME OF CONTACT PERSON	TITLE OF CONTACT PERSON
FIRM NAME AND BUSINESS ADDRESS	BUSINESS TELEPHONE NUMBER

10(b) IDENTIFICATION OF AN INDIVIDUAL LOCATED IN THE UNITED STATES DESIGNATED FOR THE LIMITED PURPOSE OF RECEIVING NOTICE OF ISSUANCE OF A REQUEST FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION OR DOCUMENTS. [illegible]

NAME	TITLE
ADDRESS	BUSINESS TELEPHONE NUMBER

CERTIFICATION

This NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM, together with any and all appendices and attachments thereto, was prepared and assembled under my supervision in accordance with instructions issued by the Federal Trade Commission. Subject to the recognition that, where so indicated, reasonable estimates have been made because books and records do not provide the required data, the information is, to the best of my knowledge, true, correct, and complete in accordance with the statute and rules.

NAME (Please print or type)	TITLE
SIGNATURE	DATE

Subscribed and sworn to before me at the

City of ____________________, State of ______________

this ____________________ day of ____________________, 19____

Signature ______________________________

My Commission expires ______________________________

[SEAL]

15

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

APPENDIX: INSURANCE

ITEM 1

YEAR ______ AMOUNT

A. PREMIUM RECEIPTS
  1. LIFE INSURANCE
    (a) ORDINARY LIFE INSURANCE
    (b) GROUP LIFE INSURANCE (including Federal Employees' Group Life Insurance and Servicemen's Group Life Insurance, but excluding credit life insurance)
    (c) INDUSTRIAL LIFE INSURANCE
    (d) CREDIT LIFE INSURANCE
  2. ANNUITY CONSIDERATIONS
    (a) INDIVIDUAL ANNUITY CONSIDERATIONS
    (b) GROUP ANNUITY CONSIDERATIONS
  3. HEALTH INSURANCE
    (a) INDIVIDUAL HEALTH INSURANCE
    (b) GROUP HEALTH INSURANCE

TOTAL

B. NEW BUSINESS

YEAR ______ AMOUNT

  1. ORDINARY LIFE INSURANCE
  2. GROUP LIFE INSURANCE
  3. INDUSTRIAL LIFE INSURANCE
  4. CREDIT LIFE INSURANCE

TOTAL

ITEM 2 PROPERTY-LIABILITY INSURANCE

YEAR ______

LINE OF INSURANCE	A. DIRECT PREMIUMS	B. NET PREMIUMS

ITEM 3 TITLE INSURANCE

A. NET DIRECT PREMIUMS WRITTEN	B. DIRECT PREMIUMS EARNED	YEAR

16

By direction of the Commission.

Emily H. Rock,

Secretary.

[FR Doc. 87-4370 Filed 3-5-87; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 6750-01-M

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

16 CFR Parts 801, 802 and 803

Premerger Notification; Reporting and Waiting Period Requirements

AGENCY: Federal Trade Commission.

ACTION: Notice of proposed rulemaking.

SUMMARY: These proposed rules would amend the premerger notification rules that require the parties to certain mergers or acquisitions to file reports with the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice, and to wait a specified period of time before consummating such transactions. The reporting and waiting period requirements are intended to enable these enforcement agencies to determine whether a proposed merger or acquisition might violate the antitrust laws if consummated and, when appropriate, to seek a preliminary injunction in federal court to prevent consummation. During the eight years the rules have been in effect, the Federal Trade Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General for Antitrust, has amended the premerger notification rules several times in order to improve the program's effectiveness and to lessen the burden of complying with the rules. These proposed revisions are intended to improve the program's effectiveness by amending the definition of the term "control" as it applies to partnerships and other entities that do not have outstanding voting securities.

DATE: Comments must be received on or before April 6, 1987.

ADDRESSES: Written comments should be submitted to both (1) the Secretary, Federal Trade Commission, Room 136, Washington, DC 20580, and (2) the Assistant Attorney General, Antitrust Division, Department of Justice, Room 3214, Washington, DC 20530.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: Kenneth M. Davidson, Attorney, Evaluation Office, Bureau of Competition, Room 394, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580. Telephone: (202) 326-3300.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION:

Regulatory Flexibility Act

The proposed amendments to the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification rules are designed to improve the effectiveness of the premerger notification program. They alter the approach to rulemaking proposed on September 24, 1985 (50 FR 38742, see Proposal 1) by narrowing the types of transactions that would have been made reportable by the previously proposed rules. The Commission has determined that none of the proposed rules is a major rule, as that term is defined in Executive Order 12291. The proposed rules will not result in: An annual effect on the economy of $100 million or more; a major increase in costs or prices for consumers, individual industries, Federal, State, or local government agencies, or geographic regions; or significant adverse effects on competition, employment, investment, productivity, innovation or the ability of United States-based enterprises to compete with foreign-based enterprises in the domestic market. None of the amendments would expand the coverage of the premerger notification rules in a way that would affect small business. Therefore, pursuant to section 605(b) of the Administrative Procedure Act, 5 U.S.C. 605(b), as added by the Regulatory Flexibility Act, Pub. L. 96-354 (September 19, 1980), the Federal Trade Commission certifies that these rules will not have a significant economic impact on a substantial number of small entities. Section 603 of the Administrative Procedure Act, 5 U.S.C. 603, requiring a final regulatory flexibility analysis of some rules, is therefore inapplicable.

Paperwork Reduction Act

The Hart-Scott-Rodino Premerger Notification rules and report form contain information collection requirements as defined by the Paperwork Reduction Act, 44 U.S.C. 3501 *et seq.* These requirements have been reviewed and approved by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB Control No. 3084-0005). Because the proposed amendments would affect the information collection requirements of the premerger notification program, the proposed amendments have been submitted to OMB for review under section 3504(h) of the Paperwork Reduction Act. Comments on that submission may be directed to the Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs, Office of Management and Budget, Washington, DC 20503, Attention: Don Arbuckle, Desk Officer for the Federal Trade Commission.

Background

Section 7A of the Clayton Act ("the act"), 15 U.S.C. 18a, as added by sections 201 and 202 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, requires persons contemplating certain acquisitions of assets or voting securities to give advance notice to the Federal Trade Commission (hereafter referred to as "the Commission") and the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice (hereafter referred to as "the Assistant Attorney General"), and to wait certain designated periods before the consummation of such acquisitions. The transactions to which the advance notice requirement is applicable and the length of the waiting period required are set out respectively in subsections (a) and (b) of section 7A. This amendment to the Clayton Act does not change the standards used in determining the legality of mergers and acquisitions under the antitrust laws.

The legislative history suggests several purposes underlying the act. Congress wanted to assure that large acquisitions were subjected to meaningful scrutiny under the antitrust laws prior to consummation. To this end, Congress clearly intended to eliminate the large "midnight merger," which is negotiated in secret and announced just before, or sometimes only after, the closing takes place. Congress also provided an opportunity for the Commission or the Assistant Attorney General (who are sometimes hereafter referred to collectively as the "antitrust agencies" or the "enforcement agencies") to seek a court order enjoining the completion of those transactions that the agencies deem to present significant antitrust problems. Finally, Congress sought to facilitate an effective remedy when a challenge by one of the enforcement agencies proved successful. Thus, the act requires that the antitrust agencies receive prior notification of significant acquisitions, provides certain tools to facilitate a prompt, thorough investigation of the competitive implications of these acquisitions, and assures the enforcement agencies an opportunity to seek a preliminary injunction before the parties to an acquisition are legally free to consummate it, reducing the problem of unscrambling the assets after the transaction has taken place.

Subsection 7A(d)(1) of the act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d)(1), directs the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 553, to require that the notification be in such form and contain such information and documentary material as may be necessary and appropriate to determine whether the proposed transaction may, if consummated, violate the antitrust laws. Subsection 7A(d)(2) of the act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d)(2), grants the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 553, the authority (A) to define the terms used in the act, (B) to exempt additional persons or transactions from the act's notification and waiting period requirements, and (C) to prescribe such other rules as may be necessary and appropriate to carry out the purposes of section 7A.

On December 15, 1976, the Commission issued proposed rules and a proposed Notification and Report Form ("the Form") to implement the act. This proposed rulemaking was published in the Federal Register of December 20, 1976, 41 FR 55488. Because of the volume of public comment, it became clear to the Commission that some substantial revisions would have to be made in the original rules. On July 25, 1977, the Commission determined that additional public comment on the rules would be desirable and approved revised proposed rules and a revised proposed Notification and Report Form. The revised rules and Form were published in the Federal Register of August 1, 1977, 42 FR 39040. Additional changes in the revised rules and Form were made after the close of the comment period. The Commission formally promulgated the final rules and Form, and issued an accompanying Statement of Basis and Purpose on July 10, 1978. The Assistant Attorney General gave his formal concurrence on July 18, 1978. The final rules and Form and the Statement of Basis and Purpose were published in the Federal Register of July 31, 1978, 43 FR 33451, and became effective on September 5, 1978.

The rules are divided into three parts, which appear at 16 CFR Parts 801, 802 and 803. Part 801 defines a number of the terms used in the act and rules, and explains which acquisitions are subject to the reporting and waiting period requirements. Part 802 contains a number of exemptions from these requirements. Part 803 explains the procedures for complying with the act. The Notification and Report Form, which is completed by persons required to file notification, is an appendix to Part 803 of the rules.

Changes of a substantive nature have been made in the premerger notification rules or Form on five occasions since they were first promulgated. The first was an increase in the minimum dollar value exemption contained in § 802.20 of the rules. This amendment was proposed in the Federal Register of August 10, 1979, 44 FR 47099, and was published in final form in the Federal Register of November 21, 1979, 44 FR 60781. The second amendment replaced the requirement that certain revenue data for the year 1972 be provided in the Notification and Report Form with a requirement that comparable data be provided for the year 1977. This change was made because total revenues for the year 1977 broken down by Standard Industrial Classification (SIC) codes became available from the Bureau of the Census. The amendment appeared in the Federal Register of March 5, 1980, 45 FR 14205, and was effective May 3, 1980.

The third set of changes was published by the Federal Trade Commission as proposed rules changes in the Federal Register of July 29, 1981, 46 FR 38710. These revisions were designed to clarify and improve the effectiveness of the rules and of the Notification and Report Form as well as to reduce the burden of filing notification. Several comments on the proposed changes were received during the comment period. Final rules, which adopted some of the suggestions received during the comment period but which were substantially the same as the proposed rules, were published in the Federal Register of July 29, 1983, 48 FR 34427, and became effective on August 29, 1983. The fourth change, replacing the requirement to provide 1977 revenue data with a requirement to provide 1982 data on the Form, was published in the Federal Register of March 28, 1986, 51 FR 10368.

In addition, the Notification and Report Form, found in 16 CFR 803 (Appendix), has undergone minor revisions on two other occasions. The new versions were approved by the Office of Management and Budget on December 29, 1981, and February 23, 1983, respectively. Most recently, the information collection requirements of the Notification and Report Form were approved by the Office of Management and Budget on September 30, 1985, for a period of three years.

The fifth set of changes to the rules and the Notification and Report Form was published by the Federal Trade Commission as proposed rule changes in the Federal Register of September 24, 1985, 50 FR 38742. Those thirteen proposed revisions were designed to reduce the cost to the public of complying with the rules and to improve the program's effectiveness. Numerous comments were received on the thirteen proposals. The Commission decided to adopt nine of the proposals (one in significantly modified form), to reject one proposal for budgetary reasons, and to defer action on the other three: The proposal to require reporting by owners of "acquisition vehicles" (Proposal 1 of the September 24, 1985, proposed amendments); the proposed exemption of certain asset acquisitions, including the acquisitions of current supplies, new durable goods, and some types of real estate (Proposal 5); and, the proposal to increase the "controlled issuer" threshold that would have expanded the exemption for transactions valued at $15 million or less in § 802.20(b) and for certain foreign transactions described in § 802.50 and § 802.51 (Proposal 6). Final rules, which adopted some of the suggestions received from public comments, were published this day in the Federal Register and will become effective on April 10, 1987. These changes included further revisions to the Notification and Report Form.

The current set of proposals to change the premerger notification rules grows out of the comments to Proposal 1 of the September 24, 1985, Federal Register notice, the proposed "acquisition vehicle" rules. The underreporting problem that the "acquisition vehicle" approach was designed to solve is extensively discussed in that notice of proposed rulemaking. It explains both how in some circumstances an acquisition made by a partnership is not subject to the reporting and waiting obligations of the act, and how in similar circumstances an acquisition made by a newly formed corporation that has no controlling owner is not subject to the obligations of the act. The proposed rules would have required both types of transactions to be reported.

The proposed "acquisition vehicle" rules received the second largest number of public comments. They were discussed by comments 2, 4, 7, 15, 16, 18, and 19. While the comments differed on numerous points, and not all were critical, three significant points emerged: First, it is likely the proposed rules would generate a large number of notification filings; second, the rules might be subject to evasion by relatively simple expedients; and finally, there are less inclusive approaches that could accomplish the primary objective of the "acquisition vehicle" proposal.

Because of the importance of these issues to the effectiveness of the premerger program, the Commission has reconsidered its proposal and developed a new approach that applies only to partnerships and other entities that do not issue voting securities. While not based directly on suggestions from the public comments, the Commission believes its new proposal is responsive to the concerns raised in those comments.

The Commission invites interested persons to submit comments on the nature and scope of the problems described in the Proposed Statement of Basis and Purpose, as well as on the appropriateness of the proposed amendments to the rules as solutions to those problems.

The Commission also invites responses to the following specific questions:

1. Does the partnership control proposal sufficiently decrease the possibility that a competitively significant transaction might occur without being reportable under the premerger notification program?
2. The American Bar Association ("ABA"), in its comments on the "acquisition vehicle" rules, proposed to amend the definition of control in a manner similar to the partnership control approach. The ABA suggested that the rules include an alternative definition of control that would apply to all acquiring persons that do not otherwise meet the act's section 7A(a)(2) size-of-person test. With respect to such persons, control would be ascribed to that "owner" holding the largest interest in the acquiring person equal to or greater than 25 percent, regardless of whether such person was otherwise exempt from reporting. The percentage ownership interest would be determined in accordance with the method proposed by the Commission in the "acquisition vehicle" rules and retained in the partnership control rule. Is the ABA proposal, or some other variant, a preferable alternative to the partnership control rule?
3. What are the costs and benefits of the partnership control proposal?
4. What are the costs and benefits of the ABA proposal?

Proposed Statement of Basis and Purpose for the Commission's Revised Premerger Notification Rules

Section 801.1(b) Control

Having considered the comments received concerning the proposed "acquisition vehicle" rules published on September 24, 1985, 50 FR 38742, the Commission has decided to propose a different and less inclusive regulation. It appears that the "acquisition vehicle" approach would have required filings in connection with numerous competitively insignificant transactions, such as management buyouts. Since the Commission is not aware of any transaction to date that violated the antitrust laws but was not reported under the premerger notification program because the acquisition vehicle was not a controlled entity, it seems inappropriate to employ an approach that is likely to require notifications for a host of competitively insignificant transactions.

The Commission remains concerned, however, about the possibility under the existing rules that an anticompetitive transaction might occur without being reported under the premerger notification program. For example, there have been a number of unreportable transactions involving firms in the same industry. The Commission therefore proposes to expand the definition of "control" for purposes of the rules. This change, together with § 801.90 (which provides that the use of any particular acquisition vehicle "for the purpose of avoiding the obligation to comply with the requirements of the act shall be disregarded, and the obligation to comply shall be determined by applying the act . . . to the substance of the transaction") should insure that competitively significant transactions of this type will be reported under the premerger notification program. If, however, the proposed rule becomes effective and unreportable acquisitions raising competitive concerns occur, the Commission will promptly consider returning to the approach underlying its previously proposed "acquisition vehicle" rules.

The Commission is proposing a rule that would expand the definition of control to include persons owning 50 percent or more of partnerships or other entities that do not issue voting securities. They would be required to report acquisitions by the entities they own, just as persons must currently report acquisitions by corporations if they own 50 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of those corporations. Unlike the previously proposed "acquisition vehicle" rules, this proposal would not require minority owners to report acquisitions.

The Commission is also proposing to change the existing alternative definition of control, which is based on the contractual power to designate members of an entity's board of directors or analogous body. The proposed change—from the power to designate a majority to the power to designate 50 percent—will result in a uniform 50 percent criterion for all three definitions of control in the rule.

Before discussing the operation of the proposed partnership control rule, it should be helpful to examine some of the considerations that led the Commission to move from an "acquisition vehicle" approach to the new "control of partnership" approach. First, the drafting of an acquisition vehicle rule has certain inherent problems. That approach tends to be overinclusive and, at least arguably, might not deter a person determined to avoid the notification obligation. Second, further examination of the kinds of potentially significant acquisitions that are not reported under the current rules indicates they are likely to be acquisitions by partnerships dominated by one person. While unreported takeovers by corporations and other business entities in which ownership is fragmented are theoretically possible, they do not yet appear to have been sources of competitive problems. Accordingly, because it is possible to draft a less complex rule that would make acquisitions by persons who control partnerships reportable, the Commission has decided it is more appropriate to determine whether existing underreporting problems can be adequately addressed by adopting this more limited approach.

Problems With the Acquisition Vehicle Approach

The overinclusiveness of the acquisition vehicle approach is derived from its structure. It disregards, for purposes of determining reporting obligations, the existence of the acquiring entity. Thus, that approach could require a notification from every person who, through its holdings of voting securities in an acquisition vehicle, was deemed to be acquiring more than a $15 million interest in a target. With the recent proliferation of large leveraged management buyouts, this approach would likely have generated a large number of filings concerning transactions that have little or no competitive significance.

Leveraged buyouts are commonly made by shell corporations formed for the purpose of making the acquisition. As the Commission stated today in this **Federal Register** in the statement of basis and purpose describing § 801.11(e), shell corporations "typically have had no sales and frequently have no assets other than the cash or loans used to make the acquisition. Thus, when they are not controlled by any other entity, the acquiring person has no competitive presence. In such instances the acquisition does not combine businesses but merely changes the ownership of a single ongoing business; it therefore cannot reduce competition. Accordingly, the Commission has concluded that no purpose is served by requiring such acquisitions to be reported." Similarly, because management buyouts usually do not combine businesses, no purpose is served by requiring such transactions to be reported, as would an acquisition vehicle rule.

Of course, an acquisition vehicle (whether heavily leveraged or not) might include among its owners competitors or potential competitors of the acquired entity. In such instances there would be a reason to require reporting. Unfortunately, it is difficult to formulate a criterion that would exempt competitively insignificant groups but would not also exempt competitively significant groups. As a result, there is a strong tendency in the acquisition vehicle approach, exacerbated by the growing popularity of management buyouts, to require a substantial number of unnecessary additional filings.

The proposed "acquisition vehicle" rules sought to solve underreporting problems for both known and theoretically possible means of avoiding the obligations of the act. The comprehensive scope of those proposed rules is, in part, responsible for the substantial problems of overinclusiveness and enforceability. The Commission now believes it is more appropriate initially to direct its rulemaking at persons who make acquisitions through partnerships they dominate. Until now, the most significant unreported transactions of which the Commission is aware were all acquisitions by partnerships that were dominated by one person. Consequently, the Commission believes it need not require any reporting by minority shareholders of corporate acquisition vehicles.

Should the Commission find persuasive evidence that this form of transaction appears to be omitting from the premerger notification system competitively significant transactions, it would reexamine the acquisition vehicle approach.

Control of Partnerships and Other Entities That Have Not Issued Voting Securities

There have been widely publicized instances in which acquisitions were structured to be made by partnerships rather than corporations, and were not reported under the act, even though the partnerships were owned and operated principally by one person, and that person was a competitor of the acquired person. That result is inconsistent with the treatment of corporations that are dominated by one person, and with the objectives of the act and the rules.

Acquisitions by partnerships can avoid premerger review as a result of two principles of premerger reporting: one, a formal rule for calculating assets of an entity, 16 CFR 801.11(e), and the other, a Premerger Notification Office informal interpretation that a partnership is its own "ultimate parent entity" (that is, a partnership is not controlled by its partners). Section 801.11(e) directs that an entity without a balance sheet not include, in determining its size, any assets that are contributed to the entity for the purpose of making an acquisition. Thus, for example, if a partnership is formed to buy a $1 billion company and the partners contribute $1 billion in cash, the acquisition of the company by the partnership is not reportable. The partnership does not meet the $10 million minimum size criterion of section 7A(a)(2) of the act because § 801.11(e) directs the partnership not to count the $1 billion that will be used to pay for the acquisition. The informal interpretation deems the acquisition to have been made by the partnership itself, which has no other assets, rather than its partners, who may well have other assets.

Of course, if the partnership were employed in the acquisition "for the purpose of avoiding the obligations to comply with the requirements of the act," its existence would be disregarded and the obligations of the act would be determined by applying the act and the rules to the substance of the transaction. 16 CFR 801.90. For example, some persons might be tempted to make an acquisition through a partnership for the purpose of delaying their premerger notifications to the antitrust agencies until they were required by the Federal securities laws to announce their acquisition publicly. If a partnership were used for the purpose of delaying or avoiding reporting, § 801.90 would attribute the acquisitions to the partners individually. They would be required to comply with the obligations of the act personally prior to consummating the transaction.

The Commission now proposes to require partners, rather than partnerships, to report transactions in certain other circumstances. It proposes to accomplish this result by amending the rule defining control, § 801.1(b), to provide that a partnership or other unincorporated entity will be deemed to be controlled by any person who owns 50 percent or more of the entity. Thus, a partner who met the statutory $10 million minimum size criterion and owned 50 percent or more of the partnership would be required to report acquisitions made by the partnership. The rule would be analogous to the circumstances in which a corporation is deemed to be controlled by one or more of its shareholders. It would thereby abolish the overly general presumption that partnerships are always independent entities.

This change would mean, in the example of the acquisition of the $1 billion company discussed above, the transaction could be reportable if one of the partners was entitled to fifty percent or more of the firm's profits (or, upon dissolution, of its assets), and that partner's total assets or net annual sales were $10 million or more. That controlling partner, or its parent, would become the "ultimate parent entity" pursuant to § 801.1(a)(3). It would therefore be deemed to be the person making the acquisition.

This proposed attribution of control to persons owning such large economic interests in entities that do not issue voting securities seems to be a more appropriate way to apply the premerger notification procedures. As matters currently stand, for example, a person can make a purchase through a limited partnership in which it is the general partner and 95 percent beneficial owner. If, pursuant to § 801.11(e), the partnership does not meet the size-of-person criteria of section 7A(a)(2), and the partnership was not created for the purpose of avoiding compliance with the act, the transaction would not be reportable because the partnership is deemed to be its own ultimate parent entity. It seems more appropriate for such transactions to be reportable by any person that dominates the acquiring entity. That is what the proposed rule seeks to do.

In the past, the Premerger Notification Office has not deemed partnerships to be controlled. Section 801.1(b) provides, in part, that control exists if one person can "designate a majority of the directors of a corporation, or in the case of unincorporated entities, of individuals exercising similar functions." The Commission staff has declined to equate partners with "individuals exercising similar functions" to "directors of a corporation." This interpretation was adopted principally because the variable structure of partnerships made it too difficult to specify an objective set of criteria by which to attribute control. For example, partnerships can provide for equal operating authority for all partners or can restrict those rights in any of a number of ways. However, in formulating the acquisition vehicle proposal, the Commission developed the concept of attributing control of unincorporated entities on the basis of beneficial interests. See, for example, proposed § 801.5(b)(2), 50 FR 38748. While not perfect, this concept, which relies on the entitlement to profits or to assets in the event of dissolution, seems an adequate indicator of control where one person has a right to 50 percent or more of the profits or is entitled to 50 percent or more of the assets upon dissolution. At the very least, it seems unlikely that such an entity would be permitted to continue its existence if it operated in any way that was adverse to the wishes of the 50 percent owner. Consequently, quite apart from any concern about intentional avoidance of the act's obligations, the Commission considers this proposal to be an appropriate supplement to its existing definition of control.

The 50 percent beneficial ownership requirement would parallel in important respects the treatment of corporations under the existing control rule. Although effective or working control of a corporation can exist as a practical matter with a smaller percentage of shares, § 801.1(b) deems a corporation to be a controlled entity only if one person owns "50 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities" or has a right "presently to designate a majority of the board of directors." While this 50 percent requirement understates actual control of many corporations, the rule is clear and easily determinable. It is also arguably overinclusive because one corporation with two 50 percent owners is deemed to have two ultimate parent entities. Nevertheless, this arguable overinclusiveness correctly reflects the joint control that generally exists in such circumstances. In the Commission's experience, this requirement that both controlling entities file has not prevented persons from fulfilling the premerger notification requirements.

The 50 percent ownership criterion would serve similar functions for determining control of unincorporated entities. It would be an objective and predictable standard. Moreover, the degree of ownership should be sufficient to assure in almost all instances that the entities and those deemed to be controlling owners will act in concert to comply with the act's obligations.

In formulating the 50 percent ownership criterion, consideration was given to whether other indicators of control should be included. For example, the Commission might have proposed treating the sole general partner of a limited partnership as controlling the partnership. While the Commission did not doubt its authority to attribute control on this and on other criteria, the Commission declined to utilize that authority at this time because it might require many unnecessary filings. For example, limited partnerships with sole general partners are common entities whose investments often have little competitive significance. Moreover, if a rule required sole general partners to file notifications, some might attempt to avoid it by appointing a second or third general partner. At present, a rule requiring all general partners to file seems unnecessary and therefore unduly burdensome, but the Commission reserves the option of promulgating such a rule should underreporting of significant acquisitions occur under the currently proposed rule.

Finally, some consideration was given to adopting a rule that would attribute assets of unincorporated entities to all owners, even if they held only a minority interest. This would have been similar to the coverage of the previously proposed acquisition vehicle rule. The Commission does not feel such a proposal is warranted at this time. In the Commission's experience, partnership vehicles that had any potential for anticompetitive consequences have been dominated by a single person or by two persons holding equal rights. Accordingly, the Commission believes it is sufficient at present to extend the scope of the premerger notification program to an unincorporated entity only if at least one person is entitled to either 50 percent of its profits or, upon dissolution, of its assets. However, should competitively significant transactions escape reporting obligations under the proposed new rule because no person controlled the partnerships undertaking those acquisitions, the Commission would reconsider the acquisition vehicle approach.

Changing the Majority Control Criterion

Under the existing rules, an entity is deemed controlled by a person that has a contractual power to designate a majority of the entity's board of directors. Both the current and the proposed rules reflect the Commission's belief that such a person should be deemed by the rules to control the entity whether or not that entity also is deemed to be controlled according to other criteria. Thus, a single entity may be deemed controlled by one person that holds 50 percent of the outstanding voting securities of the entity and also by another person who has a contractual right to appoint a majority of that entity's board of directors (or of individuals exercising similar functions). The Commission has concluded, however, that no purpose is served and some confusion has been generated by inferring control of a board of directors only when one person may appoint more than 50 percent of the directors. It therefore proposes to revise this criterion to parallel the other control concepts based on 50 percent ownership. Under this proposed amendment, an entity would be deemed to be controlled by a person with the right to appoint as few as 50 percent of the entity's directors.

The basis of this decision is illustrated by the following example. Consider a nonprofit joint venture corporation created by two persons that is not subject to proposed § 801.1(b)(1) because it does not issue voting securities, it will not distribute profits and it would disburse assets widely in the event of dissolution. If the power to appoint directors of this venture is split evenly between the two persons forming the entity, such an entity can be deemed controlled solely as a result of the contractual right to appoint directors. There is no reason to treat the control of this corporation differently from a corporation in which the voting shares are split evenly. Both rights are likely to result in an evenly divided board of directors. Accordingly, the proposed rule would deem an entity to be controlled by a person that had a contractual right to appoint half or more of the "directors of a corporation, or in the case of unincorporated entities, of individuals exercising similar functions."

As noted in the discussion above, the Commission has experienced no problems administering its "50 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities" criterion. Even though that requires in appropriate circumstances more than one person to file as the ultimate parent entity of a single issuer, all persons required to file have been able to supply the information required. This experience appears to confirm the Commission's premise that if one person owns 50 percent of an entity it is at least in joint control of the entity. In the case of a person controlling 50 percent of a board of directors (or individuals exercising similar functions), it is even clearer that the entity cannot act without that person's assent. The Commission therefore proposes to infer control if a person has the contractual right to appoint 50 percent or more of the board of directors (or of individuals exercising similar functions).

This proposal would modify a Commission staff informal interpretation of § 801.1(b). Currently, the Premerger Notification Office deems a corporation controlled if a person can designate a *majority* of the board as a result of both holding voting securities and having a contractual power to designate directors. In other words, in determining whether an entity is controlled pursuant to § 801.1(b)(2), the staff adds directors elected to the board as a result of holding voting securities to directors designated as a result of a contractual power. Under the proposed amendments, the staff would deem the entity controlled by a person who, as a result of such combined rights, had the power to designate 50 percent or more of the directors.

Operation of the Proposed Rule

The Commission proposes to amend its rules by adding to the definition of the term "control" in § 801.1(b). The amendment, proposed new § 801.1(b)(1)(ii), would deem an entity to be controlled by a person entitled to 50 percent or more of the entity's profits, or by a person entitled, upon dissolution, to 50 percent or more of the entity's assets. The amendment would not apply if the entity had outstanding voting securities. The amendment thus creates two systems for determining control: one for entities that issue voting securities, and another for all other entities.

These non-overlapping rules for determining control are each supplemented by the alternate—contractual power to designate—control concept. In other words, proposed § 801.1(b)(1) would not deem an entity to be controlled both under paragraph (b)(1)(i) by a person that holds 50 percent of the voting securities issued by the entity and under proposed paragraph (b)(1)(ii) by another person that has a right to 50 percent of the entity's profits. Because the entity had issued voting securities, proposed paragraph (b)(1)(ii) would not apply; thus the entity would not be controlled on the basis of a right to profits or to assets upon dissolution. In contrast, under proposed paragraph (b)(2) the entity deemed controlled under (b)(1)(i) as a result of voting securities held by one person would be deemed also controlled under proposed paragraph (b)(2) by another person that had a contractual right to appoint 50 percent or more of the entity's board of directors.

Similarly, an entity that was deemed controlled under proposed paragraph (b)(1)(ii), because a person had a right to 50 percent of its profits or assets, would also be deemed controlled under proposed (b)(2) if another person had the right to appoint at least 50 percent of that entity's board of directors (or analogous body). This overlap would be quite rare, however. As explained above, the Commission staff has not deemed partnerships to possess "individuals exercising similar functions" to directors; therefore, proposed paragraph (b)(2) will apply only to other entities that do not issue voting securities.

In addition, the 50 percent or more criteria in paragraph (b)(1)(i), proposed paragraph (b)(1)(ii) and proposed paragraph (b)(2) means that under each paragraph two persons can be deemed to control an entity. It is, thus, theoretically possible that as many as six persons could be deemed to control one entity. However, it would be extraordinary for an entity to allocate those incidents of ownership in such different percentages.

As described above, proposed paragraph (b)(1)(ii) is intended to apply only in circumstances in which paragraph (b)(1)(i) does not apply, that is, it applies only to entities that have not issued voting securities. Typically, this means paragraph (b)(1)(i) will apply to corporations and proposed paragraph (b)(1)(ii) will apply to non-corporate entities. It should be noted, however, that some corporations (for example, entities incorporated under not-for-profit statutes that do not issue voting securities) would be subject to proposed paragraph (b)(1)(ii). Similarly, some unincorporated entities (for example, joint stock companies) issue voting securities. For them, control would continue to be determined by paragraph (b)(1)(i).

For purposes of these rules, the fact that an entity issues securities that have some voting rights is not sufficient to deem them voting securities. Limited partnerships commonly issue certificates subject to the Securities Act of 1933 to limited partners. These partnership shares may be transferable and may entitle their holders to vote on a variety of matters, but typically the entities would not be subject to paragraph (b)(1)(i). The definition of "voting security" in § 801.1(f)(1) states the holder of the security must be entitled "to vote for the election of directors of the issuer, or with respect to unincorporated entities, individuals exercising similar functions." Because most unincorporated entities do not have bodies analogous to boards of directors or do not elect the membership of such bodies, the securities are not "voting securities" within the meaning of the rules.

The rights to profits and to assets, upon dissolution, described in proposed paragraph (b)(1)(ii) are ownership rights and not creditor rights. Thus, the right to assets, upon dissolution, means after all debt obligations have been satisfied. The right to profits would be calculated after payment of any royalty, franchise fee or other expense based on income.

As is the case with other control provisions, a person deemed to control an entity under proposed paragraph (b)(1)(ii) is attributed all the assets of the controlled entity. See § 801.1(c)(8). Thus if "A" controls pursuant to proposed paragraph (b)(1)(ii) a partnership B (because "A" is entitled to 50 percent of B's profits, or 50 percent of B's assets upon dissolution), "A" must include the value of all of B's assets in determining A's total assets. "A" must include all of B's assets to determine whether it meets the minimum size criteria of section 7A(a)(2) of the act, even though "A" does not have a right to the other 50 percent of B's profits or assets. Furthermore, if B is entitled to 50 percent of the profits of partnership C, "A" will be deemed to control C also and also must include all the assets of C in determining the size of "A."

List of Subjects in 16 CFR Part 801

Antitrust, Reporting and recordkeeping requirements.

The Commission proposes to amend Title 16, Chapter I, Subchapter H, the code of Federal Regulations as follows:

Accordingly the Commission proposes the amendments set out below.

1. The authority for Part 801 continues to read as follows:

Authority: Sec. 7A(d) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d), as added by sec. 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94–435, 90 Stat. 1390.

2. The Commission proposes to amend § 801.1 by revising the introductory text of paragraph (b), paragraphs (b) (1) and (2) and by designating the existing example as example (1), and adding new examples (2) through (4), as set forth below. New language is indicated by arrows: (►new language◄). Deleted language is indicated by brackets: ([deleted language]).

PART 801—COVERAGE RULES

§ 801.1 Definitions.

* * * * *

(b) *Control.* The term "control" (as used in the terms "control(s)," "controlling," "controlled by" and "under common control with") means►:

(1—◄ Either

►(i)◄ [(1)] Holding 50 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer [;] ►,◄ or

►(ii) In the case of an entity that has no outstanding voting securities, having the right to 50 percent or more of the profits of the entity, or, having the right in the event of dissolution to 50 percent or more of the assets of the entity; or◄

(2) Having the contractual power presently to designate [a majority] ►50 percent or more◄ of the directors of a corporation, or in the case of unincorporated entities, of individuals exercising similar functions.

Example ►s◄ : ►1.◄ * * *

►2. A statutory limited partnership agreement provides as follows: The general partner "A" is entitled to 50 percent of the partnership profits, "B" is entitled to 40 percent of the profits and "C" is entitled to 10 percent of the profits. Upon dissolution, "B" is entitled to 75 percent of the partnership assets and "C" is entitled to 25 percent of those assets. All limited and general partners are entitled to vote on the following matters: the dissolution of the partnership, the transfer of assets not in the ordinary course of business, any change in the nature of the business and the removal of the general partner. The interest of each partner is evidenced by an ownership certificate that is transferable under the terms of the partnership agreement and is subject to the Securities Act of 1933. For purposes of these rules, control of this partnership is determined by paragraph (b)(1)(ii) of this section. Although partnership interests may be securities and have some voting rights attached to them, they do not entitle the owner of that interest to vote for a corporate "director" or "an individual exercising similar functions" as required by § 801.1(f)(1), and thus are not subject to either paragraph (b) (1)(i) or (2) of this section. Consequently, "A" is deemed to control the partnership because of its right to 80 percent of the partnership's profits. "B" is also deemed to control the partnership because it is entitled to 75 percent of the partnership's assets upon dissolution.

3. "A" is a nonprofit charitable foundation that enters into a partnership joint venture with "B", a nonprofit university, to establish C, a nonprofit hospital corporation that does not issue voting securities. Pursuant to its charter all surplus revenue from the hospital in excess of expenses and necessary capital investments is to be disbursed evenly to "A" and "B". In the event of dissolution of the hospital corporation, the assets of the hospital are to be contributed to a local charitable medical facility then in need of financial assistance. Notwithstanding the hospital's designation of its disbursement funds as surplus rather than profits to maintain its charitable image, "A" and "B" would each be deemed to control C, pursuant to § 801.1(b)(1)(ii), because each is entitled to 50 percent of the excess of the hospital's revenues over expenditures.

4. "A" is entitled to 50 percent of the profits of partnership B and 50 percent of the profits of partnership C. B and C form a partnership E with "D" in which each entity has a right to one-third of the profits. When E acquires company X, "A" must report the transaction (assuming it is otherwise reportable). Pursuant to § 801.1(b)(1)(ii), E is deemed to be controlled by "A", even though A ultimately will receive only one-third of E's profits. Because B and C are considered as part of "A", the rules attribute all profits to which B and C are entitled (two thirds of E's profits in this example) to "A."◄

By direction of the Commission.

Emily H. Rock,

Secretary.

[FR Doc. 87-4371 Filed 3-5-87; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 6750-01-M

Exhibit C

5-29-87
Vol. 52 No. 103

federal register

Friday
May 29, 1987

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION
JUN - 1 1987
LIBRARY

United States
Government
Printing Office
SUPERINTENDENT
OF DOCUMENTS
Washington, DC 20402

OFFICIAL BUSINESS
Penalty for private use, $300

******************5-DIGIT 20580

A FR FEDER630F FTC F
FEDERAL TRADE COMM
LIBRARY
H 630
WASHINGTON DC 20580

SECOND CLASS NEWSPAPER
Postage and Fees Paid
U.S. Government Printing Office
(ISSN 0097-6326)

1. The authority citation of Parts 272 and 273 continues to read as follows:

Authority: 7 U.S.C. 2011–2029.

PART 272—REQUIREMENTS FOR PARTICIPATING STATE AGENCIES

2. In § 272.1, a new paragraph (g)(88) is added to read as follows:

§ 272.1 General terms and conditions.

* * * * *

(g) *Implementation* * * *

(88) *Amendment No. 292.* (i) The effective date of the provisions of this amendment is retroactive to November 6, 1986.

(ii) The actual dates upon which aliens may become eligible under § 273.4(a) (8), (9), (10), and (11) are specified in those paragraphs. State agencies must inform their staff of the respective dates as they pertain to the eligibility or ineligibility of applicant aliens.

PART 273—CERTIFICATION OF ELIGIBLE HOUSEHOLDS

3. In § 273.2:

a. Paragraph (f)(1)(ii)(A) is amended by removing the reference to "(a)(7)" and adding the reference to "(a)(11)" in its place.

b. Paragraph (f)(1)(ii)(B) is amended by removing the second, third, and fourth sentences.

c. Paragraphs (f)(1)(ii)(D), (f)(1)(ii)(E), (f)(1)(ii)(F) are redesignated as paragraphs (f)(1)(ii)(E), (f)(1)(ii)(F), (f)(1)(ii)(G), respectively, and a new paragraph (f)(1)(ii)(D) is added which reads as follows:

§ 273.2 Application processing.

* * * * *

(f) *Verification.* * * *

(1) *Mandatory verification.* * * *

(ii) *Alien status.* * * *

(D) Aliens in the categories specified in § 273.4(a) (8) through (11) shall present documentation such as, but not limited to, a letter, notice of eligibility, or identification card which clearly identifies the alien has been granted legal status in one of those categories.

* * * * *

4. In § 273.4:

a. Paragraph (a)(2) is amended by adding a new sentence at the end of the paragraph which reads, "However, an alien lawfully admitted for permanent residence pursuant to section 245A of the Immigration and Nationality Act must be eligible as specified in paragraphs (a)(8) or (a)(9) of this section.".

b. Paragraph (a)(3) is amended by replacing the date June 30, 1948 with January 1, 1972.

c. Paragraph (a)(4) is amended by replacing the word "Nationalization" with "Nationality".

d. Paragraph (a)(5) is amended by replacing the word "Nationalization" with "Nationality".

e. New paragraphs (a)(8), (a)(9), (a)(10), and (a)(11) are added.

The additions read as follows:

§ 273.4 Citizenship and alien status.

(a) *Citizens and eligible aliens.* * * *

(8) An alien who is defined as aged, blind or disabled in accordance with section 1614(a)(1) of the Social Security Act and is considered to be lawfully admitted for permanent residence pursuant to section 245A(b)(1) of the Immigration and Nationality Act. Such aliens may obtain lawful permanent resident status under section 245(b)(1) of the Immigration and Nationality Act no earlier than November 7, 1988.

(9) An alien who is granted lawful temporary resident pursuant to section 245A of the Immigration and Nationality Act at least five years prior to applying for food stamps and who subsequently gained lawful permanent resident status pursuant to section 245A of the Immigration and Nationality Act. Such aliens may obtain temporary residence status no earlier than May 5, 1987.

(10) An alien who is, as of June 1, 1987, or thereafter, a special agricultural worker and lawfully admitted for temporary residence in accordance with section 210(a) of the Immigration and Nationality Act.

(11) An alien who is lawfully admitted for temporary residence as an additional special agricultural worker as of October 1, 1989 through September 30, 1993 in accordance with section 210A(a) of the Immigration and Nationality Act.

* * * * *

Dated: May 28, 1987.

John W. Bode,

Assistant Secretary for Food and Consumer Services.

[FR Doc. 87-12207 Filed 5-28-87; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 3410-30-M

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

16 CFR Part 801

Premerger Notification; Reporting and Waiting Period Requirements

AGENCY: Federal Trade Commission.

ACTION: Final rule.

SUMMARY: This action promulgates amendments to the premerger notification rules that require the parties to certain mergers or acquisitions to file reports with the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice, and to wait a specified period of time before consummating such transactions. The reporting and waiting period requirements are intended to enable these enforcement agencies to determine whether a proposed merger or acquisition might violate the antitrust laws if consummated and, when appropriate, to seek a preliminary injunction in federal court to prevent consummation. During the eight years the rules have been in effect, the Federal Trade Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General for Antitrust, has amended the premerger notification rules several times in order to improve the program's effectiveness and to lessen the burden of complying with the rules. These revisions are intended to improve the program's effectiveness by amending the definition of the term "control" as it applies to partnerships and other entities that do not have outstanding voting securities.

EFFECTIVE DATE: July 1, 1987.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: John M. Sipple, Jr., Senior Attorney, Premerger Notification Office, Bureau of Competition, Room 301, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580. Telephone: (202) 326–3100.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION:

Regulatory Flexibility Act

These amendments to the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification rules are designed to improve the effectiveness of the premerger notification program. The Commission has determined that none of the amendments is a major rule, as that term is defined in Executive Order 12291. The amendments will not result in: An annual effect on the economy of $100 million or more; a major increase in costs or prices for consumers, individual industries, Federal, State, or local government agencies, or geographic regions; or significant adverse effects on competition, employment, investment, productivity, innovation or the ability of United States-based enterprises to compete with foreign-based enterprises in the domestic market. None of the amendments expands the coverage of the premerger notification rules in a way that would affect small business. Therefore, pursuant to section 605(b) of the Administrative Procedure Act, 5 U.S.C. 605(b), as added by the Regulatory Flexibility Act, Pub. L. 96-354 (September 19, 1980), the Federal Trade Commission certifies that these rules will not have a significant economic impact on a substantial number of small entities. Section 603 of the Administrative Procedure Act, 5 U.S.C. 603, requiring a final regulatory flexibility analysis of some rules, is therefore inapplicable.

Paperwork Reduction Act

The Hart-Scott-Rodino Premerger Notification rules and report form contain information collection requirements as defined by the Paperwork Reduction Act, 44 U.S.C. 3501–3518. Prior to promulgation, these requirements were reviewed and approved by the Office of Management and Budget. The amendments contained in this Notice were approved by OMB on April 29, 1987, for use through March 31, 1990 (OMB Control No. 3084–0005).

Background

Section 7A of the Clayton Act ("the act"), 15 U.S.C. 18a, as added by sections 201 and 202 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, requires persons contemplating certain acquisitions of assets or voting securities to give advance notice to the Federal Trade Commission (hereafter referred to as "the Commission") and the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice (hereafter referred to as "the Assistant Attorney General"), and to wait certain designated periods before the consummation of such acquisitions. The transactions to which the advance notice requirement is applicable and the length of the waiting period required are set out respectively in subsections (a) and (b) of section 7A. This amendment to the Clayton Act does not change the standards used in determining the legality of mergers and acquisitions under the antitrust laws.

The legislative history suggests several purposes underlying the act. Congress wanted to assure that large acquisitions were subjected to meaningful scrutiny under the antitrust laws prior to consummation. To this end, Congress clearly intended to eliminate the large "midnight merger," which is negotiated in secret and announced just before, or sometimes only after, the closing takes place. Congress also provided an opportunity for the Commission or the Assistant Attorney General (who are sometimes hereafter referred to collectively as the "antitrust agencies" or the "enforcement agencies") to seek a court order enjoining the completion of those transactions that the agencies deem to present significant antitrust problems. Finally, Congress sought to facilitate an effective remedy when a challenge by one of the enforcement agencies proved successful. Thus, the act requires that the antitrust agencies receive prior notification of significant acquisitions, provides certain tools to facilitate a prompt, thorough investigation of the competitive implications of these acquisitions, and assures the enforcement agencies an opportunity to seek a preliminary injunction before the parties to an acquisition are legally free to consummate it, reducing the problem of unscrambling the assets after the transaction has taken place.

Subsection 7A(d)(1) of the act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d)(1), directs the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 553, to require that the notification be in such form and contain such information and documentary material as may be necessary and appropriate to determine whether the proposed transaction may, if consummated, violate the antitrust laws. Subsection 7A(d)(2) of the act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d)(2), grants the Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 553, the authority (A) to define the terms used in the act, (B) to exempt additional persons or transactions from the act's notification and waiting period requirements, and (C) to prescribe such other rules as may be necessary and appropriate to carry out the purposes of section 7A.

On December 15, 1976, the Commission issued proposed rules and a proposed Notification and Report Form ("the Form") to implement the act. This proposed rulemaking was published in the Federal Register of December 20, 1976, 41 FR 55488. Because of the volume of public comment, it became clear to the Commission that some substantial revisions would have to be made in the original rules. On July 25, 1977, the Commission determined that additional public comment on the rules would be desirable and approved revised proposed rules and a revised proposed Notification and Report Form. The revised rules and Form were published in the Federal Register of August 1, 1977, 42 FR 39040. Additional changes in the revised rules and Form were made after the close of the comment period. The Commission formally promulgated the final rules and Form, and issued an accompanying Statement of Basis and Purpose on July 10, 1978. The Assistant Attorney General gave his formal concurrence on July 18, 1978. The final rules and Form and the Statement of Basis and Purpose were published in the Federal Register of July 31, 1978, 43 FR 33451, and became effective on September 5, 1978.

The rules are divided into three parts, which appear at 16 CFR Parts 801, 802, and 803. Part 801 defines a number of the terms used in the act and rules, and explains which acquisitions are subject to the reporting and waiting period requirements. Part 802 contains a number of exemptions from these requirements. Part 803 explains the procedures for complying with the act. The Notification and Report Form, which is completed by persons required to file notification, is an appendix to Part 803 of the rules.

Changes of a substantive nature have been made in the premerger notification rules or Form on five occasions since they were first promulgated. The first was an increase in the minimum dollar value exemption contained in § 802.20 of the rules. This amendment was proposed in the Federal Register of August 10, 1979, 44 FR 47099, and was published in final form in the Federal Register of November 21, 1979, 44 FR 60781. The second amendment replaced the requirement that certain revenue data for the year 1972 be provided in the Notification and Report Form with a requirement that comparable data be provided for the year 1977. This change was made because total revenues for the year 1977 broken down by Standard Industrial Classification (SIC) codes became available from the Bureau of the Census. The amendment appeared in the Federal Register of March 5, 1980, 45 FR 14205, and was effective May 3, 1980.

The third set of changes was published by the Federal Trade Commission as proposed rules changes in the Federal Register of July 29, 1981, 46 FR 38710. These revisions were designed to clarify and improve the effectiveness of the rules and of the Notification and Report Form as well as to reduce the burden of filing notification. Several comments on the proposed changes were received during the comment period. Final rules, which adopted some of the suggestions received during the comment period, but which were substantially the same as the proposed rules, were published in the Federal Register of July 29, 1983, 48 FR 34427, and became effective on August 29, 1983. The fourth change, replacing the requirement to provide 1977 revenue data with a requirement to provide 1982 data on the Form, was published in the Federal Register of March 28, 1986, 51 FR 10368.

The fifth set of changes to the rules and the Notification and Report Form was published by the Federal Trade Commission as proposed rule changes in the Federal Register of September 24, 1985, 50 FR 38742. Those thirteen proposed revisions were designed to reduce the cost to the public of complying with the rules and to improve the program's effectiveness. The Commission decided to adopt nine of the proposals, to reject one proposal and to defer action on the other three. Final rules, which adopted some of the suggestions received from public comments, were published in the Federal Register of March 6, 1987, 52 FR 7066 and became effective on April 10, 1987. These changes included revisions to the Notification and Report Form, found in 16 CFR Part 803 (Appendix). The Form had previously undergone minor revisions on two other occasions.

These amendments to the premerger notification rules grow out of the comments on Proposal 1 of the September 24, 1985, Federal Register notice, the proposed "acquisition vehicle" rules. The underreporting problem that the "acquisition vehicle" approach was designed to solve is extensively discussed in that notice of proposed rulemaking. It explains both how in some circumstances an acquisition made by a partnership is not subject to the reporting and waiting obligations of the act, and how in similar circumstances an acquisition made by a newly-formed corporation that has no controlling owner is not subject to the obligations of the act. The proposed rules would have required both types of transactions to be reported.

Upon reviewing the comments on the "acquisition vehicle" proposal, the Commission concluded that that approach appeared likely to require filings in connection with numerous competitively insignificant transactions and that a less inclusive approach could accomplish the primary objective of the proposal: Covering acquisitions by partnerships that really are controlled by another entity. In addition, it appears that there have been no problems associated with acquisitions by newly-formed corporations. The Commission therefore reconsidered its proposal and developed a new approach that applies only to partnerships and other entities that do not have outstanding voting securities. On March 6, 1987, the Commission proposed in the Federal Register, 52 FR 7095, amendments to its premerger notification rules to implement this approach.

Four comments were received.

Comments

1. Unocal Corporation
2. Latham & Watkins
3. American Bar Association Section on Antitrust Law
4. Sullivan & Cromwell.

Authority: The Federal Trade Commission, with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General, promulgates these amendments to the premerger notification rules pursuant to section 7A(d) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d), as added by section 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390.

Statement of Basis and Purpose for the Commission's Revised Premerger Notification Rules

Section 801.1(b) Control

Under previous staff interpretations, acquisitions made by certain partnerships were not reportable under the act although acquisitions by similarly structured corporations were reportable. No report was required even if an acquisition was by a partnership that was owned and operated principally by one person, and even if that person was a competitor of the acquired person. Because that result is inconsistent with the treatment of corporations that are dominated by one person and with the objectives of the act and the rules, the Commission proposed amendments to its rules to alter that special treatment of partnerships. Having considered public comments on its proposals, the Commission now amends the definition of control in § 801.1(b) to provide that persons owning 50 percent or more of partnerships or other entities that do not have outstanding voting securities will control such entities. Those persons will now be required to report acquisitions by the entities they own, just as persons must report acquisitions by corporations if they own 50 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of those corporations. This proposal imposes no reporting obligation on owners of minority interests.

The Commission is also amending the alternative definition of control, which is based on the contractual power to designate members of an entity's board of directors or analogous body. The change—from the power to designate a majority to the power to designate 50 percent—results in a uniform 50 percent criterion for all three definitions of control in the rules.

The Purpose of the New Control Definition

Previously, acquisitions by partnerships and other entities that have no outstanding voting securities were frequently not subject to premerger review as a result of two principles of premerger reporting: One, a formal rule for calculating assets of an entity, 16 CFR 801.11(e), and the other, a Premerger Notification Office informal interpretation that a partnership is its own "ultimate parent entity" (that is, a partnership is not controlled by its partners). Section 801.11(e) directs that an entity without a balance sheet not include, in determining its size, any assets that are contributed to the entity for the purpose of making an acquisition. Thus, for example, assume that a partnership is formed to buy a $1 billion company and the partners contribute $1 billion in cash for the purpose of making the acquisition. If the partnership has no other assets (and no sales), the subsequent acquisition of the $1 billion company by the partnership is not reportable. The partnership does not meet the $10 million minimum asset criterion of section 7A(a)(2) of the act because § 801.11(e) directs the partnership not to count the $1 billion that will be used to pay for the acquisition. The informal interpretation deems the acquisition to have been made by the partnership itself, which has no other assets, rather than by its partners, who may well have other assets. Consequently, the size of the partnership is determined by valuing only the partnership's assets.

Of course, if the partnership were employed in the acquisition "for the purpose of avoiding the obligations to comply with the requirements of the act," its existence would be disregarded and the obligations of the act would be determined by applying the act and the rules to the substance of the transaction. 16 CFR 801.90. For example, some persons might be tempted to make an acquisition through a partnership for the purpose of avoiding reporting or delaying their premerger notifications to the antitrust agencies until they were required by the federal securities laws to announce their acquisition publicly. If a partnership were formed for the purpose of avoiding or delaying reporting, § 801.90 would base the reporting requirement on the substance of the transaction. If, for example, the substance is an acquisition by a single person, notwithstanding the structuring of the transaction in the form of a partnership, that person would be required to comply with the obligations of the act prior to consummating the transaction.

These amendments require controlling partners, rather than partnerships, to report transactions in certain other circumstances. Section 801.1(b)(1)(ii) provides that a partnership or other unincorporated entity is deemed to be controlled by any person who owns 50 percent or more of the entity. Thus, a partner who meets the statutory $10 million minimum size criteria and owns

50 percent or more of the partnership would be required to file the notification for an otherwise reportable acquisition by the partnership. The amendments abolish the overly general presumption that partnerships are always independent entities.

These amendments mean, in the example of the acquisition of the $1 billion company discussed above, that the transaction would be reportable if one of the partners were entitled to fifty percent or more of the partnership's profits (or, upon dissolution, of its assets), and that partner's total assets or annual net sales were $10 million or more. That controlling partner, or its parent, would be the "ultimate parent entity" pursuant to § 801.1(a)(3). It would therefore be deemed to be the person making the acquisition.

This attribution of control to persons owning such large economic interests is appropriate, because, as a general rule, they control these entities in the common sense of that word. The antitrust review should therefore include a comparison of the business holdings of the acquired entity with the business holdings of both the partnership and the controlling partner. By requiring the controlling partner to file, the premerger antitrust review will automatically consider both. While not perfect, this concept, which relies on the entitlement to profits or to assets in the event of dissolution, seems an adequate indicator of control where one person has a right to 50 percent or more of the profits or is entitled to 50 percent or more of the assets upon dissolution. At the very least, it seems unlikely that such an entity would be permitted to continue its existence if it operated in any way that was adverse to the wishes of the 50 percent owner. Consequently, the Commission considers this proposal to be an appropriate supplement to its existing definition of control.

The 50 percent ownership requirement parallels in important respects the treatment of corporations under the existing control rule. Although effective or working control of a corporation can exist as a practical matter with a smaller percentage of shares, § 801.1(b) deems a corporation to be a controlled entity only if one person owns "50 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities" or has a right "presently to designate a majority of the board of directors." While this 50 percent requirement understates actual control of many corporations, the rule is clear and easily determinable.

The rule is arguably overinclusive because one corporation with two 50-percent owners is deemed to have two ultimate parent entities. Nevertheless, this rule correctly reflects the joint control that generally exists in such circumstances. In the Commission's experience, this requirement that both controlling entities file has neither prevented persons from fulfilling the premerger notification requirements nor had a negative impact on business decisions.

The 50 percent ownership criterion serves similar functions for determining control of unincorporated entities. It is an objective and predictable standard. Moreover, the degree of ownership is sufficient to assure in almost all instances that the entities and those deemed to be controlling owners will act in concert to comply with the act's obligations.

In formulating the 50 percent ownership criterion, consideration was given to whether other indicators of control should be included. For example, the Commission might have proposed treating all general partners or the sole general partner of a limited partnership as controlling the partnership. While the Commission did not doubt its authority to attribute control on the basis of this and other criteria, the Commission declined to utilize that authority at this time because it might require many unnecessary filings. For example, limited partnerships with sole general partners are common entities whose investments often have little competitive significance. Moreover, if a rule required sole general partners to file notifications, it could easily be avoided by appointing a second or third general partner. At present, a rule requiring all general partners to file seems unnecessary and therefore unduly burdensome, but the Commission retains the option of promulgating such a rule should underreporting of significant acquisitions occur under the rule promulgated here.

Each of the four comments received addresses whether the amendments as proposed are adequate to remedy the underreporting problem caused by the interpretation that makes some acquisitions by partnerships and certain other entities not subject to reporting requirements. All four support "the concepts underlying these proposals" and consider them to be "a considerable improvement over the present Rules". (See Comment 3). The comments neither suggest that these amendments would not have required all the publicized unreported partnership transactions to have been reported, nor criticize the workability of the amendments. Three of the comments noted that partnerships could be set up in such a manner that no partner would control it under the amendments as proposed. Accordingly, these comments favor some action in addition to the proposed rule, but each makes a different suggestion.

The Commission welcomes the suggestions, which relate to abuses that may occur in the future. For the present, the Commission believes its proposed amendments are sufficient, and that the public interest will be served best by their immediate adoption. The amendments as proposed place acquisitions undertaken by partnerships on equal footing with acquisitions undertaken by corporations, and the Commission is not aware of any problem with the existing definition of control as it pertains to corporations. The Commission is not persuaded of the need to expand the reporting obligation to cover numerous competitively insignificant transactions in anticipation of avoidance devices that may never be used.

However, the Commission is considering whether, in light of its adoption of the "partnership control" rule, it should also revise its rules to require reporting the acquisition of control of a partnership. Currently, the staff interpretation makes acquisition of less than a 100 percent interest in a partnership not reportable, because a partnership interest is deemed to be neither a voting security nor an asset. The Commission is also considering the suggestion of Comment 3 from the American Bar Association Section of Antitrust Law that the economic incentive not to observe premerger reporting obligations might be eliminated by adopting a blanket exemption for all transactions in which an acquiring person would hold less than 5 percent of the voting securities of an issuer. That comment suggests that such acquisitions are unlikely to have antitrust implications.

Changing the Majority Control Criterion

Prior to these amendments, an entity was deemed controlled by a person that had the contractual power to designate a majority of the entity's board of directors. That rule reflects the Commission's belief that such a person should be deemed to control the entity whether or not that entity also is deemed to be controlled according to other criteria. Thus, under the existing rules, a single entity may be deemed controlled by one person that holds 50 percent of the outstanding voting securities of the entity and also by another person who has a contractual right to appoint a majority (i.e., more than 50 percent) of that entity's board of directors (or of individuals exercising similar functions). The Commission has concluded, however, that no purpose was served and some confusion was generated by inferring control by virtue of ability to appoint directors only when one person may appoint *more than* 50 percent of the directors. It has therefore revised this criterion to parallel the other control concepts that are based on 50 percent ownership. Under this amendment, an entity is deemed to be controlled by a person with the right to appoint exactly 50 percent, as well as more than 50 percent, of the entity's directors.

The basis of this decision is illustrated by the following example. Consider a nonprofit joint venture corporation created by two persons that is not deemed to be controlled under § 801.1(b)(1) because it does not issue voting securities, it does not distribute profits and it would disburse assets widely in the event of dissolution. If the power to appoint directors of this venture is split evenly between the two persons that formed the entity, such an entity can be deemed controlled solely as a result of the contractual right to appoint directors. There is no reason to treat the control of this corporation differently from a corporation in which the voting shares are split evenly. Both rights are likely to result in an evenly divided board of directors. Accordingly, the amended rule deems an entity to be controlled by a person that has a contractual right to appoint 50 percent or more of the "directors of a corporation, or in the case of unincorporated entities, of individuals exercising similar functions."

As noted in the discussion above, the Commission has experienced no problems administering its "50 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities" criterion. Even though that requires in appropriate circumstances more than one person to file as the ultimate parent entity of a single issuer, all persons required to file have been able to supply the information required. This experience appears to confirm the Commission's premise that if one person owns 50 percent of an entity it is at least in joint control of the entity. In the case of a person able to appoint 50 percent of a board of directors (or individuals exercising similar functions), it is even clearer that the entity cannot act without that person's assent. The Commission therefore has amended its rules so as to deem a person to control an entity if that person has the contractual right to appoint 50 percent or more of the board of directors (or of individuals exercising similar functions) of the entity.

This amendment similarly modifies a Commission staff informal interpretation of § 801.1(b). The Premerger Notification Office deems a corporation controlled if a person can designate a *majority* of the board as a result of both holding voting securities and having a contractual power to designate directors. In other words, in determining whether an entity is controlled pursuant to § 801.1(b)(2), the staff adds directors elected to the board as a result of holding voting securities to directors designated as a result of a contractual power. Under the amendment, the staff will deem the entity controlled by a person who, as a result of such combined rights, has the power to designate 50 percent or more of the directors.

Operation of the Control Rules

Amended § 801.1(b)(1)(ii) deems an entity to be controlled by a person entitled to 50 percent or more of the entity's profits, or by a person entitled, upon dissolution, to 50 percent or more of the entity's assets. This provision does not apply if the entity has outstanding voting securities. The amendment thus creates two systems for determining control: One for entities that have outstanding voting securities, and another for all other entities.

These non-overlapping rules for determining control are each supplemented by the alternative—contractual power to designate—control concept. In other words, § 801.1(b)(1)(i) and § 801.1(b)(1)(ii) are mutually exclusive; an entity cannot be controlled both under paragraph (b)(1)(i) by a person that holds 50 percent of the voting securities issued by the entity and under paragraph (b)(1)(ii) by another person that has a right to 50 percent of the entity's profits. Because the entity had outstanding voting securities, paragraph (b)(1)(ii) does not apply; thus the entity would not be controlled on the basis of a right to profits or to assets upon dissolution. In contrast, under proposed paragraph (b)(2) the entity deemed controlled under (b)(1)(i) as a result of voting securities held by one person would be deemed also controlled under proposed paragraph (b)(2) by another person that had a contractual right to appoint 50 percent or more of the entity's board of directors.

Similarly, an entity that was deemed controlled under paragraph (b)(1)(ii), because a person had a right to 50 percent of its profits or assets, would also be deemed controlled under (b)(2) if another person had the right to appoint at least 50 percent of that entity's board of directors (or analogous body). This overlap would be quite rare, however.

As explained above, the Commission staff concluded that partnerships do not possess "individuals exercising similar functions" to directors; therefore, paragraph (b)(2) applies only to other entities that do not have outstanding voting securities.

In addition, the 50 percent or more criteria in paragraphs (b)(1)(i) and (b)(2) means that under each paragraph two persons can be deemed to control an entity; and under paragraph (b)(1)(ii), four persons could conceivably control an entity, as two persons could each be entitled to 50 percent of the entity's profits and two different persons each be entitled to 50 percent of the entity's assets upon dissolution. It is, thus, theoretically possible that as many as six persons could be deemed to control one entity (four under (b)(1)(ii) plus two under (b)(2)). However, as Comment 3 notes, it would be extraordinary for an entity to allocate those incidents of ownership in such different percentages.

As described above, paragraph (b)(1)(ii) is intended to apply only in circumstances in which paragraph (b)(1)(i) does not apply; that is, it applies only to entities that have no outstanding voting securities. Typically, this means paragraph (b)(1)(i) applies to corporations and paragraph (b)(1)(ii) applies to non-corporate entities. It should be noted, however, that some corporations (for example, entities incorporated under not-for-profit statutes that do not issue voting securities) are subject to paragraph (b)(1)(ii). Similarly, some unincorporated entities (for example, joint stock companies) may have outstanding voting securities. For them, control is determined by paragraph (b)(1)(i).

For purposes of these rules, the fact that an entity issues securities that have some voting rights is not sufficient to deem them voting securities. Limited partnerships commonly issue certificates subject to the Securities Act of 1933 to limited partners. These partnership shares may be transferable and may entitle their holders to vote on a variety of matters, but typically the entities would not be subject to paragraph (b)(1)(i). The definition of "voting security" in § 801.1(f)(1) states that the holder of the security must be entitled "to vote for the election of directors of the issuer, or with respect to unincorporated entities, individuals exercising similar functions." Because most unincorporated entities do not have bodies analogous to boards of directors or do not elect the membership of such bodies, the securities are not "voting securities" within the meaning of the rules.

The rights to profits and to assets upon dissolution, described in paragraph (b)(1)(ii) are ownership rights and not creditor rights. Thus, the right to assets upon dissolution, means after all debt obligations have been satisfied. The right to profits is calculated after payment of any royalty, franchise fee or other expense based on income. Also, as Comment 3 notes, there may be instances in which profits are shared with employees in lieu of compensation, rather than as a return on investment. These compensation distributions should not be included in calculating the right to profits under paragraph (b)(1)(ii). Where parties are in doubt as to the manner in which they should calculate percentage rights to profits or to assets upon dissolution, they should seek the advice of the Premerger Notification Office.

As is the case with other control provisions, a person deemed to control an entity under paragraph (b)(1)(ii) has attributed to it all the assets of the controlled entity. See § 801.1(c)(8). Thus if "A" controls pursuant to paragraph (b)(1)(ii) a partnership B (because "A" is entitled to 50 percent of B's profits, or 50 percent of B's assets upon dissolution), "A" must include the value of all of B's assets in determining the total assets of "A." "A" must include all of B's assets to determine whether it meets the minimum size criteria of section 7A(a)(2) of the act, even though "A" does not have a right to the other 50 percent of B's profits or assets. Furthermore, if B is entitled to 50 percent of the profits of partnership C, "A" will be deemed to control C also and also must include all the assets of C in determining the size of "A."

Finally, Comment 3 from the ABA Section of Antitrust Law raises three additional questions about these amendments: First, it asks whether the following transaction is exempt from reporting obligations: A person that controls a partnership acquires assets from the partnership. As a general matter, the Commission agrees it would be logical to exempt such transactions if acquisition of control of the partnership were a reportable event. However, as noted above, under current staff interpretations, acquisition of control is not normally a reportable event. Consequently, the Commission is not prepared now to exempt the asset acquisition. It will consider such an exemption as it considers making the acquisition of control of a partnership a reportable event.

Second, Comment 3 asks how to resolve the apparent conflict between the amended definition of control and the definition in § 801.1(c)(5), which states that the beneficiary of a trust (regardless of the percentage of its profits to which he is entitled) does not hold the assets of the trust. It is the Commission's intention that the control amendments, although adopted more recently, do not supersede the more specific treatment of trust assets mandated by § 801.1(c).

The Section of Antitrust Law also raises concerns that rapid implementation of the amendments might disrupt transactions that are nearing completion. For these reasons the section suggests the effective date of the amendments should be delayed for 60 or even 90 days after promulgation of the amendments. The Commission believes that its 35 day period is adequate to prevent disruption and that a longer period might invite the very abuses these amendments are intended to eliminate.

List of Subjects in 16 CFR Part 801

Antitrust.

Accordingly 16 CFR Part 801 is amended as set out below.

PART 801—COVERAGE RULES

1. *Authority.* The authority for Part 801 continues to read as follows:

Authority: Sec. 7A(d) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(d), as added by sec. 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94–435, 90 Stat. 1390.

2. Section 801.1 is amended by revising the introductory text of paragraph (b), paragraphs (b) (1) and (2), and by designating the existing example as example (1), and adding new examples (2) through (4), as set forth below.

§ 801.1 Definitions.

* * * * *

(b) *Control.* The term "control" (as used in the terms "control(s)," "controlling," "controlled by" and "under common control with") means:

(1) *Either.* (i) Holding 50 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer or

(ii) In the case of an entity that has no outstanding voting securities, having the right to 50 percent or more of the profits of the entity, or having the right in the event of dissolution to 50 percent or more of the assets of the entity; or

(2) Having the contractual power presently to designate 50 percent or more of the directors of a corporation, or in the case of unincorporated entities, of individuals exercising similar functions.

Examples 1. * * *

2. A statutory limited partnership agreement provides as follows: The general partner "A" is entitled to 50 percent of the partnership profits, "B" is entitled to 40 percent of the profits and "C" is entitled to 10 percent of the profits. Upon dissolution, "B" is entitled to 75 percent of the partnership assets and "C" is entitled to 25 percent of those assets. All limited and general partners are entitled to vote on the following matters: the dissolution of the partnership, the transfer of assets not in the ordinary course of business, any change in the nature of the business, and the removal of the general partner. The interest of each partner is evidenced by an ownership certificate that is transferable under the terms of the partnership agreement and is subject to the Securities Act of 1933. For purposes of these rules, control of this partnership is determined by subparagraph (1)(ii) of this paragraph. Although partnership interests may be securities and have some voting rights attached to them, they do not entitle the owner of that interest to vote for a corporate "director" or "an individual exercising similar functions" as required by § 801.1(f)(1) below. Thus control of a partnership is not determined on the basis of either subparagraph (1)(i) or (2) of this paragraph. Consequently, "A" is deemed to control the partnership because of its right to 50 percent of the partnership's profits. "B" is also deemed to control the partnership because it is entitled to 75 percent of the partnership's assets upon dissolution.

3. "A" is a nonprofit charitable foundation that has formed a partnership joint venture with "B," a nonprofit university, to establish C, a nonprofit hospital corporation that does not issue voting securities. Pursuant to its charter all surplus revenue from the hospital in excess of expenses and necessary capital investments is to be disbursed evenly to "A" and "B." In the event of dissolution of the hospital corporation, the assets of the hospital are to be contributed to a local charitable medical facility then in need of financial assistance. Notwithstanding the hospital's designation of its disbursement funds as surplus rather than profits to maintain its charitable image, "A" and "B" would each be deemed to control C, pursuant to § 801.1(b)(1)(ii), because each is entitled to 50 percent of the excess of the hospital's revenues over expenditures.

4. "A" is entitled to 50 percent of the profits of partnership B and 50 percent of the profits of partnership C. B and C form a partnership E with "D" in which each entity has a right to one-third of the profits. When E acquires company X, "A" must report the transaction (assuming it is otherwise reportable). Pursuant to § 801.1(b)(1)(ii), E is deemed to be controlled by "A," even though "A" ultimately will receive only one-third of the profits of E. Because B and C are considered as part of "A," the rules attribute all profits to which B and C are entitled (two-thirds of the profits of E in this example) to "A."

By direction of the Commission.

Benjamin I. Berman,

Acting Secretary.

[FR Doc. 87–12236 Filed 5–28–87; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 6750-01-M